



EYEWITNESS TRAVEL

CHINA



1630
photographs



100
detailed maps



120
illustrations

EYEWITNESS TRAVEL

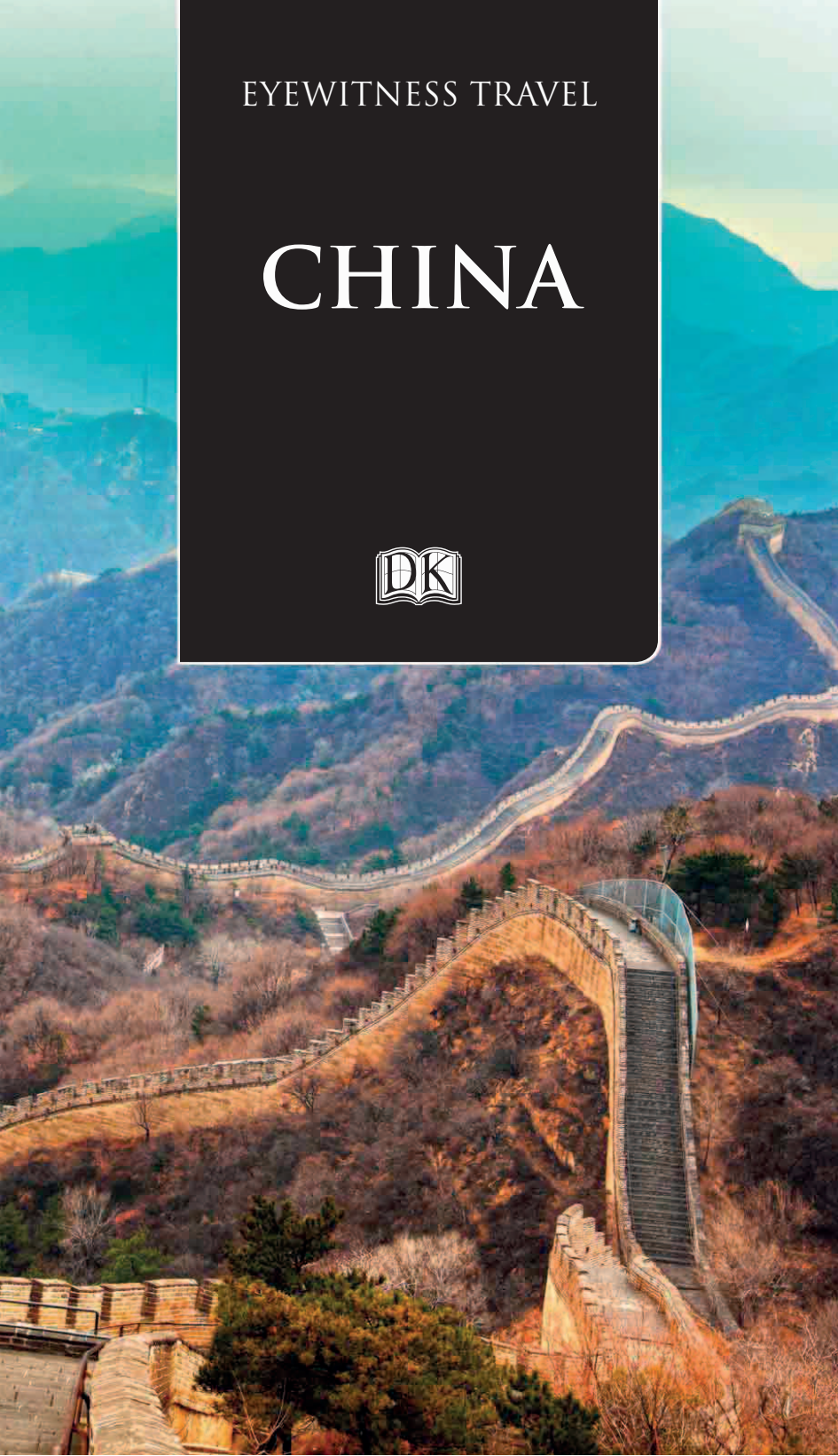
CHINA





EYEWITNESS TRAVEL

CHINA





LONDON, NEW YORK,
MELBOURNE, MUNICH AND DELHI
www.dk.com

Project Editors Hugh Thompson, Kathryn Lane

Project Art Editor Gadi Farfour

Editor Vandana Mohindra

Designers Mathew Kurien, Maite Lantarón,
Pallavi Narain, Rebecca Milner

Picture Researcher Ellen Root

Research Assistant Monica Yue Hua Ma

Map Co-ordinators Uma Bhattacharya, Casper Morris

DTP Designer Jason Little

Main Contributors

Donald Bedford, Deh-Ta Hsiung, Christopher Knowles,
David Leffman, Simon Lewis, Peter Neville-Hadley, Andrew Stone

Consultants

Christopher Knowles, Peter Neville-Hadley

Photographers

Demetrio Carrasco, Ian Cumming, Eddie Gerald, Nigel Hicks,
Colin Sinclair, Chris Stowers, Linda Whitwham

Illustrators

Richard Bonson, Stephen Conlin, Gary Cross, Richard Draper, Kevin Goold,
Paul Guest, Claire Littlejohn, John Mullany, Chris Orr, Arun Pottirayil

Printed in Malaysia by Vivar Printing Sdn. Bhd.

First American Edition, 2005

14 15 16 17 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Published in the United States by DK Publishing,

345 Hudson Street, New York, New York 10014

Reprinted with revisions 2008, 2010, 2012, 2014

Copyright © 2005, 2014 Dorling Kindersley Limited, London

All rights reserved. Without limiting the rights under copyright reserved above, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of both the copyright owner and the above publisher of this book.

Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited.

A catalog record of this book is available from the Library of Congress.

ISSN 1542-1554

ISBN 978-1-4654-1182-2

Floors are referred to throughout in accordance with American usage; ie the "first floor" is at ground floor level



MIX
Paper from
responsible sources
FSC™ C018179

The information in this

DK Eyewitness Travel Guide is checked regularly

Every effort has been made to ensure that this book is as up-to-date as possible at the time of going to press. Some details, however, such as telephone numbers, opening hours, prices, gallery hanging arrangements and travel information are liable to change. The publishers cannot accept responsibility for any consequences arising from the use of this book, nor for any material on third party websites, and cannot guarantee that any website address in this book will be a suitable source of travel information. We value the views and suggestions of our readers very highly.

Please write to: Publisher, DK Eyewitness Travel Guides, Dorling Kindersley,
80 Strand, London, WC2R 0RL, UK, or email: travelguides@dk.com.

**The external boundaries of China as shown
in this book are neither correct nor authentic.**

Front cover main image: Village with rice terraces in the mountain, Longsheng

◀ The Great Wall meandering along the ridges of northern China's mountainous terrain



Confucius (551–479 BC)

Contents

Introducing China

Discovering China **10**

Putting China
on the Map **18**

A Portrait of China **20**

China Through the Year **50**

The History of China **56**

Beijing & The North

Introducing Beijing
& The North **76**

Beijing **84**

Hebei, Tianjin, & Shanxi
126

Shandong & Henan **146**

Shaanxi **166**

Central China

Introducing
Central China **180**

Shanghai **188**

Jiangsu & Anhui **208**

Zhejiang & Jiangxi **244**

Hunan & Hubei **264**

The South

Introducing
The South **282**

Fujian **290**

Guangdong & Hainan **300**

Hong Kong & Macau **312**

The Southwest

Introducing
The Southwest **346**

Sichuan & Chongqing **354**

Yunnan **378**

Guizhou & Guangxi **402**



Pailou, a decorative gate, leading to Gao Miao in Zhongwei, Ningxia

The Northeast

Introducing
The Northeast **434**

Liaoning, Jilin,
& Heilongjiang **442**

Inner Mongolia & The Silk Roads

Introducing
Inner Mongolia &
The Silk Roads **464**

Inner Mongolia
& Ningxia **472**



Dramatic karst hills in the town of Guilin, Guangxi

Gansu & Qinghai **482**

Xinjiang **506**

Tibet

Introducing Tibet **522**

Tibet **530**

Travelers' Needs

Where to Stay **554**

Where to Eat
and Drink **564**

Shops & Markets **586**

Entertainment **590**

Sports & Specialist
Holidays **592**

Survival Guide

Practical Information **598**

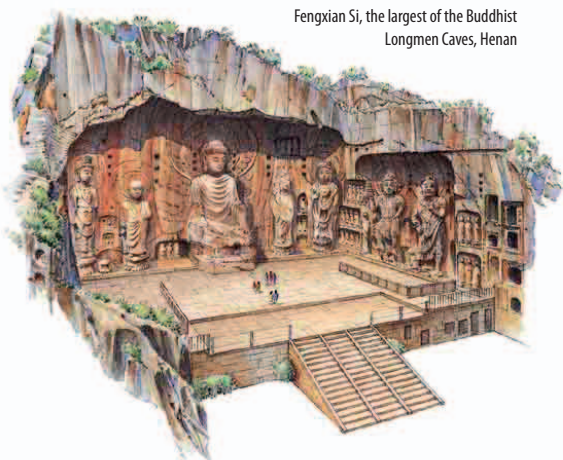
Travel Information **612**

General Index **622**

Acknowledgments **650**

Glossary **654**

Phrase Book **656**



Fengxian Si, the largest of the Buddhist Longmen Caves, Henan





INTRODUCING CHINA

Discovering China	10-17
Putting China on the Map	18-19
A Portrait of China	20-49
China Through the Year	50-55
The History of China	56-73

DISCOVERING CHINA

The following itineraries have been designed to take in as many of China's highlights as possible, while minimizing long-distance travel. First are three two-day tours of the country's most iconic cities: Beijing, Shanghai, and Hong Kong. The itineraries can be followed individually or combined to form a week-long tour. Extra suggestions are provided for those who want to extend

their stay to 10 days. Next come two seven-day tours, covering two beautiful areas of southwest China. These can be combined to make a fascinating two-week journey across the region. Finally, there is a two-week itinerary that traces the ancient Silk Road from Xi'an to Kashgar. Pick, combine, and follow your favorite itineraries, or simply dip in and out and be inspired.



Two Weeks on the Silk Road

- Discover China's ancient imperial capital, **Xi'an**, see the **Terracotta Warriors**, and explore the **Muslim Quarter**.
- Visit the Buddhist caves at **Dunhuang** and **Maiji Shan**, their centuries-old art preserved by their inaccessibility.
- Gaze west across the desert from **Jiayuguan Fort**, the last outpost along the Great Wall; do not miss **Xuanbi Changcheng**, a restored section of wall nearby.
- Relax under shady grape vines in **Turpan**, and explore the atmospheric ruins of **Jiaohe** and **Gaochang** nearby.
- Fill up on lamb kebabs, hand-pulled noodles and fruit at **Ürümqi's** street markets.
- Explore the Grand Mosque in **Kuqa**.
- Wander through fabled **Kashgar's** old town, and rub shoulders with shoppers from across Central Asia at the huge Sunday market.

A Week in Guangxi and Yunnan

- Float down **Guilin's** Li River through scenery that has inspired poets and painters for centuries.
- Stroll among limestone karst peaks outside **Yangshuo** and browse the town's bustling night market.
- Sip locally grown tea by the side of **Kunming's** Green Lake, and explore the city's colonial past.
- Marvel at the weird and wonderful rock formations in Yunnan's **Stone Forest**.
- Travel along the old Burma Road to historic **Dali**, home of the Bai people.
- Lose yourself in the cobbled streets of **Lijiang Old Town**, a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
- Explore the villages in the **Lijiang** valley and take a cable car to the snow-capped summit of **Yulong Xue Shan**.



The Dafo of Le Shan

This Tang-dynasty Giant Buddha statue was sculpted out of the rock face over a 90-year period, completed in 803 AD. It is one of the world's largest Buddhas.

A Week in Sichuan and Chongqing

- Get close to giant pandas at Chengdu's **Panda Breeding Center**, and discover the mysterious remains of a 3,000-year-old civilization at the **Sanxingdui Museum**.
- Visit the beautiful old village of **Huanglong Xi**, and marvel at the 230-ft (71-m) high **Le Shan Buddha**.
- Relax at a historic teahouse in **Zigong**, a salt-mining town for over two millennia, and discover the fascinating **Dazu** grottoes.
- Watch the frenetic activity at Chongqing's **Chaotian Men** docks and try the spicy local cuisine.
- Cruise slowly down the mighty Yangzi River through the stunning scenery of the **Three Gorges**, stopping at fascinating sights en route.





The Summer Palace, Beijing, has the most famous imperial garden in the whole of China

Two Days in Beijing

China's capital, Beijing is home to many fascinating sights, from the Forbidden City to the vibrant street life of the city's hutongs.

- **Arriving** Beijing Capital, 18 miles (30 km) northeast of central Beijing, is the main airport. Trains run frequently to the city, 6am–10pm daily.
- **Moving on** Shanghai takes 2 hours 30 minutes by plane, or 5 hours by express train.

Day 1

Morning Start in the heart of the city at **Qian Men** (p90), on the southern edge of **Tian'an Men Square** (pp88–9). Stroll around the square, stopping at **Mao's Mausoleum** (p88) to file past his glass casket. Continue north and enter the confines of the **Forbidden City** (pp92–3). Allow at least two hours to explore this, the former imperial palace and China's most impressive architectural complex.

Afternoon Climb Coal Hill in **Jing Shan Park** (p96) for magnificent views, then walk north to the traditional Beijing courtyard houses around **Qian Hai** and **Hou Hai** (see map, p87) and explore this fascinating area. In the evening, relax in a lakeside bar or restaurant, or catch the Beijing Opera performance at **Prince Gong's Mansion** (p96).

Day 2

Morning Head out to the **Summer Palace** (pp106–7) on the city's northwest outskirts. This former imperial retreat is beautifully landscaped; palaces and pavilions dot a wooded hillside that overlooks a series of pretty lakes. Climb up Longevity Hill, soak up the scenery from the Long Corridor, and – if you visit in the summer – take a boat out onto Kunming Lake.

Afternoon Back in the city, head to the **Temple of Heaven** (pp102–3), one of China's largest temple complexes, then go shopping at **Hong Qiao Market** (p118). For eating out, pick a restaurant in **Taikoo Li** (p118).

To extend your trip...

Visit the **Great Wall** (p114). Head to Badaling, the most popular section, 44 miles (70 km) away, or to less touristy Mutianyu, 56 miles (90 km) northeast of the city center.

Two Days in Shanghai

Catch glimpses of China's past and future in this exciting, cosmopolitan city.

- **Arriving** Shanghai has two airports: Pudong, 28 miles (45 km) from the Bund, and Hongqiao, 9 miles (15 km) away. Hongqiao is on the metro system, while Pudong is linked to the city by rail.
- **Moving on** The flight from Shanghai to Hong Kong takes 2 hours 30 minutes.

Day 1

Morning Begin on **Jinmao Tower's** 88th-floor observation deck (p195), with its fantastic views. Walk south along the **Huangpu River** (p201), then take a ferry across to the Jinlingdong Lu Pier. A short walk through the old city leads to the **Yu Gardens and Bazaar** (pp198–9) and its classical Chinese garden.

Afternoon Browse the shops of **Nanjing Road** (p194) and stroll along the **Bund** (pp192–3), its grandiose buildings a reminder of Shanghai's fascinating past. End the day at a glitzy bar or restaurant on the Bund, overlooking Pudong.

Day 2

Morning Wander through **People's Park** (p194), a green space where locals gather each day to exercise, gossip, or relax. Spend the rest of the morning at the excellent **Shanghai Museum** (pp196–7).



The zigzag bridge leading to the delightful Huxinting Teahouse at Yu Gardens, Shanghai

Allow at least two hours to see the main exhibits, which include bronzes and paintings.

Afternoon Stroll east from Shaanxi South Road metro station through the **French Concession** (p200), either along Huaihai Dong Road, with its shops, or negotiating the villa-lined streets to the south. Stop at the leafy French-style **Fuxing Park** (p200) and the nearby **Sun Yat-Sen Memorial Residence** (p200). End the day with dinner in fashionable **Xintiandi** (p207).

To extend your trip...

Take the high-speed train to **Hangzhou** (pp246–9) and spend two days exploring the West Lake and the tea-growing area beyond.



Trellised seating area in French-style Fuxing Park, Shanghai

Two Days in Hong Kong

Hong Kong is a city of contrasts, with crowded, bustling streets and quiet, traditional fishing villages.

- **Arriving** Chek Lap Kok is Hong Kong's main airport, located 22 miles (35 km) from Central. The Airport Express train runs frequently between the airport and Central, 6am–1am daily.

Day 1

Morning Beat the crowds and take the Peak Tram up to the **Peak** (pp318–19) early in the day, walking around the flat Peak Circuit for breathtaking views of Victoria Harbour and

beyond. Take the tram back to its lower terminus, and walk through the **Zoological & Botanical Gardens** (p317) to **Central** (p316), the financial heart of Hong Kong, for a *dim sum* lunch in one of the area's numerous restaurants.

Afternoon Walk through **Sheung Wan's Markets** (p321) and along **Hollywood Road** (p320) to the incense-filled **Man Mo Temple** (p320), before taking the tram back to Central and catching the iconic **Star Ferry** (p321) to **Tsim Sha Tsui** (p322) to watch the sunset from the waterfront. In the evening, head to **Temple Street Market** (p323) to haggle over souvenirs.

Day 2

Morning Take the ferry to Macau, and explore the center of this former Portuguese colony, starting from the **Largo do Senado** (p333). Wander through the cobbled streets to the **Ruínas de São Paulo** (p332), a ruined cathedral originally built by Jesuits. Then, climb up to the **Macau Museum** (p332) and the battlements of the **Fortaleza do Monte** (p332), refueling with delicious Portuguese egg tarts and coffee as you go.

Afternoon Explore the **Barra** (p334) to see evidence of Macau's colonial past, before



Spectators at a show Macau's ever-popular hotel-casino The Venetian

heading south to the Cotai Strip to visit **The Venetian** (p333), one of Macau's most extravagant casino complexes, complete with artificial canals and Macanese gondoliers. Stay around for the evening to sample the local cuisine and watch a show, explore the casinos, or visit Asia's only greyhound racing venue, the **Canidrome** (p338).

To extend your trip...

If you need a change of pace, head to one of Hong Kong's outlying islands. See **Lantau's Big Buddha** (pp330–31), dine on seafood in laidback **Lamma** (p330), or wander **Cheung Chau's** atmospheric lanes (p330).



Tourists on Sky Terrace 428 at The Peak, the highest viewing platform in Hong Kong

A Week in Guangxi and Yunnan

- **Airports** Arrive at Guilin Liangjiang airport, and depart from Lijiang Sanyi.
- **Transport** Take a ferry from Guilin to Yangshuo, and a bus to return to Guilin airport to catch a flight to Kunming. Once in Yunnan, it is possible to travel to Dali and Lijiang by train or bus, hiring a car and driver for local excursions. Alternatively, for greater flexibility, you can hire a car from Kunming.
- **Booking ahead** Guilin: Li River Cruise.

This itinerary focuses on two provinces in China's exotic southwest and combines the region's most beautiful scenery with opportunities to see fascinating ethnic minority cultures en route.

Day 1: Guilin

Renowned for its limestone karst peaks, the landscape around **Guilin** (pp420–21) has inspired poets since the 6th century AD. While the best scenery is south of the city, Guilin itself is a pleasant place to explore. Stroll along tree-lined Binjiang Lu, and see the remains of the city's Ming-era moats at **Rong Hu** and **Shan Hu** (p420).

Day 2: Li River and Yangshuo

The **Li River Cruise** (pp422–3) is one of the highlights of a trip to China – and for good reason. Spend the day meandering down the river through scenery that seems lifted straight out of a Chinese scroll painting, with sheer-sided limestone cliffs emerging from the lush, rural countryside. Finish the day in the small but bustling town of **Yangshuo** (pp424–5).

To extend your trip...

Drive to **Longsheng** (p426), 56 miles (90 km) north of Guilin, and stay overnight at **Ping An** village, nestled among terraced rice paddies.



View over the unusual landscape of the Stone Forest in Yunnan province

Day 3: Kunming

Fly to **Kunming** (pp380–81), one of China's most relaxed provincial capitals. Historically, the city centered on **Cui Hu Gongyuan** (p380), and today many of the old buildings around the lake have been converted to quaint teahouses and restaurants, making this a great place to relax and sample one of Yunnan's most famous products, *pu'er* tea.

Day 4: Stone Forest

The bizarre limestone pillars of the **Stone Forest** (pp384–5) are the remains of a prehistoric seabed that was eroded by the wind and rain into the peculiar shapes visible today. A visit to the Stone Forest can be undertaken as a day trip from Kunming, but it is also possible to stay overnight at the site.



Maoniuping (Yak Meadow) cable car at Yulong Xue Shan mountain, Lijiang

Day 5: Dali

Once the capital of an ancient independent kingdom, today **Dali** (pp392–3) is a picturesque small town with cobbled lanes and stone houses. Wander the streets, take a boat trip on **Er Hai** (p394), or visit the **San Ta** pagodas (p392) just outside Dali – the oldest tower dates to around AD 800, when Dali was still an independent kingdom.

Day 6: Lijiang

Set against a stunning mountain backdrop, the labyrinthine **Lijiang Old Town** (pp396–7) is one of the most charming historic towns in China. Climb to the highest point in Lijiang, **Wangu Lou** (p398), for superb views across the roofs of the old town. Lijiang is home to the Naxi minority, and you will see plenty of evidence of their unique culture around the town.

Day 7: Around Lijiang

Explore the beautiful valley around Lijiang. Drive out to the village of **Baisha** (p398) and on to **Yulong Xue Shan** (p398), the snow-capped peak that dominates the valley. From here, it is possible to take a cable car to the glacier-covered summit.

To extend your trip...

Continue north from Lijiang, hiking through the dramatic **Tiger Leaping Gorge** (pp400–1) and visiting the ethnically Tibetan hill town of **Zhongdian** (p401).

A Week in Sichuan and Chongqing

- **Airports** Arrive at Chengdu Shuangliu airport, and depart from Yichang Sanxia.
- **Transport** The first part of this tour is most easily done by car, though there are bus services along the same route. The stretch from Chongqing to Yichang is covered by boat.
- **Booking ahead** Chongqing: Three Gorges Cruise.

This week-long itinerary covers an area that is home to giant pandas, dense bamboo forests, and mouth-numbingly spicy food, as well as many important historic sights.

Day 1: Chengdu

Sichuan's provincial capital, **Chengdu** (pp364–5) is large but pleasant, with an abundance of excellent, if spicy, food. Work up an appetite with a visit to the **Panda Breeding Center** (p366) in the city's northeast, which breeds both red and giant pandas. Next, take a trip to the **Sanxingdui Museum** (p366), full of exquisite archaeological finds unearthed nearby.

To extend your trip...

Take a short flight north to see the stunning scenery of **Huanglong** (p375) and UNESCO World Heritage site **Jiuzhai Gou** (p376).



Red panda relaxing at the Panda Breeding Center just outside of Chengdu

Day 2: Huanglong Xi and Le Shan

The tiny historic village of **Huanglong Xi** (p374) is a popular film location and an interesting place to break the journey from Chengdu to Le Shan. Carved in the 8th century, the 230-ft (71-m) high **Le Shan Buddha** (pp370–71) watches serenely over the treacherous confluence of three rivers. Descend from his ears to his toes on a steep staircase, or take a boat ride along the river to view the statue from the water.

To extend your trip...

Travel to the holy mountain of **Emei Shan** (pp368–9), and spend two days hiking through the forests on the mountain's flanks, staying in monasteries en route.

Day 3: Zigong and Dazu

Drive through verdant Sichuanese farmland – this region is known as “China’s rice bowl” due to the land’s ability to produce four rice crops each

year – to **Zigong** (p361), a longtime salt-mining town dotted with Qing-dynasty guildhalls and temples. Continue on to **Dazu** (pp362–3) and the Baoding Shan grottoes, which house a collection of lively, realistic carvings dating from the Tang dynasty.

Day 4: Chongqing

Return to city life in **Chongqing** (pp356–7), a rapidly expanding port on the banks of the Yangzi. Explore the historic sights in the center, then try one of Chongqing’s most famous dishes, hotpot. Head to the **Chaotian Men** docks (p356) to board the Three Gorges cruise.

Days 5–7: Three Gorges Cruise

During the three-day cruise from Chongqing through the **Three Gorges** (pp358–60) to **Yichang** (p274), you can take in beautiful scenery and see the **Three Gorges Dam** (pp274–5). Stops depend on the type of cruise, but a visit to the **Mini Three Gorges** (p359) or **Shennong Xi** (p360) is highly recommended.



Tourist boats navigating the Mini Three Gorges along the Yangzi River

Two Weeks on the Silk Road

- **Airports** Arrive at Xi'an's Xianyang Airport, and depart from Kashgar Airport.
- **Transport** The distances covered are huge, so train travel in a sleeper berth is the most interesting and comfortable option – the scenery is wonderful. There are domestic airports in every overnight stop on this route. Local excursions are best made by hired car and driver, or by bus.
- **Booking ahead** Book all train tickets in advance, since services throughout the northwest get booked up well ahead of time.

This trip will take you along the Chinese section of the Silk Road, from the ancient imperial capital of Xi'an to the remote desert city of Kashgar.

Days 1 and 2: Xi'an

China's capital for 11 dynasties, **Xi'an** (pp168–76) has a wealth of important historical sights. Start at the wonderful **Shaanxi History Museum** (pp172–3) for an overview of the region's history, before moving on to see the world-famous **Terracotta Army** (pp174–5), where hundreds of life-size terracotta figures still stand to attention more than two millennia after their burial in the tomb of China's first emperor. Take the time to explore Xi'an's religious sights, from the **Great Goose**



Jiayuguan on the Great Wall – the last outpost of the Chinese Empire

Pagoda (p170), originally built to house Buddhist scriptures, to the **Great Mosque** (p169) and the fascinating Muslim Quarter.

Day 3: Maiji Shan

Spectacular **Maiji Shan** (pp484–5) is home to one of China's most important collections of Buddhist sculptures and paintings. Precipitous stairways and balconies link the caves in the sandstone cliff face, with the largest sculptures visible across the valley.

Day 4: Lanzhou

Gansu's industrial provincial capital, **Lanzhou** (pp488–9) is a key transport link between the

Chinese heartlands and the arid northwest. The city was an important stop on the Silk Road. Now home to the excellent **Gansu Provincial Museum** (p489), it's worth taking time to stroll along the banks of the silt-laden Yellow River, which flows through the city.

To extend your trip...

Head south to the Tibetan town of **Xiahe** (p486), and watch Gelugpa monks praying at the beautiful **Labrang Monastery** (p487).

Days 5 and 6: Jiayuguan

At the western end of the Great Wall, **Jiayuguan** (p494) was historically the last outpost of the Chinese Empire. Climb the ramparts of **Jiayuguan Fort** (pp496–7), which dominates the narrow plain between two mountain ranges. Built in 1372, the fort controlled the only viable route between China and the oases of Central Asia and was of vital strategic importance. In the desert around Jiayuguan are a number of interesting Great Wall-related sites, including the **Great Wall Museum** and **Xuanbi Changcheng** (p494).



The Terracotta Army standing to attention in Xi'an



Silk fabrics being offered for sale at the Sunday market in Kashgar, Xinjiang province

Days 7 and 8: Dunhuang

A small oasis town, **Dunhuang** (p498) has two major draws for visitors. Most famously, the town is close to the **Mogao Caves** (pp501), a fabulous collection of centuries-old cave paintings and statues that have survived thanks to Dunhuang's arid climate. Less well known is the stunning desert scenery just south of the town, at **Mingsha Shan** (p498), where sand dunes several hundred feet high loom over the edge of the oasis.

Days 9 and 10: Turpan

While modern-day **Turpan** (pp508–9) is a sleepy agricultural town that produces the sweetest grapes in China, echoes of a more vibrant past can be found in the nearby ruins of **Jiaohe** (p508) and **Gaochang** (p509), both of which were abandoned to the desert sands over 500 years ago. If you visit during the summer, Turpan's intense heat may mean that you want to do nothing more than sip cooling drinks beneath the grape vines.

Day 11: Ürümqi

Capital of Xinjiang, **Ürümqi** (p510) is an interesting modern city, where Han, Uighur, and other ethnic minority cultures mingle; **Xinjiang Provincial Museum** (p510) has an excellent exhibit on the region's minorities, as well as a collection of preserved corpses found in Xinjiang's desert sands. The city

is low on tourist attractions, but the parks, streets, and bazaars still provide plenty of interest.

To extend your trip...

With its forested mountains, **Tian Chi** (p510) offers a respite from northwest China's arid landscape.

Day 12: Kuqa

Until the 8th century, **Kuqa** (p513) was a thriving center of Buddhist scholarship. The town today is small and busy, and the strongly Uighur western end of town is a fascinating place to wander. It's also worth making the effort to visit the ruins of Subashi or the **Thousand Buddha Caves** (both p513), both located outside the city.

Days 13–14: Kashgar

At the foot of the Pamirs, **Kashgar** (pp514–15) only became part of the Chinese empire in the 18th century, and the different influences are very clear. Try to arrive in time for the Sunday market, when everything from camels to Iranian saffron goes on sale and as many as 20,000 people descend on the city. While the Kashgar Old Town has been redeveloped, it still retains plenty of charm, with the call to prayer booming out from the **Id Kah Mosque** (p514) and the scent of roasting lamb filling the air. Of the nearby sights, the **Aba Khoja Mausoleum** (pp516–17) is the most interesting and a beautiful example of Islamic architecture on the edge of China.



Beautiful wall paintings in the Mogao Caves near the small town of Dunhuang

Putting China on the Map

Stretching over 50 degrees of latitude and covering 3.7 million sq miles (9.6 million sq km) of land, the People's Republic of China is one of the largest countries in the world with over 20 per cent of the planet's population. It is bordered by 14 countries and has a 12,400-mile (20,000-km) long Pacific coastline. The capital, Beijing, with 20 million inhabitants, is an autonomous (self-governing) municipality.







A PORTRAIT OF CHINA

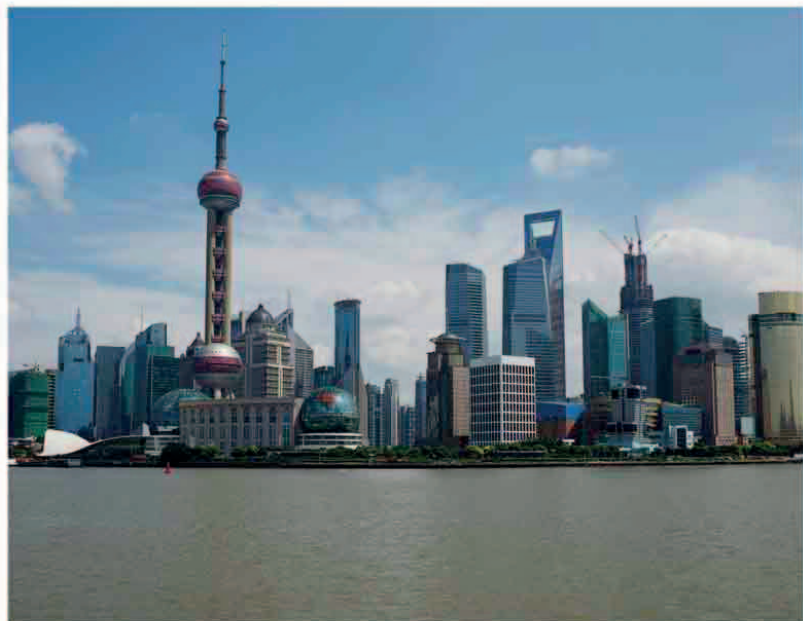
Thirty years after the late Deng Xiaoping's "reform and opening" policy allowed foreign travelers back into China, the country remains largely as mysterious and undiscovered as it was in the 19th century, when gunboat diplomacy by foreign superpowers forced the last tottering dynasty to open up the country to foreign trade and exploration.

Drawn by this air of mystery, the number of visitors to China has been rising rapidly. Not one visitor will fail to be impressed by the splendor of China's greatest sights.

The Great Wall has been completely rebuilt in parts in modern times, but its dizzying loops across the horizon still leave most visitors lost for words. The Forbidden City, at the heart of Beijing, draws crowds that make its original majesty hard to imagine, but the labyrinth of side passages still leaves the more inquisitive visitor spellbound. Although images of Xi'an's Terracotta Warriors are familiar, nothing prepares visitors for coming face to face with an army of thousands. China may not be quite the rapidly modernizing economic success of investment fable,

but nor is it the medieval backwater of travelers' tales – the truth lies somewhere in between. Not far from the excitement and wealth of the shiny, high-rise cities, water buffalo pull the plow, and donkey carts are still a popular form of transport.

The success of the 2008 Olympics was a defining moment for China in terms of presenting the results of its economic development to the world and the ability to host a huge global event. The legacy of the Games was given added poignancy by the global economy crashing just weeks after. In the years since, China has emerged as a bona fide commercial pillar, not just for Asia but for the world, and a geo-strategic player that is edging ever closer to superpower status.



The high-rise skyline of Pudong, Shanghai – a symbol of China's booming prosperity

◀ Princess Iron Fan, a popular character in Chinese opera



The dizzying, hill-hugging loops of the Great Wall of China

Modern China

China's vast population, despite famines and civil wars, has grown from 400 million to approximately 1.35 billion in less than a century. This increase has driven a boom in consumerism, most evident in the cities where advertising hoardings for coffee, computers, and the latest fashions line streets of shops selling fast food, phones, and face-lifts.

Shanghai is said to represent the new entrepreneurial China, and visitors will immediately notice the billboards, the towers, and the giant HDTV screens on the sides of shiny malls. Urban Shanghai received a massive facelift in preparation for the 2010 World Expo, and scores of office blocks, roads, and metro

lines were built. However, Shanghai is only one city, 70% of the Chinese people work in agriculture, and the majority of commercial enterprises are still in state ownership or have state majority shareholdings.

There has been obvious, rapid economic development – luxury hotels, convenient public transport, and excellent restaurants. However, these welcome refinements have been tempered for the visitor by the destruction of traditional housing for the construction of highways soon choked with traffic. And yet for some people this commercialism has provided the disposable income to fund a return to traditional hobbies and pastimes.



Traditional courtyard housing in Lijiang, southwest China

Today, former occupants of crumbling courtyard houses may find themselves exiled to unfinished towers in the suburbs, but in the spaces between the blocks, they've revived the tradition of walking their snuffling Pekinese. Song-birds flutter and call from delicate bamboo cages while their owners sit and chat. On bridges over ring roads, old men gather to fly colorful kites – now made from supermarket shopping bags.

Growing Too Fast?

As population growth drives a consumer boom, China's energy needs are fast outstripping its capacity and a major expansion of its network of coal-fired generating stations is planned. But China is already the planet's biggest polluter – in many cities the atmosphere is thick enough to touch.

With few opportunities for work in the countryside, tens of millions are moving to the cities in search of a better life. Living in poor conditions and often left unpaid after building the new towers, they send whatever they can to families back home. Others staff the restaurants and run a million small businesses from shoe-shining to knife-sharpening. If your taxi driver doesn't know where he's going, it's often because he hasn't been in town long.

Those better off in the city blame the migrants for the rise in urban crime (although most countries would envy China's crime figures), but complain when the services they provide vanish at Chinese New Year due to the workers returning home for the holiday.



International architecture on the Bund, Shanghai

Politics

The end of the 20th century saw communist regimes toppled across Europe, but the present government has made it clear that there will be no such change in China in the near future, though moves will be made to stem political corruption. Politics, while almost invisible to visitors, still enters every aspect of life, including the training of tour guides to provide cultural and historical information that supports the view of China the Party wishes to promote.



The Hong Kong rush hour – much the same as in any international metropolis



Cyclists on the busy Dong Si Bei Dajie, Beijing

The Chinese are removed from politics, because as individuals they can make little difference. Dissatisfaction is widespread, particularly with regards to corruption, pollution, environmental degradation, and the expensive, rising cost of living. The global recession has hit certain sectors, such as manufacturing, very hard, and unemployment is rising.

Family Life

Eight out of ten of the parents of the current generation of twenty-year-olds had their spouses chosen and approved by their work unit, but today's urban youth experiment early, live together outside marriage (until recently still illegal), and try a few partners before settling down.

Divorce, unheard of until the end of the last century, is now common, and is attributed to an increase in work demands and extra-marital affairs. Attitudes to children, too, are changing.

There are hints that the one-child policy, long breached by anyone with connections or cash, may be relaxed a little. And there are signs that many members of the urban middle class, although still a tiny percentage of the total population, wish to enjoy the treats they can now afford rather than have children. While 20 years ago it was considered fortunate to own a bicycle, now aspiring, young urbanites can work towards owning a car and an apartment.



Minority mother and child

Unified by Language

The whole nation may have felt proud when Yang Liwei became the country's first astronaut in 2003, heralding China's entry to the exclusive club of space nations. The government likes to use such occasions to promote Han unity – "Han" is the name the Chinese majority use for themselves, as opposed to the 50 or so officially recognized minorities within China's borders (see pp30–31). There's been a tendency to treat these minorities as unpredictable pets, and their mostly colorful costumes and traditional festivals have been put at the forefront of tourism promotion in recent years. It may not be ideal but it is a great improvement on the forced assimilation of past times.



Popstars performing an outdoor concert in Beijing

Almost everyone is educated in Mandarin (*Putonghua*), the official language of China, but there are five completely different regional versions of Chinese, and a strong sense of local culture and tradition goes with them.

The Chinese people's common love of food also helps differentiate them, with preferences for spicy, vinegary, sweet, and other flavors being distributed geographically. Visitors to Sichuan and Yunnan will find the locals rightly proud of their uniquely fiery cuisine, while those visiting Guangdong and Guangxi will be astonished at the subtlety and delicacy of Cantonese food.

Culture and Religion

While traditional opera is now largely confined to shows for foreign tourists, modern art, films, and popular music have all flourished. Not all of it is good by any means but art galleries now feature on tourist itineraries, resident students crowd bars to hear Chinese punk bands, and millions around the world flock to see big-budget martial arts epics.

Religion and superstition are making a small come-back which the government regards warily – it fears organizations of any kind not directly under its control. Many people are still struggling to cope with the end of government-organized



A space nation – China's first astronaut Yang Liwei

everything, and for some the structure of organized religion provides a substitute. There may be many more opportunities to start businesses and make money, and all kinds of employment that simply didn't exist before Deng Xiaoping's reform policy kick-started the economy, but jobs no longer come with housing, healthcare, or any guarantees they'll last.

But the Chinese are used to turbulence, and are incredibly stoic about it. Their attitude to visitors varies from the studied indifference of the smart metropolitans, to the close interest in foreign wallets of the tourist touts, via frank curiosity, and the casual warmth and generosity of everyday folk.



China's modern consumer society – a smart shopping mall in Xi Dan, Beijing

Landscape and Wildlife – West

The west of China is made up of a high, arid mountain plateau and, further north, a harsh, dry desert. These areas are not suited to agriculture and therefore sparsely populated by humans – only specialist animals that have adapted to the conditions survive here. At the eastern edge of the Tibetan plateau lie the mountains and wooded hills of central and west China, home to pockets of bamboo forest – the habitat of one of China's most famous and unique animals, the giant panda. Watered by rivers of melted snow from Tibet, the forests are also home to a great number of other animals, trees, and especially beautiful flowers (see pp350–51).



Key

- ① Tibetan High Plateau
- ② Mountains of Central & West
- ③ Deserts of North & Northwest
- ④ Bamboo Forest



Tibetan High Plateau

The vast, rocky Qinghai-Tibet Plateau lies between the Kunlun Mountains in the north, the Karakoram in the west and the Himalayas to the south. The altitude averages 15,994 ft (4,875 m), making it the world's highest plateau.



The Blue poppy is one of the most famous Himalayan flowers. About 15 species of this genus (*Meconopsis*) grow in Yunnan and Tibet, and are used in traditional medicine.

The Himalayan blue sheep (*Pseudois nayaur*) is well adapted to the high crags of western China, where it is found mainly in Tibet, Sichuan, and Yunnan.



Snow leopards (*Panthera (Uncia) uncia*) have thick fur to protect them. Though protected, they are still poached for their valuable pelts.



Mountains of Central & West China

The central ranges have large areas of natural forest habitats, and are major wildlife refuges. Covering over 20,000 sq miles (52,000 sq km), they are home to many species, including the endangered golden monkey (*Rhinopithecus*).

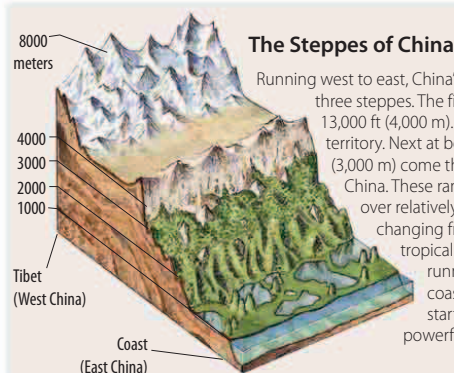


Rhesus macaques (*Macaca mulatta*) are common in Chinese forests. Though able to fend for themselves, they are used to people, and can be a nuisance begging for food.

Chinese fir (*Cunninghamia lanceolata*) is a common conifer, found typically in mixed needle-leaved-broadleaved forests in high sub-tropical sites.



The silver pheasant (*Lophura nycthemera*) is one of China's most beautiful birds. It is common in evergreen forests and bamboo thickets in southern and eastern areas.



Running west to east, China's landscape is said to form a series of three steppes. The first is the Tibetan Plateau, most of it over 13,000 ft (4,000 m). This spans a third of the width of China's territory. Next at between 5,000 ft (1,500 m) and 10,000 ft (3,000 m) come the mountains of Sichuan and central China. These ranges show great changes in vegetation over relatively short distances, in some places changing from high altitude frozen desert to near tropical forest. Lastly come the fertile lowlands running from 5,000 ft (1,500 m) down to the coast. It is easy to see how China's rivers starting on the Tibetan Plateau become so powerful on their course east to the coast.



Deserts of North & Northwest

Deserts cover about 20% of China's landmass – mainly in the northwest. This is a challenging environment and plants and animals adapted to the deserts are few: reptiles and small rodents such as jerboas predominate.

Only about 600 of the two-humped Bactrian camel (*Camelus bactrianus*) survive in the deserts of China.



Wormwoods (*Artemisia* spp.) are typical low shrubs of dry steppe communities and can tolerate periodic droughts and even salty soils.



The deserts of northern China, close to Mongolia, are the habitat of the rare goitered gazelle (*Gazella subgutturosa*); despite its rarity it is still targeted by trophy hunters.



Bamboo Forest

China has some 500 species of bamboo covering about 3% of the total forest area. They are found in 18 provinces and are not only a vital habitat for wildlife, but with their almost indestructible culms (stems), are also a valuable resource.

Tall forests of muso bamboo (*Phyllostachys pubescens*) are managed to provide a sustainable crop of culms, which local people use in many ways (see p417).



Golden pheasant (*Chrysolophus pictus*) is native to scrubby hillsides and forests in central southern China, from 2,625–8,200 ft (800–2,500 m).

The giant panda (*Ailuropoda melanoleuca*), symbol of conservation, is slowly increasing in forest reserves in central and western China.



Landscape & Wildlife – East

China has the most diverse flora and fauna of any country in the temperate zone, with around 30,000 plant species, 500 mammal species, and 1,200 bird species. Although much of lowland China has been intensively cultivated for centuries, there still remains vast areas of important wild habitat including 29 million acres (12 million hectares) of lakes, and 31 million acres (13 million hectares) of marsh, bog, and coastal saltmarsh. The rugged nature of northeast China's borderlands has prevented the loss of its forest to agriculture, and, despite heavy logging, it is the largest area of forest in China. The accessibility of the steppe, however, has seen much of it lost to agriculture.



Key

- ⑤ Steppe Grasslands
- ⑥ Forests of Northeast China
- ⑦ Fertile Lowlands
- ⑧ Wetlands & Coasts
- ⑨ Jungle



Steppe Grassland

The specialized grasses and drought resistant herbs of the steppe are an important source of food to the nomadic herders. In addition, their roots hold together the topsoil helping prevent erosion and desertification. Heavy cultivation in recent years has led to sandstorms in Beijing.



The steppe cat (*Felis libyca*) is common in the shrubby steppe habitats of the Heavenly Mountains (Tian Shan) of the northwest. It feeds on small mammals, birds, and reptiles.

The great bustard (*Otis tarda*) is, at up to 33 lb (15 kg), the heaviest flying bird. It nests in the open, on hummocks of dry grass.



The saiga antelope (*Saiga tatarica*) is one of the strangest steppe creatures. Its large nose filters dust and heats the air it breathes.



Forests of Northeast China

Forests here consist mainly of coniferous trees. Along with the evergreen fir, spruce, and pine, the deciduous larch is also common. To the south of these forest regions are mixed temperate broadleaf forests with oaks and birch prominent.



Asiatic black bears (*Ursus thibetanus*) are found in many regions – even as far south as Hainan. In colder areas they hibernate in winter.

The false acacia (*Robinia pseudoacacia*), though native to eastern North America, has been extensively planted in China.



The beautiful azure-winged magpie (*Cyanopica cyana*) is a sociable species, moving in noisy flocks through the trees of forests and parks.

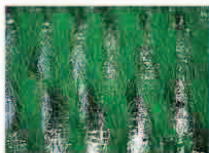
Under Threat

Pollution of the air, soil, and waterways, is threatening many of China's delicate environments, special animals, and plants, especially when faced with large building projects like the Three Gorges Dam. In addition, the use of rare animals in medicinal "remedies" means that many species face extinction from poaching. However, the Chinese government is now paying some attention to conservation and reports that the giant panda, great crested ibis, and Chinese alligator are all increasing in numbers thanks to the protection of their habitat and improved ecosystems. Nevertheless there is still a long way to go.



Fertile Lowlands

Intensively cultivated and denuded of natural vegetation, the huge lowland flood-plains of major rivers, notably the Yellow and Yangzi, are a seemingly endless patchwork of fields. Grain crops, dominated by rice, are broken up by ponds with fish, ducks, and frogs.



Rice fields or paddies occupy much of the fertile lowlands and hillsides in central and southern China.

The long-tailed shrike (*Lanius schach*), often seen watching from a roadside wire or pole, is common in eastern and southern China.



Water Buffalo (*Bubalus arnee*) are beasts of burden and used for plowing. They are at home in the muddy wet paddy fields of the south.



Jungle

Tropical forests occur in the deep south of China – mainly on the island of Hainan, and also the basins of Yunnan. Many forests are secondary, or have been replaced through felling and grazing by a kind of savanna or by plantations, especially of rubber.



Wetlands and Coasts

Wetlands are some of the country's most diverse ecosystems, being prime habitats for rare or endemic plants and animals. The lakes and flooded river valleys are also vital staging posts for migrating birds, such as waterfowl and species of endangered crane.

The water arum (*Calla palustris*) grows around marshes and bogs in the northeast at altitudes of up to 3,600 ft (1,100m).



The mandarin duck (*Aix galericulata*) looks exotic and is a tree-hole nester, found mainly along wooded streams in the northeast.

Hawksbill turtles

(*Eretmochelys imbricata*) still breed on a few beaches along the southern tropical coast but are at risk from humans.



China's Peoples

There are about 55 different ethnic minorities in China, each with their own distinctive customs, costumes and, in many cases, languages. Though rich in culture, and varied, together they make up only about seven percent of the population, with the main group, known as Han Chinese, accounting for the rest. Modernization of society and intermarriage are inevitably leading to a dilution of these differences, but many groups remain proud of their heritage and retain their traditional beliefs and customs. Many have beautiful styles of dress (especially the women), and these costumes and cultures have become a major attraction to visitors, who bring trade to communities.



Northwest

A variety of mostly Islamic people inhabit this area dominated by desert, semi-desert, and mountains. The Uighur are the dominant minority and have their own Autonomous Region. Other groups include the Hui, Kazakhs, Kyrgyz, Uzbeks, Tajiks, and Tatars.



Southwest

The Tibetan plateau is home to more than 4.5 million Tibetans. With around 20 different minorities the southwest of China has the most ethnic diversity. The Yi, the largest group in this region (6.6 million), live in Sichuan, Yunnan, and Guizhou.

There are around 8 million Uighur, a Muslim people with a language close to Turkish. They inhabit Xinjiang Province in China's far northwest.



Over 1 million Kazakh

Muslims live in the north of Xinjiang Province. Renowned for their horsemanship, the Kazakhs center their lives around their precious horses and farming.



Naxi of Lijiang have strong traditions and are guardians of an ancient script.

Bai people live mainly in Sichuan, Yunnan, Guizhou, and Hunan, and number some 1.6 million.

Their capital is Dali (Yunnan). Although traditionally farmers and fishermen, their colorful costumes attract a lot of tourism.



The Dai and Hani of

Xishuangbanna in southern Yunnan in the tropical south are mainly Buddhist farmers, and have a deep respect for the natural world.

Northeast

As well as the Mongolians, there are a few small groups of minorities in the northeast. These include about a few thousand Daur as well as the Oroqen, Hezhen and Ewenki. There are also around 2 million Koreans (Chaoxian) while the largest group are the Manchu, with about 9.8 million.



The Muslim Hui have their own so-called Autonomous Region of Ningxia but have established communities in cities across China.



The Oroqen is one of China's smallest minority, with a population of about 7,000. They live mainly in Inner Mongolia and in Heilongjiang Province. They live in conical houses with birch bark or skin roofs, supported by poles (see p461).

Central & East

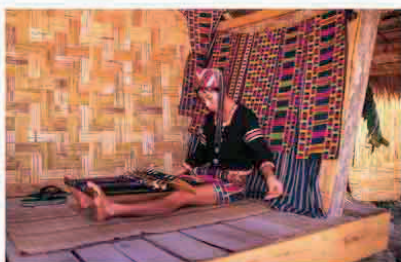
The 630,000 She live mainly in Fujian and Zhejiang Provinces. They are farmers, with a strong artistic tradition using bamboo. Another small group, the Gaoshan (about 400,000) are from Taiwan, but many have settled on the eastern mainland, notably in Fujian Province.



The Tujia of Hunan, Hubei and Sichuan have a history stretching back over 2,000 years. There are about 5.7 million Tujia.

South

The largest minority in China is the Zhuang (15.5 million), who live mainly in their Autonomous Region of Guangxi, famous for the dramatic dragon-back rice terraces of Longsheng. They have linguistic and cultural links with the Dai who are ethnically related to Thai peoples. Renowned for their crafts and colorful festivals (see pp412–15), the Miao (7.4 million) inhabit many areas in the southern provinces.



There are 2.1 million Yao people.

The 1.1 million Li who inhabit the tropical island of Hainan are best known for their traditional weaving skills, producing colorful woven articles.

Language and Script

The Chinese script can be traced back to the oracle bones of the Shang dynasty (16th–11th centuries BC) that were inscribed with symbols representing words and used for divination. Despite changes brought about by different writing materials, Chinese characters have remained remarkably consistent. It is said that to read a newspaper takes knowledge of at least 3,000 characters but an educated person would be expected to know over 5,000. Since 1913 the official spoken language has been *Putonghua* (Mandarin) but there are many regional dialects. Although people from different parts of China may not be able to understand each other, they can use a shared written script.

A Beautiful Script

Writing was elevated to an art form considered on a par with painting as a visual aesthetic (see pp44–5). As the process changed from inscribing bone, brass or stone to using a brush on silk and paper, a more fluid writing style became possible.



Seal, in red cinnabar – this may be a name seal, or inscribed with other characters.

Oracle bones display China's first examples of seal script. Questions were inscribed on the bones which were then burnt – the way cracks divided the inscriptions was deemed significant.

Bamboo slats were used from around the 5th century BC. These were tied together to make the earliest type of books. Used for administrative and philosophical texts, the script runs from top to bottom.



The Diamond Sutra (AD 868) is the world's first block-printed book to bear a date. Printing was probably invented about a century earlier. Movable block printing was developed in the 11th century but had less social impact than in Europe because of the thousands of symbols required.



Cang Jie, minister of the legendary Yellow Emperor, was supposedly inspired to invent the Chinese script one morning after seeing bird and animal tracks in the snow.



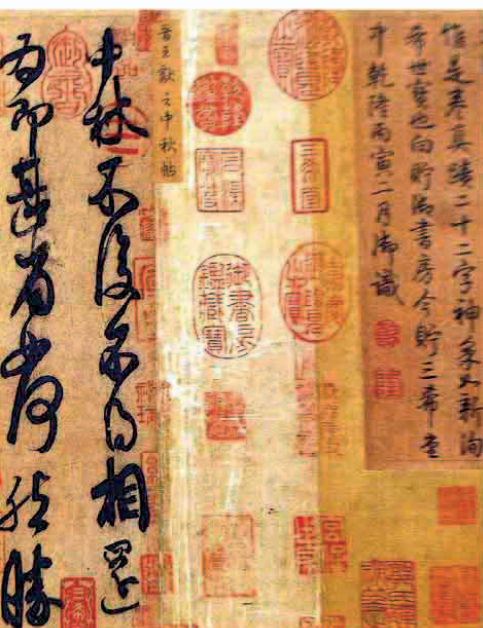
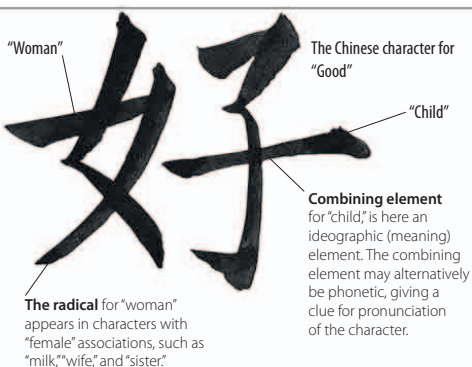
Writing materials were silk, stone, or paper, which was first invented around the 2nd century BC.

Cursive script (caoshu) has strokes that run into each other. Fluid and dynamic, it allows for great expressiveness.



Chinese Characters

May be composed of pictographic, ideographic and phonetic elements. The radical (or root), an element that appears on the left or at the top of a character, usually gives a clue as to sense. Here, in the character for "good," pronounced "hao," the radical combines with another meaning element "child." The concept, therefore, is that "woman" plus "child" equals "good."



Pinyin is a Romanization system that was introduced in 1956. While Pinyin will never replace the character forms, it is an easier method for children to start learning the language and useful for input to computers.

Styles of Calligraphy

𩺰

Zhuanshu, or seal script, was developed during the Zhou era and used for engraved inscriptions.

魚

Lishu, or clerical script, probably evolved during the Han era and was used for stone inscriptions.

魚

Kaishu, or regular script, developed from Lishu after the Han era, is the basis of modern type.

魚

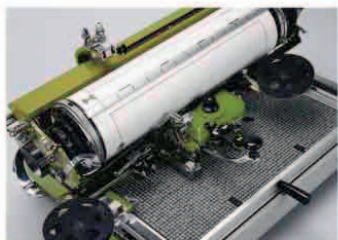
Cao shu, or cursive script, literally grass script, has strokes that are reduced to abstract curves or dots.

魚

Xingshu, or running script, has strokes that run together, and is a semicursive script.

魚

Simplified script was introduced in 1956 to make it easier for peasants to learn to read.



Chinese typewriters were very difficult to use. The typist had to find each character in a tray of thousands. Computers have made typing Simplified script much easier – the user types in the Pinyin and gets a sub-menu of several possible characters.

Chinese Literature

Dating back to the sixth century BC, the earliest Chinese texts were primarily philosophic, such as the Confucian *Analects* and Daoist *Daode Jing*. History as a literary genre was not established until the Han period (206 BC–AD 220) with Sima qian's *Historical Records*; thereafter each dynasty wrote a history of the preceding one. As for the novel, a fully fledged Chinese example did not appear until the Ming period (1368–1644) and was developed during the Qing dynasty until it was eventually stifled by Communism. Since the 1980s Chinese authors have been allowed greater freedom of expression, although, in 2000, news of exiled writer Gao Xingjian's Nobel Prize for Literature was suppressed.



Confucius, author of the *Analects*, and his disciples

Classics

Post-Qin dynasty, once Confucianism had become the state orthodoxy, five early works were canonized as the Five Classics: the *Book of Changes*, *Book of Documents*, *Book of Songs*, *Spring and Autumn Annals* and *Book of Ritual*. These books were established as the basis for Chinese education.



The **scholar class or literati** achieved the status of government official through success in the civil service examinations, based on detailed knowledge of the Classics and accomplishment in writing.



Tang Poets

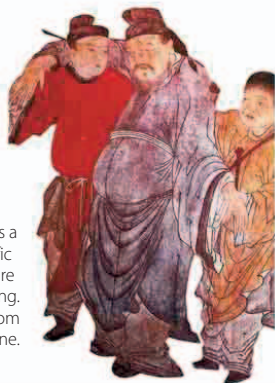
With early beginnings in the *Book of Songs* and *Elegies of Chu*, Chinese poetry reached its height more than twelve hundred years later in the Tang period (618–907). The two greatest Tang poets are considered to be Du Fu and Li Bai. Others include the Buddhist Wang Wei, also 8th-century, and slightly later Bai Juyi (772–846).



Du Fu (AD c.712–770) wrote of suffering in war, as well as of family life. His keynote is compassion, considered a Confucian virtue. His poems display enormous erudition.

Li Bai (AD c.701–761) was a more ebullient figure. A prolific poet, his favorite subjects were moon gazing and carousing. The theme of freedom from constraint is a Daoist one.

Jia Baoyu prefers to flirt with the women rather than obey his father and study hard to advance his career.



Epic Novels

In the Ming era, the novel developed from folk tales and myths into classics such as *Journey to the West*, *Romance of the Three Kingdoms* and *The Water Margin* – a tale of the heroic fight against corruption. Later, the Qing novels used a more elevated language and subtle characterization, culminating in the romantic novel, *Dream of the Red Chamber*. These novels contain many characters that reoccur in other cultural contexts from Beijing Opera to popular television serials and films.



Guandi, God of War, derives from Guan Yu, a general of the state of Shu, portrayed in *Romance of the Three Kingdoms*. This novel was based on historical figures from the Three Kingdoms Era (AD 220–80). A symbol for justice, honesty, and integrity, his figurines are found in temples throughout China.



Journey to the West is a comic fantasy based on the pilgrimage to India of the Buddhist monk Xuanzang. The late Ming novel centers on Monkey, one of the monk's companions who represents carefree genius, bravery, and loyalty.

Dream of the Red Chamber

Perhaps the greatest Chinese novel, this portrays the decline of an aristocratic Qing household. Infused with a Daoist sense of transcendence, it focuses on the life and loves of the idle Jia Baoyu and twelve perceptively drawn female characters.

20th Century

In the early 20th century, fiction writers and playwrights addressed social issues in a new realist style. However Communism demanded revolutionary themes. After the persecution of writers during the Cultural Revolution (see pp70–71), experimental forms and styles gradually emerged. However, the books of Chinese authors may still be banned if they are openly critical of the government or are “spiritual pollutants”; nevertheless pirated versions are often widely available.



Mo Yan is a post-Cultural Revolution fiction writer. Best known for his novel *Red Sorghum* (1986), made into a major film, he writes in a rich style, often graphic, fantastic, and violent.



Lu Xun, early 20th-century writer of short stories and novellas, is known as the father of modern Chinese literature. His realist, satirical style is indebted to such writers as Dickens. He is renowned for his humorous depiction of Ah Q, an illiterate but enthusiastic peasant, done down by the forces of convention.

Religion and Philosophy

Traditionally, the three strands in Chinese religion and philosophy are Confucianism, Daoism, and Buddhism. An eclectic approach to religion allows the three to coexist, often within a single temple. Confucianism, the first to gain real influence, can be seen as a manifestation of the public, socially responsible self. Daoism represents a personal and wilder side; its emphasis on the relativity of things contrasts with Confucian concern for approved roles. Buddhism, a foreign import, is spiritual and otherworldly, offering an alternative to Chinese pragmatism. During the Cultural Revolution, religion was outlawed as contrary to Communist ideas. Today, people are largely able to express their beliefs.

Confucianism

Originated by Confucius (551–479 BC) and developed by later thinkers, Confucianism advocates a structured society in which people are bound to each other by the moral ties of the five familial relationships: parent-child, ruler-subject, brother-brother, husband-wife, and friend-friend. In Imperial China, Confucianism was the philosophy of the elite scholar-gentleman class. For much of the Communist era, it was reviled as a reactionary philosophy linked to the former ruling aristocracy.



Filial piety, or *xiao*, another Confucian precept, consists of obedience to and reverence for one's parents, and by extension respect for other family members and one's ruler.



The paying of respects to one's ancestors is based on filial piety and runs throughout Chinese culture. During the Qing Ming festival in April, Chinese traditionally clean and upkeep their ancestors' tombs.



Scholars collated the Confucian Classics including the *Lunyu* (*Analects*), a series of Confucius's sayings, well after his death. The Classics were the basis of education until 1912.



Laozi, Buddha, and Confucius



The birth of Confucius is celebrated in the philosopher's home town of Qufu (see pp148–9) in late September. Many thousands of his descendants, all surnamed Kong, still live in the city.



Daoism

Strongly linked with early folk beliefs, Daoism incorporates the traditional concepts of an ordered universe, *yin* and *yang*, and directed energy, *qi* (see pp38–9). Over time, Daoism developed into a complex religion with an extensive pantheon. Daoist philosophy encourages following one's intuition and following the grain of the universe by living in accordance with the Dao.



Laozi, the founder of Daoism, is a shadowy figure, who may have lived in the 6th century BC. The *Daode Jing*, which introduces the idea of Dao or the Way that permeates reality, is attributed to him.

Han Xiangzi, one of the Eight Immortals, a popular group of Daoist adepts, is believed to have fallen from a sacred peach tree, which bestowed eternal life. He is usually shown playing a flute.



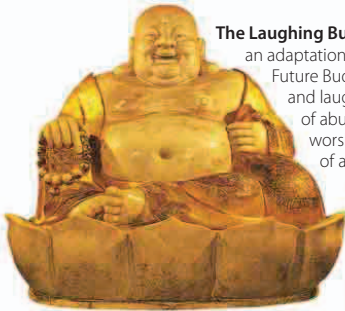
Daoist alchemists aimed to find an elixir for eternal life, winning influence with emperors. Daoism influenced scientific development, and contributed to the discovery of gunpowder in the 9th century.



In "**Peach Blossom Spring**" by Daoist poet Tao Qian, a fisherman chances upon a lost idyllic world and encounters Immortals. Daoist reverence for nature led to the creation of numerous paradises.

Buddhism

In China the Mahayana school of Buddhism, which promises salvation to anyone who seeks it, is followed. Enlightened ones, *bodhisattvas*, remain in this world to help enlighten others. Through deeds and devotion believers gain merit and maintain their connections with the *bodhisattvas*, bringing them closer to nirvana.



The Laughing Buddha, or Milefo, is an adaptation of the Maitreya, the Future Buddha. His large belly and laughing face are signs of abundance and he is worshiped in the hopes of a happy, affluent life.

Luohan or *arhats* are the Buddha's disciples and often appear in temples in groups of 18. Their holiness is thought to enable them to achieve extinction (nirvana) on death.



The Guardian King of the South (left) is coiled by a snake; the King of the North holds a parasol. Kings of the four directions guard the entrance to many temples protecting the main deity from evil influences.



A Buddhist supplicant burns sticks of incense in aid of prayer. Buddhist temples throb with spiritual energy, as worshipers pray and make offerings to gain merit.

The Power of Qi

The Chinese philosophical notion of a cosmic *qi* or breath that permeates the universe dates from the Shang and Zhou periods. *Qi* is regarded as having created the cosmos and the Earth, and given rise to the complementary opposing negative and positive forces of *yin* and *yang*. Every physical change that occurs in the world is seen as a product of the working of *qi*. In the Daoist *Daode Jing*, *qi* is synonymous with *Dao* ("the Way"). The *qi* character (right) represents a bowl of rice with steam, where the rice's power or *qi* is manifested, rising above. The concept of *qi* runs through all areas of Chinese thought: it is a guiding principle in both traditional science and the arts.

Harnessing qi

Qi informs multiple practical and applied fields. When Chinese medicine became formalized during the 2nd century BC, for example, *qi* was established as its central concept. It was seen as the vital substance of living things, circulating in the body through a network of channels or meridians (see p238).



Acupressure and acupuncture rely on the idea of *qi* circulating in the body. A person may suffer from inadequate or excessive *qi*, and the aim is to release or dampen the *qi* as appropriate.

The **cun trigram** is very *yin*. Its attributes are devotion and reception and it is connected to the element of earth.

氣

Chinese character for *qi*, resembling a steaming bowl of rice



Qigong, a practice entailing deep-breathing exercises, is based on the concept of *qi*. Daoists traditionally associated lengthening the breath with lengthening life. Today, *qigong* is used to enhance well-being.

Martial arts emphasize the cultivation of *qi*. Through concentration, practitioners, such as monks of the Shaolin Monastery, perform extraordinary feats of fitness and endurance.



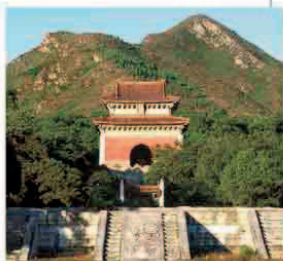


A feng shui practitioner sets up a *bagua* chart and other instruments to trace the flow of *qi* within an office building. *Feng shui* is popular in Hong Kong, where it is less frowned on as a superstitious practice.

Feng Shui

Chinese geomancy, or feng shui ("wind and water"), is based on ideas of *qi*. Feng shui posits that the appropriate layout of a building or room, for example the position of doorways, affects the flow of *qi* and hence the inhabitants' general well-being.

The Ming Tombs (see pp 110–11), constructed for the Ming emperors, were sited and built in accordance with *feng shui*. Evil influences from the north were supposedly ward off by the Jundu Shan mountain range.



The qian trigram, the trigram in which *yang qi* is strongest, consists of three unbroken lines.

The yin-yang symbol represents the interdependency of yin (negative) and yang (positive).

Bagua Chart

Eight *bagua*, or trigrams, ranged around a yin-yang symbol make up the basic *bagua* chart, an attempt to codify the working of *qi*. Each trigram consists of three lines – yin (broken) or yang (unbroken). Together they make up all possible permutations of such sets of lines and describe potential movement between different *qi* states.



The HSBC building on Hong Kong's Statue Square (see p 316) is thought to enjoy outstanding *feng shui*, with harbor views and a large atrium allowing the free flow of *qi*.

Yijing

The Chinese classic, the *Yijing* (I Ching), or Book of Changes, has been consulted as a divination guide book for thousands of years. In it the *bagua* are combined into 64 hexagrams of six yin or yang lines each. The hexagrams represent even more complex states of *qi* than the *bagua*.

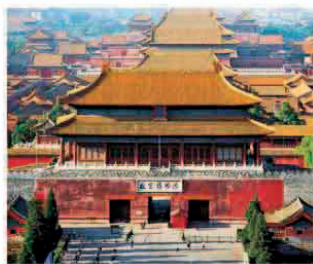
Confucius, in his later years, became very interested in the *Yijing*, and wrote numerous annotations to the text. Here he randomly divides yarrow sticks to create hexagrams and consults the *Yijing* to determine their meaning.



Divination sticks are often consulted nowadays to divine the future. Outside temples in Hong Kong, worshipers can be seen scattering the sticks on the ground. A practiced diviner reads the pattern by picking out *bagua* shapes.

Architecture

For over two thousand years, the Chinese have used the same architectural model for both imperial and religious buildings. This has three elements: a platform, post-and-beam timber frames, and non-loadbearing walls. Standard features of building complexes include a front gate, four-sided enclosures or courtyards, and a series of halls in a linear formation running north. Most Chinese buildings were built of wood, but because wooden buildings tend to catch fire, only a few structures remain; the earliest date from the Tang period.



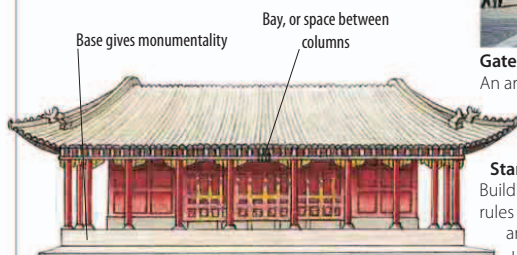
Aerial view of the Forbidden City, showing the traditional linear layout

Hall

In every context, the Chinese hall or *tang* follows the same pattern: a platform of rammed earth or stone, and timber columns arranged in a grid. The front of the hall always has an odd number of bays. Between the columns and beams are brackets (*dougong*), cantilevers that support the structure, allowing the eaves to overhang. The timber is brightly painted, the roof aesthetically curved, and tiled or thatched.



Gate of Heavenly Purity (see p94)
An archetypal Chinese hall, the central doorway and uneven number of bays emphasize the processional element.



Standard Hall

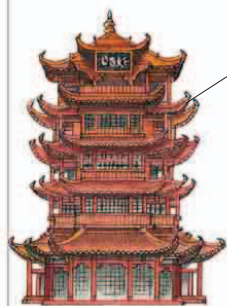
Buildings in China conformed to a set of rules about proportions. This uniform architecture created a sense of identity – useful in a large and disparate country.

Storied Building (LOU) and Storied Pavilion (GE)

Multi-story buildings in China predate pagodas and varied from two-storied private homes to huge seven- or more story towers built to enjoy the scenery. Storied pavilions were used for storage and had doors and windows only at the front. Both types of building kept the standard elements of base, columns, and hanging walls.

Storied Pavilion

These were used for storing important items, such as libraries of Buddhist sutras or colossal statues.

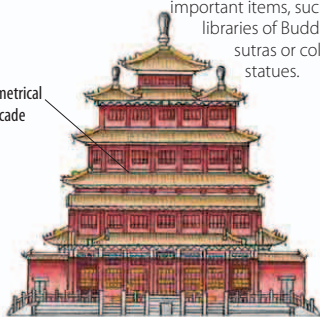


Characteristic "flying eave"

Storied Building

The construction of tall buildings relied heavily on the *dougong* bracket.

Symmetrical facade



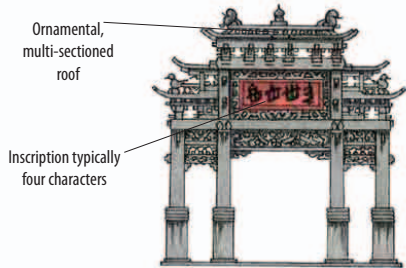
Pagoda

Based on the Indian stupa, the Chinese pagoda, or *ta*, was developed in the first century AD along with the arrival of Buddhism. Multi-storied pagodas appeared in Buddhist temple complexes (although later they often stood on their own) and were often intended to house a religious statue. They were built of brick, stone, or wood (see p171).



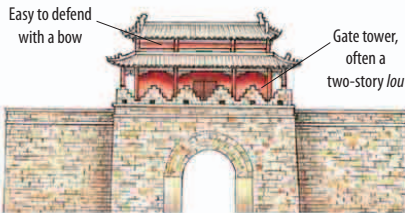
Ornamental Archway

The *pailou*, or *paifang*, is a memorial or decorative archway. Made of wood, brick, or stone, and sometimes with glazed tiles, it often bears an edifying inscription. *Pailou* were erected at crossroads, temples, bridges, government offices, parks, and tombs.



City Walls

Early defensive walls, like other early architectural forms, were made of earth – either pounded hard by pestles or moistened to make a clay and pressed around reed frames. Later walls were often built using brick. City walls were traditionally square, with the main gate to the south. The Chinese for “city” (*cheng*) also means “wall.”



City wall and gate

The towers on top of walls can vary from small buildings to palatial multi-story structures.



Pingyao City Walls

Made of rammed earth and brick, rising 33 ft (10 m) high, the ramparts and watchtowers were an effective defense. The current structure, collapsed in parts, is from the Ming dynasty.

Architectural Details

It is interesting to interpret the architectural detail on Chinese buildings. The use of yellow tiles, for example, was reserved for the emperor. The Nine-Dragon Screen, which occurs in the Forbidden City and elsewhere, is also imperial since the dragon symbolizes the *yang*, or male principle, and by extension the emperor.



Chiwen

Able to douse flames with water, the Chiwen often appears at the end of a roof ridge (see p93) as a protection against fire.

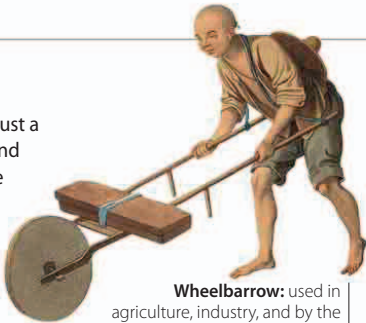


Dougong

A bracket (*dougong*), transmits the load from roof to column. It's a traditionally complex, nail-free, and ornamental construction method.

Chinese Inventions

Printed books, porcelain, silk, umbrellas and kites are just a few of the everyday objects that originated in China and are used today throughout the world. Remarkably, the Chinese developed the technology to produce fine porcelain over 1,000 years before Europe. Philosophy played a part in two of the most famous Chinese discoveries. Seeking the elixir of life, Daoist alchemists stumbled upon gunpowder, while the magnetic compass was developed from an instrument used for geomancy and *feng shui*.



Wheelbarrow: used in agriculture, industry, and by the military. Like the plow, it vastly increased the efficiency of manual workers.

Cast iron: made by lowering the ore's melting point with phosphorus before heating it in very hot blast furnaces that had been developed over hundreds of years of firing pottery.

The decimal system developed alongside the writing system and led to mathematical advances.



The first paper was made from mulberry bark, bamboo, hemp, linen, and silk.

The crossbow had better range, penetration, and accuracy than the standard bow.

2000	1800	1600	1400	1200	1000	800	600	400	200
BC									BC
2000	1800	1600	1400	1200	1000	800	600	400	200



High-fired stoneware: first produced in the Shang dynasty, at the same time as the early glazes that added strength color, and waterproofing.



Kuan or moldboard plow: increased the efficiency of farmers. A cast-iron blade could cut through and plow previously unplowable land.

Great Leaps Forward

Early advances in technology spawned an agricultural revolution in China. Iron-bladed plows increased the amount of land that could be farmed and multiplied its productivity, enabling a larger population to be sustained. Paper, paper money, and printing were key to the efficient administration of a vast populous, centrally controlled state. Increased manpower, organization, and technology advanced industrial production in mining and porcelain factories, for example, as well as boosting China's military might.



Magnetic compass: used for geomancy, the first compasses consisted of a loadstone spoon and bronze plate. Later examples would help Chinese sailors make huge voyages on trading trips.



Porcelain: ceramic technology reached a new peak in the 6th century with the discovery of “true” porcelain; hard, white and translucent, it rings to the touch. Production methods would stay a closely guarded secret, keeping its value for export (see p260).



Stirrup: this increased the efficiency of horses as tools for communication, transportation, and warfare.

Printing: woodblock printing was used to spread Buddhist teachings, and was well-developed by the time of the Diamond Sutra (see p32). In 1041–8, Bi Sheng carved individual characters on pieces of clay, inventing movable block type.



Printing

The discovery of movable type did not really have any impact upon Chinese society, and most printers continued to carve the individual characters into a block. In Europe 400 years later, however, the discovery of movable type revolutionized society. This is because it is much easier to handle the 26 or so different blocks in a Roman alphabet than it is to handle the approximately 3,000 or more characters that are needed for a Chinese newspaper – without even allowing for duplicates. Woodblock carving, therefore, required far fewer resources.

200	400	600	800	1000	1200	1400	1600	1800	2000
AD									AD
200	400	600	800	1000	1200	1400	1600	1800	2000



Paper money: developed by merchants as certificates of exchange. Lighter than coins, bills were soon adopted by the government.

Gun powder: first discovered by necromancers. It was originally used for fireworks and mining and not for warfare until the 8th century.



Cargo ship: designed with compartments, and equipped with fore-and-aft lugsails and stern-post rudders, these multi-masted ships were larger and technically superior to their European counterparts.

Seismometer: invented by Chang Heng. It identified the direction of an earthquake when a ball fell from one of the dragons into a frog's mouth.



The abacus: invented during the Yuan dynasty. Because it is able to perform complex calculations, it is often referred to as the first computer and is still used in China today.

Traditional Arts

The earliest Chinese artifacts were found in royal tombs. These include bronzes, ceramics, and jades from the Shang and Zhou period, as well as terracotta warriors from the Qin period. Of the many rich art forms that subsequently developed in China, painting and pottery are perhaps the most important, and have reached the highest aesthetic level. Other significant art forms include sculpture, notably the Buddhist sculpture of Western China. There are also many distinctive and popular forms of Chinese decorative art.



Ritual bronze tripod from an early royal tomb, decorated with a mythical animal design known as a *taotie*.

Wet and dry ink used to give the detail of the trees.



Textured strokes give the rocks depth.

Pottery

Since inventing porcelain, China developed a huge range of potting, decorating, and glazing techniques that were imitated from Europe to Japan. Chinese ceramics led the world in aesthetic taste and technique up until the demise of the Qing dynasty.



Tang earthenware tomb figure representing a fierce warrior, with typical rough *sancai* (three-color) drip glaze. This was a lead-based glaze, fired at a low temperature.



Song celadon bowl, with incised floral design. Celadon was the European name given to the refined gray-green glaze of this type of stoneware and porcelain.

Ming vase in the blue-and-white style known and imitated internationally. The technique involves underglaze painting in cobalt blue before the pot is fired.



Qing famille-rose vase, a delicate porcelain in a distinctive palette. The name comes from the use of bright pink enamel.



Buddhist sculpture in the Gandharan style

Bird-and-flower painting (including the depiction of fruit and insects) reveals the Chinese Daoist interest in observing the natural world. Despite the lightness of subject, the paintings have an intense, quasi-scientific depth.



Chinese Painting

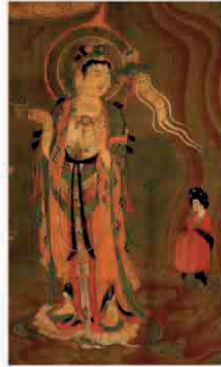
Considered the highest traditional art form, Chinese painting is executed on silk or paper using a brush and inks or watercolors.

Landscape painting, associated with the scholar class, reached a highpoint in the Northern Song and Yuan periods. Huang Gongwang (*see below*), a master of the Yuan, was admired for his simple calligraphic style.



Ink wash is used for the hills in the distance.

Religious painting first appeared along the Silk Road with the arrival of Buddhism from India. The Chinese soon developed an individual style.



Bamboo painting was a genre of the scholar class. Bamboo symbolized the scholar-gentleman who would bend but not break in the face of adversity.



Traditional Crafts

As well as the traditional high art forms of painting and pottery, China has a wealth of beautiful decorative arts. Delicate carvings in lacquer, ivory and jade are popular, as are colorful cloisonné items, decorated inksticks (or cakes), snuff bottles, and fans.

Snuff bottles were produced in large numbers during the Qing period. Made of glass, jade, mother-of-pearl, or semi-precious stones, they were delicately carved or painted on the inside in exquisite detail.



Lacquer carving is distinctive for its deep red color and floral designs, and is often used on boxes.

Cloisonné is a style of enameling. Individual metal cloisons, usually made of copper, are soldered together and inlaid with different colored enamels. The object is then fired and polished.



Modern Arts

The birth of modern art in China at the start of the 20th century coincided with greater contact with the West. Experiments with new materials and styles in the visual arts, Western-style music, “spoken drama” (*huaju*), cinema, and modern literary forms such as free verse all took root at this time. However, after 1949, this creativity was stifled by Soviet-influenced Socialist Realism. During the Cultural Revolution many artists were even persecuted on the grounds that their works were “reactionary.” Since the 1980s and 1990s, however, there has been some liberalization in the arts and new, exciting forms have developed.



The Canton TV Tower in Guangzhou (inaugurated in 2010) exemplifies the evolution of high-rise Chinese architecture since the late 1990s.



This example of performance art is by Cang Xin, a Beijing-based conceptual artist, active since the mid-1990s. The title of this piece, *Unification of Heaven and Man*, alludes to classical Chinese philosophical concepts.

Shaven-headed man



Modern Art

This painting, *Series 2 No. 2*, is by Fang Lijun, leader of the Cynical Realism school, which came about as a reaction to the demise of the pro-democracy movement in 1989. Rejecting idealism, these artists comment on problems in China.



Sculpture entitled *Torso*, by Zhan Wang, a Shanghai-based conceptual artist. Zhan uses reflective steel sheets to give the illusion of solidity.

Orchestral and chamber music has been popular in China since the early 20th century. Today, there are many schools specializing in Western-style music, and several high-quality ensembles and artists on the world scene.



Chinese Cinema

From early classics such as *Street Angel* (1937), made in the (then) foreign enclave of Shanghai, Chinese cinema has scaled new heights of international success, with the work of such acclaimed directors as Zhang Yimou.



Farewell My Concubine (1993)

directed by Chen Kaige, a post-Cultural Revolution filmmaker, who gave expression to new moral uncertainties, is set in the world of traditional Chinese Opera.



The Hong Kong film industry followed its own path and became primarily famous for its action movies. Renowned martial arts star Jackie Chan, seen above in an early acting and directorial debut, *Fearless Hyena*, made many films and successfully crossed over from Hong Kong to Hollywood.

Background is a hazy blue, making it appear dream-like

Wei Wei is one of the bestselling pop stars in China today. Rock music only took off in the 1980s, with the likes of Cui Jian, the "grandad" of Chinese rock. The industry is closely following that of the West, with many stars emerging from TV talent shows such as *Chinese Idol*.



Anonymous figures seem threatening



Main figure is yelling or yawning – is he angry or just bored?



Ballet in contemporary China mixes traditional Chinese and Western influences. Here, the ballet version of Zhang Yimou's film *Raise the Red Lantern* is performed by members of the National Ballet.



Modern theater provides an expression of Chinese life in the 21st century. Here, a scene from *Toilet* a black comedy, is performed by the National Theater company in Beijing. The play broke taboos with its frank portrayal of urban life and treatment of homosexuality.

Festivals

An important part of Chinese culture and tradition, festivals are generally happy and colorful affairs that reaffirm ancient beliefs and customs. The biggest and most important festival is Spring Festival, or Chinese New Year. This brings families together for several days: the home is cleaned and everyone dresses up in new clothes; decorations are put up and gifts exchanged; and finally there is always time for a lively and noisy carnival climaxing in a brilliant display of pyrotechnics. Nearly all the festival elements and rituals are geared towards bringing good luck and prosperity. In business, all debts should be settled by Chinese New Year. Overall, the festivities last about 15 days but the whole country closes down for only four.



Hongbao

These decorative red envelopes symbolize luck and wealth and bring about both as they contain money – they are typically given to children on New Year's Eve.



Lion Dance

Performed at New Year and other festivals. Usually two people are required to play the lion. The dance demands more martial arts skills than the Dragon Dance, also performed on these occasions.



Firecrackers

Strings of firecrackers are set off at New Year making the streets noisy and, potentially, dangerous places. Beijing tried to ban these in the center of the city supposedly driving people out to the suburbs for noisy fun.



Fireworks exploding over Hong Kong's Victoria Harbour

Drummers

At the Spring Festival, processions of dancers and drummers march over the New Year period up until the Lantern Festival. Like the firecrackers, the noise of the drumming is supposed to keep the evil spirits away.



Festival Food

Each festival has its special food: *jiaozi* (boiled dumplings) are usually eaten for New Year especially in the North of China; *yuanxiao* (glutinous rice balls) feature during the Lantern Festival and can be made with a sweet or savory filling; and *zongzi* (sticky rice pyramids wrapped in bamboo leaves) are served at the Dragon Boat Festival. The Mid-Autumn Festival, which falls on a full moon, brings mooncakes. Made to a thousand recipes with savory or sweet fillings, the cake symbolizes the moon.



A type of mooncake



Rice pyramids or zongzi



Spectacular Fireworks

New Year would not be complete without fireworks. Some major cities put on impressive all-night displays. Fireworks were originally intended to ward off evil spirits, or perhaps wake up the dragon who would create rain in the coming year and guarantee a good harvest.



Colorful lanterns

Coinciding with the full moon, the Lantern Festival marks the end of the two-week New Year period. Lanterns may bear auspicious characters or be in animal shapes.



Tangerines

A New Year symbol of luck, tangerines are put on display at home – along with fresh flowers. The word for “tangerine” sounds like “luck” in Chinese while flowers signify a new beginning.



Duilian

These red scrolls on either side of the doorway bear Spring Couplets in classical Chinese expressing good wishes for the family in the coming year.



Traditional papercut of an astrological chart

Chinese Astrology

Each year is associated with one of twelve animal signs, which repeat in a cycle. At New Year people talk of welcoming, for example, the “Year of the Dog.” In Chinese astrology, people born under a specific animal sign are supposed to have some of the characteristics attributed to the animal.

Horse 2014, symbol of freedom.

Sheep 2015, signifying peace and creativity.

Monkey 2016, associated with fun and genius, as in the story of the Monkey King.

Rooster 2017 has 5 virtues: refinement, courage, assertiveness, benevolence, and reliability.

Dog 2018, considered lucky in Chinese mythology.

Pig 2019, associated with fertility and virility.

Rat 2020, welcomed as a clever protector and bringer of wealth.

Ox 2021, Laozi, the Daoist philosopher, is often shown sitting on an ox.

Tiger 2022, in China he is deemed the king of the animals.

Rabbit 2023, associated with longevity and believed to live in the moon.

Dragon 2024, symbol of China, the emperor, and the positive Yang element (see pp38–9).

Snake 2025, an ancient ancestor, Fuxi, was thought to be half-human and half-snake.

CHINA THROUGH THE YEAR

The traditional Chinese festivals are tied to the lunar calendar, which has 29.5 days a month, and this means the solar dates change every year. Festivals associated with Communism – National Day and Labor Day, for example – are usually fixed to the Western calendar. Religious festivals, kept alive in Hong Kong, Tibet, and other areas of the Chinese-speaking world, are gradually making a comeback in the People's Republic of China

(PRC), and outlying areas such as Inner Mongolia have their own distinctive festivals. Some celebrations of foreign origin such as Christmas are also observed. Before the important New Year Festival, there are weeks of preparation. Most offices and shops are closed for three days, but many tend to take a week-long break at this time. As most Chinese return to their family home, travel is very difficult.



Colorful parade celebrating Chinese New Year

Spring (Feb–Apr)

This is the time of year when Chinese people try to settle old debts and make time to meet with friends and family members. The arrival of peach blossom is a signal of rejuvenation and the Spring Festival celebrates the start of the ancient cycle of plowing and sowing.

1st Lunar Month Spring Festival (Chun Jie)

The main festival – Chinese New Year (see pp48–9). Gifts and red envelopes filled with money are exchanged and new shoes and clothes worn.

Lantern Festival (Feb–Mar) Coinciding with a full moon, this festival marks the end of the fifteen-day New Year period. A great many lanterns bearing auspicious characters or in animal shapes can be seen. *Yuanxiao* (sticky rice balls) are eaten.

2nd Lunar Month

Tibetan New Year The Tibetan New Year is marked by the eating of “barley crumb” food and an exchange of Tashi Delek blessings. It is followed by Monlam, the great prayer



A highly elaborate Tibetan butter sculpture

festival later in the month, and the butter lamp festival, also known as the lantern festival.

Hong Kong Arts Festival (Feb/Mar) A major international arts festival as well as the premier arts event in Hong Kong.

A mix of overseas and local artists provide music, theater, dance, popular entertainment, film and exhibition programs over three or four weeks.

International Women's

Day (Mar 8) Women have a half or even a whole day's holiday, while men continue to work.

3rd Lunar Month

Tree-planting Day (Apr 1)

Promoted since the late 1970s by the reformist government, but not an official holiday, this is part of a greening campaign.

Weifang International Kite Festival (Apr) Flying kites is part of Qingming celebrations. Over 1,000 contestants compete at this festival in Shandong.

Water Sprinkling Festival (mid-Apr) Exclusive to the Dai people (Xishuangbanna, Yunnan, see p389). Marks the Dai lunar New Year, and involves blessing others by sprinkling or splashing them with water, which represents the quelling of the flames of a mythical tyrant demon.

Qing Ming Festival (Apr)

Festival for sweeping the graves and honoring the dead. Food is left on the grave and families often take a picnic with them.

Hainan Coconut Festival (Apr)

Set up in 1992, and a showcase for the local coconut harvest.



Qing Ming Festival, sweeping or tending the ancestors' graves

Third Moon Fair (Apr) Dali area. This festival is exclusive to the Buddhist Bai minority in Yunnan. Events include fairs, horse-racing, singing, and dancing.

Tin Hau Festival (Apr–May) Celebrated in Hong Kong and coastal areas such as Fujian, the birthday of the Heavenly Queen or Mazu (see p155), who looks after those at sea, is important for fishermen and sailors.

Summer (May–Jul)

Once the summer arrives, bringing warmer weather, festivals are often held outdoors. May sees the start of the traveling season as

many people go on trips around the country to see family and friends.

4th Lunar Month

International Labor Day (May 1) A week-long holiday around May Day during which travel can be difficult.

Youth Day (May 4)

Commemorates the student movements of 1919, which sparked the evolution of modern China.

Buddha's Birthday (April or May)

An important religious festival in Tibet but not officially observed in the PRC, though Buddhists may now do so privately. The festival has a higher profile in Hong Kong, where it is also

known as the Festival of the Ten Thousand Buddhas. Buddhists pray for the washing away of sin and the attainment of wisdom and peace.

"Meet in Beijing" Festival

(May) Music and arts festival, including opera, dance, instrumental and vocal concerts.

5th Lunar Month

Children's Day (Jun 1)

Cinemas and other places of entertainment are free to children, who are also showered with presents.

Dragon Boat Festival (or Fifth Moon Festival) (Jun)

commemorates the patriotic poet Qu Yuan who drowned himself. Originally religious but now just fun. Teams of rowers compete in long, decorated boats. Rice cakes (*zongzi*) are eaten. Hong Kong has several very colorful events, one with international teams.

Shanghai International

Film Festival (Jun) First held in October 1993, this is the only accredited international film festival in mainland China, and it shows a range of new films from around the world. The main film prize is the Golden Goblet, and a prize is also awarded for young Asian movie talent.



Dragon Boat Festival – colorful, lively, and exciting to watch



Nadaam Fair, Mongolian sports festival and fair

6th Lunar Month

Founding of Chinese Communist Party (*Jul 1*) A day to mark the event that took place in 1921 in Shanghai.

Autumn (Aug–Oct)

The weather may still be warm in the sub-tropical south, but in the high uplands and central areas it is cooling down. As the leaves turn golden, this is a popular time of the year to travel to festivals.

7th Lunar Month

Army day (*Aug 1*) Marks the first Communist uprising against the Nationalists in 1927. The theme is unity between the army and the people.

Lovers' festival (*Aug*) A romantic day, this celebrates the story of the earthly cowherd and celestial weaving girl who were separated by the gods but who are annually reunited in the heavens by a bridge of magpies on the seventh day of the seventh moon. It is also known as Seven Sisters Festival.

Shoton (Yoghurt festival) (*Aug/Sep*) Tibetan festival of opera. Takes its name from the yoghurt served by pilgrims to the monks.

Nadaam Fair (*Aug*) (Inner Mongolia) Held in Hohhot, Bayanbulak and elsewhere, Inner Mongolia. Horse-racing, wrestling and archery. Women

wear their traditional dress.

It's also a trading fair. **Nakchu**

Horse Race Festival

(Tibet) (*Aug*) The most important folk festival in Tibet. This takes place in Nakchu.

Over a thousand herdsman then compete in the traditional Tibetan sports of archery horse-racing, and general horsemanship.

Zhongyuan

(Hungry Ghost Festival) Similar to Halloween, a traditional festival combining elements of ancestor worship and Buddhism, suppressed under Communism. Considered an inauspicious time to move house or marry.



Mid-Autumn festival dragon

Qingdao International Beer Festival (*Aug*) Held in the eastern port city of Qingdao, Shandong, home of Tsingtao Beer, brewed from the spring waters of nearby Lao Shan (see p152).

8th Lunar Month

Teachers' Day (*Sep 1*) Not an established holiday, but it began in the 1980s in response to the anti-intellectualism of the Cultural Revolution.

Mid Autumn Festival or Zhong Qiu (*Sep*) Harvest or moon festival when moon cakes are eaten throughout the country and family reunions take place (see p49).

Shaolin International

Martial Arts Festival (*Sep*)

Annual event since 1991 in the city of Zhengzhou.

Confucius' Birthday (*Sep 28*) Gradually regaining popularity in the PRC, after vilification of the sage (born in 551BC) under the Communist regime. The day is

celebrated at the Confucian temples in Qufu, Beijing and elsewhere.

International Fashion Festival (*mid-Sep*) Dalian. Two weeks of fashion shows by Asian designers, with a spectacular opening parade.



Qingdao International Beer Festival dancers



National day, well-drilled troops on the march

9th Lunar Month

National Day (*Oct 1*) A great rush of holiday-making takes place during this week-long break – one of China's two so-called Golden Week holidays, along with Chinese New Year. Parades – including a high-profile military show of strength in Tian'an Men Square – celebrate the founding of the PRC by Mao Zedong in 1949.

Double-ninth (Chongyang) Festival (*Oct*) Double nine signifies double *yang* (in the *yin-yang* duality), connected with male assertiveness and strength. Traditionally, people do symbolic things like climb to high places, carry a sprig of dogwood, and drink chrysanthemum wine to ward off evil spirits at this festival, but it's not observed everywhere.

Hairy Crab Season (*Oct–early Dec*) Not strictly a festival, this is a two-month celebration of China's favorite winter delicacy, served in packed restaurants across the country but especially popular in Shanghai and eastern China.

Winter (Nov–Jan)

This season brings a drop in temperatures and relief from the humidity in the south, while central and northern regions usually experience bitter winters. The main traveling season is

over but everyone enjoys the lengthy preparations for the Chinese New Year at home.

10th Lunar Month

Zhuang Song Festival (*Nov*) The Zhuang minority in Guangxi have their own folk-song and dance tradition. An International Folk Song and Arts Festival is held in Nanning.

11th Lunar Month

Winter Solstice Chinese astronomers identified this day as early as the Han period. Historically, it has been an important festival, though less so now. In the north, people often eat dumpling soup or dumplings on this day to keep them warm. In the south, people may eat red-bean and sticky rice to drive away evil spirits.

Christmas Day (*Dec 25*) Although only a tiny number of the population is Christian, the commercial side of this celebration has taken off with Christmas trees and Shengdan Laoren, a Chinese version of Father Christmas, seen as a popular image. It's a public holiday in Hong Kong.

12th Lunar Month

Corban Festival (*Dec/Jan*) Celebrated in Xinjiang, Ningxia, and among Hui people across China, this is a Muslim festival remembering Abraham's last-

minute reprieve to sacrifice a goat instead of his son. Animals are slaughtered for a feast, with singing and dancing.

New Year's Day

(*Jan 1*) Overshadowed by the massive Chinese New Year celebrations that take place later in January or February, but it is still a recognized public holiday.

Public Holidays

New Year's Day (*Jan 1*)

Chinese New Year or Spring Festival (*Jan/Feb*)

Qing Ming Festival (*Apr*)

International Labor Day (*May 1–3*)

Dragon Boat Festival (*May*)

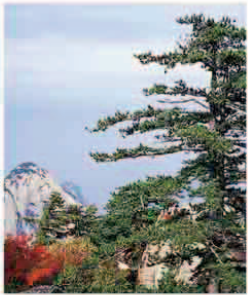
National Day (*Oct*)

Weekend Shifting

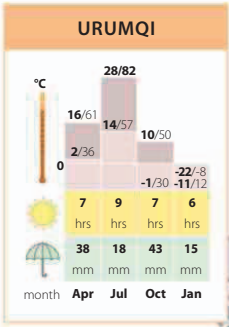
The weekends before and after the Spring Festival and October holidays are often shifted from year to year toward the 3-day block to allow for a continuous run of 7 days' holiday. To add to the confusion, the exact days of the holiday are usually not finalized until shortly beforehand. You may wish to avoid traveling during this period because many facilities are closed. Try to confirm the exact dates with a travel agent beforehand.

The Climate of China

With many different climate zones across its vast landmass, China experiences all extremes of weather ranging from the hot, wet summers and warm winters of the sub-tropical southwestern coast and high temperatures of the Turpan Depression to the cool summers and long, dry winters of its mountainous regions. Rainfall is sparse in the arid northern uplands and the near-Siberian northeast but plentiful in the humid south and east.

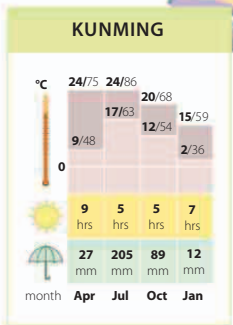
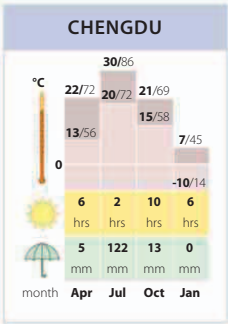
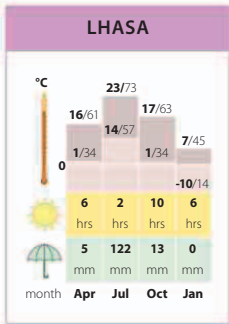


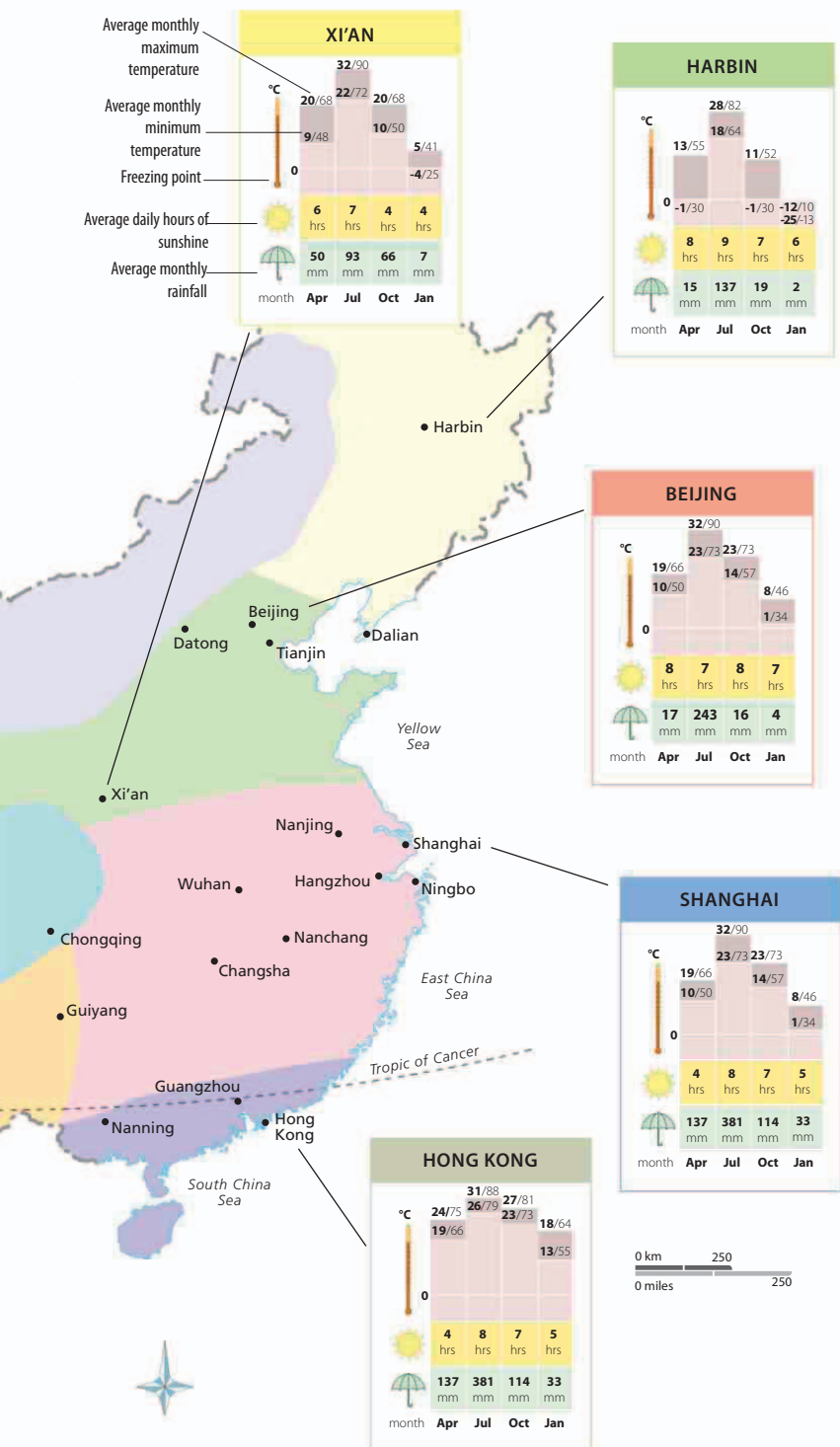
The top of Hua Shan, Shaanxi

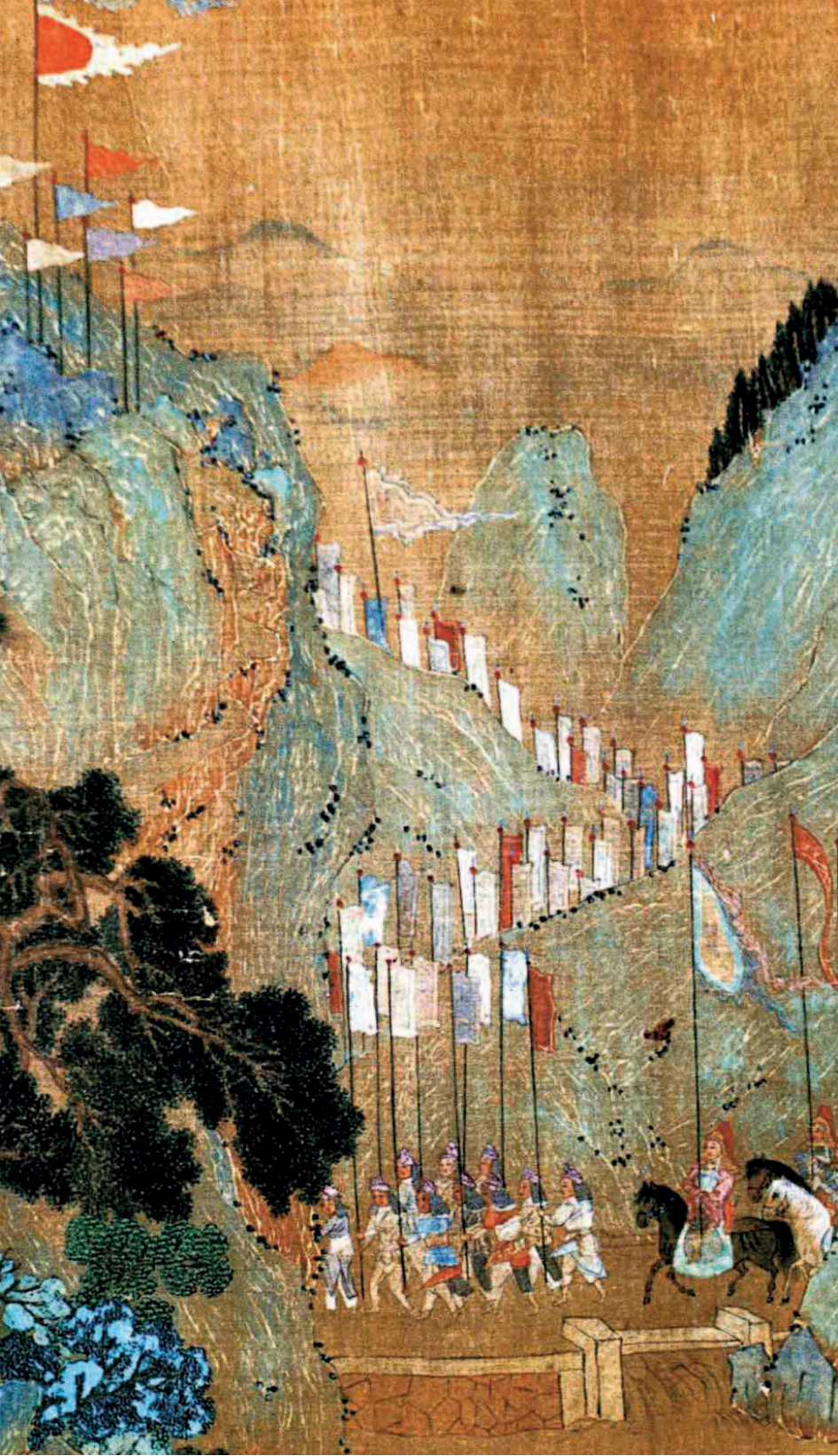


Key

- Hot wet summer, warm dry winter
- Warm summer, cool winter
- Hot wet summer, cool dry winter
- Hot wet summer, cool misty winter
- Cool dry summer, cold windy winter
- Hot wet summer, cold dry winter
- Warm summer, cold dry winter
- Hot dry summer, long cold dry and windy winter







THE HISTORY OF CHINA

China boasts one of the longest single unified civilizations in the world. Its history is characterized by dramatic shifts in power between rival factions, periods of peace and prosperity when foreign ideas were assimilated and absorbed, the disintegration of empire through corruption and political subterfuge, and the cyclical rise of ambitious leaders to found each new empire.

First Settlers

From around 8000 BC, settlements of populations based on a primitive agricultural economy began to emerge in the eastern coastal regions and along the rich river deltas of the Huang He (Yellow River), the Yangzi, and the Wei. These civilizations focused on hunting, gathering, and fishing, and the cultivation of millet in the north and rice in the south. Each civilization is notable for its own distinct style of pottery, such as the bold earthenware of the Yangshao (5000–3000 BC) and the black ceramics of the Longshan (3000–1700 BC).

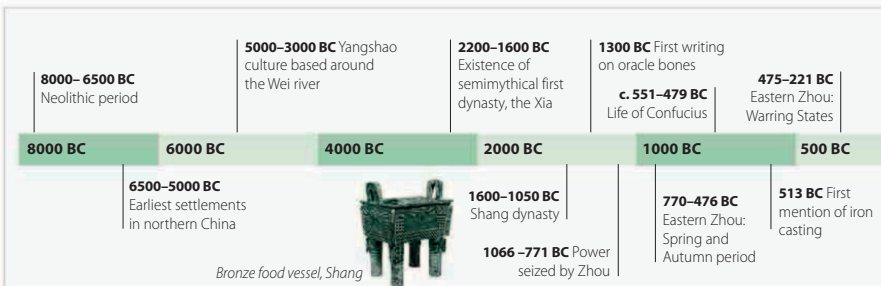
Bronze Age China and the First Kingdoms

The first dynasty in China was founded by the Shang around 1600 BC. The Shang lived in large, complex societies and were the first to mass-produce cast bronze. Power centered on the ruling elite who acted as shamans of a sort, communicating with their ancestors and gods through diviners. Elaborate bronze food and wine vessels were used both for banqueting and for making ancestral

offerings. Inscriptions on oracle bones provide the first evidence of writing, dating from around 1300 BC.

In 1066 BC, the Zhou seized power, establishing their western capital at present-day Xi'an. The Western Zhou initially sustained many of the traditions of the Shang, but later reorganized the political system, and replaced the use of oracle bones with inscriptions on bronze and, later, writing on silk and strips of bamboo.

The Eastern Zhou (770–221 BC) is divided into the Spring and Autumn period (named for the annals written by Confucius, 770–475 BC) and the Warring States period (475–221 BC). The Eastern Zhou period saw the capital moved to Luoyi (now Luoyang, Henan Province) and was dominated by political conflict and social unrest as rival factions jockeyed for power. Some 25 emperors reigned during its duration. It also saw economic expansion and development as the use of iron revolutionized agriculture. It was in this climate of unrest that the philosophical ideologies of Confucianism, Daoism, and Legalism emerged.



Dynasty Timeline

China was ruled by a succession of dynasties, broken by periods of fragmentation and civil war. The emperor's authority was divinely granted through a mandate of heaven and was thus unlimited. Leaders of succeeding dynasties claimed that the previous leadership had displeased the gods and had therefore had its heavenly mandate withdrawn.

Shang Dynasty

1600–1050 BC

The Shang dynasty marked the emergence of Bronze Age China and palace culture. A semi-divine king acted as a shaman and communicated with the gods.



Bronze tripod food vessel, Shang

Western Han

206 BC–AD 9

Gaozu	206–195 BC
Huidi	195–188 BC
Shaodi	188–180 BC
Wendi	180–157 BC
Jingdi	157–141 BC
Wudi	141–87 BC
Zhaodi	87–74 BC
Xuandi	74–49 BC
Yuandi	49–33 BC
Chengdi	33–7 BC
Aidi	7–1 BC
Pingdi	1 BC–AD 6
Ruzi	AD 7–9



Broken terracotta heads found at Jingdi's tomb

Eastern Han

AD 25–220

Guang Wudi	25–57	Shundi	125–144
Mingdi	57–75	Chongdi	144–145
Zhangdi	75–88	Zhidi	145–146
Hedi	88–105	Huandi	146–168
Shangdi	106	Lingdi	168–189
Andi	106–125	Xiandi	189–220

Tang

618–907

Gaozu	618–626	Wenzong	827–840
Taizong	626–649	Wuzong	840–846
Gaozong	649–683	Xuanzong	846–859
Zhongzong	684 & 705–710	Yizong	859–873
Ruizong	684–690 & 710–712	Xizong	873–888
Wu Zetian	690–705	Zhaozong	888–904
Xuanzong	712–756	Aidi	904–907
Suzong	756–762		
Daizong	762–779		
Dezong	779–805		
Shunzong	805		
Xianzong	805–820		
Muzong	820–824		
Jingzong	824–827		



Sancai-glazed dancing tomb figures

Five Dynasties & Ten Kingdoms

907–960

Based north of the Yangzi, five successive dynasties swiftly usurped one another, with no dynasty lasting for more than three reigns. The Ten Kingdoms to the south went through a similarly turbulent period.

Throughout this period and most of the Song dynasty, the northern frontiers were dominated by the semi-nomadic Liao dynasty (907–1125) in the east, and by the Western Xia (990–1227) in the west. In 1115, the Liao were overthrown by the Jin (1115–1234), who forced the Song southwards in 1127.

Yuan

1279–1368

Genghis Khan (1162–1227)	Yesun Temur	1323–1328
united numerous Mongol speaking tribes and captured Beijing in 1215.	Tugh Temur	1328–1329, 1329–1333
His grandson, Kublai, completed the conquest of China by finally defeating the Southern Song in 1279.	Khoshila	1329
	Toghon Temur	1333–1368
Kublai Khan		1279–1294
Temur Oljeitu		1294–1307
Khaishan		1308–1311
Ayurbarwada		1311–1320
Shidebala		1321–1323

Ming

1368–1644

Hongwu	1368–1398	Zhengde	1506–1521
Jianwen	1399–1402	Jiajing	1522–1567
Yongle	1403–1424	Longqing	1567–1572
Hongxi	1425	Wanli	1573–1620
Xuande	1426–1435	Taichang	1620
Zhengtong	1436–1449	Tianqi	1621–1627
Jingtai	1450–1457	Chongzhen	1628–1644
Tianshun	1457–1464 (Zhengtong restored)		
Chenghua	1465–1487		
Hongzhi	1488–1505		

Western Zhou Dynasty

1066–771 BC

The Zhou founded their capital at Chang'an (Xi'an). They continued some Shang traditions, but reorganized the political system, dividing the nobility into grades. The feudal system of the Western Zhou broke down after the capital was sacked and the king slain.

Eastern Zhou Dynasty

770–221 BC

Spring and Autumn 770–475 BC

Warring States 475–221 BC

The Zhou dynasty ruled at its eastern capital of Luoyang alongside numerous rival states. This long period of almost constant warfare was brought to an end when the Qin emerged victorious.

Qin Dynasty

221–206 BC

Qin Shi Huang 221–210 BC
Er Shi 210–207 BC



Statue of attendant from the tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi

Period of Disunity

220–589

China was divided into the warring Wei, Wu, and Shu kingdoms. The Wei briefly re-united China under the Western Jin (280–316), the first of the six Southern Dynasties (280–589), with their capital at Jiankang (Nanjing).

The north was ruled by a succession of ruling houses – the 16 Kingdoms (304–439). The nomadic Toba Wei set up the Northern Wei dynasty, the first of five Northern Dynasties (386–581) with a capital first at Datong, then at Luoyang.

Sui

581–618

China was once more united by the short and decisive rule of the Sui.

Wendi 581–604
Yangdi 604–617
Gongdi 617–618



Emperor Wendi's flotilla on the Grand Canal

Northern Song

960–1126

Taizu	960–976	Shenzong	1068–1085
Taizong	976–997	Zhezong	1086–1101
Zhenzong	998–1022	Huizong	1101–1125
Renzong	1022–1063	Qinzong	1126–1127
Yingzong	1064–1067		



Painting by Emperor Huizong

Southern Song

1127–1279

Gaozong	1127–1162
Xiaozong	1163–1190
Guangzong	1190–1194
Ningzong	1195–1224
Lizong	1225–1264
Duzong	1265–1274
Gongdi	1275
Duanzong	1276–1278
Di Bing	1279

Qing

1644–1911

Shunzhi	1644–1661
Kangxi	1661–1722
Yongzheng	1723–1735
Qianlong	1736–1795
Jiaqing	1796–1820
Daoguang	1821–1850
Xianfeng	1851–1861
Tongzhi	1862–1874
Guangxu	1875–1908
Xuantong (Pu Yi)	1909–1912



The Zhengde Emperor's love of leisure led to a relaxation of imperial control



Imperial dragon detail on the back of a eunuch's official court robe

Foundation of Imperial China

The Warring States Period was finally brought to an end as the Qin emerged victorious. In 221 BC, Qin Shi pronounced himself the first emperor (huangdi) of China and ruled over a short yet decisive period of history. The Qin state was based on the political theories of Legalism, which established the role of the ruler as paramount and espoused a system of collective responsibility. Following unification, Qin Shi conscripted thousands of workers to join together the defensive walls to the north, creating the Great Wall. He standardized the system of money, and weights and measures, and laid the foundations for a legal system. A ruthless ruler, Qin Shi died in the belief that his famous terracotta army would protect him in the afterlife from his numerous enemies.

The founding of the Han dynasty (206 BC–AD 220) heralded a “golden age” in Chinese history. Emperor Gaodi (r. 206–195 BC) established the capital of the Western Han (206 BC–AD 9) at Chang’an (Xi’an), and retained much of the centralized administration established by the Qin. Subsequent emperors developed the civil service examination to select able men for state office. Han society was founded on the principles propounded by Confucius, and the Confucian classics formed the basis of the civil service examination. Daoism and *yin-yang* theory coexisted with ancestor worship and would form the basis of indigenous Chinese belief (see pp36–9).

The Han empire expanded with regions of Central Asia, Vietnam, and Korea being brought under Chinese control. In 138 BC, General Zhang Qian was sent to establish diplomatic links with Central Asia and returned with tales of rich pastures and “heavenly horses.” The fine thoroughbreds of Ferghana (in modern Uzbekistan) were traded in exchange for Chinese silk, starting the flow of goods along the fabled Silk Road (see pp470–71).


Han rule was briefly interrupted as Wang Mang seized power in AD 9, only to be restored by Guang Wudi (r. AD 25–57), who established the Eastern Han capital in Luoyang. Once more, the Han expanded Chinese territory. Paper was by now in use for much official documentation and the first Chinese dictionary was produced. Buddhism began its spread to China with the first Buddhist communities being established in Jiangsu province.



Archer from Qin terracotta army



Chariot and footmen, impressed into a tomb's brick, Han

213 BC Burning of the books as part of process of “unification”	206 BC–AD 9 Western Han capital established at Chang’an (Xi’an)	c. 139–126 BC Official envoy Zhang Qian establishes first diplomatic and trading links of Silk Road	AD 2 First known census: 57,671,400 individuals	1 <i>Bronze horse and rider, Han</i>	c. 100 First dictionary <i>Shuo Wen</i> produced with more than 9,000 characters
221–206 BC Qin dynasty under first emperor, Qin Shi	200 BC	100 BC	25–220 Eastern Han dynasty capital at Luoyang	AD 100	65 First mention of Buddhist community established at court of Prince Ying of Chu
	165 BC First official examinations for the selection of civil servants				



Sui emperors Yangdi and Wendi in a detail from "Portraits of the 13 Emperors" by Tang painter Yan Li Pen

Period of Division

From the rule of Hedi (r. AD 88–105), the Eastern Han declined. Civil war finally split the country in 220. The next 350 years were characterized by almost constant warfare as China was ruled by over 14 short-lived dynasties and 16 "kingdoms."

China was divided into the Northern and Southern dynasties (265–581), each region taking on its own distinct character. Foreign peoples took control of the North, such as the Toba branch of the Xianbei, who founded the Northern Wei in 386. These rulers were receptive to foreign ideas and religions, creating some of the finest Buddhist cave complexes first at Yungang, near their capital in Datong, and from 494, at Longmen, when they moved their capital to Luoyang.

As foreign invaders took control of the North, the Han Chinese retreated south to establish their new capital at Jiankang (Nanjing). In a

climate of relative stability, the south became the economic and cultural center as the population shifted to the Yangzi delta. Philosophy and the arts flourished alongside a renewed interest in Daoism and a growing interest in Buddhism.

Unification and Stability

Following military successes against the Liang and the Chen, the Northern Zhou general Yang Jian (541–604) pronounced himself emperor, taking the name Wendi, and founded the Sui dynasty in 581. This brief but significant dynastic rule established political and social stability. He undertook an extensive program of works including extending the Great Wall and the beginnings of the Grand Canal. The second emperor, Yangdi (569–617), restored diplomatic relations with Japan and Taiwan and extended trade to Central Asia.



Apsara from Buddhist cave, Northern Wei

190 Communications with central Asia are cut

late 3rd c. Renewed interest in Daoism

310 Massive exodus of Chinese upper classes to South

Colossal Buddha at Yungang Caves, Northern Wei



581–618 Sui dynasty, initiated by Wendi's reunification of China

200

300

400

500

600

220 Civil war breaks out between the kingdoms of Wei, Shu, and Wu

265–581 China divided into Northern and Southern dynasties

386–535 Northern Wei, first of the ruling houses to adopt Buddhism

c. 6th C First true porcelain produced

c. 7th C Woodblock printing first used in China

Tang Dynasty

The Tang Dynasty is widely regarded as one of China's golden ages, characterized by economic prosperity, territorial expansion, and political stability. During this period China reached its largest size to date: from Korea to Vietnam and across Central Asia to southern Siberia. Trade flourished by land and sea, stimulating the flow of luxury goods between East and West. Foreign religions were tolerated and Buddhism gained popular and imperial patronage. The arts and literature of the Tang are still considered to be among China's finest, notably the famous poets Li Bai and Du Fu.



Locator Map

Tang rule AD 750

This pottery figure, decorated in three-color or sancai glaze, depicts life along the Silk Route. Merchants and pilgrims traveled the legendary route bringing with them objects crafted in gold and silver, textiles, exotic foods, and fine horses.



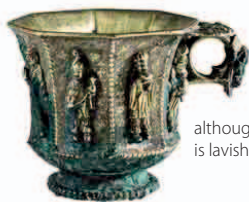
The similar figures carry typical attributes of Avalokitesvara: this one holds a flower; the other a vase and a sprig of willow.



Ample, draped robes, typical of Tang style



Foreign envoys, including Koreans (the figure on the right) and westerners (standing next to the Korean), traveled to the Tang court for delegations and giving tribute, as seen in this tomb mural.



This silver cup, part of a hoard of buried treasure dug up in 1970, shows distinct western influence, although the relief decoration is lavishly Tang.

Chang'an's (Xi'an's) elaborate city walls enclosed a population of one million by the seventh century, making Chang'an the largest city in the world. The cosmopolitan capital was populated by Sogdians, Turks, Uighurs, Arabs, and Persians.





Emperor Taizong (r. 626–49) was a great military strategist, strengthening border protection and establishing diplomatic and trade links with foreign nations. An overhaul of the civil service examination system led to greater social mobility and contributed to stable government.



Wu Zetian (r. 690–705), the only empress in Chinese history, manipulated her weak husband, Emperor Gaozong, and ruthlessly eradicated her opposition. Despite her scandalous nature, she became a strong ruler and brought peace and prosperity.



Inscriptions were written for wealthy donors who commissioned paintings on behalf of themselves or loved ones in order to accrue religious merit.

Avalokitesvara, one of the most popular bodhisattvas, is identified by the Amitabha Buddha in his crown.



Emperor Xuanzong (r. 712–56) or Minghuang, the Brilliant Emperor, ruled over a glorious period. A great scholar and patron of the arts, he poured his wealth into temple construction and founded the Academy of Letters (Hanlinyuan) in 754.

Dunhuang Silks

During the Tang Dynasty, Buddhism gained popular and imperial support, particularly under the rule of the devout Wu Zetian. Buddhist communities became important centers for the translation of sutras and the production of Buddhist arts, such as the fine silk paintings of Dunhuang.

An Emperor's Love and Demise

In his later years, the Xuanzong emperor increasingly neglected his official duties as he became infatuated with his concubine, Yang Guifei. Intrigue and factions at court bred instability and in AD 750, General An Lushan, half Sogdian half Turkish by descent, seized control of the northeastern frontier. In 755 An Lushan stormed the capital forcing the court to flee for Sichuan. As they reached Mawei, Xuanzong's troops mutinied and demanded the emperor hand over Yang Guifei. She was strangled before his eyes, and the tragic story of their love affair has been immortalised by poets. Although An Lushan was eventually defeated, the Tang dynasty fell into decline.

Yang Guifei's plump figure became a classic *sancai* form



Glory of the Tang

The Tang dynasty (AD 618–907) marks a high point in Chinese history (see pp62–3). During this golden age, China enjoyed an extended period of peace and prosperity. The arts flourished and were enriched by foreign styles, motifs, and techniques such as silverworking. Foreign religions, such as Nestorian Christianity, were tolerated and co-existed alongside native Daoism and Confucianism. Woodblock printing was invented by the Chinese some time during the 7th century and hastened the spread of Buddhism.

Following the An Lushan rebellion of 755, the Tang became increasingly inward looking. The great Buddhist persecution of 841–46 was symptomatic of a dynasty in decline, which finally fell in 907.

The Liao Dynasty (907–1125)

The Liao dynasty, which at its largest covered much of Mongolia, Manchuria, and northern China, was ruled by semi-nomadic and pastoral people, the Qidan. The Liao maintained a dual administration, Qidan and Chinese, and even a prime-ministership, to ensure the survival of their own customs and traditions whilst utilizing the efficiency of Tang structures of government. In 1115, the Qidan were overthrown by another semi-nomadic people, the Ruzhen (Jurchen). With the support

of the Northern Song, the Ruzhen took control of the north and founded the Jin dynasty. The Liao were forced westwards to the region of the Tian mountain range in present-day Xinjiang, where they established the Western Liao (1125–1211). The rest of northwest China was dominated by the Western Xia, a Tibetan related people who recognized the Liao as their overlords.




Sancai glazed horse, Tang

Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms (907–960)

While the north of China was dominated by the insurgence of semi-nomadic peoples from the steppe regions, the south was ruled by a series of short military dictatorships. The Song dynasty was founded in 960 by Zhao Kuangyin, a military commander of the later Zhou (951–960), whose imperial name became Shizong. In the Yangzi delta and regions to the south, the Ten Kingdoms existed in relative peace and stability and were reunited by the Song in 979.



Painting of an official celebrating, Five Dynasties (923–938)

618–907 Tang Dynasty heralds new golden age	690–705 Empress Wu Zetian rules as first empress of China	755–763 An Lushan rebellion drives emperor and court from Chang'an to Sichuan	806 Earliest dated printed manuscript, the Diamond Sutra	907–960 Period of division known as Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms	10th c. Gunpowder and fire arms first used
661 Chinese administration in Kashmir, Bokhara, and the borders of eastern Iran	705 Famous poet Li Bai born		806–820 First bankers' bill	907–1125 Qidan people rule northeastern China as the Liao dynasty, making Beijing their southern capital	
		<i>Tang silver</i>	770 Death of great poet Du Fu		

The Song Dynasty (960–1279)

The Song presided over a period of cultural brilliance and unprecedented growth in urban life during which the social makeup of China fundamentally changed. Less territorially ambitious than the Tang, the Song stimulated economic development through improved communications and transport. New industries based on mass production began to emerge, notably the porcelain industry based in Jiangxi province. During the Southern Song, China underwent an industrial revolution producing quantities of raw materials such as salt and iron on a scale that would not be seen in Europe until the 18th century.

In this buoyant economic climate a new middle-class emerged, stimulating demand for the new range of consumer goods. Power shifted from the aristocratic elite to government bureaucrats, who spent their spare time practising the arts of poetry, calligraphy, and painting. Collecting and connoisseurship led to an artistic renaissance and the founding of the first Imperial collections. Emperor Huizong was a great patron of the arts who used ancient precedents and values to buttress his own position. Neo-Confucianism and a renewed interest in Daoism marked a return to indigenous beliefs and traditional structures of power.

The Northern Song repeatedly came under attack from the Western Xia in the northwest and the Jin in the northeast. Only 12 years after joining forces



Illustration of Song Emperor Huizong, r. 1101–1125

with the Song against the Liao, the Jin invaded the Northern Song capital at Bianliang (Kaifeng), capturing emperor Qinzong and forcing the court to flee southwards. The capital of the Southern Song (1127–1279) was established at Lin'an (Hangzhou) south of the Yangzi.

Jin Dynasty (1115–1234)

The Jin were a semi-nomadic Tungusic people originating from Manchuria. War with the Song and persistent attacks from the Mongols resulted in a weakening of the Jin state which by the early 13th century formed a buffer state between the Song in the south and the Mongols in the north. In 1227, Mongol and Chinese allied forces defeated the Jin and in 1234 the Jin emperor committed suicide. The Jin state was integrated into the rapidly expanding Mongol empire.



Early movable type, Song



Detail of painting by Emperor Huizong

960–1126 Northern Song reunites China and bases capital at Bianliang (Kaifeng)

1127–1279 Southern Song dynasty with capital at Hangzhou, after being forced south by the Jin

1154 First issue of paper money (Jin)

1206–1208 Song and Jin at war

950

1000

1050

1100

1150

1200

990–1227 Western Xia people establish kingdom dominating northwest China

1041–8 First attempts at printing with movable type

1090 First attested use of compass on Chinese ships

1115–1234 Jin dynasty founded in northeast China forcing Liao westwards

1214 Jin move capital from Beijing to Kaifeng in Henan province

Mongol Rule (1279–1368)

The Mongol leader Genghis Khan (*see p477*) united the various Mongol-speaking tribes of the steppes and in 1215 conquered northern China. He divided his empire into four kingdoms, each ruled by one of his sons. His grandson Kublai Khan (r. 1260–94), ruler of the eastern Great Khanate, finally defeated the Southern Song in 1279 and proclaimed himself emperor of the Yuan dynasty. China now became part of a vast empire which stretched from the East China Sea across Asia as far as Poland, Hungary and Bohemia. Two capitals were maintained at Dadu or Khanbalik (present-day Beijing) and Yuanshangdu (Xanadu). The Silk Routes opened once more, connecting China to the Middle East and Medieval Europe. Direct contact was now made for the first time between the Mongol court and European diplomats, Franciscan missionaries, and merchants. According to the writings of Marco Polo, the Italian



Buddhist deity, Yuan

merchant spent 21 years in the service of Kublai and his court. The Mongols ruled through a form of military government, in contrast to the bureaucratic civil service established by the Chinese. Although Chinese and Mongol languages were both used for official business, the Chinese were not encouraged to take up official posts. Muslims from Central and Western Asia took their place, and the Chinese increasingly retreated from official life. As there were no clear rules for succession, civil war broke out in 1328 between Mongol nobles.

The secret societies of the Red Turbans and the White Lotus led peasant rebellions and in 1368 General Zhu Yuanzhang forced the Mongols out of China, becoming the first emperor of the Ming dynasty.

Ming Dynasty (1368–1644)

The Ming (literally “brilliant”) dynasty was one of the longest and most stable periods in China’s history. The founder of the Ming, Zhu Yuanzhang, rose from humble beginnings to become a general, ruling as the Hongwu emperor (“vast military accomplishment”). During his reign, Hongwu introduced radical changes to both central and local government, which he made binding on his successors. The emperor’s role became more autocratic as Hongwu dispensed with the position of Prime Minister, taking direct responsibility for overseeing all six ministries himself.

Hongwu appointed his grandson to be his successor. Upon his death, his son the Prince



Genghis Khan (c.1162–1227), Persian miniature

1215 Mongols capture Beijing

1234 Jin emperor commits suicide and Jin integrated into Mongol empire



Mongol on horseback

1368–1644 Ming dynasty, founded by rebel leader General Zhu Yuanzhang

1403 Construction of Great Walls in North China

1250

1300

1350

1400

1227 Genghis Khan dies, having united various Mongol-speaking tribes of the steppe

1279–1368 Kublai Khan defeats Southern Song and rules China as emperor of the Yuan dynasty

1328 Civil war breaks out between Mongol nobles



Jade elephant, Ming



The existing battlements of the Great Wall, reinforced and joined together during the Ming dynasty

of Yan, who controlled the region around Beijing, led an army against his nephew, taking Nanjing and proclaiming himself emperor Yongle ("Eternal Joy"). Yongle (r. 1403–24) moved the capital to his power base in Beijing, where he created a new city based on traditional principles of Chinese city planning. At its core lay the Forbidden City (see pp92–5), the imperial palace and offices of government, surrounded by a grid system of streets, with four imperial altars at the cardinal points. The entire city was walled to provide both protection and enclosure. In 1421, Beijing became the official capital and would remain so until the present day. The Great Wall was reinforced, extended and faced with brick during the Ming dynasty.

By the 15th century, China had become a significant maritime power, its ships dwarfing those of contemporary Europe. Blue and white porcelain, silk, and other luxury items were in high demand in the foreign markets of Japan, Southeast Asia, and the Middle East. Yongle sent six maritime expeditions under the Muslim eunuch admiral Zheng He, which

reached as far as the east coast of Africa. In 1514 Portuguese traders first landed in China, purchasing tea which then became a fashionable drink in European society. Porcelain provided ballast for the ships, and other luxury items were brought back along with the cargo. Trade was dominated by the Dutch in the 17th century, only to be surpassed by the British a hundred years later. Jesuit missionaries, who arrived in the 16th century, claimed few converts but gained access to the emperor and the inner court.

The arts thrived under the Xuande emperor (r. 1425–35), an artist and poet, who patronized the arts, notably the porcelain industry at Jingdezhen. In literature, the late Ming is noted for its great dramas and classical novels, such as *Journey to the West* (see p35). Philosophy of the time reinforced the Neo-Confucianism of the Song.

The late Ming was dominated by peasant uprisings, incursions by Japanese pirates and Mongolian tribes, and excessive eunuch power. Rebellions within China eventually joined with external forces to end Ming rule.



Wedding jewelry, Ming

1425–35 Xuande emperor becomes first Ming emperor to patronize the arts extensively

1514 Portuguese land in China, becoming the first Europeans to trade in tea and porcelain

Gilt bronze bowl, Ming



1573–1620 Wanli reign begins well but dynasty declines as emperor takes little interest in duties

1620 The Taichang emperor poisoned by eunuchs

1450

1500

1550

1600

1420 Construction of the Forbidden City in Beijing completed

Early 16th century Later Ming monarchs neglect duties of government and eunuch power increases

1538 Jesuit Father Matteo Ricci enters southern China and begins missionary duties

1570 Popular novel *Ji Yu Ji* (*Journey to the West*) published

1600s Dutch dominate European trade with China

1601 Jesuit missionary Matteo Ricci allowed to enter Beijing

Qing Rule (1644–1911)

The Manchu leader Nurhachi established the Later Jin in 1616, organizing the scattered tribes of the north into eight banner units (*see p438–9*). In 1636, the Manchu ruler Abahai changed the name to Qing, literally “pure,” and prepared the way for the capture of Beijing in 1644. Under Manchu control, China was once more ruled by a foreign people. The Manchus were keen to adopt the Chinese method of rule, encouraging Chinese scholars into the service of the new empire. Dual administration at national and provincial levels meant Manchu and Chinese bureaucrats worked side by side using first Manchu and later Chinese as the official languages of government. However, despite the close interaction of Manchu and Chinese, the ruling Manchus were careful to maintain a distinct separation in order to protect their own privileges and cultural traditions.

The first emperors of the Qing were enlightened rulers who presided over one of the largest and most populous countries in the world. The territorial aspirations of the Kangxi emperor brought the regions of Central Asia and southern Siberia once more under Chinese control. Kangxi (*see p128*) was succeeded by the Yongzheng emperor. It was his fourth son, the Qianlong emperor, “Lasting Eminence,” (r. 1735–96) who heralded another golden age. An ambitious ruler, Qianlong was

determined to extend China’s borders beyond those of the Tang, personally leading campaigns to Burma, Vietnam, and Central Asia.

During the 18th century, contact with the west increased through Jesuit missionaries and trade. By the mid-18th century, the Chinese sought to control trade by refusing all official contact with Westerners and opening only Canton to foreign merchants. Pressure from European embassies increased as the British sent Lord Macartney in 1792–94 to establish diplomatic relations and open China to trade. China refused to grant a single concession to the British.



Emperor Kangxi, r. 1661–1722

The Decline of the Empire

The 19th century is one of the most turbulent periods of Chinese history, as internal uprisings, natural disasters, and the relentless encroachment of the West culminated in the end of the empire. A succession of weak rulers were manipulated and controlled by the



Lord Macartney’s massive entourage arriving at Qianlong’s tent

1644–1800 Military expansion into Central Asia and Siberia; colonization of new territories Yunnan and Xinjiang

1723–1735 Kangxi’s son Yin Zhen seizes power ruling under name of emperor Yongzheng



The Shunzhi emperor, r. 1644–61

1747 Qianlong builds Yuanming Yuan (*see p109*) in western style

1650

1675

1700

1725

1750

1644–1911 Manchus establish Qing dynasty

1650 First Catholic church in Beijing

1661–1722 Rule of Kangxi emperor. Appoints Jesuits to run Board of Astronomy

1735–1796 Qianlong, a great patron of the arts, rules over another golden age

1757 Chinese restrict all foreign trade to Canton



A merchant testing tea quality in a Cantonese warehouse

Dowager Empress Cixi, who ruled for much of the late Qing from “behind the curtain.” The Taiping Rebellion of 1850–64 devastated south and central China (see p428).

Western powers, frustrated by the reluctance of the Chinese to open to foreign trade, brought the Chinese under increasing pressure. Keen to protect the trade of opium from their colonies in India, the British engaged in the First Opium War (1840–42), which culminated in the Treaty of Nanjing, resulting in the opening of four new ports to trade, known as “Treaty Ports,” the payment of huge indemnities, and the ceding of Hong Kong to Britain. Following the Arrow War (Second Opium War) with Britain and France (1856), the European forces divided China into “spheres of influence” – the British strongest along the Yangzi and in Shanghai, the Germans controlling Shandong province, and the French controlling the

borders with Vietnam. In 1900 the Boxers allied with imperial troops and attacked the foreign legations in Beijing (see p439). An eight-nation army defeated the onslaught, and Cixi fled to Xi’an, blaming everything on the emperor. The Chinese government paid once more for the loss of life and Cixi returned to Beijing until her death in 1908. The child emperor Pu Yi lived in the Forbidden City as the last emperor until his abdication. On 1 January 1912 the Republican leader Sun Yat-sen inaugurated the Chinese Republic.

From Empire to Republic

In the final years of the empire, many Chinese intellectuals recognized the need to modernize. Supporters of the Reform Movement of 1898 propounded the adoption of western technology and education, and, following the Boxer Rebellion, a number of reforms were adopted. Elected regional assemblies were set up, further undermining the power of the Qing. In 1911 the empire collapsed completely. Sun Yat-sen (see p303) was elected provisional President of China, but was soon forced to resign in favor of general Yuan Shikai, who sought to become emperor. Yuan was forced to back down when governors revolted and he died soon after in 1916. China then came under the control of a series of regional warlords until it was united once more with the founding of the People’s Republic of China in 1949.



Sun Yat-sen, 1866–1925

1796–1805 White Lotus Rebellion damages prestige and wealth of dynasty

1816 Lord Amherst leads British envoy seeking to open China to trade

1850–64 Taiping Rebellion

1856–58 Arrow War (Second Opium War) with Britain and France

1898 The Guangxu emperor imprisoned by Empress Cixi

1900 Boxer uprising

1775

1800

1825

1850

1875

1900

1792–94 Lord Macartney leads embassy to Beijing and unsuccessfully attempts to establish trade relations with England

1861 Empress Dowager Cixi begins “rule from behind the screen”

1840–42 First Opium War with Britain



1908 Death of Empress Dowager Cixi

1894 Sino-Japanese war



Jade pendant, Qing

The Cultural Revolution

In 1965, Mao Zedong set in motion a chain of events that were to unleash the turmoil now known as the Cultural Revolution. Having socialized industry and agriculture, Mao called on the masses to transform society itself – all distinctions between manual and intellectual work were to be abolished and class distinction disappear. The revolution reached its violent peak in 1967, with the Red Guards spreading social unrest. The People's Liberation Army (PLA) finally restored order, but the subsequent years were characterized by fear, violence, and mistrust.

The Red Guard

Mao appealed to students to form the Red Guard, in whom he entrusted the fate of the revolution. The movement rapidly gathered momentum and the Red Guard, who raised Mao to godly status, traveled China spreading Mao Zedong "Thoughts," smashing remnants of the past, vandalizing temples, and wreaking havoc.



Mass public meetings were held as part of the Socialist Education Movement, a precursor of the Cultural Revolution intended to reverse "capitalist" and "revisionist" tendencies perceived in social and economic life. Everyone was required to attend.



An injured cadre is carried away after being denounced. Shamings became the bench mark of public meetings. Many politicians and teachers were paraded and accused, leading to job loss and, in some cases, suicide.



Children were encouraged to take part in the Revolution. Their enthusiasm led to the destruction of family photographs and possessions. In some cases, children denounced their own parents.



The Little Red Book was essential to the Red Guard and issued to every soldier under Lin Biao's command.

Demonstrating their opposition to Soviet-style communism and their support for Maoism, Red Guards change a Beijing street sign in front of the Soviet Embassy from East Yangwei to Fanxiu Lu (Anti-revisionism Road).





Lin Biao spread the study of the "Thoughts of Mao" and compiled the *Little Red Book* which became obligatory reading for his army recruits. As head of the PLA, Lin Biao provided essential military backing and was Mao's named successor. He died in a plane crash over Siberia in 1971 amid rumors of an imminent usurpation.

Model operas were the pet project of Mao's third wife, Jiang Qing. She set about creating a politically correct revolutionary culture. Many artists and intellectuals were sent to the countryside for re-education.



May 7 Cadre Schools were set up by the central government in 1968. 100,000 officials plus 30,000 family members were sent to perform manual labor and undergo ideological re-education. An unknown number of lower-ranking cadres were sent to thousands of other cadre schools.



Liu Shaoqi (right), president from 1959–66, was one of a number of high officials to be denounced, imprisoned, and paraded in "struggle rallies." He died from his experiences.

Gang of Four

The Gang of Four, as they became known, orchestrated attacks on intellectuals and writers, high officials, the party, and the state and were responsible for some of the worst excesses of the Cultural Revolution. Zhang Chunqiao, critic and propagandist, Yao Wenyuan, editor-in-chief of *Shanghai Liberation Army Daily*, Wang Hongwen, a young worker, and Mao's third wife Jiang Qing, an ex-film star, dominated the political center unchallenged until Mao's death in 1976. Millions of Chinese citizens watched their televised trial in 1980–81. Jiang Qing, who was singled out by propagandists and became one of the most hated figures in China, was defiant until the end, railing against her prosecutors throughout the trial. She took her own life in 1991, while serving her life sentence.



Lynched effigies of members of the Gang of Four hanging from a tree



Chiang Kai-shek (1887–1975), leader of the KMT

Communists and Nationalists

After the fall of the empire, the political landscape changed dramatically and became dominated by two forces, the Nationalist Party or Kuomintang (KMT) and the Communist Party, founded in 1921. The Nationalists were led first by Sun Yat-sen from his power base in Guangzhou, then by General Chiang Kai-shek who seized power in 1926. In 1923 the two Parties formed a “united front” against the warlords, but in 1926 the Communists were expelled from the KMT. Chiang Kai-shek led his army to Nanjing where he tried to establish a Nationalist capital, and betrayed the Communist-led workers of Shanghai who were massacred by underworld gangsters. The Communists were driven underground and Mao Zedong retreated to the countryside.

High in the mountains of Jiangxi province, Mao and Zhu De founded the Jiangxi Soviet in 1930. From this inaccessible base, the communists began to redistribute land to the peasants and institute new marriage laws. In 1934, Chiang Kai-shek drove the communists from the area, forcing Mao to embark on the legendary Long March (*see pp262–3*).

Yan’an, where the march ended, became the new Communist Party headquarters and would remain so until 1945.

Japanese Attack


Domestic turmoil laid China open to attack, and in 1931 the Japanese occupied Manchuria, founding the puppet state of Manchukuo and placing the last Qing emperor, Pu Yi, at its head (*see p452*). By 1937 the Japanese had occupied much of northern China, Shanghai, and the Yangzi valley ruthlessly taking cities, wreaking death and devastation. The Japanese were finally driven from Chinese soil in 1945, and China was plunged into civil war.

The East Is Red

By 1947, the Communist policy of land reform was reaping rewards and gaining the support of people in the countryside. In 1948–9, the Communists gained decisive victories over the KMT. On 1 October 1949 Chairman Mao pronounced the founding of the People’s Republic of China in Beijing. Chiang Kai-shek fled to Taiwan, establishing a Nationalist government and taking with him many Imperial treasures.



Communist poster depicting Mao surrounded by the masses

<div>1912 Abdication of emperor Pu Yi marks the end of Imperial China</div>	<div>1921 Founding of the Chinese Communist Party</div> <div>1937 Japanese take much of northern China</div>	<div>1945 End of World War II; Japan defeated</div>	<div>1958 Radical reform of the Great Leap Forward</div> <div>1947 Civil War breaks out in China</div>	<div>1965 Mao launches Cultural Revolution</div>	
1910	1920	1930	1940	1950	1960
<div></div> <div>1926 Chiang Kai-shek seizes leadership of National Party</div> <div>Last Emperor Pu Yi</div>	<div>1934 Mao leads the Red Army on Long March</div> <div>1931 Japanese invasion of Manchuria</div>	<div>1951–2 Rural co-ops established</div> <div>1949 Mao proclaims founding of People's Republic of China</div>			

In the early years of the People's Republic, the Chinese worked hard to re-build a country devastated by 100 years of turmoil. New laws sought to redress inequities of the past, redistributing land and outlawing arranged marriages. In 1957 the Party launched the Hundred Flowers movement, which initially encouraged freedom of expression. Unprepared for the storm of criticism which resulted, the Party promptly branded intellectuals as "rightists" and sent them to the countryside for re-education. Frustrated with the slow rate of change, Mao launched the Great Leap Forward in 1958. Large communes providing food and childcare replaced the family, releasing manual labor and improving productivity. But unrealistic productivity targets and the falsification of statistics concealed the disastrous effect of Mao's experiment. Agricultural failure coupled with natural disasters resulted in the starvation of millions.

Having reformed agriculture and industry, Mao sought to transform society and launched the Cultural Revolution in 1965 (see pp70–71). The greatest excesses of the period were over by 1971, but the country was tightly controlled and directed until Mao's death in 1976. Deng Xiaoping emerged as leader, implementing economic reforms which returned land to the peasants and encouraged greater economic freedom.

The economic liberalization of the 1980s stimulated the economy but was unmatched by political freedom. On 4 June 1989 the



Zhou Enlai with President Nixon

democracy movement called for political reform and an end to corruption, but was brutally suppressed in Beijing's Tian'an Men Square and in other large cities. Whilst many students and intellectuals fled abroad, others remain incarcerated in China's

jails. Deng Xiaoping pressed on with economic reform, and the 1990s saw the opening of Special Economic Zones and stock exchanges in Shenzhen and Shanghai. By 1992, the economy had become one of the largest in the world.

The unprecedented rate of economic growth in the 1990s was matched by the transformation of the landscape as traditional buildings made way for modern highrises. The former colonies of Hong Kong and Macau were returned to China and foreign investment flooded in, with entrepreneurs prospering. Disbanding the state economy has also spawned inequity, and the gap between rich and poor grows increasingly wider. How the most populous nation on earth resolves the many issues it faces is of compelling interest to the rest of a world on whose future a re-awakened China is going to have a massive impact.



Chinese traders on the Stock Exchange



Little Red Book

1976 Mao dies

1978 Deng Xiaoping emerges as leader

1993 Jiang Zemin becomes president; construction of Three Gorges Dam begins

2003 Chinese launch first manned spacecraft; Hu Jintao becomes president

2008 Beijing hosts the Olympics

1970

1980

1990

2000

2010

2020

1989 Democracy movement suppressed in Tian'an Men Square

1972 President Nixon is first American president to visit China

1997 Hong Kong handed back to China; Macau, two years later

2001 China admitted as member of World Trade Organization

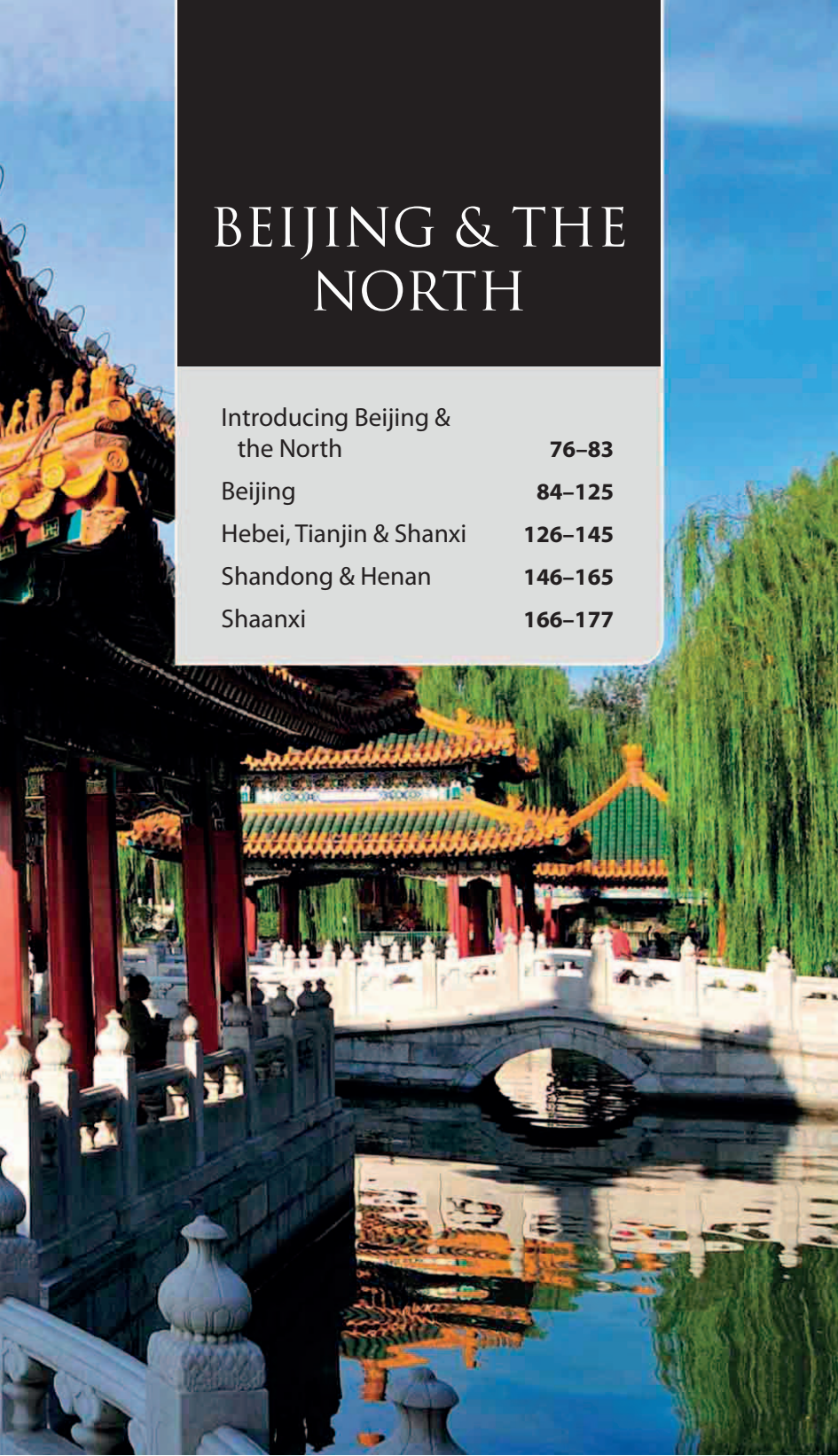
2013 Xi Jinping takes over as president

2010 Shanghai hosts the 2010 World Expo. Guangzhou also hosts the Asian Games.



BEIJING & THE NORTH

Introducing Beijing & the North	76–83
Beijing	84–125
Hebei, Tianjin & Shanxi	126–145
Shandong & Henan	146–165
Shaanxi	166–177

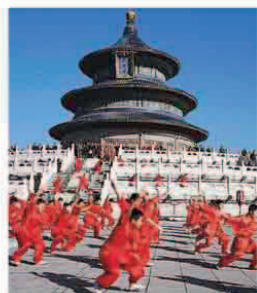


Beijing & the North at a Glance

Threaded by the yellow river and the Great Wall, China's north encompasses the six provinces of Hebei, Tianjin, Shanxi, Shandong, Henan, and Shaanxi, as well as Beijing, the nation's capital. From this vast domain, six ancient capitals governed China, leaving behind a wealth of dynastic sites, such as Beijing's magnificent Forbidden City, the Terracotta Warriors near Xi'an, and the Buddhist carvings at Longmen and Yungang. The region's religious sites include the Daoist peaks of Hua Shan and Tai Shan, the Buddhist Wutai Shan, and the Shaolin Temple. Along the coast are the ports of Tianjin and Qingdao, preserves of European architecture, and Shanhaiguan, where the Great Wall meets the sea.



Vividly painted cave interior at the Yungang Caves, Datong, Shanxi



Practicing tai ji quan, Temple of Heaven, Beijing



Getting Around

Beijing has good air, rail, and bus links to the surrounding region. There are daily flights to Shanghai, Xi'an, Chengdu, Chongqing, Shenzhen, Guangzhou, Qingdao, Hangzhou, and Hong Kong. Express trains link Beijing directly with all the region's large cities, while many smaller towns are served by slower trains. Tianjin is a major north-south rail junction. There is also a comprehensive long-distance bus service, while faster private buses ply the popular tourist routes.



The imposing Great White Dagoba at Tayuan Si, Wutai Shan, Shanxi

For additional map symbols *see back flap*

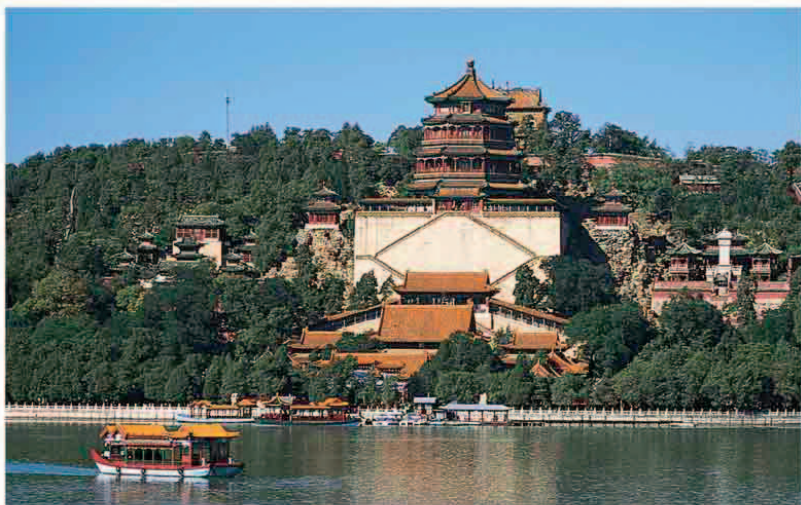
A PORTRAIT OF BEIJING & THE NORTH

The yellow river, the wellspring of Chinese culture and civilization, carves a course through the country's parched northern terrain, the historic homeland of the Han Chinese and location of the most significant monuments. Thus most visitors to the Middle Kingdom usually concentrate on these historic sites, beginning with the nation's capital, Beijing.

For millennia, the Yellow River (Huang He) has nurtured the communities strung along its banks while sporadically washing away their settlements. The great river flows through the provinces of Shaanxi, Shanxi, Henan, and Shandong, often forming a natural boundary between provinces. It also features in the names of Henan (South of the River) and Hebei (North of the River). In its long and looping journey it traverses a land rich in historic sights and cities, before spilling into Bo Hai (Bo Sea), north of the sacred mountain, Tai Shan. Occasionally, it comes across the vestiges of that other barrier, the Great Wall. Now a largely disintegrating bastion, the wall crawls across the face of North China, a reminder of the region's vulnerable position so close to the border with Inner Mongolia and erstwhile

Manchuria. Although the Great Wall was built as a defensive fortification, it could not prevent the hordes of nomadic tribes, the so-called "barbarians," from entering China.

Neolithic finds and archeological sites wrote the province of Henan into the earliest pages of Chinese history. Here, South of the Yellow River, Luoyang and Kaifeng are two of the country's most important dynastic capitals; another ancient city, Anyang, was capital of the Shang dynasty. However, it is Xi'an in Shaanxi province that is more eclipsed by its past than any other ancient capital. Xi'an's most magnificent treasures are the Terracotta Warriors (*see pp174–5*), created to guard the tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi, the Qin emperor who unified China. However Xi'an reached its zenith during the Tang



The Tower of the Fragrance of the Buddha overlooking Kunming Lake at the Summer Palace, Beijing



The modern skyline of Qingdao, Shandong Province on China's east coast

dynasty (see pp62–3), prospering because of its position at the eastern end of the Silk Road. The Grand Mosque and sizable Muslim population testify to Xi'an's cosmopolitan grandeur during that time.

Toward the end of the 13th century, the Mongol Kublai Khan established Beijing as his capital. But it was only in 1407, when the Ming emperor Yongle moved his seat of power here, that Beijing achieved imperial status. Still organized along its grand Ming and Qing dynasty lines, it is a city of straight, wide boulevards and narrow, winding alleys around an ancient palatial core, the Forbidden City. The temples and palaces are today complemented by slick shopping streets and the commercial buzz of a people coming into their own in the 21st century.

The two adjoining provinces of Hebei and Shanxi are griddles in summer and iceboxes in winter, although Hebei's eastern seaboard towns benefit from cooling sea breezes. Shanxi, on the other hand, is sometimes affected by seasonal sand storms blowing in from the Gobi Desert. Hebei's fertile soil and productive agrarian economy contrast with landlocked Shanxi's mineral-rich terrain. Both provinces are heavily

industrialized but there are still many sights that demand attention, such as the Buddhist monastery of Chongshan

Si (see p143), the holy mountain Tai Shan, and the port of Tianjin, Hebei's former capital. Despite modernization, Tianjin has preserved its European architecture, a legacy of its past as a foreign trading post. The Buddhist sculptures at the UNESCO World Heritage Site of the Longmen Caves in Luoyang (see pp160–61) are remarkable while Shandong is best known for Qufu, the birthplace of Confucius, the eminent

philosopher-sage, whose teachings, which greatly influenced Chinese culture, are acceptable once more.



Lighting incense sticks Beijing's Lama Temple



The kind of scenery that has inspired Chinese poets and artists for thousands of years, Hua Shan, Shaanxi

Beijing Opera

One among many hundreds of local operas across China, Beijing Opera began in the qing dynasty. It is said that Emperor qianlong (r.1736–96), on a tour of the south, was rather taken by the operas of Anhui and Hebei and brought these troupes back to Beijing, where a new form of opera was established. The Guangxu emperor and Dowager Empress Cixi were also keen devotees and helped develop the art form. Beijing Opera has proved remarkably resilient, surviving the persecution of actors and the banning of most of the plays during the Cultural Revolution.



Emperor Qianlong, credited with starting Beijing Opera

Beijing Opera

Visually stunning and with a distinct musical style, the plays are based on Chinese history and literature. Beijing Opera is a form of “total theater” with singing, speech, mime, acrobatics, and symbolic visual effects.



Monkey is one of the favorite characters – clever, resourceful, and brave. He appears in Chinese classic literature (see p34–5).



The colors of the painted faces symbolize the individual character's qualities. Red, for example, represents loyalty and courage; purple, solemnity and a sense of justice; green, bravery and irascibility.

Riding a horse is represented by raising a tasseled horsewhip. Other actions and movement on the stage are similarly stylized rather than realistic.



The acrobatics of Beijing Opera combine graceful gymnastics and movements from the martial arts. Training is notoriously hard. The costumes are designed to make the jumps seem more spectacular by billowing out as they spin.

Musical Instruments

Despite the dramatic visual elements of Beijing Opera, the Chinese say that they go to “listen” to opera, not to see it. The importance of the musical elements should not therefore be underestimated. Typically six or seven instrumentalists accompany the opera. The stringed instruments usually include the *erhu* or Chinese two-stringed violin, *sanxian* or three-stringed lute, and moon guitar, or possibly *pipa* (traditional lute). The main function of the instruments is to accompany the singing. Percussion instruments include clappers, gongs, and drums. These are used largely to punctuate the action; movement and sound are intimately linked. Wind instruments also sometimes feature, such as the Chinese horn, flute, and *suona*.



Mei Lanfang was the foremost interpreter of the female role type or *dan* during the opera's heyday in the 1920s and 1930s. Traditionally all female roles were played by male actors, although that has now changed.

The Four Main Roles

There are four main role types in Beijing Opera: the *sheng* (male) and *dan* (female) roles have naturalistic make-up. The *jing* or “painted faces,” in contrast, have stylized patterned, colored faces, while the *chou* are comic characters.

Sheng: these may be young or old, with beard or without.

Dan: there are six parts within this role from virtuous girl to old woman.

Chou: with a white patch on his face, the *chou* is usually dim but amusing.

Jing: the most striking looking, they also have the most forceful personality.



Regional Food: Beijing & the North

Communities developed beside the Yellow River before 6000 BC, but it is not until about 1500 BC, when written records started, that a picture of the dietary habits of the ancient Chinese becomes clear. They kept pigs and grew millet, wheat, barley, and rice and even fermented their grain to make alcoholic beverages. Later (around 1100 BC), soybeans were added to the Chinese diet, soon followed by by-products such as soy sauce and beancurd (tofu). Beijing never had a distinctive cuisine of its own, but as the center of the empire it imported elements and influences from a variety of sources.



Chinese cabbage



Candied apples on the street, a feature of northern cuisine

The Palace Kitchen

Kublai Khan made Beijing the capital in 1271 and brought simple Mongolian influences to the northern Chinese cuisine – lamb, roasting, and the hot pot. Prior to that, the national capitals had been centered around the Yellow River valley in Xi'an, Luoyang, or Kaifeng. Elaborate preparation and expensive ingredients – shark's fin, bird's nest soup, and

abalone, all imported from the south – feature as well as artistic presentation and poetic names. Imperial cuisine can be summed up as the distillation of the creations of generations of Imperial Palace chefs over almost a millennium.

Shandong

As the birthplace and home of Confucius, the cuisine of Shandong is generally regarded as the oldest and best in China. Shandong has produced the largest number of famous master chefs, and it is even said



A whole Peking duck with traditional accompaniments

Regional Dishes and Specialties



Duck pears – like a duck's head

Peking duck – an Imperial meal – must be the best known dish in north Chinese cuisine. The duck, a local Beijing variety, is carefully dried, and then brushed with a sweet marinade before being roasted over fragrant woodchips.

Finally it is carved by the chef and eaten wrapped in pancakes with a special duck sauce, slivered scallions, and cucumbers.

To accompany the duck, diners might also be served duck liver pâté, and duck soup to finish. Another specialty of the region is Mongolian Hotpot; a simple one-pot dish which suited the

nomadic way of life. Other regional specialties are made with local resources – carp from the Yellow River, king prawns and yellow croakers from the coast of Shandong, and not forgetting the aromatics – garlic, leeks, and scallions.



Mu Shu Pork: stir-fried tiger lily buds, scrambled egg, black fungus, and shredded pork – eaten with pancakes.

that the iron wok originated here as well. Shandong cuisine is popular in Beijing. As one of the most important agricultural areas of China, Shandong supplies Beijing with most of its food; its main crops are wheat, barley, sorghum, millet, and corn as well as soybeans and peanuts. Additionally, fisheries are widely developed along the Yellow River and the north China coast, particularly around the rocky Shandong peninsula where the specialties are fish, prawns, shellfish, abalones, sea slugs, and sea urchins. Fruits are also a Shandong specialty, and wines and beers – especially the famous Tsingtao beer (*see p152*) – are exported worldwide.



The art of pouring tea, shown in a Beijing restaurant

Tianjin

One of the largest cities in China, Tianjin occupies a rather unique position in Chinese cuisine. As a treaty port, Tianjin has acquired a cosmopolitan nature in many aspects of its daily life, particularly showing



Some of the wide variety of foods on display at a night food market

Russian and Japanese influences. Hence you will find a large number of beef and lamb dishes here, and the city is famous for its dumplings.

Mongolian & Muslim Cuisine

The Chinese Muslim school of cooking derives mainly from the Hui, the Uighur, and the Mongolian minorities. The Hui are distributed throughout China, but their traditional area of settlement is in the north. The Uighur are mainly in the northwest, while the Mongols are traditionally nomadic and spread throughout the north. As Muslims they do not eat pork, so beef, lamb, and mutton cooked on skewers are important foods in their daily diet. Hand-made noodles and flat breads also feature.

On the Menu

Drunken Empress Chicken

Supposedly named after Yang Guifei, an imperial concubine overly fond of her alcohol.

Stir-fried Kidney-flowers

These are actually pork kidneys criss-cross cut into "flowers" and stir-fried with bamboo shoots, water chestnuts, and black fungus.

Fish Slices with Wine Sauce

Deep-fried fish fillet braised in a wine sauce.

Phoenix-tail Prawns

King prawn tails coated in batter and bread crumbs, then deep-fried.

Lamb in Sweet Bean Sauce

Tender fillet of lamb sliced and cooked in sweet bean paste with vinegar to give it that classic sweet and sour taste.

Hot Candied Apples A popular Chinese dessert.



Lamb & Scallions: sliced lamb rapidly stir-fried with garlic, leeks or scallions, and sweet bean paste.



Mongolian Hotpot: thinly sliced lamb, vegetables, and noodles dipped in boiling water and an array of sauces.



Sweet & Sour Carp: the quintessential Shandong dish traditionally made with Yellow River carp.



BEIJING

The capital of the People's Republic of China is one of the world's largest cities with a population of around 20 million. Beijing first became an imperial capital during the Mongol Yuan dynasty (1279–1368), and both the Ming and Qing emperors ruled from the Forbidden City at its heart. Today, an all-pervading spirit of change has added an exciting new dimension to the city.



Expanding in concentric rings from the Forbidden City at its core, the grid-like layout of modern-day Beijing still echoes its Ming dynasty blueprint. Old Beijing survives in its temples, palaces, and old alleyways (*hutong*) that crisscross the city outside the second ring road, which itself charts the loop of the demolished City Wall. Within this ancient outline are huge avenues, vaulting flyovers, towering skyscrapers, shopping malls, and the vast expanse of Tian'an Men Square. The city that the 13th-century Mongol warlord Genghis Khan once put to the torch is undergoing a new, dramatic facelift, as a result of a culmination of a quarter-century of reform, the pressures of a growing population, and the 2008 Olympics. Beijing is a microcosm of modern China and all its contradictions,

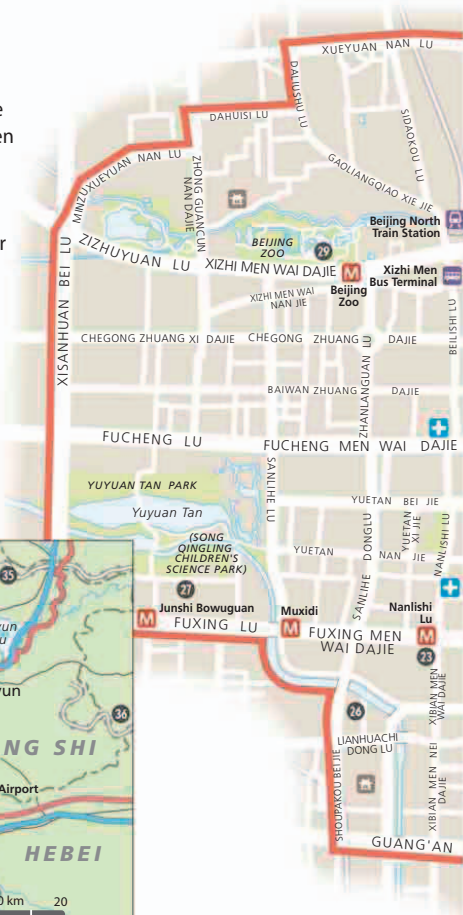
a bustling mix of affluent shoppers, trendy youths, beggars, and plain-clothes police. Shopping is a popular pastime for middle-class Beijingers, and the capital now offers some of the glitziest malls and most fashionable brand stores in Asia. Bars and cafés proliferate, and entertainment options range from traditional Beijing opera and spectacular acrobatics to modern jazz and even raucous punk clubs. And in the capital's many restaurants, China's diverse cuisine can be sampled across its range – from the fierce spices of Sichuan to the dainty morsels of Cantonese *dim sum*. On the roads, the city's army of bicycles may be under pressure from the huge influx of new cars and, indeed, are banned on the main roads, but for the time being pedal power is still one of the best ways to get around.



Pleasure cruise on Kunming Lake, Summer Palace

Exploring Beijing

Beijing's most significant sights and districts are marked on this map. At the core is the Forbidden City, with Tian'an Men Square and Qian Men to the south, and the shopping district of Wangfujing to its east. North of the Forbidden City stand the Drum and Bell Towers and farther northeast is the Buddhist Lama Temple. North of Beihai Park, the Mansion of Prince Gong stands in a historic *hutong* quarter, the old alleyways that riddle the city. To the south, Tian Tan, known as the Temple of Heaven, is a majestic example of Ming dynasty design. Beijing's environs are also dotted with sites including the magnificent Great Wall and the scenic Ming Tombs.



Sights at a Glance

Historic Buildings, Sites & Neighborhoods

- 1 Tian'an Men Square pp88-9
- 3 Qian Men
- 4 Underground City
- 6 Dazhalan & Liulichang
- 8 Forbidden City pp92-5
- 11 Prince Gong's Mansion
- 12 Drum & Bell Towers
- 19 Ancient Observatory
- 30 Summer Palace pp106-8
- 31 Yuanming Yuan
- 34 Ming Tombs pp110-11
- 35 Great Wall of China pp112-15
- 36 Eastern Qing Tombs
- 37 Marco Polo Bridge
- 39 Peking Man Site
- 40 National Olympic Stadium
- 41 Chuandixia

Museums & Galleries

- 2 National Museum of China
- 5 Beijing Planning Exhibition Hall
- 17 National Art Museum of China
- 20 Southeast Corner Watchtower
- 21 Beijing Natural History Museum
- 23 Beijing Capital Museum
- 27 Military Museum of the
Chinese People's Revolution

Temples, Churches & Mosques

- 7 South Cathedral
- 13 Lama Temple
- 14 Confucius Temple
- 16 Dong Yue Miao
- 22 *Temple of Heaven pp102-3*
- 24 Cow Street Mosque
- 25 Fayuan Temple
- 26 White Clouds Temple

- 28 Miaoying Temple White Dagoba
- 32 Great Bell Temple
- 38 Tanzhe Temple

Shops & Markets

- 18 Wangfujing Street

Parks & Zoos

- 9 Jing Shan Park
- 10 Bei Hai Park
- 15 Di Tan Park
- 29 Beijing Zoo
- 33 Xiang Shan Park



0 km 1
0 miles 1

Key

- Street-by-Street area: see pp88–9
- National highway
- Major road
- Provincial border
- Great Wall of China

Getting Around

A system of ring roads encircles the city center, and the best way to explore this area is by taxi, by subway, or by bicycle (see pp620–21). The bus service, though extensive, is generally slow and overcrowded. Organized tours are another option for a quick overview of the sights. Most hotels and agencies operate tour buses for visiting sights outside Beijing, although hiring a taxi for the day allows for greater flexibility.

For additional map symbols see back flap

● Street-by-Street: Tian'an Men Square

天安门广场

Tian'an Men Guangchang – the Square of the Gate of Heavenly Peace – is a vast open concrete expanse at the heart of modern Beijing. With Mao's Mausoleum at its focal point, and bordered by 1950s Communist-style buildings and ancient gates from Beijing's now leveled city walls, the square is usually filled with visitors strolling about as kites flit overhead. The square has also traditionally served as a stage for popular demonstrations and is most indelibly associated with the student protests of 1989 and their gory climax.



Cyclists along Chang'an Jie



Great Hall of the People

Seat of the Chinese legislature, the vast auditorium and banqueting halls are open for part of the day except when the National People's Congress is in session.



★ Zhengyang Men

Along with the Arrow Tower this tower formed a double gate known as the Qian Men. It now houses a museum on the history of Beijing.

The Arrow Tower or Jian Lou,
like Zhengyang Men, was first
built in the Ming dynasty.

★ Mao's Mausoleum

Flanked by revolutionary statues, the building contains the embalmed body of Chairman Mao. His casket, raised from its refrigerated chamber, is on view mornings and afternoons.



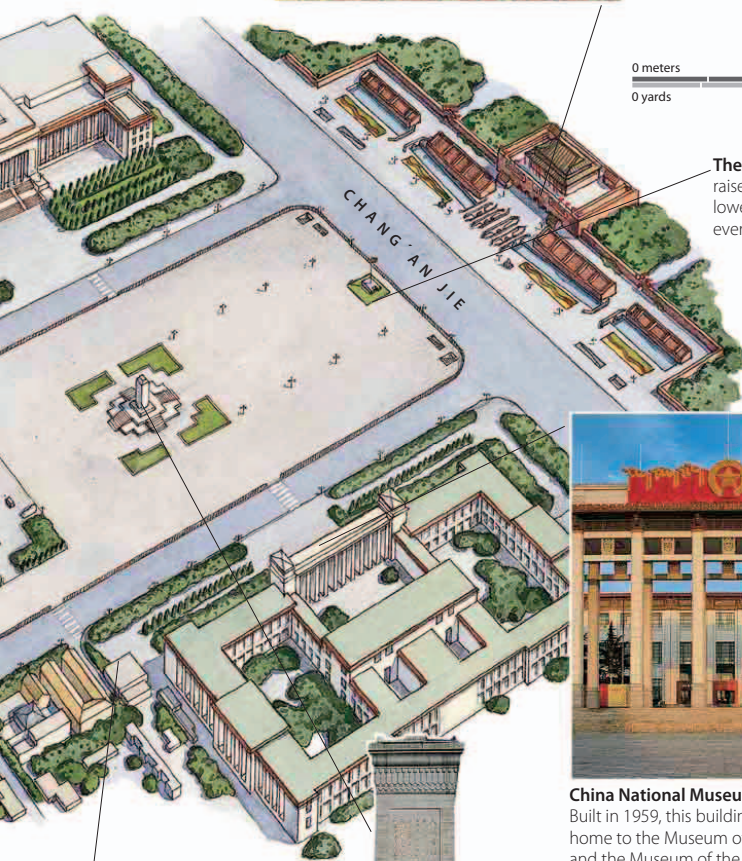
★ Tian'an Men

Mao proclaimed the founding of the People's Republic of China on October 1, 1949 from this Ming dynasty gate, where his huge portrait still remains.



Locator Map

See Beijing Street Finder Map 3



0 meters 20
0 yards 20

The national flag is raised at dawn and lowered at dusk every day.



Bags, coats, and cameras must be left here before visiting Mao's Mausoleum.



China National Museum

Built in 1959, this building was originally home to the Museum of Chinese History and the Museum of the Revolution, now merged. It reopened to great fanfare in 2011 after three years of renovation. The halls also host exhibitions from other world class museums.

Monument to the People's Heroes

Erected in 1958, the granite monument is decorated with bas-reliefs of episodes from China's revolutionary history and calligraphy from Communist veterans Mao Zedong and Zhou Enlai.



Zhengyang Men, Qian Men – part of Beijing's central fortifications

2 National Museum of China 中国国家博物馆

Tian'an Men Square. **Map** 3 C2. **M**
Tian'an Men Dong. **Tel** (010) 6511
9207. **Open** 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.
 chnmuseum.cn

The National Museum of China reopened in 2011 after a three-year program of renovation. Reported to be the largest museum in the world, it now stands at more than 2 million sq ft (185,806 sq m), with 49 rooms holding around a million cultural relics, including the cowboy hat worn by Deng Xiaoping on a trip to the United States and other noteworthy artifacts. Two permanent exhibitions cover China's ancient history and from 1840 to the present day, although the chaos of the Cultural Revolution is glossed over with just a single photograph.

3 Qian Men 前门

Qian Men Dajie. **Map** 3 C2. **M** Qian
Men. **Open** 8:30am–3:30pm daily.

Qian Men or the Front Gate consists of two towers, the **Zhengyang Men**, on the southern edge of Tian'an Men Square, and the **Jian Lou** (Arrow Tower) just to the south. Zhengyang Men (Facing the Sun Gate) was the most imposing of the nine gates of the inner city wall that divided Beijing's imperial quarters in the Forbidden City from the "Chinese City," where, during the Manchu Qing dynasty, the Chinese inhabitants lived.

Rising 131 ft (40 m), the gate stands on the north-south axis that runs through the Tian'an Men and the Forbidden City.

Its museum has dioramas of the old city walls, and photographs of Beijing's old streets.

Zhengyang Men

Tel (010) 6522 9386. **Open** daily.

4 Underground City

北京地下城

62 Xi Damo Hutong. **Map** 4 D2. **M**
Qian Men. **Tel** (010) 6702 2657.

Closed to the public.

At the height of the Sino-Soviet rift in the 1960s, Mao Zedong gave orders to carve out a vast network of bombproof tunnels beneath Beijing. The resulting maze of tunnels was equipped with weapons, hospitals, and large stocks of water and food.

The Underground City has

been open to visitors in the past, but it is now closed due to damaged and blocked tunnels.



War Hospital sign,
Underground City

5 Beijing Planning Exhibition Hall 展览馆

20 Qian Men Dong Dajie. **Map** 3 C2.
M Qian Men. **Tel** (010) 6701 7074.
Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

This impressive museum, just east of the historic Qian Men area, offers a glimpse into what Beijing's future has in store. The highlight is a huge scale model of what the city should look

Beijing's City Walls

The earliest defensive walls around Beijing (then called Yanjing, later Zhongdu) were erected in the Jin dynasty (1115–1234) and modeled on the wall around Kaifeng (see p156). The Mongol Kublai Khan rebuilt Zhongdu, naming it Dadu, and encompassed it with a 19-mile (30-km) wall. It was only during the Ming era (1368–1644) that the walls took on their final shape of an Outer Wall with seven gates, and an Inner Wall with nine gates. The magnificent Inner Wall was 38 ft (11.5 m) high and 64 ft (19.5 m) wide. The walls and most of their gates were unfortunately demolished in the 1950s and 60s to make way for roads. Of the inner wall, only Qian Men and Desheng Men survive, while the outer wall retains only Dongbian Men (see p101). The old gates live on as place names on the second ring road, and as the names of stations on the Beijing Underground Loop line.



Arrow Tower of Qian Men



Shop selling Communist memorabilia, Dazhalan Jie

like in 2020, complete with a sound and light show. In contrast, the museum also has models and historical photographs of old Beijing.

6 Dazhalan & Liulichang 大栅栏和琉璃厂

Map 3 C2. Qian Men.

South of Qian Men are the narrow and lively hutongs (see p97) of the old Chinese quarter. The inner city wall and its gates separated the "Inner City" containing the imperial quarters of the Manchu emperors from the "Chinese City," where the Chinese lived apart from their Qing overlords. The district has been renovated to create a Qing dynasty appearance, complete with a tourist tram. Running west off the northern end of Qian Men Dajie is Dazhalan Jie, whose name "Big Barrier Street" refers to the now-demolished gates that were closed every night to fence off the residents from Qian Men and the Inner City. There are hutong tours by rickshaw – drivers just wait in the street in Dazhalan.



Cyclists on restored Liulichang Jie

The area is a great place for browsing, and has several quaint Qing-era specialty shops. Located down the first alley on the left from Dazhalan Jie is the century-old pickle shop **Liubiju**, while **Ruifuxiang**, on the right-hand side of Dazhalan, is renowned for its silks and traditional Chinese garments. On the south side of Dazhalan Jie is the Chinese medicine shop **Tongrentang Pharmacy**, which has been in business since 1669 and enjoyed imperial patronage. On the same side of the road, the **Zhangyiyuan Chazhuang** or Zhangyiyuan Teashop has been supplying fine teas since the early 20th century. West of Dazhalan Jie is Liulichang Jie, a fascinating place to wander – it

has everything from ceramics to antique Chinese books. Beware of so-called "antiques," which should be judiciously examined before buying.

7 South Cathedral 南堂

141 Qian Men Xi Dajie. Map 3 A2.

Xuanwu Men.

The first Catholic church to be built in Beijing, South Cathedral (Nan Tang) stands close to the

Xuanwu Men underground station, on the site of Jesuit Matteo Ricci's former residence. Ricci was the first Jesuit missionary to reach Beijing. Arriving in 1601, he sent gifts of European curiosities such as clocks, mathematical instruments, and a world map to the Wanli emperor, thus gaining his goodwill, and was eventually given permission to establish a church.

Like many of China's churches, this restored building has suffered much devastation. Construction first began in 1605, and it subsequently burned down in 1775. It was rebuilt a century later, only to be destroyed once again during the Boxer Rebellion of 1900. The cathedral was rebuilt in 1904. Also known as St. Mary's Church, it is the city's largest functioning Catholic cathedral, and has regular services in a variety of languages including Chinese, English, and Latin. Service timings are posted on the noticeboard. A small gift shop is located near the south gate.



Stained glass at the South Cathedral (Nan Tang)

8 Forbidden City

故宫

Forming the very heart of Beijing, the Forbidden City, officially known as the Palace Museum (Gugong), is China's most magnificent architectural complex and was completed in 1420. The huge palace is a compendium of imperial architecture and a lasting monument of dynastic China from which 24 emperors ruled for nearly 500 years. The symbolic center of the Chinese universe, the palace was the exclusive domain of the imperial court and dignitaries until the abdication in 1912. It was opened to the public in 1949.



Chinese Lions

Pairs of lions guard the entrances of halls. The male is portrayed with a ball under his paw, while the female has a lion cub.

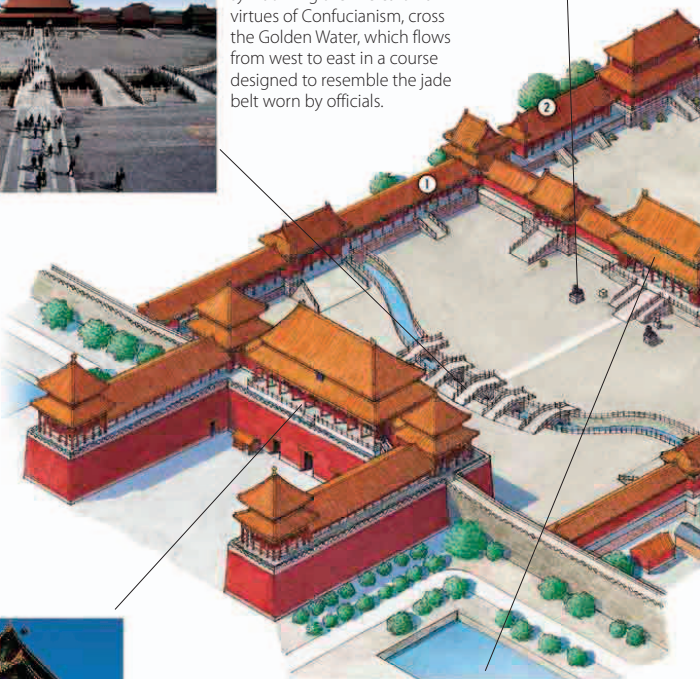


★ Golden Water

Five marble bridges, symbolizing the five cardinal virtues of Confucianism, cross the Golden Water, which flows from west to east in a course designed to resemble the jade belt worn by officials.

Outer Court

At the center of the Forbidden City, the Outer Court is easily its most impressive part. Most of the other buildings in the complex were there to service this city within a city.



Meridian Gate (Wu Men)

From the balcony the emperor would review his armies and perform ceremonies marking the start of a new calendar.



Gate of Supreme Harmony

Originally used for receiving visitors, the 78-ft (24-m) high, double-eaved hall was later used for banquets during the Qing dynasty (1644–1912).



★ Marble Carriageway

The central ramp carved with dragons chasing pearls among clouds was reserved for the emperor.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

North of Tian'an Men Square.

Map 1 C5. **Tel** (010) 8500 7421.

Open Apr–Oct: 8:30am–5pm daily; Nov–Mar: 8:30am–4:30pm daily.



Transport

w dpm.org.cn



Roof Guardians

An odd number of these figures, all associated with water, are supposed to protect the building from fire.



★ Hall of Supreme Harmony

The largest hall in the palace, this was used for major occasions such as the enthronement of an emperor. Inside the hall, the ornate throne sits beneath a fabulously colored ceiling.

KEY

- ① Offices of the imperial secretariat
- ② Storehouses
- ③ Imperial sundial
- ④ The Hall of Middle Harmony received the emperor before official ceremonies.
- ⑤ Bronze cauldrons were filled with water in case of fire.
- ⑥ Hall of Preserving Harmony
- ⑦ Gate of Heavenly Purity

Design by Numbers

The harmonious principle of *yin* and *yang* is the key to Chinese design. As odd numbers represent *yang* (the preferred masculine element associated with the emperor), the numbers three, five, seven, and the ultimate odd number – nine, recur in architectural details. It is said that the Forbidden City has 9,999 rooms and, as nine times nine is especially fortunate, the doors for imperial use usually contain 81 brass studs.



Palace door with a lucky number of studs

Exploring the Forbidden City

A short distance north through the Gate of Heavenly Purity lies the Inner Court with three impressive inner palaces. Further on through the Imperial Flower Garden stands the Shenwu Gate, the north gate of the Forbidden City, an exit from the palace that leads to a walk across to Jing Shan Park (see p96). On the western and eastern flanks of the Inner Court, it is also possible to explore numerous halls, some of which house museum collections (entry fee payable).



The Pavilion of a Thousand Autumns in the Imperial Gardens

The Inner Court

Beyond the Hall of Preserving Harmony (Outer Court) lies a large but narrow courtyard with gates leading to the open areas east and west of the Outer Court and a main gate, the **Gate of Heavenly Purity**, leading to the Inner Court. Here lie three splendid palaces, mirroring those of the Outer Court but on a smaller scale. The double-eaved **Palace of Heavenly Purity** was used as the imperial sleeping quarters and for the reception of officials. It was here that the last Ming emperor, Chongzhen, wrote his final missive in red ink, before getting drunk, killing his 15-year-old daughter and his concubines, and then hanging himself on Jing Shan (see p96), just north of the palace, as peasant rebels swarmed through the capital. Beyond lie the **Hall of Union**, used as a throne room by the empress, and the **Palace of Earthly Tranquillity**, the living quarters of the Ming empresses. During the Qing dynasty, the hall was used for Manchurian shaman rites, including animal sacrifice.

The Imperial Gardens

The **Imperial Flower Garden**, north of the three inner palaces and the Gate of Earthly Tranquillity, dates from the reign of the Ming Yongle emperor. It is symmetrically laid out with pavilions, temples, and

halls as well as a rock garden and ancient trees. On the west and east sides of the garden are the charming Thousand Autumns Pavilion and Ten Thousand Springs Pavilion, each topped with a circular roof. Positioned centrally in the north of the garden, the **Hall of Imperial Peace** formerly served as a temple, and, on top of the lofty rockery in the northeast of the garden, the Imperial View Pavilion rises with long views over the gardens and beyond. During the Qing dynasty, sacrifices were performed in the gardens on the seventh day of the seventh lunar month (China's equivalent of Valentine's Day) by the emperor, empress, and imperial concubines to a pair of stars that represent lovers.

Eastern Palaces

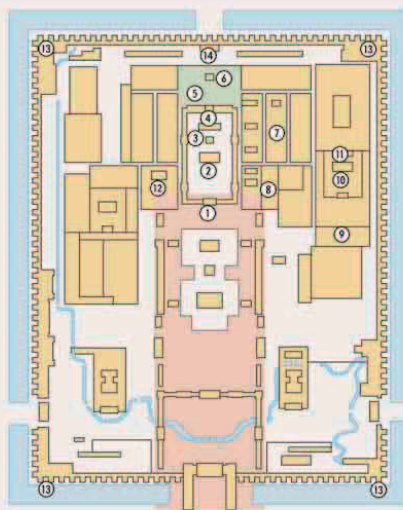
On the east side of the Inner Court lies a much closer knit series of smaller palaces and courtyards formerly used as the residences of imperial concubines. Nowadays, some of these areas serve as museums of jade, paintings, enamels, and antique collectibles, including the impressive Clock Exhibition Hall (housed in the **Palace of Eternal Harmony**) with its



Imperial five-clawed dragons on a glazed Nine Dragon Screen

Chinese Dragons

The Chinese dragon is a curious hybrid of sometimes many animal parts – snake's body, deer horns, bull's ears, hawk's claws and fish scales. Endowed with magical characteristics, it can fly, swim, change into other animals, bring rainfall and ward off evil spirits. The five-clawed dragon represented the power of the emperor, and therefore could only adorn his imperial buildings. The Chinese dragon is a beneficent beast offering protection and good luck, hence its depiction on screens and marble carriageways, and its significance, even today, in festivals such as Chinese New Year.



The Forbidden City

- ① Gate of Heavenly Purity
- ② Palace of Heavenly Purity
- ③ Hall of Union
- ④ Palace of Earthly Tranquility
- ⑤ Imperial Flower Garden
- ⑥ Hall of Imperial Peace
- ⑦ Palace of Eternal Harmony
- ⑧ Palace of Abstinence
- ⑨ Nine Dragon Screen
- ⑩ Imperial Zenith Hall
- ⑪ Palace of Peaceful Longevity
- ⑫ Hall of Mental Cultivation
- ⑬ Arrow Tower
- ⑭ Gate of Divine Prowess

0 meters 300
0 yards 300

Key

- Imperial buildings
- Area illustrated (see pp92–3)



sizeable and fascinating display. Note that these are occasionally moved to other halls and at some an entry fee is payable.

Among the collection are elaborate Chinese, British, and French timepieces, donated or collected by Qing emperors. In the southeast of the inner court is the **Palace of Abstinence**, where the emperor fasted before sacrificial ceremonies.

Further southeast stands a beautiful **Nine Dragon Screen**, a 100-ft (31-m) long spirit wall made from richly glazed tiles and similar to the screen in Beihai Park (see p96). Screens were used to shield areas from sight and allow visitors to make themselves presentable. The screen leads on to the jewelry displays housed in a series of halls in the northeast of the complex, including the **Imperial Zenith Hall** and the **Palace of Peaceful Longevity**. These halls contain an array of decorative objects and tools used by the emperor. Northwest of the Palace of Peaceful Longevity is its flower garden, a tranquil strip of rockeries and pavilions.



Tile relief by the Hall of Mental Cultivation

Western Palaces

Much of the western flank of the Forbidden City is closed to visitors, but the halls west of the three inner palaces are accessible.

The Hall of Mental Cultivation

was used by Yongzheng (see p115) for his residence, rather than the Hall of Heavenly Purity, where his father, Kangxi, had lived

for 60 years. The East Warm Chamber of the Hall of Mental Cultivation was the site of the formal abdication by Henry Pu Yi, the last emperor, on February 12, 1912 (see p452).

The Palace Walls

The wall around the Forbidden City is marked at each corner by an elaborate **Arrow Tower**, notable for its many eaves. The northern gate of the palace is called the **Gate of Divine Prowess** or Shenwu Men, and served as a combined bell and drum tower. The palace wall was enclosed within a moat and another wall ran around the grounds of the Imperial City. Beyond this lay the inner and outer city walls of Beijing. Damaged in the 1950s and 1960s, only a few parts of the Imperial City wall survive, while the city walls have all but vanished. However, the wall of the Forbidden City and its four gates have survived intact and can still be admired.



One of four arrow towers at each corner of the palace wall



Beihai with Jing Shan's summit in the background

9 Jing Shan Park 景山公园

44 Jingshan Xi Jie, Xicheng. **Map** 1 C4.
M Dong Si. **Tel** (010) 6404 4071.
Open 6:30am–7:30pm daily. 📶

Situated on Beijing's north-south axis, Jing Shan Park has its origins in the Yuan dynasty (1279–1368). Its hill was created from earth that was excavated while building the palace moat during the reign of the Ming Yongle emperor. In the early years of the Ming dynasty it was known as Wansui Shan (Long Life Hill), but was renamed Jing Shan (View or Prospect Hill) in the Qing era. Foreign residents also referred to it as Coal Hill (Mei Shan), supposedly because coal was stored at the foot of the hill although other theories exist.

Until the fall of the Qing, Jing Shan was linked to the Forbidden City and was restricted to imperial use. The hill's purpose was to protect the imperial palaces within the Forbidden City from malignant northern influences, which brought death and destruction according to classical *feng shui*. However, it failed to save the last Ming emperor Chongzhen, who hanged himself from a locust tree (*huaishu*) in the park in 1644, when rebel troops forced their way into Beijing. Another tree, planted after the original tree was cut down, marks the spot in the park's southeast. The park is

dotted with several pavilions and halls, but the highlight of any visit is the superb view of the Forbidden City from the hill's Wanchun Ting (Wanchun Pavilion).

10 Bei Hai Park 北海公园

1 Wenjin Jie, Xicheng. **Map** 1 C4. **M**
Tian'an Men Xi. **Tel** (010) 6403 1102.
Open 6am–8pm daily. 📶 📷

White Dagoba,
Bei Hai Park

An imperial garden for more than 1,000 years, Bei Hai Park was opened to the public in 1925. Filled with artificial hills, pavilions, and temples, it is associated with Kublai Khan, who redesigned it during the Mongol Yuan dynasty. The Tuancheng (Round City), near the south entrance, has a huge, decorated jade urn belonging to him. The park is named after its

extensive lake, **Bei Hai**, whose southern end is bordered by the inaccessible Zhong Nan Hai, the Communist Party Headquarters. In the middle of Bei Hai, Jade Island was supposedly made from the earth excavated while creating the lake. It is topped by the 118-ft (36-m) high **White Dagoba**, a Tibetan-style stupa built to honor the visit of the fifth Dalai Lama in 1651. Beneath the huge dagoba, **Yongan Si** comprises a series of ascending halls. The lake's northern shore has several sights, including the massive **Nine Dragon Screen**,

an 89-ft (27-m) long spirit wall made of colorful glazed tiles. Depicting nine intertwining dragons, it was designed to obstruct evil spirits. The Xiaoxitian Temple lies to the west.

11 Prince Gong's Mansion 恭王府

17 Qianhai Xi Jie, Xicheng. **Map** 1 B3.
M Gulou. **Tel** (010) 8328 8149.
Open 8:30am–4:30pm daily. 📶
w pgm.org.cn

Beijing's most complete example of a historic mansion is situated in a charming *hutong* district west of Qian Hai. It was supposedly the inspiration behind the residence portrayed by Cao Xueqin in his classic 18th-century novel *Dream of the Red Chamber* (see pp34–5). Built during the reign of the Qianlong emperor, the house is extensive and its charming garden is a pattern of open corridors and pavilions, dotted with pools and gateways. Originally built for Heshun, a Manchu official and the emperor's favorite, the residence was appropriated by the imperial household after he was found guilty of using regal motifs in his mansion design. It was later bequeathed to Prince Gong in the Xianfeng emperor's reign (r.1851–61). The house is popular with tour groups, so early morning is the best time to visit and afterwards, the local *hutongs* can be explored. Beijing Opera is performed in its Grand Opera House.

Elaborate arched gateway,
Prince Gong's Mansion

Beijing's Courtyard Houses

At first glance, Beijing seems a thoroughly modern city, but a stroll through the city's alleyways (*hutong*) reveals the charm of old Beijing. These *hutong* – weaving across much of central Beijing – are where many Beijing residents (*Beijingren*) still live. Typically running east to west, *hutong* are created by the walls of courtyard houses (*siheyuan*). Formerly the homes of officials and the well-to-do, many were taken over by the state but they are now increasingly privately owned. The *hutong* are very easy to find, try the alleyways between the main streets south of Qian Men, or around Hou Hai and Qian Hai. The modernization of Beijing has destroyed many traditional *siheyuan*, but a few have been converted into hotels, allowing the visitor a closer look at this disappearing world.

Crowded courtyards As space became an issue in Beijing, additional buildings filled in the large courtyards. Several families may be living together in one *siheyuan*.

The main hall was the most northerly and usually reserved for the eldest of the family, such as the grandparents.



Wall adds privacy and keeps out spirits as they are unable to turn corners.

The open courtyard lets in both the sunlight and the wind and cold.

The number of halls and courtyards determines the grandeur of the residence.

Walls were important to the Chinese psyche – even in the secure capital, they felt the need to retreat behind them.

Entrance is at the southeastern corner as prescribed by *feng shui*.

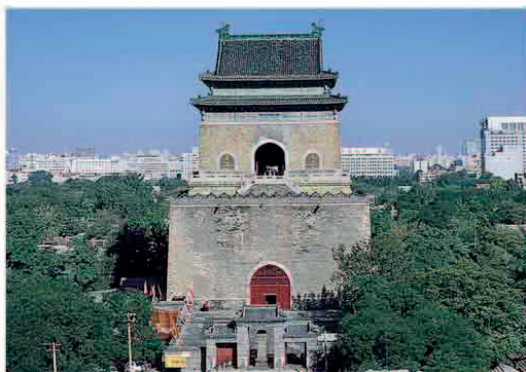


Social housing With several families living together, a strong community spirit is fostered, while the *hutong* outside becomes an extension of the home.



Typical Beijing *hutong*

You can take organized rickshaw tours of the *hutong*, sometimes with a visit to Prince Gong's Mansion (see p96), but it can be more fun to explore them by yourself.



A view of the Bell Tower from Beijing's Drum Tower

12 Drum & Bell Towers

Northern end of Di'an Men Wai Daijie, Dongcheng. **Map** 1 C2. **M** Gulou. **Tel** (010) 8402 7869. **Open** 9am–5pm daily. 📶

Located on the north-south meridian that bisects the Forbidden City and Tian'an Men Square, the Drum Tower (Gu Lou) rises up from a historic Beijing *hutong* district (see p97). The squat structure seen today was originally built in 1420 during the reign of the Ming Yongle emperor. Visitors can climb the steep stairs to look out over the city and inspect

the 25 drums there. The one large and 24 smaller drums were beaten to mark the hours of the day. According to the official Chinese accounts, the original drums were destroyed by the foreign soldiers of the international army that relieved Beijing during the Boxer Rebellion (see p439).

A short walk north of the Drum Tower, the Bell Tower (Zhong Lou) is an edifice from 1745, which replaced an earlier tower that had burnt down. Suspended within the tower is a 15-ft (4.5-m) high and 42-ton (42,674-kg) bell, that was cast in 1420. Visitors can pay to ring the bell for good luck.

13 Lama Temple

雍和宫

12 Yonghe Gong Dajie, Dongcheng. **Map** 2 E2. **M** Yonghe Gong. **Tel** (010) 6404 3769. **Open** 9am–4pm daily. 📶

Beijing's most spectacular temple complex, the Lama Temple (Yonghegong) was constructed during the 17th century and converted into a Tibetan lamasery in 1744. Its five main halls are a stylistic blend of Han, Mongol, and Tibetan motifs. The first hall has a traditional display – the plump laughing Buddha, Milefo, is back-to-back with Wei Tuo, the Protector of Buddhist Doctrine, and flanked by the Four Heavenly Kings. **Yonghe Hall** beyond has three manifestations of Buddha, flanked by 18 *luohan* – those freed from the cycle of rebirth. Even farther back, the Tibetan-styled **Falun Hall** or Hall of the Wheel of Law has a statue of Tsongkhapa, the founder of the Yellow Hat sect of Tibetan Buddhism (see pp526–7).

The highlight, however, is encapsulated within the towering **Wanfu Pavilion** (Wanfu Ge) – a vast 55-ft (17-m) high statue of Maitreya (the Future Buddha), carved from a single block of sandalwood.



The striking main gateway of the colorful Lama Temple

For hotels and restaurants in this area see pp558–63 and pp572–85



Statue of Confucius at the main entrance, Confucius Temple

The splendid exhibition of Tibetan Buddhist objects at the temple's rear includes statues of the deities Padmasambhava (Guru Rinpoche), and the Tibetan equivalent of Guanyin, Chenresig, alongside ritual objects such as the scepter-like *dorje* (thunderbolt) and *dril bu* (bell), symbols of the male and female energies. Few captions are in English.

14 Confucius Temple 孔庙

13 Guozijian Jie, Dongcheng. **Map** 2 E2. **M** Yonghe Gong. **Tel** (010) 8402 3882. **Open** 9am–5pm daily. 📶

Adjacent to the Lama Temple, the Confucius Temple is the largest in China outside Qufu, the philosopher's birthplace in Shandong province (see p148). The alley leading to the temple has a fine *pailou* (decorative archway), few of which survive in Beijing. First built in 1302 during the Mongol Yuan dynasty, the temple was expanded in 1906 in the reign of Emperor Guangxu. It is a tranquil place that offers respite from the city's bustle. Around 200 ancient stelae stand in the silent courtyard in front of the main hall (Dacheng Dian), inscribed with the names of those who successfully passed the imperial civil service exams.

Additional stelae are propped up on the backs of *bixi* (mythical cross between a tortoise and a dragon), within pavilions surrounded by cypress trees. On a marble terrace in the main hall are statues of Confucius and some of his disciples.

15 Di Tan Park 地坛公园

N of the Lama Temple, Dongcheng. **Map** 2 E1. **M** Yonghe Gong. **Tel** (010) 6421 4657. **Open** 6am–9pm daily. 📶

An ideal place to stroll amidst trees, Di Tan Park was named after the Temple of Earth (Di Tan), which was the venue for imperial sacrifices. The park's altar (Fangze Tan) dates to the Ming dynasty and its square shape represents the earth.

Under the Ming, five main altars were established at the city's cardinal points – Tian Tan (Temple of Heaven) in the south, Di Tan in the north, Ri Tan (Temple of the Sun) in the east, Yue Tan (Temple of the Moon) in the west, and Sheji Tan (Temple of Land and Grain) in the center. Mirroring ancient ceremonies, a lively temple fair (*miaohui*) is held during the Chinese New Year (see pp48–9), to welcome the spring planting season and appease the gods.



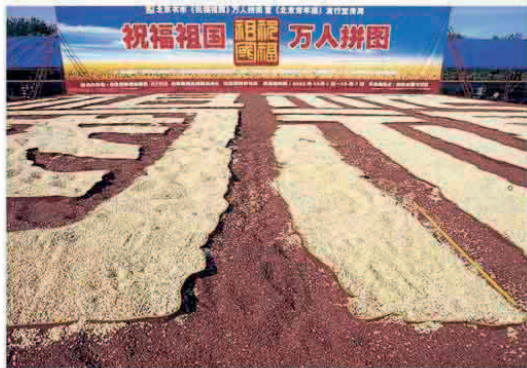
Guardian at entrance, Dong Yue Miao

16 Dong Yue Miao 东岳庙

141 Chaoyang Men Wai Dajie, Chaoyang. **Map** 2 F4. **M** Chaoyang Men. **Tel** (010) 6551 3883. **Open** 8:30am–4:30pm Tue–Sun. 📶

On Beijing's eastern side near Chaoyang's Workers' Stadium, the mesmerizing Dong Yue Miao takes its name from the Daoist Eastern Peak, Dong Yue, also known as Tai Shan (see pp150–51). It is fronted by a fabulous glazed Ming dynasty *pailang* inscribed with the characters "Zhisi Daizong," meaning "offer sacrifices to Mount Tai (Tai Shan) in good order."

This colorful and active temple, dating to the early 14th century, was restored at considerable cost in 1999, and is tended by Daoist monks. The main courtyard leads into the Hall of Tai Shan, where there are statues of the God of Tai Shan and his attendants. The greatest attractions here are over 70 "Departments," filled with vivid Daoist gods and demons, whose functions are explained in English captions. In Daoist lore, the spirits of the dead go to Tai Shan, and many Departments dwell on the afterlife. The Department for Increasing Wealth and Longevity, for example, offers cheerful advice.



Corn laid out to form Chinese characters, temple festival, Di Tan Park

17 National Art Museum of China 中国美术馆

1 Wusi Dajie, Dongcheng. **Map** 2 D4.
M Dong Si. **Tel** (010) 6401 7076.
Open 9am–5pm daily, last entry 4pm.
W namoc.org

Hosting exhibitions of Chinese and international art, as well as occasional photographic displays, the National Art Museum of China (Zhongguo Meishuguan) has 14 halls over three levels. This quite ordinary building holds an exciting range of Chinese modern art, which suffers less censorship than other media, such as film or literature. Magazines such as *Time Out Beijing* and *The Beijinger* carry details of current and forthcoming exhibitions.

18 Wangfujing Street 王府井

Map 4 D1. **M** Wangfujing. Night Market: **Open** 5:30pm–10pm daily. St. Joseph's Church: 74 Wangfujing Dajie.
Open early morning during services.

Bustling Wangfujing Street (Wangfujing Dajie), Beijing's original shopping street, is filled with department stores and giant malls such as the Sun Dong'an Plaza (see p118). Everything from curios, *objets d'art*, antiques, clothes, and books are available here. The huge **Foreign Language Bookstore** is a good place to buy a more detailed map of



The imposing façade of St. Joseph's Church, Wangfujing Street

Beijing. The street has a lively mixture of pharmacies, laundry and dyeing shops, as well as stores selling silk, tea, and shoes.

However, the street's highlight is the **Night Market**, with its endless variety of traditional Chinese snacks, including skewers of beef, and more exotic morsels such as scorpions. Other offerings include pancakes, fruit, shrimps, squid, flat bread, and more. The Wangfujing Snack Street, south of the Night Market, also has a range of colorful restaurants.

The impressive triple-domed **St. Joseph's Church**, known as the East Cathedral, is at 74

Wangfujing Dajie. One of the city's most important churches, it has been restored at a cost of US\$2 million. It was built on the site of the former residence of Jesuit Adam Schall von Bell (1591–1669) in 1655, and has been rebuilt a number of times after being successively destroyed by earthquake, fire, and then during the Boxer Rebellion (see p439). It is fronted by an open courtyard and an arched gateway.

19 Ancient Observatory 古观象台

Map 4 F1. **M** Jianguo Men. **Tel** (010) 6512 8923. **Open** summer: 9am–6pm daily; winter: 9am–4:30pm daily.



Ecliptic armillary sphere, Ancient Observatory

Beijing's ancient observatory (Gu Guan-xiangtai) stands on a platform alongside a flyover off Jianguo Men Nei Dajie. Dating to 1442, it is one of the oldest in the world. A Yuan dynasty (1279–1368) observatory was also located here, but the structure that survives today was built after the Ming emperors relocated

their capital from Nanjing to Beijing. In the early 17th century, the Jesuits, led by Matteo Ricci (1552–1610) and followed by Adam Schall von Bell, impressed the emperor and the imperial astronomers with their scientific knowledge, particularly the accuracy of their predictions of eclipses.

The Belgian Jesuit Father Verbiest (1623–88) was appointed to the Imperial Astronomical Bureau, where he designed a set of astronomical instruments in 1674. Several of these were appropriated by German soldiers during the Boxer Rebellion of 1900, and were only returned after World War I. A collection of reproduction astronomical



Delicious street food at the Night Market, just off Wangfujing Street



The atmospheric Red Gate Gallery, Southeast Corner Watchtower

devices lies in the courtyard on the ground floor, some decorated with fantastic Chinese designs including dragons. Steps lead to the roof, where there are impressive bronze instruments, including an azimuth theodolite, used to measure the altitude of celestial bodies, and an armillary sphere, for measuring the coordinates of planets and stars.



Southeast Corner Watchtower (Dongbian Men Jian Lou)

20 Southeast Corner Watchtower

东边门箭楼

Off Jianguo Men Nan Dajie, Chongwen. **Map** 4 F2. **M** Beijing Railway Station. Red Gate Gallery: **Tel** (010) 6525 1005. **Open** 9am–5pm daily. For exhibition details visit **w** redgategallery.com

About 2 km (1 mile) south of the Ancient Observatory, an imposing chunk of the Beijing City Walls (*see p91*) survives in the form of the 15th-century Southeast Corner Watchtower (Dongbian Jiao Lou). After

climbing onto the Ming dynasty battlements, visitors can walk along the short but impressive stretch of attached wall to admire the towering bastion, pitted with archers' windows, and look down on the city below. The walls of the tower are engraved with graffiti left by soldiers of the international army that marched into the city to liberate the Foreign Legations during the Boxer Rebellion in 1900.

Within its splendid, cavernous interior, accessed from the battlements, the rooms reveal enormous red wooden columns and pillars, crossed with beams. The **Red Gate Gallery**, one of Beijing's most appealing art galleries, is situated within this superb setting. Originally founded in 1991 by Brian Wallace, an Australian who came to Beijing to learn Chinese, the gallery exhibits works in a wide variety of media by up-and-coming contemporary Chinese and foreign artists. Forthcoming exhibitions are listed on the gallery's website.

21 Beijing Natural History Museum

自然历史博物馆

126 Tianqiao Nan Dajie, Chongwen. **Map** 3 C3. **M** Qian Men, then taxi. **Tel** (010) 6702 7702. **Open** 9am–5pm Tue–Sat. **w** bmnh.org.cn

This museum is the largest of its type in China, with about 5,000 specimens arranged into three collections. The Paleontology Hall displays a selection of the prehistoric animals that populated China millions of years ago. The zoology section explains and illustrates the course of evolution, and a basement houses a macabre display of human cadavers, pickled corpses, limbs, and organs. The botany collection is less impressive.

22 Temple of Heaven

See pp102–3

23 Beijing Capital Museum

北京首都博物馆

16 Fuxingmenwai Dajie. **M** Muxidi. **Tel** (010) 6337 0491. **Open** 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

Beijing's premier museum has a collection of 200,000 of the best Chinese art and antiquities over five floors. An interesting film telling the story of Beijing is screened every 30 minutes. English captions on the exhibits are limited, so it is worth hiring an audio guide.

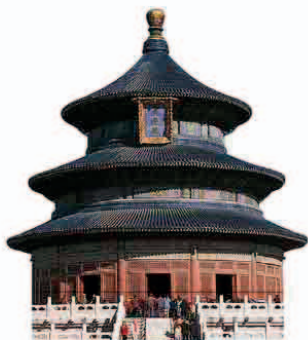


Dinosaur skeletons in the Paleontology Hall, Natural History Museum

22 Temple of Heaven

天坛

Completed during the Ming dynasty, the Temple of Heaven, more correctly known as Tian Tan, is one of the largest temple complexes in China and a paradigm of Chinese architectural balance and symbolism. Now a UNESCO World Heritage Site, it was here that the emperor would make sacrifices and pray to heaven and his ancestors at the winter solstice. As the Son of Heaven, the emperor could intercede with the gods, represented by their spirit tablets, on behalf of his people and pray for a good harvest. Off-limits to the common people during the Ming and Qing dynasties, the Temple of Heaven is situated in a large and pleasant park that now attracts early morning practitioners of *tai ji quan* (see p279).

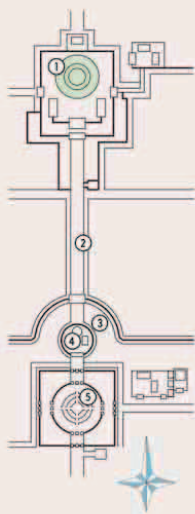


Qinian Dian, where the emperor prayed for a good harvest

The Tian Tan Complex

The main parts of the temple complex are all connected on the favored north-south axis by the Red Step Bridge (an elevated pathway) to form the focal point of the park. The Round Altar is made up of concentric rings of stone slabs in multiples of nine, the most auspicious number. The circular Echo Wall is famed for its supposed ability to carry a whisper from one side of the wall to the other.

- ① Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests
- ② Red Step Bridge
- ③ Echo Wall
- ④ Imperial Vault of Heaven
- ⑤ Round Altar



Key

Area illustrated



Triple gates for emperor (east), officials (west) and gods (center)



Imperial Vault of Heaven, store for the spirit tablets of the gods



The Round Altar, site of the emperor's sacrifice



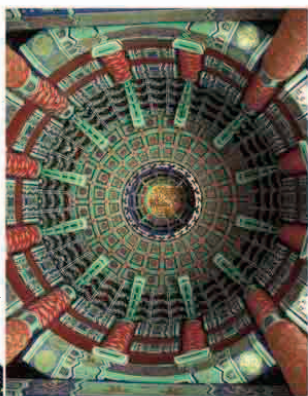
Qinian Dian

Originally built in 1420, the Qianian Dian, or Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests, is often incorrectly called the Temple of Heaven. There is in fact no single temple building as such at Tian Tan, a more literal translation of which is Altar of Heaven – referring to the whole complex.



Marble Platform

Three tiers of marble form a circle 300 ft (90 m) in diameter and 20 ft (6 m) high. The balusters on the upper tier are decorated with dragon carvings to signify the imperial nature of the structure.



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Tian Tan Dong Lu (East Gate), Chongwen. **Map** 4 E4. **Tel** (010) 6702 8866. **Open** 6am–8pm daily. Temple Buildings: **Open** 8:30am–6pm.

Transport

M Tiantan Dong Men. 34, 6, 35. Park.

★ Caisson Ceiling

The splendid circular caisson ceiling has a gilded dragon and phoenix at its center. The hall is entirely built of wood without using a single nail.



★ Dragon Well Pillars

The roofs of the hall are supported on 28 highly decorated pillars. At the center, the four huge columns, known as Dragon Well pillars, represent the seasons, while the other 24 smaller pillars symbolize the months in a year plus the 2-hour time periods in a day.

KEY

① **Dragon and phoenix motifs** inside and out represent the emperor and empress.

② **Red** is an imperial color.

③ **Circular roof** symbolizes the sky

④ **Name plaques** are often written in the calligraphy of an emperor.

⑤ **The golden finial** is 125 ft (38 m) high and prone to lightning strikes.

⑥ **Blue** represents the color of heaven.

⑦ **Tablets** in memory of his ancestors were worshipped by the emperor.

⑧ **Symbolic offerings**

24 Cow Street Mosque

牛街清真寺

18 Niu Jie, Xuanwu. **Map** 3 A3. **M** Caishikou, then taxi. **Tel** (010) 6353 2564. **Open** 8am–6pm daily. Avoid Fri (holy day). 🕌

Beijing's oldest and largest mosque dates back to the 10th century. It is located in the city's Hui district, near numerous Muslim restaurants and shops. The Hui, a Chinese Muslim minority group mainly from Ningxia province, are now scattered throughout China and number around 200,000 in Beijing. The men are easily identified by their beards and characteristic white hats.

The Cow Street Mosque is an attractive edifice, with Islamic motifs and Arabic verses decorating its halls and stela. Its most prized possession is a 300-year-old, hand-written copy of the Koran (*Gulanjing*).

Astronomical observations and lunar calculations were made from the tower-like **Wangyue Lou**. The graves of two Yuan dynasty Arab missionaries engraved with Arabic inscriptions can be seen here. The courtyard is lush with greenery, making it an idyllic escape from Beijing's busy streets. Visitors are advised to dress conservatively (you can hire clothes if necessary). Non-Muslims are not allowed to enter the prayer hall.



Buddhist statuary in the main hall, Fayuan Temple

25 Fayuan Temple

法源寺

7 Fayuan Si Qian Jie, Xuanwu. **Map** 3 A3. **M** Caishikou. **Tel** (010) 6353 4171. **Open** 8:30am–3:30pm daily. 🕌

A short walk east from Cow Street Mosque, the Fayuan Temple dates to AD 696 and is probably the oldest temple in Beijing. It was consecrated by the Tang Taizong emperor (r.626–49), to commemorate the soldiers who perished in an expedition against the northern tribes. The original Tang era buildings were destroyed by a succession of natural disasters, and the current structures date from the Qing era.

The temple's layout is typical of Buddhist temples. Near the gate, the incense burner (*lu*) is flanked by the Drum and Bell Towers to the east and west. Beyond, the Hall of the Heavenly

Kings (Tianwang Dian) is guarded by a pair of bronze lions, and has statues of Milefo (the Laughing Buddha) and his attendant Heavenly Kings. Ancient stela stand in front of the main hall, where a gilded statue of Sakyamuni (the Historical Buddha) is flanked by bodhisattvas and *luohan* – those freed from the cycle of rebirth.

At the temple's rear, the Scripture Hall stores *sutras*, while another hall contains a 16-ft (5-m) Buddha statue. The grounds are busy with monks who attend the temple's Buddhist College.

26 White Clouds Temple

白云寺

6 Baiyuanguan Jie, Xuanwu. **M** Nanlishi Lu, then taxi. **Tel** (010) 6344 3666. **Open** 8:30am–4pm daily. 🕌

Home to the China Daoist Association, the White Clouds Temple (Baiyun Guan) was founded in AD 739 and is Beijing's largest Daoist shrine. Known as the Temple of Heavenly Eternity, it was one of the three ancestral halls of the Quanzhen School of Daoism, which focused on right action and the benefits of good karma. Built largely of wood, the temple burnt to the ground in 1166, and since then has been repeatedly destroyed and rebuilt. The structures that survive date largely from the Ming and Qing dynasties. A triple-gated Ming *pailou* (decorative archway) stands at



Resplendent interior of the Cow Street Mosque

the entrance. It is believed that rubbing the carved monkey on the main gate brings good luck. The major halls are arranged along the central axis, with more halls on either side. The Hall of the Tutelary God has images of four marshals who act as temple guardians, while the Hall of Ancient Disciplines is dedicated to the Seven Perfect Ones, disciples of Wang Chongyang, the founder of the Quanzhen School. The Hall of Wealth is popular with pilgrims who seek blessings from the three spirits of wealth, while the infirm patronize the Hall of the King of Medicine.

The temple grounds are full of Daoist monks with their distinctive topknots. It is most lively during the Chinese New Year (see pp48–9), when a temple fair (*miaohui*) is held.

27 Military Museum of the Chinese People's Revolution 军事博物馆

9 Fuxing Lu, Haidian. **M** Military Museum. **Tel** (010) 6686 6244.

Open 8am–5pm daily.

Topped by a gilded emblem of the People's Liberation Army, the Military Museum of the Chinese People's Revolution is devoted to weaponry and revolutionary heroism. It is close to Muxidi, where the People's Liberation Army killed scores of civilians in 1989. Visitors are greeted by paintings of Mao, Marx, Lenin, and Stalin. The ground floor exhibits defunct F-5 and F-7 jet fighter planes,



F-5 fighter planes, Military Museum of the Chinese People's Revolution



Buddhist monks, Miaoying Temple White Dagoba

tanks, and surface-to-air missiles. The top gallery chronicles with pride many of China's military campaigns.

28 Miaoying Temple White Dagoba 妙应寺

Fucheng Men Nei Dajie, Xicheng. **Map** 1 A4. **M** Fucheng Men. **Tel** (010) 6616 0211. **Open** 9:30am–4pm daily.

Celebrated for its distinctive Tibetan-styled, 167-ft (51-m) white *dagoba* (stupa or funerary mound) designed by a Nepalese architect, the Miaoying Temple (Miaoying Si) dates to 1271,

when Beijing was under Mongol rule. In addition to its conventional Drum and Bell Towers, Hall of Heavenly Kings, and Main Halls, this Buddhist temple has a remarkable collection of small Tibetan Buddhist statues in one of its halls. Another hall has a collection of 18 bronze *luohan* (disciples).

29 Beijing Zoo 北京动物园

137 Xizhi Men Wai Dajie, Haidian. **M** Xizhi Men, then taxi. **Tel** (010) 6831 5131. **Open** 7:30am–5pm (to 6pm spring & summer). **🐼** extra to see pandas.

West of the Beijing Exhibition Hall, Beijing Zoo has improved somewhat but still has some outdated concrete and glass cages. The Panda Hall is one of its better enclosures, and the bears are at their liveliest in the mornings. The real reason for visiting is the huge **Aquarium**, with coral reefs, an Amazon rainforest, and an impressive shark pool. There is also an array of aquatic mammals, including whales and dolphins.

30 Summer Palace

颐和园

The sprawling grounds of the Summer Palace (Yihe Yuan) served the Qing Dynasty as an imperial retreat from the stifling summer confines of the Forbidden City. Despite existing as an imperial park in earlier dynasties, it was not until the time of Emperor Qianlong, who reigned from 1736 to 1795, that the Summer Palace assumed its current layout. The palace is most associated, however, with Cixi who had it rebuilt twice: once following its destruction by French and English troops in 1860, and again in 1902 after it was plundered during the Boxer Rebellion.



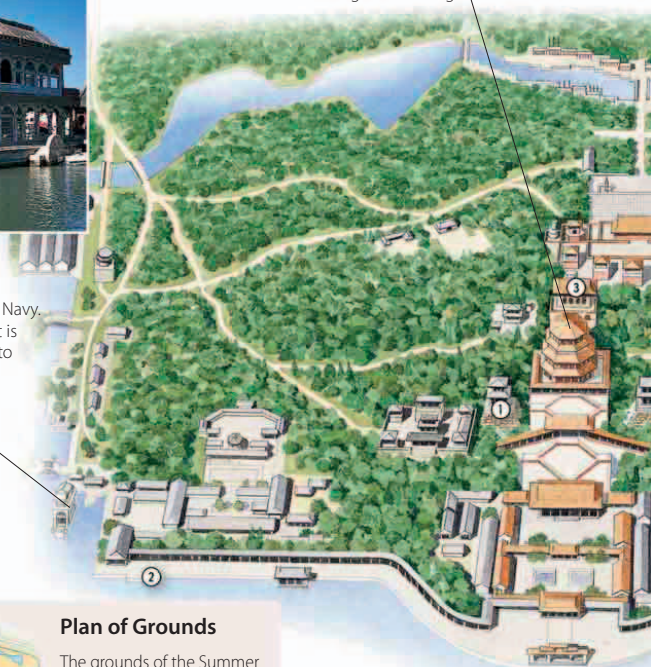
Marble Boat

Cixi paid for this extravagant folly with funds meant for the modernization of the Imperial Navy. The superstructure of the boat is made of wood painted white to look like marble.



★ Longevity Hill

The Tower of the Fragrance of the Buddha dominates this slope covered with impressive religious buildings.



Plan of Grounds

The grounds of the Summer Palace cover 716 acres (290 hectares), with Kunming Lake lying to the south of Longevity Hill. South Lake Island is just off the east shore and a stroll around the entire shoreline takes about two hours.

- ① Jade Belt Bridge
- ② West Causeway
- ③ South Lake Island
- ④ Bronze ox

Key

Area illustrated

0 meters 800
0 yards 800

KEY

- ① The Bronze Pavilion, weighing 207 tons (188 tonnes), is a detailed replica of a timber-framed building.
- ② Boat pier
- ③ Temple of the Sea of Wisdom
- ④ Suzhou Street
- ⑤ Back Lake
- ⑥ The Garden of Harmonious Pleasures was Cixi's favorite fishing spot.
- ⑦ Hall of Jade Ripples
- ⑧ Hall of Happiness and Longevity



Empress Cixi, 1835–1908

Empress Dowager Cixi

Together with Tang-dynasty Empress Wu Zetian (see p63), Cixi is remembered as one of China's most powerful women. Having borne the Xianfeng emperor's son as an imperial concubine, Cixi later seized power as regent to both the Tongzhi and Guangxu emperors (her son and nephew respectively). Cixi prevented Guangxu from implementing state reforms and, in her alliance with the Boxer Rebellion, paved the way for the fall of the Qing Dynasty in 1911.

★ Garden of Virtue and Harmony

This three-story building served as a theater, where the court's 348-member opera troupe entertained Cixi, who watched from the surrounding gallery.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

6 miles (10 km) NW of Beijing.

Tel (010) 6288 1144. **Open** Apr–

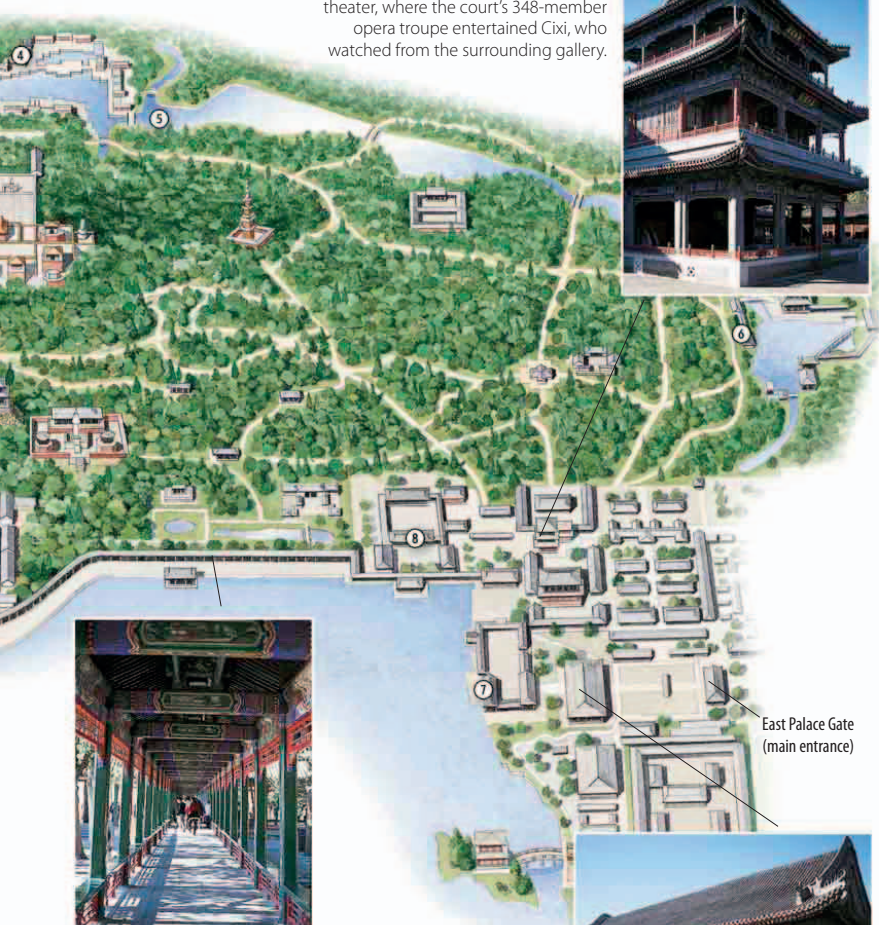
Oct: 6:30am–6pm, Nov–Mar:

7am–5pm. 📶 📺 📶

Transport

M Beigongmen.

🚶 from Yuyuan Tan Park, and Exhibition Center near zoo (not in winter).



★ Long Corridor

The beams along the length of this 2,388-ft (728-m) walkway are decorated with over 14,000 scenic paintings.

Hall of Benevolence and Longevity

The principal ceremonial hall, this single-eaved building houses the throne upon which Cixi sat.

East Palace Gate
(main entrance)

Exploring the Summer Palace

Like the imperial resort at Chengde (see pp128–31), the palace grounds are arranged as a microcosm of nature, its hills (*shan*) and water (*shui*) creating a natural composition further complemented by bridges, temples, walkways, and ceremonial halls. Even after repeated restoration, the Summer Palace tastefully harmonizes the functional and fanciful, with administrative and residential quarters leading to the pastoral vistas of the grounds, as well as numerous peaceful temples and shrines.



Seventeen-arch Bridge linking South Lake Island to the mainland

The grounds of the Summer Palace are extensive, but the main buildings can all be visited by those with a bit of energy and time. The main entrance at the **East Palace Gate** (Gong Dong Men) leads to the official and residential halls of the palace complex. Just inside the main gate stands the **Hall of**



Bronze ox, believed to pacify the waters and prevent floods

Benevolence and Longevity (Renshou Dian). Note the bronze statues in front of this ceremonial hall, including the symbol of Confucian virtue, the mythical *qilin*, a hybrid, cloven-hoofed animal with horns and scales. You will see signs here for **Suzhou Street**, which houses over-priced snack and souvenir stalls, and is not worth the extra entry fee.

By the lakeside to the west, the **Hall of Jade Ripples** (Yulan Tang) is where Cixi incarcerated the Guangxu emperor after the abortive 1898 Reform Movement. Cixi's residence, the **Hall of Happiness and Longevity** (Leshou Tang) is to

the west of the **Garden of Virtue and Harmony** (Dehe Yuan) and north of the jetty from where Cixi would set sail across the lake.

From here, the **Long Corridor** (Chang Lang) follows the lakeside, interrupted along its length by four pavilions. At the corridor's halfway point, a series of religious buildings ascends the slopes of **Longevity Hill** (Wanshou Shan), a sequence

marked at the lakeside by a fabulous decorative gate (*pailou*), beyond which stands **Cloud Dispelling Gate**, with two bronze lions sitting alongside it. The first main hall, the **Cloud Dispelling Hall** (Paiyun Dian) is a double-eaved structure, above which rises the prominent, octagonal **Tower of the Fragrance of the Buddha** (Foxiang Ge). Behind the tower sits the rectangular brick and tile 18th-century **Temple of the Sea of Wisdom** (Huihai Si), its exterior decorated with green and yellow tiles and

glazed Buddhist effigies, many of which have been vandalized. From here you can look down to the **Back Lake** (Hou Hu). West of the Tower of the Fragrance of the Buddha is the **Precious Clouds Pavilion** (Baoyun Ge), also called the **Bronze Pavilion**. Dating from the 18th century, the building is one of a handful that survived the destruction wrought by foreign troops.

The buildings at the north end of the lake are more than enough to fill a single day, however the southern end of the grounds can be blissfully free of crowds. Boat trips to **South Lake Island** depart from the jetty near the Marble Boat (north of which are the imperial boathouses). Alternatively, if time will allow, hire a boat for a leisurely row around Kunming Lake. **Dragon King Temple** (Longwang Miao) on South Lake Island is dedicated to the god of rivers, seas, and rain. The island is connected to the eastern shore by the elegant **Seventeen-arch Bridge** (Shiqi Kong Qiao). A marble lion crowns each of the 544 balusters along the bridge's length, and a large bronze ox, dating back to 1755, reposes on the eastern shore. On the opposite shore, steep-sloped **Jade Belt Bridge** links the mainland to the West Causeway which slices through the lake to its southern point.



The unusual Bronze Pavilion, fashioned entirely from metal



Remnants of the Yuanming Yuan, once said to resemble Versailles

31 Yuanming Yuan 圆明园

28 Qinghua Xi Lu, Haidian.

M Yuanmingyuan Park. **Tel** (010) 6262 8501. **Open** 7am–7pm daily. 🗺️

The yuanmingyuan (Garden of Perfect Brightness, sometimes called the Old Summer Palace), now sits isolated from the main Summer Palace, but was a collection of princely gardens fused into the main mass by the Qing Qianlong emperor in the mid-18th century. He commissioned Jesuits at his court to design and construct a set of European-style buildings in one corner, which they likened to Versailles. Unfortunately, all the traditional Chinese halls were burned down by British and French troops during the Second Opium War in 1860. Later the European-style buildings were pulled down, and much of the remains carted away by the locals for building purposes. Chinese narrations of the devastation criticize both the marauding European troops and the ineffectual Qing rulers.

Today, Yuanming Yuan is a jumble of sad, yet graceful fragments of stone and marble strewn in the **Eternal Spring Garden** in the park's northeastern corner. A small museum displays images and models of the palace, depicting its scale and magnificence. The **Palace Maze** has been recreated in concrete to the west of the ruins. The rest of the park is a pleasant expanse of lakes, pavilions, gardens, and walks.

32 Great Bell Temple 大钟寺

31a Beisanhuan Xi Lu, Haidian.

M Dazhong Si. 🗺️ 300, 367. **Tel** (010) 6255 0819. **Open** 8:30am–4pm daily. 🗺️

Home to a fascinating collection of bells, the 18th-century Dazhong Si follows a typical Buddhist plan, with the Heavenly Kings Hall, Main Hall, and the Guanyin Bodhisattva Hall. Its highlight is the 46.5-ton (47,246 kg) bell – one of the world's largest – that is housed in the rear tower. The bell was cast between 1403 and 1424, and brought here from Wanshou Temple in the reign of the Qianlong emperor. Buddhist *sutras* in Chinese and Sanskrit embellish its surface. During the Ming and Qing dynasties, the bell was struck 108 times to bring in the New Year, and could be heard for 25 miles (40 km). The gallery above has a display on bell



Heng, Biyun Temple deity

casting, and visitors can toss a coin into the bell for luck. Hundreds of bells from the Song, Yuan, Ming, and Qing eras can be seen in a separate hall on the west side.

33 Xiang Shan Park 香山公园

Wofosi Lu, Xiang Shan, Haidian district. **M** Bagou, then taxi. 🗺️ 333 from Summer Palace, 360 from Zoo.

Open 6am–6pm. 🗺️ Botanical Gardens: **Open** 9am–4pm daily. 🗺️

This wooded parkland area, also known as Fragrant Hills Park, is at its scenic best in the fall, when the maples turn a flaming red. Its main attractions are the fine views from **Incense Burner Peak**, accessible by a chairlift, and the splendid **Biyun Temple**, or Azure Cloud Temple, close to the main gate. The temple is guarded by the menacing deities Heng and Ha in the Mountain Gate Hall. A

series of halls leads to the Sun Yat-sen Memorial Hall, where his coffin was stored in 1925, before being taken to Nanjing. At the temple's rear is the distinctive 112-ft (34-m) high Diamond Throne Pagoda. About a mile (2 km) east of Xiang Shan Park are the **Beijing Botanical Gardens**, with some 3,000 plant

species. The gardens' **Sleeping Buddha Temple** is renowned for its magnificent bronze statue of a reclining Buddha. China's last emperor, Pu Yi (see p452), ended his days here as a gardener.



The Great Bell Temple or Dazhong Si

34 Ming Tombs: Chang Ling

明十三陵

The resting place for 13 of the 16 Ming emperors, the Ming Tombs (Shisan Ling) are China's finest example of imperial tomb architecture. The site was originally selected because of its auspicious *feng shui* alignment; a ridge of mountains to the north cradles the tombs on three sides, opening to the south and protecting the dead from the evil spirits carried on the north wind. The resting place of the Yongle emperor (1360–1424), the Chang Ling is the most impressive tomb and the first to be built. It has been beautifully restored, although the burial chamber, where Yongle, his wife, and 16 concubines are thought to be buried, has never been excavated.



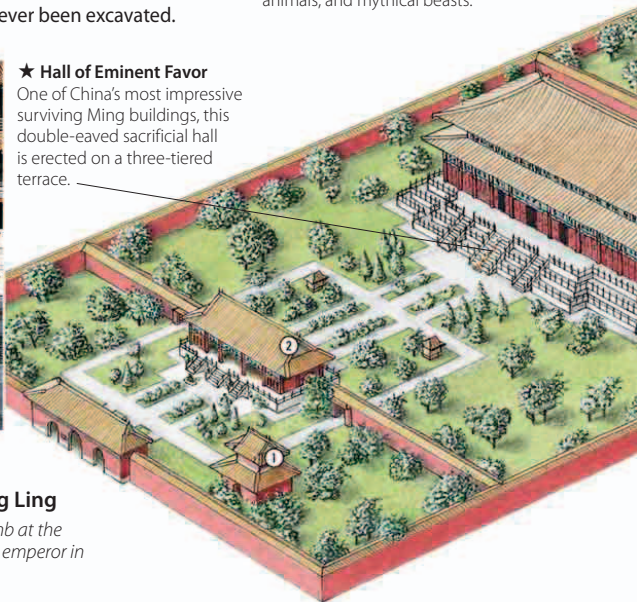
★ Sacred Way

Part of the 4-mile (7-km) approach to the tombs, the Sacred Way is lined with 36 stone statues of officials, soldiers, animals, and mythical beasts.



★ Hall of Eminent Favor

One of China's most impressive surviving Ming buildings, this double-eaved sacrificial hall is erected on a three-tiered terrace.



Reconstruction of Chang Ling

This shows the Chang Ling tomb at the time of the burial of the Yongle emperor in the 15th century.



The Ming Tombs

The 13 tombs are spread over 15 square miles (40 sq km), so are best visited by taxi. Chang Ling, Ding Ling, and Zhao Ling have been restored and are very busy. Unrestored, the rest are open yet quiet.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| ① Chang Ling (1424) | ⑧ Mao Ling (1487) |
| ② Yong Ling (1566) | ⑨ Tai Ling (1505) |
| ③ De Ling (1627) | ⑩ Kang Ling (1521) |
| ④ Jing Ling (1435) | ⑪ Ding Ling (1620) |
| ⑤ Xian Ling (1425) | ⑫ Zhao Ling (1572) |
| ⑥ Qing Ling (1620) | ⑬ Concubine cemeteries |
| ⑦ Yu Ling (1449) | ⑭ Si Ling (1644) |

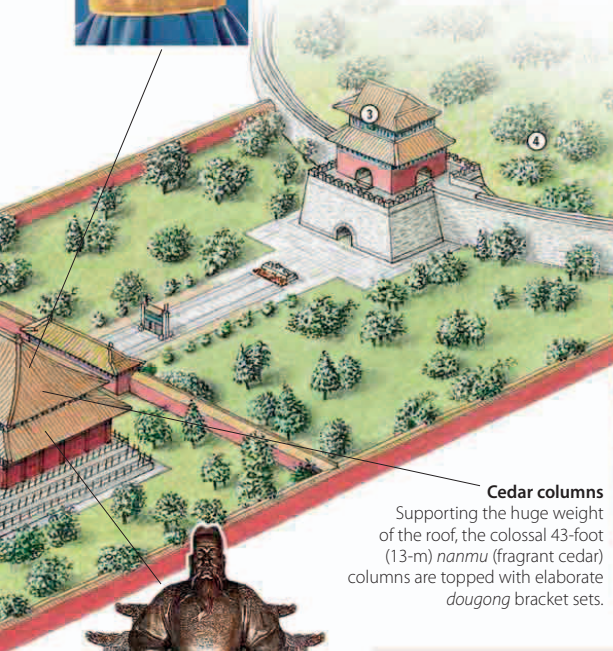


0 kilometers 4
0 miles 4



★ Ding Ling treasures

Artifacts from the Wanli emperor's tomb, such as this threaded-gold crown decorated with two dragons, are on display in the main hall at Chang Ling.



Cedar columns

Supporting the huge weight of the roof, the colossal 43-foot (13-m) *nanmu* (fragrant cedar) columns are topped with elaborate *dougong* bracket sets.



Statue of the Yongle emperor

Yongle, the third Ming emperor, moved the capital from Nanjing to Beijing, where he then oversaw the construction of the Forbidden City.

KEY

- ① **The Stele Pavilion** bears inscriptions dating from the Qing dynasty which revered the Ming emperors.
- ② **Gate of Eminent Favor**
- ③ **The Spirit Tower** marks the entrance to the burial chamber.
- ④ **An earthen mound**, surrounded by a circular rampart, covers the stone burial chamber.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

30 miles (45 km) NW of Beijing.

Tel (010) 6076 3104. **Open**

8:30am–5:30pm daily.

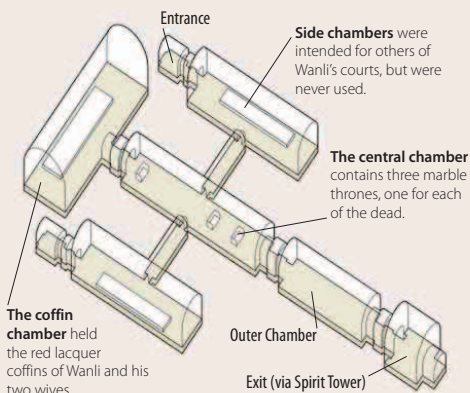
interiors. www.mingtombs.com

Transport

1–5 buses from Qianmen go to Bedaling Great Wall then tombs. Many tours to the Great Wall (see pp 112–14) stop here.

Ding Ling Burial Chamber

Ding Ling, the tomb of the longest reigning Ming emperor, Wanli (r.1573–1620), is the only burial chamber of the 16 tombs to have been excavated and opened to the public. During the 1950s, archeologists were stunned to find the inner doors of the chamber still intact. Inside they found the treasures of an emperor whose profligate rule began the downfall of the Ming dynasty.



35 Great Wall of China

长城

A symbol of China's historic detachment and sense of vulnerability, the Great Wall snakes over deserts, hills, and plains for several thousand miles. Originally a series of disparate earthen ramparts built by individual states, the Great Wall was created only after the unification of China under Qin Shi Huangdi (221–210 BC). Despite impressive battlements, the wall ultimately proved ineffective; it was breached in the 13th century by the Mongols and then, in the 17th century, by the Manchu. Today a UNESCO World Heritage Site, only select sections of its crumbling remains have been fully restored.



Crumbling ruin

Most of the wall is still unrestored and has crumbled away leaving only the core remaining.

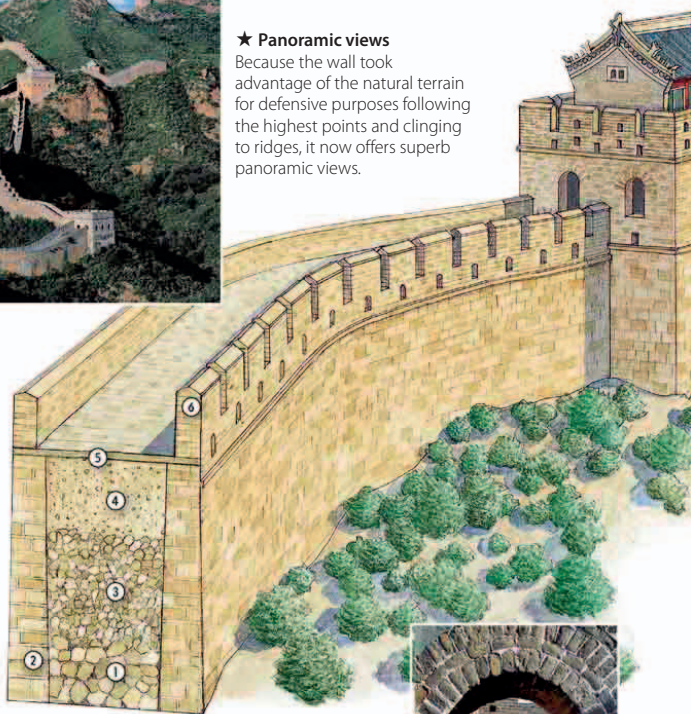


★ Panoramic views

Because the wall took advantage of the natural terrain for defensive purposes following the highest points and clinging to ridges, it now offers superb panoramic views.

Reconstruction of the Great Wall

This shows a section of the wall as built by the most prolific wall builders, the Ming dynasty (1368–1644). The section at Badaling, built around 1505, is similar to this and was restored in the 1950s and 1980s.



KEY

- ① Large, locally quarried rocks
- ② Kiln-fired bricks, cemented with a mortar of lime and glutinous rice
- ③ Bigger rocks and stones
- ④ Tamped layer of earth and rubble
- ⑤ Surface of stone slabs and bricks
- ⑥ Ramparts enabled the

defending soldiers to fire down on their attackers with impunity.

⑦ **Signal beacons** were used to warn of attack by burning dried wolf dung.

⑧ **Towers** were spaced two arrow shots apart to leave no part unprotected.

⑨ **The carriageway** is on average 8 m (26 ft) high and 7 m (21 ft) wide.



★ Watchtowers

A Ming addition, these served as signal towers, forts, living quarters, and storerooms for provisions.

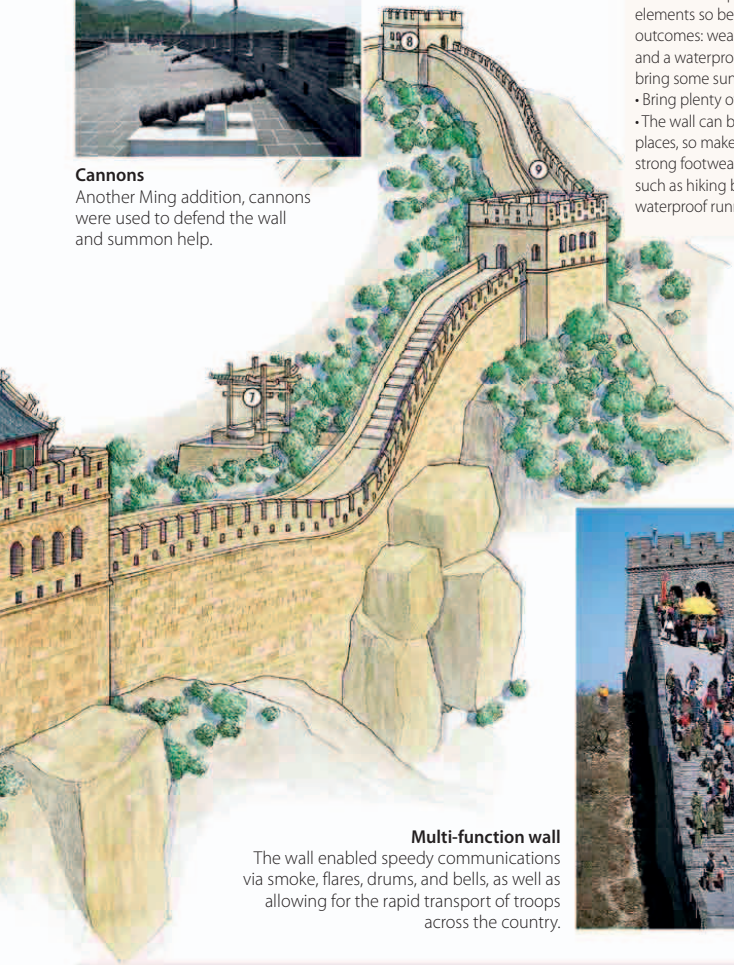


Cannons

Another Ming addition, cannons were used to defend the wall and summon help.

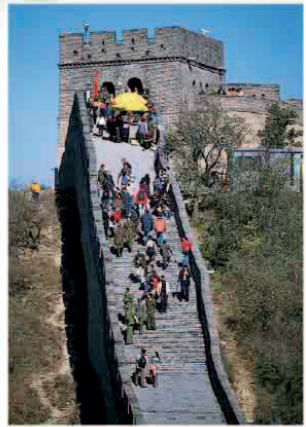
TIPS FOR VISITORS

- The wall is exposed to the elements so be prepared for all outcomes: wear layers of clothing and a waterproof top, but also bring some sunscreen.
- Bring plenty of water.
- The wall can be very steep in places, so make sure you have strong footwear with a good grip such as hiking boots or tough waterproof running shoes.

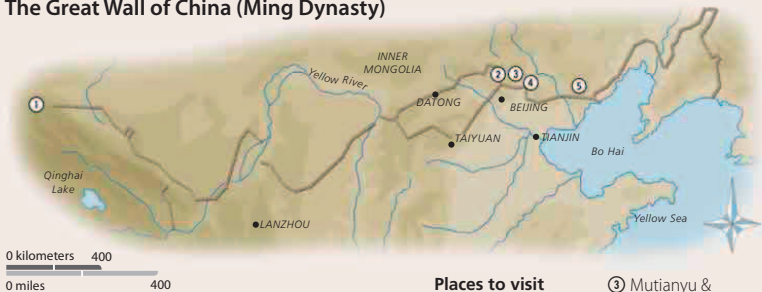


Multi-function wall

The wall enabled speedy communications via smoke, flares, drums, and bells, as well as allowing for the rapid transport of troops across the country.



The Great Wall of China (Ming Dynasty)



Most visitors travel to the wall from Beijing (see p114), but it is worth seeing the wall anywhere along its length. Also impressive are the restored forts at Juyong Guan, Jiayu Guan, and Shanhaiguan.

Places to visit

- 1 Jiayu Guan (see pp502–3)
- 2 Badaling & Juyong Guan

- 3 Mutianyu & Huanghua Chen
- 4 Simata
- 5 Shanhaiguan (see p134)

Exploring the Great Wall of China

A trip to the wall is a must for any visitor to Beijing. Most hotels will be able to organize this for you, usually combined with a visit to the Ming Tombs (*see pp110–11*). However, be sure to find out whether there are any unwanted diversions planned to cloisonné workshops, jade factories, or Chinese medicine clinics. Small groups can have a more personalized visit, and see the more remote parts of the wall, by hiring a taxi for the day from Beijing and sharing the cost.



Stall selling tourist paraphernalia at the Great Wall, Badaling

Badaling

44 miles (70 km) northwest of Beijing.
Tel (010) 6912 1737. 🚗 1 from Qian Men. **Open** 6:30am–6:30pm daily. 📶 📶 📶

Equipped with guardrails, cable car, pristine watchtowers, and tourist facilities, the restored Ming fortification at Badaling is the most popular section of the Great Wall. The reward for coming to Badaling is the breathtaking view of the wall winding its way over the hills. To fully appreciate this, get away from the crowds by walking as far as you can along the wall either east or west of the entrance. The ticket includes admission to the Great Wall Museum. The pass at **Juyong Guan** is on the way to Badaling and although restored, it is often quieter than Badaling. With unscalable mountains on either side it is easy to see why this spot was chosen for defense. There are also some authentic Buddhist carvings on a stone platform, or “cloud terrace,” in the middle of the pass that date back to the Yuan dynasty (1279–1368).

Mutianyu

56 miles (90 km) north of Beijing, Mutianyu Town, Huairou County.
 🚗 6 from Xuanwu Men. 🚗 916 from Dongzhimen then taxi. **Open** 7:30am–6pm daily. 📶 📶 & chair lifts.

The appeal of Mutianyu lies in its dramatic hilly setting and slightly less intrusive tourist industry. With a series of watchtowers along its restored length, the wall you can see here dates from 1368 and was built upon the foundations of the wall built during the Northern Qi dynasty (AD 550–77).

Huanghua Cheng

37 miles (60 km) north of Beijing, Huairou County. 🚗 916 from Dongzhimen then taxi. **Open** daily. 📶 📶
 Situated on the same stretch of wall as Mutianyu, Huanghua is an exhilarating section of Ming wall that is far less developed than other parts of the wall, although it has still been renovated. The great barrier is split into two here by a large reservoir; most travelers take the right hand route on the other side of the reservoir, as the left-hand section is more difficult to reach. Devoid of guardrails, the crumbling



Ruins at Huanghua Cheng clinging to the steep hillside

masonry at Huanghua Cheng can be uneven and fairly treacherous in parts, so be careful. This is the best option for accommodation if you want to stay near the Great Wall.

Simatai

68 miles (110 km) northeast of Beijing, Miyun County. 🚗 6 from Xuanwu Men. **Closed** for renovations. Due to reopen 2014. 📶 📶 (Apr–Nov).

The wall at Simatai has been partially repaired, affording a more genuine impression of the original wall. The steep and hazardous parts of the wall are also a lot riskier to navigate. Most visitors clamber along the eastern section of wall at Simatai, which leads to much steeper sections of wall, and later, impassable ruins. There is a four-hour trek from Simatai to Jingshanling that provides spectacular vistas, too. Simatai is due to reopen in May 2014 following renovations, but check with your hotel in advance of your trip.



The restored section of the wall at Badaling, northwest of Beijing

36 Eastern Qing Tombs

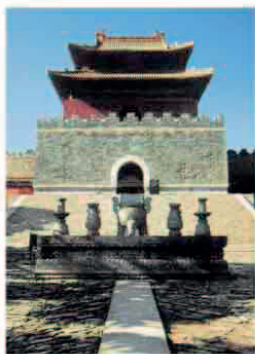
清东陵

77 miles (125 km) east of Beijing, Zunhua County, Hebei Province.

Open May–Oct: 8am–5pm daily;

Nov–Apr: 9am–4:30pm daily. 📷 📱

The remoteness of the Eastern Qing Tombs east of Beijing and over the border in Hebei province makes them far less popular than the Ming ones (see pp110–11), despite the fact that the setting is even more splendid. In fact, the Eastern Qing tombs make up the largest and most complete imperial cemetery in China, built on as grand a scale as the Forbidden City itself (see pp92–5). Of the many tombs scattered throughout the area, only five



Incense burners in front of a spirit tower at the Eastern Qing Tombs



Spirit Way to Emperor Shunzhi's tomb at the Eastern Qing Tombs

are the burial places of Qing emperors: the tombs of the Shunzhi emperor (r. 1644–61), Kangxi (r. 1661–1722), Qianlong (r. 1736–95), and Xianfeng (r. 1851–61) are open, while that of the Tongzhi emperor (r. 1862–74), at a distance from the main tomb grouping, is not. A 3-mile (5-km) Spirit Way, an approach lined with guardian figures, leads to Shunzhi's tomb, Xiao Ling, at the heart of the main tomb cluster, while several of the other tombs have their own smaller Spirit Ways. Southwest of here lies Yuling, Qianlong's tomb, with its incredible chamber adorned with Buddhist carvings and Tibetan and Sanskrit scriptures (rare features at imperial and principally Confucian tombs). The devious Empress Cixi

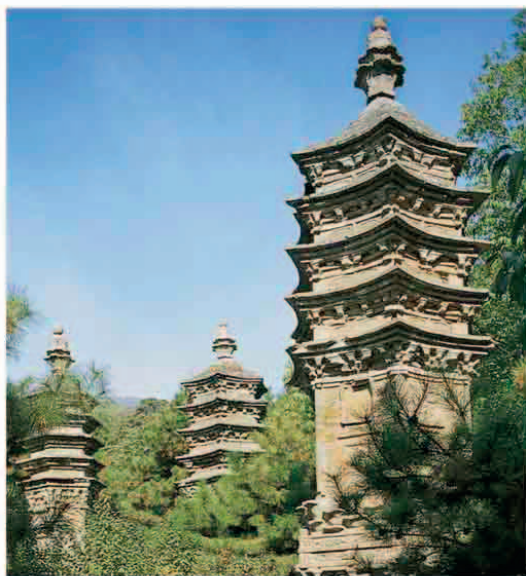
(see p107) is buried at Ding Dong Ling to the west, in the right-hand tomb of a complex of twin tombs, the other being the resting place of Ci'an, eldest wife of the Xianfeng emperor. Although both tombs were built in 1879, Cixi had her magnificent tomb lavishly restored in 1895. The marble carriageway up to the Hall of Eminent Favor notably locates the carving of the phoenix (*feng*), symbol of the empress, above the carving of the dragon (*long*), symbol of the emperor. West of Ding Dong Ling, Ding Ling is partially open and approached via a set of stone animal statues. Look for the smaller tombs of imperial concubines, their roofs tiled in green (not the yellow of emperors and empresses).

Emperor Yongzheng

The son of the Kangxi emperor and a maidservant, Yongzheng (r.1723–35) chose not to be buried at the Eastern Qing Tombs, but perversely started a necropolis as far away as possible in the Western Qing Tombs (Yixian County, Hebei Province). Perhaps, racked with guilt, he could not face burial alongside his father, whose will he had thwarted. For after Kangxi's death, Yongzheng seized the throne from his brother (his father's chosen successor), and declared himself the legitimate heir, ruthlessly eliminating any other brothers and uncles who may have been a threat to his rule. Despite this shaky start, Yongzheng was an able ruler and a devout Buddhist, punishing dishonesty among his officials and seeking to improve the morals and education of his people. Another possible reason for the switch was that he just wasn't satisfied with the Eastern Tombs and chose an area with a better natural setting. Whatever the reason, those keen on Chinese tomb architecture will enjoy the peace of the Western Qing Tombs. Nearby, moved in 1995 to a commercial cemetery, are the remains of Pu Yi, the last emperor of China.



Yongzheng in robes embroidered with symbols of his power



Brick stupas at Talin Si or Stupa Forest Temple

37 Marco Polo Bridge

芦沟桥

Wanping town, Fengtai District. 10 miles (16 km) SW of city center. **M** Wukesong, then bus 624, 339 from Beijing's Lianhuachi bus station. **Open** 7am–7pm daily. Memorial Hall: 101 Wanpingcheng Nei Jie. **Open** 8am–5pm Tue–Sun.

Straddling the Yongding River in Wanping town, the 876-ft (267-m) long marble bridge was first built during the Jin dynasty in 1189 but destroyed by a flood. The current structure dates to 1698. Known as Lugou Qiao in Chinese, the bridge acquired its English name after Marco Polo described it in his famous treatise *The Travels* (see p249). At the bridge's eastern and western ends are stelae inscribed by the Qing emperors, Kangxi and Qianlong. The poetic observation by Qianlong on a stele at the eastern end reads “*lugou xiaoyue*,” meaning “Moon at daybreak at Lugou.” The



Stone lion, Marco Polo Bridge

balustrades along the length of the bridge are decorated by more than 400 carved stone lions, each one slightly different in appearance. Local legend has it that these fierce-looking statues come alive during the night. Despite the widening and extensive restoration work done over the centuries, a surprising amount of the bridge is original. In addition to its antiquity, it is significant as the site of the disastrous Marco Polo Bridge Incident. This is where, on July 7, 1937, the Japanese Imperial Army and

Nationalist Chinese soldiers exchanged fire – an event that

led to the Japanese occupation of Beijing and a full-scale war. For those with a keen interest in this period of history, the incident is marked by some rather gruesome displays in Wanping's **Memorial Hall**.

38 Tanzhe Temple

潭柘寺

Mentougou district. 28 miles (45 km) W of Beijing. **M** to Pingguo Yuan (1 hr), then bus 931, tourist bus 7, or taxi. **Tel** (010) 6086 2505. **Open** 8am–5pm daily.

This enormous temple dates back to the 3rd century AD, when it was known as Jiafu Si. It was later renamed Tanzhe Temple, after the adjacent mountain Tanzhe Shan, which in turn got its name from the nearby Dragon Pool (Long Tan) and the surrounding cudrania (*zhe*) trees. It has a splendid mountainside setting, and its halls rise up the steep incline. The temple is especially famous for its ancient trees, among which is a huge ginkgo known as the Emperor's Tree. A slightly smaller tree close by is called The Emperor's Wife.

The most fascinating sight, however, is the **Stupa Forest Temple** (Talin Si) near the parking lot, with its marvellous collection of brick stupas hidden among the foliage. Each stupa was constructed in memory of a renowned monk. The towering edifices were built in a variety of designs, including the graceful *miyan ta* or dense-eave stupa, characterized by ascending layers of eaves. The earliest among them dates from the Jin dynasty (1115–1234).



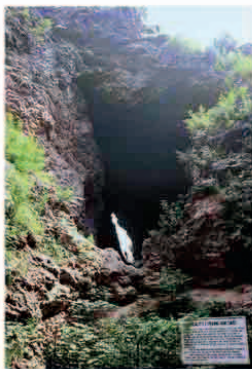
The 11-arched Marco Polo Bridge known locally as Lugou Qiao

39 Peking Man Site

周口店北京猿人遗址

Zhoukoudian Village, 30 miles (48 km) SW of Beijing. 917 from Beijing's Tianqiao bus station to Fangshan, then bus 2 or taxi to site. **Open** 8:30am–4:30pm daily.

Unearthed from a cave at Zhoukoudian in the 1920s, the 40-odd fossilized human bones and primitive implements were identified as the prehistoric remains of Peking Man (*Homo erectus Pekinensis*), who lived here over 500,000 years ago. It was thought that this exciting discovery provided the much sought-after missing link between Neanderthals and modern humans. Designated a UNESCO World Heritage Site, the area is geared toward specialists, although the small museum has an interesting display of tools, ornaments, and bone fragments. Sadly, Peking Man himself is not actually here and the site has suffered neglect.



The prehistoric Peking Man Site at Zhoukoudian

40 National Olympic Stadium

奥林匹克体育中心

Olympic Green. Olympic Green. **Open** 10am–5pm daily. beijingolympicstadium.com

Beijing's National Olympic Stadium was designed to be the stunning centerpiece of China's massive building program for the 2008 Olympics. It is part of the city's "Olympic Green" develop-



The futuristic structure of the National Olympic Stadium

ment, which includes a large landscaped park, an Olympic Village, and many other stadia including the National Indoor Stadium and Swimming Center.

Swiss architects Herzog and de Meuron won the competition for the stadium with a bird's nest-like structure of apparently random, intertwined ribbons of steel and concrete that simultaneously form both façade and structure. The gaps in the concrete lattice of the roof are filled with translucent inflated bags, making the building waterproof while allowing light to filter down to the spectators.

The National Stadium is one of the most striking buildings to be found anywhere in the world, and visitors are able to take tours around it. During the winter it is turned into a ski center. Plans to turn the area around the stadium into a shopping and entertainment complex are ongoing, and the Xin'ao Plaza mall has already opened next to the subway station.

it is a picturesque outpost of courtyard houses (*siheyuan*) and rural Chinese buildings. Because of the close-knit nature of the original village all the courtyards were interconnected by small lanes. The entry ticket allows access to the entire village, all of which can be explored within a few hours. Look out for the Maoist graffiti and slogans that survive on the boundary walls; similar graffiti from the Cultural Revolution has been white-washed in most other towns.

Chuandixia's population consists of about 70 people spread over a handful of families. Accommodations can be arranged for those wanting to explore the surrounding hills or simply experience the rural hospitality. Alive to the opportunities brought by tourism, quite a few of the old homesteads provide basic facilities at a reasonable price.

41 Chuandixia

川底下

Near Zhaitang town, 56 miles (90 km) NW of Beijing. to Pingguo Yuan (1 hr), then bus 929 to Zhaitang (3 hrs) or taxi. **Open** daily.

Despite the rather laborious expedition required to get here, a trip to the tiny village of Chuandixia (Under the River) is well worth the effort as the crumbling hamlet survives as a living museum of Ming and Qing dynasty village architecture. Situated on a steep mountainside,



Traditional Ming and Qing dynasty houses, Chuandixia village

Shopping & Entertainment in Beijing

Beijing's shopping scene has undergone a dramatic change and slick department stores co-exist with older retail outlets. Its vast array of retail options range from shopping malls and department stores to specialist stores, boutiques, antique and silk markets, and street vendors. The main shopping street Wangfujing Dajie (see p100) is very popular with Beijingers and visitors from out of town, but a raft of malls offer up stiff competition. Regrettably, many of the traditional shops no longer exist with the exception of those on Dazhalan Jie (see p91). Beijing also has a lively entertainment scene, with a growing number of pubs, bars, and clubs, and numerous venues for traditional Beijing Opera, theater, and music.

Shopping

Visitors can buy anything from traditional handicrafts, collectibles, carpets, and silks to electronic goods, furniture, antiques, and designer clothing in Beijing. Many stores listed here arrange packaging and shipping as part of their service.

Antiques, Crafts & Curios

Genuine antiques (*gudong*) are hard to find. Objects dating between 1939 and 1795 cannot officially be taken out of the country without a certificate, anything older may not be exported at all (see pp586–7). The most interesting market for antiques and curios is **Panjiayuan Market** in the southeast of town. Open all week, for the best deals and pickings, visitors should aim to get there at sunrise during weekends to rummage through the Bodhisattva statues, ceramics, screens, calligraphy, and variety of ornaments. The **Beijing Curio City** nearby also has a vast collection of ceramics, furniture, jewelry, and Tibetan art on several floors. The large **Hong Qiao Market** near the Temple of Heaven (see pp102–3) is good for collectibles, souvenirs, and pearls, especially the section on the third and fourth floors. Be aware, however, that many of the goods on sale here are not original items. Visitors could spend a few hours browsing through **Liulichang**

(see p91) for its lacquerware, ceramics, paintings, and crafts. **Huayi Classical Furniture** sells classical antique, restored, and reproduction furniture.

Books

It is advisable to take your own reading material when traveling to China, as the choice of imported and English-language fiction in Beijing is quite limited. But a fine selection of photographic, cultural, and travel books on China can be found.

Page One, which has three separate mall locations, has an excellent selection of international and Chinese books across many of the most popular subjects. It also hosts regular literature, culture and art events, as well as author talks and book signings.

The Bookworm should be your first choice for books; it has a great selection to either buy or borrow.

Department Stores & Shopping Malls

Despite fierce competition from new specialized outlets, huge department stores are still popular with the Chinese. Xidan Dajie is known for its concentration of stores. In a frenzy of consumerism, giant new malls have sprung up everywhere (there are a lot around Xi Dan subway station), stocked with a wide range of branded items and

clothing. Try **Taikoo Li** in Sanlitun Lu, which is great for named brands, **Shin Kong Place**, near Dawang Lu subway, for designer stores, or **Parkway Green Fangcaodi**, near Dongdaqiao metro, for brands and dining.

Carpets & Textiles

Beijing's markets sell a variety of carpets (*ditan*) from Tibet, Gansu, and Xinjiang, but visitors should bargain hard on all purchases. The **Qian Men Carpet Company** on Xingfu Dajie has fine handmade carpets from Xinjiang, Mongolia, and Tibet. Other shops worth visiting are **Antique Carpets**, the carpet stores on **Liulichang**, the **Liangma Antique Market**, and the stalls at **Panjiayuan Market**.

The cramped confines of Silk Street Alley Market have been transformed into the multi-story **New Silk Street Alley Market**; experienced shoppers say it lacks the character of the old place and visitors should still haggle for good prices. The popular **Yuanlong Silk Corporation** sells silk fabric and a large selection of ready-made silk garments, and the **Beijing Silk Store** south of Qian Men has good value silk. For upscale clothes try **Na-Li**, where it is still fine to haggle. The **Yashow Clothing Market** has four floors of clothes, fabric, and curios.

Entertainment

The arts scene in Beijing received a huge boost with the opening of the futuristic **National Center for Performing Arts**, better known as The Egg. Entertainment is largely based on the performance arts, such as Beijing Opera and traditional theater. English-language theater is increasingly popular, as are art exhibitions and music concerts. The rock, punk, and jazz live music scene is rapidly expanding.

Cinemas show a limited range of English-language films, as there are only a small number of foreign films admitted each year. Many embassies and bars

show movies (either in English or with subtitles). There is a good cinema at Taikoo Li in Sanlitun. All European and Hollywood films are pirated on release, and appear in the markets as DVDs and VCDs of variable quality. Check out the listings in the English-language entertainment magazines found in the expat pubs on Sanlitun Lu, as well as in hotels. *The Beijinger* has good listings.

Beijing Opera

Traditional performances of Beijing Opera (*jingju*) are staged in the splendid **Zhengyici Theater**, the sole surviving wooden theater in China that was formerly a temple. Shows begin on most nights at 7:30pm. The **Huguang Guildhall** has a similarly distinguished setting, with daily performances at 7:15pm. During the warmer months, there are evening

shows in the marvellous **Prince Gong's Mansion** (see p96) at 7:30pm. Visitors who are part of tour groups are usually taken to the Liyuan Theater in the Jianguo Hotel.

Traditional Theater

The city's numerous tea-houses are excellent venues for the enjoyment of a variety of performances such as traditional Chinese music, storytelling, Chinese opera, acrobatics, and martial arts.

The extraordinary body-bending feats of Chinese acrobats (*zaji*) can be seen at several places in the capital. Popular performances are held nightly at the **Chaoyang Theater** at 5:15 and 7:15pm, and the Beijing Acrobat Troupe stages performances at 7pm at the **Wan Sheng Theater**. Performances are also held at the **Universal Theater** every

night at 7pm. Shows featuring opera and acrobatics take place at the **Lao She Teahouse** throughout the afternoon and evenings. The **Tianqiao Happy Teahouse** also stages similar performances every evening at 6:30pm.

Pubs, Bars & Clubs

The capital's bar scene is lively and varied, with a strong focus on the Nali Patio area of Taikoo Li (North Sanlitun Lu), where the rooftop terrace at **Fez** is very popular with local hipsters on weekends; and South Sanlitun Lu, which sits on the opposite side of Gongti Bei Lu to Nali Patio, where uber-chic modern speakeasy **Janes and Hooch** serves cool cocktails with jazzy lounge music. The lakes of Houhai are also home to several bars. One of the first, and still considered to be one of the best, the **No Name Bar** near Hou Hai is well worth a visit.

DIRECTORY

Antiques, Crafts & Curios

Beijing Curio City

21 Dongsanhuan Nan Lu, W of Huawei Bridge, Chaoyang District.

Hong Qiao Market

Hong Qiao Lu, Chaoyang District. **Map** 4 E3.

Huayi Classical Furniture

89 Xiaodian Dongwei Lu, Chaoyang District.

Panjiayuan Market

Panjiayuan Lu, Chaoyang District. **Open** 6am–3pm daily.

Books

Page One

Sanlitun Village Taikoo Li, Chaoyang District. See website for other locations: [W](#) [pageonegroup.com](#)

The Bookworm

Building 4, Nan Sanlitun Lu.

Department Stores & Malls

Parkview Green Fangcaodi

9 Dongdaqiao Rd, Chaoyang District.

Taikoo Li

Sanlitun North Rd, at jct with Gongti Bei Lu.

Carpets & Textiles

Antique Carpets

4A6 Gongti Donglu, Chaoyang District.

Beijing Silk Store

5 Zhubaoshi, Qian Men Dajie. **Map** 3 C2.

Liangma Antique Market

27 Liangmaqiao Lu, Chaoyang District.

Na-Li

Sanlitun Beilu, Chaoyang District.

Qian Men Carpet Company

F1, Building 3, 59 Xingfu Dajie. **Map** 4 F3.

Yashow Clothing Market

58 Gongti Bei Lu, Chaoyang District.

Yuanlong Silk Corporation

15 Yongding Men Dong Jie. **Map** 4 D4.

Beijing Opera

Huguang Guildhall

3 Hufangqiao Lu. **Map** 3 B3. **Tel** (010) 6351 8284.

Prince Gong's Mansion

17 Qianhai Xi Jie. **Map** 1 B3. **Tel** (010) 8328 8149.

Zhengyici Theater

220 Qian Men Xiheyuan Dajie. **Map** 3 C2. **Tel** (010) 8315 1650.

Traditional Theater

Chaoyang Theater

36 Dongsanhuan Bei Lu. **Tel** (010) 6507 2421.

Lao She Teahouse

3 Qian Men Xi Dajie, Xuanwu. **Map** 3 C2. **Tel** (010) 6303 6830.

National Center for Performing Arts

Xi Chang'an Jie. **Tel** (010) 6655 0000.

Tianqiao Happy Teahouse

1 Bei Wei Lu, Xuanwu District. **Map** 3 C3. **Tel** (010) 6304 0617.

Universal Theater

10 Dong Zhi Men Nan Dajie. **Map** 2 F3. **Tel** (010) 6416 9893.

Wan Sheng Theater

95 Tianqiao Shichang Street. **Map** 3 C3. **Tel** (010) 6303 7449.

Bars & Clubs

Fez

6/F Nali Patio, Taikoo Li, 81 Sanlitun North Rd. **Tel** (010) 5208 6188.

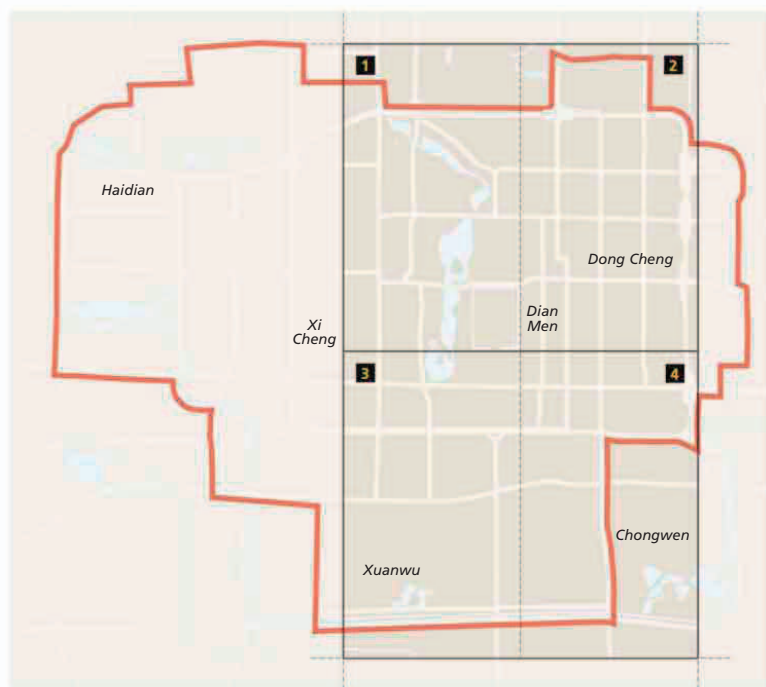
Janes and Hooch

Courtyard 4, Gongti Bei Lu. **Tel** (010) 6503 2757.





BEIJING STREET FINDER

The map references given for all sights, hotels, restaurants, shopping, and entertainment venues described in this chapter refer to the following two maps. The page grid superimposed on the schematic map below shows which parts of Beijing's city center are covered in this *Street Finder*. An index of the street names marked on the maps follows on the opposite page. The key, set out below, indicates the scales of the maps and shows

what other features are marked on them, including subway, train, and bus terminals, hospitals, and tourist information centers. Beijing has extended a long way beyond the main city center and the Greater Beijing map on page 86 gives an idea of the area to the north, west, and south of central Beijing. Getting used to the directional system of road naming (*see opposite*) is vital to getting around easily in cities.



Key to Street Finder

- | | |
|--|--|
|  Major sight |  Temple |
|  Place of interest |  Church |
|  Other important building |  Mosque |
|  Train station | |
|  Bus station | |
|  Subway station | |
|  Tourist information | |
|  Hospital | |



Scale of Map Above

0 kilometers 2
0 miles 2

Scale of Maps 1–4

0 meters 500
0 yards 500

Street Finder Index

In street names, the suffix “jie” meaning street, or “lu” meaning road are often interchangeable. Therefore, when asking for directions or an address, note that Tian Tan Jie may also be known as Tian Tan Lu. Many streets are also called “dajie” or avenue. Directionals such as “zhong” (middle), and the four cardinal points – “dong” (east), “xi” (west), “bei” (north), and “nan” (south) – are often added to street names. The other key word mentioned here is “hutong” (alleyway).

A

Andeli Bei Jie **1C1**
 Anding Men Dong Dajie **2E2**
 Anding Men Xi Dajie **1C2**
continues **2D2**
 Anding Men Nei Dajie **2D2**
 Anding Men Wai Dajie **2D1**

B

Baizhifang Dong Jie **3A4**
 Baochan Hutong **1A3**
 Bei Chang Jie **1C5**
 Bei Chizi Dajie **2D5**
 Bei Gangzi Jie **4E3**
 Bei Heyan Dajie **2D4**
 Beijing Zhan Dong Jie **4F1**
 Beijing Zhan Jie **4F1**
 Beijing Zhan Xi Jie **4E1**
continues **4E2**
 Bei Wei Lu **3C3**
 Bei Xinhua Jie **3B1**
 Bei Yangshikou Jie **4E2**
 Bingjiaoxie Jie **3C2**
continues **3C3**

C

Caishikou Dajie **3A3**
continues **5A3**
 Chaoyang Men Bei Dajie **2F4**
 Chaoyang Men Bei Xiao Jie **2F4**
 Chaoyang Men Nan Dajie **2F5**
 Chaoyang Men Nan Xiao Jie **2F5**
 Chaoyang Men Nei Dajie **2E4**
continues **2F4**
 Chongwen Men Dong Dajie **4E2**
continues **4E2**
 Chongwen Men Xi Dajie **4E2**
 Chongwen Men Xi Heyan **4D2**
 Chongwen Men Nei Dajie **4E1**
 Chongwen Men Wai Dajie **4E2**
continues **4E3**

D

Dajiao Hutong **1A3**
 Daxi Hutong **4D2**
 Dazhulan Jie **3C2**
 Desheng Men Dong Dajie **1B2**
 Desheng Men Xi Dajie **1A2**
 Desheng Men Nei Dajie **1B2**
 Di'an Men Dong Dajie **2D3**
 Di'an Men Xi Dajie **1B3**
continues **1C3**
 Dong Chang'an Jie **4D1**
continues **4E1**
 Dong Huashi Dajie **4F2**
 Dong Rongxian Hutong **3B1**

Dong Si Shi Tiao **2E3**
continues **2F3**
 Dong Si Shi San Tiao **2E3**
 Dong Si Shi Si Tiao **2E3**
 Dong Si Bei Dajie **2E4**
 Dong Si Nan Dajie **2E5**
 Dong Si Xi Dajie **2E4**
 Dong Xinglong Jie **4D2**
continues **4E2**
 Dong Zhi Men Bei Dajie **2F2**
 Dong Zhi Men Bei Xiao Jie **2F2**
 Dong Zhi Men Nan Dajie **2F3**
 Dong Zhi Men Nan Xiao Jie **2F3**
 Dong Zhi Men Nei Dajie **2E3**
continues **2F3**
 Dong Zongbu Hutong **4F1**
 Douban Hutong **2F4**
 Dongdan Bei Dajie **4E1**

F

Fahua Si Jie **4E3**
 Fayuan Si Qian Jie **3A3**
 Fenfangliuli Jie **3B3**
 Fucheng Men Nei Dajie **1A4**
 Fu Xue Hutong **2D3**
continues **2E3**
 Fuxing Men Nei Dajie **3A1**
 Fuyou Jie **3B1**

G

Guang'an Men Nei Dajie **3A3**
 Guangming Lu **4F3**
 Guangqu Men Nei Dajie **4E2**
continues **4F2**
 Gulou Dong Dajie **1C3**
continues **2D3**
 Gulouwai Dajie **1C1**
 Guowang Hutong **1C2**
 Guoxing Hutong **1C2**
 Guozhi Jian **2E2**

H

Haiyuncang Hutong **2F3**
 Heiyaohang Jie **3B3**
continues **3B4**
 Hepingli Dong Jie **2F1**
 Hepingli Xi Jie **2E1**
continues **2E2**
 Hepingli Zhong Jie **2E1**
 Hongxian Hutong **3B3**
 Hufang Lu **3B3**

J

Jianguo Men Bei Dajie **4F1**
 Jianguo Men Nei Dajie **4E1**
continues **4F1**
 Jiaochangkou Hutong **3A2**

Jiaodaokou Dong Dajie **2D3**
continues **2E3**
 Jiaodaokou Nan Dajie **2D3**
 Jin Bao Jie **2E5**
continues **2F5**
 Jing Shan Qian Jie **1C4**
continues **2D4**
 Jingtou Hutong **2D2**
 Jinyuchi Zhong Jie **4D3**

L

Laoqianggen Jie **3A2**
 Luoyin Jie **1B3**
 Longtan Lu **4F4**
 Luomashi Dajie **3B3**

M

Maweimao Hutong **4E3**
 Meishuguan Houjie **2D4**

N P

Nacachang Jie **1A3**
 Nanchang Jie **3C1**
 Nan Chizi Dajie **4D1**
 Nan Gangzi Jie **4F3**
 Nanheng Dong Jie **3A3**
continues **3B3**
 Nanheng Xi Jie **3A3**
 Nan Heyan Dajie **4D1**
 Nan Qiaowan Jie **4D3**
 Nan Xiaoshikou Jie **4F2**
 Nan Xinhua Jie **3B2**
 Puhuangyu Lu **4E5**

Q

Qianmachang Hutong **1C2**
 Qian Men Dajie **3C2**
 Qian Men Dong Dajie **4D2**
 Qian Men Xi Dajie **3C2**
 Qian Men Xiheyuan Jie **3C2**
 Qingyun Hutong **4D2**

R S

Rufuli **3A4**
 Shangxie Jie **3A2**
 Shengou Hutong **4D2**

T

Taijichang Dajie **4D1**
 Taiping Jie **3B4**
 Taiping Qiao Dajie **1A5**
continues **1A4**
 Taoranting Lu **3B4**
 Tianqiao Nan Dajie **3C3**
continues **3C4**
 Tian Tan Dong Lu **4E4**
 Tian Tan Lu **4D3**
 Tieshuxie Jie **3B2**
continues **3B3**
 Tiyyuguan Lu **4E3**
 Tonglingge Lu **3A1**

W

Wangfujing Dajie **2D5**
 Wenhuiyuan Lu **1A1**
 Wenjin Jie **1B4**
 Wulutong Jie **1B1**
 Wusi Dajie **2D4**

X

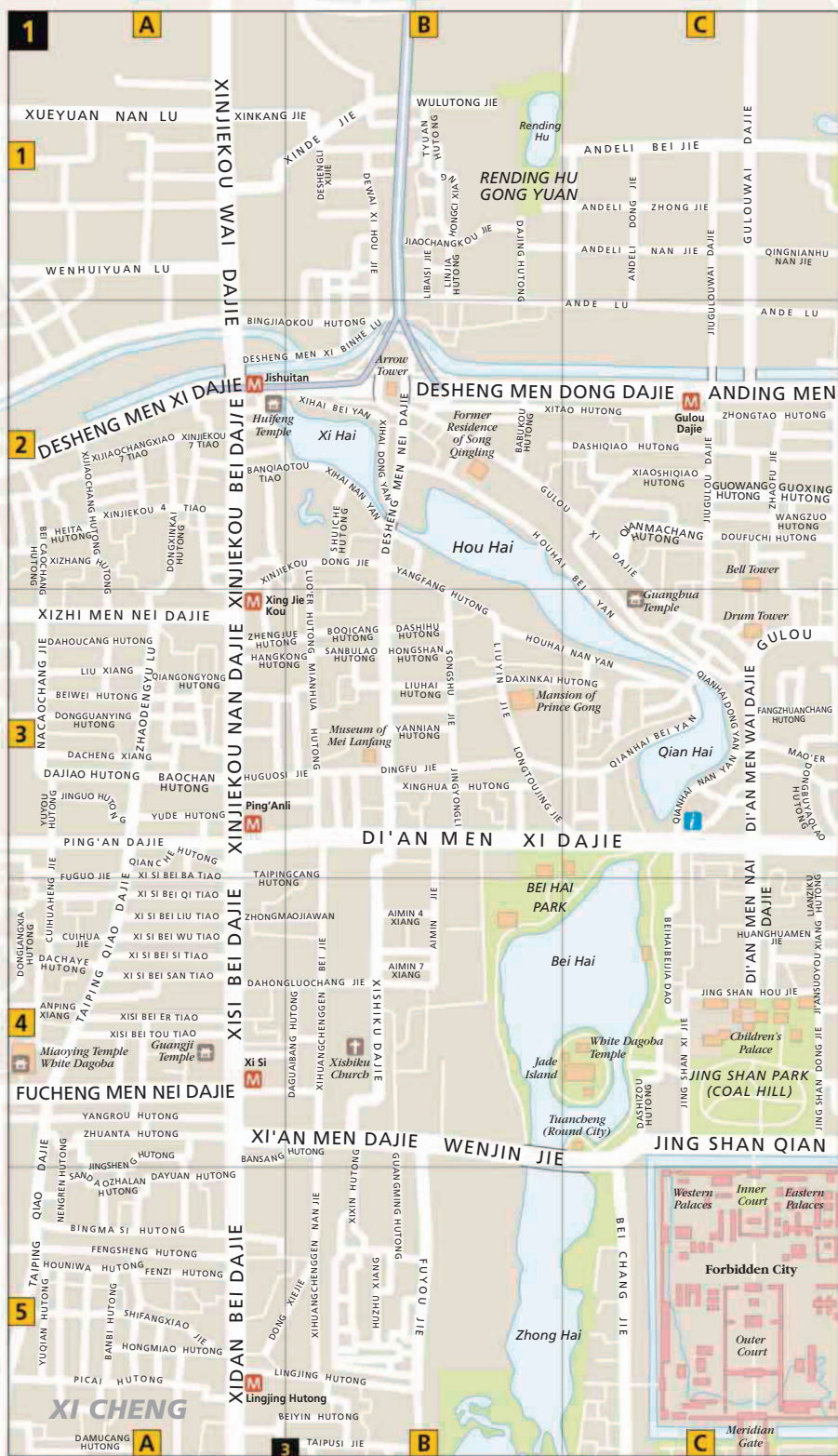
Xi'an Men Dajie **1A4**
continues **1B4**
 Xianyoukou Jie **3C2**
 Xixie Jie **3A2**
 Xibahe Nan Lu **2F1**
 Xicaochang Jie **3A2**
continues **3B2**
 Xi Chang'an Jie **3B1**
continues **3C1**
 Xidan Bei Dajie **1A5**
 Xi Damochang Jie **3C2**
continues **4D2**
 Xi Huashi Dajie **4E2**
 Xijiaomin Xiang **3E1**
continues **3C1**
 Ximi Hutong **4D2**
 Xinde Jie **1B1**
 Xingfu Dajie **4F3**
 Xinjiekou Bei Dajie **1A2**
 Xinjiekou Nan Dajie **1A3**
 Xinjiekouwai Dajie **1A1**
 Xinkang Jie **1A1**
continues **1B1**
 Xinwenhua Jie **3A1**
 Xi Rongxian Hutong **3A1**
continues **3B1**
 Xishiku Dajie **1B4**
 Xisi Bei Dajie **1A4**
 Xizhi Men Nei Dajie **1A3**
 Xizongbu Hutong **4E1**
 Xuanwu Men Dong Dajie **3B2**
 Xuanwu Men Dong Heyan Jie **3B2**
continues **3A2**
 Xuanwu Men Xi Dajie **3A2**
 Xuanwu Men Nai Dajie **3A1**
 Xueyuan Nan Lu **1A1**

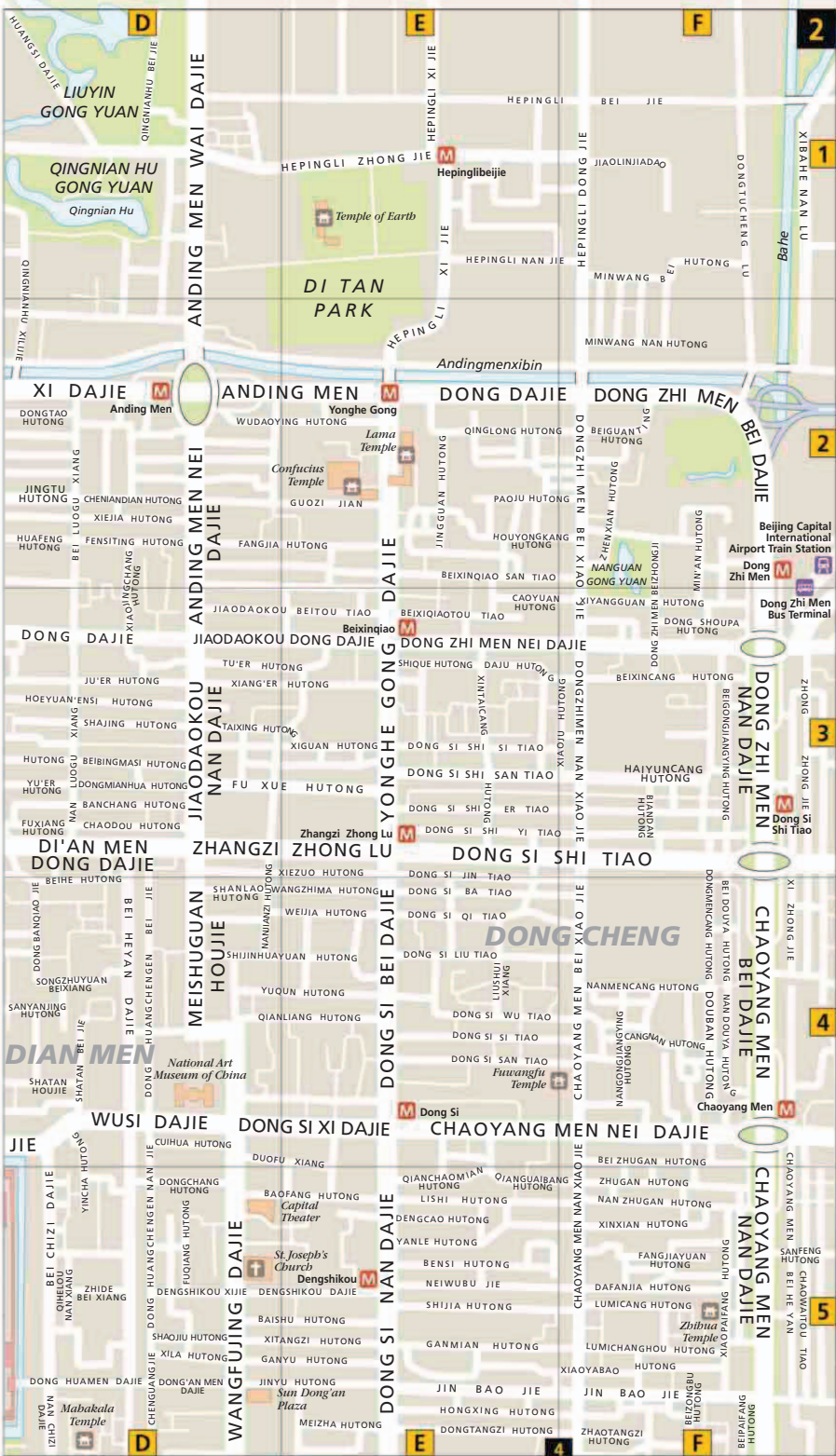
Y

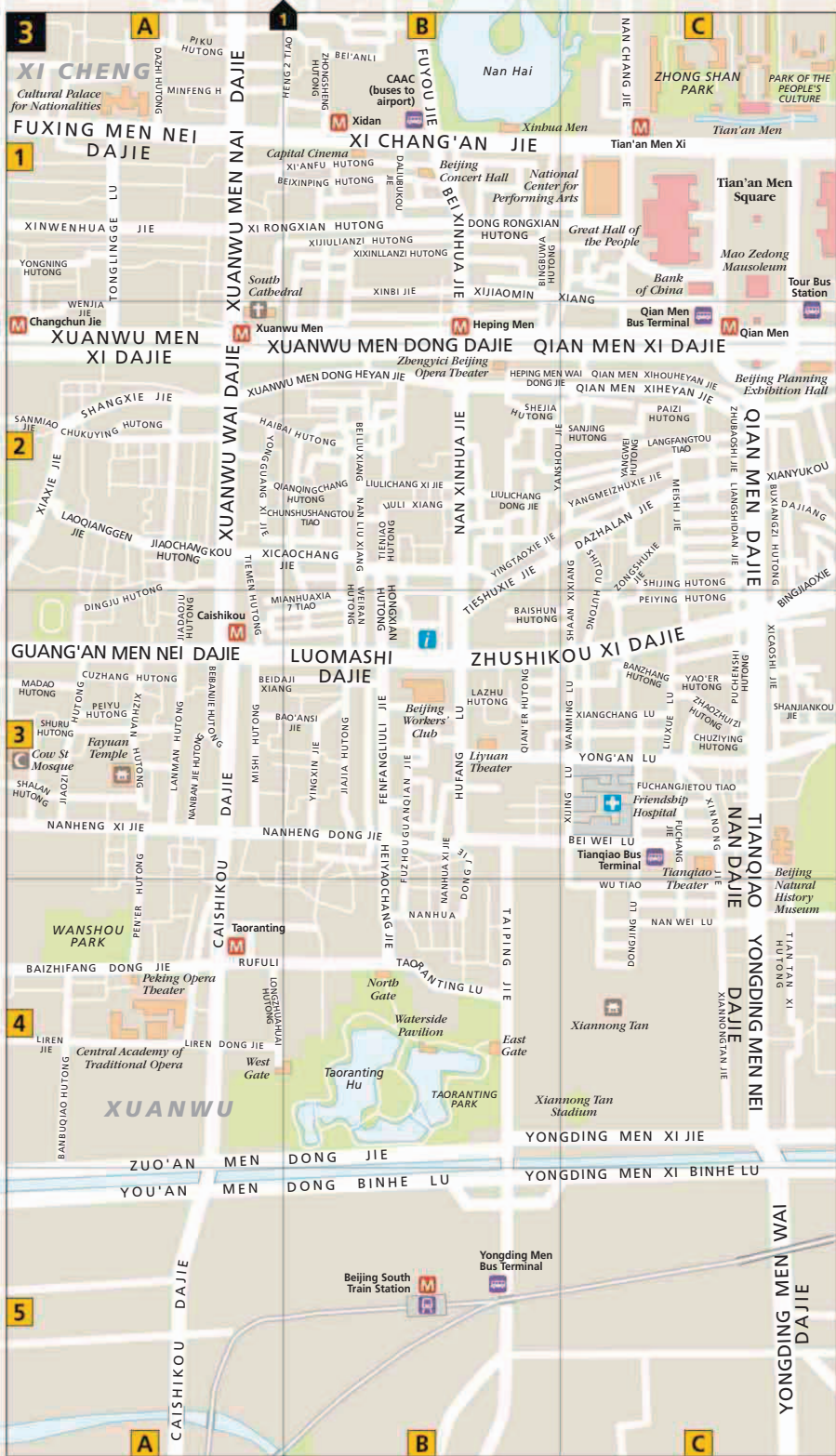
Yong'an Lu **3C3**
 Yongding Men Dong Binhe Lu **4D5**
continues **4D4**
 Yongding Men Dong Jie **3C5**
 Yongding Men Xi Binhe Lu **3B5**
continues **3C4**
 Yongding Men Nei Dajie **3B4**
 Yongding Men Nei Dajie **3C4**
 Yongding Men Wai Dajie **3C5**
 Yonghe Gong Dajie **2E3**
continues **2E2**
 You'an Men Dong Binhe Lu **3A5**
continues **3B5**

Z

Zhangzi Zhong Lu **2D3**
continues **2E3**
 Zhaodengyu Lu **1A3**
 Zhengyi Lu **4D1**
 Zhushikou Dong Dajie **4D2**
continues **4E2**
 Zhushikou Xi Dajie **3B3**
 Zhuying Hutong **3C3**
 Zhuo'an Men Dong Jie **4E2**
continues **3A5**
 Zhuo'an Men Nei Dajie **3B5**
 Zhuo'an Men Nei Dajie **4F4**
 Zhuo'an Men Xi Binhe Lu **4E5**
continues **4F5**











HEBEI, TIANJIN & SHANXI

With its northern borders adjoining Inner Mongolia and the western tip of erstwhile Manchuria, Hebei divides into a long southern plateau and a mountainous north, dotted with fragments of the Great Wall. Despite these barriers, the Manchu army flowed through the Shanhaiguan Pass in 1644 to impose 250 years of foreign rule on the Chinese. Hebei borders Shanxi to the west and envelops the wealthy conurbations of Beijing and Tianjin – Hebei's former capital and a repository of foreign concession-era architecture.



Shanxi (West of the Mountains), its northern edge protected by the Great Wall, was once a buffer zone against the hostile Mongol and Turkic tribes. It is largely a mountainous plateau, heavily industrialized, with the Yellow River (Huang He) flowing the length of its western border. Leaving Beijing, most visitors first explore Chengde, with its imperial park and temple architecture, or the celebrated Buddhist carvings at Yungang, outside Datong. Other key sights include the magnificent Hanging Temple clinging to the cliff face, the peaceful hills around Wutai Shan, one of China's four sacred Buddhist mountains and the charming Ming and Qing architecture in the ancient walled town of Pingyao.

Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- 2 Beidaihe
- 3 Shanhaiguan
- 4 Tianjin
- 5 Shijiazhuang
- 6 Datong
- 10 Taiyuan
- 11 Pingyao pp144–5

Temples & Monasteries

- 1 Chengde pp128–31
- 8 Hanging Temple
- 12 Shuanglin Si

Areas of Natural Beauty

- 7 Yungang Caves pp138–9
- 9 Wutai Shan pp140–42

Historic Sites

- 13 Qiao Jia Dayuan



● Chengde

承德

The mountain resort at Chengde (Bishu Shanzhuang) was chosen by the Kangxi emperor in 1703 as a means of eluding the hot summers in the Forbidden City. Set in a river valley surrounded by mountains, the park was strategically secure and allowed the hardy Manchu to engage in hunting and martial sports. The rural setting beyond the Great Wall reminded the Manchu rulers of their homelands to the northeast. The eclectic temple design of the surrounding Eight Outer Temples put visiting Mongol and tribal chieftains at ease, so the emperor could exploit their allegiances.



★ Putuo Zongcheng Miao

Built to resemble the Potala Palace in Lhasa, the temple is the largest of the Eight Outer Temples and has displays of *thangkas* (Tibetan religious scrolls), Tibetan religious ornaments, and two scaled-down sandalwood pagodas.

KEY

① The wall is over 6 miles (10 km) long.

The Kangxi Emperor

Kangxi (1654–1722) was the second Qing emperor to reign from Beijing, and held on to power for 61 years, the longest reign in China's history. His rule was, in comparison with other emperors, frugal,



The Kangxi emperor pictured in his library

practical, and conscientious. During his reign the empire increased in size and wealth, and generally enjoyed peace and prosperity. He taxed the farmers moderately and protected the peasantry, building up a healthy rural economy. An outstanding militarist, he was also a patron of the arts and sciences inviting Jesuit scholars to the Chinese court. He was followed by his fourth son, Yongzheng (r.1723–35), and then his grandson Qianlong (r.1736–95), who idolized him so much that he resigned as emperor after sixty years so as not to outdo him.

Getting Around

It is possible to see the temples and resort in a one-day minibus tour. However, it is quite a tough day. If time allows, try a more leisurely walk around the resort one day and hire a taxi for the temples the next.



Tibetan Buddhist designs to make the Mongol allies feel at home





Xumifushou Zhi Miao

This temple was built to impress the visiting Panchen Lama who came to Chengde on the occasion of the Qianlong emperor's birthday in 1780.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Chengde, 150 miles (250 km) NE of Beijing, Bishu Shanzhuang:

Open 5:30am–6:30pm daily. 🗺️

🚗 🚶 Outer Temples: **Open** daily (temples not all open at the same time). 🗺️

Transport

🚗 🚶 🚗 5, 7, 11, 15 from Chengde station.



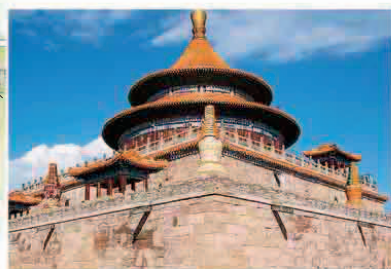
Key

- 🏠 Town area
- 🛣️ Road



★ Puning Si

This temple combines Han Chinese designs at the front with typical Tibetan structures at the back. The highlight is the majestic wooden statue of Guanyin in the main hall (see pp130–31).



Pule Si

The most impressive hall in Pule Si, the Temple of Universal Joy, is the yellow-tiled twin conical-roofed hall which has strong echoes of the Temple of Heaven in Beijing.



★ Bishu Shanzhuang

The southern section of the resort contains an array of simple but elegant palaces, cool shaded lakes and waterside pavilions, best viewed from a rowing boat.

Puning Si, Chengde

普宁寺

One of the most impressive outer temples at the Imperial Summer Retreat at Chengde, Puning Si (Puning Temple) was built in 1755 by the Qianlong emperor to commemorate the defeat of Mongol rebels. The whole temple complex is a harmonious synthesis of Chinese and Tibetan styles of architecture. As part of a series of halls ascending the slope of a mountain, the temple's pinnacle is the Mahayana Hall, in which towers one of the world's largest wooden statues, a vast 72-ft (22-m) high representation of the Buddhist goddess of compassion, Guanyin.



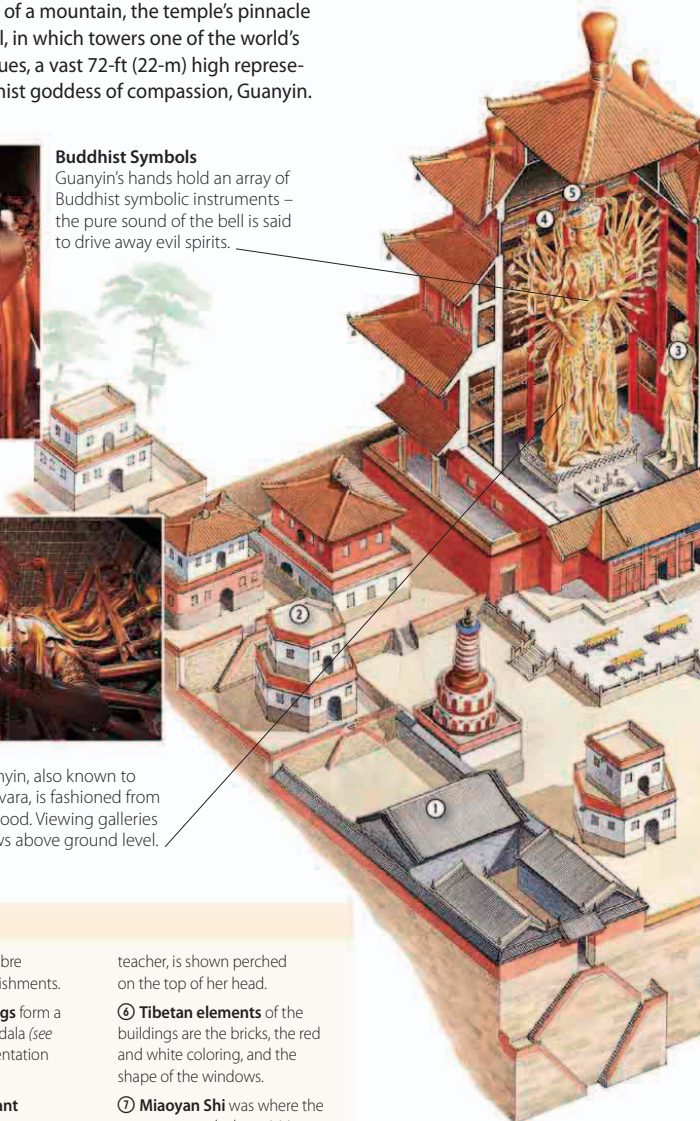
Buddhist Symbols

Guanyin's hands hold an array of Buddhist symbolic instruments – the pure sound of the bell is said to drive away evil spirits.



★ Guanyin

The huge effigy of Guanyin, also known to Buddhists as Avalokitesvara, is fashioned from five different types of wood. Viewing galleries can be climbed for views above ground level.



KEY

① **Diyu** houses a macabre display of Buddhist punishments.

② **The terrace buildings** form a three-dimensional mandala (see p540), a physical representation of Buddhist cosmology

③ **One of two attendant statues**

④ **Viewing gallery**

⑤ **Amitabha Buddha**, Guanyin's

teacher, is shown perched on the top of her head.

⑥ **Tibetan elements** of the buildings are the bricks, the red and white coloring, and the shape of the windows.

⑦ **Miaoyan Shi** was where the emperor rested when visiting.

⑧ **Defensive wall**

⑨ **Gatehouse**



Prayer Wheels

In Tibetan

Buddhism, sacred mantras and prayers are inserted into the decorated cylinders and activated by spinning the wheel clockwise.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

5 miles (8 km) NE of Chengde, Hebei Province. **Open**

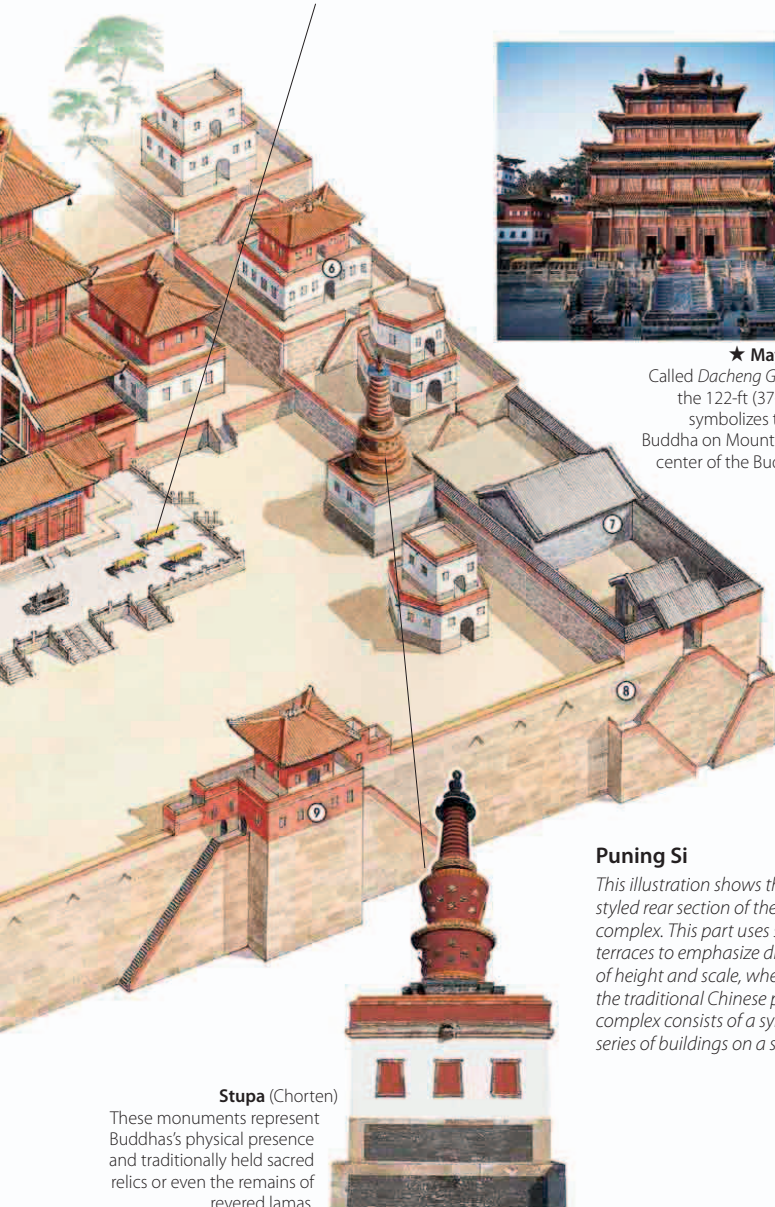
8:30am–4:30pm daily.

i Chengde International Travel Service, (0314) 202 2205.

Transport



6



★ Mayahana Hall

Called *Dacheng Ge* in Chinese, the 122-ft (37-m) high hall symbolizes the palace of Buddha on Mount Sumeru, the center of the Buddhist world.

Stupa (Chorten)

These monuments represent Buddha's physical presence and traditionally held sacred relics or even the remains of revered lamas.

Puning Si

This illustration shows the Tibetan-styled rear section of the temple complex. This part uses several terraces to emphasize differences of height and scale, whereas the traditional Chinese part of the complex consists of a symmetrical series of buildings on a single axis.







Beidaihe, one of northern China's premier resorts

② Beidaihe 北戴河

186 miles (300 km) E of Beijing. ✈️ to Qinhuangdao, 9 miles (15 km) NE of Beidaihe, then express bus. 🚗 🚏

Despite its immense coastline, China has very few good quality beaches, except perhaps in Hainan Island in the south. Nevertheless, the coastal town of Beidaihe, North China's breezy seaside retreat, is a pleasant enough escape from Beijing's intolerable summer heat. Discovered in the 19th century by British railway engineers, it soon became popular with foreign nationals from Tianjin, and villas, summer holiday homes, and golf courses soon sprang up. These were later taken over by Chinese Communist Party cadres, and party leaders still gather in Beidaihe for their annual conference in August.

Sadly, many of the elegant European-style villas are now obscured by garish modern seafloor properties. During summer (April–October), Beidaihe's beaches are packed with hawkers and domestic holiday-makers. The best way to spend one's time is to sample the array of seafood, or hire a bike or tandem from one of the outlets on Zhonghaitan Lu for panoramic rides along the coast. The hilly **Lianfeng-shan Park** in the west of town is covered in cypresses and pines, and its hilltop Sea-Viewing Pavilion provides a good vantage point for views of the

coast. The restored **Guanyin Temple**, dedicated to the Goddess of Compassion, is also located here. Beidaihe's three beaches are dotted with statues of revolutionary workers.

Middle Beach is the most popular, while West Beach is quieter. Nearby, **Tiger Rocks** is a popular spot to watch the sunrise. **East Beach**, 4 miles (6 km) northeast of Beidaihe, gets covered in seaweed and shells at low tide.

③ Shanhaiguan 山海关

218 miles (350 km) E of Beijing. ✈️ to Qinhuangdao, 8 miles (13 km) SW of Shanhaiguan, then express bus. 🚗 🚏

A short hop up along the coast from Beidaihe, Shanhaiguan (The Pass Between the Mountain and the Sea) is where the Great Wall meets the sea. Although less affluent than Beidaihe, the town is steeped in

history and is fortified by a Ming-era wall. The charming area within the walls is segmented by *hutong* (historic alleys), and serviced by a few hotels.

Shanhaiguan promotes its Great Wall links. **The First Pass Under Heaven** in the east of town is a formidable section of wall attached to a huge gatehouse. The Manchus overcame half-hearted resistance here and headed for Beijing to establish the Qing dynasty. Visitors can climb up on the ramparts, or access its tower, which displays Qing weapons and costumes. To the south is the **Great Wall Museum**, worth visiting for its photographs and models of the wall. Also on display are tools that were used to build it, as well as the various weapons that were used in its defense. There are some English captions, and the exhibits are well displayed.

A more stirring section of the wall lies 2 miles (3 km) north of town at **Jiao Shan**, where bracing climbs can be made up its steep incline – or take a cable car. **Lao Long Tou** (Old Dragon Head) marks the end of the Great Wall at the sea, 3 miles (4 km) south of town. This part of the wall has been completely reconstructed and, despite the tour buses, is worth visiting. Visitors can head west along the beach to explore Haishen Miao (Temple of the Sea God).

🏛️ **Great Wall Museum**
Open 8am–5pm daily. 🕒



The aptly named Lao Long Tou, where the Great Wall reaches the sea

4 Tianjin

天津

50 miles (80 km) SE of Beijing. 人口 10,000,000. 主要火车站 (central), Tianjin South Station (30-min drive from centre). High speed train from Beijing's South Station takes 30 mins. 主要汽车站, West Bus Station, Northeast Bus Station, Bus Station No. 1, CAAC (buses to airport), South Bus Station. Tanggu Harbor. 电话 22 Youyi Lu, (022) 2835 4860.

Hebei's former capital, the municipality of Tianjin is China's fourth largest city and a major seaport. The city's appeal lies in its Western Concession architecture, a legacy of its past as a foreign trading post since 1858. The former powers, led by Britain and France, and followed by Japan, Germany, Austro-Hungary, Italy, and Russia, built schools, banks, and churches.

In the north of town, the **Ancient Culture Street** is a recreation of an ancient Chinese street. The **Tianhou Temple**, dedicated to the Goddess of the Sea, is on the

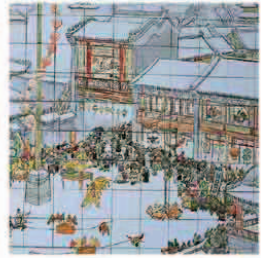
street's west side. To the southwest, close to the Old Chinese Town, the **Confucius Temple** was damaged during the Cultural Revolution, and restored in 1993. About a mile (0.6 km) northeast across the River Hai is the gaunt **Wang Hai Lou Cathedral** (Wang Hailou Jiao Tang). Outside, a plaque in

Chinese relates the church's turbulent history. It was destroyed by a mob in 1870, and again during the 1900 Boxer Rebellion. The 1976 Tang Shan earthquake damaged it for the third time, and it was repaired in 1983. North of the cathedral, the Qing-era **Dabei Monastery** is reached via a colorful market selling incense sticks and Buddhist

talismans. People pay their respects to Milefo (the Laughing Buddha) at the entrance and to Guanyin in her own hall. A popular attraction is the **Tianjin Eye**, one of the tallest ferris wheels in the world, standing at 394 ft (120 m). On **Jiefang Bei Lu** are many of Tianjin's colonial buildings,



Deity, Street Market



Beautiful tiled wall at the Tianhou Temple, Tianjin

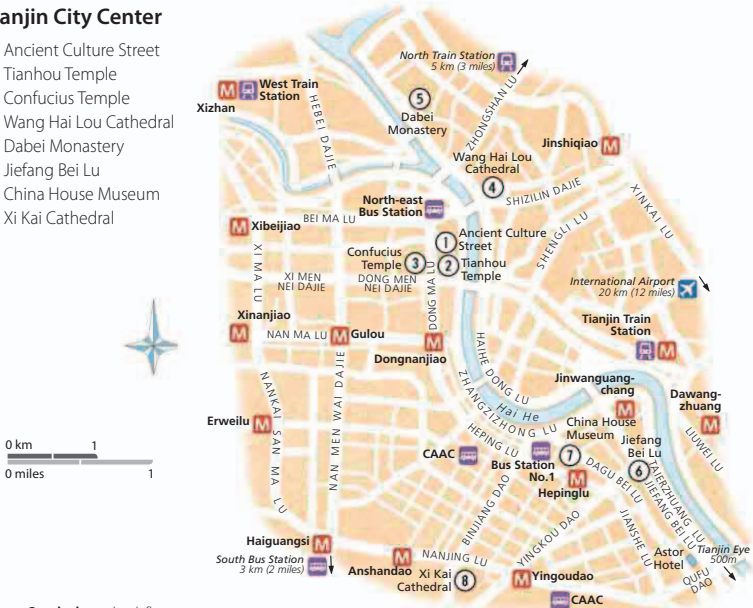
including the Astor Hotel, whose guests included China's last emperor, Pu Yi. The highly original and hugely popular **China House Museum** at 72 Chifeng Dao is a beautiful old French house that has been redecorated by Zhang Lianzhi, a collector of Chinese porcelain. He has used hundreds of thousands of pieces throughout the building. To the south, at the end of Binjiang Dao, Tianjin's biggest thoroughfare and shopping area, are the three green domes of the French-built **Xi Kai Cathedral** (Xi Kai Jiao Tang), open on Sundays.

Dabei Monastery

40 Tianwei Lu. Open daily.

Tianjin City Center

- ① Ancient Culture Street
- ② Tianhou Temple
- ③ Confucius Temple
- ④ Wang Hai Lou Cathedral
- ⑤ Dabei Monastery
- ⑥ Jiefang Bei Lu
- ⑦ China House Museum
- ⑧ Xi Kai Cathedral



Key to Symbols see back flap

9 Shijiazhuang

石家庄

155 miles (250 km) SW of Beijing. 26
Donggang Lu, (0311) 858 98765.

The capital of Hebei often suffers from unfair comparisons to both Beijing and the former provincial capital, Tianjin. An industrial town dating from the modern railway age, Shijiazhuang has just a few sights including the **Hebei Provincial Museum** in the east of town, which displays musical instruments that are over 2,300 years old, historical relics such as a jade burial suit, and an entire miniature terracotta army. To the west along Zhongshan Lu is the **Martyrs' Memorial**, a park which honors two doctors as Heroes of the Revolution. Both men, a Canadian named Norman Bethune and an Indian named Dwarkanath Kotnis, served the Communist Party in the early 20th century.

Hebei Provincial Museum
Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

Environs: Most of the area's main sights lie outside Shijiazhuang, and are easily accessed by train, bus, or minibus. Lying a short train or bus journey 9 miles (15 km) north of town, the ancient walled town of **Zhengding** is

known for its temples and pagodas. The most renowned is **Dafo Si** (Great Buddha Temple), also known as Longxing Si. Its highlight is the gargantuan 69-ft (21-m) high bronze statue of Guanyin (the Goddess of Compassion) that stands in the Dabei Ge (Pavilion of Great Mercy). Fashioned over 1,000 years ago during the Song dynasty, the multi-armed statue is a riveting sight. Visitors can climb the gallery surrounding the statue for a closer look.

West of Dafo Si, the 135 ft (41 m) **Lingxiao Ta** (Lingxing Pagoda) in Tianning Si is a restored Tang dynasty structure built from wood and brick,



Kaiyuan Si's Tang pagoda, Zhengding

while **Kaiyuan Si's** Tang-dynasty pagoda rises up just off Yanzhao Dajie, Zhengding's main street. Also situated here is China's sole surviving Tang dynasty Bell Tower (Zhong Lou). Dotted around Zhengding are several temples and pagodas, including the Confucian Temple, Chengling Ta (Chengling Pagoda) at Linji Si, and the Hua Ta (Hua Pagoda) at Guanghui Si, with

its many intriguing motifs that represent the Buddhas, elephants, and whales.

About 25 miles (40 km) southeast of Shijiazhuang, near Zhaoxian town, the 1,400-year old **Zhaozhou Bridge** (Zhaozhou Qiao) is a graceful feat of engineering. Built over ten years by the mason Li Chun



Qiao Lou at Cangyan Shan Si (Hanging Palace), Cangyan Shan

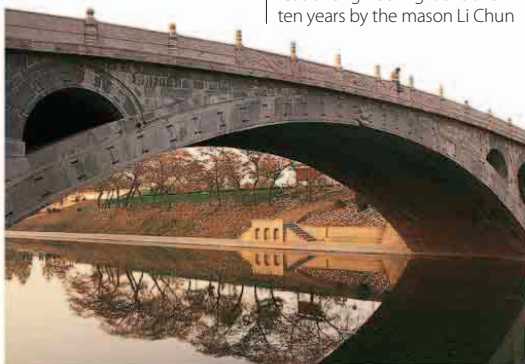
and completed in AD 605, the 167-ft (51-m) long bridge satisfied several requirements. The gentle bow had to be level enough to convey imperial soldiers, yet high enough to evade flood waters, while relying on the soft riverbanks for support. The main arch (forming an arc rather than a semicircle) is an effortless span of 28 stone blocks. Supported on each end of the arch are two smaller ones that are designed to lighten the structure of the bridge and allow the passage of flood waters.

About 50 miles (80 km) southwest of Shijiazhuang is a surprising group of monasteries and pagodas tucked away among the cypresses and sheer drops of **Cangyan Shan** (Cangyan Mountains). The Cangyan Shan Si also known as the Hanging Palace, situated hundreds of steps up the mountainside, dates from the Sui dynasty. One hall, the Qiao Lou, is spectacularly slung between two cliffs, suspended on a bridge over the void. In the valleys and on the slopes beyond, the trail continues to explore the dramatic landscape, passing several shrines.

Dafo Si
Open 8am–5pm daily.

Zhaozhou Bridge
Open daily.

Cangyan Shan
 from Shijiazhuang. **Open** daily.



The graceful, stone Zhaozhou Bridge (Zhaozhou Qiao)

6 Datong

大同

165 miles (265 km) SW of Beijing. 📍
3,000,000. 🚗 🚶 🚶 CITS Datong,
(0352) 510 1326.

Situated near the southern flank of Inner Mongolia, Datong has some splendid sights worth exploring despite the abundance of coal mines and power stations that blight the surrounding landscape.

The city was twice a dynastic capital, under the Northern Wei (AD 386–534), and the Liao (AD 907–1125), both non-Chinese. The Northern Wei were fervent Buddhists who carved and decorated the **Yungang Caves** nearby, while a significant relic of the Liao era survives in the **Huayan Si** (Huayan Temple), located in an alley off Da Xi Jie, west of the crossroads in the old town. Completed by the Jin, the temple was much restored by later dynasties. Raised up on a 13-ft (4-m) terrace, Huayan Si's Great Treasure Hall (Daxiong Bao Dian) is one of China's largest Buddhist halls. Within the hall sit five gilded and enthroned Ming-era statues with attendants. The ceiling panels are decorated with Sanskrit letters, flowers, and dragons. A short walk east of the crossroads on Da Dong Jie is **Jiulong Bi** (Nine Dragon Screen), a 148-ft (45-m) tiled spirit wall



Gilded Buddhist statuary, Mahavira Hall, Huayan Si, Datong

built to front the palace of the 13th son of Hongwu, the first Ming emperor. Less than a mile south of the crossroads on Da Nan Jie is the **Shanhua Si**. Erected during the Tang era, it was subsequently destroyed by fire and rebuilt in the 12th century. The main hall has five Buddhist statues, flanked by 24 divine generals.

🏠 Huayan Si

Open 8:30am–5:30pm daily. 🚶

🏠 Shanhua Si

Open 8:30am–5pm daily. 🚶 17. 🚶

7 Yungang Caves

See pp138–9.

8 Hanging Temple

悬空寺

40 miles (65 km) SE of Datong. 📍
from Datong to Hunyuan, then taxi.

Open 9am–5pm daily. 🚶 🚶

One of China's five sacred Daoist mountains, Heng Shan is also known as Beiyue (Northern Peak). The mountain range is a huge draw, its highest peak daring climbers to scale its 6,600 ft (2,000 m) slopes – a tradition started by the first emperor, Qin Shi Huangdi, and kept alive by later rulers. Its main attraction, however, is the spectacular Xuankong Si. Supported by slender wooden pillars, the temple seemingly clings precariously to the canyon's walls. The Northern Wei were the first to build here, but flood waters from the Heng River below regularly washed the buildings away. The current edifice dates from the Qing dynasty. The temple's 40-odd halls are hewn from natural caves and hollows in the rock, and are covered with wooden façades. They are connected by walkways and bridges, and contain statues of Confucian, Buddhist, and Daoist gods in stone, iron, and bronze. The Sanjiao Dian (Three Religions Hall) has statues of Confucius, Buddha, and Laozi all seated together.



The spectacular Hanging Temple (Xuankong Si), Heng Shan

Yungang Caves

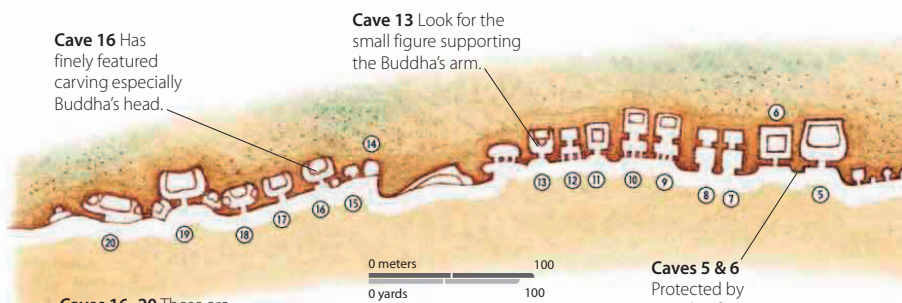
云岗石窟

Carved into sandstone cliffs, the caves at Yungang are one of China's most celebrated accomplishments of Buddhist art. The assembly of over 51,000 statues was started by the Northern Wei dynasty in AD 453 to atone for their persecution of Buddhism. Hellenistic, Persian, Central Asian, and Indian influences are evident in the carvings, testifying to the many influences entering China via the Silk Road. When the capital moved from Datong to Luoyang, in AD 494, work at Yungang all but stopped. The statues are accompanied by English explanations. One third of the caves are currently closed for renovations.



★ Exterior of Cave 6

The wooden temple façade has protected the beautifully carved 50-ft (16-m) stone pagoda and the rest of the sculptures within.



Cave 16 Has finely featured carving especially Buddha's head.

Cave 13 Look for the small figure supporting the Buddha's arm.

Caves 16–20 These are the oldest caves, built between AD 453 and 462 by the monk Tan Hao.

Caves 5 & 6 Protected by wooden frontage.



★ Main Buddha, Cave 20

The simplicity and balance of the tableau shows great artistic merit. This cave would have been shielded by a wooden screen.



Detail of Cave 10

Built as a pair along with Cave 9, this cave is also divided into two chambers. The interior is densely decorated with colorful bas-reliefs and statues in niches.

★ Seated Buddha, Cave 5

Marking a move from the more stylized earlier Buddhas, this one has a more corpulent and naturalistic air. Protected by the wooden façade, the cave is in good condition.



Musicians, Cave 12

This cave is decorated with devotees of music and dance. The colorful walls provide excellent evidence for the development and use of musical instruments in China at the time.

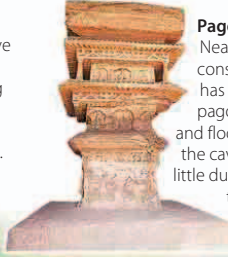


View of the central section of the Yungang Caves, Datong



Interior, Cave 3

The Buddhas here have rounded fleshy faces and full lips, indicating that they are later creations, perhaps Sui dynasty (AD 581–618).



Pagoda in Cave 2

Nearly square in construction, this cave has a carved square pagoda linking ceiling and floor. The statues in the cave have suffered a little due to exposure to the weather.



Artistic Influences, Cave 18

The colossal Buddha recalls the style of Gandhara (see p471). This Buddhist stronghold and meeting point for many of the Silk Roads sought to recreate the solemnity, dignity, and aweinspiring nature of Buddha. A more realistic style can be seen in the five smaller arhats on each side and the crown worn by the Bodhisattva.

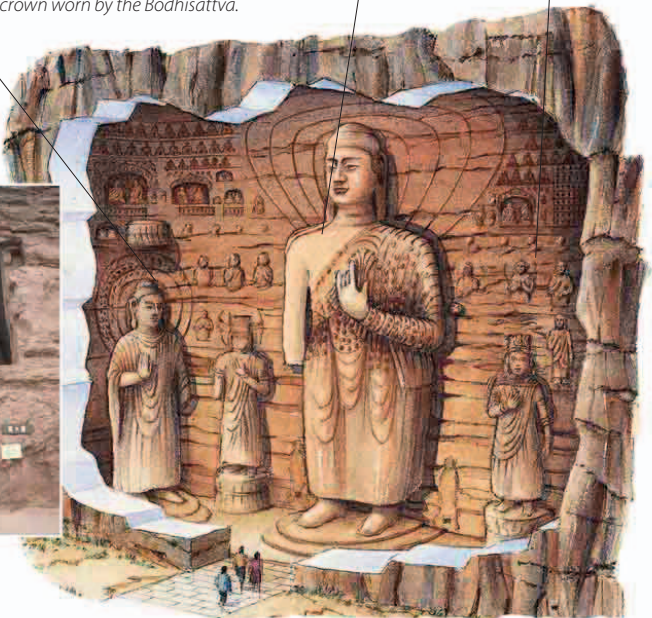
The bared shoulder was replaced by the more Chinese robe and girdle (see Cave 5)

The realistic faces of these arhats show the personal input by the artists

Statue has webbed fingers one of the marks of Buddha



The exterior of Cave 18 with the colossal Buddha



9 Wutai Shan

五台山

The monastic village of Taihuai, nestling in the valley ringed by Wutai Shan's five mountain peaks (or terraces), has the largest concentration of temples as well as most of Wutai Shan's hotels and restaurants. Wutai Shan was the site of over 300 temples during the Qing dynasty, but many were destroyed. Tsongkhapa, the founder of the Buddhist Yellow Hat Sect (which has the Dalai Lama as its head), lived here and the mountains and its shrines are revered by Lamaist Buddhists. In winter, the roads are often closed due to snow. Late spring and summer is the best time to visit, but also the most crowded.



★ Tayuan Si

This temple is dominated by its distinctive Ming Dynasty and Tibetan-styled Great White Dagoba (Da Bai Ta), which rises to a height of 190 ft (50 m). The dagoba is topped with a bronze cap with bells.

KEY

① Ming Qing Jie

② Pu Hua Si

③ Shu Xiang Si

④ Wan Fo Dong

⑤ San Ta Si

⑥ Shou Ning Si is a little bit off the beaten track in the hills.

⑦ Guang Hua Si

⑧ Jin Jie Si

⑨ Shang Cai Dong sits at the foot of the hills in view of the cable car to the north.



Luohou Si

Inside this temple is a wooden lotus flower decorated with eight wooden petals that, when rotated, open to reveal carved Buddhist figures.



Taihuai

West of the Qingshui River, the village is thronging with pilgrims, monks, and lamas. Visitors come for its Buddhist temples and to shop for religious talismans.





★ Xian Tong Si

The highlight of this, the largest temple on Wutai Shan, is the Bronze Hall. Made entirely from metal, it is decorated with thousands of small Buddhist figures.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

149 miles (240 km) N of Taiyuan.

☎ (0350) 722 7350. **Open** daily.

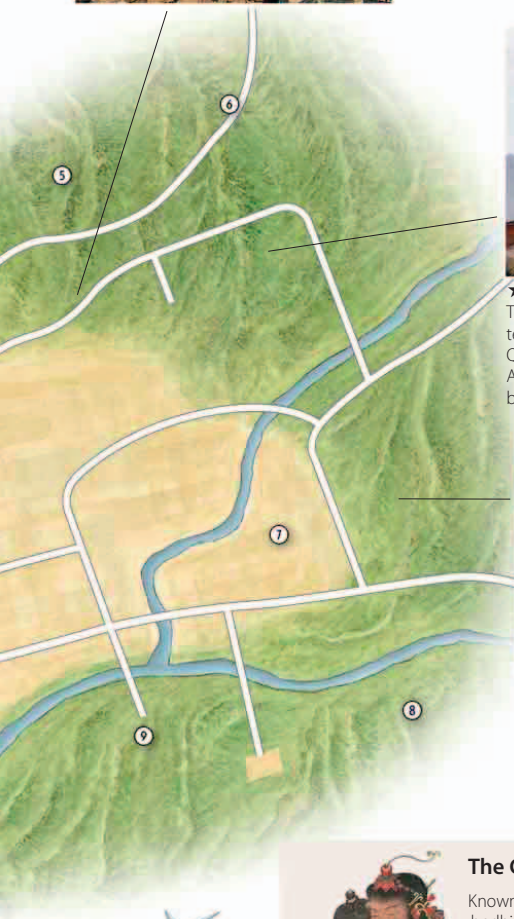
🚗 by minibuses, taxis, or through tourist office. 📶 📺

Transport

✈ to Taiyuan, then bus to Taihuai.

🚗 from Datong or Taihuai. 🚗

from Beijing to Shahe then bus.



★ Pusa Ding

To reach Pusa Ding (Bodhisattva Summit), a temple complex dating from the Ming and Qing dynasties, there is a climb of 108 steps. A significant number – it is the number of beads on a Buddhist rosary.



Qi Fo Si

This temple is not visited as much as the other more famous temples and as such will be a quieter spot to take in the scenery. It also has a white stone pagoda.



0 meters 100
0 yards 100

Key

■ Built-up area

— Road



The Cult of Manjusri

Known as Wenshu in China, Manjusri is the Buddhist bodhisattva of Wisdom and the patron deity of Wutai Shan. A disciple of Sakyamuni (Buddha), Manjusri is often portrayed riding a lion or holding a sword – for cleaving both ignorance and suffering. Many of Wutai Shan's temples and halls are dedicated to Wenshu and the deity's association with the mountain dates as far back as the first century AD, when a visiting Indian monk had a vision of the bodhisattva. Many more sightings have been recorded since.

Manjusri or Wenshu, patron deity of Wutai Shan

Exploring Wutai Shan

Wutai Shan was originally worshiped by followers of the Dao (Daoists) pursuing the secrets of immortality, before attracting devotees of Buddha who built many temples in his name. If visitors explore around Taihuai they will find many temples scattered among the peaks and in more distant parts of the region. Most can be reached without much difficulty, with a chairlift to some parts, and the effort rewards the adventurous with the chance to admire some of China's oldest buildings.



The thickly wooded slopes of Wutai Shan

Wutai Shan's Temples

The first temples appeared on Wutai Shan during the Eastern Han Dynasty. The five peaks of Wutai Shan are each topped with a temple, but they are hard to reach and tend to attract only devout pilgrims. Several temples can be visited either by hiking, by bus, or by minibus tour from Taihuai (including those through CITS), although other trips, such as to Nanchan Si, involve longer expeditions.

With lovely views over the valley, **Nanshan Si** (South Mountain Temple), around

2 miles (3 km) south of Taihuai, is one of the largest temples on Wutai Shan, most notable for its 18 superbly crafted *arhat* effigies. Three miles (5 km) southwest of Taihuai, immediately above Nanshan Si and part of the same temple complex, is **Yoguo Si**. **Longquan Si** (Dragon Spring Temple), at the top of 108 steps through a marvelous marble archway, features the Hall of Heavenly Kings (with an effigy of Milefo – the future Buddha, also known in this chubby incarnation as the Laughing Buddha), the attractively

decorated and designed Puji Pagoda, and the Guanyin Hall, among other structures.

Two more temples within easy reach of Taihuai include the Ming dynasty **Bishan Si**, which contains some intriguing Buddhist sculptures, and **Zhenhai Si**.

Considerably farther away is the remote **Nanchan Si**, about 44 miles (70 km) south of Taihuai on the road to Taiyuan, which contains one of China's oldest surviving wooden halls (782 AD). The main hall has somehow avoided destruction – a miracle considering the many anti-Buddhist purges during China's history. Despite much restoration work, the hall's original Tang-dynasty design, a rarity in Chinese temple hall architecture, is preserved. **Foguang Si** (Buddha's Light Temple), about 25 miles (40 km) south of Taihuai, also features a Tang dynasty hall dating to the 9th century. The hall is especially notable for its fine *dougong* (see p41) bracket work, Tang and Song dynasty wall paintings, and collection of Ming dynasty *arhats*.



The elaborately carved archway at Longquan Si

Wutai Shan Temples



For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85

⑩ Pingyao

平遥

Surrounded by one of China's few intact Ming city walls, Pingyao's streets are lined with a wealth of traditional Chinese buildings, including courtyard houses, temples, and more than 3,000 historic shops. Pingyao's treasure trove of Ming and Qing architecture is a legacy of the town's affluent days as a banking center, which ceased when the Qing dynasty defaulted on loans and abdicated, leaving the banks empty. The transferral of the country's finances to Shanghai and Hong Kong turned the city into a backwater, saving it from development and, ultimately, preserving its character.



County Magistrate's Residence

Pingyao's justice department during the Ming and Qing dynasties, these offices represented the secular world while the Daoist temples, mirroring the County Yamen on the other side of Nan Dajie, represented the spiritual realm.

Southeast Pingyao

The most notable part of the car-free town, the southeast corner and center of Pingyao has the largest concentration of sights, museums, and heritage architecture.



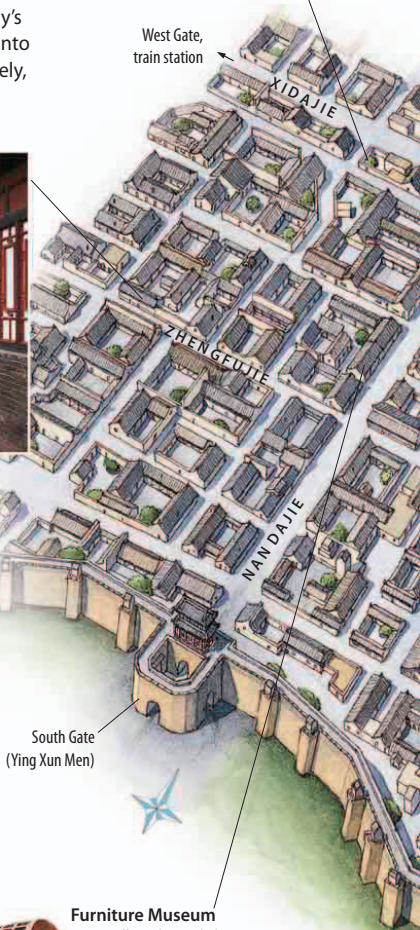
★ City Walls

The 39-ft (12-m) high, crenellated enclosure dating from 1370 is said to resemble the outline of a tortoise. Its head lies at the south gate, its four feet at the east and west gates, and its tail at the north gate.



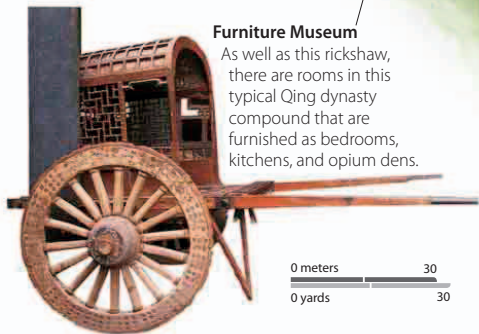
★ Rishenchang

This extensive museum of early banking is the site of China's first draft bank, founded in 1824.



Furniture Museum

As well as this rickshaw, there are rooms in this typical Qing dynasty compound that are furnished as bedrooms, kitchens, and opium dens.



0 meters 30
0 yards 30

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

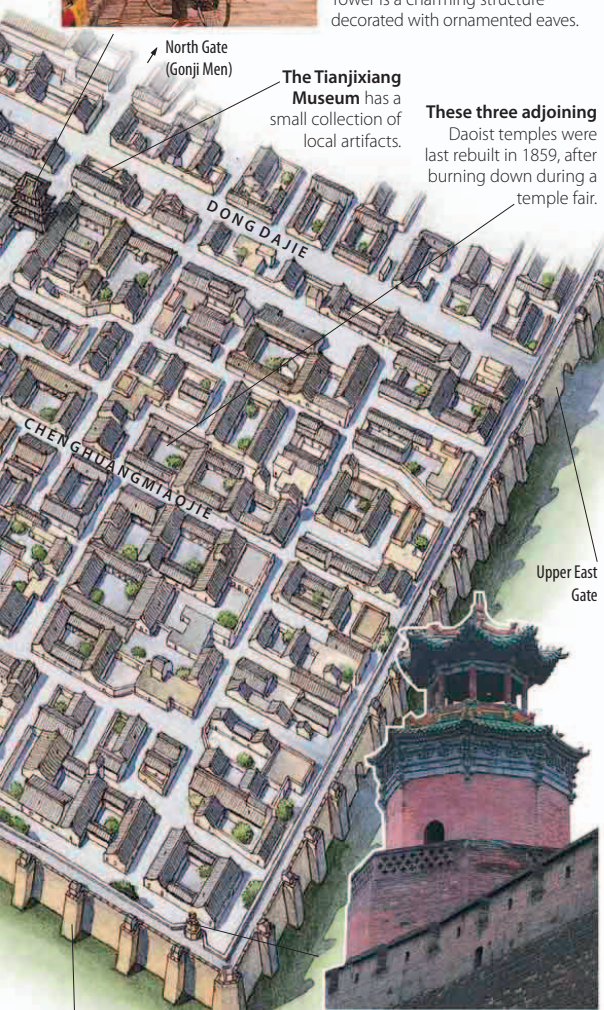
62 miles (100 km) S of Taiyuan. 40,000. access at West Gate. **Open** daily. (joint ticket for admission to all the town's attractions).

Transport

City Walls: access at west gate

★ Bell Tower

Rising above Nan Dajie, the Bell Tower is a charming structure decorated with ornamented eaves.



Watchtowers punctuate the length of the wall every 164 ft (50 m).

The Tianjixiang Museum has a small collection of local artifacts.

These three adjoining Daoist temples were last rebuilt in 1859, after burning down during a temple fair.

Upper East Gate

Kuixing Tower

This extravagant and unusually designed eight-sided pavilion rises above the battlements. It is named after a star in the 28 constellations of the Chinese zodiac.

12 Shuanglin Si

双林寺

4 miles (6 km) SW of Pingyao.

Open 8:30am–6:30pm daily (until 5pm in winter).

This temple has a long history, dating back 1,500 years to the Northern Wei, which had its capital at Datong. The current temple was built during the Ming and Qing dynasties and contains over 2,000 Buddhist statues, some from the Song dynasty. The effigies are arranged in ten halls around three courtyards. The expertly fashioned figures' expressions vary from the sublime through the comic to the sinister. The lifelike *luohan* in the second hall each reveal an individual persona and the bodhisattvas in the third hall are well worth seeking out.



Classic courtyard at the extensive Qiao Jia Dayuan

13 Qiao Jia Dayuan

乔家大院

12 miles (20 km) N of Pingyao. between Taiyuan and Pingyao can drop you off. from Pingyao. **Open** 8am–5:30pm daily.

This magnificent courtyard house was the setting for director Zhang Yimou's classic 1991 film *Raise the Red Lantern*, starring Gong Li. Dating from the 18th century, the vast complex, comprising 313 rooms, is an exquisite exercise in architectural balance, its linked courtyards pervaded by a sense of equilibrium. Enclosed by a 33-ft (10-m) high, fortified wall, the house was built by Qiao Guifu, a merchant who made his fortune in tofu and tea.



SHANDONG & HENAN

The swathe of territory comprising Shandong and Henan, irrigated by the final sweep of the Yellow River (Huang He), sustained some of China's earliest settled societies. The Shandong Chinese are proud of their many treasures, which include sages Confucius and Mencius, the Yellow River, and Tai Shan, China's holiest Daoist peak, and the former German colony of Qingdao, with its Bavarian cobbled streets and Teutonic architecture. (Qingdao may be testament to humiliating 19th-century foreign ambitions, but it was German expertise that helped brew China's famous Tsingtao beer.) The Yellow River enters Shandong (East of the Mountains) from the west, after slicing Henan (South of the River) into two uneven chunks. Henan's historic sights cluster around the river in the province's north, in an area that was the cradle of Chinese civilization as early as 6000 BC. The ancient capitals of Anyang, Kaifeng, and Luoyang are located here. The impressive Longmen Caves, with their Buddhist carvings, lie outside Luoyang. Other sights include the sacred Daoist mountain of Song Shan, home to the Shaolin Temple and its band of warrior monks, and the Northern Song capital of Kaifeng, with its fine Buddhist architecture and historic Judaic links.



Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- 1 Jinan
- 3 Qufu
- 4 Qingdao
- 5 Yantai
- 6 Weihai
- 8 Kaifeng
- 9 Anyang
- 10 Zhengzhou
- 11 Luoyang

Historic Sites

- 7 Penglai
- 14 Gongyi

Areas of Natural Beauty

- 2 Tai Shan pp150–51
- 13 Song Shan & Shaolin Temple

Buddhist Sites

- 12 Longmen Caves pp160–61





Jinan's modern skyline, with the Yellow River in the distance

1 Jinan

济南

216 miles (350 km) S of Beijing. 5,900,000. (0531) 8267 6211.

South of the Yellow River as it makes its final thrust for the sea, Shandong's capital is visited primarily by travelers en route to the popular sights of Tai Shan, Qingdao, and Qufu. It was known for its natural springs, many of which have since dried up. The most famous of these, the **Black Tiger Spring**, still flows somewhat erratically out of tiger-headed spouts.

In the north of town, the park surrounding **Daming Hu** (Big Brilliant Lake) is filled with ponds, gardens, and temples, and is a good place for a stroll. To the southwest is the **Li Qingzhao Memorial Hall**, which commemorates one of China's most famous female poets who lived in the 12th century. There is a statue of her as well as portraits and extracts from her writings.

In the southeast of the city, the slopes of **Thousand Buddha Mountain** (Qianfo Shan) are dotted with Buddhist statues. Several temples are situated on the summit, which is over an hour's climb up the steps. A cable car service is available. The earliest statutory dates from the 6th century, with many additions compensating for those broken by Red Guards. A short walk north of the mountain is the **Shandong Provincial Museum**. Its exhibits include

Buddhist carvings, Neolithic pottery fragments (some from Long Shan nearby), and dinosaur fossils. Also on display is China's oldest existing book made from strips of bamboo.

Environs

Near Liubu village, 21 miles (33 km) southeast of Jinan, the **Si Men Pagoda** (Four Gate Pagoda) is known for its antiquity and unusual design. This squat, one-story stone structure with four doors is topped by a steeple, and would have housed the remains of an important monk. The pagoda, erected in AD 611, is the oldest of its kind in China

Thousand Buddha Mountain
18 Jing Shiyi Lu, off Qianfoshan Lu.

Open 5am–9pm daily.

Shandong Provincial Museum
14 Jingshiyi Lu. **Open** 9am–5pm Tue–Sun. sdmuseum.com/english

2 Tai Shan

See pp 150–51.

3 Qufu

曲阜

112 miles (180 km) S of Jinan. 160,000. from Jinan. CITS 36 Hongdao Lu, (0537) 449 149.

As the birthplace of China's most revered sage, Qufu occupies a hallowed place in the minds of not only the Chinese, but also the legions of Japanese and Koreans who come here on pilgrimage. In September the town comes alive during the annual festival that celebrates Confucius's birthday. Although the sage lived in relative obscurity, his descendents dwelt in the grand **Confucius Mansion** (Kong Fu) in the heart of town. Wielding



Covered corridor to the Confucius Temple at Qufu

immense political authority and wealth, the Kong family – referred to by the Chinese as the First Family Under Heaven – built a palatial mansion occupying over 40 acres (16 ha). Arranged on a traditional north-south axis, the mansion is divided into residential and administrative quarters, with a temple in the east and a garden at the rear. Most of the halls date from the Ming era. The Gate of Double Glory in the north was used for the emperor's visits, while to the east stands the Tower of Refuge, where the family assembled in times of strife.

Next to the mansion, the **Confucius Temple** (Kong Miao) is a lengthy complex of memorial gateways, courtyards, halls, stele pavilions, auxiliary temples, gnarled cypresses, and ancestral shrines. Originally a simple shrine in 478 BC, the year after Confucius's death, the temple grew gradually over the centuries before suddenly expanding during the Ming and Qing eras. Beyond the entrance stand 198 stone stelae, listing the names of as many as 50,000 successful candidates in the imperial examinations, during the Yuan, Ming, and Qing dynasties. Some are supported





Carved column, Confucius Temple



on the backs of mighty *bixi*, primitive, turtle-like dragons. A long succession of gateways leads to the 11th-century Kuiwen Pavilion, a triple-roofed building. Confucius instructed his disciples from the Apricot Pavilion, accessed through the Great Achievements Gate. On top of a marble terrace with columns that are elaborately carved with dragons, the Great Achievements Hall (Dacheng Dian) forms the temple's splendid nucleus. Beyond, the Hall of the Sage's Relics houses carved stone plates with scenes from the sage's life. The Lu Wall in the eastern section is where one of his descendents hid his books to save them from Emperor Qin Shi (259–210 BC), who

wished to burn them. The books were rediscovered during the Han era.

In the north of town, the walled **Confucius Forest** (Kong Lin) contains the grave of Confucius and other members of the Kong clan. The forest is mostly pines and cypresses interspersed with shrines and tombstones.

Not far south of Qufu, **Zoucheng** (now a city), is the hometown of Mencius (372–289 BC), the Confucian philosopher, second in importance only to Confucius himself. The tranquil Mencius Temple consists of 64 halls set around five large courtyards. As in Qufu, the philosopher has a Mansion and Graveyard.

 **Confucius Mansion**
Open 8am–5 pm daily. 

 **Confucius Temple**
Open 8am–5pm daily. 

Confucius

The teachings of Confucius (551–479 BC), China's most renowned philosopher, profoundly influenced the culture of China as well as other nations, including Japan, Korea, and Vietnam. Born in the state of Lu during an age of uninterrupted war, Confucius (whose name was derived from his Chinese name, Kong Fuzi or Master Kong) was prompted by the suffering around him to develop a practical philosophy built upon the principle of virtue (*ren*), in the hope that rulers would govern in a just manner. Finding no audience among his native rulers, he communicated his beliefs to a body of disciples and embarked on a journey in search of a ruler who would apply his rules of governance. He died unrecognized and never recorded his philosophy in writing, but his thoughts were compiled by his followers into a volume called the *Analects* (*Lunyu*), and promulgated. Championed by successive thinkers including Mencius, Confucius's philosophy later achieved predominance and formed the basis for the civil service examination system, a major hurdle to a career in officialdom right until the 20th century.



The philosopher-sage, Confucius



Mencius Temple at Zoucheng, south of Qufu

2 Tai Shan

泰山

Having played a part in China's earliest creation myths, Tai Shan (Peaceful Mountain) has held sway over the Chinese imagination for millennia. It is ascended year-round by legions of pilgrims and travelers, making it China's most sacred and most climbed mountain. Despite the crowds, a supernatural presence permeates Tai Shan, best experienced via a slow ascent with plenty of pit stops at wayside shrines and monuments. Many tourists stay overnight at hotels on the mountain and watch the sunrise from the cloud-wreathed peak, which is where Tai Shan's most significant temples can be found, attracting droves of devout worshippers.

★ Yuhuang Miao

Dedicated to the supreme deity of Daoism, the Jade Emperor Temple marks the conclusion of the ascent at 5,070 ft (1,545 m) and houses a statue of the Jade Emperor and wall paintings.



★ Shiba Pan

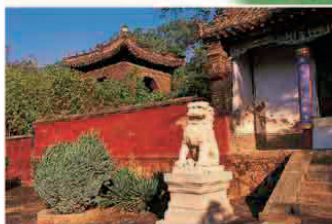
The last and most punishing part of the climb, the steep Path of Eighteen Bends is visible from Zhong Tian Men (the halfway point), and brings weary travelers to Nan Tian Men, the last gate on Tai Shan, but not the summit.

KEY

① Heilong Tan (Black Dragon Pool)

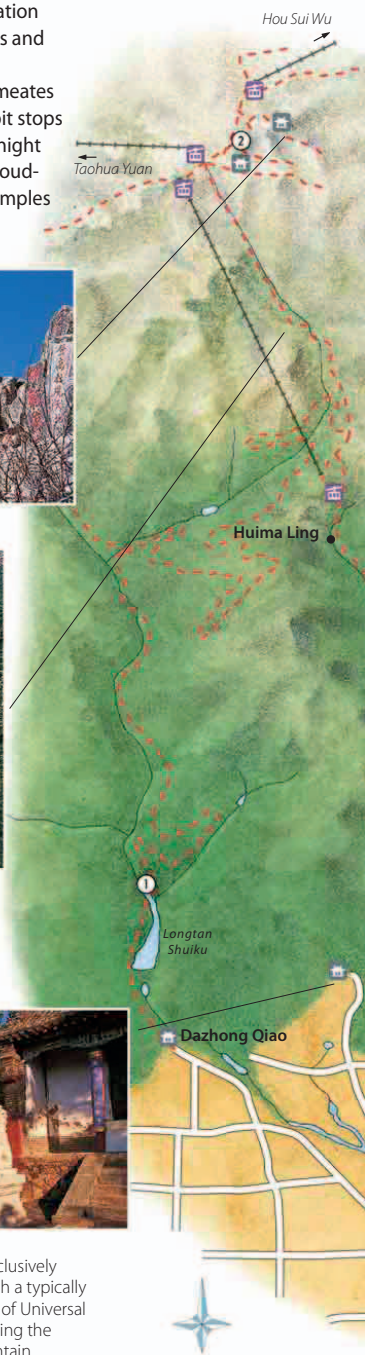
② Bixia Ci, dedicated to the Princess of the Azure Clouds, attracts would-be mothers to the summit.

③ Yi Tian Men (First Gate under Heaven)



Puzhao Si

Tai Shan's shrines are not exclusively Daoist and this temple – with a typically Buddhist name (the Temple of Universal Light) – is easily visited if taking the Western Route up the mountain.



Mountain of Emperors

The most exalted of China's five Daoist mountains, Tai Shan has been an essential imperial climb since the time of Qin Shi Huangdi. Emperors ascended Tai Shan to gain assurance that their heavenly

mandate would be maintained; an abortive ascent could signal Heaven's favor was in question. Several sights have imperial associations: Huima Ling (Horse Turns Back Ridge) marks the spot where emperor Zhenzong's horse refused to go any farther and the ruler had to continue by sedan chair. Tai Shan's importance is further evinced by two other notables who clambered up its slopes: Confucius and Mao Zedong.



Qin Shi Huangdi, first emperor of China

Climbing Tai Shan

Two routes lead to the summit. The Central Route is more popular, following the traditional imperial way and taking travelers past the most notable monuments. Despite having fewer historical sights and not being particularly well-marked, the Western Route boasts lovely natural scenery, including Heilong Tan. Many travelers ascend by the Central Route and descend by the Western Route.



Stone Sutra Valley

North of Doumu Gong is a further Buddhist contribution to this Daoist peak, a large flat rock carved with the text of the Diamond Sutra, one of Buddhist literature's most important passages.

Jinshi yu (stone sutra valley)

Doumu Gong

Hong Men Gong

This Ming dynasty temple, Red Gate Palace, is the first of numerous shrines dedicated to the Princess of the Azure Clouds (Bixia).

0 meters 800
0 yards 800



Tai'an



★ Dai Miao

This temple is the town's main attraction and a natural departure point for climbing the mountain. The main building, the Tiankuang Dian, is an immense yellow-eaved hall that contains a massive dimly lit Song dynasty fresco depicting the Zhenzong emperor as the God of Tai Shan.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Tai'an, 45 miles (70 km) S of Jinan.

i near Train Station, (0538) 806 6077. **📶** **📶** Tai Shan Race (Sep).

Open 7:40am–5pm; cable car: 8am–6pm. **📶** **📶**

Transport

🚗 at Jinan. **🚗** **🚗**

Key

- Minor road
- Path
- Built-up area

4 Qingdao

青岛

A world away from China's drab industrial towns, the breezy seaside city of Qingdao is a colorful port on the Shandong Peninsula. Known to foreign nationals as Tsingtao, where its namesake beer is brewed, pretty Qingdao's charms derive from its German textures, namely its cobbled streets, red roof tiles, distinctive stonework, and tree-lined avenues. Its German legacy dates from 1897, when the city came under German jurisdiction, but was returned to China in 1922. Modern-day Qingdao is an entrepreneurial, forward-thinking city, with high ambitions. The host city for the sailing competitions of the 2008 Olympics, it now holds the Qingdao International Sailing Week in the harbor each August, attracting many visitors.



The former Governor's Residence

Exploring Qingdao

In 1897, Kaiser Wilhelm took over Qingdao after two German missionaries were killed by the Boxers (see p439). The Qing court was forced to cede the city to Germany for 99 years, but it was returned to China in 1922, after eight years under Japanese occupation. The Japanese took over the port again between 1938 and 1945.

Wandering about at leisure is the best way to see Qingdao's main sights, most of which lie in the **German Concession** in the southwest of town, that roughly stretches between Tai'an Lu and Xiaoyu Shan Park. The Germans built the imposing train station, equipped with a belfry, to mark the end of the line they laid to the provincial capital of Ji'nan. Reproduced on the label of Tsingtao beer, the octagonal Huilai Pavilion, which hosts craft exhibitions, lies at the tip of **Zhanqiao Pier**. The 1,444 ft (440 m) pier juts into Qingdao Bay off the frenetic No. 6 beach.

The busy Zhongshan Lu running north is Qingdao's premier shopping street. To the east is **St. Michael's Church**, whose twin spires preside over an atmospheric part of town filled with steep cobbled streets and iron balconies. Southeast of the Catholic church is the charming **Protestant Church**, with its distinctive clocktower and

white clock face. Built in 1910, its exterior has sandy yellow walls and red clay tiles, while the frugal interior is open to visitors. The 128-ft (39-m) clocktower is also open, and visitors can climb up its steep stairway to enjoy the view of the coast. Farther east in Xinhao Shan Park is the former **Governor's Residence**. This grand mansion once played host to Yuan Shikai and Mao Zedong. A short walk to the south, the **Qingdao Museum** is worth exploring for its collection of relics, including

Qingdao City Center

- ① Zhanqiao Pier
- ② St. Michael's Church
- ③ Governor's Residence
- ④ Protestant Church
- ⑤ Qingdao Museum
- ⑥ Huashi Lou
- ⑦ Badaguan



Key to Symbols see back flap

Chinese Beer



Tsingtao beer can

Tsingtao, which swears by its magic ingredient of mineral water from Lao Shan, is China's most famous beer (*píjiu*). Built by homesick Germans in 1903, the Tsingtao brewery is China's largest, with exports to over 40 countries. Once the best (and most expensive) in China, Tsingtao faces stiff local competition as international breweries invest heavily in joint ventures in what is the fastest growing beer market in the world. Vast amounts of beer are drunk during the town's Beer Festival in August. You can visit the brewery (which also has a museum and bar) and receive free samples.



Gateway to the Yantai Museum, housed in a fine Qing-era guild hall

5 Yantai 烟台

149 miles (240 km) NE of Qingdao. 6,500,000. 15 min to Shanghai, Dalian & Tianjin. 180 Jiefang Lu, (0535) 623 4144.

Formerly known as Chefoo and overshadowed by the dynamic

port of Qingdao to the south, Yantai is a deepwater harbor town situated on the north coast of the Shandong Peninsula, famous for its clocks, fruit, and locally produced wine. The name Yantai, meaning "Smoke Terrace," refers to the wolf-dung-burning beacons erected along the coast in the Ming dynasty to warn of sudden raids by pirates or the Japanese. In 1863, the city became a British treaty port and a substantial number of foreign merchants moved here, although its rise was eclipsed by the development of Qingdao at the end of the 1900s. The British were followed by the Germans, the Americans, and finally the Japanese. Despite its history as a treaty port, very little foreign architecture survives here, as the town never had a foreign concession.

Most travelers pass through en route to Penglai to the west, but the **Yantai Museum** is definitely worth a visit. Housed in a splendid Qing dynasty guild

hall built for sailors and merchants, the museum's exhibits pale by comparison to the building's elaborate architectural detail and wood and stone carvings.

The impressive main hall, known as the Palace of the Empress of Heaven, was dedicated to Tianhou, the



Ornate Qing dynasty doors, Yantai Museum

Empress of Heaven and Protector of Seafarers, by sailors from Fujian, who had taken shelter in Yantai during a fierce storm. All the component parts of the hall were designed by craftsmen from the southern provinces of Fujian and Guangdong, and shipped to Yantai

where it was assembled in 1864.

It is a fine example of the southern style, with a double roof decorated in mythical ceramic, stone, and wood figures. The entrance hall to the guild hall is elaborately carved with parables and episodes from Chinese literature

and mythology, including the Eight Immortals who Crossed the Sea, battle scenes, figures, fabulous creatures, and several scenes from the *Romance of the Three Kingdoms* (see p35). Arab figures playing musical instruments lie beneath the eaves, while the beams take the shape of a woman with her infant child. The temple has a garden and is equipped with a stage, employed for performances and events celebrating the Goddess Tianhou.

Yantai also has several parks, including the small and central **Yuhuangding Park**, and **Yantai Shan Park**, a hillside haven above the sea. East of here are Yantai's two rather forlorn beaches. Both are a bit of a disappointment, and are surrounded by buildings and construction. The town's waterfront, however, is a pleasant place for a leisurely stroll. Toward the eastern headland, fishermen can be seen repairing their nets or simply relaxing.

Yantai Museum

257 Nan Dajie. Open 8am–5pm Tue–Sun. 

6 Weihai 威海

37 miles (60 km) E of Yantai. 2,500,000. 15 min to Yantai, Qingdao, Beijing & Shanghai. 1 CITS 96 Guzhuai Dong Lu, (0631) 581 8616.  daily to Dalian, three times a week to Incheon (South Korea).

The port city of Weihai was the site of the mauling of China's European-built North Sea (Beiyang) Fleet by a Japanese flotilla during the 1894–5 Sino-Japanese War. Afterwards,



Museum of the 1895 Sino-Japanese War, Weihai




The Penglai Pavilion, mythical abode of the Eight Immortals

between 1898 and 1930, the city was a rather unproductive British Concession and was known as Port Edward, but little remains of the town's British heritage. Today, Weihai's chief diversion is **Liugong Island** (Liugong Dao), 3 miles (5 km) off the coast, reached by ferry. Providing shelter for Weihai harbor, the island forms a natural stronghold and served as the base for the doomed Chinese North Sea Fleet.

The island's main sight is the **Museum of the 1895 Sino-Japanese War** (or Jiawu War Museum). The conflict between the two nations resulted in the ceding of Taiwan and the Liaodong Peninsula (including Dalian) to Japan. Not far from the jetty, the museum functions for the "patriotic education" of Chinese visitors, with displays of photographs and artifacts salvaged from ships, as well as reminders of the island's days as a station for the British Royal Navy.

The rest of the island is a pleasant place to explore, with several hiking trails heading off into the forested hills. Its International Beach is popular for its long stretches of sand and calm waters. Ferries connect Weihai with Dalian and Incheon in South Korea. No accommodation is available on the island.


Museum of the 1895 Sino-Japanese War

Liugong Island.  from Weihai (20 minutes). Ferry back to Weihai: summer 7am–6pm, every 8 mins; winter 8:30am–4:30pm, every 30 mins.

Open daily. 

7 Penglai 蓬莱

43 miles (70 km) NW of Yantai.

 from Yantai.


Associated with the Eight Immortals of Daoism, who drank wine here before making their mythical crossing of the sea without the aid of boats, the castle-like pavilion complex of **Penglai Ge** affords dramatic views out to sea from its breezy cliff-top perch. Accessible by boat or bus, the pavilion dates back to 1061, though Penglai entered folklore when China's first emperor, Qin Shi Huangdi, foraged in the area for herbs that bestow immortality.

The imposing complex has a large network of buildings, pavilions, halls, temples, gardens, and crenellated walls.

Many of the buildings are thickly covered in ivy and vines. Among its six main halls, which have been extensively renovated, the Tianhou Palace is dedicated to Tianhou, the Empress of Heaven, and enshrines a golden statue of the goddess. The statue is backed by a fine mural of dragons frolicking in the sea and amongst the clouds. The castle is at its liveliest on the occasion of the goddess's birthday, on the 23rd day of the third month of the Chinese lunar calendar (see p51), when a lively temple fair is held. The goddess is invoked with incense sticks and prayer. The complex now has a cable car and a theater.

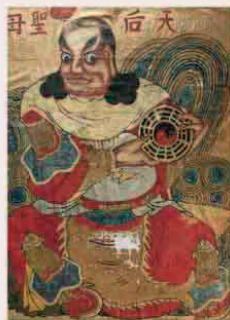
Penglai Ge is also known for the mirage that is supposed to occur here every few decades. Witnesses have described seeing an island, complete with buildings, inhabitants, and trees arising from the mist. Visitors can watch a video recording of the mirage in the Tianhou Palace for a small fee. Penglai is usually busy on weekends when large tour groups visit the pavilion. It is quieter on weekdays, and can be easily visited as a daytrip from Yantai.

Penglai Ge

 from Penglai (90 mins) every 20 mins. **Open** daily. Last entry at 5pm. 

The Empress of Heaven

The Empress of Heaven, Tianhou, is also known by the Chinese as Mazu, Niangniang, and Tianshang Shengmu. She is the Daoist



Goddess Tianhou depicted on a Chinese pirate flag

equivalent of Guanyin, the Buddhist Goddess of Compassion. In the coastal provinces of Guangdong and Fujian, she is worshiped as the Goddess of the Sea, and is the guardian deity of seafarers. She was supposedly originally a woman named Lin Mo, born in AD 960 on Meizhou Island in Fujian (see p296). From a tender age, Lin Mo was famous for helping sailors in distress, and after her death at age 27, her red-clothed apparition was seen by fishermen and sailors in danger. Confusingly, in Cantonese, her name is pronounced as Tinhau, and she is also known as A-Ma in Macau.

8 Kaifeng

开封

South of the Yellow River as it snakes into Shandong Province is the ancient walled city of Kaifeng, the capital of seven dynasties, which reached its zenith as the capital of the Northern Song (AD 960–1126). Its glory days as a burgeoning Song city are pictorially recorded in the 16-ft (5-m) long scroll “Going Upriver during the Qingming Festival,” now kept in Beijing’s Forbidden City. However, its prosperity could not prevent the Yellow River from repeatedly flooding the city, with a heavy loss of life. Significant buildings were also washed away, including the synagogue. Today, Kaifeng is an attractive city with fine examples of temple and pagoda architecture and some lively markets.



The ornately decorated Shanshan Gan Guild Hall

Exploring Kaifeng

Much of modern Kaifeng lies within the old city walls. In the west of the city is the large and peaceful Baogong Hu (Baogong Lake). Within walking distance to the south of the lake, the Kaifeng Museum on Yingbin Lu houses three stelae that originally stood outside the old Jewish synagogue. They record the history of the city’s Jewish community. The No. 4 People’s Hospital on Beitu Jie sits on the remains of the synagogue in the Jewish quarter. All that can be seen today is the iron cover over an old well. Outside the city walls, 6 miles (10 km) to the north, is the Yellow River Viewing Point. From the pavilion, there are expansive views across the vast silt plain of the winding river. Adjacent to the pavilion stands an iron statue of an ox, that was originally a charm to protect the city from floods.

Shanshan Gan Guild Hall

Xufu Jie, off Shudian Jie. **Open** 8am–5:30pm daily. 🗺️

The exuberant Qing-dynasty hall was built by merchants of Gansu, Shanxi, and Shaanxi provinces, as housing. It sports a drum and bell tower, as well as a spirit wall. The building’s eaves have vivid scenes from merchant life, while the eaves in the main hall are carved with animals, birds, and gold bats (symbols of luck).

Da Xiangguo Si

Ziyou Lu. 🗺️ 5, 9. **Open** 8am–6pm daily. 🗺️ Yanqing Guan Baogong Hu Dongbei Shengli Jie. **Open** daily. 🗺️ 🗺️

Kaifeng’s most celebrated temple is Da Xiangguo Si (Prime Minister’s Temple). Originally built in AD 555, it was China’s principal temple during the Song era when it accommodated 64 halls and a huge legion of monks. Swept

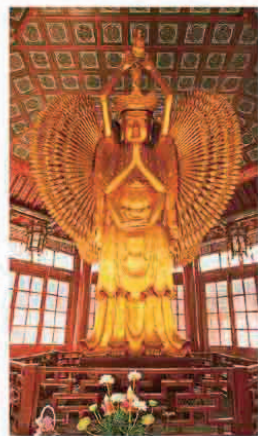
away by flood waters in AD 1642 at the end of the Ming dynasty, it was rebuilt around 1766. The octagonal pavilion at the back of the temple houses a remarkable statue of Guanyin, known as Qianshou Guanyin or the Thousand-Armed Goddess of Compassion. Carved from a single tree and covered in gold leaf, it is the temple’s finest statue, and its four-sided arrangement is a rare feature. The main hall has a frieze of *luohan* (see p37). A sprawling open-air market lies near the temple.

To the west is the **Yanqing Guan** (Yanqing Temple), a small Daoist shrine known for the unusual design of its Pavilion of the Jade Emperor. This ornate, octagonal building, covered in turquoise tiles and carved brickwork, has a bronze image of the Jade Emperor inside.

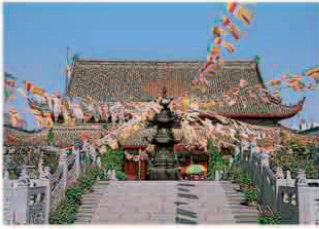
Iron Pagoda

Iron Pagoda Park, Beimen Dajie. **Open** 8am–6pm daily. 🗺️

The 13-story Iron Pagoda (Tie Ta) rises up just within the Song dynasty ramparts in the northeast of the city. This brick pagoda was built in AD 1049 and is covered with brown glazed tiles, which give the tower its metallic luster as well as its name. Visitors can climb the narrow interior staircase for views over the city and its walls. The pagoda is Kaifeng’s best known landmark.



The magnificent Qianshou Guanyin, Da Xiangguo Si



Prayer flags in front of Da Xiangguo Si

Longting Park

North of Zhongshan Lu. **Open** daily.

Millennium City **Open** daily.

Songdu Yu Jie, built on the Imperial Way – Kaifeng's main thoroughfare during the Song dynasty – leads north up to Longting Park. It features reproduction Song-dynasty restaurants and shops selling antiques, calligraphy, and knick-knacks. The street gets progressively more touristy as it heads northward to Yangjia Hu (Yangjia Lake), originally part of the imperial park, and now surrounded by tourist attractions and amusement parks such as the popular **Millennium City**. Longting Park itself stands on the site of the Song-dynasty Imperial Palace and its surrounding park. The Xibei Hu and Yangjia Hu

lakes lie to its northwest and south respectively. The park is marked by several amusement rides for children, as well as the Qing-dynasty Dragon Pavilion, and is an excellent place to watch the locals relaxing in their leisure time.

Fan Pagoda

1 mile (1.5 km) southeast of Kaifeng.

15. Open 8am–5pm daily. & Hidden away (albeit reachable by bus) south of the city walls and just west of the pleasant Yuwangtai Park (Yuwangtai Gongyuan), the Northern Song-dynasty Fan Pagoda (Po Ta) is

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

44 miles (70 km) E of Zhengzhou.

4,800,000.

Transport

Zhengzhou. Train Station.

Southern Bus Station, West Bus Station. 98 Yingbin Lu, (0378) 398 4593.

Kaifeng's oldest Buddhist structure, and was built in AD 997. Known for its carved brickwork, the three-story pagoda once stood nine stories and 263 ft (80 m) high. Visitors can climb right to the top for views of the surrounding factories and houses.

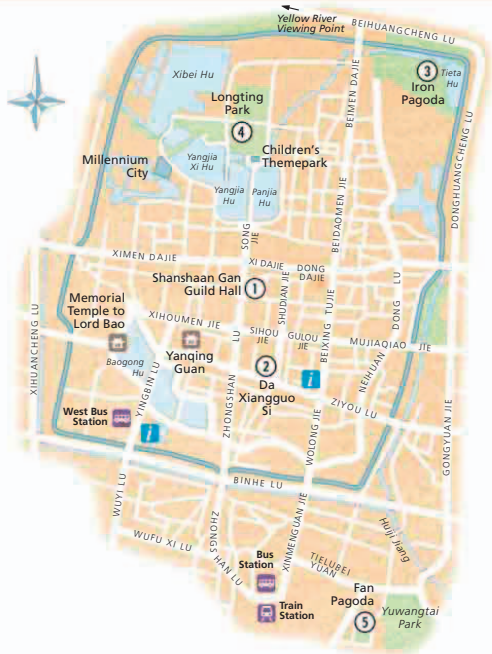
China's Jews

It is not known when Jews (*youtairen*) first came to Kaifeng, but evidence suggests that Jewish merchants arrived in China in the 8th century, along the Silk Routes. It is recorded that Chinese Jews were given seven surnames (Ai, Jin, Lao, Li, Shi, Zhang, and Zhao) by imperial decree in the Ming era. According to one story, in 1605 Jesuit Matteo Ricci traveled to Kaifeng because he was told there was a community here who believed in one god. Expecting to meet Catholics he was surprised to find they were in fact Jewish. The community struggled in isolation over the years, and all but disappeared after the synagogue, damaged by flooding, was torn down in the 19th century. Many Kaifeng Jews do not make themselves known due to official state disapproval.

Kaifeng City Center

- ① Shanshan Gan Guild Hall
- ② Da Xiangguo Si
- ③ Fan Pagoda
- ④ Longting Park

0 km 1
0 miles 1



Key to Symbols see back flap

9 Anyang

安阳

124 miles (200 km) N of Zhengzhou.

5,250,000. 飞机 火车 汽车

Archeological excavations have identified that Anyang in northern Henan was the site of Yin, the capital of the Shang dynasty. In the late 19th century, peasants unearthed bones etched with ancient Chinese symbols, identified as “oracle bones” or bones used for divination (see p32). Further discoveries of bronzes, jade, and royal tombs, helped form a picture of the long forgotten city of Yin. The

Museum of Yin Ruins (Yinxu Bowuguan), in the north of town, exhibits fragments of oracle bones, pottery, and bronze vessels, as well as six chariots, drawn by skeletal horses. To the east is the ostentatious **Tomb of Yuan Shikai**, a general who helped force the Qing abdication in return for the presidency, but later tried to have himself enthroned as emperor. The bustling **Old City**, centered around the Bell Tower south of Jiefang Lu, is also worth exploring. To the southwest, stands the octagonal, multi-eaved **Wenfeng Pagoda**, originally built in the 10th century and restored during the Ming era.

Museum of Yin Ruins

Open 8am–5:30pm daily. 24

Tomb of Yuan Shikai

8, 23. Open 8am–5pm daily. 24



Wenfeng Pagoda,
Anyang



A Shang-era war chariot and charioteer from an imperial tomb, Anyang



Traditional three door gateway, Baima Si (White Horse Temple), Luoyang

10 Zhengzhou

郑州

440 miles (700 km) SW of Beijing. 飞机

7,000,000. 火车 汽车 地铁 信息 Nongye Lu
(Crn Huayuan Lu), (0371) 585 2339.

Henan's capital is a fast-developing city that is often used as a stopover en route to Kaifeng, Luoyang, and the Shaolin Temple. The **Shang City Walls** to the east of town are all that remain of the city that existed

here 3,000 years ago. To the west is **Chenghuang Miao** (Temple of the City God), with its roof sculptures of dragons and phoenixes. The pyramidal **Henan Provincial Museum**, in the north of town, has a superb collection of more than 130,000 relics with English captions, while the fourth floor houses a dinosaur gallery. For fine views

of the Yellow River, visit the **Yellow River Park**, 17 miles (28 km) northwest of town.

Henan Provincial Museum

8 Nongye Lu. Open Tue–Sun.

11 Luoyang

洛阳

75 miles (121 km) W of Zhengzhou.

6,400,000. 飞机 火车 汽车 地铁 信息 Jiudu Xi Lu, (0379) 432 3212.

Luoyang's industrial face conveys little of its impressive history. The city was the site of the ancient Zhao court, where the sage Laozi was keeper of the archives. It was also the site of China's first university in 29 BC, and was capital to 13 dynasties from Neolithic times till AD 937.

East of Wangcheng Park is the **Luoyang City Museum**, which exhibits Shang bronzes, jade carvings, and Tang era *sancai* (three-color) porcelain. Visitors flock here each spring to attend the Peony Festival, when hundreds of peonies – brought here on the orders of the Tang Empress Wu Zetian – bloom in Wangcheng Park.

Most of Luoyang's sights lie outside the city. **Guanlin**, 4 miles (7 km) south, is dedicated to Guan Yu (see p35), a heroic general of the Three Kingdoms period. The buildings are ornately decorated, and stone lionesses line the path to the main hall housing an impressive statue of Guan Yu. About 8 miles (12 km) east of town is **Baima Si** (White Horse Temple). Claiming to be China's oldest Buddhist monastery (AD 68), Baima Si remains active, with a constant stream of worshippers. The monks' tombs lie in the first courtyard, while the main hall has a statue of the Buddha.

Luoyang City Museum

Open 8am–5pm daily. 24

Guanlin Si

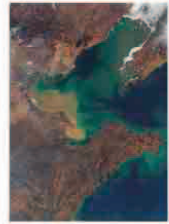
Open 8am–6pm daily. 24

The Yellow River




China's second-longest river, at 3,400 miles (5,464 km), the Huang He or Yellow River gets its name from its vast silt load, picked up as it carves its way through the soft clay of the loess plateau. As the river slows, it deposits much of this silt elevating the river bed above the surrounding plains – outside Kaifeng it is up to 35 ft (10 m) higher than the city – making flooding likely. It has also changed its path completely many times, sometimes running south of the Shandong peninsula, each time with widespread devastation. In 1642 an estimated 300,000 people died when the river broke through the dykes and took the southern route. These disasters have earned the river the nickname “China's Sorrow.” Rapid economic growth has led to vastly increased water usage in north China and the Yellow River now regularly runs dry in its lower reaches.



- ⑤ **Pumping into the sea,** the yellow river's silt is clearly visible. Over the years the millions of tonnes of sediment have increased the land mass of China.



Key

-  Early settlement
-  Flood plain
-  Southern route of river

0 km 1
0 miles 1

① The source of the Yellow River

is high in the Qinghai mountains. The descent from the plateau's height of 13,000 ft (4,000 m) gives the river its incredible power.



Mother of China

Evidence of some of the earliest Chinese settlements, dating back as far as 6000 BC, have been discovered beside the Yellow River, earning it another title “Mother of China.”



- ② **The river fills with sediment** as it cuts through the soft loess plateau in the north. Seemingly boiling with energy, each cubic yard (meter) of water carries over 82 lb (37 kg) of sediment.



- ③ **As the river slows** it deposits its silt and enriches the soil making the local farmland one of the most productive areas of China.



- ④ **As the silt raises the riverbed** those living close to the river have to work together to rebuild the dykes and keep the river banks in good condition.

12 Longmen Caves

龙门石窟

This outstanding collection of religious statuary was started by the Buddhist Northern Wei rulers (386–534 AD) – creators of the Yungang Caves (see pp138–9) – after they moved their capital from Datong to Luoyang. The ensuing Sui and Tang dynasties further added to the grottoes especially during the rule of Tang dynasty Empress Wu Zetian, before anti-Buddhist purges abruptly halted its development. The tragic number of headless statues as a result of vandalism and theft creates a solemn mood, although today the caves are obviously well cared for.



View across the river Yi looking onto Fengxian Si and the west bank caves

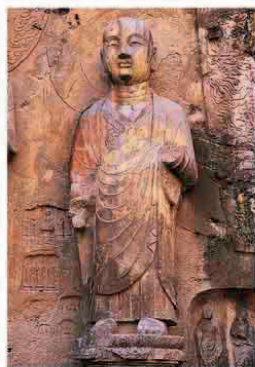


★ Vairocana Buddha

Over 56 ft (17 m) tall, this colossal statue's face was reputedly modeled after the empress Wu Zetian. The statue's enigmatic smile has earned it the nickname the "Eastern Mona Lisa."

FENGXIAN SI ①

This cave, on the western bank, is largest of all the caves and dates back to AD 675.



Ananda

This statue is of Ananda, a disciple of Sakyamuni, the founder of Buddhism. A master of memory, he compiled the Buddhist sutras.

Smashed Ananda

Some statues were damaged in the late-Tang dynasty, as Buddhism fell out of favor. Other figures were stolen by souvenir hunters or attacked by Red Guards during the Cultural Revolution.





★ Heavenly King

Holding a votive pagoda in one hand and crushing a demon under his feet, this sculpture of a Heavenly King is remarkable for its sense of movement and realistic posture.

Exploring the Longmen Caves

There are around 2,000 caves or niches and over 100,000 statues (with English captions) in total clustered inside a few caves, largely within a half-mile (1-km) section on the western bank of the Yi River.

The well-preserved Lotus Flower Cave ② was built c.527 and is important as it was built as a complete entity, and not added to over the years. It derives its name from the large lotus flower in the center of its domed roof, surrounded by musical water spirits – apsaras. The Ten Thousand Buddha Cave ③ is a typical Tang dynasty cave built in 680. The many figures of Buddha create an overwhelming sense of the presence of the great teacher. The Prescription Cave ④ is so called because it has 140 inscriptions recording many treatments for a wide variety of diseases and



Seated Buddha, Sakyamuni, in the central cave Binyang Si

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

9 miles (14 km) S of Luoyang.

Tel (0379) 598 1342. **Open**

summer: 8am–5:30pm daily;

winter: 8:30am–5pm daily. 📶



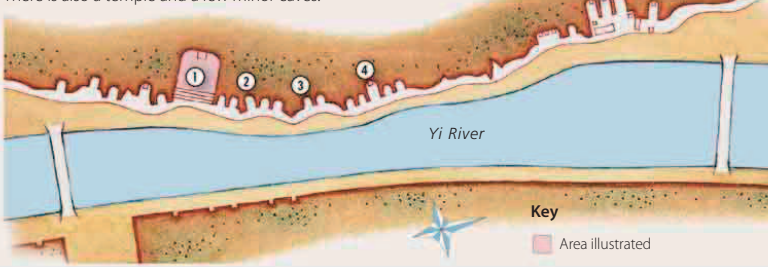
Transport

🚌 53, 60; 81 from the train station.

conditions carved on the walls on either side of the entrance. The list has been added to over a period of 150 years and so provides a unique record of typological changes over time. The three Binyang San Dong ⑤ caves took 24 years to build and were completed in AD 523. On the main wall there are five very large Buddhist images: the central one, of Sakyamuni, is flanked by four bodhisattvas all in the ascetic and rather formal Northern Wei style. Together with the statues on the side walls, the three groups of figures symbolize the Buddhas of the past, present, and future. There were two large reliefs of the Emperor and Empress worshipping Buddha, but these were stolen in the 1930s and they now reside in museums in the USA. The southern Binyang cave has some beautiful sculptures that were completed in 641. These figures have serene features and can clearly be seen as a transition between the artistic styles of the solemn, austere Northern Wei and the lively naturalism of the Tang artists as displayed at Fengxian Si.

Longmen Caves

The east bank of the river provides a great vantage point to appreciate the grandeur of the carvings of Fengxian Si. There is also a temple and a few minor caves.









The monumental Forest of Stupas, Shaolin Temple

13 Song Shan & Shaolin Temple

嵩山和少林寺

50 miles (80 km) W of Zhengzhou. 🚗
from Luoyang & Zhengzhou to Dengfeng & Shaolin Temple. 🚗 🚗
Dengfeng: 📍 203 Beihuan Lu, (0371) 6288 3442.

The Central Peak of China's five sacred Daoist peaks, Song Shan soars 4,895 ft (1,492 m) high. Its sights can be best explored by staying at **Dengfeng**, at the foot of Taishi Shan, where numerous trails lead past temples and pagodas, and offer splendid views. Just 3 miles (5 km) east is the vast **Zhongyue Miao** (Central Peak Temple). Possibly China's oldest Daoist shrine, it was consecrated more than 2,200 years ago, although what exists today is more recent.

About 2 miles (3 km) north of Dengfeng is the **Songyang Academy**. A Confucian college that was one of China's four great centers of learning, its courtyard has two tall cypresses, said to have been planted 2,000 years ago by the Han emperor Wudi. Farther uphill, the 12-sided **Songyue Si Pagoda**, dating from the 6th century AD, is China's oldest brick pagoda. Just 6 miles (10 km) southeast of Dengfeng, the Gaocheng Observatory dates from the Yuan era. Its pyramidal tower is China's oldest intact observatory. Shaolin, literally "Young Forest," is the

name of the fighting order of monks who reside in the Buddhist **Shaolin Temple**, 8 miles (13 km) northwest of Dengfeng. Founded in the 5th century AD, it acquired its martial spirit under Bodhidharma, an Indian monk who arrived here in AD 527. He devised a system of exercises that evolved into *shaolin quan*, or Shaolin Boxing, the origin of all the great Chinese martial arts.



Bodhidharma statue, Shaolin Temple

The temple has burned down repeatedly and today its mystique has been dulled by commercialization. It remains a place of pilgrimage for martial arts devotees, who flock here to develop *gong fu* (skill), popularly known as kung fu, although many schools have moved to Dengfeng.

The large temple has several halls. Toward the back, the Standing in the Snow Pavilion marks the spot where the monk Huihe chopped off his arm to commune more closely

with Zen Buddhism. Behind, the Pilu Pavilion's floor is marked with pits where monks practiced their footwork. Within the Chuipu Hall, terracotta figures depict various styles of Shaolin Boxing.

The Forest of Stupas, a short walk from the temple, is a large assembly of brick pagodas, commemorating renowned Shaolin monks. Each September, the famous *wushu* (martial arts) festival is held here. The cave where Bodhidharma reputedly sat in meditation for nine years is up the mountainside.

🏯 **Shaolin Temple**

🕒 **Open** 8am–5pm daily. 📍

🌐 shaolin.org.cn/en

🏯 **Zhongyue Miao**

🕒 **Open** 8am–5pm daily. 📍

14 Gongyi 工艺

50 miles (80 km) W of Zhengzhou. 🚗
from Luoyang or Zhengzhou.

Just outside the sleepy town of Gongyi a historic collection of Song-era imperial tombs and a group of Buddhist grotto art can be found. The seven surviving tombs of Song emperors are marked by burial mounds and statuary. Scattered over a vast area southeast of town, the tombs can be seen from buses shuttling between Luoyang and Zhengzhou. About 5 miles (8 km) north of Gongyi, the **Buddhist Grottoes** (*shiku*) have some carvings from the Northern Wei period.

🏯 **Buddhist Grottoes**

🕒 **Open** 8am–6pm daily. 📍



Buddhist carvings in the grottoes outside Gongyi

Kung Fu

Chinese Martial Arts are loosely referred to as kung fu or *gong fu* in the West. *Gong fu* means “skill” and can describe the accomplishments of a calligrapher or pianist, as much as a martial artist. No one is certain when the fighting arts came to the country, but it is clear that China has the largest number and most colorful of fighting styles, including Drunken Boxing and Praying Mantis Fist. Although there is considerable blurring between them, kung fu divides into internal (*neijia*) and external (*waijia*) schools. The internal schools tend to stress internal power or *qi* (see pp38–9), using evasion and softness to lead an attacker off balance, while *waijia* forms seek to overwhelm an opponent with physical strength and power. Kung fu employs many weapons, including the spear broadsword, pole, and whip and even encompasses training in the use of everyday objects, such as the fan, umbrella, or stool, as weapons.



Bodhidharma, the founder of Chan (Zen) Buddhism, was an Indian monk who visited the Shaolin Temple. He invented a system of exercises for the monks who were often seated in meditation. It was from these exercises that Shaolin Boxing developed.



Shaolin monks endure a rigorous training regimen. Here, they perform an acrobatic version of the horse stance (*mabu*), a painful exercise that is essential for developing a powerful stance and a deep “root” for stability while fighting.

Xingyi Quan (Shape Mind Fist) is, of the *neijia* practices, probably the closest to a hard school. Although its strikes and blocks are linear and powerful, relaxation is paramount. The basics of this explosive fighting style are simple to learn, but tricky to master.



Bagua Zhang (Eight Trigram Palm), an internal art, incorporates circular movements into all footwork and strikes. Bagua practitioners were traditionally seen by other stylists as unpredictable, elusive, and ferocious adversaries.



Bruce Lee (right) in *The Chinese Connection*

Kung Fu Film Industry

The Chinese and Hong Kong film industry entertains its audience with stylized versions of kung fu in movie plots that typically hinge on themes of vengeance and retribution. Famous actors have included Bruce Lee, Jackie Chan, and Jet Li and a host of lesser known B-movie actors and actresses. Hallmark films include *Drunken Master 2* (Jackie Chan), *Enter the Dragon* (Bruce Lee), *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* (Zhang Ziyi and Yun-Fat Chow), and the *Once Upon a Time in China* series (Jet Li). The martial arts employed in cinema are very different from the real thing. Movements are choreographed and stunts are practiced repeatedly to give the impression of a real fight, without the dangers inherent in real combat.



SHAANXI

At the heart of China, bordered by the Yellow River to the east, the dusty province of Shaanxi has had its lion's share of splendor. In 1066 BC, the Western Zhou dynasty established its capital at Hao, near modern-day Xi'an (see pp168–73). It was from here, about 850 years later, that China was unified by its first emperor, qin Shi Huangdi (see p60). This set the stage for Xi'an to serve as the seat of political power to successive dynasties including the Western Han, the Sui, and the Tang, for over a millennium. By the 9th century, Xi'an, known then as Chang'an, was the largest and wealthiest city in the world, immersed in the riches that spilled along the Silk Road. At the peak of the Tang era, Xi'an's population of over a million people worshiped at as many as 1,000 temples within the confines of a vast city wall.

The city's treasures are abundant, from the silent army of Terracotta Warriors just northeast of Xi'an, fashioned to guard the tomb of China's first emperor, to the impressive Shaanxi History Museum, with over 3,000 exhibits ranging from Shang and Zhou bronze vessels to Tang-era ornaments and funerary items.

Xi'an's other key sights include the extensive Eight Immortals Temple associated with Daoist legends, and the two Goose Pagodas with their strong connections to Tang-era Buddhism. Many visitors also make a trip to the holy mountain of Hua Shan, to the east of Xi'an, for its stimulating combination of energetic hiking opportunities and quiet sanctity.

Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- ① Xi'an

Historic Sites

- ② Terracotta Army pp174–5
④ Yan'an

Areas of Natural Beauty

- ③ Hua Shan

0 km 100
0 miles 100

Key

- Expressway
- National Highway
- Minor road
- Railroad
- Provincial border
- Great Wall of China



Xi'an

西安

Capital of modern Shaanxi, Xi'an has served as capital to 11 dynasties over a period of 4,000 years, including the Western Zhou, Western Han, Qin, Western Wei, Northern Zhou, Sui, and Tang. The Chinese trace its lineage back even further to the mythical Yellow Emperor, who made Xianyang his capital (2200–1700 BC). Xi'an peaked during the Tang dynasty, when its position at the eastern end of the Silk Road (see pp470–71) transformed it into a bustling metropolis, luring foreign merchants and faiths, including Nestorian Christians, Muslims, Zoroastrians, Manicheans, and Buddhists. The city declined later but has some splendid sights and a thriving tourist economy.



A view of the South Gate, Xi'an City Walls

Xi'an City Walls

Open spring and summer: 8am–7pm; autumn and winter: 8:30am–5pm.



Unlike many city walls in China, including Beijing's mighty ramparts – now mostly flattened – Xi'an's walls are still intact, forming a 9-mile (14-km) long rectangle around the city center. In 1370, during the reign of Hongwu, the first Ming emperor, these walls were built on the foundations of the Tang imperial palace, using rammed earth, quicklime, and glutinous rice extract. The 39-ft (12-m) high bastions have bases up to 59 ft (18 m) thick. Visitors can climb the walls at several locations, particularly at the steps east of the South Gate or at the West Gate, for walks along the busy ramparts. Though striking in themselves, the walls are modest compared to the mighty bastion that once encompassed 30 sq miles (78 sq km) of Chang'an, Xi'an's name during the Tang era.

Forest of Stelae Museum

Open 8am–6pm daily.

A short distance east of the South Gate, this museum's seven halls house over 1,000 stelae – stone pillars carved for commemorative purposes – the earliest dating from the Han dynasty. The tablets bearing dense reams of classical Chinese may only interest scholars, but others are engraved with maps and illustrations. The stelae in the first hall comprise a record of the 12 Confucian classics, including the *Book of Songs* (*Shijing*), the *Book of Changes* (*Yijing* or *I Ching*), and the *Analects* (*Lunyu*). These were carved on 114 stone tablets in 837, upon the orders of the Tang Wenzong emperor, as the standard texts to eliminate copyist's errors, and were kept at the Imperial Academy in Xi'an. The Daqin Nestorian



Detail from the Nestorian tablet at the Forest of Stelae Museum

Tablet in the second hall may be of more interest to visitors. The stele is topped with a cross and was carved in 781 to commemorate the arrival of Nestorian Christianity in Xi'an. The characters at the top of the stele refer to Rome (or Daqin), and Nestorian Christianity, the "Revered Religion." Branded heretical for believing in the separation of Christ's human and divine attributes, the first Nestorians arrived in Xi'an in AD 635. They thrived in the city for two centuries before suddenly vanishing altogether.

Inside the third hall, an engraved map of Chang'an reveals the scale of the city at the height of its glory. The fourth hall houses calligraphic renditions of poems by Su Dongpo (1037–1101) and other Chinese poets, and illustrations including etchings of Bodhidharma, the Indian founder of Chan (Zen) Buddhism (see pp164–5). Useful reference material for the study of local history and society during the Song, Yuan, Ming, and Qing eras can be found preserved in the fifth hall. The museum's side halls display further historical and religious artifacts.



The façade of the Forest of Stelae Museum, once the Temple of Confucius

Drum & Bell Towers

Open 8:30am–5:30pm daily.

The enormous Bell Tower, with its distinctive green three-tiered roof, is situated in the center of Xi'an, where the city's four main streets converge. Standing on a brick platform, this wooden structure was first built in 1384, two blocks west of here, before being relocated to its current site in 1582. It was later restored in 1739. The tower, which formerly housed a large bronze bell that was struck each morning, now stores a collection of bells, chimes, and musical instruments. A balcony running all along the outside offers splendid views of the town's main roads and heavy traffic. The Drum Tower, built in 1380, is situated to the west of the Bell Tower on the edge of the old Muslim Quarter, for centuries the home of Xi'an's Hui minority currently numbering around 30,000. Within its restored interior, there is a display of drums, and drumming performances take place daily.



Iron bell in the Bell Tower

The Great Mosque

Open 8am–6:30pm daily.

First built during the Tang dynasty, and located in the heart of the Muslim Quarter west of the Bell Tower, Xi'an's Chinese-styled Great Mosque (Da Qingzhen Si) is one of the largest in China. Constructed in 742, when Islam was still a young religion, the mosque's surviving buildings date to the Qing dynasty and have been restored.

A serene oasis of tranquility, the mosque has four courtyards, the first of which contains a 30-ft (9-m) high decorated



Arabic script on a stone arch in the Great Mosque's courtyard

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

744 miles (1,200 km) SW of Beijing. 8,000,000. Xi'an CITS (029) 852 23170.

Transport

Xiguan Airport, Xianyang 25 miles (40 km). Xi'an Train Station. Xi'an Bus Station, CAAC (buses to airport), West Bus Station.

wooden arch, built in the 17th century, while the third houses the Introspection Minaret, an octagonal pagoda with a triple-eaved roof. Housed within the hall to the south of the minaret is a Ming-dynasty handwritten copy of the holy Koran. Located beyond two fountains is the main prayer hall, capped in turquoise tiles, its ceiling carved with inscriptions from the Koran. The prayer hall is usually closed to non-Muslims. Avoid visiting the mosque on Fridays, the Muslim holy day.

Also worth exploring is the charming Muslim Quarter, with its winding streets, low houses, narrow lanes, excellent ethnic cuisine, and resident Hui community.

Xi'an City Center

- ① Xi'an City Walls
- ② Forest of Stelae Museum
- ③ Drum & Bell Towers
- ④ The Great Mosque
- ⑤ Eight Immortals Temple
- ⑥ Small Wild Goose Pagoda
- ⑦ Shaanxi History Museum
- ⑧ Great Goose Pagoda



0 km 1
0 miles 1



Key to Symbols see back flap

Eight Immortals Temple

Open 9am–5:30pm daily. 🗺️

East of Xi'an's walls, this is its largest Daoist shrine, built on the site of a temple originally consecrated to the Thunder God, whose presence had been indicated by subterranean rumblings. It was later named Baxian Gong, after the Eight Immortals of Daoist mythology, who were glimpsed here during the Song dynasty. The halls and courtyards of this active temple teem with monks and nuns. Of particular interest are a series of slabs attached to the wall in the main courtyard, inscribed with Daoist literature and illustrations, including extracts from the *Neijing*, the bible of Daoist yogis and alchemists. Other plaques are etched with curious Daoist designs, including a tablet illustrated with the five mystic symbols denoting the Five Daoist sacred mountains. On the left and right of the **Lingguan Hall** are statues of the guardian beings, the White Tiger and Green Dragon, and an effigy of Wang Lingguan, the protector of Daoism. Statues of the Eight Immortals line either side of their hall.

At the rear of the complex, the **Doumu Hall** is dedicated to the important Daoist Goddess Doumu, also called Doulao, the Queen of the Big Dipper. Also at the rear is the Hall of Master Qiu, where the dowager-Empress Cixi and the Guangxu emperor sought refuge when they fled Beijing's Forbidden City at the end of the Boxer Rebellion in 1900 (see pp439). Above the door of the hall is a tablet inscribed with the characters *yujing zhidao*, meaning the Dao of Jade Purity, Cixi's dedication to the abbot. The temple hosts a popular religious festival on the first and fifteenth day of every lunar month. An excellent street market of curios, fakes, and memorabilia is held on Wednesdays and Sundays in the road outside the temple.



Stele Pavilion Eight Immortals Temple



The Small Goose Pagoda, originally 15 stories high

Small Goose Pagoda

Youyi Xi Lu. 🗺️ 7, 8, 40, 46.

Open 8am–5pm daily. 🗺️

Southwest of the South Gate, the 43-m (141-ft) high Small Goose pagoda, Xiaoyan Ta, is attached to the remains of a temple, Jianfu Si. One of the city's Tang relics, it was built to store *sutras* (scriptures) brought back from India. Its brick tower, completed in AD 709, was meant to protect the *sutras* from fire, which often destroyed wooden temples. The pagoda's top was jolted

off by an earthquake. At the back of the complex is the **Xi'an Museum**, storing 130,000 cultural relics.

Shaanxi History Museum

See pp172–3.

Great Goose Pagoda

Yanta Lu. 🗺️ 5, 21, 501. **Open**

8am–6pm daily. 🗺️ (separate fee to climb the pagoda).

This Tang-dynasty pagoda, built in AD 652, is attached to the extant Ci'en Si (Ci'en Temple). Known as Dayan Ta, the pagoda was built in memory of the Gaozong emperor's mother, Empress Wende. The monk Xuanzang, who traveled to India via Central Asia and returned with bundles of *sutras* (see pp491), officiated at the temple, translating the hundreds of scriptures from Sanskrit into Chinese. The 210-ft (64-m) high pagoda, built on his orders for their storage, is a square, sturdy structure with a brick exterior and wood interior. At the height of the Tang dynasty, Xi'an's extent was almost seven times larger than it is today, enclosing within its walls both the temple and pagoda.

The Dayan Ta can be climbed, and visitors throw money from the windows for good luck. The large temple complex, smaller now than during its Tang heyday, can also be explored. Its main hall contains three statues of the Buddha flanked by 18 *luohan* or *arhats* (see pp36–7).

At the back of the pagoda is a huge relief depicting scenes from Xi'an's history. North of the pagoda is a giant fountain which has nightly shows timed to music.



A visitor lighting a candle in the courtyard, Great Goose Pagoda

History of the Pagoda

Considered an archetypal element of Chinese architecture, the pagoda originates from India in concept and form as a development from the Buddhist stupa. However, Chinese architectural forms and styles were soon used in the design of pagodas, as can be seen by the pillar pagodas in the Yungang caves that clearly show multi-storied buildings. Over 1,500 years pagodas developed a variety of forms from pillars to squat tombs to soaring multi-story towers. Made of stone, brick, or wood, they could also be square or multi-sided. As they became uniquely Chinese they were also used slightly differently. Originally the focal point of the temple, they were superseded in this by the more functional hall. *Feng shui* led to pagodas being built without a temple on hills outside towns or overlooking rivers, to bring good luck or prevent floods.



The Indian stupa was a symbolic tomb and receptacle for Buddhist relics that inspired the pagoda. However the stupa form was largely dropped until the 13th century when the Yuan imported Tibetan Buddhist stupas (also known as dagobas), popularizing the form for later dynasties.

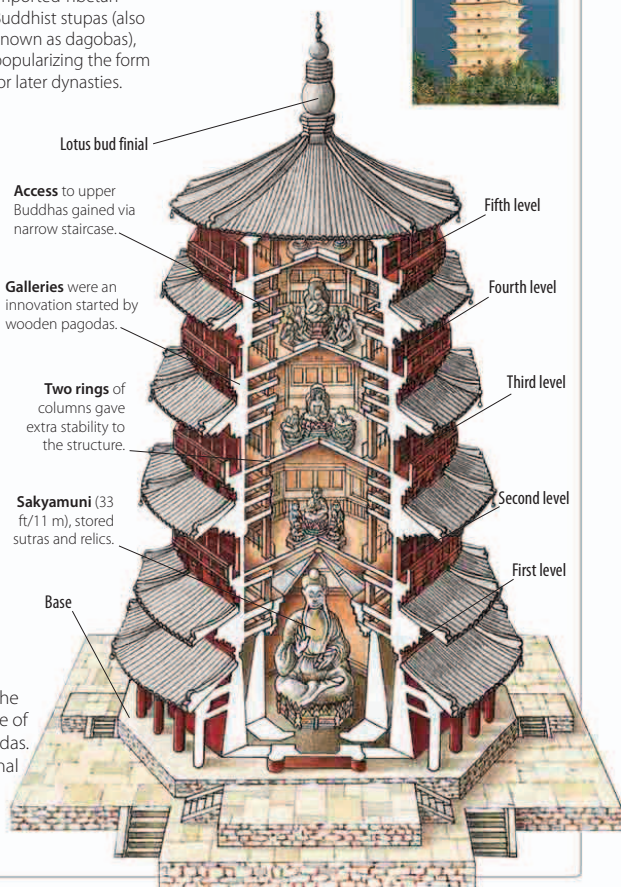
This Dali pagoda is a beautiful example of a stone close-eaved pagoda. From a square base it is 260-ft (69-m) high, tapering to a lotus bud spike that recalls the Indian stupas.



Octagonal pagodas may have come about as a result of Tantric Buddhism which used a cosmology with eight cardinal points.

YINGXIAN PAGODA

The wooden pagoda at the Fogong Si, Yingxian is one of the finest surviving pagodas. Built in 1056, the octagonal building is called the Sakyamuni Pagoda.



Shaanxi History Museum

陕西历史博物馆

One of Xi'an's premier attractions, this roomy, modern museum contains over 370,000 relics chronicling Shaanxi civilization and culture from as far back as prehistoric times. The collection is strong in ceramics, bronzes, jade pieces, gold and silver items, ancient coins, and calligraphy mainly from the pre-Ming periods, reflecting Xi'an's later decline. Look out also for some interesting Tang-dynasty frescoes and the chance to examine some of the renowned terracotta soldiers (*see pp174–5*) up close. Exhibits are well displayed and accompanied by both Chinese and English captions.



Tang-dynasty style architecture of the modern Shaanxi History Museum



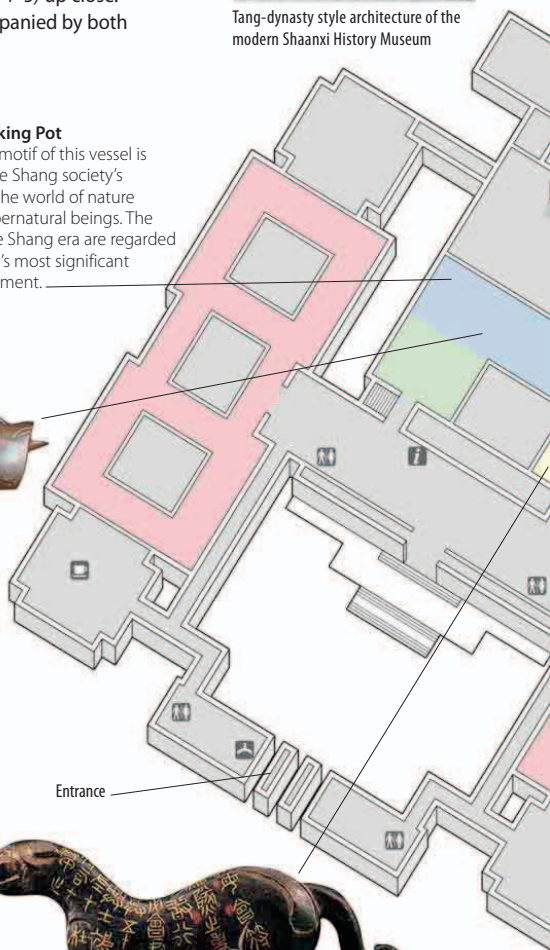
★ Shang Cooking Pot

The ogre-mask motif of this vessel is indicative of the Shang society's absorption in the world of nature spirits and supernatural beings. The bronzes of the Shang era are regarded as the dynasty's most significant creative achievement.



Zhou Wine Decanter

Capped with a lid in the shape of a tiger and incorporating a tail-shaped handle, this ox-shaped zun (a type of wine vessel) was excavated in 1967. The elaborate surface pattern is typical of Zhou-dynasty animistic design.



Key to Floorplan

- Pre-history
- Shang and Zhou Dynasties
- Qin Dynasty
- Han Dynasty
- Northern and Southern Dynasties
- Tang Dynasty
- Song to Qing Dynasties
- Special exhibitions
- Non-exhibition space





Tiger-shaped Tally

Inscribed with the archaic script used for Qin official texts, this remarkable bronze artifact was issued to generals to authorize the mobilization of troops.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

91 Xiaozhai Donglu, corner of Cuihua Lu. **Tel** (029) 8521 7140.

Open Apr–Sep: 8:30am–5:30pm
Tue–Sun, Oct–Mar: 9am–4:30pm
Tue–Sun.   sxhm.com

Transport

 5, 19, 521 from train station.



★ Tang Sancai Horse

This three-color (*sancai*) piece is a fine example of the polychrome earthenware pottery that has remained unsurpassed since Tang times.

Second floor



Tang Dynasty Agate Cup

This beautifully colored ox-head cup displays Middle Eastern influences, probably derived via the Silk Road. The gold snout is a removable stopper.

Ming Kettle

Among the small number of Ming artifacts at the museum is this kettle with gold tracing in a peacock and peony (a flower symbolizing wealth and rank) pattern.



Song Celadon Pot

This round-bodied pot is decorated with a lion-styled spout and floral motifs. The light green glazed piece was fired in the Yaozhou kilns, one of ancient China's largest and most famous kilns.



First floor

Golden Monster

Standing as though poised to charge, this magnificent Han-dynasty ornament has a patterned body and stylized horns that arch high over the beast's back and end in a face.



Gallery Guide

The exhibits are arranged in chronological order with Shang and Western Zhou exhibits in Gallery 1. On the second floor, Gallery 2 covers the Han, Western Wei, and Northern Zhou periods, while Gallery 3 concentrates on the Sui, Tang, Ming, and Qing dynasties. The two wings of the museum house temporary exhibits that can vary in quality and explanation.

② Terracotta Army

兵马俑

The Terracotta Army was discovered in 1974 by peasants digging a well. The awesome ranks of life-size pottery figures, modeled from yellow clay, were made to guard the tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi, despotic ruler who unified China over 2,200 years ago (see p60). Excavations yielded three pits and over 7,000 soldiers, archers, and horses. Pit 1 contains the infantry; Pit 2 (still being excavated) is filled with cavalry and soldiers; and Pit 3 (partially unexcavated) seems to be the command center, with 70 high-ranking officers. Each warrior, originally colored with pigment and holding a weapon, has an individually crafted expression.



★ Army in Pit 1

The most impressive pit contains over 6,000 warriors, arrayed in battle formation. The rear of the vault is strewn with smashed heads and fragments yet to be assembled.

High-ranking Officer

Dressed commandingly in a long, two-layered knee-length tunic, this imposing figure is distinguished both by his regalia and by being taller than the pottery infantry figures he appears to oversee.



Original Decoration

All of the figures were originally painted in vivid colors similar to this replica. Some retain traces of paint, but most of them faded after exposure to air.



The pottery horses have been assembled from broken fragments, like the warriors around them.



Infantry

The pottery warriors were originally equipped with weapons, including swords, spears, and bows and arrows, many of which have rotted.



★ Kneeling Archer

Cloaked in upper-body armor and kneeling in a state of preparation, this archer is alert although his wooden bow has disintegrated. His square-toed shoes are studded for extra grip.

The earth-walled corridors that house the warriors were originally roofed with wooden rafters.



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

19 miles (30 km) E of Xi'an.

Tel (029) 8139 9001. Open

8:30am–5:30pm daily.



Transport

28, 306 from Xi'an train station.

Individual Details

The intricacy is astonishing, especially in the careful execution of individual hairstyles on the hand-sculpted heads. Further artistry is evident in the detailed belts, clothing, and footwear.



Restoring the Army

The work to excavate and restore the terracotta figures continues to this day. Each warrior is unique and must be painstakingly reassembled by a team.

Qin Shi Huangdi's Tomb

The Terracotta Army is just one part, the defending army, of a complex necropolis.

A mile west of the pits, a large hill, yet to be fully excavated, is believed to be the burial mound of emperor Qin Shi, a tyrant preoccupied with death and the legacy he would leave behind. He spared no expense, enlisting 700,000 people over 36 years in the tomb's construction. Historical sources portray a miniature plan of his empire: a floor cut by rivers of mercury beneath a ceiling studded with pearls to represent the night sky. The complex is also said to contain 48 tombs for concubines who were buried alive with the emperor, a fate also reserved for workers, to prevent the location and design of the tomb from becoming known.

Two marvelous bronze chariots, originally housed in wooden coffins, were unearthed near the burial mound, and laboriously reassembled. Half actual size, one is made up of over 3,600 metal pieces.



One of the bronze chariots, on display in the Exhibition Hall



Colorful fresco in the tomb of Yi De, Qian Ling

Xi'an: Farther Afield

The several worthwhile sights around Xi'an are best visited by the Western Tour buses that depart from Xi'an train station in the morning. Located 15 miles (25 km) northeast, the modern city of Xianyang, China's first dynastic capital, is mainly visited for its museum and the surrounding imperial tombs. Housed in a former Confucian Temple, the **Xianyang City Museum** displays relics from Qin and Han times, and its highlight is an army of 3,000 miniature terracotta soldiers excavated from a nearby tomb. **Mao Ling** (Mao Tomb), 25 miles (40 km) west of Xi'an, is the tomb of the Han emperor Wudi (141–87 BC). The largest of the Han tombs in the surrounding region, it has a museum that houses stone sculptures and further relics from the tomb complex. The impressive **Qian Ling** (Qian Tomb), 50 miles (80 km) northwest of Xi'an, is the burial site of the Tang Gaozong emperor and his wife, the

indomitable Wu Zetian (see pp64–5). The Imperial Way is lined with stone figures, while the southeast section of the area contains 17 lesser tombs, including the vividly frescoed tombs of Prince Zhang Huai, the emperor's second son, and

crown prince Yi De, the emperor's grandson.

The mountainside mausoleum of the Tang Taizong emperor lies at **Zhao Ling** (Zhao Tomb), 43 miles (70 km) northwest of Xi'an.

Situated 74 miles (120 km) northwest of Xi'an, the remote **Famen Temple** is well worth the long journey. This shrine is

one of China's first Buddhist temples, and a venerated place for Buddhist pilgrims the world over. It was built in the 2nd century AD to house a finger bone of Sakyamuni (the Historical Buddha) donated by the Indian king Ashoka, who was dispensing Buddhist relics (*sarira*) among Buddhist lands. The sacred bone enjoyed extensive veneration, and was

periodically removed from the temple crypt and paraded through the streets of Xi'an during the height of the Tang era. After the dynasty's fall, the crypt was lost in obscurity, possibly as a result of anti-Buddhist purges. It is surprising that the crypt remained hidden for so long, as pagodas often have vaults for storing relics and Buddhist ornaments. In the 1980s, an exploration following a partial collapse of the pagoda exposed the crypt, along with its relics and Tang-dynasty riches. Today, the finger bone is once again preserved in a crypt, while the temple museum displays many Tangera artifacts. The sacred bone is occasionally taken abroad, as it was in 2003, when it went to Taipei in Taiwan.



Stele in Yi De's Tomb, Qian Ling

Xianyang City Museum
Zhongshan Lu. **Open** 8am–5pm
Tue–Sun.

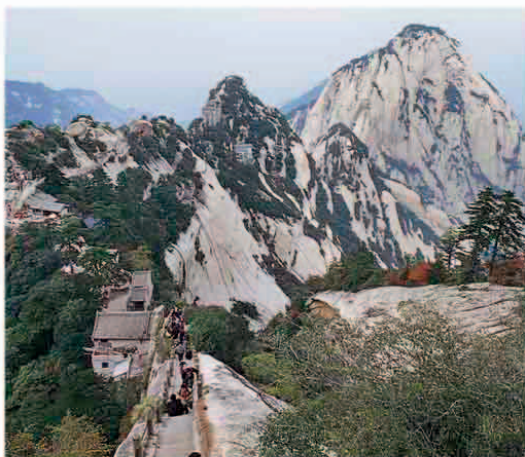
Mao, Qian & Zhao Ling
 number 3 from Xi'an station.
Open daily.

Famen Temple
 from Xi'an station, 4 shuttles daily
from 7:30am. **Open** 8am–5:30pm
daily.



The 12-storied pagoda at the Famen Temple, now restored to its former glory

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85



Pilgrims and hikers winding their way up North Peak, Hua Shan

③ Hua Shan 华山

75 miles (120 km) E of Xi'an. 🚗 from Xi'an to Menyuan, then bus. 🚗 from Xi'an train station to Huayin, then shuttle to entrance. 🚠 Cable car available.

The westernmost and loftiest of China's five Daoist peaks, the 8,563-ft (2,610-m) high Hua Shan is characterized by steep ascents, precipitous gullies, and peerless views. Crowned by five peaks (North, South, East, West, and Central), and towering southwest of the Yellow River as it loops east along the Henan-Shanxi border, Hua Shan (Flower Mountain) was traditionally likened to a lotus bloom. Also known by its other name, Xiyue (Western Peak), the mountain is believed to be presided over by the Daoist God of Hua Shan. For centuries, it was a magnet for hermits and ascetics in pursuit of immortality, and its crags and crannies still teem with Daoist myths. Its numerous temples have dwindled over the years, although several survive perched on the mountain.

Hikers can either drift to North Peak by cable car from the station at the eastern base, or make the strenuous 3–5 hour trek along with hordes of pilgrims from Huayin. From North Peak, you can either descend or follow the trail

along the ridge to the other four peaks lying to the south. Spring and autumn are the best seasons to climb Hua Shan, since summers and winters are extreme. Night-time ascents can also be made. It is best to carry food with you, though refreshments are available from vendors and at hotels along the trail. Wear shoes or boots with a rugged grip as certain sections are treacherous. Near the summits, bunches of padlocks hang on chains. According to the custom, couples have their names engraved on them and then lock them here forever. Accommodation is available in Huayin and on the mountain itself for overnight stays and watching the sunrise from East Peak.

④ Yan'an 延安

155 miles (250 km) N of Xi'an. 🚗 200,000. 🚗 🚗 from Xi'an and Beijing. 🚗

The quiet town of Yan'an, set within the ribbed loess hills of northern Shaanxi, is best explored by train from Xi'an. Yan'an lures Mao fans, since the town was the Communist Party's headquarters for a decade after the culmination of the Long March (see p262) in October 1935. In the north of town, the **Yan'an Revolutionary Museum** houses a display of Communist relics, including Mao's stuffed horse, weapons, photographs, and uniforms (few captions are in English). Not far from the museum lies the **Wangjiaping Revolution Headquarters Site**, where Mao and other front-rank party leaders worked and lived. The **Fenghuang Shan Lu Revolution Headquarters Site**, the early residence of the Communists, houses memorabilia of prominent officers. Perched on a hill southeast of town, and with impressive views, is the Ming-dynasty **Yan'an Bao Pagoda**, which sometimes features on Communist memorabilia.

🏛️ **Yan'an Revolutionary Museum**
Zaoyuan Lu. **Open** 8am–5pm daily. 🕒

🏛️ **Wangjiaping Revolution Headquarters Site**
Zaoyuan Lu. **Open** 7:30–11:30am, 2:30–5:30pm daily. 🕒

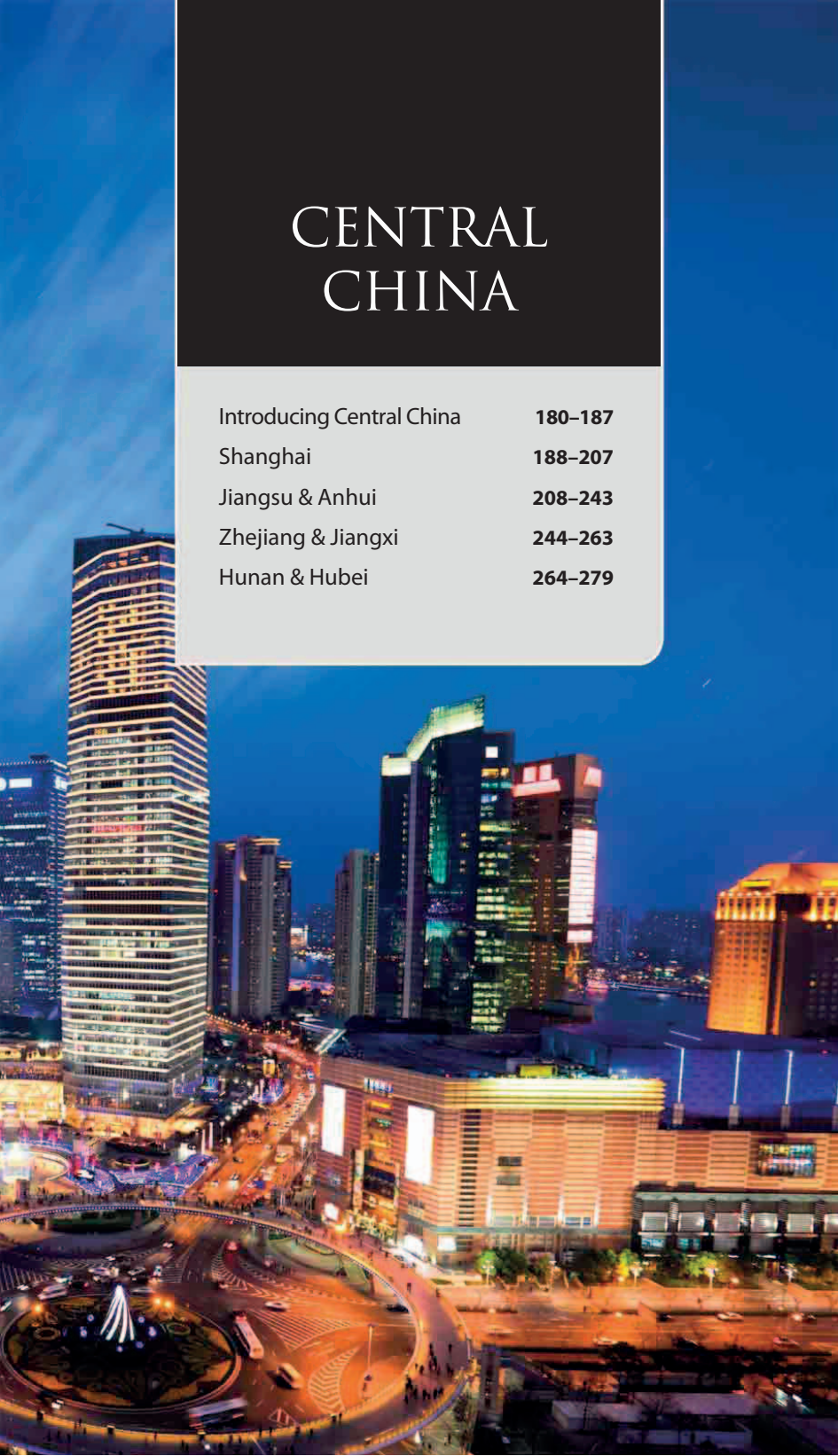


Padlocks engraved with couples' names, Hua Shan



CENTRAL CHINA

Introducing Central China	180–187
Shanghai	188–207
Jiangsu & Anhui	208–243
Zhejiang & Jiangxi	244–263
Hunan & Hubei	264–279



Central China at a Glance

Dominated by the mighty Yangzi River, China's central region encompasses the east coast port city of Shanghai and the six provinces of Jiangsu, Anhui, Zhejiang, Jiangxi, Hunan, and Hubei, that fan out from it to the north, south, and west. The region is rich in historic sights as well as natural beauty, including the attractive city of Nanjing, with its largely intact city wall, and the splendid scenery around Zhejiang's West Lake and Anhui's Huang Shan mountain. The cultured cities of Hangzhou and Suzhou lie on the banks of the Grand Canal, one of the greatest engineering feats in China's early history. A more up-to-date colossal feat of construction, the Three Gorges Dam, on the Yangzi River in Hubei, is the world's largest.



Tranquil scene in Shizi Lin (Lion Grove Garden), Suzhou



Tranquil scene in Shizi Lin (Lion Grove Garden), Suzhou



Getting Around

The region's main airport hub is Shanghai, although other international airports include Nanjing, Hangzhou, Wuhan, Ningbo, and Changsha. Many towns and cities in the region have domestic airports, but unless time is really an issue, it can be more pleasurable to travel by train. The rail network has been upgraded and high speed CRH "bullet" trains operate on selected inter-city routes. Both the Grand Canal and the Yangzi River operate tourist ferry or canal-boat services, but in the remote mountainous regions such as Wudang Shan in northern Hubei, and Jinggang Shan in southern Jiangxi, bus travel is the most expedient means of transport.



Temple buildings on the island of Putuo Shan, off the east coast of Zhejiang

A PORTRAIT OF CENTRAL CHINA

From the modern city of Shanghai to the historic and picturesque canal towns, Central China encapsulates the essence of the country and its culture. The region can also be considered the crucible of modern China, as many of the stirring historical events that shaped the nation took place here in the early 20th century.

The Yangzi (Chang Jiang), which flows into the East China Sea just below Shanghai, is the thread that binds all of Central China together. The combination of water and silt has fertilized vast areas, especially around Wuhan, referred to as “China’s Grain Basket”, or the “Land of Fish and Rice.” Despite its tendency to flood, the river has for centuries been a vital conduit for China’s trade, crowded with sampans and junks, as observed by Marco Polo in the 13th century, as well as tea clippers in the 19th century and ferries and cruise ships today. The river has also accelerated the country’s development: without the Yangzi there would have been no Grand Canal and no Shanghai. Now, with the controversial construction of the Three Gorges Dam, the river has been used again to supply the requirements of China’s vast, clamorous population.

Shanghai, which actually sits on the Huangpu River, a small tributary of the Yangzi, is something of an upstart, despite its reputation. A small provincial town until the mid-19th century, it evolved to become China’s greatest city. Even after the Cultural Revolution it remained the country’s fashion and shopping capital as well as a great industrial powerhouse. It is, today, one of the most visible symbols of “new” China’s vitality and dynamism. A comprehensive urban makeover took place ahead of Shanghai hosting the 2010 World Expo, and the city has positioned itself as a world financial center.

Politically too, Shanghai’s impact has been enormous; it was the site of the first meeting of the Chinese Communist Party and the spawning ground for the Cultural Revolution and the Gang of Four, all of whom had strong connections with the city.



Panorama of the skyline of Pudong district in Shanghai



Tour boats on one of Tongli's many canals

In fact, nearly all of the major political events of 20th-century China took place in its central provinces. Nanjing, the first Ming capital, was also Chiang Kai-shek's Republican center. Chairman Mao was born and educated, and began his revolutionary activities in Hunan. In Jiangxi, the 1927 Nanchang Uprising was the rallying point for the creation of the Red Army, while the same province was the starting point of the Long March. That revolution should ignite so easily was not surprising, since Anhui, Hunan, and Jiangxi, large parts of which are mountainous and remote from the Yangzi and seats of power, have always been associated with appalling poverty.

However, long before the fall of the last emperor, this was where many of the greatest features of pre-Revolutionary Chinese culture flowered during the brilliance of the Song and Ming dynasties. Before establishing their capital in

Peking, the Ming left their mark on Nanjing, as evidenced by the huge Ming tomb and formidable city wall, while Hangzhou, a former Song capital, is the location of the West Lake, one of China's most scenic places. Just as remarkable are the region's gardens and workshops producing silk embroidery and porcelain. Suzhou, in Jiangsu, has to some extent retained some of its ancient charm and is renowned for its private gardens, which have survived the upheavals of recent history largely intact. Porcelain production continues alongside the historic imperial kilns of Jingdezhen, while silk, produced throughout parts of the region, is still a major export, as it was a thousand years ago.

Considering that Central China is a heavily populated region largely shaped by man's manipulation of nature, it is surprising that there are still large areas of wilderness to enjoy. This is best illustrated in the legend of the Wild Man, China's equivalent of the Yeti, who is said to haunt Shennongjia in Hubei. For those wishing to escape urban or pastoral China, there are many opportunities, from the scenic beauty around Taihu Lake in Jiangsu to the mountain vistas at Hunan's Wulingyuan and Zhejiang's Yandang Shan.



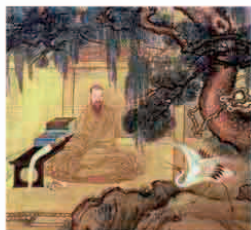
Detail from the Ming Palace Ruins, Nanjing



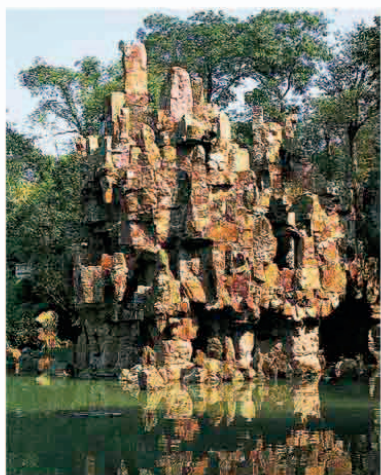
Suspension bridge at the Divine Cliffs, Yandang Shan

Traditional Chinese Gardens

The Chinese garden developed as a synthesis of two concepts linked in Daoist philosophy (see p37) – scenery and serenity: the contemplation of nature in isolated meditation led to enlightenment. Therefore, the educated and wealthy built natural-looking retreats for themselves within an urban environment. The garden creates poetic and painterly concepts, and aims to improve on nature by creating a picture that looks natural but is in fact entirely artificial. For this the Chinese garden designer used four main elements: rocks, water, plants, and architecture.



Classical Chinese garden design was considered a type of three-dimensional landscape painting or solid poetry.



Rocks: There were two main kinds of rock – the eroded limestones from lakes, often used as sculptures, or the yellow rock piled up to recall mountains and caves to the mind of the viewer. The beauty and realism of the rockery usually determined the success or failure of the garden.



Water: An essential element of life, water also could be used in the garden as a mirror and so appear to increase the size of the garden. Water also serves as a contrasting partner and therefore a balance to the hard stone. Finally it is a home for goldfish, symbols of good fortune.



Corridors, paths, and bridges link the different areas and give the artist control over how the views are presented to the visitor.

Interiors of pavilions were important as the venues for creativity. A lot of care was taken to select an appropriate and poetic name for each building.



Patterns and mosaics brighten up the garden and are also symbolic. Cranes represent longevity, while the *yin* and *yang* symbol often appears where a path forks in two.

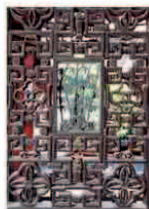
Garden Views

Using these four elements the garden is like a series of tableaux painted onto a roll of silk. One by one they come before your eyes just as the artist intended them to. As you follow the paths, you see just what he wanted you to see. These may be borrowed views, where the scenery from somewhere else is made to look part of the picture; hidden views, where you round a corner to come upon an unexpected scene; or contrasting views where leafy bamboo softens the view of rock, or opposite views as the yin element water balances the yang element rock.



A **moon gate** is a round door that neatly frames a view as though it were a picture. Gates can be square-, jar-, or even book-shaped.

Patterned screens allow in a certain amount of light and may be used to cast patterned shadows on white walls. They are also sometimes used to give tempting partial views through to other areas of the garden.



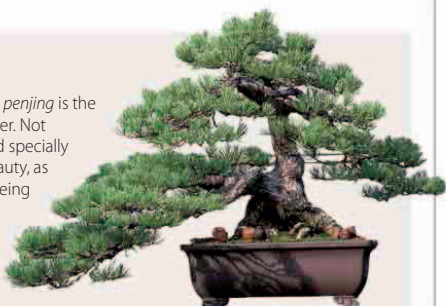
Plants: Plants were used sparingly and usually for their symbolic qualities. Thus the lotus is purity, as it flowers from the mud; bamboo is resolve, it is difficult to break; plum is vigor, as it blooms in winter; the pine is longevity, for it is an evergreen; the imperial peony, is wealth.



Buildings: An intrinsic part of the garden, these pavilions and waterside halls provide a place for contemplation and more importantly a specific viewpoint, as well as shelter from the sun and rain. They could range from open kiosks to multi-story halls and meeting rooms.

Penjing

Dating as far back as the Tang dynasty (618–907), *penjing* is the art of creating a miniature landscape in a container. Not limited to small trees, the artist may use rocks and specially cultivated plants to portray a scene of natural beauty, as though it were a landscape painting. As well as being beautiful, the harmony in these creations is seen as the spiritual expression of man's relationship with nature, the meeting of the temporal with the omnipresent. Often part of a Chinese garden will be devoted to the display or cultivation of this delicate art.



The Chinese art of *penjing*, the forerunner to Japanese *bonsai*

Regional Food: Central China

Traditionally referred to as the “Lands of Fish and Rice,” Central China is one of the country’s leading agricultural regions with some of the most fertile land. Both wheat and rice are grown here as well as barley, corn, sweet potatoes, peanuts, and soybeans. Freshwater fisheries abound in the network of lakes and rivers, while deep-sea fishing has long been established in the coastal provinces. In the holy mountains of Huang Shan and Jiuhua Shan, Buddhist vegetarianism has also influenced the region’s cuisine. Hunan’s cuisine is like Sichuanese food but even spicier (see pp352–3).



Garlic chives and bok choy



Market stall displaying the wide variety of dried goods available

Shanghai

The characteristics of Shanghai cuisine are summarized as “exquisite in appearance, rich in flavor, and sweet in taste.” A favorite winter delicacy is the hairy crab from the Yangzi estuary (although overfishing means they tend to come from elsewhere). A relatively new city, Shanghai has not really developed its own cuisine, although it has its own famous

filled dumplings called *xiao long bao*. Instead the city’s main influences are older schools of cuisine – Huaiyang and Suzhe. Another culinary influence is the Buddhist school of cuisine. Strangely, the best Buddhist vegetarian restaurants are to be found in Shanghai – a city with

a racy reputation. Maybe the sinners want to redeem themselves by abstaining from meat occasionally. Often these dishes have similar names to meat dishes and, thanks to the skilful use of soy sauce, tofu, gluten, and agar, they can look and even taste like meat.



Eight-treasure Buddha’s Special

Regional Dishes and Specialties

Two of the area’s great cities, Nanjing and Hangzhou, were at different times capitals in central China. Whenever there was a change of capital, the vast Imperial kitchens changed location bringing the staff with them, which resulted in a cross-fertilization of recipes and methods from one region to another. One favorite imperial dish despite its lowly name is Beggar’s Chicken – a whole chicken is stuffed with vegetables and herbs, wrapped in lotus leaves, and encased in clay before being baked. The clay container is then broken at the table releasing the beautiful aromas. A central China specialty (but actually enjoyed all over) is red fermented bean curd. This has a pungent, cheese-like flavor that is also very savory and appears in vegetarian and meat dishes alike. Fresh water crabs are best during October and November, simply steamed with spring onions, ginger, soy, sugar, and vinegar.



Fermented Bean Curd



Lions’ Heads pork meatballs braised with Chinese leaf – meant to look like lions’ heads and manes.

Huaiyang & Suzhe

Based specifically around the deltas of the Huai and Yangzi Rivers, Huaiyang cuisine is most famous for its excellent fish and shellfish – the freshwater crabs from Tai Hu are superb. Suzhe cuisine, however, covers a wider area – the provinces of Jiangsu and Zhejiang – and includes culinary centers such as Nanjing and Hangzhou that both served as capital cities. Along with stews flavored with a light stock, the region is famous for its “red cooking” – food braised in soy sauce, sugar, ginger, and rice wine. “Chinkiang Vinegar” is black rice vinegar from Zhenjiang, Jiangsu, and is acknowledged to be the best rice vinegar in China.



Eels, a popular ingredient from the rivers of central China

The province of Zhejiang produces China's best rice wines from Shaoxing and top quality hams from Jinhua. It is also worth trying the Long Jing (Dragon Well) green tea grown around West Lake in Hangzhou.



Park cafés – popular places to snack on some filled dumplings

Anhui

Further inland is the little known Anhui cuisine, which has a long history, but is often overlooked by visitors. Despite being landlocked, Anhui still enjoys a lot of fish thanks to its network of lakes and rivers. The province is also one of the leading agricultural regions in China, producing a great number and variety of crops and vegetables. One of Anhui's famed ingredients are its tender white bamboo shoots. These crisp shoots feature prominently in the vegetarian cuisine prepared in the lofty Buddhist mountain retreats and are often combined with a variety of exotic woodland mushrooms. Finally the world-famous Keemun red tea – it is actually black – comes from the humid hills of Qimen in south Anhui.

ON THE MENU

Beggars Chicken A whole chicken stuffed with flavorings and cooked in a clay pot.

Fried Prawns in Shells Prawns still in their shells are rapidly fried and then braised in a soy and tomato sauce.

Three-layer Shreds Steamed shredded ham, chicken, and pork with bamboo shoots and black mushroom – should be called five-layer shreds.

Fresh Water Crabs Simply steamed with scallions, ginger, soy, sugar, and vinegar.

Steamed Belly Pork with Ground Rice Also known as Double-braised Pork, this long-cooked dish melts in your mouth.

Eight-treasure Buddha's Special A generic name for a delicious vegetarian dish which can actually contain any number of different ingredients.



Tofu Casserole Tofu with sea cucumbers, ham, prawns, mushrooms, bamboo shoots, and bok choy in a stew pot.



Squirrel Fish A bream is filleted, coated with batter, deep-fried, and served with a sweet-and-sour sauce.



Sweet & Sour Spare Ribs Deep-fried bite-size pork spare ribs braised in soy, sugar, and vinegar.



SHANGHAI

Straddling both banks of the Huangpu River, close to the mouth of the mighty Yangzi on China's eastern seaboard, Shanghai is the nation's largest and most dynamic city, with a population of more than 23 million people. It is an autonomous municipality, and an explosion of economic and industrial development has made it one of the fastest growing cities in the world.



By Chinese standards, the development of Shanghai, which means "above the sea," is a recent phenomenon. In the 13th century it became a minor county seat and so it remained until the mid-19th century when British commercial ambitions led to war with China. The ensuing Treaty of Nanking allowed the British to trade freely from certain ports, including Shanghai. The city soon became an outpost of glamor, high living, and ultimately decadence. It was divided into "concessions," where foreign nationals lived in miniature versions of first Britain, then France, the US, and Japan. The Bund or quay along the Huangpu is still lined with concession-era buildings, evidence of a time when Shanghai was the third largest financial center in the world.

In 1949, the Communists took over and the city was stripped of its grandeur. However, in 1990, the Pudong area across the river from the Bund was declared a Special Economic Zone, and a revival started. Investments poured in; flyovers, malls, and hotels sprang up, and shining metal and glass skyscrapers towered above the Huangpu. This infrastructure boom has skyrocketed into the new millennium. Both airports have been upgraded, an international cruise port has opened, and new roads, subway lines, hotels, and offices were built for the 2010 World Expo. Today, from the Shanghai Tower, China's tallest building, to the latest street fashions, Shanghai is the best place in the country to get a feel for the China of the future.



Exterior of the renowned Shanghai Museum

Exploring Shanghai

Of Shanghai's three main areas, the Old City to the south is typically Chinese, with alleys, markets, and temples. It is also the site of the Yu Gardens (Yu Yuan), Shanghai's finest traditional garden. The former concession areas comprise the French Concession to the Old City's west and the British and American Concessions – collectively known as the International Settlement – to its north. Here are the Bund, the riverside promenade lined with grand colonial buildings, including the Fairmont Peace Hotel and the Waldorf Astoria Hotel, and the city's two main shopping streets, Nanjing Road and Huaihai Road. Pudong, Shanghai's newest district, on the Huangpu's east bank, has some of the world's highest commercial buildings.

Sights at a Glance

Historic Buildings, Sites & Neighborhoods

- ① *The Bund* pp192–3
- ⑤ Pudong
- ⑦ Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party
- ⑨ French Concession
- ⑩ Shanghai Exhibition Center
- ⑬ Soong Qingling's Former Residence
- ⑰ Longhua Cemetery of Martyrs

Temples & Churches

- ⑪ Jing'an Temple
- ⑫ Jade Buddha Temple
- ⑬ Xujiahui Catholic Cathedral

Parks & Gardens

- ③ People's Park & Square
- ⑥ *Yu Gardens & Bazaar* pp198–9
- ⑧ Fuxing Park
- ⑭ Lu Xun Park

Museums

- ⑬ Jewish Refugee Museum
- ④ *Shanghai Museum* pp196–7

Towns

- ⑱ Song Jiang

Shops & Markets

- ② Nanjing Road

Areas of Natural Beauty

- ⑱ She Shan



Getting Around

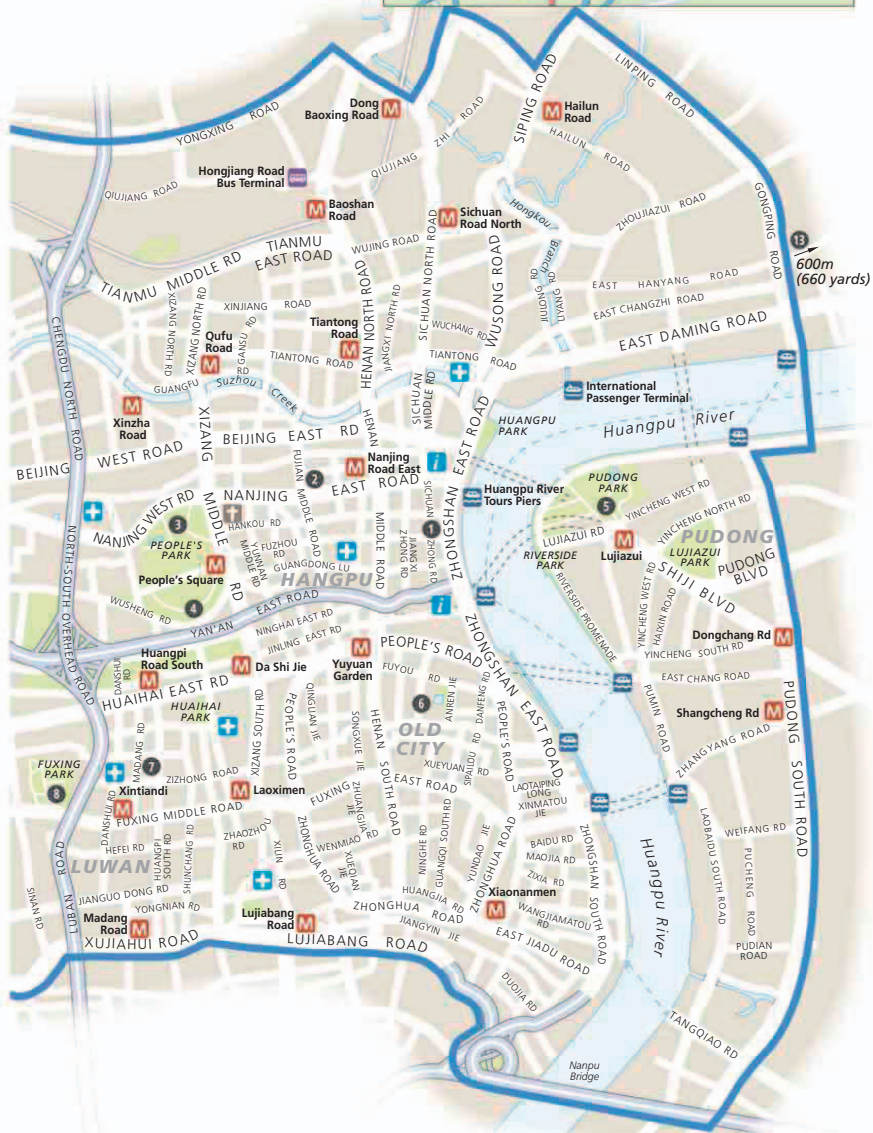
The city metro is the best way of getting around Shanghai. Its network is rapidly expanding, with many new lines completed before the 2010 World Expo, and several more under construction (see p620). Taxis are convenient, cheap, and plentiful. There are plenty of buses, but these tend to be crowded and slow due to the traffic congestion, especially during the morning and evening rush hours. Each bus has its own schedule, which can be complicated to follow.

For additional map symbols see back flap

Key

- Street-by-Street area: see pp198–9
- Expressway
- National Highway
- Railroad

Greater Shanghai



1 The Bund

外滩

Some places are forever associated with a single landmark and in the case of Shanghai it is surely the Bund. Also known as Zhongshan East 1 Road, the Bund was at the heart of the post-1842 concession era, flanked on one side by the Huangpu River and on the other by the hotels, banks, offices, and clubs that were the grandiose symbols of Western commercial power. Most of the old buildings are still in place and a walk along here can easily absorb a couple of pleasant hours. The area was redeveloped for the 2010 World Expo.



The Bund, at its peak the third biggest financial center in the world



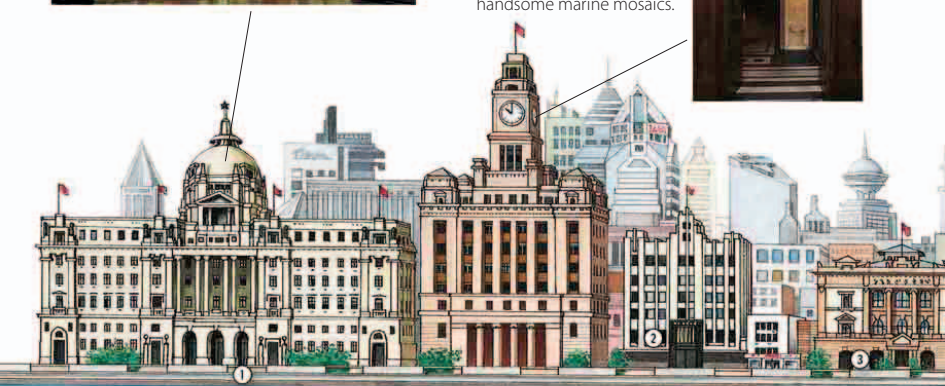
★ Shanghai Pudong Development Bank

Built in 1921, it was said to be the most beautiful building in Asia. Inside there are delightful murals.



★ Customs House

The entrance hall is decorated with some handsome marine mosaics.



★ River promenade

The riverside of the Bund is a wonderful place for taking a stroll, watching the river traffic, and viewing the varied Pudong skyline.

KEY

- ① The bronze lions' paws and head are rubbed for good luck.
- ② Former Bank of Communications
- ③ Russo-Asiatic Bank Building
- ④ Former Bank of Taiwan
- ⑤ North China Daily News Building
- ⑥ Chartered Bank Building of India, Australia, and China.



★ Views of Pudong

In the evening the Bund throngs with people enjoying the river breeze and the spectacular lights of Pudong's modern skyline (*see p195*).



Bank of China

Blending 1920s American and traditional Chinese styles, this impressive block was built by a rival of Sassoon, H.H. Kung.



Former Palace Hotel

The Palace Hotel was built in 1906 and was one of the best hotels in Shanghai. It is now called the Swatch Art Peace Hotel.



Fairmont Peace Hotel

The most distinctive building on the Bund was built in 1930 by the millionaire, Sir Victor Sassoon. Famous visitors include actor Charlie Chaplin and playwright Noel Coward.

Chen Yi's statue

The bronze statue looking down the Bund is not Chairman Mao but Chen Yi, revolutionary commander and first mayor of Shanghai after 1949.



2 Nanjing Road

南京路

M Nanjing Road East, Nanjing Road West.

Running west from the Bund, Nanjing Road has historically been considered Shanghai's foremost shopping street, despite competition from areas such as chic Huaihai Road. The street is divided in two – Nanjing Road East runs from the Bund to People's Square, after which it becomes Nanjing Road West, a total length of 6 miles (10 km). The traditional "shopper's paradise" is along pedestrianized Nanjing Road East, which is filled with upscale brand malls, stores, and boutiques. Theaters, cinemas, restaurants, beauty salons, and crowds of shoppers complete the picture. Before 1949, all the major stores were located here. One of them, the Sun Department Store, is now the **Shanghai No.1 Department Store**, which attracts 100,000 customers every day with its exotic window displays. As window shopping is such a popular pastime, the pedestrianized section of Nanjing Road East between People's Park and the Bund, with its numerous 1930s European-style buildings, is perpetually busy. The road culminates on



The Park Hotel, formerly one of the most fashionable addresses in town



The impressive Shanghai Grand Theater

People's Square in front of the **Pacific Hotel**, with its impressive exterior and fine plasterwork interior, and the dark and brooding **Park Hotel**, once one of the city's most fashionable hotels, as well as China's tallest building when it was built in 1934. Farther west, the area between Nanjing Road West and Jing'an Temple metro station was formerly known as Bubbling Well Road after the well near Jing'an Temple. It is more upscale and less crowded, with exclusive shopping and residential developments such as Plaza 66, Westgate Mall, and the **Shanghai Center** (see p206). There is a clutch of designer shops, restaurants, and apartments around the Portman Ritz-Carlton Hotel, opposite the Shanghai Exhibition Center.

3 People's Park & Square

人民广场

Nanjing Road West. **M** People's Square. **Open** 6am–6pm daily.

Opposite The Park Hotel is the oval-shaped former Racecourse, now occupied by People's Square and incorporating the pleasantly landscaped People's Park (Renmin Gong Yuan), the Shanghai Museum and Shanghai Grand Theater. Most people visit the park to walk, gossip, exercise, or simply watch the world go by. The park is

ringed by gleaming glass and metal skyscrapers. Facing it on its eastern side is **Mu'en Tang**, the Merciful Baptist Church that was built in 1929 as the American Baptist Church. An inter-denominational survivor of China's many revolutions, it is open to all and foreign nationals are welcome, but the services are only in Chinese.

Within the park itself is the elegant glass box of **MOCA Shanghai**, the Museum of Contemporary Art. Its two floors house regularly changing exhibitions of cutting-edge art and design. At the northwest corner of the park, the **Shanghai Art Museum** occupies the lower floors of an elegant old racecourse clubhouse. The collection is composed of a great many traditional Chinese paintings, along with some experimental works.

Opposite the Shanghai Museum is the **Shanghai Urban Planning Exhibition Hall**, which traces the huge urban development projects which have taken place in recent years. The highlight is a whole floor dedicated to a scale model of Shanghai, showing all existing and approved buildings.

At the northwest corner of People's Square is the **Shanghai Grand Theater** (see p206), made almost entirely of glass and topped by a spectacular convex

roof. It is worth a visit, for a meal with a view or just to look around, and tours are also available.

† Mu'en Tang

328 Xizang Middle Rd. **Open** daily. **†** daily services, see entrance for times.

MOCA Shanghai

Open 10am–6pm Sat–Tue & Thu, 1–11pm Wed.

Shanghai Art Museum

Open Tue–Sun (last adm 4pm).

Shanghai Urban Planning Exhibition Hall

Open Tue–Sun (last adm 4pm).

Shanghai Grand Theater

Open 9–11am & 1–4pm daily.

4 Shanghai Museum

See pp196–7.

5 Pudong

浦东

East bank of Huangpu. **M** from People's Square to Lujiazui. People's Square. Cross-River Ferry Terminal.

In the mid-20th century, Pudong, facing the Bund on the other side of Huangpu, was the city's poorest quarter, a squalid huddle of slums and brothels and also the home of the notorious gangster Du Yuesheng or Big-Eared Du. In 1990, it acquired

The Old Racecourse

The Old Racecourse was the center of Shanghai's social life in the early 20th century, and its Race Club was one of the most profitable corporations in China. It also had a swimming pool and a cricket pitch. After the communists came to power in 1949, it became a symbol of Western decadence, and was turned into a park and a square that was used for political rallies and finally landscaped to accommodate the Shanghai Museum. All that remains is its old grandstand clocktower on the park's west side, now part of the Shanghai Art Museum.



A view of Shanghai's Old Racecourse before 1949

the status of Special Economic Zone, and became one of the largest building sites in the world, supposedly festooned with a third of the world's large cranes. The transformation has been remarkable – a forest of skyscrapers has grown as investment poured in. The 1,500-ft (457-m) **Oriental Pearl TV Tower** offers views across the city from halfway up, and houses the interesting **Shanghai History Museum**. Pudong is also the site of the 1,379-ft (421-m) **Jinmao Tower**, whose 88th-floor

observation deck has views down on the Pearl. Both are surpassed by the 1,614-ft (492-m) **Shanghai World Financial Center**, and the 124-floor, 2,073-ft (632-m) **Shanghai Tower Pudong**, the second tallest building in the world upon completion in 2014.

Oriental Pearl TV Tower

1 Century Blvd. **Tel** (021) 5879 1888.

Open 8am–9:30pm daily.

Shanghai History Museum

Tel (021) 5879 1888.

Open 8am–9:30pm.



The futuristic and ever-evolving skyline of Pudong

4 Shanghai Museum

上海博物馆

With a collection of over 120,000 pieces, the Shanghai Museum displays some of the best cultural relics from China's neolithic period to the Qing dynasty, a span of over 5,000 years. While the highlights are the bronze ware, ceramics, calligraphy, and painting, it also has excellent displays of jade, furniture, coins, and Chinese seals or "chops." The museum was established in 1952, and the current building opened in 1995 with a design that recalls some of the exhibits and symbolizes "a round heaven and a square earth."



Shanghai Museum, reminiscent of a Shang-dynasty bronze *ding* pot



Calligraphy

To the Chinese, calligraphy is more than mere communication, it is one of the highest art forms. This cursive script (see p33) was painted by Huai Su (AD 737) in typically wild movements that combine delicate and forceful strokes.



★ Sancai Pottery Figures

The major technical advance of the Tang dynasty (618–907) in ceramics was the development of *sancai* (three-color) pottery. This grave figure is a superb piece of polychrome pottery.

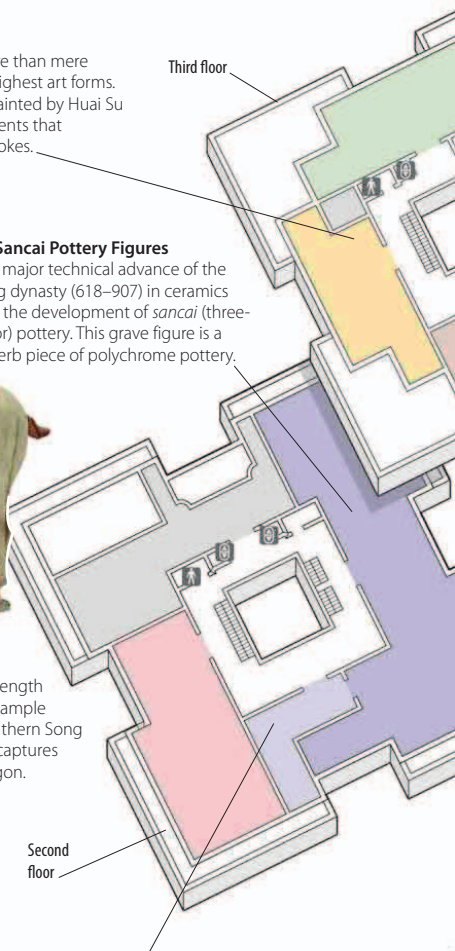


Celadon Ware

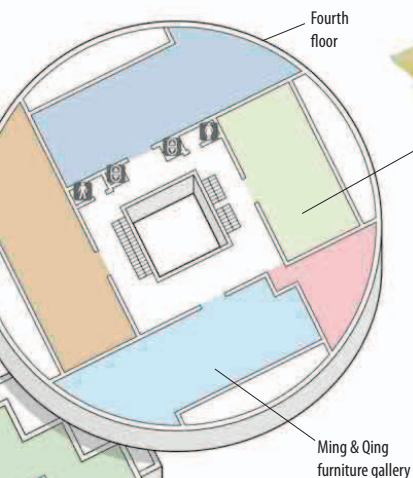
Celadon's simple beauty and strength made it highly desirable. This example of Longquan ware from the Southern Song dynasty (1127–1279) elegantly captures the movement of the coiled dragon.

Key to Floorplan

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Bronzes | Jade |
| Sculpture | Furniture |
| Ceramics | Coins |
| Zande Lou ceramics | Ethnic minorities gallery |
| Paintings | Temporary exhibitions |
| Calligraphy | Non-exhibition space |
| Seals | |





Zande Lou Ceramics is a privately donated collection of 130 pieces and includes some outstanding Qing imperial items.



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information


201 Renmin Avenue, People's Square. **Tel** (021) 6372 3500.

Open 9am–5pm daily (last entry one hour before closing).  



 shanghaimuseum.net

Transport

 People's Square.

Jade Gallery

Sculpture in jade, the quintessential Chinese stone, reached its peak in the Qing dynasty (1644–1911) as exemplified by this exquisite jade *gu* (wine vessel).

★ Landscape Paintings

Chinese painting owes a great deal to Daoist philosophy. Accordingly, Wang Meng's (1308–85) picture *Retreat in the Qingbian Mountain* tries to capture the powerful, almost animate essence of nature.



Liangtuxuan is a privately donated collection of paintings and calligraphy.

★ Shang Bronzes

This *jia* (wine vessel), a burial gift from the mid-15th–13th century BC, shows great skill and craftsmanship in its sophisticated animal mask design or *taotie*.



The Seal Gallery displays examples of virtuoso carving and calligraphy.

Back entrance

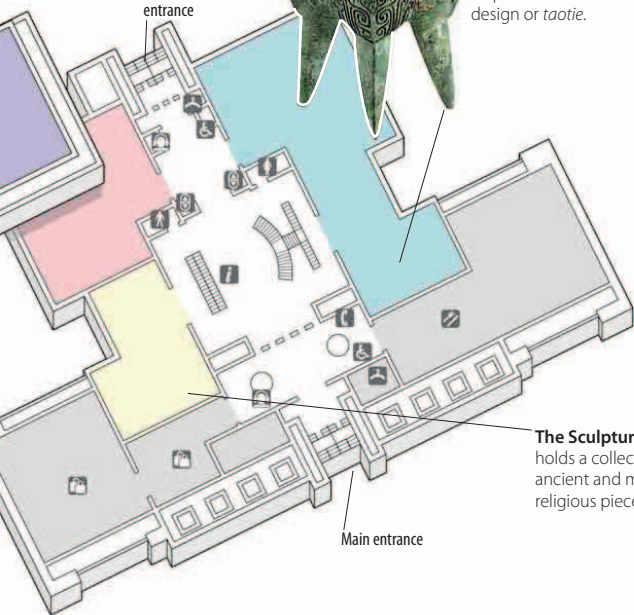
Gallery Guide

The calligraphy and painting exhibits are changed frequently for their own protection. As well as the permanent collections, the museum often shows exhibits from other major museums around the world.

The Sculpture Gallery

holds a collection of ancient and mainly religious pieces.

Main entrance



6 Yu Gardens and Bazaar

豫园

The old-style buildings of the Yu Gardens bazaar are not really old, but the fanciful roofs are nevertheless very appealing. The shops here peddle everything from tourist souvenirs to traditional medicines and, despite inflated prices, the area is incredibly popular. It is best to arrive early and go straight to the beautiful and relatively peaceful Ming-dynasty Yu Gardens (Yu Yuan). A dumpling lunch, before the restaurants get too busy, will set you up for a hectic afternoon of shopping and haggling, followed by a cup of tea in the quaint Huxinting teahouse.



Yu Gardens Bazaar, modern shops in old-fashioned buildings



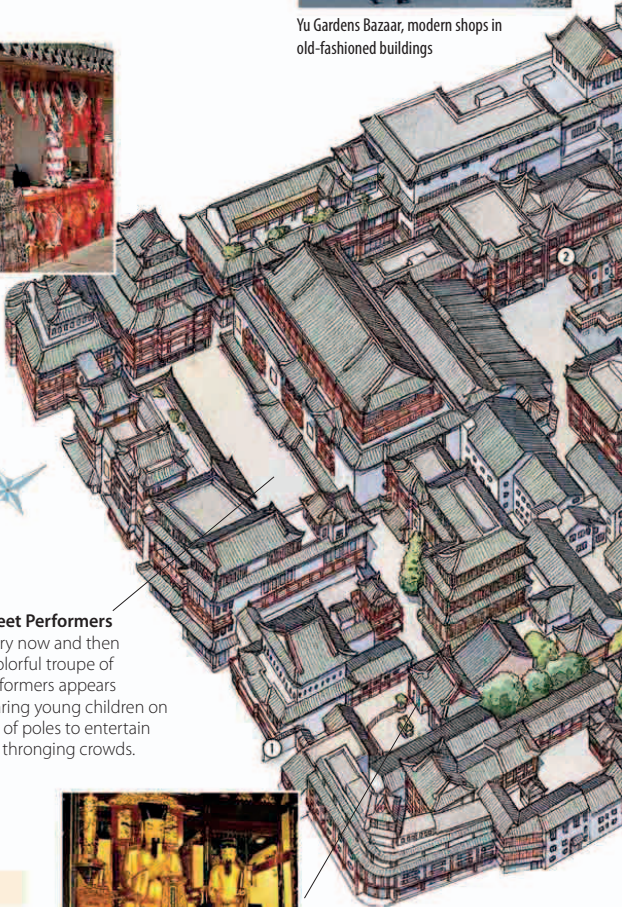
Yu Gardens Bazaar

Despite being a bit of a tourist trap, there is plenty of fun to be had wandering among the stalls and haggling over prices.



Street Performers

Every now and then a colorful troupe of performers appears bearing young children on top of poles to entertain the thronging crowds.



KEY

① Shanghai Old Street (Fangbang Road) and an entrance to the Bazaar.

② Restaurants surround the lake – you can see the dumplings being made in the morning.

★ City God Temple

Dating back to the Ming era, the temple once housed the patron god of Shanghai and encompassed an area as large as the bazaar. Now this small restored temple is very popular with tourists.



★ Huxinting Teahouse

This charming building, built in 1784 by cotton merchants, only became a teahouse in the late 19th century. The zigzag bridge protects the structure, as evil spirits can't turn corners.



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

269 Fangbang Middle Road (Shanghai Old Street), Old City.

Tel (021) 6326 0830. City God

Temple: **Open** 8:30am–4:30pm

daily. 🗺️ 🚶 Yu Gardens: **Open**

8:30am–5pm daily. 🗺️ 🚶

Huxinting Teahouse: **Open**

8:30am–9pm daily. 🗺️ 🚶

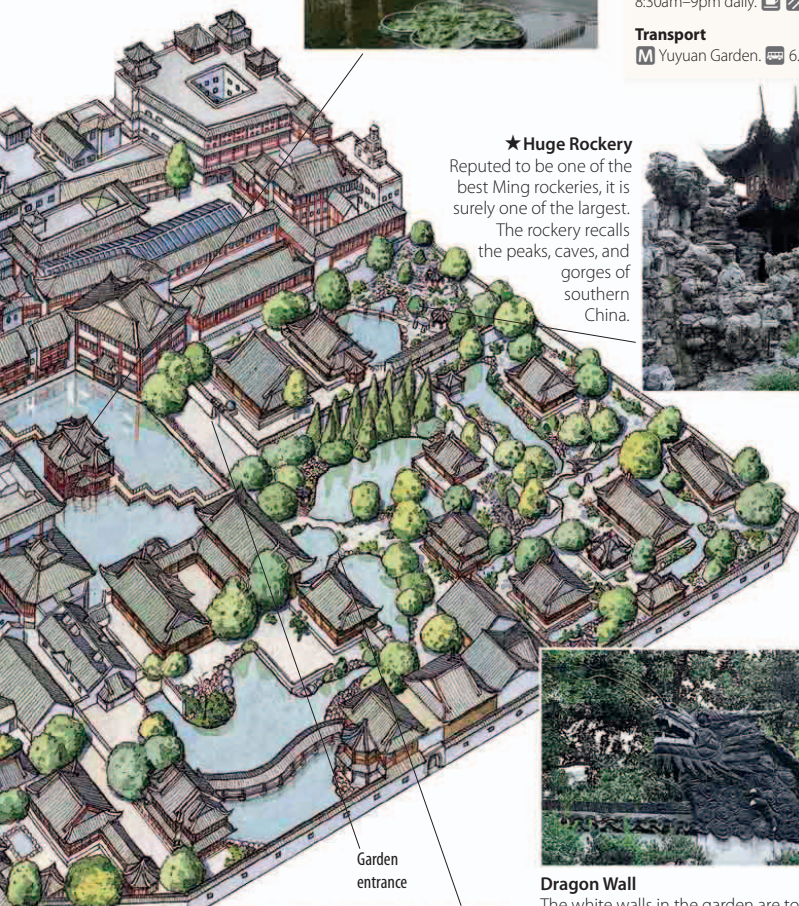
Transport

M Yuyuan Garden. 🚶 6.

★ Huge Rockery

Reputed to be one of the best Ming rockeries, it is surely one of the largest.

The rockery recalls the peaks, caves, and gorges of southern China.



Dragon Wall

The white walls in the garden are topped by an undulating dragon. Note how it only has four claws and not five like an imperial dragon, so as not to incur the emperor's wrath.

Yu Gardens Scenic Areas

The walls divide the garden into six scenic areas, which makes it feel like a maze and seem larger than it really is. As a result, the garden gets very busy in the afternoon and on weekends.





Entrance, First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party

7 Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party 中共一大会址纪念馆

374 Huangpi Road South. **M** Huangpi Road South. **Open** 9am–4pm daily.

This house in the French Concession was the venue for a historic meeting, where representatives of China's communist cells met to form a national party on July 23, 1921. Officially, there were 12 participants including Mao Zedong, but it is believed that many others also attended. The police discovered the meeting and the delegates were forced to escape to a boat on Lake Nan, in Zhejiang. The house has a reconstruction of the meeting, with the original chairs and teacups used by the delegates. The exhibition hall tells the history of the Chinese Communist Party.

8 Fuxing Park 复兴公园

Fuxing Middle Rd. **M** Huangpi Road South. Sun Yat Sen Memorial Residence: 7 Xingshan Rd. **Tel** (021) 6437 2954. **Open** 9am–4pm daily. **Z** Zhou Enlai's Former Residence: 73 Sinan Rd. **Open** 9am–4pm daily. **Z**

The French bought this private garden, located in the French Concession, in 1908. It was known then as the "French Park," and has elements of a formal

Parisian *jardin*, with meandering paths flanked by cherry trees. It was renamed Fuxing, meaning "revival," in 1949.

Close by on Xiangshan Road is the **Sun Yat-Sen Memorial Residence**, a typical Shanghai villa where the leader and his wife, Soong Qingling, lived between 1918 and 1924. The interior is just as it was in Sun's time, with many of his personal items such as his gramophone and books. South of the park, 73 Rue Massenet (now Sinan Road) was the **Former Residence of Zhou Enlai**, who lived here when he was head of the city's Communist Party in the 1940s. It is furnished in a spartan style and is another excellent example of a European-style Shanghai villa.



Statue of Sun Yat-Sen, Sun Yat-Sen Memorial Residence

9 French Concession 法国花园

M Shaanxi Road South.

The former French Concession, stretching from the western edge of the Old City to Avenue Haig (Huashan Road), comprises European-style villas and tree-lined boulevards, shops,

and cafés, and its residents were mainly White Russians and Chinese. It had its own electrical system, judiciary, and police force, whose highest ranking officer "Pockmarked Huang," was the leader of the infamous Green Gang which controlled the opium trade.

Today, the Concession is centered around **Huaihai Road** and Yan'an Road – vibrant streets lined with megamalls, boutiques, restaurants, and bars – and the area around the stylish Art Deco façades of the **Jinjiang Hotel** complex. The hotel's compound includes the Grosvenor Residence, pre-war Shanghai's most exclusive property. The VIP Club, in the hotel's old wing, retains its

1920s architecture. The surrounding streets come alive at night with lively bars and clubs (*see p207*). Another interesting building is the **Ruijin Guesthouse** at the corner of Fuxing Middle Road and Shaanxi South Road. This Tudor-style manor is now a hotel. **The Children's Palace** at the western end of Yan'an Road was part of an early-1920s estate, and is now a children's arts center.



The European-style villa that was Zhou Enlai's former residence

The Huangpu River

The Huangpu River is a mere 68 miles (110 km) in length from its source, Dianshan Lake, to its junction with the Yangzi River, 17 miles (28 km) downstream from Shanghai. As a spectacle, however, it is fascinating and there is much for the eye to take in, from the redeveloped waterfront at the Bund, and burgeoning modern metropolis on Pudong, to the bustling docks that line the Huangpu all the way to the wide, windblown mouth of the Yangzi. The boat departs from the wharves on the Bund south of Yan'an Road (see pp190–91). The one-hour trip takes visitors as far as the Yangpu Bridge, but there is also the longer three-and-a-half-hour trip, all the way to the Yangzi River.



④ Shanghai Docks

The Shanghainese proudly claim that nearly a third of all China's international trade enters via the perennially busy Huangpu river.

③ Yangpu Bridge

Built in 1993, this is one of the world's longest cable-stay bridges – cables are anchored to each tower.



② Huangpu Park

At the northern tip of the Bund, this park is the home of the Monument to the People's Heroes.



① The Bund

The central road area of the Bund was redeveloped for the 2010 World Expo. Most traffic has been diverted underground and the roads turned into parks and walkways.

⑦ The Yangzi River

The color of the water changes markedly here, as the oily Huangpu meets the muddy and turbulent Yangzi. A lighthouse marks the confluence of the two.



⑥ Wusong Fort

The site of a decisive battle against the British in 1842, it consisted of a crescent-shaped fort with ten imported cannons.

⑤ Gongqing Forest Park

This large and pleasantly landscaped park was reclaimed from marshland and is popular with the Shanghainese on weekends.



0 km 1
0 miles 1

Tips for Visitors

Length: 37 miles (60 km).

One-hour trip: 10 miles (16 km).

Boat trips: The boats vary in size and facilities, so make sure you know what you are getting. The more expensive ones do food and even entertainment of sorts.

Times: 9am, 2pm, 7pm Mon–Fri; 11am, 3:30pm, 8pm Sat–Sun. The one-hour trips leave more frequently (times can vary).



Facade of the Soviet-style Shanghai Exhibition Center

10 Shanghai Exhibition Center 上海展览中心

1000 Yan'an Middle Rd. **Tel** (021) 2216 2216. **M** Jing'an Temple. **Open** 9am–4pm daily.

The enormous Shanghai Exhibition Center is one of the few reminders of the influence the Soviet Union once had in Shanghai. Built in 1954, it was known as the Palace of Sino-Soviet Friendship, and was designed as a place for exhibiting China's technological and agricultural advances since the founding of the People's Republic in 1949. Ironically, the building stands on the site of the estate of millionaire Silas Hardoon – Shanghai's biggest capitalist in the 1920s. The Center is worth seeing for its grimly florid Soviet-style architecture. It has an impressively ornate entrance, with columns decorated with red stars, and a gilded spire. Today, it is an exhibition and convention center.

Nearby on Xinxin Road, in the former French Concession, is the old **Russian Orthodox Church** with its distinctive onion-shaped domes. It served thousands of refugees from the Russian Revolution in 1917. The area around Julu Road and Changle Road, nearby, has a

number of interesting Art Deco and early 20th-century villas and mansions constructed by Shanghai's wealthy residents.

11 Jing'an Temple 静安寺

1686 Nanjing West Rd (near Huashan Rd). **M** Jing'an Temple. **Open** 7:30am–5pm daily.

Located opposite the attractive Jing'an Park, which contains the old Bubbling Well Cemetery, Jing'an Temple (Temple of Tranquility) is one of the city's most revered places for ancestor worship. Originally founded in the Three Kingdoms Period, it reopened in 2006 after being completely rebuilt. In the 1930s, it was Shanghai's wealthiest Buddhist temple, headed by the influential abbot Khi Vehdu, who was also a gangster with a harem of concubines and White Russian bodyguards. It is said that his bodyguards went with him everywhere, carrying bulletproof briefcases as shields in the event of an attack. The temple was closed during the Cultural Revolution, but has reopened to become one of the best examples of an active Buddhist shrine in the city. It is a popular place to offer coins and pray for financial success.



Wall detail, Jade Buddha Temple

12 Jade Buddha Temple 玉佛寺

170 Anyuan Rd. **Tel** (021) 6266 3668. **M** Changping Road then taxi. **Open** 8am–4:30pm daily.

The most famous of Shanghai's temples, Yufo Si lies in the northwest part of the city. It was built in 1882 to enshrine two beautiful jade Buddha statues that were brought from Burma by the abbot Wei Ken. The temple was originally located elsewhere, but shifted here in 1918, after a fire damaged the earlier structure. After being closed for almost 30 years, it reopened in 1980, and today has some 100 monks. Built in the southern Song-dynasty style, it has sharply curved eaves and figurines on the roof. Its three main halls are connected by two courts. The first hall is the **Heavenly King Hall**, where the four Heavenly Kings line the walls. The **Grand Hall of Magnificence** houses three incarnations of the Buddha, while the

Jade Buddha Chamber

contains the first jade statue – that of a large reclining Buddha. The finer of the two statues, however, lies upstairs. Carved from a single piece of jade, this jewel-encrusted seated Buddha is exquisite. Visitors should note that photography is forbidden here.



Golden Buddhas in the Jade Buddha Temple

Old Shanghai

Until 1842 Shanghai was a minor Chinese river port, worthy of a protective rampart but otherwise undistinguished. In that year the Chinese government capitulated to Western demands for trade concessions resulting in a number of ports along China's eastern seaboard, including Shanghai, becoming essentially European outposts. Their key feature was that of extra-territoriality – foreign residents were answerable only to the laws of their own country. Thus the Americans, British, and French had their own “concessions” – exclusive areas within the city with their own police forces and judiciary – a situation that attracted not only entrepreneurs, but refugees, criminals, and revolutionaries. This mix was a potent one and Shanghai's reputation for glamor and excess derives from the politically combustible period between the two world wars. It all came to an end in the 1940s with the Japanese invasion and wartime occupation of Shanghai.



The Bund, also known as Zhongshan East No. 1 Road or, more colloquially, “Waitan,” was the wide thoroughfare running along Huangpu River. This was where all the major financial players in Shanghai commerce built their offices and created the distinctively grandiose skyline.



The Race Course, located in the area of today's People's Square, was a part of expatriate life, where, just as in the numerous clubs and institutions for non-Chinese, wealthy expats could socialize as if they were home.

The Great World was a quintessential Shanghai creation, a mixture of freakishness, fashion, sex, and theater under one roof, owned by the gangster Pockmarked Huang.



Opium, trafficked commercially with claims for free-trade by British companies like Jardine Matheson, was the foundation of Shanghai's prosperity and dens dotted the city. When the mercantile veneer was jettisoned, opium became the currency of Shanghai's gangster underworld.



Nanking Road was, and still is, Shanghai's retail hub. Divided in two parts (the western end is Bubbling Well Road), it was home to China's first department stores, where Chinese and expatriates mixed on an equal footing.



Brightly colored boats alongside the lake pier at Hongkou Park (Lu Xun Park)

13 Jewish Refugee Museum 犹太难民纪念馆

62 Changyang Rd. Tel (021) 6512 6669. **M** Dalian Road. **Open** 9am–5pm daily (last adm 4:30pm).

From 1933 to 1941, Shanghai absorbed 30,000 Jewish refugees fleeing persecution in Europe. This museum is housed in a former synagogue. The focus is on photographs and refugees' stories.



Statue, Lu Xun's Tomb

the simplification of the Chinese script and the use of spoken Chinese in literature. **Lu Xun's Tomb**, where his ashes were interred in 1956 on the 20th anniversary of his death, is also in the park. To the right of the main park entrance is a **Memorial Hall** dedicated to the novelist, where visitors can view early editions of his work and his correspondence with various intellectuals including George Bernard Shaw. Just to the south is **Lu Xun's Former Residence**, where he

spent the last three years of his life at a house on Shanyin Road.

M Lu Xun's Former Residence
9 Dalu Xincun, Shanyin Rd. **Open** 9am–4pm.

15 Soong Qingling's Former Residence 宋庆龄故居

1843 Huaihai Middle Rd. **M** Hengshan Rd. **Open** 9am–4:30pm daily.

At the southwestern edge of the city is the fine villa that was the residence of Soong Qingling, wife of the revolutionary leader Dr. Sun Yat Sen. All the Soong siblings – three sisters and a brother – came to wield a lot of influence in China. Of the three sisters, Soong Meiling married Chiang Kai-shek, the head of the Nationalist Republic of China from 1928 to 1949; Ailing married H.H. Kung, the director of the Bank of China, and Soong Qingling married Sun Yat-sen. Her brother, known as T.V. Soong, became Chiang Kai-shek's finance minister. Soong Qingling stayed in China once the Communists took over and became an honorary Communist heroine. She lived in Shanghai after her husband's death, initially in the house they had shared in the former French Concession (see p200), before moving to this villa. She died in Beijing in 1981.

The house is a charming example of a mid-20th-century Shanghai villa. It has some wonderful wood paneling and lacquerwork. Her limousines are

14 Lu Xun Park 鲁迅公园

Sichuan Bei Rd. **M** Hongkou. **Open** 6am–5:30pm daily.

To the north of Suzhou Creek and Waibaidu Bridge lies the Japanese section of the former International Settlement, which once had a Zen temple, a Japanese school, and specialist Japanese shops. The area's most interesting spot is Lu Xun Park – a pleasant place to watch the Chinese taking boat rides, playing chess, practising *taiji quan* or simply relaxing. Originally known as Hongkou Park, it now has a name that reflects its strong associations with the great Chinese novelist Lu Xun (1881–1936), who lived nearby. His most famous work is *The True Story of Ah Q*, which lampooned the Chinese national character. Lu Xun was also an early proponent of the *baihua* or plain speech movement, which championed



Soong Qingling's Former Residence – a charming early 20th-century villa

still parked in the garage, and some of her personal items are also displayed.

16 Xujiahui Catholic Cathedral

徐家汇堂

158 Puxi Rd. **Tel** (021) 6438 2595.

M Xujiahui. **Open** 1–4pm Sat, 2–4pm Sun. 📍 📞 📧

The redbrick Gothic Cathedral of St. Ignatius that stands at a southwestern corner of Shanghai has long been associated with foreign nationals. The land originally belonged to a member of the Xu clan, Xu Guangqi (1562–1633), who was converted to Catholicism by Matteo Ricci. Upon his death, Xu left land to the Jesuits for the building of a church, seminary, and observatory. The cathedral, with its 164-ft (50-m) twin towers, was built in 1906. It was partly destroyed during the Cultural Revolution, but was rebuilt, and now holds Sunday services attended by over 2,000 worshippers. The interior is a mix of traditional Catholic decoration and Chinese embellishment. Xu Guangqi is buried nearby in Nandan Park.

17 Longhua Cemetery of Martyrs

龙华烈士陵园

180 Longhua West Rd. **M** Longcao Road. **Tel** (021) 6468 5995. 📍 No. 41. **Open** 8:30am–4:30pm Tue–Sun. 📍 Longhua St: 2853 Longhua West Rd. **Open** 7am–4:30pm daily. 📍

This site honors those who died for the communist cause before the People's Republic was established in 1949. At the center is a Memorial Hall, while many commemorative sculptures dot the park. The cemetery is situated on the site of the Nationalist Party's execution ground, where several hundred Communists were put to death in 1927 by gangs working for Chiang Kai-shek.

Nearby is **Longhua Temple** and an octagonal pagoda. A temple has existed on this site



Commemorative statue at the Longhua Cemetery of Martyrs

since AD 687, and a pagoda since AD 238–251. The foundations of the current pagoda, with its upturned eaves, date to AD 977, while the temple buildings were built during the late Qing era. The temple has several halls and is very active. The surrounding area is pretty in spring.

18 She Shan

佘山

22 miles (35 km) SW of Shanghai.

M Sheshan. 📍 from Wenhua Guangchang bus stop or Xi Qu bus station in Shanghai.

She Hill or She Shan is a mere 328-ft (100-m) high, and is surmounted by a grand, red-brick Catholic church, **Our Lady of China**. In the 1850s, European missionaries built a small chapel here. Later, a bishop took refuge

in the area and vowed to build a church. The basilica was built between 1925–35. Services, often in Latin, take place on Christian holidays and particularly in May, when pilgrims stream here. The impressive cathedral is worth a closer look. The route to the top represents the Via Dolorosa (The Way of Suffering), the road that Christ took to his crucifixion. It is a pleasant walk past bamboo groves, but there is a cable car that goes to the summit. The hill also has an ancient observatory that houses an ingenious earthquake-monitoring device of a jar with dragon heads around the outside and a pendulum inside. Each dragon has a steel ball in its mouth. When an earthquake occurred, the pendulum would swing, knock a dragon, causing its mouth to open and a ball to drop out and thereby point out the quake's direction.



Exterior of the grand She Shan church, Our Lady of China

19 Song Jiang

松江

25 miles (40 km) SW of Shanghai. **M** Song Jiang Xincheng. 📍 from Xi Qu bus station in Shanghai.

Situated on the Shanghai-Hangzhou railway line, Song Jiang is a small county town with a handful of sights. These include a Song-dynasty square pagoda, and close by, a 13-ft (4-m) high and 20-ft (6-m) long Ming screen wall, decorated with carvings of legendary beasts. West of Song Jiang is an old mosque, part of which dates to the Yuan dynasty and is said to be one of the oldest Islamic buildings in China. It is still a place of worship.

Shopping & Entertainment in Shanghai

Shanghai has always been China's premier shopping destination. Before World War II, the city's glamorous foreign community demanded the finest goods, and Shanghai's reputation for novelty and quality continues today, with stores that cater to all tastes and budgets. This is also a culturally vibrant city, with regular performances of opera, theater, acrobatics, Western classical music, and jazz. The city's nightlife is buzzing with plenty of fashionable bars and restaurants, as well as cinemas and nightclubs.

Shops & Markets

Shanghai's best-known shopping street is Nanjing Road, which is lined with stores (see p194). **Plaza 353**, in the historic Dong Hai Plaza, is a hip mall with stores and dining options. The most interesting local market is just off Nanjing Road, on Jiangyin Road. Huaihai Road in the former French Concession is also well known, and packed with upscale fashion boutiques and stores.

Clothes & Textiles

All the major brand names from around the world are represented here, along with some Hong Kong chain stores, though the latter often don't have sizes that fit foreign visitors. The main streets are Nanjing Road, Shaanxi South Road, Huaihai Road, and Maoming Road, as well as the malls of Pudong. For reasonably priced silk, try the **No. 1 Department Store** (see p194), but the best quality is sold at stores such as **Isetan**. For fashion boutiques, there are a number of independent stores clustered at Taikang Road and at Xinle Road for youth fashion. The city has also revived its tradition of fine tailoring, and **W.W. Chan & Sons Tailor Ltd** is quality at good prices.

Antiques

Although Shanghai offers a range of antiques, there are two potential hazards in buying them. First, the market is flooded with fakes which

visitors might mistake for the real thing, and second, it is illegal to export antiques that do not bear a government-approved seal. Bargains are hard to come by and the best quality items are not likely to be much cheaper than at home. The main markets are near the Old City on **Dongtai Road**, **Fuyou Road** (open Sunday only), and **Fangbang Road**. Fangbang Road's (see p198) **Hubao Building Basement Market** is the largest indoor antique market in Shanghai, while Hongkou district's **Duolun Road** has a row of restored shops selling antiques, books, and art.

Arts & Crafts

All traditional Chinese arts and crafts are widely available in Shanghai. The **Yu Gardens Bazaar** is great for items such as tea, teapots, teaware, and other souvenirs, but remember to always bargain hard. For porcelain, the best buys are the fine reproductions of classical porcelain, available at the **Shanghai Museum**, which although expensive, are far better than anything else in the market. Handicrafts made by China's ethnic minorities such as Tibetans, as well as by people of neighboring countries such as Nepal, are available at specialist shops on Nanjing Road. Jewelry shops abound all over the city, and jade, although available, is difficult to classify. Cultured pearls however, are a safer bet, and are available in stores such as **Shanghai Pearl City**.

For Chinese art, there are galleries around Moganshan Road near Suzhou Creek.

Entertainment Guides & Tickets

There are a number of English language publications, such as the bi-weekly *City Weekend* and monthly *that's Shanghai* and *Time Out Shanghai*, which carry details of current events, as well as restaurant reviews. Mainstream events are listed in local Chinese newspapers. Mypiano.com is the city's primary ticket agency for theater, concerts, and sports events. Tickets can also be arranged through the tourist office, directly at the venue or even through your hotel.

Performing Arts & Music

Shanghai is home to several international-standard venues such as the **Shanghai Grand Theater** (see p194) and **Shanghai Oriental Art Center** that stage national and international opera performances, music, dance, and theater. Another very popular cultural venue is the **Shanghai Center** (see p194), which also puts on classical Western music and opera. *Era*, a lavishly staged acrobatics show, is performed nightly at **Shanghai Circus World**. A hot venue is the **Mercedes-Benz Arena**, which was built for the World Expo and now hosts international concerts, theater, music and dance shows, and sports events. Traditional Chinese opera can be seen at the **Tianchan Yifu Theater** and occasionally at the old **Lyceum Theater** (Lan Xin). The **Majestic Theater** also has a programme of ballet and local opera, while modern Chinese theater is performed at the **Shanghai Dramatic Arts Center**. There are also concerts on Sunday evenings at the **Shanghai Music Conservatory Auditorium**. Jazz, which is most famously available at the **House of Blues & Jazz**, can also be heard at the **JZ Club** on Fuxing Road.

Cinema

Apart from Chinese and Hong Kong films, films from Europe and the US are also screened in cinemas and bars. Halls such as **UME International Cineplex**, **Shanghai Film Art Center**, and **Studio City** show foreign films (often censored), either in their original language with Chinese subtitles or dubbed into Chinese with English subtitles.

Bars & Nightclubs

Shanghai's nightlife is China's most brash, diverse, and pulsing. Bars come and go, and what's "in" one month may

close down the next. Bars tend toward the avant-garde, and are heavily influenced by what is fashionable in Tokyo, New York, and London. Prices for drinks can be high, and many bars have dancing, live music, film nights, and comedy spots. The best areas are the Bund, Xintiandi, Fuxing West Road, Yongfu Road, and Sinan Road. **Boxing Cat Brewery** on Fuxing Road is popular for happy hour beers and southern US bar food. **Malone's**, an American style bar, and close by is the **Big Bamboo**, a Canadian bar and one of the city's most popular late night hangouts. Popular cocktail lounges include

Constellation and **X Bistro**, located at the trendy Sinan Mansions (a redevelopment of a clutch of heritage villas), plus **El Coctel**, a classy upscale lounge. **Lola** is a hip club and lounge with DJs and dancing.

The Geisha combines Japanese dining with a frenetic club and a large roof terrace. The opulent **Glamour Bar** at the corner of Guangdong Lu is decorated like a 1930s Hollywood film set. Current reviews, including details of which clubs have DJs from London and New York, are to be found in *that's Shanghai* and *Time Out Shanghai*, as well as online at www.smartshanghai.com.

DIRECTORY

Shops & Markets

Plaza 353

Nanjing East Rd.
Tel (021) 6353 5353.

Clothes & Textiles

Isetan

1038 Nanjing West Rd.
Tel (021) 6218 7878.

Number 1

Department Store
830 Nanjing East Rd.
Tel (021) 6322 3344.

W.W. Chan & Sons Tailor Ltd.

129-A02 Maoming South Rd. Tel (021) 5404 1469.

Arts & Crafts

Duoyun Xuan

422 Nanjing East Rd.
Tel (021) 6352 9074.

Room With a View

479 Nanjing East Rd.
Tel (021) 6352 0256.

Shanghai Museum

201 Renmin Dadao.
Tel (021) 6372 3500.

Shanghai Pearl City

558 Nanjing East Rd.
Tel (021) 6322 3911.

Yu Gardens Bazaar

260 Fangbang Middle Rd (Shanghai Old Street).
Tel (021) 6655 9999.

Performing Arts & Music

House of Blues & Jazz

60 Fuzhou Rd.
Tel (021) 6323 2779.

JZ Club

46 West Fuxing Rd (near Yongfu Rd).
Tel (021) 6431 0269.

Lyceum Theater

57 Maoming South Rd.
Tel (021) 6256 2926.

Majestic Theater

66 Jiangning Rd.
Tel (021) 6217 4409.

Mercedes-Benz

Arena
1200 Expo Avenue.
Tel 400 181 6688.

Shanghai Center

1376 Nanjing West Rd.
Tel (021) 6279 8600.

Shanghai Circus World

2266 Gonghe New Rd.
Tel (021) 6652 5468.

Shanghai Dramatic Arts Center

288 Anfu Rd.
Tel (021) 6473 4567.

Shanghai Grand Theater

300 People's Square.
Tel (021) 6327 6740.

Shanghai Music Conservatory Auditorium

20 Fenyang Rd.
Tel (021) 6437 0137.

Shanghai Oriental Art Center

425 Dingxiang Rd, Pudong.
Tel (021) 6854 7793.

Tianchan Yifu Theater

701 Fuzhou Rd.
Tel (021) 6351 4668.

Cinemas

Shanghai Film Art Center

160 Xinhua Rd.
Tel (021) 6280 6088.

Studio City

10/F, 1038 Nanjing West Rd. Tel (021) 6218 7109.

UME International Cineplex

4/F No. 6,
Lane 123, Xingye Rd.
Tel (021) 6373 3333.

Bars & Nightclubs

Big Bamboo

132 Nanyang Rd.
Tel (021) 6256 2265.

Boxing Cat Brewery

82 Fuxing Rd.
Tel (021) 6431 2091.

Constellation

86 Xinle Rd.
Tel (021) 5404 0970.

El Coctel

2/F, 47 Yongfu Rd.
Tel (021) 6433 6511.

Glamour Bar

at M on the Bund, 6/F,
20 Guangdong Rd.
Tel (021) 6329 3751.

Lola

Building 4, 570 Yongjia Rd.
Tel (021) 6073 7628.

Long Bar

Waldorf Astoria Hotel,
2 The Bund (Zhongshan Yi Lu).
Tel (021) 6322 9988.

Malone's

255 Tongren Rd.
Tel (021) 6247 2400.

The Geisha

390 Shaanxi South Rd.
Tel (021) 6403 0244.

X Bistro

Block 33, Sinan Mansions,
45 Sinan Rd.



JIANGSU & ANHUI

The provinces of Jiangsu and Anhui lie to the north and west of Shanghai respectively. Jiangsu, one of China's most fertile and populated areas, is largely rural. Its southern region is dominated by the Yangzi River, along which lie the major cities including Nanjing, the provincial capital, with a profusion of historic sights, and the cities of Suzhou and Yangzhou, known for their gardens, canals, and silk production. The province is developing at a fast rate but still retains its charm, especially in the small towns where traditional architecture can be seen. Anhui's main sights lie in the south, where vast spreads of paddy fields are watered by the Huai River. The area south of the Yangzi River is dominated by mountain ranges offering spectacular scenery. Huang Shan, the Yellow Mountain, is Anhui's most popular scenic area, while the Buddhist mountain, Jiuhua Shan, is more serene. The towns of Shexian and Yixian in the southeast are renowned for their traditional old houses with fine wooden carvings.



1 Suzhou

苏州

A network of canals, bridges, and canal-side housing characterizes the city of Suzhou. Its history dates back to the 6th century BC, when the first canals were built to control the area's low water table. The construction of the Grand Canal (see p223), 1,000 years later, brought prosperity as silk, the city's prized commodity, could be exported northwards. During the Ming dynasty, Suzhou flourished as a place of refinement, drawing an influx of scholars and merchants, who built themselves numerous elegant gardens. The city has plenty of sights, and is dissected by broad, busy roads laid out in a grid.

Beisi Ta

1918 Renmin Lu. **Open** daily. 🗺️

The northern end of Renmin Rd is dominated by the Beisi Ta (Northern Pagoda), a remnant of an earlier temple complex, which has been rebuilt. The pagoda's main structure dates from the Song dynasty, but its foundations supposedly date to the Three Kingdoms era (AD 220–265). Towering 249 ft (76 m) high, it is octagonal in shape, and has sharply upturned eaves. Visitors can climb right to the top, from where there are good views of the city, including Xuanmiao Guan and the Ruiguang Pagoda (see pp218–19).



The octagonal Beisi Ta

Suzhou Museum

204 Dongbei Jie. **Tel** (0512) 6757 5666. **Open** 9am–4pm Tue–Sun. 🗺️

The municipal museum was formerly housed in the villa which was part of the adjoining Humble Administrator's Garden. The villa was occupied by Li Xiu-cheng, one of the leaders of the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion (see p428) in 1860. The museum was rebuilt in a contemporary-meets-traditional style by the architect IM Pei

in 2006. It houses more than 30,000 cultural relics, including excavated artifacts, Ming and Qing dynasty paintings and calligraphy, and ancient arts and crafts.

Suzhou Silk Museum

2001 Renmin Lu. **Tel** (0512) 8211 2636. **Open** 9am–4:30pm daily. 🗺️

The Suzhou Silk Museum is a pleasure to visit, mainly because its exhibits are well-documented with English captions. It traces the history of silk production (see pp214–15) and its use from its beginnings in about 4000 BC to the present day. Exhibits include old looms with demonstrations of their workings, samples of ancient silk patterns, and a section explaining the art of sericulture. The museum's most interesting exhibit is its room full of live silk worms, eating mulberry leaves and spinning cocoons.

Humble Administrator's Garden

See pp212–13.

Shizi Lin

23 Yuanlin Lu. **Open** daily. 🗺️

The Shizi Lin (Lion Grove Garden) is considered by many the finest in Suzhou. However, visitors unfamiliar with the subtleties of Chinese garden design may find it rather bleak, as rocks are its main feature. Ornamental rocks were a crucial element of classical gardens, and symbolized either the earth or China's sacred mountains. Dating to 1342, the garden was originally built as part of a temple. The large pool is spanned by a zigzag bridge and buildings with unusually fine latticework, while part of the rockery forms a labyrinth.

Ou Yuan

6 Xiaoxinqiao Lane. **Open** 7:30am–5pm daily. 🗺️

The Ou Yuan (Couple's Garden) is not as busy as many of the city's other classical gardens, and is a pleasure to visit. It takes its name from its two garden areas, separated by buildings and corridors. A relaxing place, Ou Yuan has rockeries, a pool, and a fine, open pavilion at its center that is surrounded by several teahouses. It is situated in a charming locality filled with some of the most attractive houses, canals, and bridges in the city.




The charming Ou Yuan Garden



Mural in the Hall of Literary Gods, Xuanmiao Guan

Museum of Opera & Theater

14 Zhongzhangjia Xiang. **Tel** (0512) 6727 3334. **Open** 8:30am–4:30pm daily. 


Housed in a beautiful Ming dynasty theater of latticed wood, the Museum of Opera and Theater (Kunqu Bowuguan) is a fascinating and highly visual museum. Its display halls are filled with examples of old musical instruments, delicate hand-copied books of scores


and lyrics, masks, and costumes. Other exhibits include a life-size orchestra and vivid photographs of dramatists and actors. Traditional Suzhou Opera, known as *kun qu* or *kun ju*, is renowned as the oldest form of Chinese opera, with a history of about 5,000 years.

The museum is the venue for occasional performances, while the adjacent teahouse stages daily shows of *kun*-style opera and music.



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

32 miles (50 km) NW of Shanghai.
6,000,000.  345 Shiquan Jie,
(0512) 6530 5887.


 classicsuzhou.com

Transport

 Suzhou Train Station.
 North Bus Station, Nanmen Station, Wu Xian Station.
 tours of Grand Canal.

Xuanmiao Guan

94 Miaolian Jie. **Tel** (0512) 6777 5479.

Open 7:30am–4:45pm daily. 

The Daoist Temple of Mystery was founded during the Jin dynasty but like many Chinese temples, has been rebuilt many times. The Hall of the Three Pure Worshipers dates to the Song dynasty, and is the largest ancient Daoist hall in China. The intricate structure of the roof in particular is worth scrutiny. Located in Suzhou's commercial center, the temple was associated with popular street entertainment, and although the musicians and jugglers have gone, it retains a casual atmosphere.

Suzhou City Center

- ① Beisi Ta
- ② Suzhou Silk Museum
- ③ Suzhou Museum
- ④ Humble Administrator's Garden
- ⑤ Shizi Lin
- ⑥ Ou Yuan
- ⑦ Museum of Opera & Theater
- ⑧ Xuanmiao Guan
- ⑨ Shuang Ta
- ⑩ Yi Yuan
- ⑪ Silk Embroidery Research Institute
- ⑫ Wangshi Yuan
- ⑬ Canglang Ting
- ⑭ Pan Men
- ⑮ Confucian Temple



Key to Symbols see back flap

Humble Administrator's Garden

拙政园

Suzhou's largest garden, Zhuozheng Yuan, the Humble Administrator's Garden is also considered the city's finest. It was established in the 16th century by a retired magistrate, Wang Xianchen, and developed over the years as subsequent owners made changes according to the fashion of the day. A 16th-century painting shows that originally the garden was less decorative than it is now. The garden is separated into three principal parts, east, central, and west. The eastern section has colorful flowers but is of less interest than the other two. There is also a museum that explains the history and philosophy of Chinese gardens.

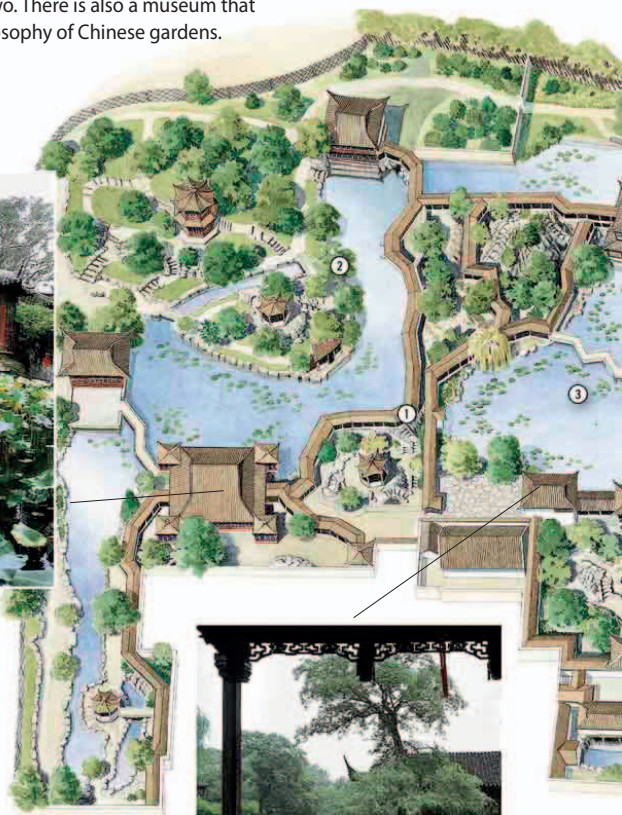


Covered walkway – a way to enjoy the garden even in the hot sun



★ Mandarin Duck Hall

Split into two equal rooms, this arrangement allowed visitors to enjoy the cooler north-facing chamber in summer, and the warmer south-facing one in winter.



KEY

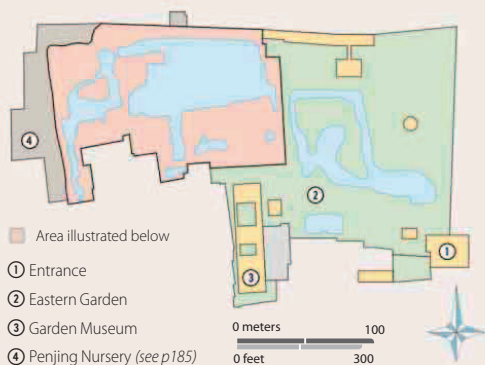
- ① The Wavy Corridor rises up and down over the water as if going over waves.
- ② Western section of the garden
- ③ The central part of the garden imitates the scenery of China south of the lower Yangzi.
- ④ Little Flying Rainbow Bridge



★ Fragrant Isle

This pavilion and terrace is supposed to resemble the deck and cabin of a boat. As it projects out over the water, it gives excellent views of the garden from all sides.

The Humble Administrator's Garden



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

178 Dongbei Jie, Suzhou.

Tel (0512) 6751 0286. Open

7:30am–5pm daily (last admission 5pm). includes the Garden

Museum. en.szzzy.cn



Orange Pavilion

Artificial mountains were an important element in Chinese gardens and were ideal for contemplation.



Secluded Pavilion of Firmiana Simplex and Bamboo

The most famous view of the garden, the "borrowed view" (see p185) of Beisi Ta, the Northern Pagoda reflected in the water, is visible from here.

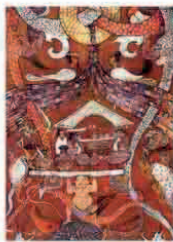


★ Hall of Distant Fragrance

The main hall of the garden, is named after the perfume of the large lotus pond nearby that delicately wafts in.

The History of Chinese Silk

According to legend it was the Empress Xi Ling who, in 2640 BC, encouraged silkworm breeding on a large scale. Trading vast quantities of the material around the world, China profited massively from the industry. It remained a Chinese monopoly for the next 3,000 years or so until refugees smuggled the secret to Korea and Japan. Another story tells that a Chinese princess who married the Prince of Khotan secretly brought silkworms with her as a gift for her husband. The western world, which knew China as Seres, or Land of Silk, learnt the secret of silk production via two monks, who hid silkworms in their bamboo staffs.



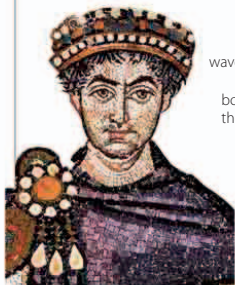
Silk burial offering dating from c.200 BC

Imperial Gift

Silk was originally reserved for use by the imperial household, an example of which is this gorgeous robe embroidered with the imperial symbol of the five-clawed dragon. The imperial yellow symbolizes the earth.



Silk was traded (see pp470–71) extensively as an important source of income and indeed was often used as a form of payment of taxes or for payment of salaries.



Justinian was the Byzantine emperor who stole the secret of silk in AD 600. Silk had for long been fashionable in the Roman Empire but they had no idea how it was made, even thinking that it grew on trees.

This traditional pattern suggests waves and mountains and therefore the boundless nature of the Chinese empire.



Women produced silk in their own home – and it took up a large part of the day for six months of the year. The state also had many workshops producing and weaving silk. By the Tang dynasty, all classes of society in China were allowed to wear silk.





Silk embroidery became an important art and the women of distinguished families could make a considerable fortune by skilful embroidery.



Meaning of Symbols



Axe is one of the twelve symbols of sovereignty that were reserved for the emperor. The axe stands for the power to punish.



Bat is not only for emperors but is a lucky symbol for everyone. The Chinese word for bat (*fu*) also sounds like good luck.



Double chi is another of the twelve imperial symbols that represents the emperor's power to judge his subjects.

The Production of Silk

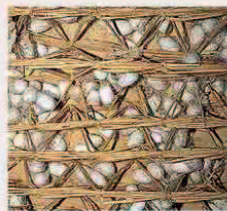
Thousands of years of intensive breeding have rendered the silk moth, *Bombyx mori*, a blind, flightless, egg-laying machine whose larvae hold the secret of silk. The genius of the Chinese lay in the discovery of the potential of its ancestor, a wild, mulberry-eating moth unique to China.



Farming silkworms: the eggs are first kept at 65° F (18° C) rising to 77° F (25° C), at which point they hatch. The silkworms (actually caterpillars) are now kept at a constant temperature and fed mulberry leaves at 30-minute intervals day and night, until fattened they are ready to enter the cocoon stage.



Silken saliva: the silkworms' saliva glands secrete a clear liquid, that solidifies into silk threads as it dries, and a gum that sticks these together.



Cocoons: when they are ready to pupate, with a figure-of-eight motion, they spin their sticky secretion into cocoons.

Making silk: the cocoons are steamed to kill the pupae and soaked to soften the sticky gum and allow the silk strands to be separated. Several strands are woven to make one silk thread.



Chinoiserie was popular in Europe and America at various times from the 17th century onwards. Chinese factories created a range of Chinese-style designs solely for export.

Silk has special qualities in that it retains warmth, and yet is lightweight and cool and can therefore be worn in comfort both in winter and summer.



China's silk industry is still strong today although a lot of the "silk" that is on display in cheap markets is actually rayon.



The octagonal Song dynasty twin pagodas, Shuang Ta

Shuang Ta

22 Dinghui Si Xiang. **Open** daily. Once part of a temple, these 98-ft (30-m) high twin pagodas date to the early Song era. According to an inscription, they were first built in AD 982 by the students Wang Wenhan and his brother in honor of their teacher, who helped them pass the imperial civil service exams. Twin pagodas are commonly found in India but are a rarer feature of Chinese temples, since pagodas were largely built as single edifices.

Yi Yuan

1265 Renmin Lu. **Tel** (0512) 6524 9317. **Open** 7:30am–4:30pm daily. The Garden of Happiness is one of Suzhou's newer gardens, dating from the late Qing dynasty. It was built by a government official who utilized rocks and landscape designs from other abandoned gardens. The garden appears to have originally covered a larger area; today its central feature is a pool encircled by rockeries and spanned by a zigzag bridge. The best viewpoint is from the Fragrant Lotus Pavilion, while

another pavilion that juts into the pool is known for catching cooling breezes. Look out for the calligraphy by famous scholars and poets.

Silk Embroidery Research Institute

272 Jingde Lu. **Open** daily. Housed in the Huan Xiu (Surrounded by Beauty) Mountain Villa, this institute creates exquisitely fine silk embroidery, work that is mainly done by women. In order to produce the painting-like effect of their designs, the women sometimes work with silk strands that are so fine, they are almost invisible. They specialize in double-sided embroidery – for example, a cat with green eyes on one side and blue on the other.

Wangshi Yuan

11 Kuojia Xiang. **Tel** (0512) 6529 3190. **Open** 7:30am–5:30pm daily. It is said that the Master of the Nets Garden was named after one of its owners – a retired official who wished to become an accomplished fisherman. Dating to 1140, it was

completely remodeled in 1770 and for many people, is the finest of all Suzhou's gardens. Although small, it succeeds, with great subtlety, in introducing every element considered crucial to the classical garden (see pp184–5). It includes a central lake, discreet connecting corridors, pavilions with miniature courtyards, screens, delicate latticework, and above all, points which “frame a view”, as if looking at a perfectly balanced photograph. The best known building is the Pavilion for Watching the Moon, from where the moon can be viewed in a mirror, in the water, and in the sky. Regular performances of Chinese opera, including local *kun ju*, take place here.

Canglang Ting

3 Canglang Ting Jie, Renmin Lu. **Tel** (0512) 6519 4375. **Open** 7:30am–5pm daily (to 4pm mid-Apr–Oct).

The Canglang Ting (Dark Blue Wave Pavilion Garden) – whose name is suggestive of a relaxed and pragmatic approach to life – is perhaps Suzhou's oldest garden, first laid out in 1044 by a scholar, Su Zimei, on the site of an earlier villa. His successor, a general in the imperial army, enlarged it in the 12th century, and it was rebuilt in the 17th century. It is known for its technique of “borrowing a view”, allowing the scenery beyond the garden's confines to play a role in its design. Here, it is achieved by lowering walls on the north side of some of the pavilions, allowing




The Pavilion for Watching the Moon, Wangshi Yuan




Gateway to the Confucian Temple

views across water; elsewhere the southwest hills can be seen. The central feature is a mound that is meant to resemble a wooded hill. Gardens were ideal places for contemplation and writing poetry, clearly visible in the engravings of verses and poems dotting Canglang Ting.

Liu Yuan & Xi Yuan

Liu Yuan 338 Liuyuan Lu. **Tel** (0512) 6533 7903. **Open** 7:30am–5pm daily.  www.gardenly.com.

Xi Yuan Xiyuan Lu. **Tel** (0512) 6534 9545. **Open** 7:30am–5:30pm daily. 


Originally a pair, these two gardens lie near each other to the west of the old moated area. The Liu Yuan (Garden for Lingering in), was restored in 1953, and its four scenic areas are connected by a long corridor. The Xi Yuan (West Garden) once belonged to a devout Buddhist, and is more temple than garden. The Jiechuang Temple, with its tiled roof and red beams, is a fine example of southern-style architecture. Adjoining it is the Hall of Five Hundred Luohan.

Pan Men Scenic Area

See pp218–19.

Confucian Temple


Renmin Lu. **Tel** (0512) 6519 4343.

Open 9am–4:30pm daily. 

The original Song dynasty temple was rebuilt in 1864 after it was destroyed in the Taiping Rebellion (see p428). Its main hall, dating from the Ming dynasty, has several stone carvings including China's oldest surviving city map, depicting Suzhou, or

Pingjiang as it was known in 1229. A star chart dating from 1247 maps the positions of stars and celestial bodies in the heavens. It is one of the earliest surviving maps of its kind.

Tiger Hill

8 Sanmen Nei Lu. **Tel** (0512) 6723 2305. **Open** 7:30am–6:30pm daily. 

In the city's northwest is the popular Tiger Hill (Huqiu Shan), the burial place of He Lu, the King of Wu and founder of Suzhou. His spirit is said to be guarded by a white tiger who appeared three days after his death and refused to leave.


The main attraction is the Song-dynasty leaning pagoda (Yunyan Ta or Cloud Rock Pagoda), built in brick, which leans more than 7-ft (2-m) from the perpendicular at its highest point. Some 10th-century Buddhist *sutras* and a record of the year that it was constructed



Ceremonial urn, Tiger Hill

(959–961) were discovered during one of the attempts to prevent it from falling. The park is quite large, with pools and flowerbeds filled with blooms in spring and early summer. One of the many boulders is split in two, allegedly the result of He Lu's swordsmanship. He is supposedly buried nearby along with 3,000 swords.

Hanshan Si

24 Hanshansi Long. **Tel** (0512) 6723 6213. **Open** 7am–5:15pm daily. 

First constructed in the Liang dynasty, the Cold Mountain Temple was named after a Tang-dynasty poet-monk. A stone rendition of him and his fellow monk, Shi De, is to be seen here. The temple was rebuilt in the 19th century, after it was destroyed during the Taiping Rebellion. Located close to the Grand Canal, it was immortalized by the Tang-

dynasty poet Zhang Ji, who arrived here by boat and anchored nearby. His poem "Anchored at Night by the Maple Bridge" is inscribed on a stone stele, and contains the lines that made Hanshan Si famous: "Beyond Suzhou lies Hanshan Temple; at midnight the

clang of the bell reaches the traveler's boat." The bell alluded to here was subsequently lost, and the temple's current bell was presented by Japan in 1905. Nearby, a beautiful arched bridge offers views along the Grand Canal.



Incense burners in the grounds of Hanshan Si

Pan Men Scenic Area

盘门

Set in the southwest corner of the old city of Suzhou, this once overlooked area has been extensively restored – gone are the pretty canalside shacks – but it still contains some of the city's most interesting historical sights. Pan Men is a unique fortified gate that once controlled access to the city by both land and water. It is said to date back to 1351, although most of the present construction is more recent. Other highlights include the charming Wu Men Bridge and the views of the city and canals from the Ruiguang Pagoda.



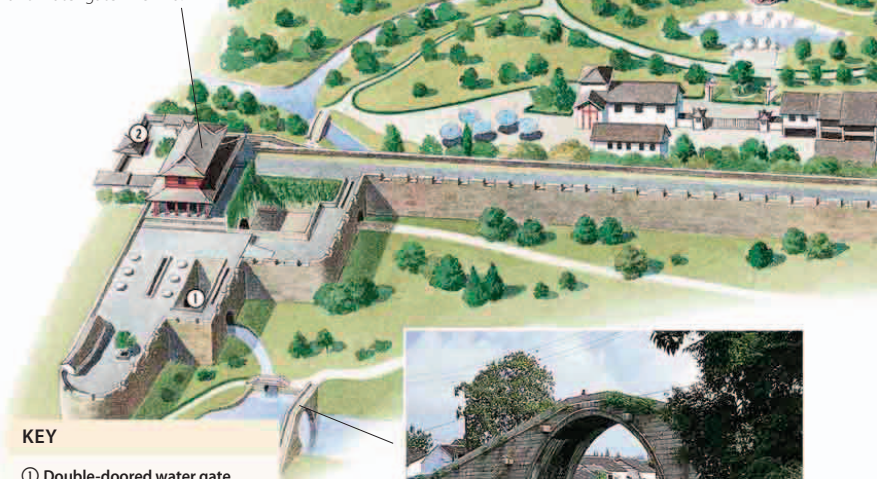
Hall of Attractive Scenery

This three-story pavilion houses a tranquil tea room with views to the platform of the Western Stage in front.



★ Pan Men

This gate and attached section of wall (dating back to 1351) are all that remains of the city's ancient fortifications. It is the only land and water gate in China.



KEY

- ① Double-doored water gate
- ② Wu Zixu's Memorial Temple
- ③ Entrance Gate This is the main entrance to the park. Pay here for access to the park and also a separate fee to climb the pagoda.
- ④ Ornamental pailou or gate
- ⑤ 300-ft (90-m) section of city wall



★ Wu Men Bridge

This graceful bridge spanning the Grand Canal is the tallest in Suzhou and its design dates back to the Song dynasty, although it has since been rebuilt a few times. It has steps built into it and a lovely view from the top.



View from Ruiguang Pagoda

After a climb up narrow stairs, looking down into the heart of Suzhou itself reveals a city dotted with large pockets of green – the beautiful gardens that have made the city so famous.



★ Ruiguang Pagoda

This seven-story, 140-ft (43-m) high pagoda dates back to the Song dynasty. It is constructed of brick with wooden platforms, and has simple Buddhist carvings at its base.



Hall of Four Auspicious Merits

The name of this hall is inspired by Buddhist teachings. At each side of the hall at the end of covered walkways are smaller pavilions, one containing a drum and the other a bell.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

1 Dong Da Lu, SW corner of the city. **Tel** (0512) 6526 0004. **Open** 7:30am–5pm daily. 🗺️ for scenic area (including Pan Men and Wu Men Bridge), separate fee for Ruiguang Pagoda. 📶 📷 📱

Transport

🚶 from the train station.







Houses fronting canals in Zhouzhuang's old town

2 Tongli 同里

16 miles (25 km) SE of Suzhou. 55,000.

A pretty little water town typical of the region, Tongli gives visitors a good idea of what Suzhou must have been like in its heyday. All its houses open out on to a network of canals that are spanned by dozens of stone bridges and are busy with transportation and trading boats. Some of its buildings are open to the public, such as **Jiayin Hall**, the former home of Liu Yazi, an early 20th-century actor renowned for his rather bizarre collection of gauze caps. The other interesting sight is **Tuisi Yuan**, a classical garden dating from the late Qing period.

Tuisi Yuan
Open 7:45am–5:30pm daily.



Sightseeing boats on one of Tongli's numerous canals

3 Zhouzhuang 周庄

50 miles (80 km) W of Shanghai. 32,000. Shanghai, Suzhou. to Tongli. Old Town: tickets from Quangong Lu.

A small town on the Jinghang Canal, which links Suzhou and Shanghai, Zhouzhuang was once a flourishing port, specializing in silk, pottery, and grain. It attracted scholars and officials who built fine bridges and houses between the Yuan and Qing eras. The charming **Old Town** can be explored on foot or via a boat tour on the canals. Among the sights are the Ming-era Hall of Zhang Residence with 70 rooms, and the Hall of Shen's Residence, with 100 rooms connected to the main hall. The Chengxu Temple, located near the museum, is a Song-dynasty Daoist shrine.

4 Wuxi 无锡

25 miles (40 km) NW of Suzhou. 6,400,000. services to Hangzhou & Suzhou. 18 Zhongshan Lu. **Tel** (0510) 8270 0300.

The highlights of a trip to Wuxi are the scenic Tai Hu (Lake Tai) and the Grand Canal, and the lakeside cherry blossoms in spring. According to legend, the town was established 3,500 years ago as the capital of the Wu Kingdom and was a center for the production of tin. When the mines ran dry (Wuxi means "without tin"), the capital moved

west, but Wuxi remained significant due to its location on the Grand Canal. **Xihui Park** in the west of town was established in 1958, and houses the Jichang Yuan garden. At the park's entrance, a path leads to the Dragon Light Pagoda on top of Xi Shan. A cable car connects Xi Shan to nearby Hui Shan. The **Wuxi Museum** has exhibits dating back 6,000 years.

Xihui Park
Huihe Lu. **Open** 6am–6pm daily.

Wuxi Museum
71 Huihe Lu. **Tel** (0510) 8572 7500.
Open 9am–4pm daily.



The scenic cable car ride, Xihui Park, Wuxi

5 Tai Hu 太湖

3 miles (5 km) SW of Wuxi.

One of China's largest lakes, Tai Hu is famous for its rocks, an indispensable feature of a traditional garden (see pp 184–5). The lake's northern shores are fringed with scenic spots including **Mei Yuan** (Plum Garden), spectacular in spring when its 4,000 fruit trees blossom. **Yuantou Zhu** (Turtle Head Promontory) is a favorite with the Chinese, with tea houses and pretty lake views. Nearby, **Sanshan Island** is a former bandit's haunt with temples and tall Buddha statues. However, none is as tall as the 289-ft (88-m) Lingshan Buddha on Ma Shan peninsula, a short bus ride from the other sights. The area also has a handful of lakeside theme parks.

Mei Yuan & Yuantou Zhu
Open 8am–5:30pm daily.

The Grand Canal

The Grand Canal, started in 486 BC, was built in sections over the next one thousand years, with the aim of linking the Yangzi with the Yellow River, and one capital with another. It remains the world's largest man-made waterway. The earliest northern section was built for military reasons but large-scale construction began in the 7th century under the Sui Wen Di emperor, involving over 5 million conscripted males aged between 15 and 55, supervised by a vast and brutal police force. Linking the comparatively populous north with the southern rice-producing region, it reached Beijing only in the 13th century. In the early 20th century, a combination of the altered course of the fickle Yellow River and the rise of the railways saw its gradual demise.



This map shows the route of the 1,112-mile (1,900-km) canal from Beijing to Hangzhou. Crossing the traditional battlefields between north and south, the canal supplied food throughout the empire. The hilly terrain led to the first recorded use of double locks in AD 984.

Key

— Grand Canal



The Sui Yang Di emperor is said to have celebrated the completion of his work by touring the canal with a flotilla of dragon boats hauled by the empire's most beautiful women.



Tourist boats are now the only way to enjoy a journey on the canal as road and rail transport is favored by the locals. Regular tourist boats operate overnight services between Hangzhou and Suzhou or Wuxi, whilst boats can also be chartered for day-trips between the major tourist stops.



Barges splutter their way along the canal laden with agricultural produce and factory supplies. The busiest sections are in the south and north of the Yangzi to the border with Shandong.



The canal banks are lively with people performing domestic tasks. Families, even if they have houses, may live on board the boats when they are working.



Pottery shop selling typical ceramic items, Ding Shan

6 Yixing County 宜兴

70 miles (118 km) W of Suzhou. bus service between Wuxi & Yixing.

The county's main town, Yixing, is a busy transport hub that provides connections to the entire region. This fertile area of canals and farmland is known for its pottery, produced at **Ding Shan** for 3,000 years. Its name *yixing* or "purple sand" is derived from its distinctive deep maroon color. The town's streets are lined with factories and pottery shops, the latter full of items such as traditional little pots in all shapes and sizes. Ding Shan's tourist office also organizes factory visits.

A short journey from town, the **Pottery Exhibition Hall** displays a range of objects, from fine, early Yixingware to the prized miniature teapots. Nearby are the **Karst Caves**, comprising three groups – Zhanggong, Linggu, and Shanjuan. The highlight of

Zhanggong's 72 caves is the Hall of the Sea Dragon King, that can hold several thousand people, while Linggu has an underground waterfall.

Pottery Exhibition Hall
150 Ding Shan Beilu. **Open** daily.

Karst Caves
Open daily.

7 Changzhou 常州

25 miles (40 km) NW of Wuxi.
4,600,000.

Often overlooked, this city on the Grand Canal is worth visiting for its old center, crisscrossed by streets of traditional houses and canals. The two main streets, Bei and Nan Dajie, are lined with shops selling silks and the locally made painted combs. The 7th-century **Tianning Si** has 83 Buddha statues decorating its roof, while the Song-era **Yizhou Pavilion** is associated with the poet Su Dongpo, who stayed here when he visited the city.

8 Zhenjiang 镇江

90 miles (150 km) NW of Suzhou.
3,100,000. 92 Zhongshan
Xi Lu, (0511) 8521 3737.

Attractively set on the banks of the Yangzi River, Zhenjiang's prosperity was linked to the construction of the Grand Canal (see p223). In the 19th century, the city was ceded to foreign powers. The former **Royal Hotel** is a fine example of European pastiche, while the old British Consulate now houses the **Zhenjiang Museum**. Its exhibits include a photograph of the *Amethyst*, the British ship that sailed upriver in 1949 to bring aid to the British in Nanjing. After coming under heavy fire, it ran aground, and was stranded for months. The ship finally made a dash for freedom, and miraculously, managed to rejoin its fleet.

To the museum's west, **Jin Shan Park** is the site of the Jin Shan Temple, founded in the Eastern Jin dynasty, and the Cishou Pagoda, one of a pair built in the Tang era. The climb to the top reveals splendid views of the Yangzi. To the city's northeast lies **Beigu Shan** hill with its beautiful **Lingyun Ting** pagoda. Farther east is **Jiao Shan**, an island famed for its scenery, accessible by cable car or boat. Above the island's fortifications, Xijiang Lou tower offers fine views of the river.

Zhenjiang Museum
85 Boxian Lu. **Open** Tue–Sun.

Jin Shan Park
62 Jinshan Xilu. **Open** daily.



The southern-style Tianning Si (Temple of Heavenly Peace), Changzhou

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85

Calligraphy

Calligraphy raises ordinary Chinese script into a high art form and is traditionally regarded as highly as painting or poetry as a method of self-expression. The beauty of calligraphy may seem hard to appreciate for most visitors who do not read Chinese. Freestyle calligraphy, however, which transforms ordinary characters almost into figurative and abstract paintings, can easily be appreciated for its artistry. The Chinese viewer, taught from a young age the basic sequence of strokes, can mentally trace the characters as they were created by the artists and so experience their spiritual world. As they are limited to the same eight strokes, the artists' individual styles – the variations in stroke weight, angle, and vigor – are easily appreciated. Experts consider the balance and proportional weight of the strokes, the structure of the character and its unity and harmony.

THE FOUR TREASURES

The main tools of the calligrapher are known as "The Four Treasures of the Study" – ink sticks, ink stone, brushes, and paper. Anhui is especially famed for the quality of its ink and brushes.

Ink sticks are made from soot – pine wood or tung oil – mixed with glue and even spices. Inks are usually black although colors are available.



Each character is made up of eight types of stroke performed in a set order.



The seal is carefully positioned on the page. The cinnabar ink stamp may be the name of the artist or some poetry.



Thinner dashes look less crowded



The ink stone is used to grind the ink stick with the right amount of water. A thick ink is glossy and strong, while thin ink can be lively or subtle.

Graceful downstroke to the left

Finely tapered hook stroke



Brush rests were used to hold other brushes or so the artist could put down his brush and contemplate.

Paper, invented around

AD 100, was made from mulberry or bamboo fibers. Much cheaper than the silk it replaced, paper is classed by its weight, as this affects how fast it absorbs the ink.



Brushes permitted greater freedom for expression than engraving bone or stone (see p32) and led to more fluid scripts. Supposedly made from many varieties of fur, the tip should be round yet pointed, even and strong.



Practice is crucial. The hand must always know what it is about to do; there is no room for indecision. There are three levels of practice – tracing, copying and working from memory. Each step up allows the artist to add more individuality.



9 Yangzhou

扬州

One of the Yangzi River delta's great cities, Yangzhou has always been known for its prosperity, culture, and cuisine. Its location on the Grand Canal dictated the rise and fall of its fortunes. The city declined with the fall of the Song dynasty and the diminished use of the canal, but revived again in the Ming era, when the canal was restored and used to transport silk, rice, and salt. The salt merchants in particular built elegant villas and gardens, especially in the 18th century when Yangzhou was part of the imperial inspection tours. Despite development, the city has much to offer, including its several gardens.



A colorful fruit stall on Dong Guan Jie

📍 Daming Si

8 Pingshan Tang Lu. **Open** 8am–5:30pm daily. 📍

Sitting atop a hill, the Temple of Abundant Light dates to the 5th century AD, but was rebuilt after being destroyed in the Taiping Rebellion (see p428). The central **Jian Zhen Hall** was erected in 1973 in honor of the monk, Jian Zhen, who traveled to Japan in 753. Credited with introducing many aspects of Chinese culture to Japan, he is revered by the Japanese, who funded the main hall's construction, and modeled it on the Toshodai Temple in Nara, Japan. Nearby is a natural spring with an adjoining teahouse.

🏛️ Hanlingyuan Museum

Xiangbie Lu. **Open** 8am–5pm. 📍

The magnificent Western Han tomb of Liu Xu, ruler of the Guangling Kingdom, is five levels deep. Its second air-tight layer comprises 840 *nanmu* (cedar) bricks joined by hooks. The third level housed the warehouse, the fourth level the

king's living quarters, and the fifth level, a coffin on wheels. The tomb was equipped with every imaginable luxury, including a bathroom.

📍 Shou Xi Hu

28 Da Hongqiao Lu. **Open** 7:30am–6pm daily. 📍 www.shouxihu.com

Yangzhou's most popular sight, the Thin West Lake is a slim version of Hangzhou's famous West Lake (see pp248–9). It winds through a park filled with willow trees, pavilions, and

bridges. The handsome **Wuting Qiao** (Five Pavilion Bridge) is its most famous structure, built by a salt merchant in 1757 to honor the Qianlong emperor's visit to Yangzhou. To the west is Ershisi Qiao (Twenty-Four Bridge), so called because it has 24 steps and 24 posts and is 24 meters (78 ft) long. **Bai Ta** (White Dagoba) is a Tibetan-style stupa, modeled on the one in Beijing's Beihai Park (see p96). In the Xu Garden, the **Listening to Orioles Pavilion** has fine woodwork, while the **Pinyuan Lou** offers views that supposedly demonstrate the rules of perspective as compiled by the Song artist, Guo Xi. East of the lake, the Imperial Jetty is where Qianlong's barge was moored.

🏛️ Yangzhou Museum

Wenchang Xi Lu. **Tel** (0514) 8522 8018.

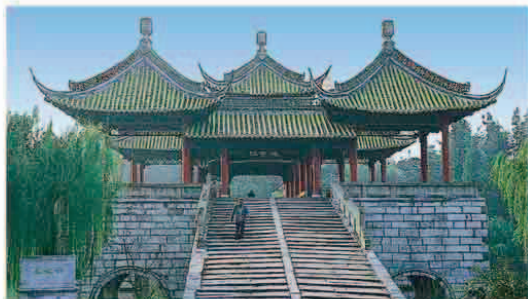
Open 9am–4pm Tue–Sun.

Housed in a newly built complex on the western side of Mingyue Lake, Yangzhou Museum contains some splendid items, including an ancient boat salvaged from the Grand Canal, and a large collection of unusual woodblock prints.

📍 Ge Yuan

10 Yanfu Dong Lu. **Open** 7:15am–5:45pm daily. 📍


Yangzhou's most famous garden, Ge Yuan was once owned by the painter Shi Tao, and later by a salt merchant. Its name derives from the leaves of its bamboo plants, that resemble the character "ge" meaning "self". Its central feature is its rockeries, but it also has some fine pavilions.



Wuting Qiao (Five Pavilion Bridge), Shou Xi Hu Gongyuan

Wang Shi Xiao Yuan

14 Dongquan Men Lishi Jiequ.

Open 8am–5pm daily. 

Located on a street of historic homes including that of former president Jiang Zemin, the grand Wang Shi Xiao Yuan was the residence of a wealthy salt merchant. Dating to the Qing era, it has nearly 100 rooms. The interior is lavishly furnished, and its main Spring Hall contains a German chandelier and marble wall panels.

Garden Tomb of Puhaddin

17 Jiefang Nan Lu.

Open 8am–5pm daily.


Said to be the 16th descendant of the Prophet Mohammed, Puhaddin was a teacher who lived in Yangzhou until his death in 1275. His grave is enclosed in a building filled with inscriptions from the holy Koran. Other noted Muslim figures from the Song and Ming eras are buried nearby. Puhaddin also built the tiny **Xianhe Mosque**, located southwest on Ganquan Road. Its wall is covered in arabesques, a legacy of the Persian traders who once frequented the city.



The Tang-dynasty Shi Ta or Stone Pagoda

He Yuan

66 Xuning Men Jie.



Open 7:30am–5pm daily. 

This small garden creates an illusion of space and depth by the clever arrangement of its features, including shrubs, trees, and a walkway. Named after one of its 19th-century owners, it is divided in two, with some pavilions decorated in southern-style lattice work, although

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

37 miles (60 km) NE of Nanjing.

 4,500,000.  1 Fengle Shang Jie, (0514) 8582 7888.

Transport

 East Bus Station, West Bus Station.

northern influences prevail in its overall layout and style. A few teahouses also dot the garden.

Wenchang Ge

The round Wenchang Ge (Promoting Literature Pavilion) is all that remains of the old Confucian Academy. Founded by the first Ming emperor, Hongwu, who believed in education for all, the academy originally had two pavilions. To the north, the **Si Wang Ting** (Pavilion of the Four Views) was a part of the Ming-era Provincial College, and was used as an observatory. Lying west of Wenchang Ge, the Tang-dynasty **Shi Ta** (Stone Pagoda) was once part of a temple located outside the city walls. It was moved here in the Song era.

Yangzhou City Center

- ① Daming Si
- ② Hanlingyuan Museum
- ③ Shou Xi Hu
- ④ Yangzhou Museum
- ⑤ Ge Yuan
- ⑥ Wang Shi Xiao Yuan
- ⑦ Garden Tomb of Puhaddin
- ⑧ Xianhe Mosque
- ⑨ He Yuan
- ⑩ Wenchang Ge
- ⑪ Si Wang Ting
- ⑫ Shi Ta



0 km 1
0 miles 1



Key to Symbols see back flap

10 Nanjing

南京

Of all China's great cities, Nanjing or Nanking, as it was once known, is the most attractive. The capital of Jiangsu province, it is picturesquely set on the banks of the Yangzi, close to the magnificent Purple Mountain. This city of lakes is still enclosed within its grand city wall, and its streets are shaded by plane trees. Meaning "southern capital," it was the capital of several regional kingdoms up to AD 220. Later, it was China's capital under the early Ming. It was also the capital of the 19th-century Taiping Heavenly Kingdom and the first Chinese Republic under Dr. Sun Yat-sen. Today, Nanjing is a fast developing city, with good restaurants and a lively nightlife.



Garden and pavilions at the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom History Museum

Exploring Nanjing

Although the medieval city walls give the impression that Nanjing is a small city, it is in fact fairly spread out. A lot of ground can be covered on foot, but visitors will also need to use the city's local transport, either the metro system, the comprehensive bus service or one of the reasonably priced taxis.

Zhonghua Gate
See pp230–31.

Taiping Heavenly Kingdom History Museum

128 Zhanyuan Rd. **Tel** (025) 5220 1849. **Open** 8:30am–5pm daily. This museum commemorates the anti-dynastic Taiping Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion of 1851–64 (see p428). The building was used by one of the rebellion's leaders, or Heavenly Princes, while one section – the Zhan Yuan or Viewing Garden – originally belonged to the first

Ming emperor, Hongwu. Today, the renovated halls are filled with memorabilia and photographs relating to the rebellion, which overran large parts of China. After the rebels claimed Nanjing as their base, they came very close to toppling the Qing dynasty in Beijing, but were eventually defeated by the Qing

army under Western leadership in 1864. On display are weapons and uniforms, samples of Taiping currency, and documents explaining the Heavenly ideology, which aimed to change China's feudalistic society into one based on equality. Their aims included the modernization of the education system that was still based on Confucian classics, the redistribution of land, and equality of the sexes.

Bailuzhou Park
Open daily.

The White Egret Park was once the property of the Ming general Xu Da, and subsequently became the Chinese quarter during the centuries of Manchu rule. The pavilions were all destroyed during the Taiping Rebellion but the park was restored in 1951, and the area still abounds in traditional houses.

Fuzi Miao
Gongyuan Rd. **Tel** (025) 8662 8639.
Open 9am–10pm daily.

The origins of Fuzi Miao (Temple of Confucius) go back to AD 1034, while the current buildings date to the late 19th century, with later additions. The temple was the seat of Confucian study for more than 1,500 years. Its halls feature a small exhibition of folk arts. The surrounding streets are flanked by houses with long upturned eaves and whitewashed walls – many of which are being restored in typical southern style. Nearby, the attractive canal bank has plenty of boats that ply the short distance to Zhonghua Gate.



The distinctive double-eaved main hall of the Fuzi Miao

Chaotian Gong

Mochou Rd. **Tel** (025) 8446 6460.

Open 8am–4pm daily.

The substantial Chaotian Gong (Heaven-Facing Palace) was once a place of ancestor worship, a seat of learning, and a Confucian temple. Its mid-19th-century buildings such as halls, towers, and walkways, stand on an ancient temple site dating to AD 390. It now houses the Municipal Museum, displaying Shang bronzes and fragments of the legendary porcelain pagoda, destroyed in the Taiping Rebellion. The pagoda was built in the 15th century by the Ming Yongle emperor to honor his mother, and was covered in glazed white bricks. The attractive museum is a quiet place to learn more about Nanjing's fascinating history.

Nearby along Tangzi Jie, house No. 74 has colorful paintings dating to the Taiping occupation that were discovered in 1952. The house was occupied by a follower of the Taiping Eastern Prince,



Detail from the Sun Yat Sen Hall, Tianchao Gong

Yang Xiuqing. The paintings – of animals and birds – are more interesting for their historical associations than for their deft execution.

Tianchao Gong & Xu Yuan

292 Changjiang Rd. **Tel** (025) 8457

8700. **Open** 7:30am–5:30pm daily.

The Tianchao Gong (Presidential Palace), together with the surrounding classical Xu Yuan Garden (Balmy Garden), were originally built by a Ming prince. Under the Qing dynasty, it

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

125 miles (200 km) NW of Shanghai. **A** 8,100,000. **i** 202/1 Zhongshan Bei Rd, (025) 8342 8999

Transport

✈ Main Train Station, South Train Station, West Train Station.
🚇 Zhongyang Men Station, Hanfu Jie Station, CAAC (buses to airport), East Bus Station. **🚌** to Shanghai, Wuhan & Chongqing.

became the seat of provincial government until 1853, when it was seized by the leader of the Taiping Rebellion, Hong Xiuquan, as his headquarters. Finally, after the overthrow of the Qing empire, the palace housed the Republican Government, from where both Dr. Sun Yat-sen and Chiang Kai-shek ruled China. Inside, there is an exhibition devoted to the Taiping Rebellion and to Dr. Sun Yat-sen. The surrounding Xu Yuan Garden is a popular weekend spot with the locals.

Nanjing City Center

- ① Zhonghua Gate
- ② Taiping Heavenly Kingdom History Museum
- ③ Bailuzhou Park
- ④ Fuzi Miao
- ⑤ Chaotian Gong
- ⑥ Tianchao Gong & Xu Yuan
- ⑦ Meiyuan Xincun
- ⑧ Ming Palace Ruins
- ⑨ Nanjing Museum
- ⑩ Xuanwu Lake
- ⑪ Drum & Bell Towers
- ⑫ Nanjing Yangzi River Bridge
- ⑬ Mochou Lake
- ⑭ Memorial to the Nanjing Massacre

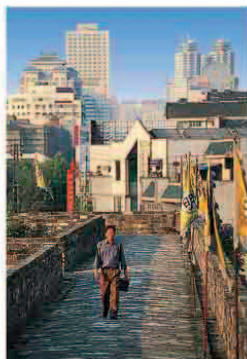


Key to Symbols see back flap

Zhonghua Gate

中华门

Built under the orders of the first Ming emperor, Hongwu, from 1368–86, the walls surrounding the capital were the most extensive in the world at the time. The 40-ft (12-m) high walls snaked 20 miles (33 km) around the city's natural contours. Given that the city was elsewhere protected by river and mountain, Zhonghua Gate was a key element in Nanjing's southern defences. Its walls were cemented by a super-strong mortar made with glutinous rice. Certainly the Emperor's show of defense was effective – no enemy attempted to breach the walls via Zhonghua Gate. Today the gate's impressive remains are open to visitors and an interesting museum has been built into the battlements.



Nanjing from the city wall adjacent to Zhonghua Gate

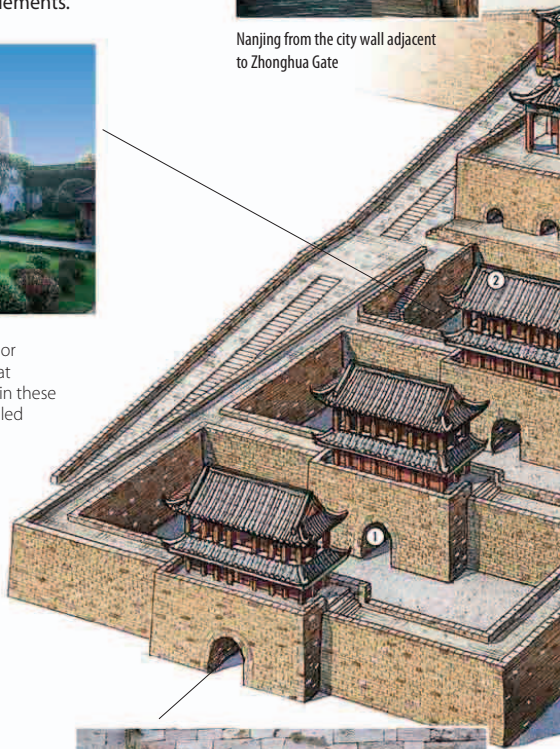


★ Inner Citadels

Behind the main gate are three courtyards or citadels. During an attack, enemy forces that breached the main gate could be trapped in these courtyards. The cavities in the walls concealed soldiers waiting in ambush.

Reconstruction of Zhonghua Gate

The main gate tower sat adjacent to the top of the wall, with the rest of the citadel protruding into the city. Today, only the brick walls remain – none of the gatehouses has survived.



KEY

- ① **Portcullises** blocked passage through the gateways. The grooves are still visible.
- ② **Four gatehouses**, sitting above each arched gateway, contained armaments and supplies.
- ③ **Decorative wen**
- ④ **The main gate tower** acted as the first line of defense, providing protection from enemy fire and a lookout point.



★ Arched Gateways

Four arched tunnels, each as long as 174 feet (53 m), run through the battlements. Each gate had massive double doors and a portcullis.



★ Signed Bricks

Numerous bricks are stamped with the name of the kiln where they were fired and even the name of the brickmaker himself, together with the date of manufacture.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Zhonghua Rd. **Open** 8:30am–8:30pm daily.

Transport

16 from city center.

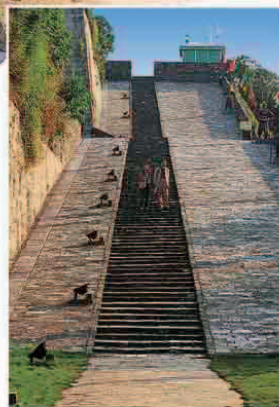
Statue of Soldier

Statues wearing replica Ming-era uniforms are scattered strategically about the battlements.



Ramp

The wide ramps, which run up each side of the gate to the top of the city wall, allowed soldiers and horses quick access to the ramparts.



Nanjing's City Walls

Originally 20 miles (33 km) long, much of the wall, about 75 percent, remains. The most impressive sections are near the refurbished Xuanwu Gate in the north and the long strip in the east. Parts, but not all, of the existing wall can be walked along.


- ① Xuanwu Gate
- ② Taiping Gate
- ③ Zhongshan Gate
- ④ Zhonghua Gate

0 km 1
0 miles 1

Key

- Existing wall
- Path of destroyed wall

Meiyuan Xincun

Open 9am–4:30pm daily. 

The former Chinese Communist Party office was headed in 1946–47 by Zhou Enlai (see p256), who lived here during negotiations with the Kuomintang after the Japanese surrender. The restored building houses a museum commemorating these events.

Ming Palace Ruins

Zhongshan Donglu. **Open** daily.


The old Ming Palace (Ming Gugong) was built in the 14th century for the first Ming emperor, Hongwu, who made Nanjing his capital. Within a century of its construction, this splendid palace was severely damaged by two fires. Later, the Manchus and then the Taiping soldiers completed its destruction. All that remains are ten marble bridges, the old Wu Men or Meridian Gate, and a large number of pillar bases

worth examining for their finely sculptured details. The pillars also give an idea of the layout of the palace buildings. Along its main axis, the palace would have had three major courtyards enclosed by enormous halls raised on platforms. These were flanked on either side by altars and temples. Beijing's Forbidden City (see pp92–5) is a larger version of this palace complex. The grounds have plenty of trees, which offer shade in the summer months.



**Sculptural detail,
Ming Palace Ruins**

Nanjing Museum

4 Chaotiangong Rd. **Tel** (025) 8480 2119. **Open** 8am–4:30pm daily. 

Nanjing Museum, founded in 1933, is one of China's better museums and definitely worth a visit. Its highlights include some wonderful ornate sedan chairs, bronzes from the Zhou dynasty, and model trading ships. The collection of jade and

lacquerware includes a jade burial suit consisting of rectangles of jade sewn together with silver thread, dating from the Eastern Han dynasty. Also on display are bricks from the city wall, pictures of the old city, and relics from the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion. Many of the exhibits are captioned in English, which makes the museum even more interesting.

Purple Mountain

See pp234–5.



Xuanwu Lake, with the city's skyscrapers in the background

Xuanwu Lake

Xuanwu Park.

Open 7am–6:30pm daily.

In the northeast corner of the city an especially fine stretch of the Ming city walls skirts the western shore of the enormous Xuanwu Lake, situated in Xuanwu Park. At well over 1 mile (2.5 km) long, the lake was an important water source for the city, as well as a popular imperial resort for many centuries. During the Song dynasty, it was also used for naval exercises. The park was opened to the public after the fall of the Qing dynasty in 1911.

Xuanwu Lake has five small islands named after the five continents, which are linked by bridges and causeways. They offer a variety of entertainment options with teahouses, restaurants, pavilions, boats of various types, an open-air theater, and even a small zoo. The most scenic is Yingzhou Island, delightfully laid out with lily pads, trees, and flowers. Although the park can get crowded, especially on weekends, it is a charming place to relax. The most convenient entrance is through the triple-arched Xuanwu Gate in the old city wall on Zhongyang Road.

Drum & Bell Towers

Open daily.

The much-restored Drum Tower dates back over 600 years to 1382, and is fronted by a traditional gateway. It was built to house several drums that were beaten through the night to mark the change of the



Marble pillar bases mark the layout of the palace, Ming Palace Ruins

watch, and occasionally to sound alarms. Today, only one large drum remains. The tower also houses a collection of amateur paintings, and a part of it has been converted into a teahouse. A short distance to the northeast is the Bell Tower (Dazhong Ting), constructed during the Ming dynasty and rebuilt in 1889. The huge bronze bell, cast in 1388, is one of the largest in China.

The area surrounding the towers was the administrative center of the old city. It is now a busy place, full of offices and heavy traffic.



Daqiao Gongyuan (Bridge Park) with Nanjing Yangtze River Bridge in background

Nanjing Yangtze River Bridge

Daqiao Nanlu. **Tel** (025) 5878 5703.

Elevator Open daily. 

This piece of engineering, completed in 1968, is one of the great achievements of the Chinese Communists, who took over the project after the

Nanjing Massacre

The Nanjing Massacre, or the Rape of Nanking as it is also known, is still an object of friction between the Chinese and the Japanese. In 1937, when the invading Japanese army succeeded in capturing Nanjing, a large number of civilians stayed behind instead of fleeing, following an appeal made by the Chinese government. While the government fled, the occupying army proceeded to carry out a brutal campaign of murder, pillage, and rape on the civilian population. It is thought that up to 400,000 people were killed in the incident. After Japan's surrender in 1945, the government returned to Nanjing and the city regained its status as the capital of China until the Communists shifted the capital back to Beijing in 1949.



Monument to the Nanjing Massacre

Russians marched out in 1960.

According to the official Chinese version, the bridge was built from scratch, as the Russians took the original plans with them when they left. The double-decker bridge, designed for road traffic as well as trains, is almost a mile (1.5 km) long, and is one of the longest in China. Before it was built, ferries used to carry entire trains across the river, one carriage at a time. An elevator takes visitors to the top of one of the towers, from where there are excellent views across the river. Also worth noting are the Soviet-style sculptures that decorate the bridge. The best approach to the bridge is through the Daqiao Gongyuan (Bridge Park).

Mochou Lake

Open 5:30am–9:30pm daily. 

Just outside the city wall in western Nanjing, Mochou Lake (Mochou Hu) is named after the legendary heroine, Mochou. Her name, meaning "Without Sorrow", was bestowed because her singing was so sweet that it banished all sorrow.

Surrounding the lake, Mochou Lake Park is especially pretty when the lotus flowers on the water are in full bloom. An open-air stage and a teahouse lie along the water's edge. The **Square Pavilion** contains a statue of Mochou in a pond, while the **Winning Chess Pavilion** next door was where the first Ming emperor, Hongwu, played chess with his general.



Square Pavilion with a statue of the legendary maiden Mochou, Mochou Lake Park

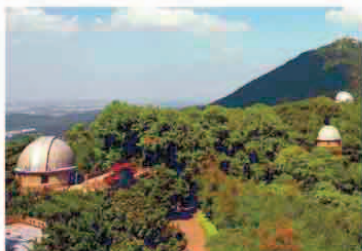
Purple Mountain

紫金山

Overlooking the city, Zijin Shan, or the Purple Mountain, is said to take its name from the color of the rocks. It is a picturesque area of gentle hills shaded by woodland and bamboo groves, dotted with villas. It also contains several of the most important points of interest in Nanjing such as the Mausoleum of Dr. Sun Yat-sen, Ming Xiao Ling, and the Linggu Temple complex. Seeing everything will take a whole day and, although there are food stalls around, visitors are advised to take along a picnic. The energetic can make the long climb to the summit for splendid views over the city; alternatively you can take a cable car from outside the eastern wall.



Statue of Sun Yat-sen, "Father of Modern China," in his mausoleum



Purple Mountain Observatory

Alongside more modern equipment, the observatory houses a display of bronze instruments that date back to the 15th century. However, similar pieces were used by the Chinese as long as 3,000 years ago.

Key

— Road

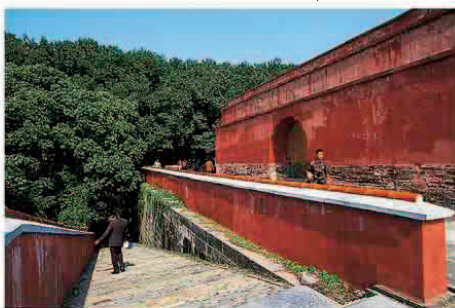


KEY

- ① **The cable car** goes to the summit in two stages and is recommended for the views.
- ② **The Music Stage** was built in 1933 as part of Sun Yat-sen's mausoleum.

★ Ming Xiao Ling

This tomb was completed in 1405 for the first Ming emperor, Hongwu, and his wife. Although much of it was destroyed in the Taiping Rebellion (see p428), enough remains to give a sense of the grandeur of the original.



Museum of Dr. Sun Yat-sen

Set in a pretty building this museum is often overlooked by visitors. Four floors of exhibits chronicle Sun Yat-sen's life with paintings, photographs, and personal effects.



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Jiangsu Province, 2 miles (3 km) E of Nanjing. Purple Mountain: **Open** Apr–Nov: 6:30am–6:30pm daily; Dec–Mar: 7am–6pm daily. Ming Xiao Ling Museum: **Open** 6:30am–6:30pm daily.

Transport

from the train station. There is a shuttle service in the park.

Linggu Pagoda

Built in 1929, this 199-ft (61-m) high pagoda was designed by an American, Henry Murphy, at the behest of Chiang Kai-shek, in memory of the soldiers killed in the 1911 revolution (see pp68–9).

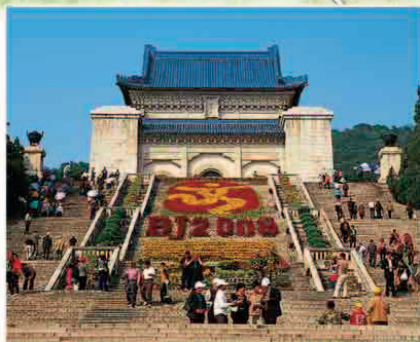


★ Linggu Temple & Beamless Hall

Originally founded in AD 514 the temple was moved here by Ming emperor Hongwu to make room for his tomb. It is most notable for the beamless hall, built in 1381 without using any wood in the construction.

★ Mausoleum of Dr. Sun Yat-sen

Despite the use of blue tiles, instead of the emperor's yellow ones, this grand mausoleum has imperial resonances. Completed in 1929, the blue and white colors represent the Nationalist Party.



Exploring the Purple Mountain

Also known as Zhongshan Mountain, after Sun Yat-sen's Mandarin name, the Purple Mountain (Zijin Shan) is best explored by starting from the easternmost site at the Linggu Temple and slowly working your way west back to the city. To fully explore the area requires a long day, but if time is scarce, half a day will do for visiting Sun Yat Sen's Mausoleum, the most popular site on the mountain, and one other. However, it is also pleasant just to get away from everybody else and wander the network of shady woodland paths that crisscross the hillside, and to visit the many smaller visitor attractions.



Lake beside the Linggu Temple at the foot of the Purple Mountain

Linggu Temple, Beamless Hall, and Pagoda

The Linggu Temple was originally sited where the Ming emperor Hongwu wanted to build his tomb (Ming Xiao Ling), and so he had it moved to this site. The only original building that remains is the Beamless Hall. Built in 1381, it is a brick vaulted edifice constructed without any wooden beams. This was supposed to be the solution to a timber shortage, but, with few exceptions, it failed to be adopted. The nearby Linggu Pagoda was erected in memory of those soldiers who lost their lives in the 1911 revolution. It is inscribed in the handwriting of Chiang Kai-shek saying "repaying the country with extreme loyalty." The building is meant to combine the future and the past in that it is an old style of building – a pagoda; but constructed using modern materials – reinforced concrete.

From the top, there is a great view of the thick green leafy carpet that cloaks the mountain.



Stone sculpture from the Xiao Ling sacred way

Sun Yat-sen's Museum

Slightly off the tourist trail, this museum is inside a beautiful building that once held a Buddhist library. The collection of paintings, black and white photos and artifacts chronicles in detail the life of the "father of the people." The top two floors have captions in English. The Buddhist library of *sutras* is now housed in a separate building out the back.

Sun Yat-sen's Mausoleum (Zhongshan Ling)

The revolutionary leader died in 1925 and a competition was held to design his tomb. The winner was Y.C. Lu, a graduate of Cornell University School of Architecture. The tomb is approached up a typically long marble stairway of 392 steps and comprises a square hall

with a lifesize marble statue of the man leading to a round, domed building that contains his sarcophagus inset in the floor. There are other memorials in the area such as the **Music Stage**, an auditorium popular with picnicking visitors and the Guanghua Pavilion.

Xiao Ling Tomb

Although much of it is derelict, the site is mainly of interest as the first of the Ming Tombs.

The sacred way, an avenue of stone statues of pairs of animals and officials, some sitting, some standing on duty is also impressive. Unusually it does

not run south to north but winds its way up the hillside. South of the tomb lies the scenic area of **Plum Blossom Hill**, especially pretty in spring when the trees bloom pink. To the west lie the **Botanical Gardens**, a huge area with colourful planting, lawns, hills, and lakes. Nearby lies the **Tomb of Liao Zhongkai** (assassinated in Guangzhou in 1925) and his wife He Xiangning, prominent Nationalists who followed Sun Yat-sen.

Observatory

Built in the 1930s, the observatory is slightly run down these days. The main point of interest for the casual visitor is the small collection of copies of bronze Ming and Qing astronomical instruments.



Approach to the tomb of the first Ming emperor, Hongwu



Memorial to the 300,000 victims of the Nanjing Massacre

Memorial to the Nanjing Massacre

418 Shuiximen Rd. **Tel** (025) 8661 2230. **Open** 8:30am–4:30pm Tue–Sun.

A short distance west of Mochou Park, this site recalls the Japanese atrocities, known as the Nanjing Massacre (see p233), that took place during the city's occupation in World War II. In the garden, shards of bone and piles of skulls are grim mementoes.

Amid a photographic chronicle of the events, one room focuses on the post-war reconciliation between the two nations.




Martyrs' Memorial, Yuhuatai

Around Nanjing

There are plenty of interesting sites around Nanjing that are worth seeing along with the Purple Mountain. All can easily be reached by taxi or in the case of Qixia Si, by bus.

Yuhuatai

215 Yuhua Rd. **Tel** (025) 5241 1523.

Open 8am–5:30pm daily. 

According to legend, Yuhuatai, south of Zhonghua Gate, is where a 5th-century monk gave a sermon that was so moving that flowers rained down from the sky. Chinese visitors still collect the colored pebbles that are found here. Sadly, the park became an execution ground during the Chinese Revolution (1927–49), and thousands lost their lives here. The **Martyrs' Memorial** consists of nine gigantic, 98-ft (30-m) high figures in typical Soviet realist style. Behind it is a pagoda, from where there are good views across the city.

King of Borneo's Tomb

Off Ning Dan Gong Rd. Over 1 mile (2 km) NW of Yuhuatai. **Open** daily.



Situated close to Yuhuatai, the King of Borneo's Tomb was discovered as recently as 1958. The rulers of Borneo had been sending tribute to China since AD 977. In the mid-14th century, the first Ming emperor, Hongwu, greatly expanded the existing tribute system, whereby foreign

nations paid "tribute" to China in the form of gifts and precious goods. He sent envoys to all of China's tributary states including Borneo, to

ensure that this economic exchange

continued. The King of Borneo arrived in Nanjing in 1408, but died during his stay. His tomb is marked with a tortoise stele, and, similar to other tombs of the period, a sacred pathway with statues on either side. The site is not clearly signposted, so it is advisable to have the tomb's name written in Chinese in order to ask for directions.

Qixia Si & Thousand Buddha Cliffs

Qixia Shan. 9 miles (15 km) NE of Nanjing.  bus from opposite the railway station, 1 hr. **Tel** (025) 8576 6328. **Open** 7am–5:30pm daily. 

One of the largest Buddhist seminaries in the country, Qixia Si was originally founded in AD 483, but the current building dates from 1908, at the end of the Qing dynasty. It consists of two principal temple halls; one has walls that are extensively

covered with flying *apsaras* (celestial maidens), while the other houses a statue of an upright Vairocana Buddha, known as the Cosmic Buddha who is the embodiment of Truth and Knowledge. To the east stands an octagonal stone pagoda built in AD 601, which bears carvings of scenes from the life of the Buddha.

Behind the halls are the **Thousand Buddha Cliffs**. These are in fact just over 500 Buddha statues carved into the cliff face, but "thousand" is often used in China to denote "many." The earliest statues date to the 5th century Qi dynasty, while most were carved during the Song and Tang dynasties. Some statues were badly defaced during the bloody Taiping Rebellion (see p428) and again during the Cultural Revolution (see pp70–71), but enough remain to make the visit worthwhile. Visitors can spend a few enjoyable hours walking in the woods behind the cliffs.



Octagonal stone pagoda with carvings of the Buddha's life, Qixia Si

Traditional Medicine

Medicine in China dates back some 4,000 years and evolved as a result of the search for the elixir of life, research in which many emperors took a keen interest. Over the centuries an approach was adopted that would today be called holistic – the importance of diet, emotional health, and environment was emphasized. Today, treatment is still founded on the use of herbs, diet and acupuncture. Daoist philosophy is an integral ingredient, the most notable aspect being *qi* (see pp38–9), the vital force of living things. *Qi* gives rise to the opposite and interdependent forces of *yin* and *yang*, signified in the universe and body by wet and dry, cold and heat, etc. Unlike western medicine, where an outside force, such as bacteria or a virus, is assumed to cause disease, in Chinese medicine a medical problem is caused by a *yin-yang* imbalance within the patient. When *yin* and *yang* are out of balance, the flow of *qi* has been depleted or blocked; Chinese medical practitioners seek to return the balance.

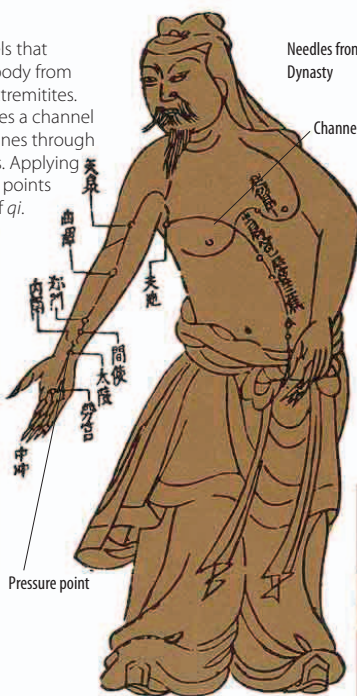
10th-Century Channel Chart

Qi flows through channels that radiate throughout the body from the vital organs to the extremities. This chart clearly illustrates a channel that runs from the intestines through the arm to the finger tips. Applying pressure to the specified points will moderate the flow of *qi*.



The Bencao Gangmu, a pharmacopeia of medicine listing all known diseases and their treatments, was compiled by the naturalist Li Shizhen during the 12th century.

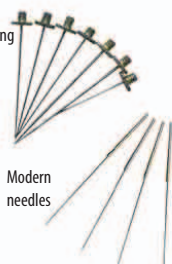
A mixture of herbs, fungus, roots, bark, and sometimes dried animal products, such as ground antler, are carefully combined and dispensed to the patient who boils the ingredients to make a powerful decoction.



Pressure point

Needles from Qing Dynasty

Channel



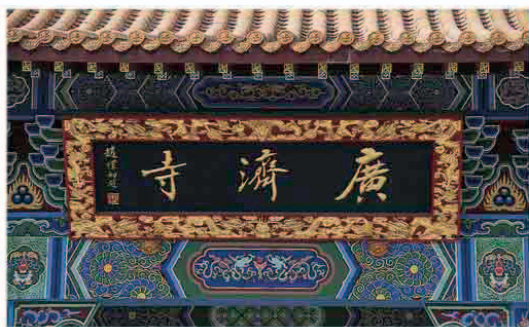
Modern needles

Acupuncture needles are inserted just below the skin at pressure points, also called men or gates, along the channels. Acupuncture has even proved an effective anesthetic.



Moxibustion, used in chronic cases, involves burning artemisia leaves to heat up the pressure points. The heat is conveyed by needles, but the moxa is sometimes held so close to the skin that it singes.





Plaque over the beautifully decorated entrance to the Guangji Si, Wuhu

11 Bozhou

亳州

155 miles (250 km) NW of Hefei.



Bozhou's medicinal market – the largest of its kind in the world – attracts over 50,000 traders from China and Southeast Asia. Every conceivable plant, insect, and animal limb, in whole and powdered form, can be found in its halls.

Also of interest is the 17th-century **Flower Theater** with wood and brick carvings and painted friezes around the stage. The town's museum exhibits a Han-dynasty jade burial suit of the father of Cao Cao, the Three Kingdoms warlord, who built the **Underground Tunnel** to conceal the army, if attacked.

Medicinal Market

Zhongyao Shiyang. **Open** Mon–Fri.

Underground Tunnel

Caocao Yunbingdao. **Open** daily. 🗺️

12 Hefei

合肥

93 miles (150 km) W of Nanjing. 🚗

🚗 🚗 🚗 153 Meishan Lu. Tel (0551) 6284 3825.

Anhui's provincial capital grew into a flourishing industrial center after 1949, when the new Communist government supported the growth of industry in areas that had been previously impoverished. Although not of very great interest, visitors are likely to pass through this town

while exploring the province. The **Provincial Museum** has some interesting exhibits including bricks from Han-dynasty tombs, a cranium belonging to *Homo erectus* discovered in Anhui, and an exhibition on the "Four Treasures of the Study" (see p225), mainly ink sticks, ink stones, brushes, and paper, for which the province is known. Baohe Park, set around a pretty tree flanked by a lake, has a **Memorial Hall** devoted to the great Song dynasty administrator, Lord Bao. The 16th-century **Mingjiao Si** temple stands 16 ft (5 m) above the ground, while nearby **Xiaoyaojin Park** has a 3rd-century well and is a good place for walks.



Li Bai's Tomb, Caishiji

Provincial Museum

268 Huaining Lu. **Open** Tue–Sun.

Lord Bao Memorial Hall

58 Wuhu Lu. **Open** 8am–5:30pm daily.



Mingjiao Si

Huaihe Lu. **Open** daily. 🗺️

13 Wuhu

芜湖

78 miles (125 km) SE of Hefei. 🚗 🚗

The province's main ferry port has little to offer, and its few sights include the **Guangji Si** on Zhe Shan, founded in AD 894, and the nearby **Zhe Ta** (Ocher Pagoda), from where there are views over the town. Some streets in the town's center are lined with old houses with thatched roofs and mud walls, and make for a pleasant stroll. Wuhu is also a good base for visiting **Li Bai's Tomb** at Caishiji, 4 miles (7 km) from Ma'an Shan, the first stop south of Wuhu on the railway line. Li Bai (AD 701–762), a Tang-dynasty poet, was a famous drunk and is said to have died drowning in the moon's reflection. His tomb stands at the top of a long series of steps behind a Qing-dynasty temple, and overlooks the Yangzi. It may only contain

Li Bai's clothes, as his final resting place is still the subject of debate.

Li Bai's Tomb

Caishiji. 🚗 to Ma'an Shan, then bus or taxi. **Open** daily.

Environs: Located 37 miles (60 km) southeast of Wuhu, **Xuancheng** is

the site of the Alligator Breeding Center, which has successfully increased the population of this endangered species. Found only in Anhui, the wild population remains small, but the captive population now runs into thousands, and it may soon be possible to reintroduce these reptiles back into the wild.



Alligators sunning themselves in Xuancheng's breeding center

14 Jiuhua Shan

九华山

100 miles (160 km) SE of Hefei. 🚗

📍 135 Baima Xincun, Jiuhua Jie.

One of the four mountains holy to Chinese Buddhists, Jiuhua Shan has been sacred since the Korean monk Jin Qiaojue – thought to be a reincarnation of Bodhisattva Ksitigarbha – died here in AD 794. It is also an important place of pilgrimage for the recently bereaved, who come to hold services for those who have passed on.

Over 60 temples linked by paths from Jiuhua village dot the mountain. The first is the Qing-dynasty **Zhiyuan Si**, with a honeycomb of halls. Farther up is the oldest temple, **Huacheng Si**, a part of which possibly dates to the Tang era. Beyond, an ornamental gate marks the path up the mountain. From here, one option is an hour-long walk that passes Ying Ke Song (Welcoming Pine), and bears left past a series of temples until **Baisui Gong**, where the preserved body of the priest, Wu Xia, sits at prayer. Visitors can either walk back or take the funicular railway. The other option is the path leading right at Yingke Song, which passes **Feng Huang Song** (Phoenix Pine) to the summit at **Tiantai Zhengding** (Heavenly Terrace), where a huge Buddha statue is due to be built. The four-hour walk to the summit can be curtailed by taking the cable car from Fenghuang Song, and returning by taxi.



The serene Jiuhua Shan or Nine Glorious Mountains



A restored Ming-dynasty shop, Lao Jie (Old Street), Tunxi

15 Tunxi

屯溪

44 miles (70 km) SE of Huang Shan.

🚗 🚶 🚗 📍 3/4F, 99 Fushang Lu. Tel (0559) 231 0616.

An important transport hub for visiting the popular Huang Shan (see pp242–3), Tunxi has numerous fine examples of traditional classical architecture. In certain areas such as along **Lao Jie** (Old Street), restored houses dating to the Ming dynasty have been converted into shops selling souvenirs and antiques, while others serve as tourist restaurants. The high standard of restoration gives visitors a clear picture of a typical Ming-era town. Many of the houses bear the decorative “horse head gables” (see opposite), which originally had a practical use as fire baffles.

16 Shexian

歙县

16 miles (25 km) NE of Tunxi. 🚗 buses to Tunxi.

Formerly known as Huizhou, Shexian is renowned for its wealth of well-preserved Ming-dynasty houses, once owned by wealthy salt merchants. Many of these houses lie along the lanes off Jiefang Jie and along Doushan Jie, still occupied exactly as they were as far back as the 14th century.

The wealthy Huizhou tradesmen also erected many memorial archways (*paifang*) in Shexian county but the most famous is the complex of seven Ming and Qing arches at **Tangyue**, a village about 4 miles (7 km) west of Shexian. The arches acknowledge the political career, filial piety, chastity, and charity of a successful local family.

17 Yixian

黟县

22 miles (35 km) NW of Tunxi.

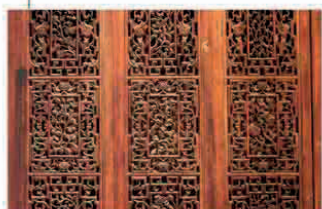
🚗 Minibus to Tunxi.

The UNESCO World Heritage Sites of **Hongcun** and **Xidi**, known for their Ming and Qing houses, lie in the vicinity of Yixian. About 7 miles (11 km) to the northeast, Hongcun dates to 1131. Picturesquely ringed by mountains, it is known as “a village in a Chinese painting.” The village is laid out in the shape of a water-buffalo, and is watered by a network of canals that feed the Moon Pond and South Lake, representing the buffalo’s stomach, while the canals represent its intestines.

Xidi, 5 miles (8 km) north of Yixian, has a maze of lanes flanked by over 100 houses, dating mainly from the late Ming and early Qing eras. Some have charming courtyards, while their interiors are often decorated with carved wooden screens and panels. Some houses feature performances of local arts. **Nanping**, 3 miles (5 km) west of Yixian, also has fine examples of classical architecture.

Huizhou Architecture

Shexian county is home for the descendants of a group of people who played a key role in the Chinese economy 400 years ago. Today, the people of southern Anhui province are mostly farmers, but from the fourteenth to seventeenth centuries, their forefathers were the wealthy merchants of Huizhou, famous the length and breadth of China for their commercial acumen and integrity. They used their money to build large family houses, with whitewashed exteriors and beautiful wood interiors. The distinctive features of these houses are a result of social and environmental factors, and are attempts to deal with the weather, earthquakes and the risk of attack by bandits. Many of these houses still remain, sometimes a little run down, but still a testament to the enterprise of the Huizhou traders.

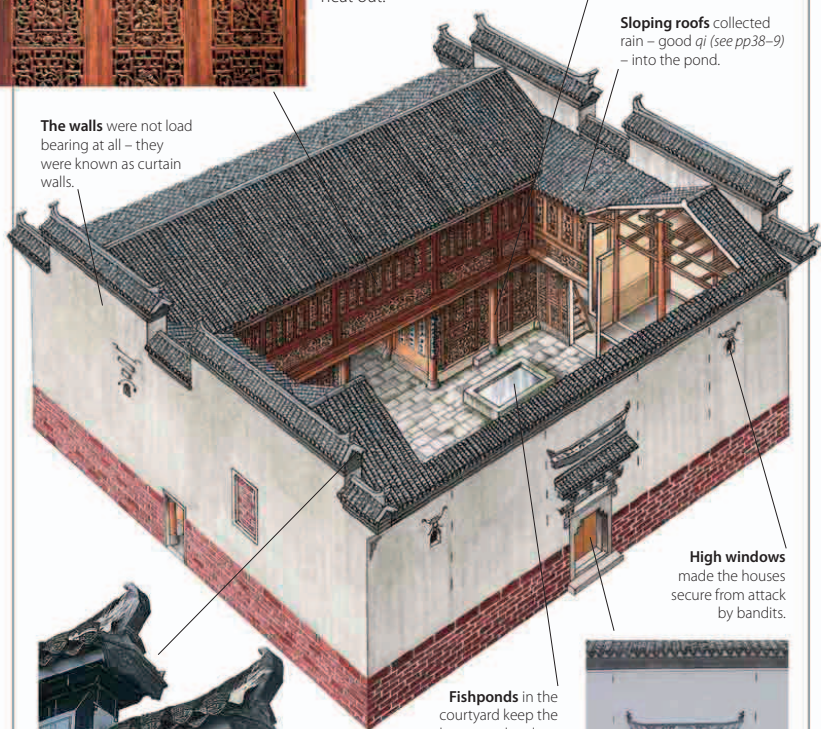


Carved wood panels The delicate tracery of the wood panels was both decorative and functional – allowing light in while keeping the heat out.

Wooden columns could withstand an earthquake better than brick walls.

Sloping roofs collected rain – good *qi* (see pp38–9) – into the pond.

The walls were not load bearing at all – they were known as curtain walls.



High windows made the houses secure from attack by bandits.

Fishponds in the courtyard keep the house cool and are decorative.



Horsehead gables These walls were intended to prevent fire (and burglars) jumping from one building to another but also developed into a means of decorating the buildings.

Pailou doorway These elaborate constructions known as *pailou* or *paifang* were built of stone rather than wood as this made them all the more difficult to break through.



18 Huang Shan

黄山

Reputed to be the most beautiful mountain range in the country, the startling, cloud-cloaked peaks of Huang Shan (Yellow Mountain) have for centuries been celebrated by poets and painters. Although the main peak is under 6,200 ft (1,900 m), the 70 sheer rock cliffs are spectacular to hike, and the winding concrete steps are usually very crowded. Even when shrouded in mist as is the norm, the scenery of precipitous peaks, bamboo groves, and ancient, twisted pines is unusually beautiful. Accommodation is available in pretty Wenquan or nearby Tangkou. Consider spending a night at the top for spectacular, but not solitary, sunsets and sunrises.



★ Feilai Shi

The “Rock Flown From Afar,” a massive, rectangular boulder poised at an unlikely angle, overlooks the “Western Sea,” an endless vista of mountain peaks and cascading clouds.



Western Trail

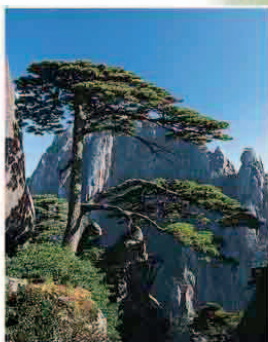
This path, more physically demanding than the eastern route, cuts through splendid rock formations, along narrow, and very steep, flights of steps.

Key

-  Path
-  Road

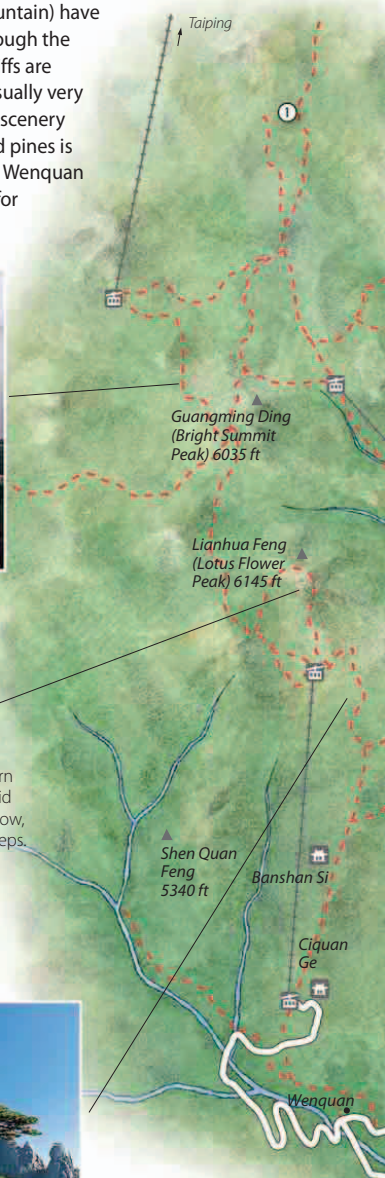
KEY

① **Qingliang Tai** (Refreshing Terrace) is a popular spot for watching the sunrise.



Welcoming Guest Pine

Ying Ke Song, featured on endless postage stamps, appears to beckon the visitor up the mountain and is said to be over a thousand years old.





View from the Top

The summit with its stunning views takes about three hours to explore. Head to Paiyun Ting, "Cloud Dispelling Pavilion," at the top of the Taiping cable car, for the best views of the sunset.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Open daily. 📞

🌐 huangshanguide.com

Transport

125 miles (200 km) S of Hefei. ✈️
at Tunxi. 🚗 to Tunxi. 🚌 from
Nanjing or Hefei to Tangkou
(5 hr); from Tunxi to Tangkou
(1.5 hr); bus to main gate.



★ Shixin Feng

The shard-like "Beginning to Believe" peaks, rising above woodland and glistening streams, offer one of the most spectacular views at Huang Shan. Access is via the Immortals' Bridge at the eastern end of the summit.

Exploring Huang Shan

The eastern route (5 miles/8 km) takes about 3 hours; the western route (9 miles/15 km) up to twice that. Some hikers choose to take the eastern route up and the western route down. Two cable cars allow you to bypass much of the walking, but the line-ups are usually very long.



★ Aoyu Bei

On the approach to Tiandu Feng, Aoyu Bei, the Carp's Backbone, is a disconcertingly exposed and narrow 30-ft (9-m) arch with sheer drops down both sides.

For additional map symbols see back flap



ZHEJIANG & JIANGXI

Lying immediately to the south of Shanghai, Zhejiang is bordered by Jiangxi to its southwest. Northern Zhejiang is a vast region of fertile farmland, with canal towns such as the provincial capital of Hangzhou, and lovely Shaoxing. Hangzhou and the great port of Ningbo are the region's chief industrial and commercial centers. Just off Zhejiang's coastline are some 18,000 islands, among them the holy shrine of Putuo Shan. The south of the province is rugged and mountainous, with superb scenery at Yandang Shan.

Landlocked Jiangxi is sparsely populated compared to the rest of Central China. Its northern reaches are a fertile plain watered by Poyang Hu, the largest freshwater lake in China, and the rivers that feed it. Nanchang, the provincial capital, prospered in the 7th century, following the construction of the Grand Canal. With the growth of coastal treaty ports in the mid-19th century, Jiangxi's economy declined. Later, in the early 20th century, civil strife forced millions into exile. The rugged Jinggang Shan mountains in southern Jiangxi, where most of the fighting took place, are rich in revolutionary associations. To the province's northeast lie the porcelain town of Jingdezhen and the charming mountain resort of Lu Shan.



Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- 1 Hangzhou
- 2 Shaoxing
- 3 Ningbo
- 7 Wenzhou
- 8 Nanchang
- 9 Jiujiang
- 11 Jingdezhen

Areas of Natural Beauty, Islands & Mountains

- 4 Putuo Shan pp254–5
- 5 Tiantai Shan
- 6 Yandang Shan
- 10 Lu Shan pp258–9
- 12 Jinggang Shan



● Hangzhou

杭州

Renowned in medieval China as an earthly paradise, Hangzhou became the splendid capital of the Southern Song dynasty between 1138 and 1279. Later, when the conquering Mongols chose what is now Beijing as their new capital, Hangzhou continued to be a thriving commercial city. Its glories were extolled by Marco Polo, who allegedly visited Hangzhou at the height of its prosperity and described it as “the City of Heaven, the most magnificent in all the world.” Although most of the old buildings were destroyed in the Taiping Rebellion, the attractive West Lake and its surrounding area are still worth visiting.



Entrance archway to Yue Fei Mu
(Tomb of Yue Fei)

Yue Fei Mu

80 Bei Shan Rd. **Tel** (0571) 8798 6653.
Open 7am–6pm daily. 🗺️

Just north of the West Lake lies the tomb of the Song general, Yue Fei, a Chinese hero revered for his patriotism. His campaigns against the invading Jin were so successful that his overlords began to worry that he might turn against them. He was falsely charged with sedition and executed, only to become a martyr.

The Yue Fei Temple is a late 19th-century construction, and the tomb lies beside it. The central tumulus belongs to Yue Fei, while the smaller one is his son's, who was also executed. The kneeling figures in iron represent his tormentors – the prime minister, his wife, a jealous general, and the prison governor. It was customary to spit on them, but this is no longer encouraged.

Impression West Lake

Bei Shan Rd. **Tel** (0571) 8796 2222.

Light Show: 7:45–8:45pm daily.

Every evening, on the lake in front of Yue Fei Mu Temple, is a water, light, and animation

show. It was created by the famous Chinese director Zhang Yimou, who produced the 2008 Olympics opening ceremony, and has music by Zhang Liangying.

Huanglong Dong Park & Qixia Shan

North of West Lake (Xi Hu). Huanglong Dong Park, nestling in the hills, is very attractive with its teahouses, ponds, and flowers, and a pavilion where musicians perform traditional music in summer. To the east is **Baoshu Ta**, a 20th-century rebuild of a Song-era pagoda. Looming close by is Qixia Shan (Lingering Clouds Mountain), with the **Baopu Daoist Compound** located halfway up its slopes. This active temple has services on most days.



Wood panel carving at
Baopu Daoist Temple

Hu Qingyu Tang Museum of Chinese Medicine

95 Dajing Xiang. **Tel** (0571) 8783 9108.

Open 8:30am–5pm daily. 🗺️

This interesting museum is housed in a beautiful old apothecary's shop. It was established by the merchant Hu Xueyan during the Qing dynasty and traces the history of traditional Chinese medicine, which goes back thousands of years. It is still an active dispensary and pharmacy.

West Lake

See pp248–9.

Tea Museum

88 Longjing Rd. **Tel** (0571) 8796 4221.

Open 8:30am–4:30pm Tue–Sun.

🌐 teamuseum.cn

Tracing the history of tea production (see p299), the Tea Museum has lots of interesting information regarding the different varieties of tea, its cultivation, and the development of tea-making and tea-drinking vessels. Fortunately, many of the captions are in English.

Longjing Village

SW of Tea Museum. 🗺️


The village of Longjing (Dragon Well) produces one of China's most famous varieties of green tea. Visitors can wander around the tea terraces, catching glimpses of

the different stages of production – cutting, sorting, and drying – and also buy the tea, which varies in price according to its grade.



Inside the main hall of the Hu Qingyu Tang Museum of Chinese Medicine

Lingyin Si

1 Fayun Nong, Lingyin Rd. **Tel** (0571) 8796 8665. **Open** 7am–7pm daily. 

The hill area known as Feilai Feng (The Peak that Flew Here) is home to some of the city's main sights, including Lingyin Si. Founded in AD 326, this temple once housed 3,000 monks who worshiped in more than 70 halls. Though now much reduced in size, it is still one of China's largest temples. It was damaged in the 19th century Taiping Rebellion, and then again by fire in the 20th century. It is said to owe its

survival to Zhou Enlai (*see* p256), who prevented its destruction during the Cultural Revolution. Still, some parts of the temple are ancient, such as the stone pagodas on either side of the entrance hall, which date from AD 969. Behind this hall is the **Great Buddha Hall**, with an impressive 66-ft (20-m) statue of the Buddha carved in 1956 from camphor wood.


The **Ligong Pagoda** at the entrance was built in honor of the Indian monk, Hui Li, who gave the mountain its eccentric name. Hui Li thought it was the




Buddha sculptures at Feilai Feng




VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

108 miles (180 km) SW of Shanghai.  8,700,000.

 (0571) 8505 9039.


Transport

  Train Station, East Train Station,  East Bus Station, North Bus Station, West Bus Station, CAAC (buses to airport).

spitting image of a hill in India and asked whether it had flown here. Feilai Feng is known for the dozens of Buddhist sculptures carved into the rock, many dating from the 10th century.

Six Harmonies Pagoda

16 Zhijiang Rd. **Tel** (0571) 8659 1364.

Open 6:30am–5:30pm daily. 

Standing beside the railway bridge on the northern shore of the Qiantang River, Liuhe Ta is all that is left of an octagonal temple first built in AD 970 to placate the tidal bore, a massive wall of water that rushes upstream during high tide. Over 197-ft (60-m) high, it served as a lighthouse up until the Ming dynasty.

Hangzhou City Center

- ① Yue Fei Mu
- ② Impression West Lake
- ③ Huanglong Dong Park & Qixia Shan
- ④ Hu Qingyu Tang Museum of Chinese Medicine
- ⑤ West Lake
- ⑥ Tea Museum
- ⑦ Longjing Village
- ⑧ Lingyin Si
- ⑨ Six Harmonies Pagoda



0 km 1
0 miles 1



Key to Symbols *see back flap*

West Lake

西湖

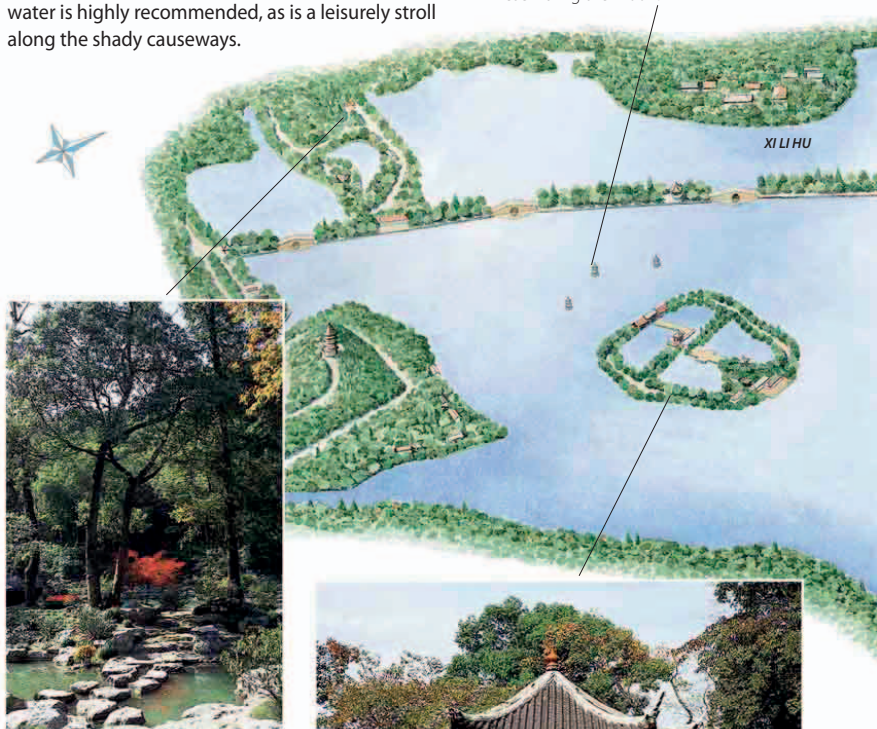
Long considered one of the scenic wonders of China, covering over three square miles (8 sq km), West Lake (Xi Hu) is situated at the heart of Hangzhou.

Surrounded by gentle green hills, the lake's willow-shaded causeways and fragrant cover of lotus blossoms have long been an inspiration for artists. Originally the lake was an inlet off the estuary of the Qiantang River, becoming a lake when the river began to silt up in the 4th century. The lake had a tendency to flood, so several dykes were built, including the Bai and Su Causeways. Hiring a private boat from the eastern shore for an afternoon on the water is highly recommended, as is a leisurely stroll along the shady causeways.



★ Three Pools Reflecting the Moon

Three small stone pagodas rise from the waters near Xiaoying Island. At full moon candles are placed within and their openings are covered in paper to create reflections resembling the moon.



Huagang Garden

This garden is intended as a place for viewing fish. Designed by a Song-dynasty eunuch, its pools are filled with shimmering goldfish in a restful setting of grasses and trees.

KEY

- ① The Seal Engravers Society is open in the summer months.
- ② Zhejiang Provincial Museum



★ Xiaoying Island

Often called San Tan Yin Yue Island, referring to the three moon-reflecting pagodas off its shores, Xiaoying Island consists of four enclosed pools fringed by pavilions first built in 1611. The zig-zagging Nine Bend Bridge was built in 1727.



★ Su Causeway

The longer of the two causeways takes its name from the Song-dynasty poet, Su Dongpo, who also served as governor. Linked by six stone bridges, the causeway is a peaceful thoroughfare running along the lake's western edge.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Hangzhou.

Zhejiang Provincial Museum:

25 Gushan Rd. **Tel** (0571) 8797

1177. **Open** 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

www.zhejiangmuseum.com

Transport

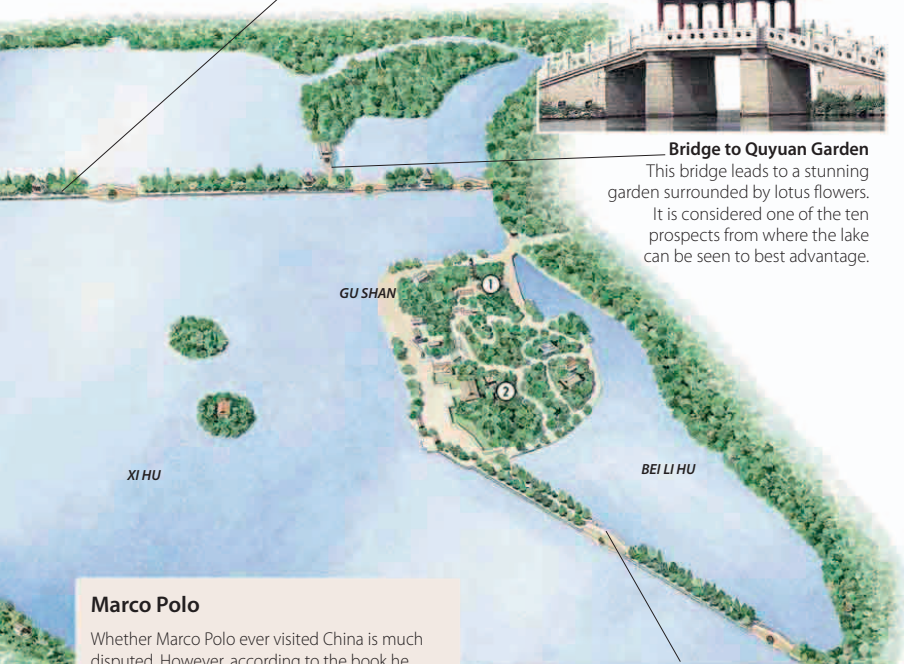
regularly from eastern shore near Hubin Rd. Boats for hire on Gu Shan Island.



Bridge to Qu Yuan Garden

This bridge leads to a stunning garden surrounded by lotus flowers.

It is considered one of the ten prospects from where the lake can be seen to best advantage.



Marco Polo

Whether Marco Polo ever visited China is much disputed. However, according to the book he dictated to a ghost writer who embroidered it substantially, Polo became governor of nearby Yangzhou for three years during the Yuan dynasty. He describes Hangzhou as paradise and the finest city in the world, with fascinating markets, pleasure boats, and prostitutes. Hangzhou was indeed a cosmopolitan city, ever since the Southern Song dynasty made it their capital. *The Travels of Marco Polo*, however, may be based on earlier journeys by his father and uncle, and stories from other merchants.



Engraving of Marco Polo,
1254–1324



Bai Causeway

Named after the 9th-century poet-governor Bai Juyi, this dyke leads to Gu Shan, an island first landscaped during the Tang dynasty, and now containing a tea house and the provincial museum.







Lu Xun's Former Residence, Shaoxing

② Shaoxing

绍兴

47 miles (67 km) SE of Hangzhou. 4,900,000. 288 Zhongxing Zhong Rd, (0575) 8520 0067. sx.gov.cn

Despite the proliferation of new buildings, this canal town has retained its charm, with its narrow streets, arched bridges, and whitewashed houses. Ancient Shaoxing was the capital of the Yue kingdom during 770–221 BC. It remained important over the years even when Hangzhou became the Song capital. Today, it is a scenic place to explore for its waterways.

The **Qing Teng Shu Wu** (Green Vine Study), former home of the 16th-century writer and artist Xu Wei, lies off Dacheng Long, an alley not far from Jiefang Nan Road. Regarded as the best example of traditional domestic architecture in China, the house has a simple ornamental garden, while one of its rooms displays Xu's expressive art.

There are also several houses associated with Lu Xun, perhaps the best known modern Chinese writer, born here in 1881. Most of them are clustered together on Lu Xun Road. The Lu Xun Memorial Hall has no English captions, but **Lu Xun's Former Residence** is a fine example of domestic architecture, with photographs, furniture, and personal items. Opposite is Sanwei Shuwu, the school where he studied.

Shaoxing's most famous bridge, the 13th-century **Bazi Qiao**, resembles the Chinese character for number 8, and lies in a charming area of old streets off Baziqiao Zhi Jie, north of Lu Xun Lu.

The town makes a good base for several excursions. The scenic **Dong Hu** (East Lake) is nearby. Visitors can also take a boat to **Yu Ling**, allegedly the tomb of Yu the Great, founder of the Xia kingdom (2200 BC). Farther out is **Lan Ting** (Orchid Pavilion), where China's greatest calligrapher, Wang Xizhi (AD 321–79), threw a party where, so one story goes, guests had to drink cups of wine as they floated past and compose a poem, recorded by the host.

Qing Teng Shu Wu
10 Qian Guan Xiang. **Open** daily.

Lu Xun's Former Residence
235 Lu Xun Zhong Rd. **Open** daily.



Stone lion, Tianye Ge

③ Ningbo

宁波

90 miles (145 km) SE of Hangzhou. 7,600,000. 719 Zhongxing Rd, (0574) 8911 5389.

China's greatest port between the Song and Ming eras, Ningbo is located upstream from the coast on the Yong River. It was later eclipsed by Shanghai, but has regained some importance due to its deep natural harbor. The town has had a long association with commerce. When Shanghai and Guangzhou prospered in the 19th and early 20th centuries, Ningbo's residents were employed as "compradors," agents or mediators by the foreign companies.

Ningbo's main sight is the **Tianye Ge**, a 16th-century private library, the oldest in China. It resembles a traditional garden with bamboo groves, rockeries, and pavilions, one of which exhibits ancient books and scrolls. To the southeast off Kaiming Jie, is the 14th-century Tianfeng Pagoda. The former foreign concession lies at the northern end of Xinjiang Bridge, with a 17th-century Portuguese church and a riverside Bund. Outside the city, **Baoguo Si** temple's Mahavira Hall is the oldest surviving wooden building in the Yangzi delta region.

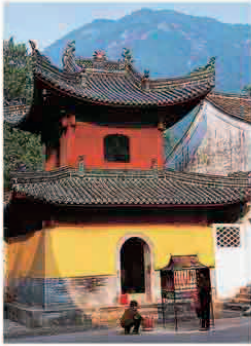
Tianyi Ge
5 Tianyi Jie. **Open** 8am–5pm daily.



Charming narrow streets around Tianye Ge, Ningbo

4 Putuo Shan

See pp254–5.



The Guoqing Si Monastery, at the foot of Tiantai Shan

5 Tiantai Shan

天台山

118 miles (190 km) SE of Hangzhou. 🚗

The heavenly terrace Mountain – Tiantai Shan – is the seat of the Tiantai Buddhist sect, which also has strong links with Daoism (see pp36–7). A pilgrimage site since the Eastern Jin, today it is especially popular with Japanese Buddhists, who regard China as the Buddhist motherland. The sect's founder, the monk Zhiyi, spent most of his life on the mountain, where the imperial court helped him to construct a temple. This wonderfully scenic spot, with its paths, streams, and woodlands, is ideal for walking. Several famous plants such as huading cloud, mist tea, the Tiantai mandarin orange, as well as a variety of medicinal plants, were discovered here.

The first of Tiantai Shan's monasteries, **Guoqing Si**, lies at its foot, 2 miles (3 km) from Tiantai village. From here, a road leads to the 3,609 ft (1,100 m) **Huading Peak**. Visitors can then walk to Baijingtai Si (Prayer Terrace Temple) on the summit or to Shiliang (Stone Beam) Waterfall, near the Upper Fangguang Monastery, where there are a number of inscriptions, including one by the famous Song artist, Mi Fu. The **Zhenjue Si** (Monastery of

True Enlightenment) houses Zhiyi's mummified body in a pagoda in its main hall.

🏯 **Huading Peak**
Open daily. 🚶

6 Yandang Shan

雁荡山

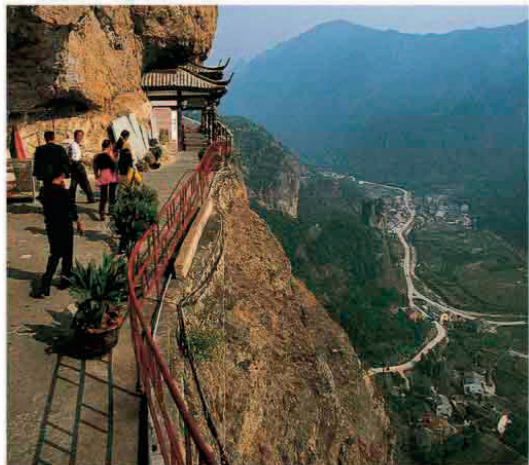
50 miles (80 km) NE of Wenzhou.

🚗 from Wenzhou to terminus at Yandang Zhen.

This is a beautiful area of sheer hills, luxuriant slopes, and monasteries. Its highest peak, Baigang Shan, reaches 3,773 ft (1,150 m). The **Big Dragon Pool Falls** (Dalongqiu Pubu) cascade 623 ft (190 m), making them one of China's highest. The path leading to them weaves among towering columns of rock, where, on the hour, a cyclist performs a high-wire act. The largest area is **Divine Peaks** (Ling Feng), excellent for hiking among caves and strangely shaped peaks. The **Divine Cliffs** area (Ling Yan), reached by cable car, has walkways and a suspension bridge. From the bus terminus at Yandang Zhen, there are several walking trails.

🏯 **Big Dragon Pool Falls**
Open daily. 🚶

🏯 **Divine Peaks**
Open daily. 🚶



Walkway with panoramic views, Yandang Shan

7 Wenzhou

温州

160 miles (257 km) S of Ningbo.

👤 9,100,000. 🚗 🚝 🚞 🚢 📶 Area 1, Wenzhou Sports Center, (0577) 8815 7168.

Located on the southeast coast of Zhejiang province, Wenzhou has always been a seafaring city. It is still a busy port and its booming economy is mainly due to heavy investment in manufacturing and textiles by overseas Chinese. A good base for visiting nearby Yandang Shan, the city also offers a few sights of its own. The most popular, **Jiangxin Park**, is on an island in the Ou River, easily be reached by the regular ferry service from Wangjiang Dong Road. Completely devoid of traffic, the park's pretty gardens, pavilions, pagodas, and footbridges make it a pleasant place to spend a few hours. It also has a working lighthouse. Stretching between Jiefang Road and Xinhe Road to the south of the Ou River is what is left of the old town. Here and there are a few particular buildings of interest such as the 18th-century British-built Protestant church, the 19th-century Catholic church, and the Miaoguo Temple, whose origins are Tang-dynasty.

🏯 **Jiangxin Park**
Jiangxin Dao. 🚗 from Jiangxin Matou, Wenzhou. Open 8am–10pm daily. 🚶

4 Putuo Shan

普陀山

Nestled amongst numerous islands in the Zhou Shan archipelago, Putuo Shan is one of the four sacred Buddhist mountains, having strong associations with the goddess of compassion and mercy, Guanyin. It has been considered holy since the 10th century, and although the temples suffered greatly at the hands of the Red Guards during the Cultural Revolution, they are still impressive and full of fascination. A small, attractive island, fringed with bright blue waters and sandy beaches, Putuo Shan has become a very popular place of pilgrimage. Minibuses ply the roads between the major temples and sights, but the island's hills, caves and beaches are best explored on foot.



To the summit

A cable car links a minibus stop with the summit of Foding Shan from where there are wonderful views across the island and out to sea.



★ Puji Si

Surrounded by beautiful camphor trees, this extensive temple is located at the island's tourist center. The first temple was built here in the 11th century, although the current temple is far newer.



★ Guanyin Colossus

At the southern tip of the island a massive 108-ft (33-m) statue of Guanyin stands near the shore.

A pavilion at its base exhibits a collection of some 400 statues representing the goddess in her numerous incarnations.



KEY

- ① Duobao Pagoda



Huiji Si

Close to the top of Foding Shan, Huiji Temple, dating back to 1793, stands resplendent amid tea bushes and bamboo groves.

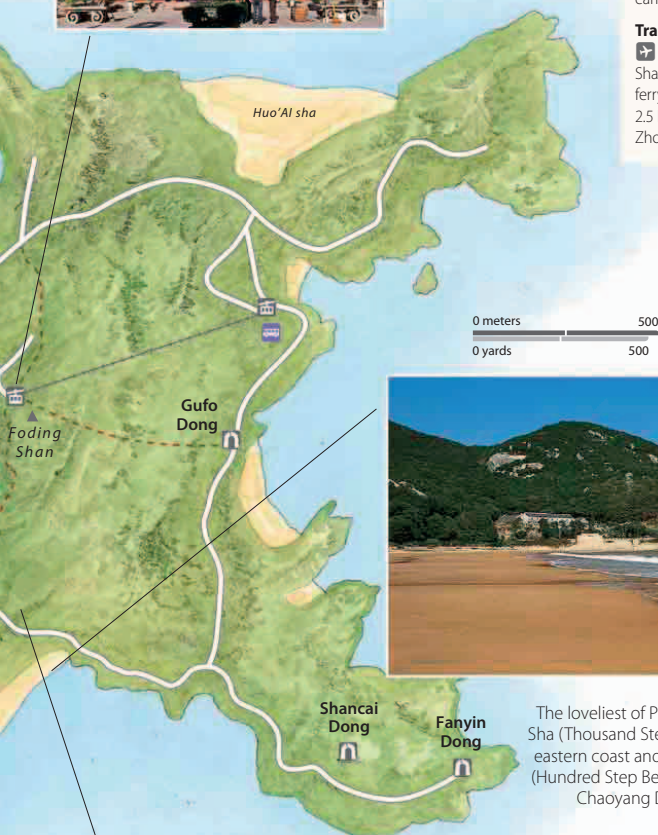
VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

50 miles (80 km) east of Ningbo, off coast of Zhejiang. 🚢 for island access, plus minimal fees for separate sights. 🗓️ Guanyin Festival (early Apr, mid-Aug & early Nov). 🌐 putuoshan.net

Transport

🚗 at Zhou Shan. 🚢 from Shanghai (fast ferry: 4 hrs; slow ferry: 14 hrs), Ningbo (fast ferry: 2.5 hrs; slow ferry: 5 hrs), and Zhou Shan (half hour).



Key

- Paths
- Road



Qian Bu Sha

The loveliest of Putuo Shan's beaches, Qian Bu Sha (Thousand Step Beach) stretches along the eastern coast and is separated from Bai Bu Sha (Hundred Step Beach) by a headland and cave, Chaoyang Dong, concealing a teahouse.



★ Fayu Si

The 200 halls of this charming temple pile up against the flank of a hill overlooking the sea. The Dayuan Hall, unusual for its domed roof and seamless arched ceiling, was brought here from Nanjing in the late 17th century.

The Legend of Hui'e

Hui'e, a Japanese monk who had purloined a Guanyin figure from the holy Buddhist mountain Wutai Shan, was sailing home when his ship was caught in a violent storm. Fearing for his life, he vowed to build a temple to Guanyin if he were saved. The seas suddenly calmed, and the ship floated gently towards the nearby shores of Putuo Shan. Believing that Guanyin was choosing the island, Hui'e built the promised temple and became a devoted hermit spending the rest of his life on Putuo Shan.



Frieze of Hui'e sailing near Putuo Shan

8 Nanchang

南昌

Founded during The Han era, this provincial capital flourished under the Ming dynasty as a center of trade. However, it is best remembered as the scene of a significant uprising led by the Communist leader Zhou Enlai, who took control of the city for a few days in 1927. Although Nanchang was soon recaptured by the Nationalists, the incident started a chain of events that ultimately led to the formation of the People's Republic of China. Despite being largely an industrial city, Nanchang has numerous sights including a good museum and several sites with revolutionary associations.



Offering incense sticks in front of the Youmin Si

Bayi Square Memorial Hall to the Martyrs of the Revolution 399 Bayi Dadao. **Tel** (0791) 8626 2566. **Open** 9am–4pm Tue–Sun.

The huge, open space of Bayi (August 1) Square is surrounded by some impressive, if slightly chilling, examples of Soviet-inspired revolutionary architecture. At the southern end is the **Monument to the Martyrs**, a theatrical sculpture of revolutionary fervor topped by a rifle, while the vast **Exhibition Hall** is decorated with a glittering red star. Just north of the square is the **Memorial Hall to the Martyrs of the Revolution**, which exhibits archival photographs of events in China between the 1920s and 1940s.

Zhu De's Former Residence

2 Dong Ming De Lu. **Open** daily. This attractive wooden house dates from 1927, when it housed the fledgling revolutionaries,

Zhu De and Zhou Enlai, who led the uprising that briefly captured the city on August 1 of that year. Their army, consisting of about 30,000 rebels, held the city until the Kuomintang forces drove them out. Although the operation was a failure, it is considered a defining moment in 20th-century Chinese history, and celebrated as the day of the birth of the Red Army.



Premier Zhou Enlai in 1973

Zhou Enlai (1898–1976)

Zhou Enlai, one of the early members of the Chinese Communist Party, became the nation's prime minister in 1949. His pragmatism and diplomacy helped him survive the constant upheavals of Mao Zedong's chairmanship. To the West, he represented the reasonable and affable side of the Chinese people, while to his countrymen, he was the only member of the government to understand their problems. He is credited with curbing some of the excesses of the Cultural Revolution. When he died, the outpouring of grief in China was spontaneous and heartfelt.

Youmin Si

181 Minde Lu. **Tel** (0791) 8622 2301.

Open 8am–5pm daily. **Bayi Park**

Open 8am–6pm daily.

This Buddhist temple founded in the Liang era in the 6th century is one of Jiangxi's principal shrines. It was damaged during the Cultural Revolution, and has now been restored. One of its three halls has a 33-ft (10-m) high Buddha standing on a lotus. The temple also houses a Ming-dynasty bronze bell and another cast during the Tang era in AD 967.

Just south of the temple is

Bayi Park (August 1st Park), formerly the site of the imperial examination halls. It is a pleasant expanse of water and greenery, with an enclosed garden known as Old Man Su's Vegetable Plot, after its Song-dynasty owner.

Revolutionary Museum

380 Zhongshan Lu. **Open** daily.

Housed in a striking building that was once a hotel, the August 1 Uprising Museum was the headquarters of the Communist forces led by Zhou Enlai, that captured the city in 1927. Its three floors are filled with period furniture and weaponry.

Teng Wang Pavilion

7 Yanjiang Lu. **Tel** (0791) 8670 4772.

Open 8am–5pm daily.

The impressive Teng Wang Pavilion was first built in 653, during the early Tang era and immortalized by the poet Tang Bo. There have been about 26 versions of the pavilion since then – the latest was erected in 1989 to replace the one destroyed by



The stately Teng Wang Pavilion, on the banks of the Gan Jiang

fire in 1926. The 197-ft (60-m) high structure is in the Southern Song style. Visitors can take a lift to the top for views of the city. Occasional performances of dance and music or local opera are also held in the tiny theater.

Provincial Museum

2 Xinzhou Jiangxi Lu. **Tel** (0791) 8659 5424. **Open** 9am–4:30pm Tue–Sun.

Located near the river in the west of the city, this museum's exhibition space still needs to be filled. However, the existing exhibits are interesting, and include fossils found in Jiangxi, and a range of porcelain from

the kilns at Jingdezhen, dating from the 4th century to the Qing era. There are also several funeral items from the Spring & Autumn period and the Ming era, including statuary, jade belts, and jewelry, some of which was discovered in the tomb of the son of Hongwu, founder of the Ming dynasty.


Shengjin Ta

Zhishi Jie. **Open** 8am–5pm daily. 




Formerly part of a temple, this 194-ft (59-m) high brick pagoda was first built in the late Tang dynasty, but was entirely rebuilt in the 18th century. Like many pagodas, its construction was

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information


312 miles (500 km) SW of Hangzhou.  5,100,000.  32 Ming De Lu, (0791) 8620 0289.

Transport

-  Train Station.
-  Long Distance Bus Station, CAAC (buses to airport).
-  Ferry Terminal.

said to avert disaster, while its destruction heralded the fall of the city. The pagoda is located in a quaint neighborhood with a handful of teahouses, barber shops, and grocery stores.

Eight Hermits Hall

Dingshan Qiao. **Open** Tue–Sun. 

The Eight Hermits (Ba Da Shanren) Memorial Hall was the retreat of one of China's great painters, Zhu Da, who flourished at the end of the Ming era and the early Qing dynasty. He was a descendant of the Ming imperial family who went into hiding here after their fall, in what was originally designed as a Taoist retreat. His paintings, strikingly spare and direct, are reproduced here.

Nanchang City Center

- ① Bayi Square
- ② Zhu De's Former Residence
- ③ Youmin Si
- ④ Revolutionary Museum
- ⑤ Teng Wang Pavilion
- ⑥ Provincial Museum
- ⑦ Shengjin Ta



Key to Symbols see back flap



Xunyang Lou, an impressive re-creation of a Tang-era tavern

9 Jiujiang 九江

80 miles (130 km) N of Nanchang.

Ⓐ 4,700,000. 🚗 6 Lufeng Lu, (0792) 856 0600.

The gateway to Lu Shan, the ancient port of Jiujiang, was used for shipping rice and tea and, during the Ming dynasty, porcelain from Jingdezhen. Badly damaged during the Taiping insurrection, it was later opened to foreign trade in 1861 and became noted for its tea bricks.

The older and livelier part of town lies close to the river, separated from the industrial section by two lakes. Yanshui Ting, the Misty Water Pavilion, is located on a small island on Gantang Hu. It was most recently rebuilt in the Qing dynasty and contains a museum showing old photos of Jiujiang. **Nengren Si** was founded in AD 502. Closed during the Cultural Revolution, it now houses a flourishing community of monks.

The **Xunyang Lou** is a modern reincarnation of a Tang-dynasty wooden tavern, which was the setting for a raucous scene in the Chinese classic, *The Water Margin* (see pp34–5).

🏯 **Nengren Si**
168 Yuliang Nan Lu. **Open** daily.

🏯 **Xunyang Lou**
908 Binjiang Lu. **Open** 8am–7pm daily.

10 Lu Shan

庐山

During the 19th century, this beautiful area of highland scenery was developed by Edward Little, a Methodist minister and property speculator, as a resort area for Europeans. Later it became a favorite retreat among Chinese politicians; Chiang Kai-shek had a summer residence here and from 1949 Lu Shan was popular with Mao and his ministers. Today, despite the summer crowds, Lu Shan remains a refreshing place for walks among lakes, hills, and waterfalls.



★ Floral Path

This walk skirts the edge of the western cliffs, giving marvelous views over the Jinxiu Valley. The path leads to the Immortal's Cave, once inhabited by a Daoist monk.



★ Dragon's Head Cliff

Magnificent views combine with the sound of the wind in the pine forest and the roaring of waterfalls in the Stone Gate Ravine.

KEY



① Suspension Bridge

② Lu Shan Museum, is housed in Mao's former villa.



0 meters 500
0 yards 500

Key

-  Tourist information
 Path

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Guling, 22 miles (35 km) S of Jiujiang.

Open daily.  entry to scenic area and for each site. 

Transport

 from Jiujiang Bus Station; mini-bus from Jiujiang ferry car park



★ Meilu Villa

Named after his wife Soong Meiling, this is the former villa of Chiang Kai-shek and one of the few places in China that commemorates his period of rule.



People's Hall

The site of the 1959 Central Committee Congress during which Peng Dehui criticized Mao's Great Leap Forward is now a museum.



Black Dragon Pool

Five streams plunge over a huge stone into a pool, which is said to be inhabited by a dark dragon, although the water is limpid and clean.



Porcelain

Despite Chinese pottery's long history, it was not until the Bronze Age (between about 1500 and 400 BC) that special clays and hotter kilns resulted in a harder, sometimes glazed stoneware. True porcelain, however, did not appear until the Sui dynasty. A far finer type of ceramic, true porcelain is smooth and polished, and produces an almost crystalline ring when struck; at its most delicate, it is even translucent. Porcelain became popular in Europe during the 16th century, and the Portuguese, and later the Dutch and English, set up a lucrative trade between China and the rest of the world.



Blue and White Ming porcelain is seen by some as the epitome of Chinese style. The elegance of the designs and the depth of color are astounding.



Jingdezhen clay is the key to the quality of the porcelain and is a mixture of fine white kaolin and "petuntse" (a crushed feldspar rock). The resulting fine powder is washed, strained through silk, and dried.



As on a production line, each artisan performs a single task in the porcelain-making process. The clay is centered on a wheel and thrown into a rough shape, sculpted into a finer piece with scrapers, and brushed with water to create a smooth surface.



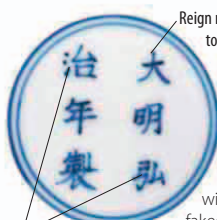
A cobalt blue underglaze may be added before coating with a clear glaze of limestone ash, the finest petuntse, and water. The glaze absorbs the blue dye and fuses into the original clay to form a hard glassy porcelain.



Firing is a crucial stage in making porcelain – fluctuations in temperature can ruin thousands of pieces in one go. The best porcelain is fired inside clay "saggars" – cases that protect them from dust and sudden variations in heat.



Rose medallion porcelain was made specially for export. Often these pieces were made to Western designs in terms of shape and decoration. Sometimes dinner sets displaying a family or even a royal crest were produced, and designs were sent from Europe to be reproduced by the Chinese.



Reign mark starts here and reads top to bottom, right to left

Characters for Emperor Hongzhi

Reign marks show the reign name of the emperor when the piece was made. However, the ease with which they can be faked renders accurate dating the task of experts.

Porcelain Timeline

Han



A key development during this period was the art of glazing. Simple pots began changing from everyday items to works of art.

Tang

Technical advances during the Tang dynasty saw the production of new types of porcelain, most famously the *sancai* (tri-colored) pieces illustrating figures from the Silk Road.

Song

Beautiful Song porcelain is characterized by simple shapes glazed in a single, rich color. New shapes were developed, as well as the cracked glazing technique.



Yuan



Porcelain from the Mongol dynasty absorbed foreign influences. Cobalt blue underglaze was introduced, and later perfected during the Ming period.

Ming

The Ming dynasty was the era of imperial patronage of Jingdezhen and large-scale exportation to the West. The kilns flourished and the artisans returned to a richer palette of colors and pictorial design.

Qing

The latter part of this dynasty was often characterized by overly elaborate design and poor quality, but the early part of the Qing saw the production of delicate *famille rose* porcelain.



One of Jingdezhen's many pottery shops

① Jingdezhen 景德镇

108 miles (174 km) NE of Nanchang.

1,550,000. ✈️ 🚗 🚝 🚲 📶 CITS, 1 Zhushan Xi Lu, (0798) 850 5566.

For centuries the ceramic capital of China, Jingdezhen is still one of the country's major porcelain producers. Although pottery kilns were operating here as far back as the Han dynasty, it was the discovery of real porcelain, during the Five Dynasties era (907–79 AD), which depended on locally found clay rich in feldspar, that brought Jingdezhen its pre-eminence. During the Ming dynasty, its location near the imperial capital of Nanjing increased its importance and it became famous for fine porcelain with a blue underglaze. Although the quality of the porcelain is lower than in the past, the main reason for visiting Jingdezhen is still ceramic production. Visiting a factory or one of the ancient kiln sites will need to be arranged through CITS but there are also several places of interest that can be visited independently.

The **Ceramic History Exposition** (Taoci Lishi Bolanqu) is located in a rural setting on the western edge of town. Displays of items taken from ancient kiln sites around Jingdezhen and of potters at work effectively make this museum interactive. It is housed in an elegant Ming house, a rare survivor among the many that would once have graced the town. The adjacent **Ancient**

Pottery Factory (Guyao Cichang) gives demonstrations of the ancient techniques used in the making of porcelain.

The **Porcelain Museum** (Taoci Guan) houses a collection of beautiful porcelain from the Song, Ming, and Qing dynasties, as well as some of the finer creations produced since the establishment of the PRC in 1949. The main porcelain market is on Jiefang Road. Porcelain in all shapes and sizes is sold here, from classical-

period reproductions to garden ornaments and sentimental reproductions of dogs and cats. For a view across the roofs of town, visitors can climb the wooden four-story **Longzhu Ge** (Dragon Pearl Pavilion).



Detail from museum entrance

🏛️ Ceramic History

Exposition

Zhonghua Bei Lu. **Tel** (0798) 822 1390.

Open 8:30am–5:30pm daily. 🎫

🏛️ Porcelain Museum

21 Lianshe Beilu Lu. **Tel** (0798) 822

8005. **Open** 8am–5pm daily. 🎫



The wooden Longzhu Ge, with views across Jingdezhen

The Long March

During the 1920s the outlawed Communist leaders sought refuge from the Kuomintang (KMT) at remote rural bases, or “soviets,” in Sichuan, Hunan, and, in Jiangxi province, at Jinggang Shan, the headquarters run by Mao Zedong and Zhu De. In October 1934, with the KMT closing in, the Jiangxi Soviet was forced to break out and join thousands of revolutionaries on a tactical retreat. Covering, largely at night, an average of 20 miles (32 km) a day, the Communists marched 5,900 miles (9,500 km) in a year. The march, however, was not a strategic success and many did not survive it.



⑧ **Yan'an** was the end point of the march on 19 October 1935. Mao arrived with 5000 marchers and established the Yan'an Soviet as an independent communist state.

⑦ **Crossing the** remote, boggy and freezing Aba Grasslands brought enormous losses. A subsequent meeting with rival, Zhang Guotao, firmly established Mao's primacy.

Key

— Long March

0 km 300
0 miles 300



The Red Army – outlawed, harried and hungry – had to fight battles, outwit their better equipped enemy, and cross inhospitable terrain in all seasons.



⑥ **Daxue Shan**, the Great Snowy Mountains, are some of the highest in the country. Crossing the passes was the most challenging episode of the Long March, and led to the death, through altitude sickness, exhaustion, and exposure, of many Red Army soldiers.

④ **At Lu Shan Pass**, the Red Army reached the pass just ahead of the KMT, deceived their pursuers, and gained an unexpected victory.



③ **The Luding Chain Bridge** (see p377) was the only means of crossing the Dadu River. Blocked by KMT troops who had removed most of the bridge's planks, 22 Red Army soldiers took the bridge by crawling along the remaining chains, with the loss of seven men.



② **Zunyi** was taken despite heavy losses in January 1935. Mao emerged from the ensuing conference as leader of the Communist Party and commander of the Red Army; the Soviet-supported general was expelled.



Many prominent Long Marchers became China's future leaders, including (from left) Bo Gu (Communist leader until 1935), Zhou Enlai, Zhu De, and Mao Zedong.



① Jinggang Shan was the base of the Jiangxi Soviet whose position was steadily being eroded by advancing KMT troops. Led by Mao Zedong, the Long March started from here on 16 October 1934.

② The crossing of the Xiang river was the marchers' first major battle. Accounted a disaster, huge amounts of equipment were lost in the waters.



The thickly wooded slopes of Jinggang Shan

⑫ Jinggang Shan 井冈山

Ciping, 220 miles (350 km) SW of Nanchang. 🚗 2 Tianjie Lu, (0796) 655 0550. 📍 for most revolutionary and scenic sights. 🌐 jgstour.com

There are two reasons for visiting Jinggang Shan: its scenery, which has been featured on Chinese bank notes, and its revolutionary associations. The mountain range, of which the main peak is Jinggang Shan, sometimes known as Wuzhi Feng (Five Fingers Peak), reaches to 5,200 ft (1,586 m). There are magnificent views, especially at sunrise, as well as a great variety of plants, birds, butterflies and other insects.

The village of Ciping was destroyed during the civil war of the 1930s but was rebuilt after 1949 as a sort of shrine to the communist struggle and to the Long March in particular. There are a number of buildings commemorating the way of life of the early revolutionaries, forced here in the late 1920s by Chiang Kai-shek's persecution, which culminated in a massacre of striking workers in Shanghai in 1927. It is possible here to gain some idea of what life was like for the revolutionaries, as they developed their strategy before the epic walk to Shaanxi. A short distance away is the watching post at Huangyang Jie, where the Red Army repulsed Kuomintang troops in 1928.

Located at about 3,300 ft (1,000 m), Ciping was the center of the Jinggang Shan revolutionary base during the 1920s and 1930s and is now the site of local government. Its location at the center of the mountain range and growing collection of hotels make it a good base for exploring the area. The beauty of the area is a



Monument outside
Wulong Tan

startling contrast with its image as a gritty, revolutionary stronghold. There are the 33-ft (100-m) Shuikou waterfalls, located in a luxuriant valley surrounded by rocks amid bamboo, azaleas and pine forest. Wulong Tan, a few miles north of Ciping, is composed of several limpid

pools into which stream a number of rapids and waterfalls. A cable car can take you to the top and give you magnificent views over the whole area, whilst for those with the energy, much of the area can be enjoyed on foot.



Pearl Pool, one of the five waterfalls at Wulong Tan



HUNAN & HUBEI

Hunan and Hubei are central China's westernmost provinces. Hubei is dominated by the mighty Yangzi River, and its capital Wuhan is a great industrial city on the river. The mountainous Three Gorges in western Hubei near Yichang is the site of the world's largest dam, which was completed in 2007. The scenic Shennongjia Forest Reserve, home of the legendary Wild Man, and Wudang Shan, known for its martial arts school, are spectacular sights definitely worth visiting, although remote and difficult to access.

Hunan's fertile farmlands lured millions of migrants during the political upheavals in North China between the 8th and 11th centuries. An important grain producer during the Ming and Qing dynasties, by the 19th century the population had outgrown the land, and the ensuing unrest was exploited by the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion (see p428). The region's poverty also had a great impact on China's history in the 20th century. As the birthplace of Mao Zedong, Hunan's revolutionary credentials are still one of its principal attractions, both in Changsha, the capital, and in Mao's birthplace at Shao Shan. Other popular sights include Dongting Hu, China's second-largest lake, in the northeast, the temples at scenic Heng Shan in the south, and the wonderful mountain scenery of Wulingyuan in the northwest.



Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- 1 Changsha
- 4 Furongzhen
- 8 Jingzhou
- 7 Wuhan
- 6 Yueyang

Historic Sites

- 2 Shao Shan

Temples & Holy Mountains

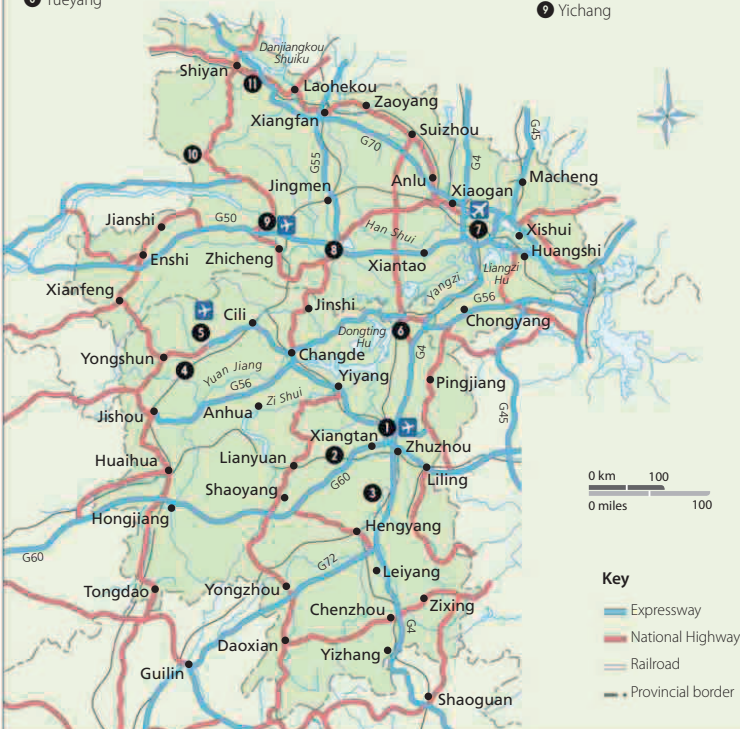
- 3 Heng Shan
- 11 Wudang Shan

Nature Reserves & Areas of Natural Beauty

- 10 Shennongjia
- 5 Wulingyuan pp270–71

Dams

- 9 Yichang





No. 1 Teachers' Training College, Changsha

① Changsha

长沙

207 miles (333 km) S of Wuhan. 88, 1 Duan, Furong Zhong Rd.

An important ancient city, Changsha was the capital of the Chu kingdom until the unification of China under the Qin in 280 BC. Much later, the city's profile was raised once more when in 1903 it became a treaty port, open to foreign trade. During the Sino-Japanese war in 1938, it was damaged by the Kuomintang.

The **Hunan Provincial Museum** houses many items of interest, including neolithic pottery and bronzes from the Shang and Zhou eras. While it is being renovated, there will be temporary exhibits at the Changsha City Museum (538 Bayi Rd), though the permanent collection is of greater interest, containing items excavated from three Han-dynasty tombs at Mawangdui, to the east of the city. The first tomb belonged to the wife of the Marquis of Dai, the second was that of the Marquis himself, while the third contained their son. The Marquis, Li Cang, became prime minister in 193 BC, and died in 186. The tombs contained a wooden outer coffin, surrounded by a protective layer of clay and charcoal, within which were four other coffins, lacquered and handsomely painted. The bodies had been dressed in several layers of silk. His wife's body (on display in a liquid-filled tank) was so well preserved that her skin retained

a certain amount of elasticity. Amazingly scientists were able to determine that she died at 50, and was suffering from tuberculosis and arthritis. According to the customs at the time, the tombs were filled with foods and furnishings to comfort that part of the soul that remains on earth, and a silk banner that mapped the Han belief system. Close by is the pleasantly landscaped **Martyrs' Park**.

Among the numerous sites related to Mao Zedong, the most interesting is the **Hunan First Normal College**, where he studied from 1913, when he was 19, until 1918. Although he famously failed his art exam, by drawing a circle and calling it an egg, he was declared student of the year in 1917. At college, he devoted much of his time organizing student societies, a useful practice for his future role as leader. Mao returned as a teacher between 1920 and 1922. Visitors can follow a self-guided route through the rebuilt college, which is still active, visiting the dormitories, the well where Mao bathed, and the halls where he held political meetings.

Hunan Provincial Museum & Martyrs' Park

50 Dongfeng Rd. **Tel** (0731) 8451 4630. closed for renovation until 2015. hnmuseum.com

Hunan First Normal College

356 Shuyuan Rd. **Tel** (0731) 8822 8210. daily. hnfnu.edu.cn

② Shao Shan

韶山

48 miles (80 km) SW of Changsha. daily from Changsha.

The birthplace of Mao Zedong, China's leader from 1949 until his death in 1976, Shao Shan is really two towns. The newer one is near the railway station, while the village of Shao Shan Dong, where the "Great Helmsman" spent his early years is 4 miles (6 km) away. At the height of the Mao phenomenon during the Cultural Revolution, special pilgrimage trains, crowded with Red Guards, brought almost 8,000 worshipers a day. Shao Shan is still popular and any buildings connected with Mao are now preserved as museums. **Mao's Family House**, where he was born in 1893, is typically rural, except for its displays of memorabilia. Nearby lies the sizable **Mao Zedong Memorial Museum** and the **Mao Ancestral Temple**. Overlooking the



Mao statue, No. 1 Teachers' Training College

village is Shao Peak, accessed by cable car. About 2 miles (3 km) from the village is **Dripping Water Cave**, where, legend has it, Mao pondered over the Cultural Revolution in 1966.

Mao's Family House & Mao Zedong Memorial Museum

Shao Shan Chong. **Tel** (0732) 5568 5157. 8am–5pm daily.



Stone tablets engraved with Mao's poems, Shao Peak, Shao Shan



Grand gateway of the Zhusheng Si Monastery, Nanyue

3 Heng Shan

衡山

85 miles (135 km) S of Changsha.

Tel (0734) 567 3377. from Changsha to Nanyue. **Open** daily.

One of the five holy Daoist mountains, Heng Shan at 4,232 ft (1,290 m) is a cluster of wooded peaks, dotted with temples that were established some 1,300 years ago. The gateway to Heng Shan is **Nanyue**, a two-hour bus journey from Changsha. It is a pleasant little town with two main streets, and a couple of significant temples. **Nanyue Damiao** has been a place of worship for both Buddhist and Daoists since the early 8th century AD, although the current buildings, modeled on Beijing's Forbidden City, date from the 19th century. The other, **Zhusheng Si**, is an 8th-century Buddhist monastery, rebuilt in the 18th century.

The mountain can be explored on foot or by minibus, but it is a 9-mile (15-km) walk to the top. There is a cable car to the summit from about halfway. A number of monasteries and temples lie along the path that meanders through lush countryside before reaching the **Martyrs' Memorial Hall**, honoring those who died in the 1911 revolution. Next is the 7th-century **Xuandu Si**, Hunan's main Daoist temple. The route finally leads to **Shangfeng Si**, also the minibus terminus. Just beyond is the summit marked by **Zhurong Gong**, a tiny stone temple. Visitors can stay at a hotel near the top for views from the **Terrace for Watching the Sunrise**.

4 Furongzhen

芙蓉镇

249 miles (400 km) NW of Changsha.

to Mengdonghe, then bus or boat. from Mengdonghe.

Mengdonghe is the jumping-off point to Furongzhen (Wang Cun), the location of the eponymous 1986 film, *A Small Town Called Hibiscus*. Furongzhen means Hibiscus Town and the film was an adaptation of the novel *A Town Called Hibiscus* by Gu Hua. It was one of the first books to show how the political upheavals of the 1950s and 1960s affected people in rural China. Furongzhen is an attractive town with stone streets and old wooden buildings. Its **Tujia Museum** on Hepan Jie is devoted to the culture of the indigenous Tujia people. Visitors can also go rafting near Furongzhen, on the Yuan Jiang River.

5 Wulingyuan

See pp270–71.

6 Yueyang

岳阳

90 miles (145 km) N of Changsha.

5,400,000. at Chenglingji. 25 Yunmeng Rd, (0730) 828 2222.

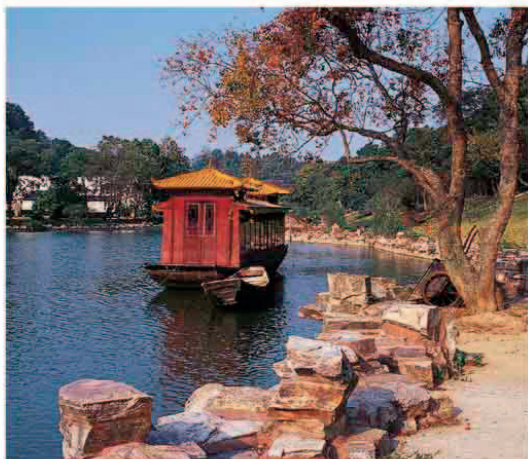
Situated on the banks of the Yangzi and the shores of Dongting Hu, China's second largest freshwater lake, Yueyang is an important stopping point for river ferries and trains on the Beijing to Guangzhou line. Its main sight, **Yueyang Tower**, was once part of a Tang-era temple. The current structure, dating from the Qing era, is an impressive sight, with its glazed yellow-tiled roofs overlooking the lake. Nearby are two pavilions, Xianmei Ting and Sanzui Ting; the latter was where Lu Dongbin, one of the Taoist Eight Immortals (see pp36–7), came to drink wine. To the south is **Cishi Ta**, a pagoda built in 1242 to propitiate flood-causing demons.

A 30-minute boat ride from Yueyang is the small island of **Junshan Dao**, a former Daoist retreat that is now famous for its silver needle tea.

Yueyang Tower

Dongting Beilu.

Tel (0730) 831 5588. 7am–6:30pm daily.



A river boat at the scenic Junshan Dao (Junshan Island)

Cult of Mao

When he became Chairman in 1949, Mao Zedong was already a figure of almost mystical stature, having led the Red Army since 1934. He was an ideologue and whilst his impatience at the pace of reform led to decisions that often brought disaster, skillful maneuvering by the party meant that he remained a heroic figurehead. The Cultural Revolution (see pp70–71) 1966–76, was, at the expense of millions of lives, a calculated attempt to make Mao a deity. The years after his death saw a diminution of his status, but since the 1990s his popularity has revived. Once again Mao is considered by millions to be *weida* – Great.



Mao's portrayal, not only as a deity but as a man of the people, was part of the ambiguity of the cult. Nonetheless, Mao remains at the center of the image surrounded by adoring women.

Poster Art

In the 1960s the Chinese propaganda machine turned out posters featuring Mao by the million. He was often portrayed as a benevolent avatar, a god come among the people to transform their lives.



A Mao study group discusses Mao's philosophy in the late 1960s. His thought briefly became a modern substitute for the Confucian philosophy that had dominated Chinese intellectual life for millennia.



"Celebrate the birth and life of Chairman Mao for 10,000 years."

Mao's face was always a ruddy red, as artists were told to avoid grey and to imbue him with cherub-like youth.



The thoughts of Chairman Mao were collected in 1961 in a volume, known as the "Little Red Book," which was distributed to all Red Guards.

Pilgrims at Shao Shan, Mao's birthplace (see p266), pay their respects. At the height of the Cultural Revolution, several trains a day pulled into Shao Shan to disgorge thousands of fervent pilgrims. In the 1980s this traffic all but ceased but was revived again in the 1990s.





"Chairman Mao is the red sun in our hearts", this poster asserts. The uppermost characters say "the East is Red," the name of a piece of music that became an anthem of the Cultural Revolution.



Light always radiates from behind Mao, just as a halo might appear behind a god in a temple.



Early poster art was slightly different in character from later propaganda. Although this poster asks people to march forward under the banner of Mao Zedong, revolutionary Soviet-endorsed communism, rather than Maoism, is celebrated on the flags.

Mao memorabilia is widely available in China, although many of the pieces on sale at markets today have been produced specifically for the tourist market.

Since Mao's death the Party has had to tread a delicate line between condemnation of his excesses and praise for his achievements. His portrait still hangs at the north end of Tian'an Men Square and his image is on all Chinese banknotes; perhaps his posthumous function is as a symbol of a united China.



Domestic shrines with a figure of Mao to whom family members would address their revolutionary prayers started replacing Daoist and Buddhist shrines during the 1960s. Mao shrines are still seen, although the Party disapproves.

Mao Attacked

In 1994 Mao's private physician, Li Zhisui, wrote *The Private Life of Chairman Mao*, in which Mao is portrayed as vain, cold, and contemptuous of his colleagues and of the suffering of the Chinese people. The book was instantly banned by the Chinese government. At the time of publication, Li was living in the United States and so escaped persecution. The book provides some surprising insights into Mao's habits and opinions. However, many critics, even those unsympathetic to Mao's politics, claim that the book is simply opportunistic.

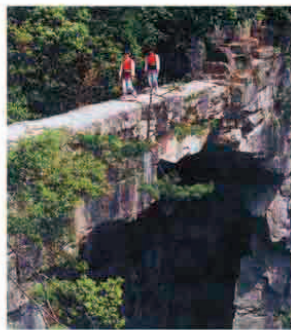


The jacket of Li's biography

⑤ Wulingyuan

武陵源

Often called Zhangjiajie, this 243-square-mile (391-sq-km) scenic preserve is a karst landscape (*see pp418–19*) of enormous beauty, with rocky pinnacles rising from a coverlet of dense sub-tropical vegetation. Wulingyuan covers three natural reserves – Zhangjiajie, Tianzi Shan, and Suoxi Yu – and contains well over 500 species of tree, including the dawn redwood, which was believed to be extinct until it was re-identified in 1948. It is also a haven for fauna, including giant salamanders, rhesus monkeys, and a wide variety of birds. The park is often cloaked in fog, adding atmosphere but obscuring most views. Summers are excessively humid.



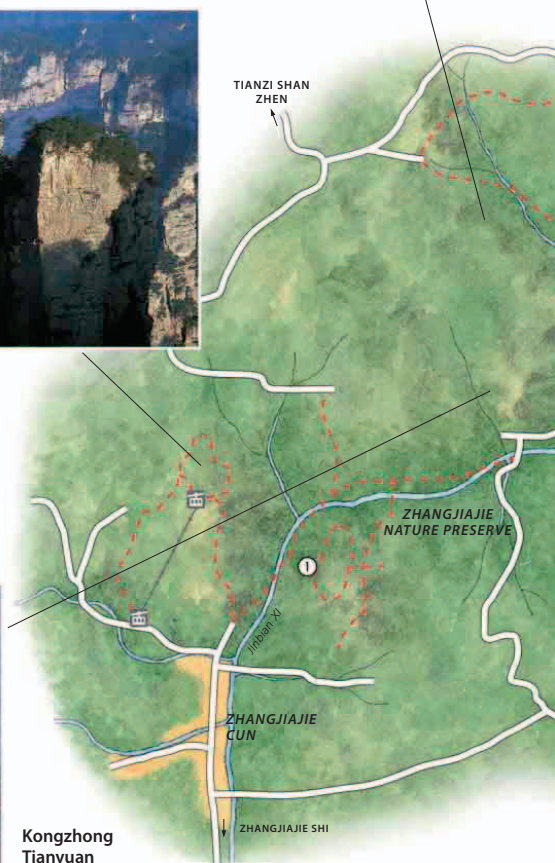
★ Xianren Qiao

The Bridge of the Immortals is a spectacular, narrow and unfenced span of rock over a deep chasm.



★ Huang Shi Zhai

At 3,450 ft (1,050 m), Huang Shi Zhai is the highest area in Wulingyuan. The climb up the 3,878 steps requires a good two hours; there is also a cable car if the stairway sounds too daunting.



Kongzhong Tianyuan

The Heavenly Garden is an isolated outcrop covered in a mantle of green and surrounded by clusters of slender pinnacles and towering peaks.

KEY

- ① **Jin Bian Yan**, a sandstone peak which stands at 1,312 ft (400 m).
- ② **Boat trips** on Baofeng Hu's pristine waters are included in the price of admission.



Tianzi Ge

In the northern part of the preserve, the pinnacle of this hill allows views of a valley forested with dozens of fine, splinter-like tors. Numerous underground caverns are found throughout the surrounding area.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

190 miles (305 km) NW of Changsha. **Open** daily. 89 Ziwu Zhong Rd, Zhangjiajie Shi, (0744) 829 8777. valid for 3 days. english.zhangjiajie.gov.cn

Transport

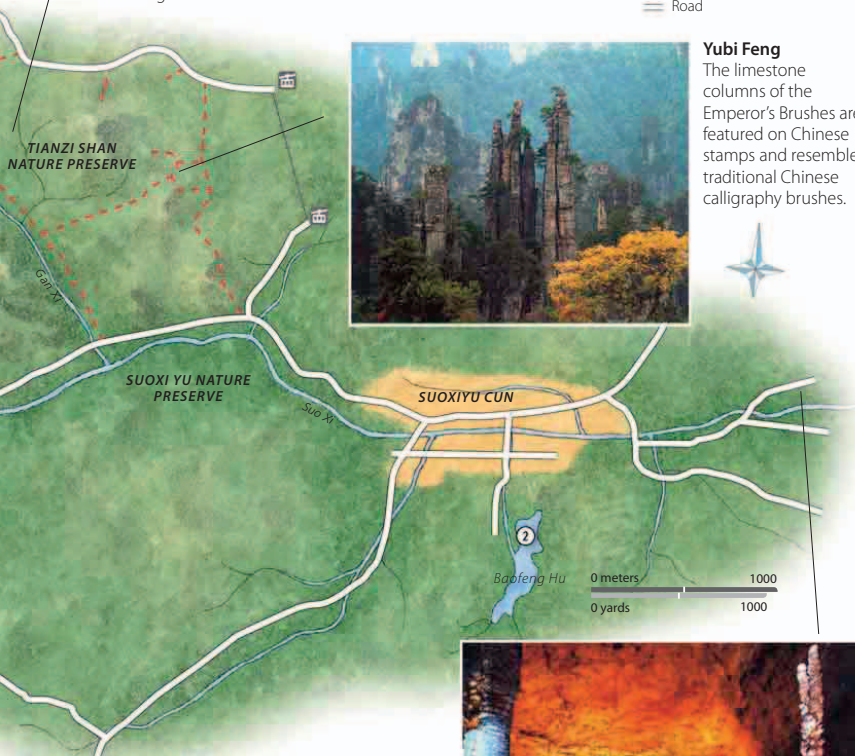
at Zhangjiajie Shi (Zhangjiajie City). to Zhangjiajie Shi. to Zhangjiajie Shi; 1 hour minibus to Zhangjiajie Cun (Zhangjiajie Village)

Key

Cable car

Path

Road

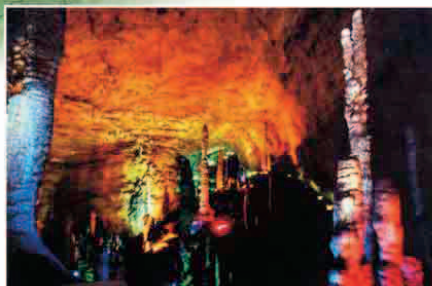


Yubi Feng

The limestone columns of the Emperor's Brushes are featured on Chinese stamps and resemble traditional Chinese calligraphy brushes.

Exploring Wulingyuan

The main entrance is just past Zhangjiajie Cun. Follow the left path for a four-hour walk that includes Huang Shi Zhai. The right path presents several options, taking you, eventually, away from the crowds. Accommodations are available in Zhangjiajie Cun, as well as Suoxiyu Cun, which is a good base for exploring the east and north of the park. Simple inns are scattered throughout the reserve.



★ Huanglong Dong

Although garishly illuminated, 7-mile (11-km) Yellow Dragon Cave loses none of its impact. Boat tours drift down its subterranean river.

① Wuhan

武汉

An important port on the Yangzi, Hubei's capital is an amalgamation of three older cities. Wuchang, capital of the State of Wu (770–221 BC), and Hanyang, founded in the Sui era (AD 581–618), are ancient settlements, while Hankou was founded in 1861 when it became a treaty port for foreign trade. As a result the city was a center for early Chinese industrialization, when iron and steel works were built here in the 19th century. It was also the site of the first uprising of the 1911 Revolution that led to the fall of the Qing dynasty and the formation of Republican China.



Ancestral musical instruments at the Hubei Provincial Museum

🏛️ Hubei Provincial Museum

156 Donghu Rd. **Tel** (027) 8679 4127.

Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

Located on the shore of Dong Hu, this is one of China's best museums. Among its highlights are items excavated in 1978 from the tomb of the Marquis of Yi, an eminent figure from the Warring States period. He died in 433 BC and was buried in a lacquered coffin, accompanied by his concubines, his dog, and thousands of bronze, stone, and wood items. Many of these are on display, but the most impressive is the panoply of bronze bells which produce two notes each when struck.

Ferry rides are available to explore the scenic area around Dong Hu, with its many pavilions and gardens.

🏠 Mao's Villa

Donghu Rd. **Tel** (027) 6888 1888. **Open** 9–11am & 2:30–5:30pm daily.

This pleasant villa (Mao Zedong Bieshu) was Mao's hideaway from 1960 to 1974, where he stayed for long periods during the first years of the Cultural Revolution. It is set in the grounds of the Donghu Hotel,

and visitors can see his living quarters, conference room, bomb shelter, and swimming pool.

🏛️ Yellow Crane Pavilion

Wuluo Rd. **Open** daily.

The Yellow Crane Pavilion on She Shan, south of the Yangzi in Wuchang district, is a reconstruction of a 3rd-century edifice that burned down in 1884. According to legend, it was built to honor one of the Daoist Eight Immortals, who paid his tavern bills by drawing cranes on the walls. The 164-ft (50-m) high pavilion is a handsome Qing-style building. It can be climbed for fine views across the city. On the eastern part of the hill is **Changchun**



Enormous bronze bell behind the Yellow Crane Pavilion

Guan, a Daoist temple with a pharmacy, where a doctor dispenses locally collected herbs. To the south is Hong Ge, a red-brick building that housed the **Former Headquarters of the Hubei Military Government** (Hong Lou) during the 1911 uprising, provoked by Sun Yat-sen (see p303). Behind the Pavilion itself is an enormous bronze temple bell which, for a small fee, visitors may strike. Sun Yat-sen's statue stands in front of the building.

🌉 Yangzi Bridge

This impressive 361-ft (110-m) long bridge was built in 1957 by the Communists. Before its construction, all road and rail traffic crossed the river by ferry. A second bridge was built a short way downriver in 1995.



Key to Symbols see back flap

Wuhan City Center

- ① Hubei Provincial Museum
- ② Mao's Villa
- ③ Yellow Crane Pavilion
- ④ Yangzi Bridge
- ⑤ Gui Shan
- ⑥ Guiyuan Si
- ⑦ Hankou



Daoist priests depicted in a wall painting at Changchun Guan

Gui Shan

Wuhan's industrial quarter of Hanyang has a few sights of interest, most of which lie on or around Gui Shan or Turtle Hill. This was named after a magic turtle that defeated a threatening water demon and prevented the Han and Yangzi rivers from flooding. The **Guqin Tai** (Lute Terrace) was where the legendary musician, Bo Ya, would come to play his lute. After the death of his friend, the woodcutter who could understand his music, Bo Ya destroyed his lute and vowed never to play again. A couple of tombs survive in the eastern part of the mountain. Near the tomb of **Xiang Jing Yu** (1895–1928), one of the first women leaders in Communist China, lies that of a semi-mythical hero from a much earlier era – **Lu Su**, a Wu general from the Three Kingdoms period.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

500 miles (800 km) W of Shanghai. **A** 10,100,000. **I** 6 Baofeng Rd, (027) 8366 9955.

Transport

T Hankou Train Station, Wuchang Train Station. **B** CAAC (buses to airport), Hankou Bus Station, Hanyang Bus Station, Wuchang Bus Station. **F** Yangzi Ferry Terminal.

Guiyuan Si

20 Cuiweiheing Rd. **Tel** (027) 8484 4756. **Open** 7:30am–6pm daily. **I**

This Buddhist temple in western Hanyang was founded in the early Qing era (1644–62), although the current buildings are late Qing and early Republican. It has a few ancient relics including a Northern Wei Buddha statue, but is most famous for its hall of 500 *arhat* statues sculpted in the 1820s, including a statue of Buddha carved from a single piece of jade.



Buddha statue, Guiyuan Si

Hankou

From 1861, the district of Hankou was the site of the former foreign concession. This area has several fine examples of European-style colonial architecture. The best are located between the river and Zhongshan Dadao, particularly along Yanjiang Dadao and Jiangnan Road. The old **Customs House** looking over the river is a vast Renaissance style building with a striking gray-stone portico and Corinthian capitals.



Colorful kites on sale on the Yangzi riverfront



Jingzhou Museum, part of the Taoist Kaiyuan Temple

8 Jingzhou 荆州

Jingzhou Municipality. 130 miles (210 km) W of Wuhan. 6,600,000. 52 Jiedong Rd, (0716) 846 6429.

A worthwhile short stop if cruising the river, the ancient town of Jingzhou is about 5 miles (8 km) to the west of its modern counterpart Shashi. The old town is ringed by walls 20 ft (7 m) in height, which were constructed by General Guan Yu of the State of Shu (AD 221–63). Within the walls stands the Jingzhou Museum. This has a large collection of ancient silk and fabrics and, more notably, finds from a Western Han tomb of a court official called Sui including his gory but well-preserved corpse complete with organs.

9 Yichang 宜昌

Yichang District. 190 miles (305 km) W of Wuhan. 52 Jiefang Rd, (0717) 676 0392.

Yichang, which was once a treaty port for foreign traders, is now associated with the Gezhou Dam, completed in 1986 and the huge and controversial Three Gorges Dam, completed in 2008. It is possible to visit the site of the Three Gorges Dam at Sandouping, which lies 24 miles (38 km) upstream. The town is also a starting point for a visit to Shennongjia scenic area.

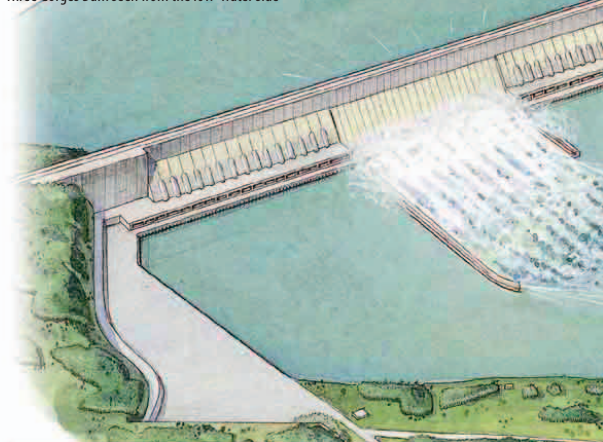
The Three Gorges Dam

长江三峡

The construction of the Three Gorges Dam, at over 600 ft (180 m) high and more than a mile (2 km) across, was intended to provide a significant amount of China's energy, curb the Yangzi's tendency to flood, and channel some of the country's wealth for long concentrated along the coastal regions, into China's heartland. However, creating a 400-mile (645-km) long reservoir has also meant the relocation of many thousands of people, the obliteration of important cultural sites, and long-term environmental damage.



Three Gorges Dam seen from the low-water side



Environmental Issues

Hundreds of miles downstream, the rapidly growing municipality of Chongqing has been pumping untreated waste and chemicals into the Yangzi. With the river no longer able to flush this away, the fear is that it could all collect in a 400-mile (645-km) long cesspool. Additionally, the reduced flow of the water could substantially increase the silting up of subsidiary waterways, further harming the fragile ecosystem and closing the migration routes of many fish species and rare freshwater dolphins.



Part of the Three Gorges before the water levels rose 575 ft (175 m)



★ Jar Hill Observation Platform

This highpoint provides an excellent bird's eye view of the dam as well as a museum showing the history of the construction.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Sandouping, 32 miles (51 km) W of Yichang. ⑦ CITS, 21 Yunji Rd, (0717) 622 0848. Visitor Center:

Open daily. 🗺️

Transport

🚗 4 from Yichang train station or hire a minibus or taxi for a couple of hours.



KEY

① The Ship Lifting Tower is simply a large and very powerful elevator for ships less than 80-ft (25-m) long – faster than using the 5-level lock.

② The Yangzi Sculpture is a large lump of eroded rock that is said to be from the Yangzi River.



★ 5-Level Double Ship Lock

At over a mile long (1600 m) this lock can raise or lower ships a total vertical distance of 370 ft (113 m) and is, not surprisingly, the largest lock system in the world. It takes nearly three hours to pass through the lock gates.







Dense virgin forests lining a gorge at Shennongjia

10 Shennongjia

神农架

144 miles (230 km) NW of Yichang. ✈ from Hongping, 25 miles (40 km) from Songbai. 🚗 from Yichang to entrance at Muyu, then hire a car. 📞 100 Yiling Da Dao, (0717) 690 8026. 📍 from Yichang tourist office & Forestry Office Travel Service, Muyu.

This remote and little-visited forest reserve has some remarkable scenery. It is covered with rare trees and several hundred species of plants used in traditional medicine, samples of which were introduced to the West by the botanist Ernest Wilson in the early 20th century. It is also home to many of China's rarest animals, including the splendid golden monkey.

Inside the reserve, at **Xiaolong Tan**, is a museum dedicated to the legendary Chinese Wild Man (*ye ren*), who is like the Himalayan Yeti and just as hard to find. The first reported sighting was in 1924. Walking trails around Xiaolong Tan lead into the heart of the reserve, providing an excellent opportunity to see the rare golden monkeys, giant salamanders, and golden pheasants. Some trails follow forest roads, others meander gently across meadows, while the crudest lead to mountain tops. Foreign visitors can explore the Muyu area, where peaks reach 10,187 ft (3,105 m). It may be possible to visit the main town of Songbai, but only if accompanied by a tour guide.

11 Wudang Shan

神农架

250 miles (400 km) NW of Wuhan. 🚗 from Wuhan or Xiangfan to Wudang Shan town. 🚗 from Shiyan, Xiangfan or Liuliping to Wudang Shan town. 📍

The many peaks of Wudang Shan – the highest reaching 5,289 ft (1,612 m) at **Tianzhu** (Heavenly Pillar) **Peak** – have been associated with Daoism since the Tang era. Wudang Shan has also been known for its martial arts since the Song-dynasty monk, Zhang Sanfeng, created a style called Wudang boxing from which *tai ji quan* later developed. After years of neglect, the many temples here have been refurbished and are now flourishing. The entry point is the town of Wudang Shan, which has little to offer except the temple museum of **Tai Shan Miao** and the ruins of Yuxu

Gong temple. Wudang Shan lies to the south of town, and there are several ways of reaching it. A path near the railway station takes eight hours to reach the summit at Tianzhu Peak. Minibuses go about three-quarters of the way up, from where it is another two hours on foot to the top. Other options are sedan chairs and a cable car that runs between a point called Qiongtai and the summit. Going up by minibus, visitors first pass the **Martial Arts School** and then the **Zixiao Gong** (Purple Cloud Palace), an impressive Ming temple that has become the busiest in the area. Inside the main hall is a beautiful spiral cupola. From the minibus terminus, a short diversion leads to the **Nanyan Gong** temple at the very edge of the cliff. Nearby is **Dragon Head Rock** that projects horizontally from the edge, and is covered in sculpted designs. The main path goes past **Lang Mei Xian Ci**, a shrine dedicated to the monk Zhang Sanfeng. The path eventually divides into two at Huanglong Dong. Of the two paths, it is easier to take the one leading straight on to the group of temples at Tianzhu Peak. At the summit, the peak is surmounted by **Jindian Gong** (Golden Hall), built of gilded copper and bronze in 1416. It has a statue of the Ming emperor Zhen Wu, who retreated to Wudang Shan in the 15th century. The views from Tianzhu, of razor-edge cliffs covered in mist, are magnificent.



The Ming-era Zixiao Gong (Purple Cloud Palace), Wudang Shan

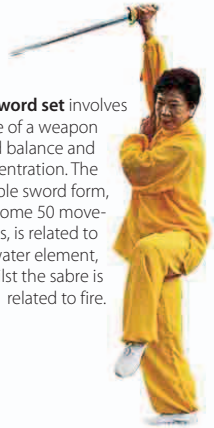
Tai Ji Quan (Tai Chi)

Practiced daily by millions of Chinese, *tai ji quan*, or “Supreme Ultimate Fist,” is a slow-moving, graceful form of kung fu (see p165). Developed over a thousand years ago by Daoist recluses and monks, *tai ji quan* is based on the movements of birds and animals and the Daoist concept of *yin* and *yang* or equal opposites. All of the movements, each with their own names and prescribed patterns, have elements of *yin* and *yang*; movements contract and expand, sink and rise, move inwards and outwards. The movements follow one another fluidly and sets can involve anywhere from 12 to 108 moves, and take up to an hour to complete. *Tai ji quan* does have martial aspects, but is utilized chiefly to improve the flow of *qi* (see pp38–9), or vital energy, through the body. The exercises leave the practitioner feeling revitalized and relaxed.



Zhang Sanfeng, an official, retired in disgust at the Court to Wudang Shan. Inspired by a battle between a crane and a snake, he came up with the basis for *tai ji quan*, combining knowledge of kung fu and Daoist health principles.

The Sword set involves the use of a weapon to aid balance and concentration. The simple sword form, with some 50 movements, is related to the water element, whilst the sabre is related to fire.



Movements Of The *Tai Ji Quan* Set

Tai ji quan's numerous schools have different sets and movements. “Whip to one side” is a common move often repeated in a set.



Exercising in public squares is a feature of daily life in China. Early in the morning crowds of mostly elderly people perform *tai ji quan* in large groups executing the movements in graceful unison.







THE SOUTH

Introducing the South	282–289
Fujian	290–299
Guangdong & Hainan	300–311
Hong Kong & Macau	312–343

The South at a Glance

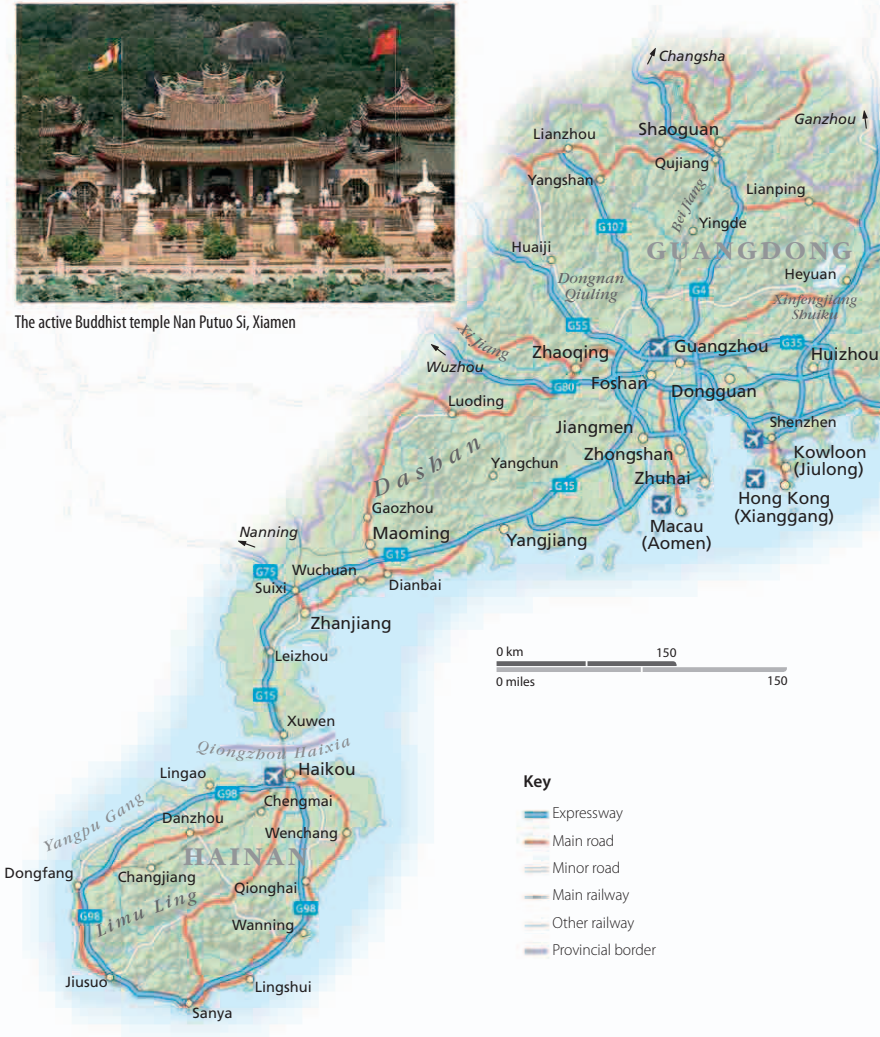
Encompassing the provinces of Fujian, Guangdong, and Hainan, as well as Macau and Hong Kong, the South is China's most familiar region, mainly because millions of immigrants from the area have moved overseas, taking their cooking and traditions with them. Yet, with the exception of Hong Kong and Guangzhou, the area rarely features on travelers' itineraries. There is much to enjoy, however, from the ancient Ming city of Chaozhou and Wuyi Shan's superb scenery, to the historic ports of Quanzhou, Xiamen, and Shantou along the coasts of Guangdong and Fujian, and the tropical beaches of Hainan.



Fishermen laboring on the beach at Meizhou Island



The active Buddhist temple Nan Putuo Si, Xiamen





Women of the Hui'an minority,
Chongwu



Traffic moving slowly along the bustling Gloucester Road in
Wan Chai, Hong Kong

Getting Around

The main airport hubs are at Hong Kong and Guangzhou. Hong Kong offers connections to destinations all over the world, while Guangzhou has direct flights to cities throughout China and Asia. Xiamen, Fuzhou, Sanya, and Haikou also have airports with several domestic flights. Trains, some air-conditioned, link much of the region although routes can be circuitous. The extensive bus network offers varying degrees of comfort depending on the destination. There are frequent ferry services, particularly between Hong Kong, Macau, and various mainland ports.

For additional map symbols see back flap

A PORTRAIT OF THE SOUTH

An enduring maritime tradition has influenced life and culture in the South. The long coastline along the South China Sea gave the ports of Fujian and Guangdong easy access to trade routes leading East and West. Trade also brought the British and Portuguese to the South, ultimately leading to the colonization of Hong Kong and Macau. Only Hainan Island remained isolated from the developments that took place across the sea on mainland China.

Guangdong and Fujian are particularly mountainous, and although the mountains are not especially high, they have isolated the provinces from the political mainstream of the center and north of the country. Consequently, the South has tended to look outwards, across the sea, and over the centuries has been far more inclined than much of China to deal with foreigners – either by design or default.

From the 7th century onwards, Arab traders introduced Islam to China through ports such as Guangzhou (Canton) and Quanzhou, and took silk, porcelain, and tea away with them. It was from these ports that China launched its overseas naval expeditions. The Ming emperors sponsored the great voyages of Admiral Zheng He, a Muslim eunuch, who crossed the Indian Ocean from Fuzhou to Africa in the early

1400s. Almost a century later, Portuguese vessels ventured up the Pearl River to Guangzhou; an expedition that eventually led to the colonization of Macau in 1557. The British soon followed, but their nefarious policy of flooding the Chinese market with opium led to the two Opium Wars (1839–42, 1856–60), after which China ceded Hong Kong and the tip of the Kowloon Peninsula to Britain.

Over the centuries, waves of Southern Chinese migrated overseas, first to Southeast Asia, and later westward as far as North America, as indentured labor. Their global presence is one of the reasons why visitors consider this the most familiar region in China.

The Cantonese culinary tradition is distinct and known the world over. The local cuisine, however, may encompass



Hong Kong Island's glittering skyline, seen from Kowloon across Victoria Harbour



Tiled roofs above the harbor at Meizhou Island

outlandish ingredients not used in overseas restaurants; it is said, with some justification, that the Cantonese will eat anything.

Teas from the south are exported throughout the world and Fujian produces some of China's finest, including oolong. The area has cultivated the arts of tea brewing and tasting, and so-called "tea art halls," where resident brew masters demonstrate techniques associated with particular varieties of tea, are still found in Fuzhou, the province's capital.

The South's largely subtropical climate has encouraged a gregarious lifestyle, which tends to manifest itself in an active, open-air streetlife. The local language of Cantonese is quite different from Mandarin, the national language. The sound is distinctive, even to the untrained ear. The region's other major dialect is Fujianese (*Minnan hua*).

The South is home to several ethnic communities, including the Hakka and the Li. The Hakka migrated to south and central China from the north. The impressive round mansions of the Fujianese Hakka are a highlight of a trip to the interior. The Li are Hainan's original people, who settled here almost 2,000 years ago and lived a primeval existence until the 1930s. The Central Highlands around Tongshi offer glimpses into their unique culture.

Strong overseas connections have meant that in the last 20 years, money has poured back into the South. China's more flexible modern economy as well as large investments from Hong Kong have also enhanced the region's affluence. Development has been rapid, propelling the growth of new cities, such as Shenzhen, helped by their status as Special Economic Zones.

Inspired by Hong Kong's sleek, contemporary

architecture, construction has been frantic and the proliferation of high-rise buildings has transformed the skyline of historic cities.

There are still many hidden gems to explore among the region's skyscrapers and new developments. Chief among these are Guangzhou's Nan Yue

Tomb, the rarely visited Chaozhou with its still-intact Ming city wall, and one of China's oldest mosques in Quanzhou.

Some of the finest

examples of colonial architecture can be seen in Macau and on the islet of Gulang Yu in Xiamen. Tropical Hainan's main appeal lies in its beaches, but the mountainous center is worth exploring as well. Finally, there is Hong Kong, a frenetic, cosmopolitan city that vibrates day and night with an energy that is in keeping with its status as a global financial center.



A traditional Hakka dwelling



Women of the Hui'an minority, Chongwu

Rice

Rice has long been vital to the Chinese as both a food staple and a cash crop. So intrinsic to life is the grain that “*Chi fan le ma?*” (Have you eaten rice today?) is one of the most common greetings in China. Rice-growing is thought to have its origins in southern China around 10,000 BC, although the flooded-field method that allowed larger yields and required massive irrigation projects was not perfected until thousands of years later. Today, rice is grown throughout much of China and accounts for 35 percent of the world’s total.



Rice plants, like most other cereals, produce dense flower-heads, with the grains tightly packed inside protective husks.



An endless chain of wooden pallets pulls water from a lower source to the fields by the pedaling power of laborers. Although much irrigation is now mechanized, numerous ingenious devices, many of them ancient technology once fashioned from bamboo, are still used to water the fields.



Japonica rice



Glutinous rice

Japonica, a sub-species of *Oryza sativa*, is the most common rice in China, and is generally short grained and slightly sticky. Glutinous rice, grown in the south-east, becomes a sticky mass when cooked. It is often served wrapped in bamboo leaves.



Rice Products

The Chinese have found many uses for their pervasive staple. During the Ming dynasty, builders used water in which glutinous rice had been cooked as mortar mix to strengthen defensive walls. Rice straw, the leaves of the plant left after harvest, is pulped to produce a fine white paper, perfect for paintings and kites. Husks are used as fertilizer, packing material, or simply fed to animals. Rice is ground to produce rice flour which can be rolled and pulled to create a huge range of noodles. Numerous rice wines are sold in China, some of them quite palatable, including sweet Shaoxing, made from glutinous rice.



Extracting juice from rice to ferment and make into jiu (wine or spirits)



Water buffalo pull plows, harrows, and other agricultural implements. These sturdy animals thrive in the waterlogged conditions, produce valuable manure, and require less maintenance than tractors.



Terraced Hillsides

Vast areas of China are dominated by rice cultivation, and paddy fields have transformed the landscape, especially in the subtropical regions of the south, where cascades of terraces clothe many hillsides. Low mudbanks trap the water as it trickles down the slopes, creating an attractive sequence of narrow, contour-hugging fields which are worked mainly by hand. Farmers are not completely reliant on rainfall because the water flow is carefully controlled, as is the depth, which is typically 6 in (15 cm). Ever resourceful, some farmers raise edible fish such as grass carp in the paddy waters.

Cultivating Rice

In much of rural China, rice growing is very much a hands-on activity, and traditional methods are still used, especially in hilly country. The work is labor-intensive, but the two or three harvests a year that are possible in the south make the efforts worthwhile.



Rice seedlings are grown in special protected beds. After about 40 days they are transplanted by hand to the paddies.



Planting is tiring, back-breaking work, and in some areas is now mechanized. Teams of workers wade through the paddy fields planting the seedlings one by one.

At harvest time, the fields are drained before the rice plants are cut either by hand-held sickle or by machine.



To dry the rice, mounds of freshly harvested grain are raked out in a thin layer and left to warm in the sun.

Winnowing, tossing or pouring the rice from a basket, separates the dried rice grains from their husks – the wind carries away the chaff.



Regional Food: The South

The southern school of Chinese cooking, called by the generic name Cantonese, is centered around Guangzhou, where the Pearl River delta runs into the South China Sea. Situated at the mouth of this estuary lies Hong Kong, another culinary center of China. Fish, of course, plays a major role in this coastal economy and rice is the dominant food grain. Other food crops include tea, peanuts, sugar cane, and subtropical fruits such as bananas, pineapples, oranges, and lychees. Large-scale emigration from the south has meant that Chinese food served outside China is likely to be southern Chinese cooking.



Bitter melon and water spinach



Lush and colorful vegetables on display in the market

Guangzhou (Canton)

The epicenter of Chinese cuisine, Guangzhou owes its culinary primacy to its geography. As a port it had a well-off, cosmopolitan merchant class who could afford expensive foods. It also has a subtropical climate and a summer that lasts for almost six months, with the rest of the year divided into autumn and spring: there is no winter. As a result crops grow luxuriantly all year round and

supplement the abundance of fish. Despite this fecundity, the size of the population the land has to support means that it has always struggled to provide enough food. Therefore the Cantonese also eat less expensive "delicacies" not

popular in other provinces such as frogs' legs, turtles, dogs, snakes, and nearly every kind of animal there is. Food has become almost a religion to the Cantonese and the locals claim that in Guangzhou "there is a restaurant every five steps."



A selection of dim sum dishes

Regional Dishes and Specialties



Soy-cured bacon and sausages

Most people probably associate Cantonese cuisine with *dim sum* (meaning "dot on the heart" or "snack"), delectable, dainty bites of steamed or fried food: dumplings with prawn or pork fillings, miniature spareribs, deep-fried spring rolls, paper-wrapped prawns, chicken feet, or glossy custard-filled tarts. These snacks are to be eaten during the day for lunch with pots of tea, never as dinner.

Other famous specialties are the fish and shellfish dishes, and roast meats – duck, *cha shao* (roast pork), and suckling pig. Key to the southern school of cuisine are its various sauces. Although such fresh food is often quickly steamed with a few simple aromatics, sauces such as oyster, hoi sin (sweet soy bean and garlic), mushroom, lemon, black bean and *chu hou* (soy bean, garlic and ginger) are also used to add flavor.



Steamed Seabass: steamed with scallions and ginger, and seasoned with light soy sauce, rice wine and sesame oil.

Chaozhou & Dongjiang

Chaozhou (also known as Teochew) is a richer cuisine than Cantonese. Because this cuisine specializes in shellfish and seafood, freshness is vital – hence the emphasis on buying live animals or fish, be it at a market or restaurant. They like to use stocks flavoured with fish sauce, hot sauce, or red rice vinegar. Dongjiang is a more rustic and salty cooking – soy-cured bacon and air-dried sausages are a specialty – and it also uses more poultry. This cooking is also sometimes known as Hakka, meaning “guest people,” which refers to the immigrants from northern China who settled in the



Dried vegetable and spices stall

south some time after the invasion by Mongols in the 13th century. Later there were other large-scale migrations overseas, one of the reasons why most Chinese restaurants in the West serve only southern Chinese (Cantonese) food.



Fish drying in a shop in Hong Kong

Hong Kong

Although mainly Chinese, Hong Kong is a unique city in China: as an international port, it has been open to outside influences. So, while most of the restaurants are Cantonese, you will also find all the regional Chinese cuisines here alongside those from other Asian countries and Europe. A gastromomic supermarket, Hong Kong doesn't really have a specialty dish although some claim that “smelly beancurd” (a pungent type of fermented tofu) fulfils that role. Hong Kong is a 24-hour city and, all day every day, all the food places, from the humble street stands to the luxury banqueting halls, are filled with people eating. The story goes that you could visit a different restaurant each day for a year, and never eat the same dish twice.

On the Menu

Seafood with Vegetables A popular dish of prawns, squid, and scallops stir-fried with whatever vegetables are available and noodles.

“White-cut” Chicken A whole chicken blanched in boiling water or stock, then left to cool in the liquid under cover for 6–8 hours. Tender and moist.

Stir-fried Squid with Black Bean Sauce In fact any seafood such as crab, lobster, or prawns may be substituted for the squid. This can also be made with chilies for a more spicy alternative.

Eight-treasure Stuffed Beancurd The stuffing is pork and prawn – vegetarians should stick with the Eight-treasure Buddha's Special (see p186–7).

Steamed Chicken with Dried Mushrooms Chicken pieces steamed with Chinese mushrooms – simple but great.



Lobster with Ginger & Scallions: lobster braised with aromatics and served on a bed of soft noodles.



Oyster Sauce Beef: stir-fried beef with mushrooms and vegetables, all cut to the same size, in oyster sauce.



Roast Meats: choice cuts of suckling pig, duck, pork, and chicken served cold with tasty dipping sauces.



FUJIAN

The sea and mountains form the essential features of the province of Fujian. Its major cities thrive as coastal ports, while inland there is the spectacular, rugged beauty of Wuyi Shan.

Fujian's historical importance dates back almost as far as the Warring States period (475–221 BC), when the Yue people, defeated by the State of Chu (today's Hubei and Hunan), migrated southwards to settle in this part of China and Vietnam. Those who came to what is now Fujian were called Min Yue, later known as the Min people. Even today the Fujianese are sometimes referred to as Min and the southern Fujian language as Minnan Hua. The native people who preceded them are thus called the Ancient Min. Very little survives from this period, apart from the mysterious 3,000-year-old boat-shaped coffins, found lodged high above the river in the Wuyi Mountains. The main attractions are strung along the busy coastline and include the historic ports of Xiamen and Quanzhou, as well as Fuzhou, the capital of Fujian, which was a major maritime center for more than 1,000 years. Other attractions are the historic stone town of Chongwu, and the small island of Meizhou, birthplace of the important Goddess of the Sea. Inland, Fujian's hinterland is wild and unspoilt enough to protect the last remaining South China tigers. It is also the home of the Hakka people, whose traditional dwellings can be seen at the rural settlements around Yongding (see p296).



❶ Xiamen

厦门

An attractive city with a bustling nautical atmosphere, Xiamen was known as Amoy in the 19th century. It was first settled in the Song dynasty (960–1279 AD) but did not become a significant port until the Ming dynasty. It also served as an important stronghold against the Manchus when they invaded in the 17th century. The resistance was led by the legendary pirate and Ming loyalist Zheng Chenggong, also known as Koxinga, who is commemorated in the city. Xiamen became an early treaty port in the 19th century, when the foreign community established itself on Gulangyu Island. The city was also declared one of China's first Special Economic Zones in the 1980s.



Colorful rooftop dragon, Nan Putuo Si

🏯 Nan Putuo Si

515 Siming Nan Lu. **Tel** (0592) 208 7282. **Open** 5am–6pm daily. 🕒

This busy temple was founded in the Tang era in the extravagant southern style (see p306). Its three halls hold a wealth of Buddhist statuary. The Heavenly King Hall has an image of Wei Tuo, Protector of Buddhist Doctrine, who holds a stick pointing down to signify that the temple offers lodging to pilgrims.

🏯 Huxiyan

A quaint temple lies high on a rocky outcrop at Huxiyan (Tiger Stream Rock). Another temple, Bailu Dong (White Deer Cave), is even higher up the hill. Built in the Ming era, its main draw is the fine view across the city.

🌿 Wanshi Botanical Garden

25 Huyuan Lu. **Tel** (0592) 203 8471. **Open** 6:30am–6pm daily. 🕒

This large scenic area houses over 5,300 species of plants, especially from South China and Southeast Asia. These include eucalyptus, bamboo, and a redwood tree planted by the former US

President Richard Nixon. A bullet-scarred rock marks the spot where Koxinga killed his cousin.

🏛️ Overseas Chinese Museum

493 Siming Nan Lu. **Tel** (0592) 208 5345.

Open 9:30am–4:30pm Tue–Sun. 🕒

In this museum, the first section focuses on the story of Fujianese emigration, using photographs, paintings, and mementoes. The second houses bronzes, pottery, and artworks once owned by non-resident Chinese. The bronze collection spans the period from the Shang (16th century BC) to the Republican era. The final section covers the environment and natural world. The centerpiece is the 50-ft (15-m) long skeleton of a sei whale.

🏯 Huli Shan Paotai

Daxue Lu. **Open** daily. 🕒

Situated in the Huli Shan Fort along the coast, this huge cannon was made for the Qing government by a German



Cannons guard the ramparts at Huli Shan Fort

manufacturer in 1891. Almost 46-ft (14-m) long and weighing 49 tons (50,000 kg), it had a firing range of 6 miles (10 km). Taiwan's islands are visible from the ramparts – a fascination for locals, who were forbidden entry to the site until 1984.

🏫 Jimei School Village

Open 9am–4:30pm Tue–Sun. 🕒

Located 9 miles (15 km) north of the city, Jimei School Village was founded by the philanthropist Tan Kah Kee (Chen Jiageng) in 1913. A successful Singapore businessman, he returned to China in 1950 and held various government posts. Built in Chinese-Gothic style, the college is set in a beautiful park filled with pagodas and close to the sea. Tan Kah Kee's former residence and a small museum are also here.

🏝️ Gulangyu Island

Xiamen Seaworld **Tel** (0592) 206

7668. **Open** 8am–6pm. 🕒 Shuz-

huang Garden: **Open** daily. 🕒 Sun-

light Rock: **Open** daily. 🕒 Koxinga

Memorial Hall: **Open** 8am–5:30pm.

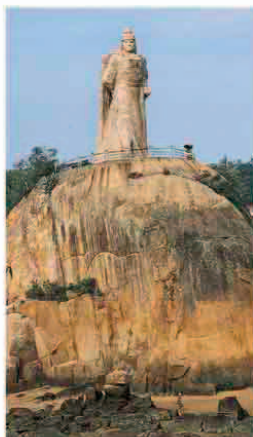
The tranquil island of Gulangyu lies only a ten-minute boat ride



Gulangyu Island's tiny streets and elegant colonial houses

from Xiamen, with attractive buildings, and no traffic apart from battery-powered buggies. The island first became important in 1842 after the signing of the treaty of Nanking, when the resident representatives of the foreign powers established themselves here. It soon grew into a European-style town with churches, consulates, and spacious villas. In 1903, it was designated an International Settlement for Europeans and Japanese, complete with a municipal council and Sikh police force, and it retained this status until the end of World War II. The island still retains an atmosphere reminiscent of Southern Europe.

Spread over nearly one square mile (2.5 sq km), Gulangyu Island is very pleasant to explore on foot, with its tiny streets and elegant houses, fronted by pretty flower gardens. Close to the ferry terminal is **Xiamen Seaworld**, which houses an interesting collection of sharks, seals, dolphins, penguins, and tropical fish. To the southeast is the **Statue of Koxinga**, which commemorates Xiamen's



Statue of the legendary rebel commander, Koxinga, Gulangyu

famous rebel. Koxinga and his fleet held out against the encroaching Manchus for years. He is also credited with ousting the Dutch from Taiwan. Farther south along the coast is **Shuzhuang Garden**. Built in 1931 as a private villa, the garden opened to the public in 1955. Today visitors are enticed by its numerous tropical plants and flowers, as well as its complex of traditional Chinese gardens.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

155 miles (250 km) SW of

Fuzhou. 3,500,000.

78 Huajian Building, Xinhua Lu, (0592) 204 6847.

Transport

Hubin Nan Lu Bus Station, Xiahe Lu Bus Station, Songbo Bus Station.

to Gulangyu Island from the ferry terminal near Lujiang Hotel.

Adjacent to the gardens is the attractive, but usually crowded **Gangzaihou Beach**. Close by to its north is **Sunlight Rock**, the island's highest point that can easily be reached by cable car. At the foot of the rock is the **Koxinga Memorial Hall**, which houses a handful of Koxinga's personal possessions, such as his jade belt and parts of his robe, as well as other historical items.

Farther toward the southwestern coast is **Yingxiong Shan**, with an unusual open-air aviary at the top of the building. It is filled with colorful parrots, egrets, and tropical pigeons.

Xiamen City Center & Gulangyu Island

- ① Nan Putuo Si
- ② Huxiyan
- ③ Wanshi Botanical Garden
- ④ Overseas Chinese Museum
- ⑤ Xiamen Seaworld
- ⑥ Statue of Koxinga
- ⑦ Shuzhuang Garden
- ⑧ Gangzaihou Beach
- ⑨ Sunlight Rock
- ⑩ Koxinga Memorial Hall
- ⑪ Yingxiong Shan



Key to Symbols see back flap





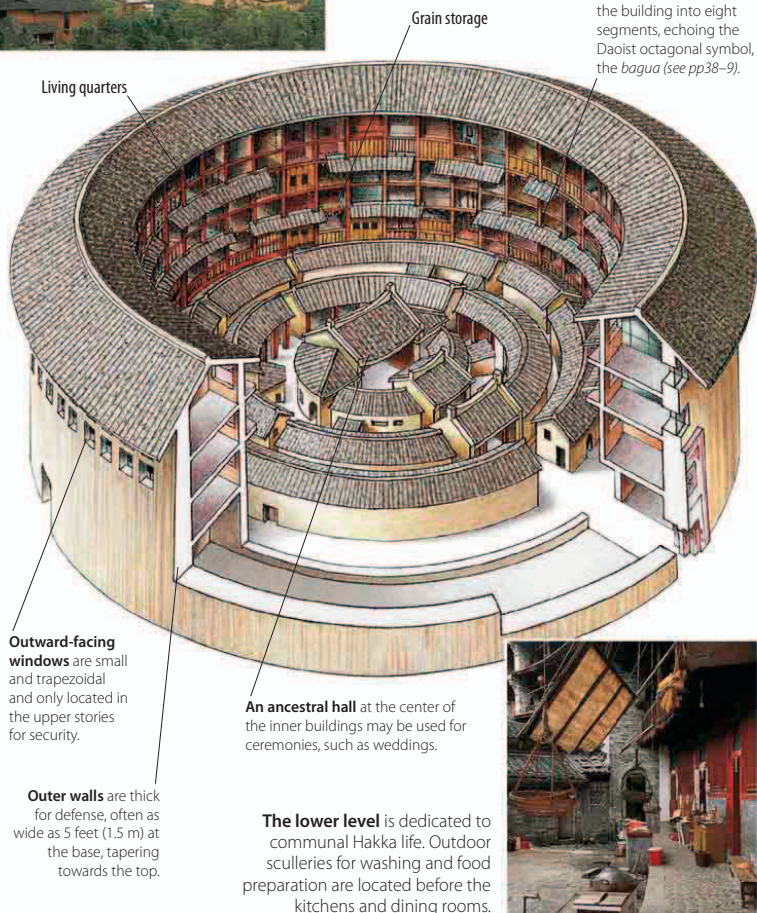
Earthen Dwellings of Yongding

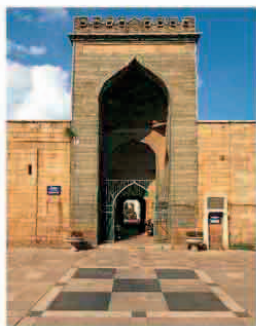
The Hakka people were driven south from the Yellow River plains by war in the late Tang and early Song dynasties. It is perhaps due to their past experiences of persecution, and to their presence in a new land (their official minority name is *Kejia*, which means “guest people”) that they adopted a fortress-like style of rammed earth buildings called *tulou*. Capable of housing several hundred people, these round or square buildings are constructed around a courtyard, containing a maze of storage sheds and public meeting rooms. Hukeng is one of the more accessible towns in the Yongding area with several Hakka dwellings. The train from Xiamen to Longyan takes 1 hour (the bus takes 4 hours) after which it is a 2 hour bus ride to Hukeng.



Numerous *tulou* are located in the countryside surrounding Yongding. Although the round houses are the most celebrated, other styles are found in the vicinity: massive square dwellings similar in scale to the round houses and smaller rammed-earth residences facing onto a central courtyard.

Thick fire walls divide the building into eight segments, echoing the Daoist octagonal symbol, the *bagua* (see pp38–9).





Entrance to Qingjing Mosque, one of China's oldest extant mosques

② Quanzhou 泉州

62 miles (100 km) N of Xiamen. 8,200,000. Fengze Jie, (0595) 2217 7719.

Located on the Jin Jiang, Quanzhou was China's principal port during the Song and Yuan dynasties. The city's trade with India and elsewhere resulted in a permanent community of foreign residents. It was known to Arab geographers as Zaitun, from which the word "satin" is derived. Although Quanzhou's importance declined during the Ming dynasty, the town still offers insights into its maritime past.

Currently roofless, the **Qingjing Mosque** was first built in 1009, with extensive repairs in 1309, 1350, and 1609. Unlike other mosques in southern China which follow the traditional Chinese architectural style, this one is an elegant stone structure with an obvious Arabian influence. The surviving gate is supposedly modeled on a mosque in medieval Damascus. Its museum details the port's significance as a trade center.

In the north of the city, the **Kaiyuan Si** was built in AD 686 and called Lianhua Si (Lotus Temple), after a lotus miraculously grew on a mulberry bush that still exists to the west of the Great Hall. In the Song period, 1,000 monks worshiped here. Among the temple's three halls, the Sweet Dew Vinaya Hall has a splendid ceiling and a throne on which sits Bodhisattva Ksitigarbha, Guardian of the

Domain of Death. On each side of the halls are two ancient pagodas with carvings.

North of Kaiyuan Si is the **Qingyuan Shan** scenic area with the enormous **Laojun Yan**, a Song-dynasty sculpture of the Daoist Laozi (see p37).

Northeast of the city center lies the **Quanzhou Maritime Museum**. One of its highlights is a Song trading vessel dating to 1274. Found in 1973, it was made of cedar wood and would have had sails of bamboo and hemp. At that time, such ships traveled to Arabia, Africa, and Asia, exporting porcelain and silks and importing spices, ivory, and glass. The museum also has stone carvings relating to Nestorian Christianity and to the Arab presence in the city.

Qingjing Mosque
108–112 Tumen Jie. **Tel** (0595) 2219 3553. **Open** daily.

Kaiyuan Si
176 Xi Jie. **Tel** (0595) 2238 3285. **Open** daily.

Maritime Museum
425 Donghu Jie. **Tel** (0595) 2210 0561. **Open** daily.

③ Chongwu 崇武

20 miles (32 km) E of Quanzhou. from Quanzhou to Hui'an, then minibus to Chongwu.

The Chongwu Peninsula's importance as a defensive stronghold was bolstered by the construction of the stone town of Chongwu in 1387, as a

bastion against pirates. As part of its defense, the granite houses had flat roofs, making them almost invisible from beyond the forbidding 22-foot (6.6-m) high boundary wall. The main inhabitants are the Hui'an people, whose women wear distinctive cropped blue tops and wide black trousers. Fishing and stone carving are the main industries today, but the walls and old streets of Chongwu's fortress days still make a striking impression.

④ Meizhou Island 梅州岛

35 miles (56 km) NE of Quanzhou. from Putian to Wenjia, then ferry.



Statue of Mazu, Meizhou Island

For the Fujianese, this island near Putian is associated with Mazu, Goddess of the Sea and Protector of Sailors (see p155). Mazu is the deification of a

10th-century girl, whose powers enabled her to make maritime predictions, and her birthday is the island's main festival,

celebrated on the 23rd day of the third lunar month. Numerous temples to the goddess dot the island, all the way up the hillside where her statue proudly stands on the summit. The main temple, **Mazu Miao**, is a short walk uphill from the pier. Rebuilt many times, it now resembles Beijing's Forbidden City. Due to the effort involved in getting here, it may be worthwhile staying overnight in one of the island's numerous hotels.



Flat-roofed houses below the level of the wall, Chongwu



European-style architecture on Zhongzhou Island, Fuzhou

5 Fuzhou

福州

155 miles (250 km) N of Xiamen. 7,120,000. 121 Dong Jie, (0591) 8711 9928.

With its scenic location on the Min Jiang, Fujian's capital was a major maritime port for over 1,000 years. It was the center of a lucrative trade first in tea and sugar, and later in cotton, lacquer, and ceramics. When the explorer Marco Polo visited Fuzhou in the 13th century, he recorded that the city was garrisoned by imperial troops. The city still has large numbers of troops due to its proximity to Taiwan.

Wuyi Square, with its statue of Mao Zedong, marks the city center. Just north is the 10th-century **Bai Ta** (White Pagoda), while to the west is **Wu Ta**, a black granite pagoda from the same era. North of Wu Ta, the **Lin Zexu Memorial Hall** commemorates Lin Zexu, a Qing-dynasty official who destroyed an opium shipment in protest at the British trade, an act that led to the First Opium War (see p73). Farther north is the **Three Lanes and Seven Alleys** area of well-preserved traditional buildings. To

its northwest lies Xi Hu Gongyuan (West Lake Park), where the **Fujian Museum** contains a 3,500-year-old boat coffin.

Cang Shan, south of the river, was once the site of the Foreign Concession Area. **Zhongzhou Island** (in the middle of the river) is a development with foreign restaurants. About 6 miles (10 km) east of the city is **Gu Shan**, with wooded walks and the restored **Yongquan Si**, built in AD 908.

Fujian Museum

96 Hutou Jie. **Tel** (0591) 8375 7627.

Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

Lin Zexu Memorial Hall

16 Aomen Lu. **Open** daily.

6 Wuyi Shan

武夷山

144 miles (230 km) NW of Fuzhou. to Wuyi Shan City (Wuyi Shan Shi), then bus 6 to park. Shangu Jie Guolu Da Lou, (0599) 525 0376. wbr.cn

Magical Wuyi Shan, a hilly area renowned for its oolong tea, offers some of the most stunning scenery in southern China. Its sheer, mist-shrouded sandstone mountains, known as the Thirty-six Peaks, are threaded by the Jiuqu Jiang and covered in lush vegetation. First visited by the Han emperor Wudi (r.141–87 BC), Wuyi Shan came to be regarded as a sacred place by subsequent emperors.

The best way to enjoy the landscape is to take a raft along the river, as it meanders through gorges known collectively as **Jiu Qu Xi** (Nine Bend Creek). Above the fourth bend, mysterious 3,000-year-old coffins are lodged high in the cliffs. Made of *nanmu* (cedar), they are about 16 ft (5 m) long; each contains a single individual wrapped in silk and hemp. How they got here, however, remains a mystery.

Several trails lead to the summits. The table-top shaped **Da Wang Feng** is the most difficult, while an easier climb is **Tianyou Shan**, the traditional spot from where to watch the sunrise. The highest peak is **Sanyang Feng** at 2,356 ft (718 m). A path also leads to the **Shuilian Dong**, with a teahouse next to a waterfall.

Lacquerware – a Chinese Craft

Made from the sap of the “lac” tree (*Rhus verniciflua*), lacquer was used long before the Han dynasty as a timber preservative – it hardens easily, even in damp conditions. It was later used in making plates and cups by applying layers of sap on wood or cloth, and painting the final layer. The modern craft, which appeared in the Yuan dynasty, uses the same basic method of applying layers on a wooden base, but before the lacquer completely hardens, it is deeply and intricately carved. The surface is then inlaid with gold, silver, or tortoiseshell, and usually painted red.



A lacquered screen

The Story of Tea

Tea (*cha*) is associated with China more than with any other country. Its legendary origins in China date back over 5,000 years although some believe that it was introduced from India about 1,800 years ago. At first it was drunk as a tonic; now it is simply an indispensable part of daily life for almost all Chinese. It is widely grown throughout the warmer and wetter southern areas of China, particularly in Fujian, Yunnan, and Zhejiang. Although tea comes in many forms, all tea comes from the same species, *Camellia sinensis*. The most common Chinese teas – green, black, and oolong – have differing appearance and taste due to the process of fermentation, although the flavor of the tea does vary depending on where it is grown, and whether other ingredients have been added such as chrysanthemums in *huacha*. Tea is always drunk clear, never with milk or lemon. Sugar is added only in the north western Muslim areas, while the Tibetans drink theirs with butter.



Shen Nong was the mythological emperor who discovered tea, according to Chinese lore. A wise ruler, he pronounced that all drinking water should be boiled. One day, tea leaves fell from a tree into a pot of boiling water and the resulting brew delighted him.



By the Tang dynasty, tea was drunk throughout the empire. Before the 8th century, tea merchants commissioned Lu Yu to explain the advantages of the drink. He produced the *Cha Jing*, a compendium of tea, which systemized its production and traditions.



The tea trade was a key element in Britain's interest in China. The Portuguese were the first Europeans to enjoy tea, and the Dutch the first Europeans to deal in tea commercially, but it was the British who became the greatest tea traders as the fashion for tea spread from Holland to England in the late 17th century.



Tea plantations, many of them terraced, cover the hillsides of the southern interior. Up to five harvests can take place in a year. Picking is still done mostly by hand – an experienced picker can harvest 70 lb (32 kg) in a day – but mechanical methods are becoming common.

Upscale tea shops abound in the larger city centers. Highly prized specialty teas such as the Fujianese oolong *tie guanyin* can be purchased and sometimes sampled.





GUANGDONG & HAINAN

Located at the southernmost tip of continental China are the province of Guangdong and the island of Hainan, just off its coast in the South China Sea. Guangdong's capital, the great city and port of Guangzhou (Canton), stands on one of China's longest rivers, the Pearl (Zhu Jiang), while Haikou, the capital of Hainan, is located on the island's north coast, about 30 miles (50 km) to the south of the mainland.

Guangdong is perhaps the most familiar part of China, since a large proportion of expatriates around the world are of Cantonese origin. The province also lies very close to Hong Kong, whose inhabitants are mostly Cantonese. Given its long-standing contacts with the outside world, it is not surprising that Guangdong was only fully integrated into China in the 12th century, when large numbers of Han settlers migrated here from the north. Today, it is a key area of China's economic development, most evident in Guangzhou and the cities of Shenzhen and Zhuhai. Despite the recent development, there are several places of historical interest, as well as some beautiful inland countryside, which are worth visiting.

Formerly administered as part of Guangdong, the tropical island of Hainan is now a separate province. A place of exile for centuries, its superb beaches on the southern coast have been developed as thriving tourist resorts. There are still vestiges of the indigenous Li culture to seek out, and some wild mountains to explore at the island's center.



Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- ① Shantou
- ② Chaozhou
- ③ Shenzhen
- ④ Guangzhou
- ⑥ Foshan

Historic Sites

- ⑤ Cuiheng

Temples

- ⑧ Feilai & Feixia

Areas of Natural Beauty

- ⑦ Zhaoqing
- ⑨ Shaoguan

Islands

- ⑩ Hainan Island





The dramatic Shipaotai Gongyuan fortress and moat, Shantou

① Shantou

头

260 miles (420 km) E of Guangzhou.

Ⓐ 5,300,000. 🚗 🚝 🚆 📶

Jincheng Lu, (0754) 8897 2455.

This city was originally a fishing village, whose strategic location on the Han Jiang estuary was exploited by foreign traders from 1858. Known then as Swatow, it soon became a major center for trade. In 1980, it was declared a Special Economic Zone and today it is essentially a modern city. The old quarter still has a few sights of interest such as the restored 1879 **Tianhou Gong**, a temple with vibrant carvings. Nearby along **Anping Lu** are the remains of old colonial houses and warehouses. East of Anping Lu at the waterfront is **Shipaotai Gongyuan**, a fortified gun emplacement that was built in the 1870s.

🏰 **Shipaotai Gongyuan**

Haibin Lu. Tel (0754) 8854 3120.

Open 7:30am–6pm daily.

🏰 **Tianhou Gong**

Shengping Lu. Tel (0754) 8845 4097.

Open 7am–5:30pm daily. 📶

② Chaozhou

潮州

275 miles (440 km) E of Guangzhou.

Ⓐ 2,600,000. 🚗 🚝 🚆 📶

This ancient city was the seat of a highly cultured civilization during the Ming dynasty. Its fortunes declined rapidly in the 17th century, when almost

100,000 people were massacred for opposing the Manchu regime. Later, during the 19th century, terrible famines and poverty led to mass emigration.

Today, the remains of the 23-ft (7-m) high **Ming City Walls** run along the banks of the Han Jiang, defining the eastern boundary of the old city center. Extending up to Huangcheng Lu in the west, the old city is Chaozhou's most

fascinating quarter, where

its historic past is visible on streets such as Zhongshan Lu and Jiadi Xiang with its well-preserved Qing-dynasty architecture. To the north of Jiadi Xiang is **Kaiyuan Si**, an active Buddhist temple founded in AD 738, with pretty courtyards and

several colorful halls, one of which has a gorgeous vaulted ceiling. The grand **Guangji Men** along the city wall has steps leading up to a trail along the top of the wall. Across the river is the 10th-century temple **Hanwen Gong Ci**, and



Guangji Men, Chaozhou

downstream is the renovated Ming-dynasty pagoda **Fenghuang Ta**.

🏰 **Kaiyuan Si**

Kaiyuan Lu. Open daily. 📶

③ Shenzhen

深圳

85 miles (135 km) SE of Guangzhou.

Ⓐ 10,500,000. ✈️ 🚗 🚝 🚆 📶 from Hong Kong & Macau. 📶 Chuanbu Lu, Luohu, (0755) 8247 7050.

Shenzhen was one of the first towns to become a Special Economic Zone as part of Deng Xiaoping's economic reforms of the late 1980s. SEZ status transformed this tiny village bordering Hong Kong into a booming metropolis in just a few years. Today, it is an important, although rather soulless, business center and transport hub. On its western outskirts are a host of strange theme parks. **Splendid China** and **Window on the World** have scale models of famous monuments such as the Eiffel Tower in Paris and the Great Wall, as well as plenty of souvenir shops. The **Folk Culture Village** displays China's folk traditions, and has paintings, pavilions, and shows of traditional dances. East of Shenzhen, at Shatoujiao, **Citic Minsk World** displays a rusting Soviet aircraft carrier, complete with aircraft.

🏰 **Shenzhen Theme Parks**

Guangshen Expressway, Shenzhen Bay. Open daily. 📶

📶 **Citic Minsk World:** Open daily. 📶



Aircraft on the Russian carrier at Minsk World, Shenzhen

Sun Yat-sen

For many, Sun Yat-sen, who planned the overthrow of the last Chinese dynasty and the establishment of a republic, is the father of modern China. Born in Guangdong in 1866, he studied medicine and was greatly influenced by the leader of the Taiping Rebellion, and fellow Cantonese, Hong Xiuquan (*see p428*). A failed uprising in Canton in 1895 forced him abroad, where he spent fifteen years raising money in support of his cause (in London he was abducted and held in the Chinese legation). Abroad when the Qing dynasty fell in 1911, he was made president of the new republic in 1912. Power struggles soon forced him from office. He died in 1925 before he was able to establish an independent government, with the aim of uniting the country.



“The World Belongs to All” is a slogan reflecting Sun’s democratic notions: the right to vote, the right to recall, and the powers of legislation and amendment.



Sun Yat-sen working in the office of his Guangzhou headquarters, from where he strove to create the circumstances that would lead to a democratic and united China.



Chiang Kai-shek (standing), who also married a Soong sister (*see p204*), used Sun’s theories of political tutelage to justify military dictatorship.



Discussing the organization of a new government in 1911, before Sun Yat-sen (second from left) became president. He then installed Yuan Shikai in his own place, who declared himself emperor in 1913, plunging China back into civil war.



Seen here as Generalissimo in 1922, Sun Yat-sen established a military government in Guangzhou, the base of the Nationalist Revolution.



On National Day portraits of Sun Yat-sen are brandished together with those of Marx and Engels in Tian’an Men Square. Sun Yat-sen, despite his Kuomintang connections and his antipathy to class war, is seen as a revolutionary who paved the way for communism.

4 Guangzhou

广州

Guangdong's capital, known as Canton to its 19th-century foreign residents, is an ancient and significant port. During the Tang dynasty, the city's trade links across Asia gave it a sizable Muslim community. Later, Western merchants made their first contact with China through this port. Today, Guangzhou is an affluent, bustling city, with a handful of interesting sights including the 2,000-year-old tomb and excavated palace gardens of the Nanyue kings. While the city's modern infrastructure is comprehensive, Guangzhou's architectural heritage has also been carefully preserved in places. South of the city, Shamian Island was the site of the foreign concession and is filled with charming colonial-style buildings.



A variety of foodstuffs, grains, and spices on sale, Qingping Market

🏪 Qingping Market

Qingping Lu. **M** Huangsha.
Open daily.

Just across the road from Shamian Island (see pp306–7) is one of China's largest and most famous markets, devoted to all types of produce. On sale are medicines, spices, vegetables, dried seafood, grains, fish, meat, and live animals, including cats, dogs, and endangered species. Fortunately, the numbers of endangered animals on sale have drastically reduced in recent years. For some visitors, the atmosphere is too gory, while for others it is exhilaratingly Chinese.

🏪 Hualin Si

Near Changshou Lu. **Tel** (020) 8139 6228. **M** Changshou Lu. **Open** daily.

The city's liveliest Buddhist temple, founded in AD 526, was one of the many shrines visited by Bodhidharma, the Indian founder of Chan Buddhism

(see p165). Hualin Si is notable for its main hall with 500 images of *luohan* or *arhat* (those freed from the cycle of rebirth); one of them, sporting a broad-brimmed hat, is supposed to be the merchant Marco Polo.



Devotees lighting incense sticks, Hualin Si

🏪 Sacred Heart Church

56 Yide Lu. **M** Haizhu Square.

Open 2–4pm Sun for services.

A Gothic-style Roman Catholic church, the Sacred Heart Church (Shi Shi Jiaotang) was built by the French between 1863 and 1888. The land was granted to France as compensation for its losses during the Second Opium War. The church's twin spires rise to a height of 190 ft (58 m), and its bell tower contains four bronze bells cast in France.

🏪 Peasant Movement Institute

42 Zhongshan Er Lu. **Tel** (020) 8333 3936. **M** Peasant Movement Institute.

Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

The city's revolutionary past is on display in this former Ming Confucian temple. In 1924, the building became a training school for peasant revolutionaries, who were taught by leaders such as Mao Zedong and Zhou Enlai (see p256). The school closed in 1927, after the Guangdong Communist uprising, when 5,000 people were killed under the orders of General Chiang Kai-shek (see p72).


🏪 Nan Yue Palace Gardens

Zhongshan Lu. **M** Peasant Movement Institute. **Open** 11am–2:30pm & 5–10pm daily.

This extraordinary site contains the excavated gardens that surrounded the palace of Zhao Tuo, the founder of the ancient Nan Yue Kingdom (see p306). A Qin general from Hebei province, he founded an independent kingdom after the fall of the Qin dynasty. The site is covered by a corrugated roof, and a raised pathway leads past the main sights. To the northeast, a paved lake and an ornamental stream are clearly visible, while in the southwestern corner are the remains of an even older Qin dynasty shipyard. The site's small museum exhibits stone slabs, pillars, and roof-tiles, many of which bear the inscription "Panyu," Guangzhou's original name.

Chen Jia Ci

Zhongshan Qi Lu. **Tel** (020) 8181 4371.


M Chen Clan Academy. **Open** 8:30am–5pm daily. 

This temple, in the gloriously colorful southern style, was built in 1890 with funds donated by members of the Chen clan. It was to act as a temple of ancestor worship and as a school. Though obviously Chinese, these southern temples are quite different from their northern counterparts.

Less severely classical, their halls are generally lower and broader. Roofs, and as in the case of the first hall here, façades, are often smothered in fantastic designs and sculpted figures from operas.

Nan Yue Tomb

867 Jiefang Bei Lu. **Tel** (020) 3618 2920.

M Yuexiu Park. **Open** 9am–5:30pm, last entry 4:45pm daily. 

This is the site of the 2,000-year-old tomb of Zhao Mo, grandson

of Zhao Tuo. Zhao Tuo, a Qin general from Hebei province, was sent here in 214 BC to control southern China. After the fall of the Qin, Zhao Tuo established the Nan Yue Kingdom. Shortly after his grandson's death, it was reclaimed by the Han kings.


The tomb contains magnificent burial items made of gold and precious stones, including a jade burial suit. Many of the captions are in English, and a video recounts the story of the excavation that took place in 1983.



Brick relief of a traditional opera on the façade of Chen Jia Ci

Orchid Garden & Islamic Cemetery

Jiefang Bei Lu. **M** Yuexiu Park.

Open 6am–9pm daily. 

This charming garden has bamboo groves and ponds overhung with palms. The orchids are in greenhouses, and the best time to see them is late winter to early spring. Along the garden's western edge, the cemetery contains what is said

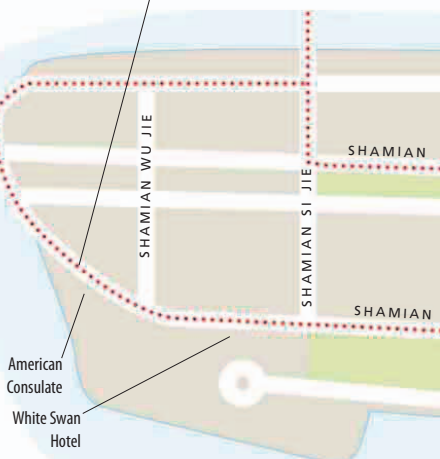
Shamian Island

沙面岛

Leased to the French and British after the Chinese were defeated during the Second Opium War (1856–60), this island is really little more than a sandbank about half a mile (800 m) long. Before being allowed to settle on Shamian Island, foreigners had previously been compelled to remain in their warehouses. Soon after the French settled at the east end and the British at the west, the streets filled with European-style villas, banks, and churches. Chinese people were long forbidden to enter the island, so an exclusively European way of life prevailed on this strange outpost.



Christ Church served the Protestants among the British community at the west end of the island.



Cannon in Shamian Park

The two cannons found in Shamian Park were manufactured in the neighboring city of Foshan for use during the mid-19th century Opium Wars.

to be the tomb of Abu Waqas, the uncle of the Prophet, credited with bringing Islam to China. Though closed to non-Muslims, it can be viewed through a screen.

Yuexiu Park

Jiefang Bei Lu.  Yuexiu Park. Spread over 222 acres (90 ha), Yuexiu Park is one of the largest municipal parks in China. It is split into several parts by Huanshi Zhong Lu and Qingyuan Lu. The most striking building, the **Sun Yat-Sen Memorial Hall**, is in the southernmost section off Dongfeng Zhong Lu. Built in 1931 in traditional style with a blue tiled roof, it marks the spot where Dr. Sun Yat-Sen (*see p303*) was proclaimed head of government in 1923.

Most of the other sights lie in the middle of the park, including the **Five Rams Statue** – the city symbol that commemorates the myth that Guangzhou was



Sun Yat-Sen Memorial Hall, Yuexiu Gongyuan

founded by Five Immortals riding five rams, who planted sheaves of corn to ensure that famine would never strike.

Nearby, the **Municipal Museum** is housed in the Zhenhai Lou, a Ming watch-tower. It has 1,200 exhibits dating from 4000 BC to the present, and includes a Christian tract that inspired the Taiping Rebellion (*see p428*).

Art Museum

13 Luhu Lu. **Tel** (020) 8365 9337.

Open 9am–5pm Tue–Fri, 9:30am–4:30pm Sat & Sun.

This contemporary museum exhibits shows by major Chinese artists. On permanent display is an exhibition of the works of political cartoonist Liao Bingxiong, who was criticized in 1958 for his Rightist leanings. No flip-flops.

Façade on Da Jie

This bank's façade is in typical European colonial style. A number of restored buildings along Shamian Dajie have plaques describing their former occupants.



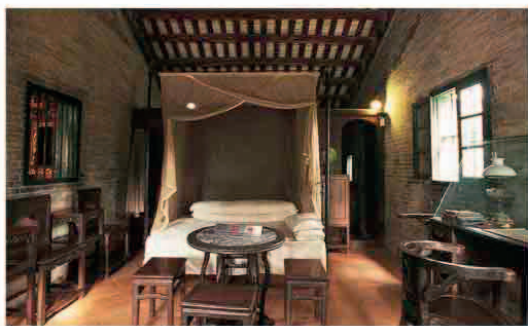
Our Lady of Lourdes

This Catholic church was primarily where the French community, which occupied the island's eastern end, would attend services.

0 meters 150
0 yards 150

Key

 Suggested route



The bedroom at Sun Yat-sen's residence, Cuiheng

5 Cuiheng

翠亨

15 miles (25 km) E of Zhongshan town. bus 12 from Zhongshan East Bus Station; bus 10 from Zhuhai.

Zhongshan county, located 56 miles (90 km) south of Guangzhou, is the birthplace of Sun Yat-sen (see p303), whose name is Sun Zhongshan in Mandarin.

This revolutionary leader was born in Cuiheng village on the outskirts of Zhongshan town in 1866. The Portuguese-style house in which he lived with his parents between 1892 and 1895 is now part of a memorial garden devoted to his life. Nearby, other houses belonging to the same period have been restored and are also open to the public.

Sun Yat-sen's Residence
Cuiheng Dadao. **Tel** (0760) 8550 1691.
Open 9am–4:30pm daily.

6 Foshan

佛山

21 miles (35 km) SW of Guangzhou.
 7,200,000. minibuses from Guangzhou. 114–118 Fenjiang Zhong Lu, (0757) 8380 8888.

Foshan has been known since the Song dynasty for its fine ceramics, particularly figurines with a pale blue glaze. Visits to factories can be arranged through the tourist office. To

view the town's other crafts, it is worth visiting the **Foshan Folk Art Studio**, housed in a former Ming temple, the Renshou Si, in the southern part of town.

Nearby, the **Zu Miao** was founded in AD 1080 as a Daoist temple. It is lavishly decorated with ceramic figures, made in nearby Shiwan, representing scenes from traditional opera and folk stories. Near the entrance is a garden displaying the cannons that

were used against the British in the Opium Wars.

Foshan Folk Art Studio
Zumiao Lu. **Tel** (0757) 8225 4052.
Open daily. fsfolkart.com

Zu Miao
21 Zumiao Lu. **Open** 8:30am–7:30pm daily.



The Piyun Tower perched atop Zhaoqing's ancient city walls

7 Zhaoqing

肇庆

60 miles (95 km) W of Guangzhou. 3,900,000. from Guangzhou & Foshan. to Hong Kong. 90 Tianming Bei Lu (0758) 222 9908.

This attractive city was the home of the Italian Jesuit priest Matteo Ricci in the late 16th century, before he was summoned to Beijing by the Ming emperor, Wanli. Today, it is famous for the scenery at **Qixing Yan** (Seven Star Crag), 1 mile (2 km) to the north. Located beside a lake, the mist-covered peaks lie in the shape of the Big Bear constellation, and are thought to be fallen stars. They can be explored via a network of bridges and causeways.

The city's sights include the **Chongxi Ta**, a pagoda overlooking the Xi Jiang. Built in the Ming period, it is the tallest pagoda in Guangdong. The old **City Walls** still stand on Jianshe Lu, while in the western suburbs, the **Plum Monastery** is associated with Huineng, the Sixth Chan Buddhist Patriarch.

A short bus ride northeast of the city is the forested reserve of **Dinghu Shan**, which offers numerous scenic walking trails.

Qixing Yan
Tel (0758) 223 4728.
Open 7:30am–6pm daily.



The grand gateway of Feilai Gusi along the banks of Bei Jiang

8 Feilai & Feixia

飞来和飞霞

52 miles (85 km) NW of Guangzhou.

🚗 to Qingyuan. Feilai & Feixia

Temples: 🚢 depart daily at 8am from Qingyuan.

The busy market town of Qingyuan is the access point for two picturesque temples located at **Feilai** and **Feixia** on Bei Jiang, that can only be reached by ferry. The ferries, which depart early in the morning and return in the afternoon, pass fishermen whose cormorants – trained to fish for them – sit patiently on the prows of sampans. The first temple, Feilai Gusi, was founded about 1,400 years ago and is situated on the steep riverbank of a gorge. Steps lead up from the river to its ornate gateway. Its current buildings are mainly from the Ming dynasty. A short walk through the various buildings leads to a modern pavilion, from where there are superb views along the river.

Located a short distance farther along the gorge is Feixia Gusi comprising two late 19th-century Daoist temples, Feixia and Cangxia. Feixia is much larger than Feilai, and its stone halls and temples are surrounded by a fine set of walls. Cangxia, located up the hillside,

is often being refurbished as a result of regular flooding. There are, however, some impressive frescoes and hiking paths.

9 Shaoguan

韶关

144 miles (230 km) N of Guangzhou.



Shaoguan town has only a handful of sights such as the Fengcai Lou, a reconstruction of an ancient city gate, and the Dajian Chan Monastery founded in AD 660, but there are three worthwhile places of interest in the vicinity. The **Nanhua Si** (Southern Flower Temple) 16 miles (25 km) to the southeast, was founded in AD 502 and



Statue of a monk walking on "improbable stilts," Nanhua Si

became renowned for its connection with Bodhidharma, the founder of Chan (Zen) Buddhism who meditated here for 36 years. One of the halls contains a statue of him, said to have been cast from his corpse; another has a statue of a monk walking on stilts. The bell tower has a large, 700-year-old bronze bell cast in the Song dynasty.

About 31 miles (50 km) northeast of town, **Danxia Shan** is a 112-sq-mile (290 sq-km) park on the banks of the Jin. It has rocky outcrops in fascinating shapes, with trails leading to their summits. A boat or bus takes visitors farther along the river to Danxia Shan itself. Meaning "Red Cloud," it has brilliant red sandstone cliffs, with paths leading past hillside monasteries.

About 11 miles (18 km) south of Shaoguan is **Shizi Yan**, a cave where the prehistoric remains of *Homo erectus* were found. The museum displays arrowheads, pottery, and artifacts from local prehistoric sites.

🏠 **Nanhua Si**

Tel (0751) 650 1223.

Open 7am–6pm daily. 🗺

🏠 **Danxia Shan**

Open daily. 🗺

🏠 **Shizi Yan**

Open daily. 🗺

10 Hainan Island

海南

Although China's largest island became a part of the Chinese empire during the Han dynasty, it remained a backwater and place of exile until the mid-20th century. It was so remote that its ethnic Li people still lived a primitive hunter-gatherer existence until as late as the 1930s. In 1988, it became a Special Economic Zone, but a decline in investments has left behind unfinished construction sites all over. Despite this, Hainan is today an independent province with much to offer. Its attractions include the tropical beaches around the southern city of Sanya, impressive mountain scenery in the southwest, and coffee plantations on its east coast.



Fish being laid out to dry in Xincun on the East Coast

Haikou

175 miles (285 km) N of Sanya. 2,100,000. mainland ferries from Xingang pier.

The island's capital is a busy port and transport hub, with the ambience of a tropical Asian city. To its southeast, **Wugong Ci** (Five Officials Memorial Temple) was built during the Ming dynasty (1368–1644) to honor a group of scholars who were banished here during the Tang and Song dynasties for criticizing their government. One of its halls commemorates the Song-era poet, Su Dongpo, who was also exiled here between 1097 and 1100.

To the west of the city center is a massive fortification at **Xiuying**, constructed by the Chinese in the 19th century to resist the French. Thick stone walls conceal six large cannons, that are connected by subterranean passages. Farther southwest is the tomb of **Hai Rui**, an upright Ming dynasty official who was exiled to Hainan for criticism.

Wuzhi Shan City & the Central Highlands

Wuzhi Shan City: 165 miles (265 km) SW of Haikou. from Sanya & Haikou. Nationality Museum: daily.

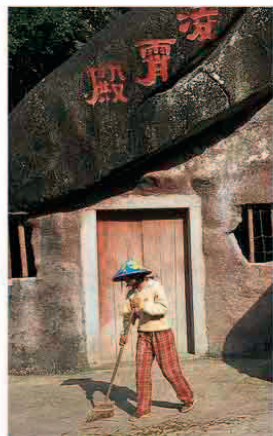
The central mountainous region is worth visiting for its spectacular landscape and for the chance to explore the island's ethnic culture. The main town is the pleasant **Wuzhi Shan City** (also known as Tongshi), the capital of the autonomous Li & Miao governments. The **Nationality Museum** offers an excellent insight into all aspects of Hainan's history and culture. The city's surrounding countryside has remnants of traditional Li houses and barns. About 31 miles (50 km) northeast of town is the 6,125-ft (1,867-m) high **Wuzhi Shan**, which is sacred to the Li people. It is a pleasant hike to the mountain's summit. Also northeast of Wuzhi Shan City, the town of **Qiongzong** is surrounded by some beautiful scenery, including the 984-ft (300-m) high waterfall at Baihua Shan.

The East Coast

Wenchang: 50 miles (80 km) SE of Haikou. Overseas Chinese Tropical Farm: Tel (0898) 6362 2808.

Open daily.

The town of **Wenchang** is the ancestral home of the Soong sisters (see p204), two of whom, Qingling and Meiling, married the revolutionary leaders Sun Yat-sen and Chiang Kai-shek. Its main attractions are the beaches and coconut groves at Dongjiao Yelin. About 62 miles (100 km) south on the outskirts of Wann-ing town, **Dongshan Ling** has curiously shaped natural rock formations. Farther south, Xing-long is known throughout China for its coffee, and the **Xinglong Tropical Botanical Gardens**, 2 miles (3 km) south of town offer coffee and tea tastings. Xinglong's **Overseas Chinese Tropical Farm** is home to over 20,000 overseas Chinese, who emigrated from Vietnam and other countries in Southeast Asia to make their living through the production of coffee and rubber. South of Xinglong is **Lingshui**, the principal town of the Lingshui Li Autonomous County, that is home to a large number of Li people who have lived on Hainan since 200 BC. The Communist Museum commemorates China's first Communist government that was formed in Hainan in 1928. Many of Lingshui's narrow streets remain unchanged since the early 1900s, and are lined with quaint shops



Calligraphy at Dongshan Ling Ridge



The pristine, palm-fringed beach at Yalong Bay

and houses. Just 6 miles (10 km) south of Lingshui is **Xincun** with a large Hakka population (see p.296). Close by and accessible only by boat, Monkey Island has a sizable colony of Guangxi macaques, and is a popular day trip from Xincun.

Sanya & the South Coast

175 miles (285 km) S of Haikou. 680,000.

Hainan's main attractions are the tropical beaches near the

town of Sanya. The busiest beach is **Dadonghai**, just south of town, with hotels, restaurants, and shops. The area's best beach is to the east of town at **Yalong Bay**, with a 4-mile (7-km) stretch of pristine sand. The beach at **Tianya Haijiao**, 16 miles (25 km) northwest, is known for its famous rock that appears on the old two-yuan note. The other attraction is **Ximao Zhou**

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

15 miles (25 km) S of Guangzhou.

8,450,000. 38 Bailong Nan Lu, Haikou, (0898) 6666 9296.

Li People San Yue San Festival (the 3rd day of the 3rd lunar month).

Transport

train-ferry shuttle from Guangzhou. from Beihai, Shenzhen & Guangzhou.

Island, a two-hour boat ride off the coast. It is popular for snorkeling and hiking.

Jianfeng Ling Nature Reserve

65 miles (115 km) NW of Sanya. to Dongfang (Basuo) from Sanya, then local bus. **Open** daily.

Pleasantly situated in the mountains, this highland rainforest, with its huge trees, ferns, and vines as well as species of birds and butterflies, offers great walks and hikes.





HONG KONG & MACAU

Although tiny and relatively recently developed, Hong Kong and Macau are rich and fascinating oddities. They owe their unique identities as administrative regions separate from China to the trade that flourished between East and West from the 16th century onwards, and to the British and Portuguese powers that annexed and held them until 1997 and 1999 respectively.

The Portuguese were the first Europeans to settle at "A-Ma Gau" or the Bay of A-Ma – the region's patron goddess – in 1557. Today, Macau, as it came to be known, is a charming haven of pastel-colored colonial mansions and glitzy casinos, the proceeds of which, along with tourism, keep this tiny region financially afloat.

In the 1800s, China's attempt to destroy Britain's lucrative opium trade drove the British to blockade Chinese ports and eventually secure Hong Kong as their own trading enclave in 1841. The area, hitherto inhabited by farmers and fisherfolk, quickly flourished. After World War II and the four-year Japanese occupation, trade resumed and Hong

Kong's manufacturing industry boomed. It soon grew into a densely packed, high-rise city built by ambitious colonial administrators and millions of Chinese migrants escaping the turmoil convulsing their Communist homeland. In its final years as a British territory, Hong Kong's status as a major financial center was established. Despite the 1997 Asian financial crisis, it retains its sleek international gloss, its enterprise, and its breathtaking visual impact. Standing in Kowloon and gazing at the skyscrapers scaling Hong Kong Island's hills, writer Pico Iyer's description sums it up succinctly: "a dream of Manhattan, arising from the South China Sea."



Spirals of fragrant incense hanging in Daoist Man Mo Temple, Hong Kong

Exploring Hong Kong & Macau

The bustling heart of Hong Kong is broken in two and divided by Victoria Harbour. Its key sights, cultural attractions, shopping, and eating spots are found along the northern shore of Hong Kong Island, and at, or close to, Kowloon's southern tip. Between Kowloon and the border with the rest of China lie the New Territories, with their rugged mountains and most of Hong Kong's modern, high-rise dormitory towns. The other major islands – Lamma, Cheung Chau, and Lantau – are west of Hong Kong Island, and beyond these is Macau. A passport is necessary to leave or arrive in both Macau and Hong Kong, as they are still administered as autonomous regions of China.



Locator Map

See Map pp282–3

Sights at a Glance

Historic Sites, Neighborhoods & Towns

- ① Central
- ② Wan Chai
- ③ Causeway Bay
- ⑦ Lan Kwai Fong
- ⑧ The Central-Mid-levels Escalator
- ⑨ Hollywood Road
- ⑬ Tsim Sha Tsui Waterfront
- ⑮ Nathan Road
- ⑳ Lung Yeuk Tau Heritage Trail
- ㉑ Aberdeen
- ㉒ Stanley
- ㉓ *Macau pp332–5*

Museums

- ⑬ Hong Kong Museum of Art
- ⑮ Hong Kong Science Museum
- ⑰ Hong Kong Museum of History
- ㉒ Hong Kong Heritage Museum

Parks, Gardens & Areas of Natural Beauty

- ⑤ Hong Kong Zoological & Botanical Gardens
- ⑥ *The Peak pp318–19*
- ㉒ Sai Kung Town & Peninsula Beaches
- ㉓ Kadoorie Farm & Botanic Garden
- ㉔ Mai Po Marshes
- ㉕ Maclehoose Trail
- ㉖ Deep Water & Repulse Bays

Temples & Monasteries

- ⑩ Man Mo Temple
- ㉑ Wong Tai Sin Temple
- ㉒ 10,000 Buddhas Monastery
- ㉓ Hong Kong Life Saving Society

Other Attractions

- ④ Happy Valley Racecourse
- ⑫ Star Ferry
- ㉑ Ocean Park

Shops & Markets

- ⑪ Sheung Wan's Markets
- ⑮ Temple Street & Jade Markets
- ⑰ Bird & Flower Markets

Islands

- ㉓ Lamma Island
- ㉔ Cheung Chau Island
- ㉕ Lantau Island



Hong Kong Island & Kowloon

For Street Finder Map see pp340–43



Getting Around

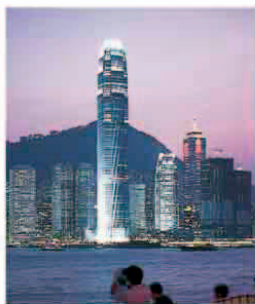
The best way to get around Hong Kong's central areas is on foot. The efficient MTR (Mass Transit Railway), which is the city's subway system, serves the central districts, has a fast airport line, and links the center with the New Territories and China (see p620). Buses, trams, and taxis operate from all major nodes and are cheap by international standards. The Star Ferry (see p321), shuttles between Hong Kong Island and Kowloon, while regular inter-island ferries link Hong Kong with the main islands. The fast, sleek Macau-bound ferries leave from their own terminal just west of the inter-island ferry terminal.



Key

- ⊙ Train station
- Expressway
- National Highway
- Minor road
- Rail line
- Walking trail
- Ferry route
- Special Administrative Region

For additional map symbols see back flap



The Two IFC Tower near the Star Ferry Terminal

① Central 中環

Hong Kong Island. **Map 2 C3.**
M Central. **SF** Star Ferry from Kowloon.

The sleek, corporate cathedrals of local banks and businesses tower over the ever-teeming streets of Hong Kong's financial and administrative epicenter. Apart from Statue Square, which is at the heart of the area, there are few cultural sights in Central, as many colonial buildings have long since disappeared, making way for high-rise development. The desire for real estate has always been strong, and land reclamation started almost as soon as the British took over in 1841. This continuous reclamation has made Hong Kong Island and Kowloon creep even closer. Central is easily explored on foot, allowing visitors a close view of some of the most interesting buildings, especially in **Statue Square**.

The elegant Neo-Classical **Former Supreme Court Building**, surmounted by the blindfolded figure of Themis, the Greek goddess of justice, is the sole surviving colonial structure in the square. Completed in 1911, it originally served as Hong Kong's Supreme Court and latterly served as the seat of the region's government. Today it houses the Court of Final Appeal.

Beyond this, the municipal-style architecture of the square's center is rather disappointing. However, not all the structures lack imagination.

The modernistic, but *feng shui*-friendly girders of the **HSBC (Hong Kong & Shanghai Banking Corporation) Headquarters** loom over the square. Designed by British architect Sir Norman Foster and completed in 1985, it was at that time one of the most expensive buildings, costing more than HK\$5 billion. Be sure to rub the paws of the regal-looking lions outside for luck. The stark spike of the **Bank of China** headquarters rises behind the HSBC Headquarters. Designed by the renowned Chinese-born architect I.M. Pei, its harsh, angular lines go against all *feng shui* guidelines, and it is seen as an aggressive statement that offsets the benign energies of the HSBC Headquarters.

Northwest of Statue Square near the Star Ferry Terminal is Hong Kong's second tallest building, the 88-story, 1,362-ft (415-m) **Two International Finance Centre (IFC)**, built in 2003. A hotel and a residential tower have also been erected here. The IFC Mall at the tower's base is one of Hong Kong's largest malls, adding to Central's several upmarket shopping malls, such as **The Landmark**. The International Commerce



HSBC building (right) on Statue Square and Bank of China (left)

Centre across the water in Kowloon is even taller than the IFC, at 1,587 ft (484 m), and marks a shift away from Hong Kong Island's north shore for competitive hi-tech architecture.

Hong Kong's history is now showcased during the winter holiday season in a sound and light show, where the Victoria Harbour skyline is lit with festive lights that create giant pictures on the buildings.



The roof of the Convention & Exhibition Centre

② Wan Chai 灣仔

Hong Kong Island. **Map 3 F3.** **M** Wan Chai. **SF** Star Ferry from Kowloon.

Made famous in Richard Mason's 1957 novel *The World of Suzy Wong*, Wan Chai's colorful 1950s and 60s red light district has given way to new development, fancy bars, restaurants, and hotels. The Wan Chai MTR is a good starting point for a walking tour. A trip down Lockhart Road, just around the corner from the MTR, reveals the area's few remaining ties with its past in the form of a handful of go-go bars.

A five-minute walk north of the MTR across Gloucester Road is **Central Plaza**, at one time the tallest, and still one of Hong Kong's grandest skyscrapers. There are splendid views from the 46th floor. Facing Central Plaza across Harbour Road is the HK\$4.8 billion **Convention & Exhibition Centre**. The sweeping lines of the extension at its

northern end are intended to create the impression of a bird taking flight. This was the venue for the 1997 ceremony during which Britain handed Hong Kong back to China. The glass walls offer fine harbor views, and outside are a large promenade and a pleasant sitting area.

③ Causeway Bay

銅鑼灣

Hong Kong Island. **M** Causeway Bay.
🚇 Eastbound (to Shau Kei Wan)
 trams.

A neon-lit crush of giant department stores, such as Sogo and malls like Hysan Place and Times Square, and the ever-present crowds of shoppers is the first view of Causeway Bay when emerging from the MTR. East of the MTR sprawls **Victoria Park**, Hong Kong's largest public park and a serene place to swim, play tennis, or practice *tai ji quan*. Close to the harbor, also known as the typhoon shelter, is the **Noonday Gun**, which has been fired daily since the 1840s and retained as a charity fundraising event. The enclosure housing the gun opens for half an hour after noon, where a small plaque



The historic Noonday Gun, fired daily at noon, Causeway Bay

explains the origins of the tradition, celebrated in Noel Coward's song "Mad Dogs and Englishmen."

Most of the land that Causeway Bay stands on is reclaimed, and the reclamation work continues today along the harborside between Central and Causeway Bay.

④ Happy Valley Racecourse

快活谷馬場 / 跑馬地馬場

Hong Kong Island. **🚇** Happy Valley.
 For race night details, call 1817.
🌐 hkjc.com/english

The racecourse at Happy Valley crackles with nervous energy during the Wednesday race nights, as tens of thousands of eager gamblers shout their

way through the evening.

Horse racing is a passion in Hong Kong; it's the only legal gambling opportunity available to local people. The industry is carefully controlled, with only the Hong Kong Jockey Club allowed to run the betting.

Formerly a malaria-ridden marsh, Happy Valley was turned into a racecourse as it was the widest stretch of flat land on Hong Kong Island. The first race was held here in 1845. Today, the huge stand holds up to 54,000 spectators. Racing is open all year except in July and August. Happy Valley's small Racing Museum details Hong Kong's racing history.

⑤ Hong Kong Zoological & Botanical Gardens

香港動植物公園

Albany Road. **Map** 2 B4. **Tel** (0852) 2530 0154. **M** Central. **🚇** 3B, 12, 12A, 12M. Zoo: **Open** 6am–7pm daily. Gardens: **Open** 6am–10pm daily.
🌐 lcsd.gov.hk

Opposite Hong Kong Park, just across Cotton Tree Drive, lie the Zoological and Botanical Gardens, established in 1864. The gardens house dozens of exotic animals such as lemurs, orang-utans, and the world's largest collection of buff-cheeked gibbons, while its aviaries have a colorful collection of birds. Hundreds of plants, including some ancient trees, provide welcome shade in this oasis of quiet. There is also a playground, some sculptures and fountains.

Happy Valley Races

Hong Kong's punters are crazy about horse racing. A single race at Happy Valley or at Sha Tin in the New Territories, often attracts more bets than an entire week of racing in Britain, and in 2012/13, the turn-over reached a record HK\$94 billion. The government collects significant tax revenues from the races, and although revenue has always been lost to illegal betting syndicates, the Hong Kong government still took HK\$11 billion in gambling tax revenue in 2012/13.



A thrilling finish at Happy Valley Race Course

6 The Peak

山頂

Cooling sea breezes, shaded woodland walks and spectacular views of the city, harbor and outlying islands make the Peak an unmissable Hong Kong experience. Ever since colonial days, the Peak has been the place to live in the city. Governors and rich merchants built houses here in the mid-1800s to escape the worst of the summer heat and humidity. The Peak's inhabitants were hauled up the sheer slopes in sedan chairs and numerous Chinese had to be employed to lug supplies to the mansions. When the Peak Tram (actually a funicular railway) was built in 1888, the trip was slashed from an hour's slog to a pleasant, if alarmingly steep, 10-minute ride. Despite the new accessibility, Chinese were excluded from buying real estate on the Peak well into modern times. Today, anyone with the means can acquire these properties – among the world's most expensive.



Victoria Peak Garden

A steep trudge towards the summit leads to these well-manicured gardens, which were once part of the Governor's Lodge (destroyed after World War II). Sadly, the summit is fenced off and houses telephone masts.



Pok Fu Lam Reservoir

A 3-mile (5-km) path descends through the peaceful woods of the Country Park and past the reservoir. It emerges on Pok Fu Lam Road, where frequent buses head back to the city center.



★ Peak Circuit

This flat 2.5-mile (4-km) circuit offers breathtaking views over Victoria Harbour to the north, and Aberdeen and Lamma Island to the south.



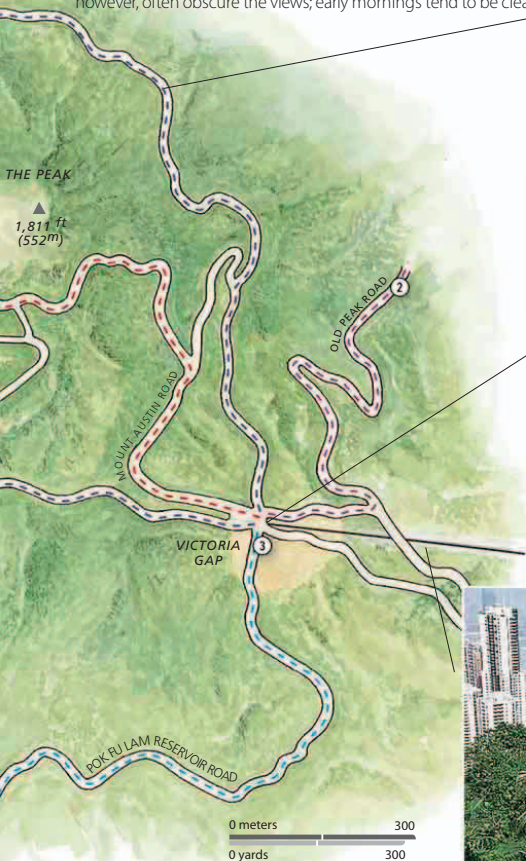
KEY

- ① **Governor's Walk** winds from the garden to Harlech Road. It tends to be overgrown and slippery.
- ② **This old route** to Central is pleasantly shaded but unrelentingly steep. To avoid the busy traffic near the bottom, detour onto Tregunter Path.
- ③ **Peak Galleria** houses pleasant shops and cafés.



★ The View

Equally stunning by day or night, the panorama of harbor activity and high-rises is endlessly fascinating. Clouds and smoggy haze, however, often obscure the views; early mornings tend to be clearer.



Key

- To Victoria Peak Garden
- Peak Circuit
- To Pok Fu Lam Reservoir
- Old Peak Road to Central
- Peak Tram

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

The Peak Tower, 128 Peak Road.

Map 2 A5. **Tel** (0852) 2849 0668.

w thepeak.com.hk

Transport

Lower Peak Tram Terminal, Garden Road. 15c at Central Bus Terminal (Pier 7); minibus 1 at Central (Two IFC).



The Peak Tower

This imposing mall at the tram terminus contains over 30 shops, Madame Tussauds, many cafés offering good views, and a 360° viewing terrace.



★ The Peak Tram

A commuter line with one of the best safety records in the world, the Peak Tram has been trundling up the hair-raisingly steep 27° incline between St. John's Cathedral and Victoria Gap for over a century.

For additional map symbols *see back flap*

7 Lan Kwai Fong

蘭桂坊

Central. **Map** 2 B3. **M** Central.

It is only at night that Lan Kwai Fong ("Orchid Square") really starts to buzz, attracting office workers, including plenty of city suits, to its many bars, clubs, and restaurants. It houses some of the trendiest pubs and entertainment hangouts in Hong Kong, and the street is especially packed with revelers on Fridays and Saturdays, although most places remain open until late throughout the week. The partying spills across D'Aguilar Street to tiny Wing Wah Lane's bars and good-value Thai, Malay, and Indian restaurants, most of which have outdoor dining spaces.



Crowds outside Lan Kwai Fong's many bars and clubs

8 The Central–Mid-levels Escalator

中環半山自動扶手電梯

Central. **Map** 2 B3. **M** Central.
Open 6am–midnight.

All the roads between Queen's Road and Conduit Road are linked by a 2,598-ft (792-m) long string of escalators. This is the longest covered outdoor escalator system in the world, and took two-and-a-half years and more than HK\$205 million to build. It is the best way to commute between Central, the Mid-Levels, and SoHo (South of Hollywood Road). Many bars, cafés, restaurants, and market



Entrance to the Central–Mid-levels Escalator

stalls cluster round the Escalator. Good Spring Company, on Cochrane Street, sells foul-tasting health tonics from a brass urn. Inside, its herbalist consultants, some of whom speak English, can tailor-make a brew for those who are curious.

Partly as a result of the completion of the Central–Mid-levels Escalator, SoHo has been transformed from a sleepy district into a thriving entertainment area. Elgin, Shelley, and Staunton Streets are excellent places to find food and drink. A plaque on Staunton Street marks the site of the house in which Dr. Sun Yat-sen (*see* p303), seen by many as China's revolutionary forefather, met with fellow members of his society in the late 1890s. It also marks a historical trail of 13 sites connected with him.



Lion, Man Mo Temple

9 Hollywood Road

荷李活道

Central. **Map** 2 B3. **M** Central, then Escalator.

The many antique shops here no longer offer the bargains they once did, but Hollywood Road still has shops selling ancient ceramics, mammoth ivory carvings, and delicate snuff bottles. The stalls on Upper Lascar Row are a good hunting ground for antiques, old coins, and kitsch. Haggling is acceptable here. Some home furnishings shops, located at the eastern end, sell traditional items such as teardrop-shaped silk lampshades.

10 Man Mo Temple

文武廟

128 Hollywood Rd. **Map** 2 A2. **Tel** (0852) 2540 0350. **M** Central, then Escalator. **Open** 8am–6pm daily.

Atmospheric Man Mo Temple stands at the corner of Ladder Street. Inside its red and gold interior, smoke curls from giant incense spirals hanging from the ceiling, and flames in large brass urns devour paper offerings to the dead, such as the ubiquitous Hell bank notes. Built in 1847, the temple was dedicated to two deities, Man and Mo (the Gods of Literature and War), believed to be real men – the 3rd-century administrator Cheung Ah Tse and the 3rd-century soldier



Lighting a joss stick at Man Mo Temple



The city's Star Ferry service – an unmistakable sight in Hong Kong

Kwan Yu – who were deified by the emperors. Their statues can be seen at the back of the main chamber. The temple served as a courthouse and community center to the Chinese in the 19th century, as an alternative to adopting the alien policies followed by the British.

11 Sheung Wan's Markets

上環街市

Hong Kong Island. **Map 2 A1.** **M**
Sheung Wan.

The short stroll from Central's slick modernity into the western district of Sheung Wan feels like entering a different city. Beneath the scruffy 1950s tenement blocks, the area around Queen's Road West and Wing Lok Street teems with Chinese medicine and dried seafood wholesalers. This is probably the world's largest center for the shark's fin trade, an exorbitantly priced delicacy, usually used in soups. The piles of fins on view explain why the world shark population is fast declining.

Apart from dried goods, fresh produce is available in the many fruit, vegetable, and "wet" markets dotted between the Central–Mid-levels Escalator and Morrison Street. Live produce, of the feathered, finned or webbed kind, is

usually sold in the wet markets, while the fruit and vegetable markets sell a wonderful selection of fruit and typical Chinese fare, including fresh, still-steaming beancurd and tangy "1,000 year eggs," which are not, in fact, that old, but given an aged look by the mineral earth they are stored in. These places are not to be missed, although the squeamish may want to avoid the "wet" markets.




Fresh fruit piled high at a market in Sheung Wan

12 Star Ferry

天星小輪

Star Ferry Terminals: Central, Wan Chai & Kowloon. **Map 3 D2, 3 F3, 3 E1.**

Tel (0852) 2367 7065. 

w starferry.com.hk

Few activities in Hong Kong can compete with the sheer excitement and romance of jumping on these old 1960s ferries that chug ponderously between Kowloon and Hong

Kong Island. They are by far the best and cheapest way to view the city skyline by day or night. The main route links the Kowloon peninsula (just near the Clock Tower) with the Star Ferry Terminal at Central, but it is also possible to reach the Convention Centre and Wan Chai from Kowloon aboard these jolly green boats. Touted as Hong Kong Island's most dependable sight, the Star Ferry service was started by Mr. Dorabjee Nowrojee, a Parsi gentleman, way back in 1898. At that time, the only people allowed on first-class decks were Europeans, and a collar and tie were obligatory.



Forecourt of the Hong Kong Cultural Centre

13 Tsim Sha Tsui Waterfront 尖沙咀沿岸

Kowloon. **Map** 1 B5. **M** Tsim Sha Tsui. **Star Ferry** 7 Star Ferry Concourse, Hong Kong Cultural Centre: 10 Salisbury Rd, (0852) 2734 2009. **Open** 9am–11pm.

The Tsim Sha Tsui waterfront is a popular tourist destination with some of the ritziest arcades, museums, and hotels in the city. The Star Ferry (*see p321*) docks are also located here. East of the pier is the **Hong Kong Cultural Centre**, which houses halls, theaters, and galleries. Adjacent to the Centre is the Space Museum, ideal for children with its interactive exhibits beneath a golf-ball dome. Other attractions include the Avenue of Stars honoring the city's film greats and an elevated walkway for views of the city skyline.

14 Hong Kong Museum of Art 香港藝術館

10 Salisbury Road, Tsim Sha Tsui. **Map** 1 B5. **Tel** (0852) 2721 0116. **M** Tsim Sha Tsui. **Star Ferry** 10am–6pm Fri–Wed (7pm Sat, Sun & public hols). **free Wed.** **hk.art.museum**

The Museum of Art is renowned for its exhibitions of traditional Chinese watercolors and calligraphy. Exquisite craftware from Southern China and Asia

fills the second floor. Also on display are more than 3,000 objects in ceramics, jade, bronze, lacquer, enamel, glass, ivory, as well as furniture and fine porcelain.

15 Nathan Road 彌敦道

Kowloon. **Map** 1 B4. **M** Tsim Sha Tsui.

Also known as the Golden Mile on its lower reaches, Nathan Road is Kowloon's main transport artery. Running north through the center of the peninsula, it is bright, busy, and packed with hotels and shops. The term Golden Mile, however, flatters the area – far more glitzy enclaves can be found in Central. Nonetheless, a stroll along Nathan Road is one of the essential



Neon sign, Nathan Road

Hong Kong experiences for its crowds of shoppers and workers, the tangle of neon signage, the ever-present tailoring shops, and the mixture of smart hotels, Cantonese canteens, and grim guest-house tenement blocks, such as the once-notorious Chungking Mansions, a chaotic warren of tiny shops and restaurants. The road's far northern end offers glimpses of the past. Here, the ramrod-straight Boundary Street still marks the line of the 1860 border, the year Britain forced China to cede Kowloon to accommodate the burgeoning island colony.

16 Hong Kong Science Museum 科學館

2 Science Museum Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui East. **Map** 1 C3. **Tel** (0852) 2732 3232. **M** Tsim Sha Tsui. **Open** 10am–7pm Mon–Wed & Fri, 10am–9pm Sat, Sun & public hols. **free Wed.** **hk.science.museum**

A great destination for children, the Science Museum is packed with fun interactive displays on its four floors that detail basic scientific principles, including electricity and gravity, and a fun "World of Mirrors" on the ground floor. There are also good displays on technology, which demonstrate the workings of various types of machinery ranging from the combustion engine to computer chips, as well as robotics and virtual reality.



Model of a DNA molecule at the Hong Kong Museum of Science

17 Hong Kong Museum of History 香港歷史博物館

100 Chatham Road South, Tsim Sha Tsui East. **Map** 1 C3. **Tel** (0852) 2724 9042. **M** Tsim Sha Tsui. **Open** 10am–6pm Mon, Wed & Fri, 10pm–7pm Sat, Sun & public hols. **free Wed.** **hk.history.museum**

The pursuit of profit and the resulting change of pace in much of Hong Kong has eroded most of its historical and cultural heritage. The

excellent Museum of History shows what the region looked like before the skyscrapers arrived. Walk around replicas of traditional villages, street blocks, and shops or linger over fascinating displays of old photographs. There is also a display of Bronze Age daggers, pottery, and arrowheads found on Lamma and Lantau Islands (see pp330–31).

18 Temple Street & Jade Markets

廟街及玉石市場

Yau Ma Tei. **Map** 1 B2. **M** Jordan or Yau Ma Tei.

Haggling is an essential skill at the Temple Street night market, which only livens up after 8pm. Although cheaper bargains are available elsewhere, the atmosphere and range of items, including fake designer labels, shoes, Mao memorabilia, and pirated DVDs, are unbeatable.

Adding to the experience are fortune tellers, street performers, and food vendors. The market snakes north from Ning Po Street to Man Ming Lane. The daytime Jade Market is a good place to pick up inexpensive trinkets, although cheaper jade can be found in Guangzhou (see pp304–5), and elsewhere in China.



Caged song birds for sale at the Bird Market in Mong Kok

19 Bird & Flower Markets

雀仔街及花園街

Flower Market Road, Mong Kok, Kowloon. **M** Prince Edward.

The Bird and Flower markets are less frenetic and more convenient than Temple Street, and are well worth a visit. Colorful blooms and clever bamboo creations line Flower Market Road, just north of Prince Edward Road West. Located at the end of Flower Market Road is the small Bird Market with a few stalls selling

elegant cages, food, and songbirds. Some bird lovers can be seen feeding their birds grasshoppers through the cage with chopsticks.

20 Wong Tai Sin Temple

黃大仙祠

Wong Tai Sin, Kowloon. **Tel** (0852) 2327 8141. **M** Wong Tai Sin. **Open** 7am–5:30pm daily.

The Temple at Wong Tai Sin is one of Hong Kong's largest, busiest, and most interesting places of worship. The complex contains altars and shrines to Buddhist, Confucian, and Daoist deities. It is primarily dedicated to the god Wong Tai Sin, a shepherd reputed to have performed healing miracles. Beside the main temple are fortune tellers, some of whom can reveal your fortune for a hefty fee in English, mostly through palm and face reading.

Some worshipers try to divine what lies in store for them by shaking small canisters of bamboo sticks, until one emerges from the stack. Each is marked with a numeral and a corresponding meaning. Also used are *bui* or "Buddha's lips," two pieces of wood shaped like orange-segments. A question is asked, the *bui* are thrown, and the "lips" answer yes or no, depending on which way they land.



Wong Tai Sin Temple, one of Hong Kong's busiest places of worship







Life-size Buddhas, 10,000 Buddhas Monastery

21 Heritage Museum

香港文化博物館

1 Man Lam Rd, Sha Tin, New Territories.

🚶 Sha Tin MTR, then bus 86; or Kowloon Tong MTR, then bus 80M. **Tel** (0852) 2180 8188. **Open** 10am–6pm Mon, Wed–Fri (7pm Sat, Sun & hols).

🌐 heritagemuseum.gov.hk

This excellent, modern museum tells the story of Hong Kong's 6,000 year-old human history. The largest of the city's museums, it has six permanent exhibitions and plenty of space for temporary shows. The New Territories Heritage Hall illustrates prehistoric human life, the rise of village society, colonial rule and the large-scale development of the New Territories towns. There is also a display on Cantonese opera, which explains the elaborate ritual and color symbolism involved and contains exquisitely crafted costumes. Beautiful calligraphy scrolls hang from the second floor. The Children's Discovery Gallery on the ground floor is a fun look at Hong Kong's natural habitat.

22 10,000 Buddhas Monastery

萬佛寺

21 Pai Tau Village, Sha Tin, New Territories. 🚶 Sha Tin MTR. **Tel** (0852) 2691 1067. **Open** 9am–5pm daily.

Ruby-lipped, life-size golden Buddhas line the steep path up to the Temple of the 10,000 Buddhas, a 15-minute walk from the northern exit of the

Sha Tin MTR station. Cross the road and follow the clear signposts to the temple, which is at the top of the wooded hill. The main temple houses hundreds of tiny golden Buddhas which line shelves reaching up to the ceiling. There are more Buddha images outside, including one astride a giant white elephant and another on top of a huge dog. Still more statues peep from the monastery's bright-red, nine-story pagoda. The small annex above the main temple contains the embalmed body of the temple's founding monk, covered in gold leaf and placed in a glass case.



Pagoda,
10,000 Buddhas

23 Sai Kung Town & Peninsula Beaches

西貢海灘

New Territories. 🚶 M to Choi Hung station then taxi or minibus 1A or 1S to Sai Kung Town.

It may seem incredible, but just a few miles from Kowloon's bustling streets, it is possible to find empty beaches, clear surf, and seclusion on the shores of the rugged Sai Kung Peninsula.

The area is best accessed via Sai Kung Town, a pleasant place to wander among the stalls selling fish near the sea-front, and to eat at the profusion of seafood restaurants.

Some of the most pristine beaches on the peninsula can be found at **Tai Long Wan**, where there is a small village and a couple of cafés and shops. The best way to reach this spot is to take bus 94 from Sai Kung Town to Pak Tam Au, part of the Maclehoose Trail (see p327), and then hike to Tai Long Wan. A reasonable level of fitness is required and remember to take along a good map

and plenty of fluids.

Much shorter and flatter woodland walks start at **Pak Tam Chung Visitor Centre**.



The beaches and emerald waters of the Sai Kung Peninsula

Maps are available here for numerous walks, including a worthwhile nature trail. Take a taxi or bus 94.

Alternatively, hire a *kaido*, a small ferry, from Sai Kung Town for a tour of the many small islands. It is easy to find eager operators near the jetty, although without speaking Cantonese, travelers will need a map to point out where they would like to go, as most of the operators don't speak English.



One of the buildings along the Lung Yeuk Tau Heritage Trail

24 Lung Yeuk Tau Heritage Trail

龍躍頭文物徑

Fanling, New Territories. Fanling MTR, then 54K minibuses.

For a glimpse of pre-colonial times in rural Hong Kong, spend a couple of hours exploring the mile-long **Lung Yeuk Tau Heritage Trail** near Fanling. This passes five *wais* (walled villages) and six *tsuens* (villages), mostly built by the Tangs, one of the five great New Territory clans. The buildings are in various states of repair, from dilapidated ruins to pristine walled compounds and some modern houses. Most of these are still lived in. Among the best-preserved buildings is the large **Tang Chung Ling Ancestral Hall**, founded in 1525 and still used today by the Tangs to pay respects to their ancestors and to hold celebrations. **Tong Kok**, a *wai*, also has dozens of old houses.

25 Kadoorie Farm & Botanic Garden

嘉道理農場暨植物園

Lam Kam Rd, New Territories. **Tel** (0852) 2483 7200. Tai Po Market MTR then 64K bus. **Open**

9:30am–5pm daily, but check in advance for irregular closed days.

kfbg.org.hk

This working organic farm and wildlife refuge is nestled in the wooded foothills of Hong Kong's tallest mountain, 3,140-ft (957-m) high **Tai Mo Shan**. It is a great place to escape the crowds and modernity of downtown, with an easy hike to the top. There are terraced vegetable plots and groves of fruit trees, a small enclosure of orphaned animals, including wildcats, deer, and birds of prey, and a walking trail. You will need a good half-day to see everything the farm has to offer.

26 Mai Po Marshes

米埔自然保護區

New Territories. **Tel** (0852) 2471 6306.

Sheung Shui MTR then 76K bus or taxi. Permits: deposit & advanced booking required. on weekends.

wwf.org.hk;

wetlandpark.com

Wedge between Hong Kong and the urban sprawl of Shenzhen, this globally important wetland is home to a range of wildlife species. Pollution has taken its toll elsewhere along the Pearl River Delta, making this 940-acre

(380-ha) park the last refuge for many species. Apart from herons and egrets, otters and the very rare black-faced spoonbills can be seen. There are numerous bird hides for keen bird-watchers. Contact HKT B (see p339) for details on guided weekend tours. The **Hong Kong Wetland Park**, explores the area's diverse ecosystems and occupies a 150-acre (61-ha) area.

27 MacLehose Trail

麥理浩徑

New Territories. Tai Mo Shan: taxi from Tsuen Wan MTR. hkwalkers.net

Strung east–west across the middle of the New Territories, this 62-mile (100-km) route takes in huge, wild and high areas from Tuen Mun in the west to the lovely Sai Kung Peninsula in the east. Divided into 10 manageable stages, it is possible to walk for long stretches without seeing a soul. One of the most scenic sections takes in **Tai Mo Shan**, Hong Kong's highest peak with views, on a clear day, down to the distant city. The far eastern stage is also very beautiful, concluding at Tai Long Wan's lovely beaches (see p326). Sturdy shoes, fluids, and maps (from the Government Publications Centre) are essential. The record for completing the trail is just over 11 hours as part of the Annual Trailwalker Charity Race.



A scenic waterway in Mai Po Marshes



A traditional fishing boat moored in Aberdeen's bustling harbor

28 Aberdeen 香港仔

Hong Kong Island. 🚌 70 or 75 from Central's Exchange Square bus station.

Once a quiet fishing village, Aberdeen is today the largest separate town on Hong Kong Island with a population of more than 60,000. Named in 1845 after the British Colonial Secretary, the Earl of Aberdeen, the harbor housed Hong Kong's first dockyard, which was built in the 1860s.

A short bus ride from Central (see p316), the Aberdeen district has a rather unattractive town center, edged by massive, high-rise apartment blocks, commercial towers, and factories. What it lacks in aesthetic appeal, however, it makes up for in

bustle and atmosphere. The boat-filled harbor is the big attraction in Aberdeen as it is the center of all activity. Many of the boats found here are actually part-time residences for Hong Kong's fishermen and their families; so much so that the district still has the characteristics of a traditional fishing village. Tiny sampans dodge among the wooden fishing fleet and the large, palatial floating restaurants. Pushy operators on the waterfront offer tours by sampan that take visitors past the fishing boats, the houseboats, and small harbor-side shipyards.

Alternatively, for a quicker (and free) tour, jump aboard the shuttles to the floating restaurants moored here, such as the **Jumbo Floating Restaurant**.

The first and most famous of the floating restaurants, it is a massive, palatial hulk that is part Las Vegas-style casino and part Chinese temple. The top deck is a sophisticated seafood restaurant with occasional live jazz.

29 Ocean Park 海洋公園

180 Wong Chuk Road, Aberdeen.

Tel (0852) 3923 2323. 🚌 Ocean Park City Bus from Central's Star Ferry Pier or 6A, 6X, 70, 75, 90, 97, or 260. 📶

Open 10am–8pm daily.

🌐 oceanpark.com.hk

With the arrival of a mega competitor in the shape of Lantau Island's Disneyland (see p331), Ocean Park, Hong Kong's first amusement park, has fought back with more attractions. It is much better than it ever was, gives Disney a run for its money, and attracts great crowds of people every day. There is plenty to do for adults and children alike, and it's easy to spend a day exploring the eight themed areas of this pleasant complex. The Waterfront area is one of the most enjoyable sections, with a collection of Asian animals, including the theme park's pride, four giant pandas. A scenic cable car skirts the edge of Deepwater Bay,



The garish Jumbo Floating Restaurant lights up Aberdeen Harbour

For hotels and restaurants in this area see pp558–63 and pp572–85

dropping passengers in Marine World. Here, a large and impressive aquarium captivates visitors with close-up views of schools of fish and an underwater tunnel through a tank of sharks. Numerous thrilling rides are found throughout the grounds, including the Hair Raiser, the dizzying Mine Train roller coaster jutting out over the sea, and Raging River, which guarantees a good soaking.

30 Deep Water & Repulse Bays 深水灣及淺水灣

Hong Kong Island. 📍 6, 6A, 61, 260, 262 from Central's Exchange Square bus station.

Several good beaches line these two scenic bays located along the road from Aberdeen to Stanley. Deep Water Bay is a pretty spot favored by the wealthy, with many luxurious houses. The long stretch of beach lined by cypress-like trees is reminiscent of the French Riviera. Upmarket apartment



Colossal statue of goddess Guanyin, Repulse Bay



The popular beach at the seaside town of Stanley

blocks, inhabited by Hong Kong's business elite, surround the long, well-tended beach at Repulse Bay. The beach is a popular summer destination and gets very crowded in season and on weekends. The pricey Verandah Restaurant – the only surviving section of the stately Repulse Bay Hotel, which was torn down in the 1980s – is a good place for a drink or afternoon tea. Just behind the Verandah is a supermarket for picnic supplies, and a few cafés.

31 Hong Kong Life Saving Society 香港拯溺協會

Repulse Bay, Hong Kong Island.
Open 7am–7pm daily.

At the far southern end of Repulse Bay is the Hong Kong Life Saving Society. The building also serves as a temple, and is a great place for children to explore. Garish statues – a menagerie of gods, animals, and mythical beasts – are scattered across the grounds in amongst the life-saving equipment. Among the gods is a large statue of Guanyin, the Bodhisattva of Mercy, to whom the temple is dedicated. Several other gods are represented, including a number of smiling bronze Buddhas. Rubbing their bald heads is said to bring good luck. Some believe that crossing the Bridge of Longevity also adds three days to a person's life.

32 Stanley 赤柱

Hong Kong Island. 📍 6, 6A, 6X, 260 from Central's Exchange Square bus station. 🕒 9am–6pm daily.

This pre-colonial fishing village today resembles a British seaside town, complete with English-style pubs. The extensive sprawl of market stalls selling clothes, beachwear, silk, jade, trinkets, and furniture draws weekend crowds. The area also has a good selection of Thai, Italian, Spanish, Vietnamese, and Chinese restaurants.

Beside the square is **Murray House**, a large, Neo-Classical building, housing some fine restaurants with bay views. Dismantled and rebuilt here in 1998, it originally stood on the site now occupied by the Bank of China tower in Central. Next to it **Tin Hau Temple**, built in 1767, is one of the island's oldest and most evocative shrines. The festival of Tin Hau (see p51) is celebrated in late April or early May with dances and boat races.

On the other side of town is the beautifully kept **Stanley Cemetery**, dating to the earliest colonial days. It contains the gravestones of early residents and soldiers killed in World Wars I and II, including those who died in the Japanese concentration camp built nearby. Stanley Beach, on the other side of the peninsula, is a long stretch of sand and the venue for the local dragon boat races.



Lamma Island, with hilltop views of the sea and Hong Kong Island

33 Lamma Island

南丫島

from Central (pier 4) and from Aberdeen (via Mo Tat).

Good seafood restaurants and pubs, a relaxed atmosphere, pleasant hilltop walks, and the absence of cars make leafy, low-key Lamma the perfect escape from the city bustle. Its two main villages, **Yung Shue Wan** on the west coast and restaurant-packed **Sok Kwu Wan** on the east coast, are a half-hour ferry ride from Central. Yung Shue Wan is an expat stronghold with two or three English-style pubs and some good restaurants. A steep climb leads to the hills above Yung Shue Wan, where there are fine views of the sea and Hong Kong Island. Visitors can hike on the path between the two villages, but should plan their walk around the infrequent return ferry from Sok Kwu Wan. The harbor here is also home to the **Lamma Fisherfolk's Village**, a fascinating floating exhibition that looks at the life of a fisherman and the skills and traditional techniques of the trade.

34 Cheung Chau Island

長洲

from Central (pier 5). Bun Festival (May).

This charming island, just 45 minutes by ferry from Hong Kong Island, has plenty to offer, from paddling near its beaches

to exploring the traditional shops and shrines along its narrow lanes and eating at the many seafood places at the harbor's edge on Pak She Praya Road. The squid with shrimp paste is a local speciality. The southern coast offers the best walks, with sea views and woodland pathways threading past crumbling colonial mansions.

The island's earliest settlers lived here some 2,500 years ago; their only surviving relics are the geometric etchings on the rocks below Warwick Hotel. In the 19th century, the island was a haven for pirates, where the notorious Cheung Po-Tsai supposedly hid plunder. The fishing community is depleted today due to excessive fishing over the past 50 years.

Close to the harbor, the 1783 **Pak Tai Temple** is dedicated to the island's patron deity, who is credited with saving islanders from the plague in 1777. The annual Bun Festival (see p339) is celebrated here in May, when young men scale 26-ft (8-m) towers made entirely of buns.



Colorful sampans and fishing boats in Cheung Chau harbor

35 Lantau Island

大嶼山

from Central (pier 6) to Mui Wo (Silvermine Bay).

Twice the size of Hong Kong Island, Lantau was ceded to the British in 1898 along with the other islands and the New Territories. Despite the addition of a bridge and the huge Chek Lap Kok airport, large tracts of the island still remain largely uninhabited, including two country parks in which are the peaks that form the island's backbone and numerous hiking trails.

Lantau's seclusion has made it a popular place for religious retreats. The most striking of these is **Po Lin Monastery**, located on a hilltop on the Ngong Ping plateau. The monastery grounds are grand and colorful, and the over-the-



Tai O Fishing Village

Traditional stilt houses cluster on the muddy banks of the small estuary at this rural fishing settlement.



top, gaudy main temple is well worth a visit. **The Big Buddha**, an 85-ft (26-m) statue perched at the top of a 268-step flight of stairs, is the monastery's biggest draw. Since the Buddha's consecration in 1993, the monastery has been overrun with tourists. There are also bauhinia and orchid gardens and basic vegetarian food in two canteens.

The area around Ngong Ping is also a great place for walks and picnics. Keen hikers stay at the SG Davis Youth Hostel before making a pre-dawn hike up **Lantau Peak** to watch the spectacular sunrise.

At the island's western end, the sleepy fishing village of **Tai O** has narrow streets and tiny residences reminiscent of rural China. Once a major salt trading center, today the old



The Big Buddha at Po Lin Monastery

salt pans are being used as fish-breeding ponds. Tai O has a few temples and many shops selling live seafood and dried fish, the local speciality.

To the west of the island, **Discovery Bay** is the starting

point for a gentle walk to a Trappist Monastery. Its chapel is open to visitors willing to observe the vow of silence taken by the monks.

Lantau's popular attraction, the multi-billion dollar **Hong Kong Disneyland**, is modeled after the original Disneyland in California, and the 311-acre (126-ha) area includes a park featuring Mickey Mouse and his friends, as well as original attractions designed especially for Hong Kong, themed hotels, an arboretum, and a retail and dining center.

Ngong Ping & The Big Buddha

Bus 2. Also taxi or cable car from Tung Chung MTR.

Disneyland

MTR to Disneyland Resort via Sunny Bay station.

Tung Chung is connected to Po Lin Monastery by a 4-mile (6-km) cable car.

Hong Kong Disneyland is built on reclaimed land, which was once Penny's Bay.



Discovery Bay is a slightly surreal dormitory community, where residents get about in golf buggies. A jet ferry connects to Central.

Mui Wo, the island's main pier, has several restaurants and bars as well as a beach.

Cheung Sha's clean, sandy and often deserted beach, is one of Hong Kong's best.

Key

- National highway
- Major road
- Minor road
- Railroad

Lantau Peak

The only way up this 3,065-ft (934-m) high peak is via a steep path through tea gardens. It is an ideal spot for watching the sunrise.



36 Macau

澳門

An hour by ferry from Hong Kong, Macau was once seen as principally a sleepy side-trip offering a break from the buzz and bustle of the British enclave. Economically backward, it traded on the preservation of colonial-era buildings and as a gambling weekend resort. But even before the Portuguese colony's return to China in 1999, two years after Hong Kong, a complete restructuring of the tiny territory was underway, with vast public works projects including harbor reclamation, an airport, new bridges, and the fusing of the islands Taipa and Coloane into one. The connecting land, known as the Cotai Strip, is filling up with luxurious hotel-casinos, anchored by a copy of Las Vegas's The Venetian, with sampans floating amongst the gondolas. Macau now out-glitzes neighboring Hong Kong.



Historic cannons on the ramparts of Fortaleza do Monte

Fortaleza do Monte

Rua de Monte. **Open** 7am–7pm daily. **Macau Museum** Praceta do Museu de Macao, No 112. **Tel** (0853) 2835 7911. **Open** 10am–6pm Tue–Sun. (but free on 15th of each month).

Built between 1617 and 1626, this fortress housed the original Portuguese settlement at Macau. Its thick ramparts, surmounted by ancient cannons, still occupy a commanding position and appear as invincible as they did in 1622, when the invading Dutch forces were defeated.

Dug into the hill beneath the fort is the informative **Macau Museum**. Its escalators and stairs are an air-conditioned route to the hill-top fortress passing through re-creations of Portuguese and Chinese life. Beginning with the arrival of Portuguese traders and Jesuit missionaries, the exhibitions compare the two cultures at the time of contact and cover the development of Macau and its unique traditions.

Ruínas de São Paulo

Rua de São Paulo.

Open daily.

All that is left of this once grand cathedral, built by the Jesuits and perched precariously atop a steep flight of steps, is its magnificent, crumbling façade. Its most outstanding features are the ornate figures on the façade, comprising a “sermon in stone” that records some of the main events from the Christian scriptures.

The cathedral was built by Japanese Christian converts, who fled to Macau in the 16th century following religious repression. In the 18th century, Macau also expelled the Jesuits, and the building was converted into



The magnificent façade of the Ruínas de São Paulo

baracks until it was destroyed by a fire in 1835. Only extensive structural work in the 1990s stopped the façade from crumbling. The attached museum houses paintings, sculptures, and relics from Macau's churches.

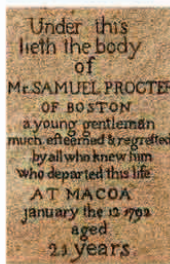
The Old Protestant Cemetery

Praca Luis de Camões.

Open 9am–5:30pm daily.

The gravestones at this cemetery at the corner of the Camões Gardens are crammed with fascinating historical details that give some wonderful insights into the lives led by early colonists. Many of them were Britons, who traded, married, or fought in and around Macau before Hong Kong was

established as a British territory. Among the notable people buried here are Robert Morrison, the first Protestant missionary to venture to China, and the artist George Chinnery. The gravestones speak of short but heroic lives, such as that of the brave Lieutenant Fitzgerald killed after “gallantly storming” a



Gravestone, Old Protestant Cemetery

gun battery at Canton (now Guangzhou). The inscription on Robert Morrison's tomb states that he produced the first Chinese version of the Old and New Testaments. The adjoining Camões Gardens are named after the renowned Portuguese poet Luis Vaz de Camões, the author of the 16th-century epic *The Lusids*.

Guia Fort & Lighthouse

Estrada de Cacilhas. **Tel** (0853) 2859 5481. **Open** 9am–5:30pm daily.

The Guia Fort was built between 1622 and 1638, and offers great views over the town. Initially it served as a fort to defend the border with China, but in 1865 a lighthouse was added. A pleasant way to get here is to take the cable car to the hilltop. A small chapel stands next door and there are several gentle walking trails around the hill.



Colonial façade on Largo do Senado

The Venetian

Cotai Strip. **Tel** (0853) 2882 8888.

venetianmacao.com

Inspired by The Venetian in Las Vegas, Macau's most spectacular hotel-casino recreates a miniature Venice, complete with campanile, Rialto Bridge, and gondolas with singing gondoliers. The mega-resort is suites-only and offers themed shopping as well as a theater seating up to 1800 people. There is the usual array of slot machines, blackjack, baccarat,

roulette, and keno (bingo), as well as some Chinese games, including the dice game *dai sui* and the *mahjong*-style *pai kao*. Gambling is Macau's lifeblood, contributing more than half the government's revenue. Macau also hosts horse racing, held twice a week, and greyhound racing, four times a week (see p338).

Largo do Senado

The symbolic heart of Macau, the Largo do Senado or Senate Square has numerous stately colonial

buildings set around it, including the Leal Senado or Loyal Senate, which now houses the municipal government, the General Post Office, and the Santa Casa de Misericórdia, an old refuge for orphans and prostitutes. There are also numerous restaurants and the tourist office. The striking, wavy black and white tile patterns snaking across the square make it a great place to take photographs by day or floodlit by night.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

560,000. 9 Largo do Senado, (0853) 2831 5566. Macau Arts Festival (May).

macautourism.gov.mo

Transport

Taipa Island, about a mile (2 km) South. Macau Ferry Terminal, Avenida Amizade (ferries to Hong Kong, Hong Kong Airport, and Shenzhen Airport).

Praia Grande

Perhaps the best way to get a flavor of Macau's colonial architecture is to take a stroll on the Avenida de Praia Grande. Although land reclamation has encroached on the waterfront and robbed the Praia Grande of some of its elegance, it is still a charming place with many grand houses still in excellent condition. The monument to Jorge Alvares, the first Portuguese explorer to reach China, stands near the corner of Avenida do Dr. Mario Soares. One of the most handsome buildings is the old Governor's Residence. Although it is not open to the public as it is a private residence, a good view can be had from the road.

Macau City Center

- ① Fortaleza do Monte
- ② Ruínas de São Paulo
- ③ The Old Protestant Cemetery
- ④ Guia Fort & Lighthouse
- ⑤ The Venetian
- ⑥ Largo do Senado
- ⑦ Praia Grande
- ⑧ Rua da Felicidade
- ⑨ Maritime Museum
- ⑩ Pousada São Tiago
- ⑪ Macau Tower
- ⑫ The Barra



0 meters 800
0 yards 800



Rua da Felicidade

A variety of sweet scents waft from the Rua da Felicidade or "Street of Happiness," where tasty and colorful Macanese biscuits and cakes are baked and sold. The area once teemed with brothels, hence its somewhat ironically bestowed name. Today, it is a charming, cobbled street lined with small eateries, which makes it a good place for a quick lunch stop.

Maritime Museum

Largo do Pagode da Barra 1.

Tel (0853) 2859 5481. **Open**

10am–6pm Wed–Mon. 

 museumaritimo.gov.mo

Small-scale but interesting exhibits make this museum worth a visit for insights into Macau's maritime past upon which its wealth was built. Displays include models of Chinese junks, Portuguese ships and fishing boats, a mock Hakka village (see p296), a dragon boat, and a small aquarium. There is also a nice bar on the esplanade outside, open during museum hours.

Pousada São Tiago

Avenida da Republica Fortaleza de

São Tiago da Barra. **Tel** (0853) 2837

8111.  saotiago.com.mo

Well worth a visit for a drink on the terrace, a night's stay, or a meal at its restaurant, this tiny but enchanting hotel was once a fortress hewn from the rock



A scale model of a Chinese junk, Maritime Museum

on which it stood in the 17th century. The chapel to São Tiago, Portugal's patron saint of soldiers, remains to this day. The structure is more a rocky grotto than a smart hotel, which only adds to its charm. A natural spring runs through the lobby and the corridors are paved with flagstones. Its rooms are traditionally decorated in Portuguese style. The hotel also runs a good restaurant, La Paloma.

Macau Tower

Largo da Torre de Macau.

Tel (0853) 2893 3339. **Open**

10am–9pm Mon–Fri,

9am–9pm Sat & Sun.

 macautower.com.mo

The Macau Tower, the peninsula's most visible attraction, is 1,107 ft (338 m) high. The tower provides a great view; in fact, visitors can see

Hong Kong's surrounding islands on a clear day. It is, however, not the ideal place for those who don't like heights.

Glass-sided elevators rocket visitors skywards, and the restaurants and viewing galleries at the top are also partially glass-bottomed. For the truly adventurous, it is possible to don overalls and a harness, and explore parts of the tower's exterior with the adventure sports company, A.J. Hackett, which runs a number of activities, including bungy trampoline and a dizzying skywalk around the tower's outer rim at a height of over 764 ft (233 m).



The modern Macau Tower

The Barra

Located south of Senado Square, Rua Central and Rua P. Antonio cut through the Barra district, where Macau's first European residents settled. A 40-minute walk through narrow streets sided with old colonial buildings will bring you to the classical bright green front of **Teatro Dom Pedro V** dating back to 1873. Farther down, **São Laureço** is a plain but beautifully proportioned church set high off the street. Eventually you reach tiny **Largo do Lilau**, a pretty cobbled square with a fountain and the restored **Mandarin's House** dating from 1881. Another 1,640 ft (500 m) along, the finely collonaded **Quartel dos Mouros**, once a Muslim barracks, is now a post office. Beyond lies the **A-Ma Temple**, Macau's oldest.



Avenida da Republica, near the Pousada São Tiago

Regional Food: Macau

When the Portuguese arrived in Macau 450 years ago, the peninsula was virtually uninhabited. They cooked using Portuguese methods, but with local Chinese ingredients and southeast Asian herbs and spices picked up from their other outposts in Africa, Goa, Malacca, Indonesia, and Japan. As the years went by, and links home were established, some of the grander families stuck with Portuguese recipes made with the traditionally correct ingredients, while the less well-off incorporated more Cantonese-style dishes and ingredients, and over time the two cuisines fused together to form a separate Macanese cuisine.



A selection of Cantonese sweetmeats in a Macau shop

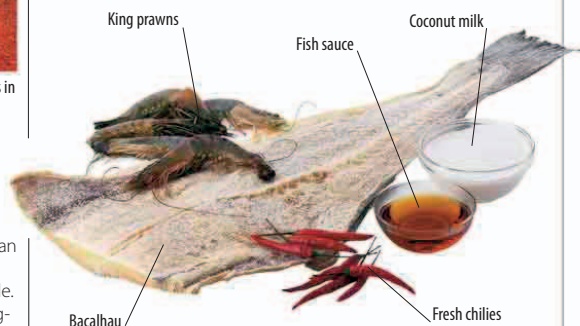
Portuguese

Bacalhau is the most famous Portuguese ingredient. This dried and salted cod is integral to Iberian cookery and in Macau is cooked in every way possible. Distinguishing other Portuguese influences is difficult but good signs include the liberal use of olive oil,

almonds, *chorizo* (paprika sausage), rabbit, and saffron. Other non-Chinese foods that are available are bread, cakes, cheese, olives, and coffee. Macau is also home to a well-developed wine culture, and naturally almost all the wines on offer are Portuguese. These are generally better quality than on the mainland and even better value.

Other Influences

The other obvious change to Cantonese cuisine is the more generous use of herbs and spices: coriander and chilies in peri-peri dishes from Africa; fish sauce from SE Asia; hot and spicy curries from Goa; *feijoada* and sweet potatoes from Brazil; tamarind from Malacca.



A selection of typical Macanese ingredients

Regional Dishes and Specialties



Saffron strands

There are very few totally Cantonese-inspired dishes in the Macanese cuisine. Tacho – a winter casserole of beef, pork, chicken and Chinese sausage is perhaps the most Cantonese of all Macanese dishes. As expected, *bacalhau* dishes feature prominently. There are *Bacalhau Guisado* (Salted Cod Stew), *Bacalhau a Gomes de Sa* (Salted Cod in Gomes de Sa Style), and *Pasteis de Bacalhau* (Salted Cod Cake) to name just a few. Other popular dishes include *Caril de Camarao* (Shrimp Curry). There are traditional Portuguese dishes like *Caldo Verde* (Cabbage and Potato Stew) and *Carne de Porco a Algarvia* (Braised Pork with Clams). At first sight, *Pasteis de Nata* (Egg Tartlets) look similar to the Cantonese ones in Hong Kong, but they taste quite different and have a flakier pastry shell.



Galinha Africana (African Chicken) derives from a West African recipe in which char-grilled chicken is coated in a spicy peanut and coconut sauce then roasted.

Shopping in Hong Kong & Macau

Label-mad Hong Kong is a paradise for shoppers, and is jammed with opportunities to buy from swanky designer boutiques in modern shopping malls to inexpensive street markets. It is a competitive destination for some electronic and computing items as well as good-quality, custom-made suits, shirts and *cheongsams* – the tight-fitting, traditional Chinese silk dresses. Visitors are unlikely to find good bargains, however, especially if comparing prices with those in China. Hong Kong's main advantage, though, is the sheer, unrivaled profusion of items on sale. Don't be afraid to haggle in markets and smaller stores, though prices are usually fixed in smarter shops and department stores.

Markets

Street markets are one of the best bargain-hunting grounds in Hong Kong, as long as you're prepared to sift through the ever-present fake designer goods. The **Temple Street Night Market** (see p323) in Yau Ma Tei is perhaps the most celebrated for its atmosphere, its prices and the range of accessories, clothes, trinkets, and other memorabilia. The **Jade Market**, near the night market, sells exactly what it advertises. The market at **Stanley** (see p329), on Hong Kong Island's southern coast, is as much fun for the trip out on the dramatic winding roads across the island. It is a good place to shop for touristy arts, crafts, clothes, and accessories.

Western Market is a more sedate place, located in the western district of Sheung Wan. The handsome colonial-era building outshines the nondescript restaurants on the ground floor, while the middle floor, spilling over with huge bolts of fabric in every color and stripe, offers the best deals on lengths of silk in Hong Kong.

Shopping Centers, Malls & Department Stores

Even seasoned department store junkies can overdose on the huge variety available in Hong Kong's sprawling shopping malls. **Harbour City**,

with its massive extended malls containing hundreds of individual shops, even dwarfs the big liners that dock near the Star Ferry at Tsim Sha Tsui in Kowloon. Across Victoria Harbour on Hong Kong Island, **The Landmark** in Central and **Pacific Place** in Admiralty are the places to head to for designer clothing labels such as Prada, Versace, and Zegna, and super-chic consumables from Vuitton, Bulgari, and Tiffany. **Sogo** at Causeway Bay (see p317) is another mammoth department store, while **Island Beverley**, nearby, crams hundreds of small outlets into its dozen or so floors, and sells modish street fashion at affordable prices.

Antiques & Jewelry

Hollywood Road (see p320) in Central is best for antiques, and is full of emporia selling everything from huge terracotta tomb guards to delicate little snuff bottles. Established names include **Honeychurch Antiques** specializing in wooden carvings, bracelets, and necklaces, **Gorgeous Arts & Crafts**, which stocks, among other things, antique hats and hairpins, and **Dragon Culture**, offering a good selection of pottery, bamboo carvings, and snuff bottles. **EXIT** is a good place to find works by new Asian artists. There are also some good antique shops in

Macau (see pp332–5), immediately to the south of the Ruínas de São Paulo.

Electronics, Cameras & Computers

Tsim Sha Tsui as well as the rest of Kowloon are generally the places to head to for electronics and gadgetry. Once the bargain basement of international electronics retail, **Nathan Road** is still packed with camera and electronics outlets, but prices aren't as competitive as they once were. Be wary, as there are numerous tales of less-than-honest vendors. If you plan to shop here anyway, do your homework, make sure you compare like for like, ask questions (ensuring that your purchase is compatible with your home country's voltage), and you may find a bargain.

Star House, opposite the bus terminal and the Star Ferry at Tsim Sha Tsui, is convenient and contains about 20 computer boutiques on its second floor. Farther north, the **Mongkok Computer Centre** houses more retailers. Its prices are generally lower than other stores, and visitors can try bargaining. However, if you would like to keep your shopping more straightforward, the **Fortress** chain stores are reasonably priced and a safe bet for cameras and handhelds. They will provide warranties and guidance on foreign voltages.

Chinese Arts & Crafts

There's little doubt that the wares on offer in **Yue Hwa** can be found at a much cheaper price over the border, but it is a convenient place to go to when buying last-minute presents. The store in Jordan is packed with silk goods, carvings, ceramics, jade, and teapots. The **Lok Cha Tea Shop**, on Queen's Road Central in Sheung Wan, is a cosy, friendly place, where visitors can sample delicate green and jasmine teas and buy some exquisite traditional teapots. Bargain teapots can also be found at

Macau's **Culture Club**. For a modern take on Chinese style, the upmarket **G.O.D.** (Goods of Desire) chain offers smart interior goods at reasonable prices.

Clothes

Needless to say, the malls and department stores are the best places for clothes. However, **Joyce** is also a good destination for shoppers seeking a large range of smart labels under one roof. Great value Gap-style clothing can be found at one of the many **Giordano** stores in town. **Shanghai Tang** in Central offers traditional Chinese

clothes and home decor with a contemporary twist. For Europeans who despair of finding essentials in their size, there is always the well-known British **Marks & Spencer** chain of stores.

Party-goers may want to sift through the stylish, modern and retro street fashion offerings at the independent boutiques in **King Wah Building** in Mongkok. Legendary for its tailors and shirt makers, Hong Kong is still the place to come. Take a chance with the ever-present street stores in Tsim Sha Tsui or go for established names such

as **David's Shirts** at the Mandarin Oriental or the renowned **Sam's Tailor**, who has made elegant outfits for an illustrious clientele. For end-of-line designer bargains, it's best to head to the **Citygate Outlets** mall in Tung Chung, home to a collection of brand-name outlets.

Hong Kong's markets are awash with fake designer wear, whose quality and cut are often far inferior to the real thing. If looking for authentic labels, it is best to avoid the street markets altogether, and shop only at the larger department stores and boutiques.

DIRECTORY

Markets

Jade Market

Kansu & Battery Sts,
Yau Ma Tei.

Map 1 B1.

Open 10am–3:30pm
daily.

Stanley Market

Stanley,
Hong Kong Island.
Open 9am–6pm daily.

Temple Street

Night Market

Temple St, Yau Ma Tei.

Map 1 B2.

Open 6pm–midnight
daily.

Western Market

Des Voeux Rd Central,
Sheung Wan. **Map** 2 A2.

Open 10am–7pm daily.

Shopping Centers, Malls & Department Stores

Harbour City

3 Canton Rd, Tsim Sha
Tsui. **Map** 1 A4.

Tel (0852) 2118 8666.

Island Beverly

1 Great George St,
Causeway Bay.

M Causeway Bay.

The Landmark

12–16 Des Voeux Rd
Central. **Map** 2 C3.

Tel (0852) 2526 4416.

Pacific Place

88 Queensway. **Map** 3 D4.

Tel (0852) 2844 8988.

Sogo

555 Hennessy Rd,
Causeway Bay.

Tel (0852) 2833 8338.

M Causeway Bay.

Antiques & Jewelry

Dragon Culture

231 Hollywood Rd, Central.
Map 2 A2.

Tel (0852) 2545 8098.

EXIT

3/F, 25 Hing Wo St,
Tin Wan, Aberdeen.

Tel (0852) 2541 1299.

Gorgeous Arts & Crafts

Upper Ground Floor,
30 Hollywood Rd, Central.

Map 2 B3.

Tel (0852) 2973 0034.

Honeychurch Antiques

29 Hollywood Rd, Central.

Map 2 B3.

Tel (0852) 2543 2433.

Electronics, Cameras & Computers

Fortress

Shop 3320, The Gateway,
Harbour City,
Canton Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui.

Map 1 A4.

Tel (0852) 2116 1022.

Mongkok

Computer Centre

8a Nelson St, Mongkok.

M Mongkok.

Tel (0852) 2384 6823.

Star House

3 Salisbury Rd. **Map** 1 A5.

Chinese Arts & Crafts

Culture Club

390 & 398 Avenida
Almeida Ribeiro, Macau.

Tel (0853) 921 811.

G.O.D.

48 Hollywood Rd, Central.

Tel (0852) 2805 1876.

Map 2 B3.

Shop 105, Stanley Plaza,
Stanley.

Tel (0852) 2673 0071.

Lok Cha Tea Shop

290b Queen's Rd Central,
Sheung Wan.

Map 2 A2.

Tel (0852) 2805 1360.

Yue Hwa

301–309 Nathan Rd,
Jordan.

Map 1 B1.

Tel (0852) 3511 2222.

Clothes

Citygate Outlets

20 Tat Tung Rd, Tung
Chung. **Tel** (0852) 2109

2933. **M** Tung Chung.

David's Shirts

M17, Mandarin Oriental,
Queen's Rd Central.

Map 2 C3.

Tel (0852) 2524 2979.

Giordano

Shop 4, Grd Floor,
China Building, 29

Queen's Rd Central.

Map 2 C3.

Tel (0852) 2921 2028.

Joyce

232 Pacific Pl, Admiralty.
Tel (0852) 2523 5944.

King Wah Building

628 Nathan Rd, Mongkok.
M Mongkok.

Marks & Spencer

Times Square,
1 Matheson St.

Map 1 A4.

Tel (0852) 2923 7972.

M Causeway Bay.

Central Tower, 24–28

Queen's Rd Central.

Map 2 C3.

Tel (0852) 2921 8323.

Sam's Tailor

Burlington Arcade, Shop K,
94 Nathan Rd,
Tsim Sha Tsui.

Map 1 B4.

Tel (0852) 2367 9423.

Shanghai Tang

Shanghai Tang Mansion,
1 Duddell St, Central.

Map 2 C3.

Tel (0852) 2525 7333.

Entertainment in Hong Kong & Macau

Hong Kong's entertainment options are incredible. There are several good venues attracting local and international musicians, Chinese opera groups, and theater and comedy shows, particularly during the arts festival in February and March. The city's nightlife has begun to boom, and bars, dance venues, pubs, and music clubs are plentiful. The younger crowd have discovered an appetite for house and techno music, although they retain their liking for Cantopop, the older pop genre. Karaoke bars are also a favorite with locals.

Macau, although a lot quieter, is the place to go to for serious gambling or to eat at its excellent restaurants.

Entertainment Guides

Visitors will be spoilt for choice in terms of good listings in Hong Kong. Perhaps the best is the free, weekly *HK Magazine*, available in most cafés and bars across the city, that offers a thorough guide to eating, drinking, shopping, and entertainment. The Friday edition of the *South China Morning Post* is another good listings guide. The Hong Kong edition of *Time Out* is another great source of local information.

Bars & Pubs

The places to find many of the best clubs, bars and pubs in Hong Kong are in Lan Kwai Fong (see p320) near Central, along Wyndham Street, and SoHo. **Goccia**, in Wyndham Street, is always full of Hong Kong's most beautiful people. **Le Jardin**, located around the corner, is less frenetic than nearby Lan Kwai Fong, and quiet enough to have a conversation in. If you want to drink with the jet-set, there are a number of super-smart bars including **Felix** above the Peninsula Hotel with sensational harbor views. Alternatively, try **SEVVA** in Central's Prince's Building, or the fashionable **Drop** in SoHo, which turns into a club later in the evening. For a more laid-back drink in a pleasant organic café, head to **Life**, just off the Escalator in SoHo.

Nightclubs

Nightclubs vary hugely from down-at-heel, free-to-enter clubs that just play music to slick, cutting edge venues for the rich and famous. Cover prices vary but a typical mid-range fee would be around HK\$100. Looking out over Wyndham Street, **Dragon-i** is a smart club with an exclusive reputation, playing dance music and often hosting international disc jockeys. **Volar** in D'Aguilar Street is great for house music. **Drop**, **Beijing Club** and **Billion** are also popular clubs.

Music & Arts Venues

There's no shortage of venues for large musical, operatic, and dramatic productions. These include the **Cultural Centre**, that sometimes offers free concerts, the **Hong Kong Convention & Exhibition Centre** in Wan Chai and the **Hong Kong Coliseum** in Hung Hom. Close to the Coliseum, the **Ko Shan Theatre** is the place to go for Chinese opera and orchestral music performances. The **Hong Kong Arts Centre**, **The Fringe Club**, and **The Hong Kong Academy of the Performing Arts** all offer more intimate venues for an excellent and diverse range of arts from dance to stand-up comedy. **The Wanch** is a tiny place that hosts local folk and indie acts.

The **Macau Cultural Centre** is also worth a visit. It houses art, history and

architecture exhibitions and runs a busy calendar of music, theater, opera, and dance, particularly in May during Macau's arts festival.

Sports

Spring heralds the start of the dragon boating season check the HKTb for event details. The Rugby Sevens tournament in March is a huge, boisterous event for Hong Kong's expats, many of whom see its main purpose as an opportunity to drink large quantities of beer. For those interested in the actual game, 50 matches are played by the assembled internationals in 72 hours. Hong Kong is also host to a number of professional tennis tournaments from October to December.

Gambling

Horse racing at the tracks in **Sha Tin** and **Happy Valley** (see p317) is the only spectator sport where you can gamble legally in Hong Kong. It is the biggest such spectator event in the region and race days or nights are well worth attending for the sheer atmosphere alone. Macau also has its own, less fevered horse racing nights as well as an excellent greyhound racing track, the rather grandly titled **Canidrome**. Macau, of course, is best known for its glitzy casinos, running all day and night. The most spectacular of them is **The Venetian**, complete with miniature campanile, Rialto Bridge, gondolas, and themed shopping.

Children's Entertainment

Hong Kong's favorite attractions are two state-of-the-art amusement parks: **Ocean Park** (see p328), the region's oldest amusement park, and **Disneyland** (see p331), offering a massive range of rides, attractions and entertainment. Up in the New Territories, **Kadoorie Farm & Botanic Garden** (see p327) has a small

zoo of orphaned native animals, including muntjac deer and wild cats. In a similar vein, but much more central is the enchanting **Edward Youde Aviary** in Hong Kong Park, which is built to resemble a tropical rainforest and has elevated walkways.

Traditional Festivals

One of Hong Kong's grandest annual celebrations is the **Chinese New Year**. Victoria Park becomes a huge open-air

market and there are spectacular harbor fireworks that rival any display in the world. The **Birthday of Tin Hau**, the Goddess of the Sea, is more low key. Parades and lion dances take place at the larger temples, including the one at Joss House Bay in the New Territories, and temples and fishing boats are decorated all over Hong Kong. The **Cheung Chau Bun Festival** in May is a fun week-long celebration on Cheung Chau Island (see p330). It culminates in the eating of

huge piles of buns offered, some say, to the unhappy spirits of victims of the island's pirate past, and a procession of "floating" children, carried aloft on hidden poles. The **Dragon Boat Festival** in June is marked with a great flourish, making it one of the region's most exciting events. Other traditional festivals celebrated in Hong Kong include the **Hungry Ghost Festival** in mid/late August and the **Mid-Autumn Festival** in late September/early October.

DIRECTORY

Hong Kong Tourism Board (HKTb)

Hong Kong International Airport Arrivals Hall. Kowloon: Star Ferry Concourse. **Map 1 5A**. **Tel** (0852) 2508 1234. [w discoverhongkong.com](http://www.discoverhongkong.com)

Bars & Pubs

Drop

Basement, On Lok Mansion, 39–43 Hollywood Rd, Central (entrance on Cochrane St). **Map 3 B3**. **Tel** (0852) 2543 8856.

Felix

Peninsula Hotel, Salisbury Road. **Map 1 B4**. **Tel** (0852) 2315 3188.

Goccia

Shop 1 & 2, G/F 73 Wyndham St. **Map 2 B3**. **Tel** (0852) 2167 8181.

Le Jardin

10 Wing Wah Lane, Central. **Map 2 B3**. **Tel** (0852) 2526 2717.

Life

10 Shelley Street, SoHo. **Map 2 B3**. **Tel** (0852) 2810 9777.

SEVVA

25/F, Prince's Building, Chater St, Central. **Map 2 C3**. **Tel** (0852) 2537 1388. [w sevva.hk](http://www.sevva.hk)

Nightclubs

Beijing Club

2–8 Wellington St, Central. **Map 2 B3**. **Tel** (0852) 2810 9983. [w beijingclub.com.hk](http://www.beijingclub.com.hk)

Billion

3/F, On Hing Building, On Hing Terrace, Central. **Map 2 B3**. **Tel** (0852) 2973 9018. [w billionclub.com.hk](http://www.billionclub.com.hk)

Dragon-i

The Centrium, 60 Wyndham St. **Map 2 B3**. **Tel** (0852) 3110 1222. [w dragon-i.com.hk](http://www.dragon-i.com.hk)

Volar

44 D'Aguilar St, Central. **Map 2 B3**. **Tel** (0852) 2810 1510. [w volar.com.hk](http://www.volar.com.hk)

Music & Arts Venues

Hong Kong Cultural Centre

L5, Auditoria Building, 10 Salisbury Rd. **Map 1 B5**. **Tel** (0852) 2734 2009. [w lcsd.gov.hk](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk)

The Fringe Club

2 Lower Albert Rd, Central. **Map 2 C3**. **Tel** (0852) 2521 7251. [w hkfringe.com.hk](http://www.hkfringe.com.hk)

Hong Kong Academy for Performing Arts

1 Gloucester Rd, Wan Chai. **Map 3 E3**. **Tel** (0852) 2584 8500. [w hkapa.edu](http://www.hkapa.edu)

Hong Kong Arts Centre

2 Harbour Rd, Wan Chai. **Map 3 E3**. **Tel** (0852) 2582 0200. [w hkac.org.hk](http://www.hkac.org.hk)

Hong Kong Coliseum

9 Cheong Wan Rd, Hung Hom, Kowloon. **Tel** (0852) 2355 7233. [H Hung Hom KCR](http://www.hunghomkcr.com). [w lcsd.gov.hk/hkc](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk/hkc)

Hong Kong Convention & Exhibition Centre

1 Expo Drive. **Map 3 F3**. **Tel** (0852) 2582 8888. [w hkcec.com.hk](http://www.hkcec.com.hk)

Ko Shan Theatre

77 Ko Shan Road, Hung Hom. **Tel** (0852) 2740 9212. [w lcsd.gov.hk/kst](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk/kst)

Macau Cultural Centre

Av. Xian Xing Hai S/N NAPE, Macau. **Tel** (0853) 28700 699. [w ccm.gov.mo/](http://www.ccm.gov.mo/)

The Wanch

54 Jaffe Road, Wan Chai. **Map 3 F4**. **Tel** (0852) 2861 1621. [w thewanch.hk](http://www.thewanch.hk)

Gambling

The Canidrome

Avenida General Castelo Branco, Macau. **Tel** (0853) 2833 3399.

Happy Valley Racecourse

Happy Valley, Hong Kong Island. **Tel** (0853) 1817. [w hkjc.com/english](http://www.hkjc.com/english)

Sha Tin Racecourse

Tel (0853) 1817. [w hkjc.com](http://www.hkjc.com)

Children's Entertainment

Disneyland

Penny's Bay, Lantau Island. **Tel** (0852) 2203 2000. [M Penny's Bay](http://www.pennysbay.com). [w hongkongdisneyland.com](http://www.hongkongdisneyland.com)

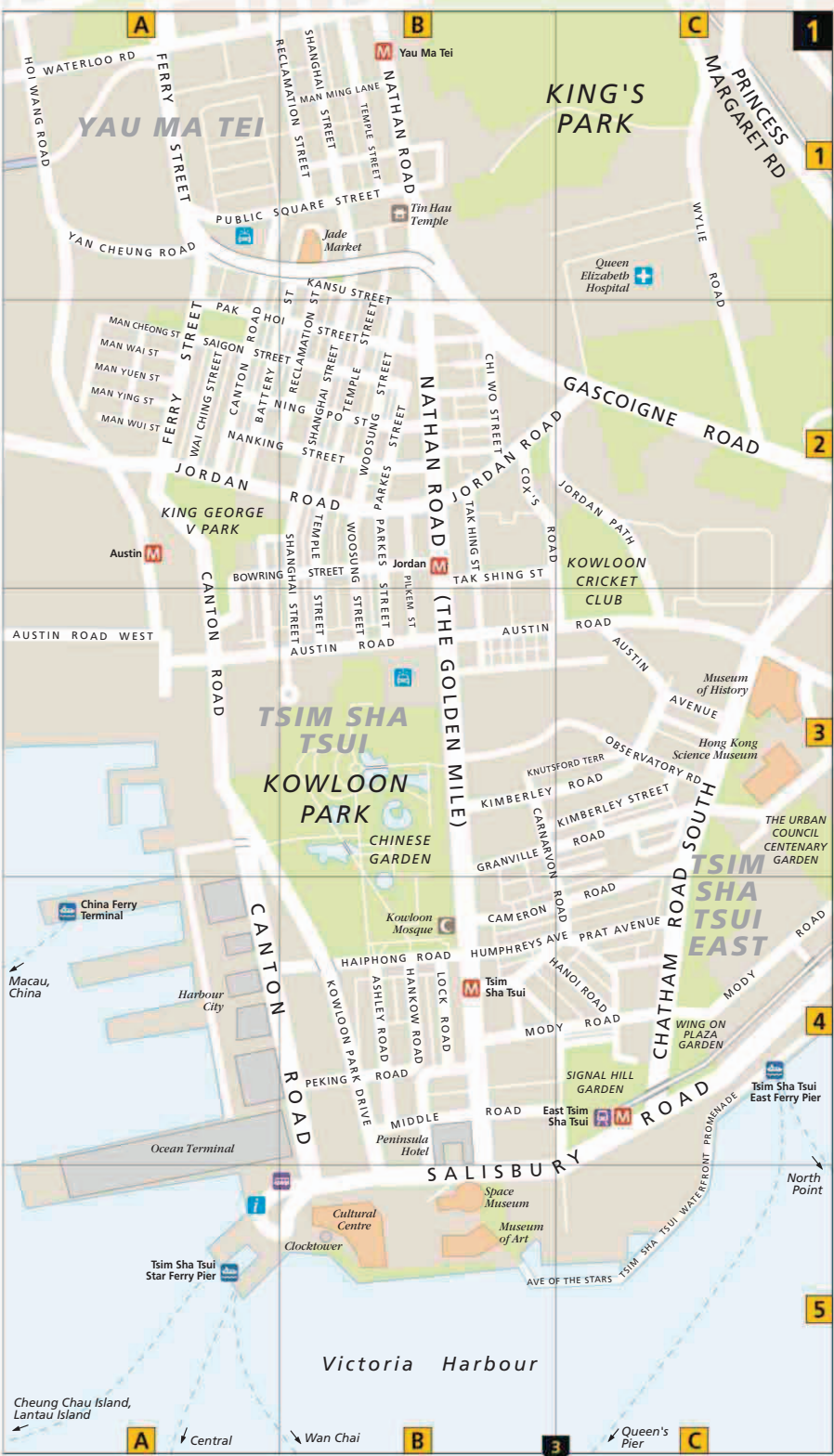
Edward Youde Aviary

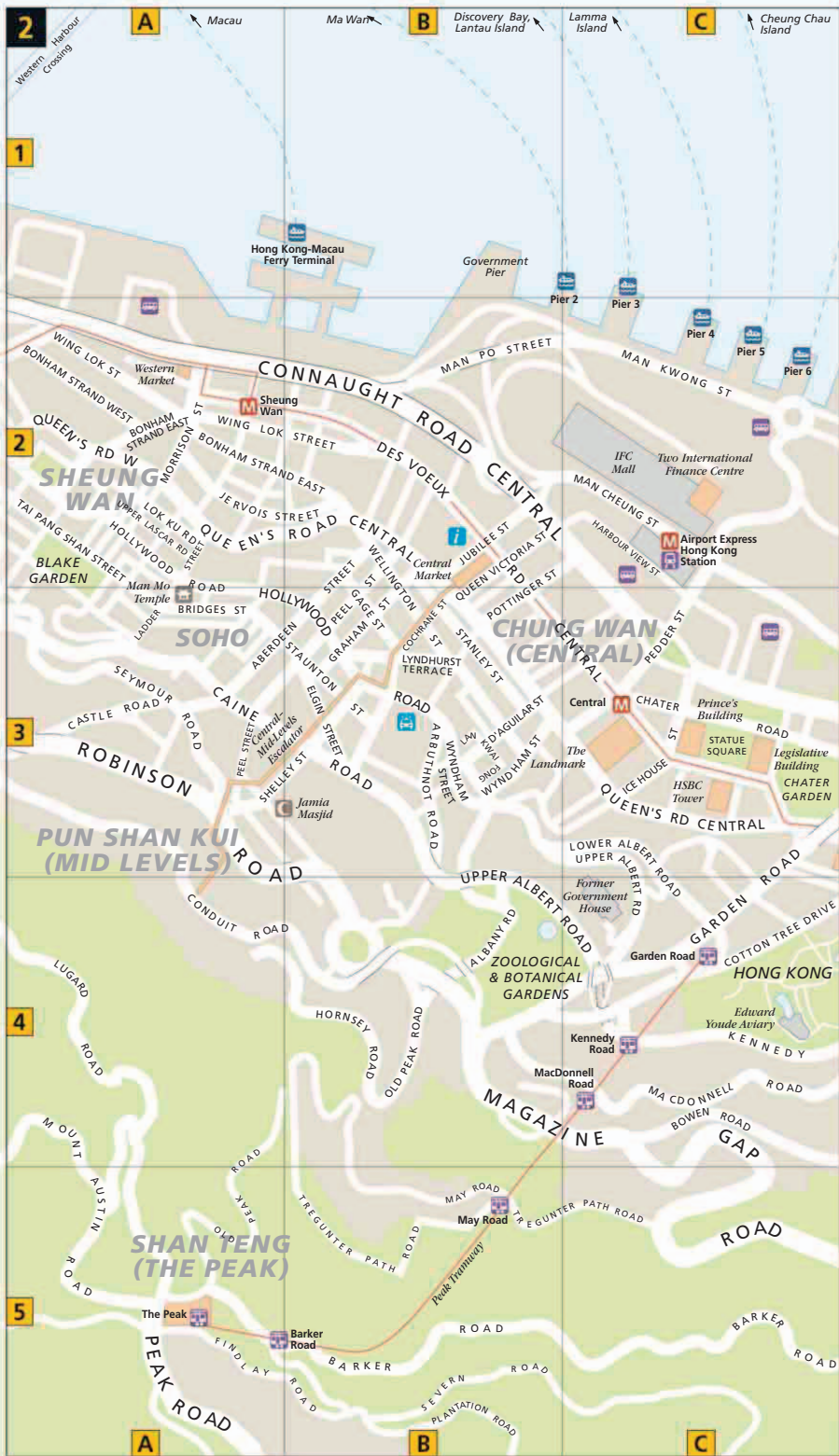
Hong Kong Park, Cotton Tree Drive, Central. **Map 2 C4**. **Tel** (0852) 2521 5041. [w lcsd.gov.hk/parks](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk/parks)

Kadoorie Farm & Botanic Garden

Lam Kam Rd, New Territories. **Tel** (0852) 2483 7200. [w kfbg.org.hk](http://www.kfbg.org.hk)

[illegible]









THE SOUTHWEST

Introducing the Southwest **346-353**

Sichuan & Chongqing **354-377**

Yunnan **378-401**

Guizhou & Guangxi **402-431**



The Southwest at a Glance

Some of China's most evocative landscapes are found in the Southwest: the fertile Red Basin of eastern Sichuan, deep gorges along the Yangzi River, the mountainous fringes of the Tibetan Plateau, Xishuangbanna's tropical forests, and the karst hills of Guizhou and Guangxi. Cultural highlights include the sites of Buddhist art at Le Shan and Dazu, and the remains of Ming city walls at Dali and Songpan. Ethnic minority communities include Tibetans in the west, Miao and Dong in Guizhou and Guangxi, Dali's Bai, Lijiang's Naxi, and the Dai of Xishuangbanna. There are wildlife preserves for giant pandas in Sichuan, waterfowl at Cao Hai, and elephants in Xishuangbanna; and trekking opportunities at Tiger Leaping Gorge, Emei Shan, and along the Lao border in southern Yunnan.



The stepped and calcified Mirror Pools in Huanglong, Sichuan



The Miao village of Xijiang nestled into a terraced valley near Kaili, Guizhou

Getting Around

The major cities and destinations, such as Chengdu, Chongqing, Kunming, Guiyang, Guilin, Lijiang, and Jinghong, are all served by air. Train lines, though more restricted, offer fairly direct services connecting the provincial capitals with most of the larger cities. A comprehensive network of buses covers much of the region, with comfortable express coaches and surfaced roads linking key sites, though travel through remoter areas on local buses can be rough and slow-going, particularly in Guizhou and Guangxi. It is also possible to spend a few days taking a ferry down the Yangzi from Chongqing, or to take a scenic day trip along the Li River between Guilin and Yangshuo in Guangxi province.



A PORTRAIT OF THE SOUTHWEST

The southwest's stunning landscapes, from the impossibly steep limestone hillocks along the Li River, to the deep gorges cut by the upper reaches of the Yangzi, make it one of China's most picturesque regions. The area's ethnic diversity, evident in the traditional culture and lifestyles of its numerous minority communities, also adds to its attraction as an exotic tourist destination.

The southwest's isolation has meant that for much of its past it has forged its own path. The area roughly covered by today's Yunnan has always had closer ties with its neighbors to the south and east than with China's traditional dynastic centers. During the period of the Warring States (475–221 BC), Zhuang Qiao, a Chu general, was sent here to subdue the tribes, but after a long campaign, he was impelled to stay, establishing the Kingdom of Dian at what is now Kunming in around 300 BC. For the next 500 years, the kingdom existed as a loose conglomerate of tribute-paying tribal chiefs.

In the 8th century, the Kingdom of Nanzhao emerged in Dali, extending its territory into Vietnam and Myanmar. The dynasty grew wealthy on trade along the Southern Silk Route, until it was conquered by the Yuan emperor Kublai Khan in the 13th century. Through much

of the Ming and Qing eras, the area that is now Yunnan, Guizhou, and Guangxi was ruled as a colonized outpost, dominated by tribal chieftains.

During the 1800s, the dispossessed, ground down by merciless warlords and extra imperial taxes, revolted in two major uprisings: the Muslim Uprising of 1856 (also known as the Du Wenxiu Rebellion) which lasted until 1873 and centered on Kunming, and the Taiping Rebellion (which lasted from 1850–1864) begun in Guangxi (*see p428*). Both uprisings were brutally suppressed by the Qing and colonizing forces, sending the region into a downward spiral of provincial obscurity and abject poverty. The Miao minority revolted again in 1870. When the Communists marched through during the Long March in 1934, they encountered a population ready for revolution and took on many recruits.



Fishing boats on the banks of peaceful Er Hai (Ear Lake) near Dali



Worshippers wreathed in incense smoke at Chengdu's main Daoist temple, Qingyang Gong

Sichuan, the region's largest province, has long been a part of China – the enigmatic bronze-working Ba culture flourished here around 1000 BC, with its capital at Sanxingdui, north of modern Chengdu. After the fall of the Han dynasty in AD 220, the province's fertile eastern part became the agriculturally self-sufficient Kingdom of Shu during the Three Kingdoms period (AD 221–63), whose wealth sponsored great religious works under the Tang and Song dynasties such as the huge Buddha at Le Shan.

Sichuan remained a crucial outpost during the ensuing eras. Chongqing, its major city, was targeted for heavy industry under the Communists and is today the world's largest municipality, breaking away from Sichuan in 1997. It's from Chongqing that the Three Gorges Cruise down the Yangzi begins (*see pp358–60*), still the main reason to visit the city.

Sichuan's heavily populated eastern plains give way to the sparsely populated foothills and Aba Grasslands plateau, inhabited mainly by ethnic Tibetans. On the fringes of this frontier, the last few remaining pandas live in what is left of Sichuan's bamboo groves. For a fashionable metropolis, the capital

of Chengdu is surprisingly laid-back, a characteristic that is best seen in the many teahouses found in parks, temples, and old courtyards.

Yunnan stretches from the Tibetan foothills in the north, where the headwaters of the Yangzi gather strength, to Xishuangbanna and the Laotian border in the south, through which the Mekong flows. Today, Yunnan is quickly becoming one of the country's foremost tourist destinations. North of Kunming lie the pretty towns of Dali and Lijiang, surrounded by villages inhabited by the indigenous Bai and Naxi peoples. Xishuangbanna's landscape and culture, on the other hand, are reminiscent of Vietnam, Laos, and Myanmar. The regular markets, where minority people gather, are very colorful.

Most tourists head to Guangxi for the stunning karst landscapes surrounding Guilin and Yangshuo.

The charms of Guizhou and Guangxi lie, however, in the less visited areas of hilly rural landscape, peppered with wooden villages and inhabited by minority peoples – the Miao in particular are renowned for their ultra-social festivals. The region's

poverty, due to its poor farmland, has allowed natural sights such as the magnificent Detian Falls, and the lush Maling Canyon to remain beautifully untouched.



Bai women in traditional dress, Shaping



Limestone peaks coated in vegetation, Li River area

The Flora of Southwest China

Southwest China has the greatest variety of flora in the whole country, and Yunnan Province in particular can claim the diversity prize, having some 15,000 species of plant, or about half the country's total. Many garden plants originate from this part of China, including the ubiquitous rhododendron and magnolia. The reason for this richness lies in its unique geography: in a very short distance the environment changes from high altitude mountain plateau to moist subtropical jungle on the Tropic of Cancer in the south, with isolated valleys that restrict access and cross-pollination in between.

Mountains and Valleys

The landscapes of this region are dominated by seemingly endless vistas of mountain ranges and deep valleys. In northern Yunnan, western Sichuan and southwest Tibet lie the headwaters of three of the world's great rivers: from west to east, the Nu Jiang (Salween), the Lancang Jiang (Mekong), and the Jiansha Jiang (Yangzi). All originate high in the mountains of Tibet and Qinghai.

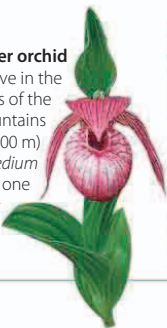


Magnolia (*Magnolia campbellii*), with its showy pink flowers, is native to the Himalayas and China. It was discovered by George Forrest, a Scottish plant hunter, in 1904 but was not brought into cultivation until 1924.



Wild rhododendrons grow in this region, a center of diversity for many plants. Most of the modern hybrid garden forms originate from wild species introduced from southwest China.

Many slipper orchid species thrive in the alpine meadows of the Sichuan mountains above 7,800 ft (2,400 m) and *Cypripedium tibeticum* is one of the most attractive.



Camellias, of which there are many beautiful garden species, are grown mainly for their lovely flowers. Also, more than 200 kinds of tea in China are based on *Camellia sinensis*.



A major tourist site, the Tropical Botanical Gardens at Xishuangbanna are also where research into tropical forest ecosystems takes place.



Mountain slopes, lush with beautiful plants such as rhododendrons and magnolias.

Poppy (*Meconopsis integrifolia*) grows high in the mountains of southwest China at 8,850–16,730 ft (2,700–5,100 m), its foliage protected by soft silky hairs. First collected by renowned botanist E.H. Wilson, the poppy is used in traditional medicine.



Tropical Forest or Jungle

A rare habitat in China, jungle covers only about 0.5 per cent of the country, but it contains 25 per cent of the species. One of the largest remaining areas lies in the southwest, in Xishuangbanna Prefecture, Yunnan Province. Here, there is a rainy season between April and October, the annual rainfall is about 60 in (1,500 mm), and both humidity and temperatures are high. Jungle is also found on Hainan Island, and in southern Guangxi Province.



Pomelo or Chinese grapefruit (*Citrus maxima*) has been cultivated in southern China for thousands of years. The flowers are followed by very large fruits with green rind and sweet, juicy flesh.

Dragon's blood (*Dracaena cochinchinensis*) plays an important role in traditional Chinese medicine. Its red, blood-like sap is collected and used in a variety of preparations to improve the circulation of the blood. Endangered in the wild, it is now being planted to ensure supplies continue.



The jungle floor is carpeted with ferns and shrubs while above, lianas and figs drape and strangle tree branches. Mists and monsoon rains constantly dampen the air, so epiphytes (plants growing on trees) flourish.



Typically dense patch of natural tropical forest in Jinghong, southern Yunnan

Musella (*Musella lasiocarpa*), closely related to the banana, is a beautiful but rare plant in Yunnan and Guizhou Provinces. It is low-growing and has a dense yellow flowerhead, reminiscent of a globe artichoke.



The red dwarf banana (*Musa coccinea*) is one of the prettiest banana plants and is popular in gardens. About 6.5 ft (2m) tall, it has bright red flowers that last up to two months. It is now scarce because of over-collection and habitat destruction.

Famous Plant Hunters

The beginning of the 20th century saw a number of intrepid botanists and explorers set out to discover and bring back new and exotic plants from around the world. Among the most famous were George Forrest (1873–1932), E.H. Wilson (1876–1930), Joseph Rock (1884–1962), and Frank Kingdon Ward (1885–1958). Although only one of the early pioneers, Kingdon Ward achieved renown exploring and collecting botanical specimens in Yunnan Province just before and after World War I, and also later in Tibet. Among his most celebrated discoveries are several rhododendron species. In the 1920s he brought back seeds of the beautiful blue poppy *Meconopsis betonicifolia*, which inspired the title of the most famous of his many books: *The Land of the Blue Poppy*.



Frank Kingdon Ward, explorer and collector

Regional Food: The Southwest

Subject to hot summers and mild winters with plenty of rain, the Southwest enjoys year-round crop growth, making it one of China's "rice bowls." The Sichuan basin also yields a wealth of subtropical products such as fruits, tea, and herbal medicines and its spicy cooking has become the region's dominant cuisine. By contrast, the cooking of Yunnan is underrated despite some wonderful produce; while the cuisines of Guizhou and Guangxi lie somewhere between Sichuanese spiciness and the subtle, delicate flavors of the Cantonese kitchen.



Eggplants and yard-long beans



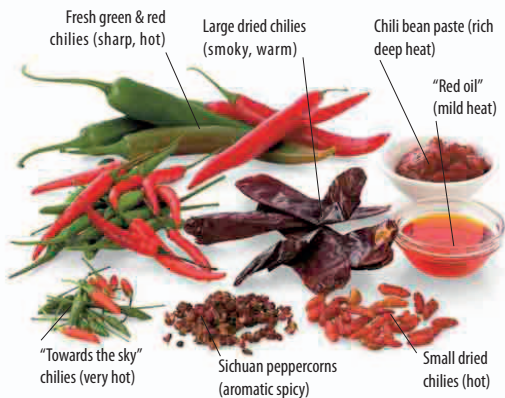
Fruits and deep-fried snacks on sticks, typical of the Southwest

stimulate the palate. Each dish should be a balance of flavors such as sweet, sour, bitter, hot, salty, aromatic, and fragrant. When the palate is stimulated by the heat of the chili, it becomes sensitized and can appreciate even more flavors at the same time. The most famous

regional spice is the Sichuan peppercorn (*hua jiao*). This dried berry has an aromatic, lemony heat that makes the mouth tingle, even numbing it against the chilies' heat. The final secret of Sichuan food is the purity of the salt collected from the wells of Zigong.

Sichuan

The cuisine of Sichuan has the reputation of being richly flavored and peppery hot but, in fact, a lot of Sichuanese dishes are not hot at all. After all, the chili is a relatively recent import from the Americas that was not widely cultivated here until the 19th century. According to Sichuanese chefs, chilies do not paralyze the tastebuds, but



A selection of Sichuan spices

Regional Dishes and Specialties



Fresh water chestnuts

Most visitors to China will at some time come across versions of Kung-Po Chicken and Ma Po Doufu. However, outside Sichuan it is likely to lack the depth of flavors and balance of textures of the original. Each region of China has its own "preserved vegetables" but Sichuan's is among the best – a pickled mustard root in a spicy sauce. Yunnan's "Crossing the Bridge Noodles" is said to have been created by the wife of a Qing-dynasty scholar to prevent the noodles cooling on the way to her husband studying in an island pavilion. This consists of a chicken broth with a hot, insulating layer of oil on top served with noodles, slices of ham, vegetables, and egg to be added to it at the table. Another specialty is Steam Pot Chicken cooked with vegetables and often medicinal herbs; as it steams a flavorful broth is created in the pot.



Kung-Po Chicken: the best-known Sichuan dish; Kung-Po was an official from Guizhou, but his chef was Sichuanese.

Yunnan

Yunnan's tropical climate means the province is a haven for vegetable lovers – lotus roots, bamboo shoots, beans and garlic shoots. Several products distinguish Yunnan on the map of gastronomy – firstly the highly prized *pu'er* tea. Dried into bricks, this is strong and black and often taken as a medicine. Just as famous is Yunnan ham, which rivals the ham from Jinhua in Zhejiang. Unusually for China, Yunnan is also known for its milk products, especially a type of goat's cheese.

When the rain finally stops, a profusion of mushrooms fills the hills and forests of the



Vegetables on sale in a street market in Guizhou

region, sending the locals out to collect these delicacies. Finally, the tropical climate means that all sorts of exotic fruits grow here and many turn up in the area's dishes.



Stall selling zongzi, parcels of sticky rice wrapped in bamboo leaves

Guizhou & Guangxi

Relatively poor provinces, Guizhou and Guangxi are known for their famine cuisine especially among the minorities, but despite the stories the average visitor will be hard pressed to find bee grub stir-fries and the like.

Fiery hotpots are a specialty of Guizhou, including those made with dog but these can easily be avoided (*see p405*) if not wanted. The cooking here is spicy and sour. The province's most distinguished product is Maotai. A strong spirit distilled from sorghum and other grains, it is drunk at formal occasions.

Guangxi cuisine includes Cantonese-style sweet and sour dishes along with more rustic Zhuang minority food. *Zongzi* are also a favorite and the pyramids of sticky rice can be savory or sweet.

On the Menu

Aromatic & Crispy Duck Quite different to Peking Duck, this is marinated, steamed, and then deep-fried. A special version – Tea Smoked Duck – is created when it is smoked with tea, cypress and camphor wood chips.

Twice-cooked Pork Another traditional Sichuan dish that is extremely popular. The secret is that the pork is first boiled, then stir-fried till tender.

Steamed Beef in a Basket Spicy beef coated with ground rice and steamed – served in the bamboo steamer basket.

Toban Fish A whole fish deep-fried then braised with chilli, garlic, ginger, scallions, soy, sugar, wine, chili bean paste (*toban jiang*), and vinegar.

Ants Climbing Trees Minced pork with rice vermicelli – the minced pork forms the “ants” and the vermicelli the “trees”.



Ma Po Doufu: pockmarked tofu – is a classic dish that combines ground meat, tofu, and chilies in a spicy broth.



Hot & Sour Soup: this dish, when made properly, derives its pungency solely from the use of ground white pepper.



Fish-fragrant Aubergine: “fish-fragrant” sauces use the same seasonings as traditional fish cookery.



SICHUAN & CHONGQING



The province of Sichuan and the neighboring municipality of Chongqing cover 220,078 sq miles (570,000 sq km) and are home to almost 120 million people. This vast region can be divided into three distinct geographical zones. In the east is Chongqing, a municipality based around the heavily industrialized Chongqing city, with a rural strip running east along the Yangzi River and its famous Three Gorges (*see pp358–60*). In the center lies the hugely fertile Red Basin, whose laid-back capital Chengdu sits surrounded by checkerboard fields and well-irrigated plains. The wealth generated by this fertile land helped sponsor the temples on Emei Shan's forested slopes and the startling Buddhist sculptures at Dazu and Le Shan. In contrast, Northern and Western Sichuan are covered by the snow-capped foothills of the Himalayan range, rising well over 16,400 ft (5,000 m), a thinly settled region whose culture is predominantly Tibetan. Northwest of Chengdu is the Wanglang Nature Reserve, home to the critically endangered giant panda, while to the far north is the beautiful alpine scenery around Songpan and Jiuzhai Gou.

Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- 1 Chongqing
- 2 Zigong
- 4 Chengdu
- 10 Huanglong Xi
- 14 Songpan
- 19 Kangding

Historic Sites

- 7 Sanxingdui Museum
- 9 Dafo, Le Shan pp370–71
- 12 Dujiangyan
- 17 Luding

Temples & Monasteries

- 6 Baoguang Si

Mountains, Grottoes & Caves

- 3 Baoding Shan pp362–3
- 8 Emei Shan pp368–9
- 11 Qingcheng Shan

National Parks & Zoos

- 5 Panda Breeding Center
- 13 Wanglang Nature Reserve
- 15 Huanglong
- 16 Jiuzhai Gou Tour p376
- 18 Moxi Xiang & Hailuo Gou Glacier



Chongqing

重庆

Believed to have been founded as the capital of the shadowy State of Ba in 1000 BC, this port is situated on a peninsula at the junction of the Yangzi and Jialing rivers. Also known as Shan Cheng (Mountain City), due to the hills covering the peninsula, it is one of the Yangzi valley's "three furnaces" owing to its stifling summer humidity, made even worse by pollution. The main reason to visit Chongqing, a lively, rapidly modernizing city with few historic sights, is to catch a Yangzi ferry downstream through the Three Gorges (*see pp358–60*). In 1997, Chongqing became the administrative center of the new city-province of Chongqing Shi, which stretches 311 miles (500 km) east to Hubei.



People and goods coming off river-ferries, Chaotian Men Wharf

Chaotian Men

M Chaotianmen

Chaotian Men (Gate Facing Heaven) is Chongqing's wharf district right at the tip of the peninsula, where cruise boats line the muddy banks, readying themselves for their journey into Eastern China. A viewing platform over-looking the river junction was constructed in 2000, and offers splendid views on a windy day, though often visibility is impaired by the heavy fogs caused by intense pollution.

Luohan Si

7 Luohansi Jie. **M** Xiaoshizi

Open daily.

This Ming-era temple is famed for its hall crowded with *luohan* (those freed from the cycle of rebirth). The Indian Buddhist pantheon has just 18 *luohan*, but the Chinese have added hundreds of their own, including Buddhist figures, folk heroes, and even Daoists. The hall has 524 life-sized statues; some sit serenely, while others have grotesque faces. The most easily identifiable figure is Ji Gong, a comic peasant hero near the exit.

Liberation Monument

Situated in the heart of downtown Chongqing, the Liberation Monument is a plain-looking clocktower that commemorates the Communists' defeat of Kuomintang forces in 1949. It is surrounded by a busy shopping district.



The Liberation Monument (Jiefangbei) in downtown Chongqing

Three Gorges Museum

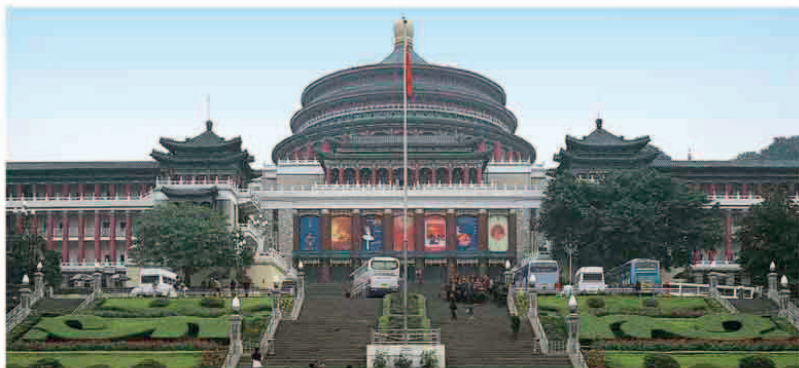
236 Renmin Lu. **Open** 9:30am–5pm daily.

This museum, also known as Chongqing Museum, houses a superb collection of Eastern Han tomb relics (AD 25–220) from sites around Sichuan. Peculiar to the region are 20-in (50-cm) long mausoleum bricks, illustrated with figures depicting religious and secular themes. A recurrent image is that of the dragon-bodied sun god, Rishen, associated with Fuxi, legendary ancestor of the Chinese. The highlight is a frieze of soldiers and chariots passing a nobleman being entertained. Upstairs is a display of Ba-era boat coffins.

Great Hall of the People

173 Renmin Lu. **Open** daily.

This 213-ft (65-m) high rotunda, seating 4,200 people, was built in 1954 as a conference hall to commemorate Chongqing's important war-time role. Inspired by Beijing's Temple of Heaven (*see pp102–3*), it is now a part of the Renmin Hotel and is



The extravagant Great Hall of the People, now part of the Renmin Hotel

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85

occasionally used for concerts. Its striking exterior, with three tiers of red-pillared eaves beneath a blue canopied roof, stands out from the modern high-rises that are slowly encircling it.

Stilwell Museum

63 Jialing Xin Lu, Liziba, 3 miles (5 km) SE of city center. **Open** daily. This is the former home of General Stilwell (1883–1946), who was based here between 1942 and 1944 as Commander of the US forces and Chiang Kai Shek's Chief of Staff. The US was instrumental in helping China overthrow the Japanese, and Stilwell led the effort. Exhibits include a display on the legendary Flying Tigers, a volunteer group of US fighter pilots who held off the Japanese along the China-Burma border between 1941 and 1942.

Hongyan Cun

52 Hongyan Cun, 3 miles (5 km) W of Chongqing. **Open** 8:30am–5pm daily. This group of whitewashed buildings was the base of the Nationalist-Communist “United Front” government during World War II. Among the prominent people based here were the

Communist leader Zhou Enlai and his wife, Deng Yingchao. Chairman Mao briefly visited Hongyan Cun (Red Crag Village) after Japan surrendered in 1945, to attend the US-sponsored talks with the Kuomintang forces led by Chiang Kai-shek. The buildings now house a collection of sparsely captioned wartime photographs. More appealing is the hilly parkland surrounding the site.

Ciqi Kou

9 miles (14 km) W of Chongqing. Line 1 to Ciqikou Founded 1,700 years ago on the banks of Jialing Jiang, Ciqi Kou (Porcelain Port) was a famous porcelain production center during the Ming era, and is something of a museum piece. Its riverfront lanes, preserved in their original flagstoned state, are flanked by old timber, adobe, and split-stone buildings with carved stonework, latticed windows, and gray-tiled roofs. Teahouses are everywhere, and there are about 100 to choose from. A couple of traditional ones overlook the river and occasionally host opera shows. Busy markets sell food and local arts and crafts.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

200 miles (330 km) SE of Chengdu. 9,700,000. 19/F, 177 Bayi Lu, near Liberation Monument, (023) 6387 6537.

Transport

Jiangbei Airport. Caiyuanba Bus Station, Hongyan Bus Station, CAAC (to airport). Chaotian Men docks.

Porcelain is no longer made here, but Ciqi Kou is now popular with modern and traditional painters.



A colorful and bustling food market, Ciqi Kou

Chongqing City Center

- ① Chaotian Men
- ② Luohan Si
- ③ Liberation Monument
- ④ Chongqing Museum
- ⑤ Great Hall of the People
- ⑥ Stilwell Museum

0 meters 800
0 yards 800

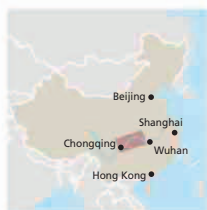


Key to Symbols see back flap

The Yangzi and Three Gorges

长江三峡

Before the 20th century, rugged mountains would have virtually isolated Sichuan from eastern China if it hadn't been for the 400 mile (650 km) stretch of the Yangzi linking Chongqing with Yichang in Hubei Province. The journey was a perilous one, the river tearing through the sheer-sided Three Gorges. Today, with the shoals cleared, the journey makes a popular cruise through spectacular scenery, with regular stops at famous sights. The landscape has been irrevocably changed by the Three Gorges Dam, which filled to its maximum capacity in 2009, making the cruise even more leisurely and extending the cruising season.



Area illustrated below



★ Shibao Zhai

This outstanding monastery (see p360) sits on an island, with Ruolan Dian (Orchid Palace) built into the cliff above.



Landscape near Chongqing

The gentle farmland around Chongqing, fascinating for its depiction of day-to-day life, does little to prepare you for the wild, spectacular gorge scenery downstream.

Key

--- Provincial border



KEY

- ① Fengdu was moved here from the opposite shore.
- ② Wulong, a scenic reserve of limestone karst formations.
- ③ Ancient Ba Kingdom Tombs have been inundated by the rising waters.
- ④ Baidicheng, an ancient temple complex, sits on an island linked to the north bank by a bridge.
- ⑤ Shennong Xi (see p360) makes a pleasant sidetrip.

The City of Ghosts

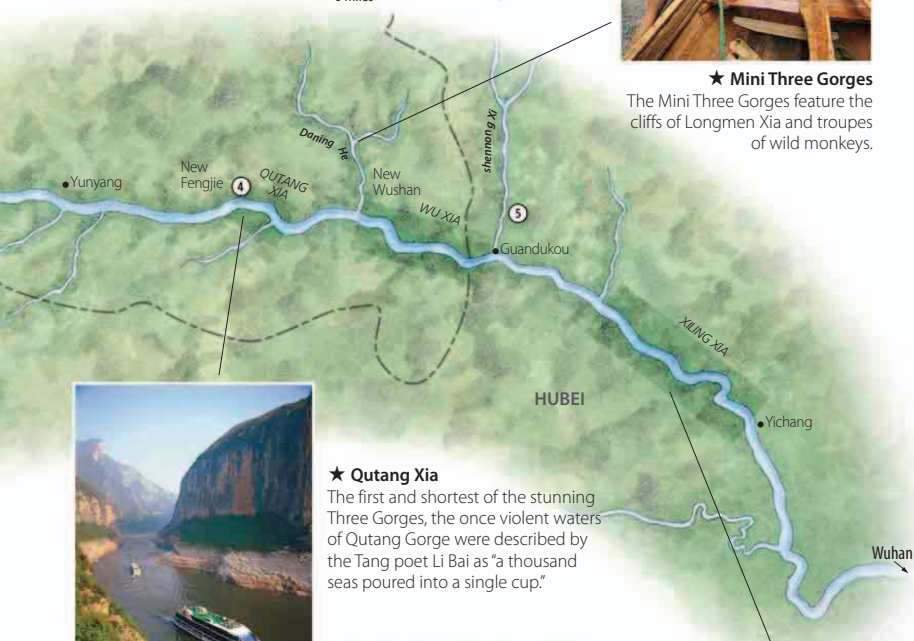
Ming Shan, a mountain dedicated to the afterworld and its ruler, Tianzi, is scattered with temples, shrines, and waxworks depicting the gorier sides of hell, including various tortures awaiting sinners.



The Three Gorges

Though the river is no longer the vicious torrent described by countless travelers, the steep walls and tight channels of Qutang Xia, Wu Xia, and Xiling Xia still present an awesome spectacle.

0 km 30
0 miles 30



★ Qutang Xia

The first and shortest of the stunning Three Gorges, the once violent waters of Qutang Gorge were described by the Tang poet Li Bai as "a thousand seas poured into a single cup."

Three Gorges Dam

Before reaching Yichang, there's a chance to witness one of the world's largest construction projects (see pp274–5). Most cruises now end above the dam.



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Chongqing to Yichang or Wuhan.

i 19/F, 177 Bayi Lu, near Liberation Monument, (023) 6387 6537 (Chongqing CITS). excursions extra.

w yzcruises.com



★ Mini Three Gorges

The Mini Three Gorges feature the cliffs of Longmen Xia and troupes of wild monkeys.

Cruising the Yangzi

Planned for more than a century, the Three Gorges Dam was completed in 2009. Its 32 hydroelectric generators produce around 2 percent of China's total power requirements. Construction required the relocation of millions of people, the rebuilding of several towns above the new waterline, and the loss of some priceless archeological sites. A few key historic buildings were relocated; where this was not possible, protective dikes were built instead. The drama of the landscape has undoubtedly diminished, but the reservoir is so large that the impression of being a river remains.



Tour sailing up the narrows of Shennong Xi in a sampan

Shennong Xi

One of the highlights of the whole Yangzi cruise is detouring up the ever-narrowing waters of Shennong Stream. The cliffs are pocked with post-holes marking the route of a Han-dynasty plank road, built for military access. There are also at least three hanging coffins here, which the now-vanished Bai people mortised into the gorge walls over 1,000 years ago. Burial goods and cliffside paintings link the Bai with both Sichuan's earliest known civilization, the Ba, and also the local Tujia nationality (see pp30–31).

If the waters are too low to navigate this stream, most cruises include a trip up the mini Three Gorges instead (see p359).

Wulong

from Wulong town. **Open** 9am–6:30pm daily (last ticket sold 4pm). (fee includes bus within reserve areas).

About 62 miles (100 km) south of the Yangzi port of Fengdu, Wulong is a scenic reserve of limestone karst formations (see pp418–19) scattered in the countryside around Wulong town. The key area is **Tiansheng Sanqiao**, the "Natural Three Bridges", where a former

underground river system has collapsed, leaving a complex of vast sinkholes and soaring stone archways, all overgrown with luxuriant vegetation. **Tianlong Tiangkeng**, the largest sinkhole, is 1,804 ft (550 m) wide and 890 ft (270 m) deep. Around 2 miles (3 km) of well-formed paths and an outdoor elevator provide access around the site.

Shibao Zhai

The most striking aspect of Shibao Zhai (meaning Precious

Choosing a Cruise

Which itinerary: Some cruises sail to Shanghai, but scenery is bleak east of Wuhan. Book Chongqing to Yichang or Wuhan (extra day). Cruises upstream (west) are cheaper, but may sail through the night.

Cruises: Some English spoken, accommodation varies (dorm to 4-star), check excursions on itinerary, book privately (cheaper than CITS).

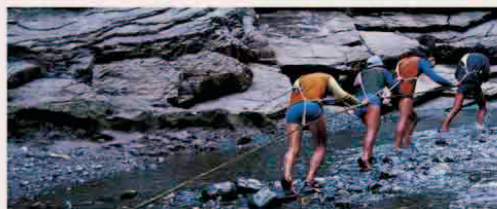
Public ferries: No English, very basic conditions, food is bad (bring some), no excursions, tickets from Chaotian Men Dock, Chongqing.

When: Sep & Oct are best; May & Nov riskier; rainy season in summer.

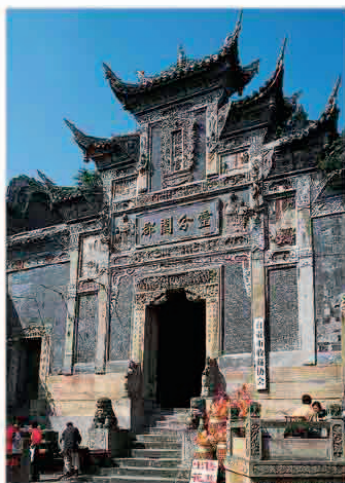
Stone Fortress) is the beautiful 12-story Ruolan Dian, whose curly eaves are said to resemble an orchid, built in 1750 and rising 184 feet (56 m) up the rock wall above the small temple. The "Precious Stone" of the name relates to a legend about a rock in the monastery with a hole, through which every day trickled just enough rice to feed all the monks. But when one of them greedily enlarged the hole, hoping to sell the surplus, the rice stopped flowing. Shibao Zhai has been protected from rising waters by a large dike, but sadly, the medieval village at its base has been drowned.

Trackers

Before the rapids were cleared in the 1950s, boats could only make it upstream with the help of trackers, teams of barely paid men who were harnessed together to literally pull the boat, inch by inch, through the Three Gorges' torrents. Paths cut into the bank to make their work easier and slightly less hazardous – or copies of them above the new maximum waterline – can be seen in several places through the gorges.



Towing a barge on Shennong Xi, a tributary of the Yangtze River



Gateway to the Zhangye Miao teahouse

② Zigong

自贡

135 miles (215 km) W of Chongqing.
 3,200,000. 3 Binjiang
 Lu, (0813) 230 3175.

Salt has been mined in Sichuan for at least 2,500 years, and for much of that time Zigong has been at the center of its production, luring traders from all over China. Brine is drawn from artesian wells beneath the city, along with natural gas used in the evaporation process. Chinese well-drilling techniques, mainly the use of bamboo cables and heavy iron drill-bits, were borrowed by the West during the 1850s, and later adapted for mining oil reserves. Until the 1960s, Zigong was full of bamboo pipelines and 328-ft (100-m) high wooden derricks. Even today one can visit some of these older mines and vintage architecture built to display the salt-merchants' wealth.

The **Zigong Salt Museum** was built in 1736 as the Xiqin Guildhall, a meeting place for salt merchants from Shaanxi province. This lavish building features elaborate flying eaves, and a gilded, wood-carved interior based around a large galleryed atrium, where plays were once performed. Exhibits cover the entire history of salt mining, from Han dynasty

illustrations, to huge metal drill-bits and cutaways showing the drilling process. Other contemporary buildings of interest are two teahouses with charming antique interiors, where locals sit and chat. The most attractive of these is the 19th-century Wangye Miao, a smaller version of the Xiqin Guildhall, which perches castle-like on a rocky outcrop overlooking the Fuxi Jiang on Binjiang Lu. The other is a former City

Storekeepers' Guildhall on Zhonghua Road, whose carved entrance-way opens into a sloping courtyard surrounded by private wood-paneled booths.

The **Shenhai Well**, just north-east of the center, was easily the deepest in the world when drilling reached a depth of 3,285 ft (1,001 m) in 1835, producing a daily output of 494 cubic ft (14 cubic m) of brine and 300,175 cubic ft (8,500 cubic m) of natural gas. The 59-ft (18-m) high timber derrick, bamboo pipes, cables, and buffalo-powered winches used in the drilling and retrieving processes are on show, along with gas-powered evaporation pans used to refine salt, which is still produced and

packed on site. Zigong's other forms of subterranean wealth are its fossils, found at a major Jurassic site in the northeastern suburb of Dashanpu, that has now been roofed over as a **Dinosaur Museum**. In 1985, extensive excavations were carried out with British assistance, unearthing hundreds of skeletons, including the stegosaur-like *Gigantospinosaurus sichuanensis*, and the 30-ft (9-m) long, carnivorous *Yangchuanosaurus hepingensis*. Assembled skeletons are displayed in the main hall, along with partially excavated remains in the original diggings.

Zigong Salt Museum
 107 Jiefang Lu. Tel (0813) 220 8581.

Open 8:30am–5pm daily.

Shenhai Well
 Da'an Jie. **Open** 8am–6pm daily.

Dinosaur Museum
 Dashanpu. Tel (0813) 580 1234.
Open 8:30am–5pm daily.



The main entrance of the Zigong Salt Museum

Mining Salt in Sichuan

An essential part of imperial tax since the Western Han era, salt was extracted from salt-water pools on the coasts. In Sichuan, however, mining from briny grounds (using an ingenious method that far pre-dated Western techniques), was cheaper than importing heavily taxed salt from the coast. With deep drilling and the installation of bamboo pipes in the 11th century, production peaked. Entrepreneurs opened up mines and workers flocked to the area, leading a bureaucracy alarmed at the tax losses to ban deep drilling – although they were soon opened again. By the 17th century, the Sichuanese had devised a method of capturing the natural gas that escapes from briny deposits to fuel their stoves.



Salt mine model, Xiqin Guildhall

Carvings of Dazu

Combining elements from Confucianism, Daoism, and Indian Tantric Buddhism, the carvings at Baoding Shan, Dazu are a unique example of the harmonious synthesis of these philosophies and religions. Though most are religious in theme, the carvings vary greatly in style. A few are naturalistic depictions of daily life, but most of them are monumental and even surreal, with fanged guardian gods and serene Buddhas at the point of Enlightenment surrounded by cartoon-like details of Buddhist parables. The main colors used are reds, blues, and greens.



⑩ **1000-armed Guanyin** In fact it has 1007 gilded arms that seem to flicker like flames from the central figure of Guanyin, each palm holding a different symbol of the bodhisattva.



⑪ **Filial Duty** A Confucian theme of honoring parents for the sacrifices they make for their children illustrates the flexible nature of Chinese belief at this predominantly Buddhist site.



⑫ **Dao Sages** These ancient figures of wise old men appear to be representatives of Daoist philosophy.



⑬ **Reclining Buddha** This 50-ft (15-m) long Buddha lies on his side, his stylized face making the life-like busts of officials and donors arranged in front appear even more striking. The adjacent Nine-dragon Spring refers to the legend of Buddha being washed at birth by dragons.

⑭ **Buddhist Hell**

Buddha and bodhisattvas gaze down at drunken sinners, while animal-headed demons mutilate others on Knife Mountain and in Knee-chopping Hall.



⑮ **Stone Lion** The lion is assigned to Wenshu, the incarnation of Wisdom in Buddhist teaching. Here, this twice life-sized statue guards the entrance to the Cave of Full Enlightenment.



⑯ **Wheel of Transmigration**

A giant, toothy demon holds a segmented disc depicting the possible states of reincarnation, from Buddhahood down to animals and ghosts.



④ The Three Sages Three serene figures sit in eternal contemplation of life, the infinite, and everything. The Chinese characters declare the site as Baoding Shan.



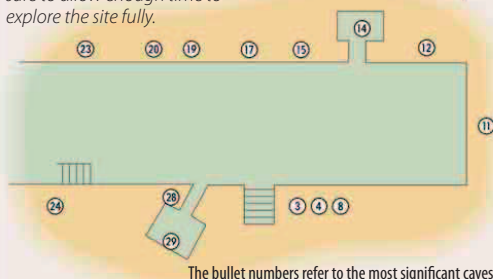
⑮ Parental Care This expression of the Confucian theme of the duty of parental love at this Buddhist site is an illustration of how religious philosophies could co-exist during the Tang dynasty.



⑲ Enlightenment Buddha The centerpiece of Baoding Shan's only true cave, this represents the reward of perfecting the self through cycles of reincarnation.

Baoding Shan

There are 30 caves in total so be sure to allow enough time to explore the site fully.



③ Baoding Shan, Dazu

宝顶山

9 miles (15 km) NE of Dazu. from Caiyuanba Station, Chongqing (2hrs) to Dazu; minibus to caves (half hr).

Open 8:30am–5pm. includes Bei Shan. Fee required for video.

The hills around Dazu are riddled with caves and grottoes decorated with more than 50,000 carvings dating as far back as the Tang dynasty in the 7th century. The best collection of statuary with the finest craftsmanship and richest content can be found at Baoding Shan; the monk Zhao Zhifeng oversaw the work between 1179 and 1245. The bulk of these carvings decorate thirty separate niches carved into the soft limestone walls of a 28-ft (8-m) high, horseshoe-shaped gully known as Dafo Wan (Big Buddha Bend) after the large sculpture of the reclining Sakyamuni Buddha.

Other carvings worth noting at Baoding Shan are the pastoral scenes of buffalo herding in Cave 5, a whole tableau of activity that stands as a beautiful allegory of the search for enlightenment. The Cat and Mouse between Caves 3 and 4 is a light-hearted carving with a wonderfully naturalistic cat looking up at a mouse climbing a bamboo stalk. The Dazu grottoes are more secular and real to life than other grottoes – that is to say, they relate the

abstract Buddhist doctrines through the lives of ordinary people. The realistic carvings include not only the statues of Buddha and bodhisattvas, but also monarchs, ministers, military officers, officials, monks, the rich, and even the poor.

The site has been listed as a World Cultural Heritage Site by UNESCO since 1999.

Enviorns: Bei Shan, situated just over a mile (2 km) north of Dazu, was originally a military camp whose carvings were commissioned by the general Wei Junjing in AD 892. The caves are somewhat dark and few sculptures stand out. The most outstanding sculpture is in Cave 136 which houses a Wheel of Life carving, Puxian the patron Saint of Emei Shan, and the androgynous Sun and Moon Guanyin.



One of the sculptures in the Bei Shan grottoes, Dazu

4 Chengdu

成都

The capital of Sichuan, Chengdu is a modern city with a relaxed culture, typified by its pleasant gardens and teahouses. A distinct part of city life, teahouses are found in parks and other spaces, and are often no more than a collection of rickety chairs and tables. The city's roots go as far back as the enigmatic Ba-Shu era (see p366), though it first became a capital during the Three Kingdoms (AD 221), later gaining a reputation for its silk brocade and for being the first place that printed paper money. By Chinese standards, Chengdu is a fairly compact city, stretching 5 miles (8 km) across, with most sights within its central area.



Business as usual at the bustling teahouse in Wenshu Yuan

Wenshu Yuan

Wenshu Yuan Jie. Wenshu Monastery Station. **Open** 8am–6pm daily. This busy Chan Buddhist temple is dedicated to Wenshu, the incarnation of Wisdom, whose lion is depicted in sculptures and paintings in the monastery's elegantly austere halls. The small gilded pagoda to one side is said to contain the skull of Xuanzang, a famous Tang dynasty pilgrim and star of TV series *Monkey*. After a visit, relax at the tea-house or restaurant.

Adjacent to the temple, **Wenshu Fang** is an area of antique alleys and restored period buildings, thick with snack stalls and shops.



Incense for sale at Wenshu Yuan

Yong Ling Museum

10 Yong Ling Lu. 42, 48, 54. **Open** 8:30am–5:30pm daily.

A large mound in the northwest of town was excavated in 1942 to uncover Yong Ling, the Tomb of Wang Jian, self-appointed emperor of Sichuan, who fought his way to power in

AD 907 and died in 918. The relics include a 20-ft (6-m) long stone platform which formed the base for a multi-layered wooden sarcophagus, carved with a 22-figure female orchestra. Life-sized busts of warriors, sunk up to their waists in the floor, support the platform. A simple statue of Wang Jian enforces the impression of a cultured, modest man, though his self-indulgent son lost the empire to the Late Tang in AD 925.

Du Fu's Thatched Cottage

38 Qinghua Lu.

Open 8am–6pm daily.

The Tang dynasty's most celebrated poet,

Du Fu, arrived in Chengdu during a nationwide uprising in AD 759. He spent the next five years living in poverty in a tumbledown thatched cottage on the outskirts of the city, where he wrote around 240 soulful poems contrasting the forces of nature with the

turmoil of contemporary life. Admirers first founded gardens here in the 10th century, although the traditional arrangement of pools, bridges, trees, and pavilions dates from 1811. Simple whitewashed halls display antique collections of Du Fu's poems, and a museum gives an outline of his life in models and paintings.

Qingyang Gong

9 Xi Er Duan. **Open** daily.

The name of this sprawling Daoist temple, meaning Green Goat, refers to the obscure final words of Daoism's mythical founder, Laozi, that those who understood his teachings could find him at the Green Goat market. The story is commemorated at the Bagua Pavilion, where a life-sized statue of Laozi riding his buffalo is surrounded by coiled dragons and also at the Three Purities Hall, where there are two bronze statues of what are supposedly goats, although the right-hand animal has tiger paws, a unicorn's horn, a snake's tail, and other attributes of animals in the Chinese zodiac.

Renmin Park

12 Xiao Cheng Lu. **Open** 7am–9pm daily.

This is the best of Chengdu's parks, with year-round floral displays, ponds, terraces draped in wisteria, and a hall hosting weekend shows of shadow-puppetry. The Martyrs' Monument, commemorates the 1911 rail dispute that mobilized opposition to the Qing and eventually led to their demise.



Worshippers outside the Daoist Qingyang Gong



A bizarre yet exquisitely crafted Sanxingdui mask

5 Panda Breeding Center

大熊猫繁殖基地

9 miles (15 km) NE of Chengdu. 🚗 87 or 198 from Zhaojiesi bus station, or taxi. **Open** 8am–6pm daily. 📶

panda.org.cn

This research base set up in 1987 has bred and raised over 88 giant panda cubs, with well over the usual captive survival rate. While so far this has been for the benefit of zoos, the center's main aim is to start returning pandas to the wild. One of the best places to see pandas in China, it currently displays around 30 red and 83 giant pandas. Mostly inactive, they can be seen chewing piles of arrow bamboo or sleeping.

6 Baoguang Si

宝光寺

12 miles (19 km) NE of Chengdu. 🚗 or taxi. **Open** 8am–5pm daily. 📶

A place of worship since the Han dynasty, Baoguang Si owes its current name and reputation to the Tang emperor Xizong, who took refuge here in AD 881, during a rebellion. He called the temple Baoguang, or Shining Treasure, after he saw a light underneath a wooden pagoda in the temple, which was supposedly emanating from the buried holy relics. The pagoda, which he ordered to be rebuilt in stone, still stands as the 13-story, 98-ft (30-m) high **Sheli Ta**, just inside the entrance. Its top, however, broke off during

an earthquake. The temple has well-tended gardens planted with ginkgos, besides a dozen or more halls filled with holy relics, including a room dedicated to the Gelugpa sect of Tibetan lamaism, and a stone stele carved with Buddha images from AD 540. Baoguang Si's biggest draw is its Qing-era **Luohan Hall**, where 518 brightly painted, life-sized sculptures of Buddhist saints are joined by 59 Buddhas and Bodhidharma – the Indian founder of Zen Buddhism – along with a huge phoenix statue. Among the statues are the emperors Kangxi and Qianlong, with their distinctive beards, boots, and capes. Also within the compound is a little vegetarian restaurant.

7 Sanxingdui Museum

三星堆博物馆

15 miles (24 km) N of Chengdu in Guanghan. **Tel** (0838) 565 1526. 🚗 from Chengdu to Guanghan. **Open** 8:30am–6pm daily (last adm 5pm). 📶

In the 1980s archeologists began excavating at Sanxingdui, where farmers had been finding ancient pieces since 1929. They unexpectedly uncovered traces of an ancient city, over 3,000 years old, tentatively believed to have been the capital of the Ba-Shu culture. Numerous sacrificial pits were found containing an extraordinary trove of bronze, gold, and jade artifacts. Key pieces in the museum include a 7-ft (2-m) high bronze figure with huge, coiled hands, a giant "spirit tree" hung with mystical animals, and several leering, 3-ft (1-m) wide masks whose eyes protrude on stalks. Also on display are smaller, finely detailed pieces, along with accounts of the excavations. Highly individual in style, though evoking the contemporary Shang bronzes of eastern China, the Sanxingdui artifacts reveal a very high degree of craftsmanship. The finds perhaps challenge the popular theory that China evolved from a single culture living by the Yellow River.

Sichuan Opera



Elaborately costumed actors at an opera performance

Sung in the Sichuanese dialect, this 300-year-old tradition is immensely popular. Lacking the formality of Beijing Opera, but filled with wit and dynamism, the Sichuan style portrays local legends, while its high-pitched singing is accompanied by percussion and wind instruments. Acrobatics are a major part of the performance. *Bianlian*, the Sichuanese trick of face-changing, allows each actor to portray many characters; with a

swift move of the hand, makeup is added, or a layer of mask removed. Sichuan Opera is usually performed in small, casual theaters, even teahouses. In Chengdu, tickets are available at Jinjiang Theater on Xianlong Jie and Shudu Theater down Yushuang Lu. Many tour operators run excursions to theaters, giving an explanation of the plot and a fascinating glimpse backstage.

Giant Pandas

The famously rare giant panda occurs only in China, and, according to genetic tests, is distantly related to the bear. The wild panda population of around 1,600 is increasing, though with perhaps only another 370 in zoos worldwide, they remain seriously endangered. There is added concern following the 2008 Sichuan earthquake, which seriously affected the panda population and habitat. Pandas feed primarily on bamboo. They have developed large molars for grinding up the stalks, but are not well adapted to digesting them and so spend almost all their waking hours eating. Bamboo flowers and dies off simultaneously over huge areas, periodically depriving giant pandas of their food source. In the past, they could travel to other regions to find more bamboo to eat, but now their habitat has been carved up by development. Some 49 reserves are dedicated to panda preservation in China, including the Wanglang reserve in North Sichuan (see p375).



Pandas eat between 35 and 65 pounds (15 and 30 kg) of bamboo a day, despite having a carnivore's digestive tract. They only digest 20 per cent of the nutrients, so spend the rest of the day asleep, conserving energy.



The panda's paw is adapted to its special diet. The wrist is modified into a sort of opposable "thumb" that helps it to grasp delicate bamboo stems.



Pandas are not prolific breeders, even in the best equipped zoos, as they only have a brief breeding window (for only a few days in spring) and they are extremely choosy about whom they mate with.



Pandas in the wild are occasionally seen in family groups, but mostly they live a solitary existence for much of their 25 years in a clearly defined territory marked out by scent. One theory for their striking coloration is that it helps them recognize each other in the forests.



Breeding programs in Sichuan saw 32 births (with 29 survivors) in 2008. Artificial insemination is usually used. Incubators reduce the high infant mortality found in the wild.

A panda baby weighs just 3½ oz (100 g) at birth – compared to the adult's 440 lb (200 kg). The cub is carried by the mother for 90 days and stays on with her for up to three years.



8 Emei Shan

峨眉山

Rising to 10,167 feet (3,099 m), Emei Shan has been considered holy by both Daoists and Buddhists since the Eastern Han dynasty. Many of the temples nestled on the mountain's lush slopes are dedicated to the Bodhisattva of Universal Benevolence, Puxian, who is said to have ascended the mountain during the 6th century atop a six-tusked elephant. Emei Shan is also a storehouse of botanic diversity, with over 3,200 plant species found on the mountain – 10 per cent of China's total. Many can be seen in monastery gardens, including the white-petalled handkerchief tree; the ginkgo, long thought to be extinct in the wild; and the straight-trunked *nanmu*, a favored wood for temple pillars. The most visible of Emei's animals are the aggressive monkeys, who pester hikers for handouts – keep food packed away.

Hikers

Hawkers hoist sedan chairs for those who have had enough of walking.

To cut down some of the trekking, take a bus from Baoguo to the cable car leading to Wannian Si, or, easiest of all, to the cable car going all the way to the summit at Jieyin Dian.



★ The summit

Emei's three main peaks are the crests of an undulating ridge, with a sheer drop of over 3,000 feet (1,000 m) on the front face.



Baoguo Si

One of the most important temples on Emei, Baoguo Si contains a massive bronze bell. Cast during the Ming dynasty, it is rung with a large swinging tree trunk and is said to be audible for 10 miles (16 km).



KEY

- ① **Xixiang Chi** (Elephant Bathing Pool) is at the spot where Puxian is said to have stopped to wash his elephant.



Jin Ding Si

The terrace in front of this temple is a favorite spot for watching the sunrise, cloud seas, and other atmospheric phenomena.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

96 miles (160 km) SW of Chengdu. near Baoguo Si, (0833) 552 0444. **Open** daily.

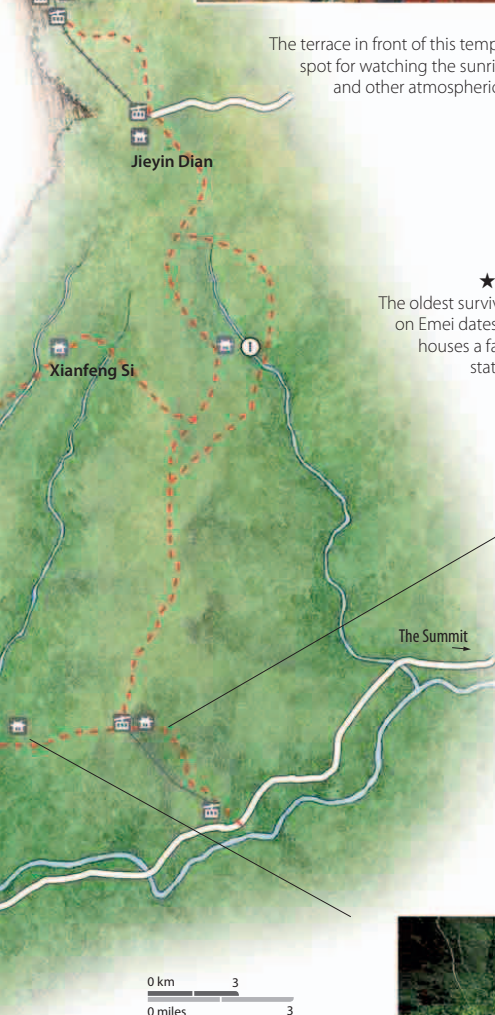
Transport

to Emei Town. from Chengdu Xin Nan Men Bus Station or Le Shan to Emei Town or Baoguo; Emei Town to Baoguo (20 min).

Key

Path

Road



★ Wannian Si

The oldest surviving building on Emei dates to 1611 and houses a famed golden statue of Puxian.



Exploring Emei Shan

It takes about three days to climb and descend Emei Shan; basic accommodations and food are available at numerous temples. Pack rain gear and wear stout footwear as the flagstone paths can be slippery, particularly from October to April when hawkers sell straw soles and metal crampons to attach to boots. Warm clothing is essential at the summit year round.

★ Qingyin Ge

Reached over a pair of arched bridges, the Pure Music Pavilion is set in lowland forest at the junction of two streams. The nearby temple is the most romantic place to spend a night on Emei Shan.



For additional map symbols see back flap

9 Dafo, Le Shan

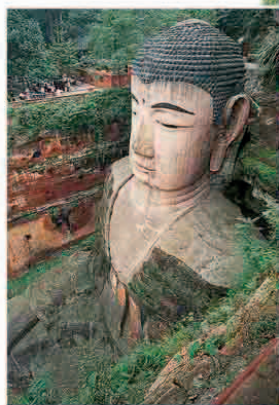
乐山

The enormous 230-ft (71-m) high Dafo (Great Buddha) is carved into the red sandstone face of Lingyun Hill overlooking the treacherous confluence of the Min, Dadu, and Qingyi rivers below. In AD 713 a monk, Haitong, decided to safeguard passing boats by creating a protective icon in the cliffs – though he was also practical enough to realize that the resultant rubble would fill in the shoals. By the time Dafo was completed, other temples had been built around it and on the adjacent Wuyou Hill, and today a network of paths links this UNESCO World Heritage site.



Jiazhou Huayuan

This museum, located in a pretty temple, gives a full account of Dafo's history and construction, with interesting models.

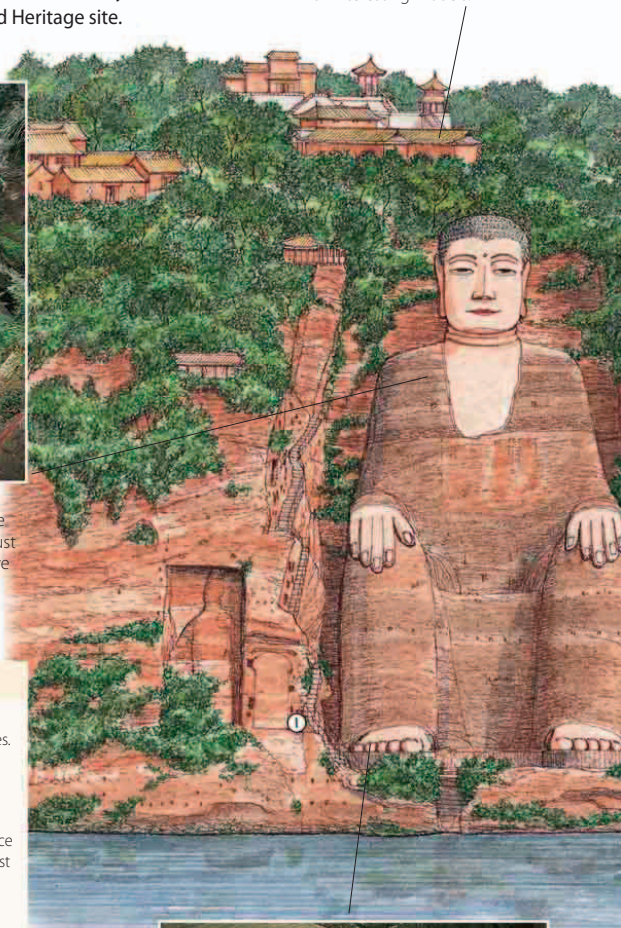


★ Dafo (Great Buddha)

Up close, the remains of a drainage system can be seen. The statue must be restored every decade to survive plant invasion and pollution.

KEY

- ① **Nine Turns Staircase** is a steep, narrow set of steps down to the toes.
- ② **Ancient shrines and temples close by**
- ③ **Wuyou Hill** was cut off from Lingyun Hill around 250 BC to reduce the river's currents. Wuyou's Buddhist temple was founded in AD 742.
- ④ **Guardian figures flank the Buddha**



★ Buddha's Feet

At his huge 26-ft (8-m) feet you can really appreciate one of the world's biggest Buddhas. His other statistics are equally impressive: each ear droops 23 ft (7 m), his shoulders span 92 ft (28 m), while his nose measures 18 ft (5.6m).



Haitong, Sculptor and Monk



When Haitong's idea was accepted, funds were raised by public subscription and regional government contributions from the salt revenue (see p361). The monk lived in a cave behind Dafo's head and when a local official threatened to blind Haitong unless he could take a cut of the funds, the monk gouged his own eyes out to prove his sincerity. However, the project was only completed in AD 803 after his death, and after Wei Gao, the regional governor, donated his own salary to finish off the legs and feet.

Haitong, a pious monk devoted to his project

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Le Shan, 96 miles (154 km) SW of Chengdu. **Open** 7:30am–7:30pm May–Sep; 8am–6pm Oct–Apr.



Transport

🚗 from Chengdu Xin Nan Men Bus Station to Le Shan, then bus no. 3 to Dafo. 🚶 from Le Shan to Wuyou Si, then walk to Dafo.

Mahao Cave Tombs

Dating from the Eastern Han dynasty (AD 25–220), these grottoes were built to house the remains of local nobles, with carved scenes of cavalry and some early Buddha figures.



★ Haoshang Bridge

This elegant, part-covered structure is built in an "antique" style and links the Great Buddha with outlying temples on the adjacent hills.



Dafo or Great Buddha, best seen from a river boat, hired from Le Shan







Qingcheng Shan's ornate front gateway, with sharply upturned eaves

10 Huanglong Xi

黄龙溪

31 miles (50 km) SW of Chengdu. 🚗
from Chengdu Xin Nan Men bus stn.

Consisting of just seven narrow lanes on a quiet riverbank surrounded by fields, the delightfully dated village of Huanglong Xi served as one of the sets in the martial-arts romance, *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*. Most of its timber-framed, stone buildings date from the Ming or Qing eras. Of its three temples, **Gulong Si** is the largest, with a few slightly shabby halls and a low entrance guarded by two stone lions, above which is a theater stage used during temple fairs. At the other end of the village, **Nanwu Chaoxi Si** is a tiny nunnery with a painted stone carving of the dragon spirit Nanwu in human form, with red

hair and a mustache. **Zhenjiang Si** is mostly closed to the public, but does have a pleasant, relaxed riverfront teahouse.

11 Qingcheng Shan

青城山

43 miles (70 km) NW of Chengdu. 🚗
from Chengdu. 🚗 to Dujiangyan
then taxi. **Open** daily. 🗺️

As its name “Green City Mountain” suggests, this renowned Daoist retreat is beautifully forested. Its two separate sections are dotted with Daoist temples linked by stone paths, ideal for rambling. The front face is reached from the main entrance in town, while the wilder rear face, with steeper gradients and narrower paths, lies 9 miles (15 km) farther west. **Jianfu Gong**, outside the entrance, is the best-preserved

shrine. The main temple on the mountain's front face lies halfway up at **Tianshi Dong**. Ming-dynasty panels decorate its main hall, where the Han-era Daoist master Zhang Daolin once taught. Situated on the 4,134-ft (1,260-m) summit, two hours on foot and accessible by cable car, **Shangqing Gong** was first built in the 4th century AD and houses a tearoom. From here, it is a short climb to the **Laojun Pavilion**. On the lower slopes of the peak's rear face is the huge **Tai'an Temple**.

12 Dujiangyan

都江堰

37 miles (60 km) NW of Chengdu. 🚗
from Chengdu. 🚗 from Xi Men
Station, Chengdu. **Open** 8am–6pm
daily. 🗺️ for Irrigation Scheme Area.

The vast town of Dujiangyan is primarily known for the Dujiangyan Irrigation Scheme, built in 256 BC by the Sichuanese governor Li Bing. He organized the building of an artificial island to tame and divide the flood-prone Min Jiang into two channels which could be regulated and tapped to provide a steady flow for crop irrigation. Li Bing's project is still fully functional and was made a UNESCO World Heritage site in 2000, but it was affected by the construction of Zipingpu Dam, 9 miles (15 km) north. During the 2008 Sichuan earthquake, the dam cracked causing extensive damage to the town. Some



A ferry on the scenic Yuechang Hu (Moon Wall Lake) at Qingcheng Shan

◀ Crowds viewing Le Shan's Dafo (Great Buddha) from various vantage points



Songpan's east gate and impressive stone wall

scientists have suggested that building work at the dam may have triggered the earthquake. After collapsing, **Erwang Miao** (Two Kings Temple) was rebuilt according to the original plans.

13 Wanglang Nature Reserve

王朗自然保护区

165 miles (265 km) N of Chengdu.
Access via hired minibus from Pingwu.

Tel (0816) 882 5312. **Open** daily. slack.net/~rd/wanglang/home.htm

In the heart of the Min Shan Mountains, this high-altitude nature reserve is remote and difficult to access, but there is a good chance of seeing rare animals, including takin, musk deer, and serow, along with abundant birdlife. A few **pandas** inhabit the reserve, but you are highly unlikely to encounter these elusive animals since they generally stay hidden deep inside Wanglang's impenetrable bamboo thickets.

From the research base and accommodation center (where rooms must be booked in advance), the 7-mile (12-km) long **Baisha Gou** road passes through old-growth pine forest and boggy moorlands to a scree-strewn alpine gully dotted with rhododendron thickets and splashes of hardy flowers. Alternatively, **Baixiong Gou** is 6 miles (9 km) from camp via high ridges where goat-like serow and takin are sometimes seen. At the end of the road, there are boardwalks through dense stands of bamboo and juniper.

14 Songpan

松潘

190 miles (305 km) N of Chengdu. from Xi Men Station, Chengdu.

Founded as a Ming-dynasty garrison post to guard a 8,200-ft (2,500-m) mountain pass, Songpan is an administrative center and busy marketplace for nearby Tibetan, Qiang, and Hui communities. It derives its ancient character from the surviving original cross-shaped street plan with high stone walls and its north, south, and east gates. Walled-in courtyards in front of the South Gate were once the "customs area" for searching caravans coming into town. Min Jiang, bisecting Songpan's center, is crossed by the covered **Gusong Qiao**, the Ancient Pine Bridge whose two-tiered roof is decorated with carved animals. Songpan's two large mosques, one in the center of town and the other



Lantern at the east gate, Songpan

along the river outside the north gate, resemble standard Chinese temples except in their use of green and yellow paint and the Arabic script over their doors. Shops sell beaten copper pots, turquoise jewelry, sheepskin coats, yak butter, and wind-dried yak meat. Just outside the north gate, two tour companies organize overnight guided horse treks to nearby villages. Sleeping arrangements are out in the open air or in tents and food is basic. Trekkers should have the itinerary and fees agreed, in writing, before setting off to avoid argument.

15 Huanglong

黄龙

40 miles (65 km) W of Songpan. from Chengdu or Songpan. Huanglong Temple Fair (Jul/Aug).

Huanglong is a 5-mile (7.5-km) long valley, 9,845 ft (3,000 m) above sea level in the foothills of the snowcapped Min mountain range. Deposited minerals from the river descending the valley have created 12 terraced pools and calcified cascades, whose yellow rocks give Huanglong (Yellow Dragon) its name. Of the four nearly ruined temples, the **Huanglong Temple**, at the valley's upper end, has a statue of Huanglong's patron saint, and hosts an annual temple fair featuring a horse race.



Calcified terraces in Huanglong

16 Jiuzhai Gou Tour

九寨沟

One of China's most scenic reserves and a UNESCO World Heritage site, Jiuzhai Gou (Nine Stockades Gully) covers 280 sq miles (720 sq km) of mountain valleys dotted with Tibetan villages. Beneath the snow-capped mountains, the valley floors are strung with extraordinarily blue lakes, said to be the broken slivers of the Tibetan goddess Semo's mirror. Broad waterfalls, heavily encrusted with lime deposits, connect many of the lakes. Aside from herds of yaks, birds are the most evident wildlife, including rare mandarin ducks; a panda sighting is unlikely.

① Zharu Temple

This small temple, its interior adorned with bright murals, is looked after by just two monks.



② Shuzheng Zhai

A Tibetan stockaded village, replete with Buddhist shrines and water-powered mills, sits halfway along a string of deep blue pools and reed beds.

0 kilometers 4
0 miles 4

Key

— Tour route
— Other road

⑦ Long Lake

This pool is not only the largest, but also the highest in the park, sitting at 10,170 feet (3,100 m).

Saigon

• Jiuzhai Gou

Tips for Walkers

Getting around: buses are included in admission. Hiking follows roads and boardwalks. Nuorilang is a convenient base.

When to go: Avoid summer weekends. Sep–Oct has autumnal colors and fewer crowds. Winters are well below freezing with deep snow.



③ Nuorilang Falls

Jiuzhai Gou's most renowned cataract is best seen in full flood in late spring, when the water foams wildly in multiple ribbons over its stony outcrops.

④ Pearl-Beach Falls

Water tumbles down a calcified slope, spraying pearl-like drops on its rocky ridges.

⑤ Primeval Forest

An atmospheric coniferous forest at the far end of the reserve is far from crowds.



⑥ Five-colored Pool

Surrounded by a fringe of ferns and dark woods, this pool's kingfisher-blue depths are enhanced by green algae in the shallows, and milky-white swirls that seep in after rain.



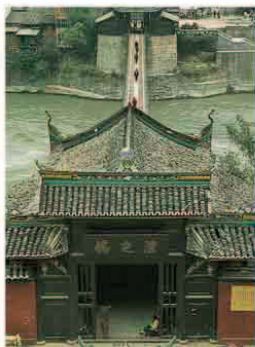
The debris-laden Hailuo Gou Glacier descending the southeastern slopes of Gongga Shan

17 Luding

泸定

168 miles (270 km) W of Chengdu. 🚗
from Xi Men and Xin Nan Men
stations, Chengdu

The small market town of Luding is surrounded by mountains above the banks of Dadu Jiang. The 328-ft (100-m) **Luding Chain Bridge** over the Dadu, comprising 13 iron chains spanned by wooden planks, was built in 1705 to improve transportation across the region. The Luding Chain Bridge became a national icon in May 1935 due to an incident during the Long March (see p262). The Nationalist forces had removed the bridge's planks to trap the Red Army on the south side of the river, but "22 Heroes" clambered along the chains and managed to capture a Nationalist camp on the opposite side. The



The historic Luding Bridge, flanked by two gateways

bridge is flanked on either side by gateways, while a museum on the river's far side exhibits contemporary photos.

18 Moxi Xiang & Hailuo Gou Glacier

磨西和海螺沟

33 miles (53 km) S of Luding. 🚗 Treks
organized by hotels.

The tiny town of Moxi Xiang, with its large Qiang population, is a staging post for trekking up the adjacent Hailuo Gou (Conch Valley) to the Hailuo Gou Glacier, whose tongue, at 12,205 ft (3,720 m), makes it the lowest and most accessible glacier in Asia. Moxi's wooden church sheltered the Red Army in 1935, before they attempted crossing the passes over Daxue Shan – Great Snow Mountain – during which a third of the army died (see p262). The glacier descends the southeastern side of Sichuan's highest peak, the 24,790-ft (7,556-m) Gongga Shan. The three-day return trek passes rhododendron forests before reaching the glacier's snout, blackened by debris. Its upper reaches comprise tumbled blocks of blue-green ice, while a hot spring mixes with icy glacial streams to provide pools for bathing.

19 Kangding

康定

31 miles (50 km) W of Luding. 🚗
from Xin Nan Men Station, Chengdu.

Lying between China and Tibet, Kangding is a bustling trading depot situated in a valley on the Zhepuo River. During the Qing era, the town developed on the tea trade between Tibet and China and was the place where porters would exchange bricks of tea for Tibetan goods such as wool and copperware.

Ethnically, the region is inhabited largely by the Khampa, a Tibetan people whose heavy turquoise jewelry, forward manners, and habit of carrying knives match their reputation for toughness. The central **Anjue**



Moxi's early
20th-century church

Lamasery is a focus for the Khampa community. The town also has a handful of Qiang, Hui, and Han Chinese. To the southeast, Paoma Shan (Horse Race Mountain) is the venue for the Walking Around the Mountain festival, which takes place in the 4th calendar month of the Chinese year, and where the Khampa demonstrate their equestrian skills during horse races. Heading west from Kangding, it is 311 miles (500 km) to the fringes of Tibet, with a worthwhile stop at Dege town and its Scripture Printing Lamasery.



YUNNAN

Located along China's southwest frontier, Yunnan offers an unmatched diversity of landscapes, climate, and people. The Tibetan highland frames its northwestern fringes; tropical rainforests and volcanic plains lie to its south. In the center are plains and hills, crisscrossed by some of Asia's great rivers – the Yangzi, Salween, and Mekong.

The seat of the pastoral Dian Kingdom founded in the 3rd century BC, Yunnan was for centuries an isolated frontier region that resisted Han influences and upheld local identities. Even today, the province is home to a third of China's ethnic minorities and has much in common with neighboring Myanmar, Laos, and Vietnam. The province's capital, Kunming, is one of the more relaxed cities in China; nearby are the astonishing rock formations of the Stone Forest (Shi Lin). Several minority villages dot the tropical forests of Xishuangbanna, while in the north, Dali is home to the indigenous Bai people. Farther north is the UNESCO World Heritage Site of Lijiang, capital of the Naxi Kingdom, with cobbled streets and ancient architecture. Tiger Leaping Gorge, an impressive, steep-sided ravine, offers superb, accessible two-day hikes.

Kunming is well connected to the rest of China, but the bulk of the province has only limited train services. Bus travel is necessary to access most of Yunnan.



● Kunming

昆明

The capital of Yunnan province, Kunming rests at 6,500 ft (2,000 m) above sea level. Its clement weather and floral wealth have earned it the nickname “City of Eternal Spring.” An ancient city that first came to prominence as part of the Nanzhao Kingdom (see p394), Kunming had grown into a thriving city with a cosmopolitan character by the 13th century. Kunming is fast becoming indistinguishable from the redeveloped metropolises found throughout the country, but it is still considered one of China’s more laid-back cities, with lakeside vistas just to the south.



High-rise architecture dominating Kunming’s city center

📍 Cui Hu Gongyuan

67 Cui Hu Nan Lu. **Open** daily.

Northwest of the city, this park has pavilions and bridges, and its lotus-filled ponds are visited by migrant red-beaked gulls in winter. Just west of the park, the old **French Legation** now holds temporary exhibitions. To the northwest is the university district, with its student cafés.

📍 Yuantong Si

30 Yuantong Jie. **Tel** (0871) 6519 3762.

Open 8am–5:20pm daily. 📷

At the foot of Yuantong Hill lies Yunnan’s largest Buddhist complex and a popular pilgrimage spot. Renovated and rebuilt many times, it has an imposing Ming gateway, while a bridge over the central pond crosses through a Qing-era pavilion. Enshrined here is a 6-ft (3-m) golden statue of Maitreya Buddha. Behind the pavilion, the Ming-dynasty Great Hall of the Buddha has two wooden dragons on its main pillars, referring to a legend that the temple was built to pacify a

dragon living in the pond. A Thai-style hall behind holds a marble statue of Sakyamuni, donated by the King of Thailand. At the back of the temple is a cliff cut with steps allowing a view of religious poems and sayings carved into the rock.

📍 Bird & Flower Market

The many stalls lining the crammed alleyways off Jingxing

Jie sell an eclectic variety of goods. Splayed out in colorful rows at the huge pet market are a wealth of bird, fish, and animal species, while the antique and curio booths sell souvenirs such as *tai ji quan* swords, jewelry, old coins, bamboo pipes, and Cultural Revolution mementos.

📍 Provincial Museum

Corner of Dongfeng Xi Lu & Wuyi Lu.

Tel (0871) 6617 9536. **Open**

9:30am–4:30pm Tue–Sun.

The second floor of this museum houses splendid bronze drums (see p429) excavated from tombs on the shore of Lake Dian and dating back more than 2,000 years to the Warring States and Western Han periods. The drums are embellished with relief dioramas, largely showing typical scenes of rural life, although there are also wrestling scenes, a dramatic image of an ox battling a tiger, and a strange picture of a bamboo house transformed into a coffin. The most ornate of the drums were used to store cowry shells, then a form of currency. The others served as musical instruments or elements in sacrificial rites. Even today, bronze drums play an important role at weddings, festivals, and funerals for some of Yunnan’s minority groups. Another hall holds bronze and wooden Buddhist statues from various periods. Upstairs, an exhibition on prehistory displays human remains and plaster models of armored fish.



Pavilions on the fish-filled waters of Cui Hu Gongyuan

Zhenqing Guan

Cnr of Tuodong Lu & Chuncheng Lu.
Open 8:30am–5pm.

Located near the City Museum, this restored complex of stone courtyards and smartly painted halls was founded in 1419 to honor the Taoist warrior deity Zhen Wu. Today it is full of friendly monks in black, blue, and white robes, their hair pinned up in buns. The largest temple in Kunming, Zhenqing Guan has five entrances and three courtyards. The gateway is guarded by a fierce golden statue of three-eyed Wan Ling Guan, the protector spirit, wearing a severed demon's head as a belt buckle and brandishing an iron pagoda to scare off evil. Inside, the main hall features an intricately bracketed domed ceiling and murals of the Taoist pantheon, while the adjacent Dulei mansion is dominated by a statue of the Thunder God and a model of the globe wrapped in animals of the zodiac. The complex sometimes hosts musicians, including a full traditional Chinese orchestra.

Xi Si Ta

Dong Si Jie. **Open** 7am–8pm.

The 13-storied Tang-era Xi Si Ta (Western Pagoda) has statues in the niches of each story. Close by, Dong Si Ta (Eastern Pagoda) is a more attractive replica standing in a garden. Although visitors cannot enter the temples associated with both pagodas, a small fee permits entry into Xi Si Ta's courtyard, where people come to relax on sunny afternoons. Both pagodas are surrounded by small parks, with the Eastern park offering more greenery.

City Museum

93 Tuodong Lu. **Tel** (0871) 6315 3256.
Open 9:30am–5pm Tue–Sun.

Though less interesting than the Provincial Museum, this museum houses a few relevant artifacts. The most striking is the Song-dynasty **Dali Sutra Pillar**, a 20-ft (7-m) sculpture in pink sandstone, commissioned by the Dali king, Yuan Douguang, in honor

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

208 miles (335 km) SE of Dali.
 6,500,000. 285 Huancheng
 Nan Lu, (0871) 6356 6666.

Transport

Kunming Changshui Airport.
 Kunming Train Station, North
 Train Station. Kunming Bus
 Station, Western Bus Station.

of General Gao Ming. Seven tiers swarm with lively images of guardian gods and captive demons, and at the top is a ring of Buddhas holding up the universe. On the upper floors are fascinating displays on the Flying Tigers and the Tea Horse trade route that ran through Yunnan.



Skeleton of *Dilophosaurus*, City Museum

Kunming City Center

- ① Cui Hu Gongyuan
- ② Yuantong Si
- ③ Bird & Flower Market
- ④ Provincial Museum
- ⑤ Xi Si Ta
- ⑥ Zhenqing Guan
- ⑦ City Museum



Key to Symbols see back flap



The double-eaved Jin Dian, entirely made of bronze

Jin Dian

7 miles (12 km) NE of Kunming.


 No. 71 from Kunming's North Train Station. **Open** daily. 


Well-kept flower gardens and leafy pine woods are reason enough to visit this secluded spot in the city's northeastern suburbs. However, the park's ostensible focus is the Jin Dian (Golden Temple) located on top of its central hill. Originally built in 1602 during the Ming Dynasty, and rebuilt in 1671 as the summer residence of the Qing rebel general, Wu Sangui, this unusual two-tiered shrine is made entirely of bronze. Its overall construction imitates the more conventional wooden temples, with screens, columns, and flying eaves. Just over 20-ft (6-m) high and weighing nearly 300 tons (272,155 kg), the temple sits atop a base of Dali marble and is almost completely black with the patina of age. In the courtyard stand ancient camellia trees, one of which is 600 years old. The main hall, with bronze lattices, beams, and statues, houses two magical swords used by Daoist warriors. Fragrant with camellias, the gardens here serve as popular picnic spots. Visitors can either take a bus or hire a bike to reach the base of the hill, from where it's an easy hike uphill to the temple.

Situated on the hill behind Jin Dian is another Daoist shrine with a tower that houses a 14-ton (12,700-kg) bronze bell. Dating to 1423, it was retrieved from Kunming's demolished southern gates.

Qiongzhu Si

7 miles (12 km) NW of Kunming.

 from K.ming's Western bus station.

Open 8am–5pm daily. 

The Tang-era Qiongzhu Si (Bamboo Temple) was burned down and subsequently rebuilt in the 15th century. Today, this elegant Buddhist structure, with fine black and red woodwork, stands on Yuan-dynasty foundations. Besides housing three impressive Buddha statues, the temple is famous for its dazzling array of life-size clay sculptures, created over ten years toward the end of the 19th century by a supremely talented Sichuan sculptor, Li Guangxiu. The sculptor and his five assistants were

commissioned to produce clay figures of the 500 *arhat* or *luo han* (those freed from the cycle of birth and death) for the main building. Today, these sculptures are the highlight of the temple, though at that time they were regarded as so distressing that Li Guangxiu was forbidden from ever working again. Along one wall a set of snarling, outlandish figures – one with arms longer than his body, another with eyebrows to his knees – ride foaming waves swarming with sea creatures. Elsewhere, three shelves of figures depict Buddhist virtues and faults. Many aspects of human life and folly are depicted in these beautiful characters: reaching for the moon, playing with a pet monster, yawning, debating, and eating a peach. While Li Guangxiu's skill at rendering facial expressions and gestures makes these figures unique, many are thought to be caricatures of his contemporaries, probably the reason they were so disliked at the time.

Also worth a glance is a 14th-century stone tablet, housed in the main hall. It records imperial China's dealings with Yunnan in Chinese and Mongolian scripts. A pleasant teahouse lies within the temple grounds.



An aerial view of the extensive Qiongzhu Si (Bamboo Temple)



Haigeng Park viewed against the expanse of Lake Dian

Lake Dian & the Western Hills

 from Kunming. **Tel** (0871) 6842 7475. **Open** daily. 

The 25-mile (40-km) long Lake Dian (Dian Chi), just south of Kunming, is lined with fishing villages and is very pretty. Plying the waters of the elongated lake are *fanchuan*, traditional junks with bamboo masts and square canvas sails, used for fishing.

Daguan Pavilion on the north shore has good views of the area, while a few miles south is **Haigeng Park** with green willows and eucalyptuses.

The most rewarding way to see the lake is from the Western Hills (Xi Shan), about 10 miles (16 km) southwest of Kunming. The undulating contours of the "Sleeping Beauty Hills" are said to resemble a reclining woman with tresses flowing into the lake. The path leading to the summit holds a treasury of temples.

Visitors can either climb up or take a minibus. The first temple, a mile (2 km) from the entrance, is **Huating Si**. Designed originally as a country retreat for Gao Zhishen, who ruled Kunming in the 11th century, it has been rebuilt several times. The attractive gardens, dotted with stupas and ponds, contain interesting figures, including the four fierce-looking Guardians of the Directions, the gilded, blue-haired Buddhas, and a set of 500 *arhat*.

From Huating Si, a steep, winding road leads deep into the forest for 1 mile (2 km) to **Taihua Si**, established by Xuan Jian, a wandering Chan (Zen) Buddhist monk in 1306, and dedicated to Guanyin, the Goddess of Compassion. It is

well known for its garden of camellias and magnolias, and excellent views. Another 20-minute walk up the hill leads to **Sanqing Si**, a complex of temples, halls, and pavilions, which formerly served as a summer palace for a



A picturesque pavilion with a pond and garden, Taihua Si

14th-century Mongolian prince. It was converted to a Daoist shrine in the 18th century.

Just half a mile away is the **Dragon Gate Grotto**, a set of chambers, steps, and tunnels excavated from the mountain. The mammoth construction task, which involved swinging from ropes and hacking at the rock with chisels, was begun by the late 18th century monk Wu Laiqing, and took 70 years to complete. Worth exploring along the way are niches with several fantastic statues, including those of Guanyin and the Gods of Study and Virtue. A cable car runs from near Sanqing Si to the summit at **Grand Dragon Gate**, a balcony perched at 8,200 ft (2,500 m), from where there are fine views over Lake Dian.

The Burma Road

For 1,500 years, the southern Silk Route ran through Yunnan, across Burma, and into India, traversing thick jungle and bandit-ridden mountains. In the 1930s, the Chinese government, driven west by the invading Japanese, reopened the route to use as a supply line into China from Burma. The 684-mile (1,100-km) road was built by 300,000 laborers, with primitive tools, and connected Kunming with the British railroad at Lashio in Burma. After the beginning of World War II, it became a strategic lifeline for the Allied troops, bringing in food, arms, and medical supplies. Provisions arrived by rail from Rangoon, and were then trucked to China on this route. After the Japanese occupied Lashio in 1942, another road, built under the command of US General Stilwell (see p357), linked Ledo in India to the Burma Road at Bhamo.



The Burma Road in the 1930s, snaking through the hills

② The Stone Forest

石林

Celebrated as a natural wonder, the limestone pillars of the Stone Forest (Shi Lin) are Yunnan's most visited sight. The bizarre, tightly packed formations, some as tall as 100 feet (30 m), have been given imaginative names such as "Rhinceros Gazing at the Moon" and "Everlasting Fungus." Resembling a petrified forest, the area is shot through with winding pathways, ponds, and look-out points. So popular is this place that the central paths can get clogged with tour groups. Head to the edges of the forest to find a quiet corner, but keep in mind that it is easy to get lost in this otherworldly landscape. For a more ethereal experience, spend the night and explore when it's deserted and eerily lit.



③ ★ Wangfeng Ting

Many of the paths lead to the central Peak Viewing Pavilion, a good meeting point, with views over the forest to help you gain your bearings.



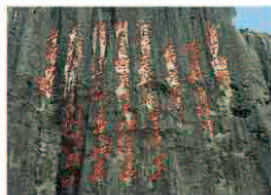
① Xiao Shi Lin

The Minor Stone Forest, a smaller rock cluster to the north of the main forest, is a little quieter. Each evening Sani minority dances are performed at an amphitheater here.

Fluted shape created by
retreating water

Shi Lin's Formation

Fossils found in the area reveal that Shi Lin was underwater during the Permian period, 270 million years ago. The retreating sea left a limestone seabed that has been eroded since by wind and rain into today's weird, twisted shapes.



② Ode to Plum Blossom

Many of the rocks are cut with calligraphy, including one of Mao Zedong's most loved poems, executed in his elegant flowing script.

The Sani

The area around Shi Lin is home to the Sani, one of the many subgroups of the Yi minority. Spread throughout the Southwest, the Yi have their own written language, with six dialects, and numerous tracts on medicine, history, and the genealogy of ruling families. Much of Yi society was feudal well into the 20th century, and some groups still practice shamanism. The Sani are known for their embroidery, widely available at Shi Lin, and many local Sani work at the forest as tour guides and dancers.



A Sani tour guide, posing at Shi Lin



④ ★ Jianfeng Chi

This ornamental pool is ringed by jagged ridges. A narrow walkway runs from here across the top of the forest.

Sharp edge
or karren



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

60 miles (100 km) SE of Kunming.

Tel (0871) 771 9006.

Torch Festival (end of the sixth lunar month).

Transport

Open 24 hours daily.



⑤ Wife Waiting for Husband

This formation, reminiscent of a woman waiting impatiently, sits in the quiet area right at the back of the forest, on the route of the overhead walkway.

The wavy shapes

and thin edges were created by chemicals in standing water dissolving the limestone.

Plan of Shi Lin

- ① Xiao Shi Lin
- ② Ode to Plum Blossom
- ③ Wangfeng Ting
- ④ Jianfeng Chi
- ⑤ Wife Waiting for Husband

Key

Path

Road

Shop

Restrooms

Entrance

0 meters 500
0 yards 500









Dai women selling vegetables in a busy market, Jinghong

3 Jinghong

景洪

325 miles (523 km) SW of Kunming.
 371,000. 371,000. 14 Mengla Lu, (0691) 898 1866.

The tropical region of Xishuangbanna, in the far south of Yunnan, resembles its neighbors, Myanmar and Laos, more than dynamic modern China. Jinghong, its sleepy capital, was founded in the 12th century by the Dai warlord Dazhen. It is today an incongruous mix of concrete architecture and palm-lined streets. With an attractively torpid pace of life, it is an ideal introduction to the region and its indigenous Dai culture (see opposite).

Manting Wat, situated southeast of the city center, is Xishuangbanna's largest Buddhist temple. Built entirely of wood and raised off the ground on stilts, it has a simple interior, with vivid frescoes illustrating Buddhist themes. Next door is a school where Dai boys learn Buddhist lore. Behind the temple, **Manting Park**, once the quarters for royal slaves, is a lush place with numerous resident peacocks. There are several paths leading across the tiny river to replicas of temples and pagodas. There is also a small zoo, though the poor conditions

may distress some travelers. Located in the west of town, off Jinghong Xi Lu, is the lovely **Tropical Flower & Plant Garden**, a must-see for anyone interested in the incredibly diverse flora of the region. It is bursting with a wealth of tropical plants – over 1,000 species – quite a few with labels in English. In the early afternoon, tour groups are entertained by vibrant displays of traditional Dai dancing. A prominent statue of Zhou Enlai (see p256) commemorates a summit he held here with the Burmese leader U Nu in 1961 to defuse border tensions.



Budding plant, Tropical Flower & Plant Garden

Manting Wat
 Manting Lu. **Open** 8am–7pm daily.

Tropical Flower & Plant Garden
 28 Jinghong Xi Lu. **Open** daily.

Environs: Located 20 miles (30 km) southeast of Jinghong, **Ganlanba** makes a good base for exploring the surrounding area. In the southeast of town, the **Dai Minority Park** is a collection of refurbished Dai villages, with traditional bamboo and wood houses raised on stilts. Near the park's center stands the 700-year-old, gilded **Wat Ben Pagoda**. The town's main attraction, however, is its picturesque setting in lush jungle beside the Mekong River. Several cafés here offer advice on walks and bike rental.

The popular **Wild Elephant Valley**, 30 miles (50 km) north of Jinghong, is home to a herd of 50-or-so wild elephants. Visitors are not allowed to wander off the paths without a guide. Raised treetop walkways allow for observing the wild elephants, while a chairlift provides a real bird's-eye view. Near the southern entrance is a bird and butterfly zoo. The reserve's frequent elephant displays are best avoided, since the animals are coaxed into performing with spears.

A visit to **Banla Village**, 24 miles (38 km) west of Jinghong, is the most accessible way to experience Aini culture (a subgroup of the officially recognized Hani minority). The village is attractive with stilted houses overlooking rice terraces and tea plantations. Besides dance recitals held at the village hall, visitors can also see the distinctive Aini dress, with embroidered tunics, silver breastplates, and ornate headdresses.



The lush Tropical Flower & Plant Garden, Jinghong

The Dai

In China, the Dai people live in the lush lands of Xishuangbanna. Once spread as far north as the Yangzi Valley, the Dai were driven south during the 13th century by Mongol expansion, and are now found throughout Thailand, Laos, Myanmar, and Vietnam. The Dai in all of these countries share a similar culture, following Theravada Buddhism rather than Mahayana, the Buddhist school practiced in much of the rest of China, and speaking their own language with its own script. Known as skillful farmers, the Dai have always flourished in fertile river basins, growing rice, sugar cane, rubber trees, and bananas. Dai cuisine is well worth trying, with sweet flavors not found elsewhere in China. Rice is steamed inside bamboo or pineapple, and exotic specialties include ant eggs and fried moss.



Traditional Dai homes are made of bamboo and raised on stilts, with the livestock penned underneath and generations of the same family living above. The well outside will likely have a shrine over it, water being sacred to Dai culture.



Many Dai men have impressive tattoos of animals, flowers, geometric patterns, or Dai script. Traditionally, when a boy reaches 12 years, he has his torso and limbs decorated. This rite of passage has largely died out in mainstream Dai culture, but it is still undertaken in some very rural areas.

Dai women

traditionally wear a sarong or long skirt, a bodice, and a jacket. Hair is tied up, fixed with a comb, and often ornamented with flowers. Gold-capped teeth are considered attractive and married women wear silver wrist bands.



Markets in rural Dai homelands offer the only opportunity for some to buy products they can not produce themselves. Huge social occasions usually held on a Monday, they attract villagers for miles around. A lot of hard bargaining – as well as gossip and flirting – goes on.

Water Splashing Festival

Originally a solemn Buddhist rite celebrating the defeat of a demon, Poshui Jie, the Water Splashing Festival, is today a joyous and hedonistic carnival. Water is liberally hurled at friend and stranger alike, and becoming thoroughly drenched is seen as fortuitous. The festival also features a massive market on the first day; dragon boat racing, fireworks, elephant and peacock displays on the second; and the biggest drenching of all, along with much singing and dancing on the third.



Yunnan's Water Splashing Festival is a celebration in mid-April, usually the 13th to the 16th

◆ Xishuangbanna

西双版纳

In climate and culture, the subtropical far south of Yunnan, Xishuangbanna, feels a part of southeast Asia. The region is home to China's last snippets of primeval rainforest, as well as a huge diversity of flora and fauna, including a third of China's bird population. A third of the population is Dai (see p389); another third is made up of the numerous other minorities. Most of the population lives in small villages and the area's appeal lies in the opportunity to hop between towns, explore the countryside by bike, and trek through the jungle.



Pillar-like palm trees at Menglu's Botanic Gardens

East to Laos

This route travels through cultivated flat lands and highland forest to the Laotian border, which you can cross, provided you have the required visa.

The small settlement of **Manjing**, a few miles east of Ganlanba (see p388) is full of traditional wooden Dai houses. The town's **Fo Si** and **Du Ta** are excellent reconstructions of 12th-century temples destroyed in the Cultural Revolution.

Three hours east by bus lies **Menglu**, a dusty couple of streets beside the Luosuo Jiang. The superb **Botanic Gardens**, across a suspension bridge on the opposite bank, were set up to research medicinal uses of local plants. With over 3,000 different species, there's plenty to see, even for the not-so-botanically minded, including the celebrated Dragons' Blood Trees whose sap is used to heal wounds, as well as bamboo and

ancient cycad groves. Stay the night, in the small hotel within the gardens.

Leaving the farms behind, the road to **Mengla** travels through a great tract of thick tropical jungle, the largest of Xishuangbanna's five wildlife preserves, which gives way to rubber plantations. Mengla itself is a rather drab and unattractive town.

A short taxi ride north of Mengla, the **Bubang Wangtianshu Aerial Walkway**, a chain of slender bridges 130 feet (40 m) in the tree canopy, allows for unrivaled views of the jungle below. It's another 9 miles (15 km) to the Yao minority village of **Yaoqu**. There's a hostel, and from here it is possible to trek into some very remote regions – you're advised to hire a guide.

Shangyong is the last village before the Laos border crossing at Mohan and though not really worthy of a trip in itself, it's interesting as Xishuangbanna's Miao center (see pp412–13).

🌿 Botanic Gardens

Menglu. Open 7:30am–6:30pm daily.



🌿 Bubang Wangtianshu Aerial Walkway

19 miles (30 km) N of Mengla. Open 8:30am–6pm daily. 📍

West to Myanmar

Western Xishuangbanna is less developed than the east, with rougher roads and sketchier transport. The many fascinating villages inhabited entirely by minorities, however, make the rigors of travel worthwhile.

Sprawling **Menghai** is unremarkable, but useful as a base for exploring villages and the countryside by bike. It's renowned for its *pu'er* tea and hosts a lively daily market.

The monastery at **Jingzhen** is known for its *busu*, an octagonal pavilion for delivering sermons. The main temple has beautiful decorative wall paintings. A bit farther on at **Mengzhe**, the hilltop **Manlei Si** is a bizarre-looking, frilly octagon built in the 18th century, which holds an important collection of *sutras* written on palm fiber. **Xiding**, an attractive Aini village, holds a large Thursday market.

Gelanghe is dominated by the Aini, whose women wear elaborate silver headdresses. A sub-group, the Ake, who wear their long hair in braids, live in a settlement just north of town on the way to the lake.

Heading south towards the border, **Menghun** is a sleepy town with a huge, bustling



Life of the Buddha wallpaintings, Jingzhen monastic complex



Manfeilong Ta, supposed to resemble emerging bamboo shoots

Sunday market, beginning at dawn and finished by noon. Most participants are Dai, but you will also see Aini and Bulang. There's also a rather run-down 19th-century monastery in town.

The border town of **Daluo** is the end of the line for westerners who are not allowed to travel to Myanmar, unless being met at the border as part of an official tour. The cross-border market, which attracts hill tribes and Burmese traders, makes the trip to this outpost worth it.

Damenglong to Bulang Shan

Damenglong, 44 miles (70 km) south of Jinghong, comes alive on market days and is a popular spot for trekking and temple hopping. On the way, it's worth stopping at **Gasa** to explore **Manguanglong Si**, a monastery with a lovely dragon-shaped stairway.

Manfeilong Ta is a half-hour walk north of Damenglong and its nine graceful spires make it the most impressive of the local temples. Built in 1204 to enshrine what is purported to be Buddha's footprint, it is popular with Buddhist pilgrims and is the center of festivities during the Tan Ta Festival in late October or early November. Another Buddhist monument, **Hei Ta**, is rather run-down, but set in a very pleasant location.

The **walk to Bulang Shan** is a simple, well-established three-day walk along the Nana Jiang and its tributaries, passing through dense jungle and villages of the Dai, Aini, Bulang, and Lahu minorities. Hire a guide and be careful not to stray off the path into

Myanmar. From Damenglong it's 6 miles (10 km) to the Dai village of **Manguanghan**, then a further 8 miles (13 km) to the Bulang village of **Manpo**, which makes a good place to spend the night. The next day is a 14-mile (22-km) tramp through heavy jungle on winding paths to **Weidong**, and the following day is an easy hike of 6 miles (10 km) along the road to Bulang Shan, which offers rudimentary accommodations and a daily bus to Menghai.

Tips for Explorers

Getting around: Cars with drivers are available in Jinghong. Local buses are frequent along main roads. Bikes can be hired from cafés in the tourist areas.

Trekking: Numerous trekking organizations are based in Jinghong. A guide is recommended for jungle treks. This is a sensitive border region – do not walk unguided near the Myanmar border. Take plenty of water, sunscreen, a raincoat, a hat, and a first aid kit.

Accommodation: Basic accommodation is available in most villages, sometimes in locals' homes.



5 Dali & Er Hai

大理 和 洱海湖

Sandwiched between Er Hai to the east and the Cang Shan range to the west, the picturesque little town of Dali draws innumerable visitors. The old town, surrounded by the remains of the Ming city walls, is characterized by cobbled lanes and stone houses. In the nearby countryside, numerous Bai villages offer a glimpse into traditional culture, and are particularly interesting on market days. Other activities include hiking in the mountains, and watching traditional cormorant fishing on Er Hai. The best time to visit is during the Spring Fair, when hundreds of Bai come for five days of bare-back horse racing, wrestling, dancing, and singing.



Looking north over the city's rooftops from Nancheng Men

Exploring Dali

Dali's old town center, just 1.5 sq miles (4 sq km) across, can be explored in a single morning. It takes about half an hour to walk from the South Gate to the North Gate across town. There is plenty to interest visitors, from small souvenir shops to teahouses and traditional masseurs. Crowds of shoppers and farmers also arrive here for the daily vegetable market. The best vantage point is at the top of Nancheng Men (South Gate), from where there are views to Er Hai and Cang Shan.

Huguo Lu & Fuxing Lu

Running east-west through the center of town, Huguo Lu, nicknamed Foreigners' Street, is full of guesthouses and cafés that serve pizzas and cappuccinos. Most of the old town's sights lie along the main north-south artery, Fuxing Lu. The Drum Tower, lying close to the

Dali Museum, once signalled the close of the city gates each evening. Farther north along Fuxing Lu, the square outside the library is a popular venue for a game of cards or dominoes. Still farther is the quiet Yu'er Park, full of fruit trees and ponds, while tucked away in the streets to its north is Dali's Catholic church, with a Tang-era tiled roof and painted gables.



The Dali Museum, set in picturesque grounds

Dali Museum

111 Fuxing Lu. **Tel** (0872) 267 0196.

Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

Just inside Nancheng Men, the Dali Museum was originally the mansion of the Qing governor, and later served as the headquarters of Du Wen Xiu, leader of the 1856–1873 Muslim Uprising. It is worth visiting for its tranquil courtyards, filled with bougainvillea and lantana. The huge bronze bell hanging outside in a pavilion came from the old Bell Tower. Inside, the most interesting relics are a collection of Buddhist figurines from the Nanzhao Kingdom (see p394), and statues of serving girls and an orchestra excavated from a Ming-dynasty tomb. A hall at the back houses copies of scroll paintings, including one depicting the founding of the Nanzhao Kingdom.

San Ta

1 mile (2 km) NW of Dali. **Tel** (0872)

244 9966.  [dalisanta.net](https://www.dalisanta.net)

The distinctive San Ta (Three Pagodas) that symbolize Dali stand within the monastery of Chongwen Si, which was destroyed during the Qing dynasty and rebuilt in 2005. A 20-minute walk or short bus ride north of town, the pagodas are best visited early. The 16-tiered, square-based **Qianxun Ta** is the tallest of the three at 230 ft (70 m), and is also the oldest, dating to around AD 800. Each tier is embellished with fine marble figures. Buddhist relics including *sutras* (scriptures), copper mirrors, and gold ornaments were found during a renovation in 1979,



The splendid San Ta just north of town

and are displayed in a museum behind the pagodas. The two smaller octagonal pagodas were built in the 11th century, and are 138 ft (42 m) high. As well as serving as reliquaries, they were built to appease the gods and thus gain protection against natural disasters.

The characters inscribed in front of the Qianxun Ta read “subdue forever mountains and rivers.”

Zhonghe Si

W of Dali. 

Situated an hour's brisk walk from town, Zhonghe Si can be reached by heading past the small bridge to the north of Dali into the cedar and eucalyptus woods at the foothills of Zhonghe Feng. From here, zigzag paths lead up the steep mountainside to the temple.



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

210 miles (350 km) NW of Kunming.  500,000.  49 Cangshan Lu, (0872) 219 5635.  Spring Fair (15th day of the 3rd lunar month – April or May).

Transport

 Xianguan Airport, 18 miles (30 km) from Dali.  to Xianguan, then 30 mins by bus to Dali. 

Originally built in the Ming era, the temple has been reconstructed and serves both Daoists and Buddhists. The views from here over the lake and town are superb. From here you can hike the spectacular 7-mile (11-km) Jade Belt trail to Gantong Si, or the 6-mile (9-km) hike along a stone path to **Wuwei Si**, where monks study *tai ji quan*. Visitors can stay the night before heading back.

Guanyin Si & Gantong Si

Approx 3 miles (5 km) S of Dali. Dedicated to the Buddhist Goddess of Compassion, Guanyin Si sits at the foot of Foding Shan. At the back of the temple, a 20-minute cablecar journey or a 2-hour hike will take you to Gantong Si. Once, Gantong Si was the largest shrine in the area. Today, despite only two partially restored halls surviving, the temple remains impressive. Between Gantong Si and Zhonghe Si is the midway station for the Xi Ma Tan cablecar, which runs from Dali Old Town to Xi Ma Tan (Horse-washing Pool), high up in the Cang Shan.



A bustling market at one of the many towns around Dali



A fisherman and his cormorants in Er Hai's jade waters, Dali

Er Hai

Open daily. 📍

Located 2 miles (3 km) east of Dali, Er Hai (Ear Lake), a symbol of natural fecundity to the Bai, is named after its shape. The 25-mile (40-km) long lake has numerous ferry services and is home to 50-odd species of fish. Any café in Dali can arrange a tour on the lake; most trips usually involve visits to small temples, or excursions to scenic spots on the eastern shore. Visitors can also accompany a cormorant fisherman (see p24) and watch the trained birds catch fish. A variety of tour boats, from big, virtual floating pagodas for large groups, to smaller craft, leave from Caicun on Er Hai's western shore.

Tours usually take in **Jinsuo Dao**, across the lake near its eastern shore. Once a summer retreat for Nanzhao royalty, it is now home to a fishing village. Farther north lies **Xia Putao**, a tiny rocky crag with a Buddhist temple.

At the southern tip of the lake, **Er Hai Park** was once a royal deer ranch during the Nanzhao Kingdom. A lush path leads up to a peak, which offers splendid views.

Surrounding Villages

Dotting the shore of Er Hai are several villages worth exploring, especially on market days. One



A Bai woman from Shaping

of the numerous minibuses, which congregate just outside Dali's North Gate, can easily be flagged down as they hop from village to village. Lying 12 miles (20 km) north of Dali, **Xizhou** was an important military outpost during the Nanzhao period. Today, it has about 90 significant Bai mansions with rooms arranged around a courtyard. Most lie northeast of the central square, and one of them has been converted into the pleasant Linden Centre hotel. A few miles northeast of Xizhou is **Zhoucheng**, the largest lakeside Bai village with several tie-dye cottage industries. Just north of here, **Shaping** is a

sleepy village that transforms into an indigenous metropolis every Monday, when it hosts a huge market. On sale are a

variety of local produce and livestock, besides delicious wild honey, condiments, and traditional Bai clothing. The scale, bustle, and color make this one of the great highlights of the area.

On the eastern side of the lake, **Wase** village is a maze of narrow back lanes. It has a simple government guesthouse and its own Monday market, which is less touristy than the one at Shaping. Boats return to Dali from **Haidong**, 6 miles (10 km) south of Shaping.

Shaxi

沙溪

60 miles (100 km) N of Dali. 🚗 from Dali or Lijiang via Jianchuan. 📍 to enter the village.

Tiny mud-brick Shaxi, a traditional Bai village set in the bowl of a river valley, is a relic of Yunnan's **old tea-horse road**. This is the trade route along which tea and other goods such as salt were once ferried between China and Tibet. The Chinese sought sturdy Tibetan ponies for military uses while the Tibetans wanted coarse *pu'er* tea from southern Yunnan, which was steamed into compressed "bricks" for the journey.

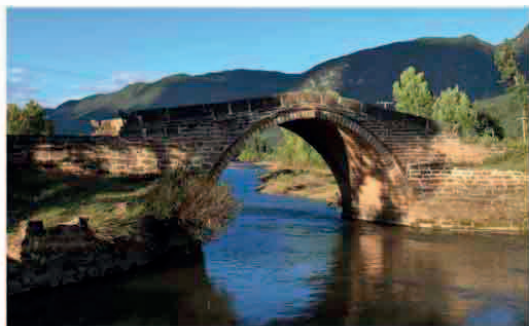
Shaxi's handful of lanes all lead to **Sideng**, the old town square, where **Xingjiao Temple** dates from 1451. Its famous Buddhist frescoes are protected by two fierce gate guardians. The village hosts a market each Friday, when the usually sedate village fills with the noise and bustle of farmers from the hills.

The Nanzhao Kingdom

In the 8th century, the Bai unified under a ruthless prince, Pileguo, who vanquished his rivals by inviting them to a banquet and setting fire to the tent. He then founded the Nanzhao Kingdom, with Dali as its capital. The city's strategic location, in a valley shielded by mountains, helped protect it against two attacks by invading Tang armies, and established its control over the southern Silk Road trade. At its zenith, the kingdom stretched across Southwest China and into Burma and parts of Vietnam. It survived until the 13th century, when the Great Mongol Kublai Khan founded the Yuan dynasty.



Nanzhao figurine



A historic bridge in Shaxi Valley

About 9 miles (15 km) from Shaxi, **Shibao Shan** is a wooded hillside that offers pleasant walks. Tucked among the pine trees is a series of caves with carvings dating from the Nanzhao Kingdom (*see opposite*).

7 Tengchong

腾冲

105 miles (168 km) W of Baoshan,

A thriving settlement during the Han era, Tengchong prospered from the Silk Road trade. Today a remote backwater, it has preserved more of its traditional wooden architecture than neighboring Baoshan. Set amidst jungle, volcanoes, and hot springs, Tengchong is also a major seismic zone, having experienced 70 earthquakes since records began in the 16th century.

In the north of town, on **Guanghua Lu**, stands the imposing British consulate established in 1899. A mix of Victorian and Chinese architecture, the restored structure has been converted into a museum. Along western Guanghua Lu is the main market, held every morning. Tengchong's most charismatic alleys run west off **Yinjiang Xi Lu**, where Burmese traders, distinctive in their sarongs and sandals, frequent the Burmese Teahouse. Most are involved in the gem and jade trade, but be cautious of their goods unless you are an expert. Just west of town, **Laifeng Shan Park** is a pine forest criss-crossed with paths. Near the top of the hill,

Laifeng Monastery is now a museum and holds exhibits on local history.

Laifeng Shan Park

Open 8am–7pm daily.

Environs: The sights out of town are best visited on a tour, which can be arranged by any large hotel in Tengchong.

Heshun, 2 miles (4 km) west of town, was founded in the Ming dynasty and is as pretty as a postcard. Funds from thousands of former residents now living abroad have kept the traditional courtyard houses, ornate pavilions, and gardens in an excellent state of repair. One of the finest buildings is the wooden library, which was built in 1928.

As a result of its fragile fault-lines, the entire region is dotted with volcanoes, dry lava beds, geysers, and hot springs. The most impressive of the 100-odd small volcanoes lie 12 miles (20 km) north of town. **Dakong Shan** is 820-ft (250-m) high, and

beside it is the smaller **Heikong Shan**, only 262 ft (80 m) high, but over 328 ft (100 m) deep. Steps cut into the rock lead into the crater. Just 7 miles (12 km) southwest of Tongcheng, **Rehai** or “Hot Sea” is an area of geo-thermal springs, popular among the Chinese who throng here for a bath in the mineral-rich water.

Dakong & Heikong Shan

Open daily.

Rehai

Open 24 hr daily.

8 Ruili

瑞丽

115 miles (185 km) SW of Tengchong.

from Kunming.

Ruili, on the Myanmar border, is in every way a frontier town – slightly exotic, with a touch of the illicit. Although much Burmese heroin passes through here, and gambling and prostitution are rife, the town should not necessarily be avoided as the presence of Burmese traders, and Dai and Jingpo minorities make it one of the most intriguing places in southwest China. An interesting jade and gem market lies in the north of town, parallel to **Nanmao Jie**. The town really comes to life at night, when gambling and food stalls are set up in the back streets.

Numerous hotels advertise tours into Myanmar, often to watch transvestite shows, but the frontier is closed to all foreign visitors, except those being met by Burmese officials for a pre-arranged tour.



Lush Tengchong countryside, with hills in the background

● Street-by-Street: Lijiang

丽江

Set in a picturesque valley with a stunning mountain backdrop, Lijiang's Old Town, Dayan, is a labyrinth of cobbled alleys lined with wooden houses, cafés, and the workshops of traditional craftsmen. Home to the Naxi people, Dayan is one of the most pleasant urban scenes in China. Lijiang came to international attention in 1996 when an earthquake killed over 300 people and devastated the city. Money poured into Dayan's relatively sensitive reconstruction, and numerous hotels as well as an airport were built. Lijiang has been a UNESCO World Heritage Site since 1999.



A typical narrow street in the center of the Old Town



Water Wheels

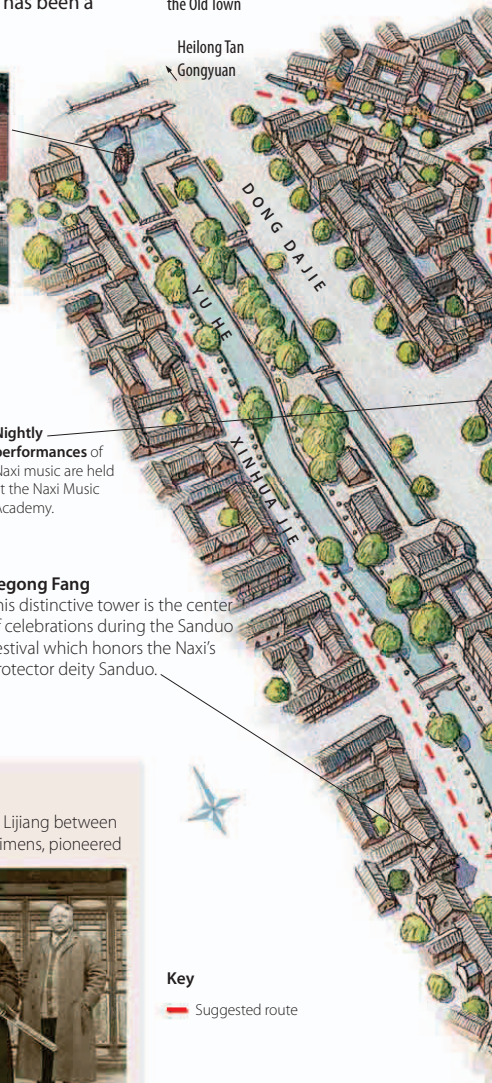
Heralding the entrance to the Old Town, these water wheels are ornamental. Lijiang once had numerous mills.



Nightly performances of Naxi music are held at the Naxi Music Academy.

Kegong Fang

This distinctive tower is the center of celebrations during the Sanduo Festival which honors the Naxi's protector deity Sanduo.



Key

— Suggested route

0 meters 100
0 yards 100

Joseph Rock

An eccentric Austrian botanist, Joseph Rock lived in Lijiang between 1922 and 1949. He gathered over 80,000 plant specimens, pioneered the use of photography in the field, and wrote reports for *National Geographic*. He was a defender of Naxi culture and compiled the first dictionary of the language. His expedition entourage was huge, and included cooks, hundreds of mercenaries, and servants to carry such dubious necessities as his gramophone, gold dinner service, and collapsible bathtub.

Joseph Rock (right) with the Prince of Choni, 1925





View of the rooftops of Dayan from Wangu Lou

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

316 miles (527 km) NW of Kunming. 📍 1,210,000. 📅
Bangbang Festival (15th day of 1st lunar month), Sanduo Festival (8th day of 2nd & 8th lunar month), Horse Fair (7th lunar month). 📞 Lijiang Tourism, Xianggelila Dadao, Lifang Plaza, (0888) 512 3432. 📍 to Dayan.

Transport

🚌 South Bus Station and North Bus Station.



The canals are helpful if you get lost. Walk against the current to head towards the water wheels.



★ Mishi Xiang

With a canal bubbling beside it, this is one of Dayan's most charming streets. Locals stop for a drink from the well here, outside the Blue Page Vegetarian restaurant.

Old Town Center

The old town is a cobweb of narrow cobblel alleys, criss-crossed with canals, and free of traffic. It's extremely pretty, and very popular. If you want to escape the crowds head off into the alleys away from the major tourist routes, where local people still live.



★ Sifang Jie

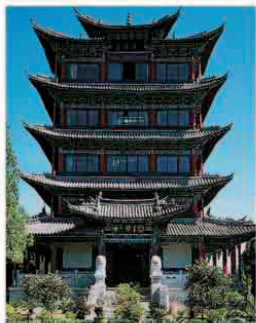
Though it's always busy with tourists, Market Square is still at the heart of Lijiang. Naxi gather here to play cards and chat. Local men who enjoy falconry often display their hawks. Morning is the best time to visit.

Yu He runs south from Hailong Tan (Black Dragon Pool), north of Dayan.

Mu Fu
Wangu Lou

Exploring Lijiang and Beyond

Shizi Shan (Lion Hill) divides the Old Town (Dayan) from the New Town, where most hotels and other amenities can be found. There are a few sights just south of Dayan, on Shizi Shan, and clustered around Heilong Tan (Black Dragon Pool), north of Dayan. The countryside surrounding Lijiang is dotted with Naxi hamlets, many of which have interesting temples. Some of these can be reached by bicycle; otherwise by a short bus trip.



Wangu Lou, a perfect vantage point for viewing Dayan

Wangu Lou

Shizi Shan. **Open** 7:30am–7pm daily.



Standing at the highest point in Lijiang, this 108-ft (33-m) pavilion is accessible from either the old town or from Minzu Lu on the west side of the hill. A four-story edifice with huge wooden pillars, it offers superb views overlooking the old town.

Mu Fu

SW of the Old Town. **Open** daily.

The Mu were Lijiang's ruling family up to 1723 and the mansion they built for themselves at the south end of the Old Town contained over 100 buildings. Destroyed by the Qing, the residence was rebuilt after the earthquake on the ruins of traditional housing in Han, Naxi, Bai, and Tibetan architectural styles.

Heilong Tan Gongyuan

Xin Daijie. **Open** 7:30am–6pm daily.

included in adm to Lijiang Old Town. On the northern edge of town, Black Dragon Pool Park is stunningly picturesque with the elegant Deyue Lou placed at the center of a carp-filled pool, and backdropped by the peak of Yulong Xue Shan (Jade Dragon

Snow Mountain). The **Dongba Research Institute**, in the southwest corner of the park, is an academic institution for the preservation of Naxi culture – there are about thirty dongba shamans here, studying and translating Naxi religious texts. In the north of the park stands a set of halls transported during the 1970s from what was once Lijiang's biggest monastery, **Fuguo Si**. The grandest is the 66-ft (20-m), triple-roofed Wufeng Lou (Five Phoenix Hall), built in 1601. The **Museum of Naxi Culture**, by the park's north gate, holds exhibitions on Naxi dress and customs.

Environs: Baisha, a sleepy village 6 miles (10 km) north of Lijiang, was, until Kublai Khan's invasion, the capital of the Naxi Kingdom. Today there's little evidence of its past importance except for two grand temples. The first, at the village entrance, stands neglected, but the second, the Liuli, just north of it, holds some well-preserved 14th-century frescoes that exhibit a promiscuous

pantheism. Baisha is home to the Daoist physician Dr Ho, made famous by travel writer Bruce Chatwin. He will doubtless track you down and offer his tonic herb tea in exchange for a small donation.

Beiyue Si in the village of Yulong, a couple of miles north of Baisha, is dedicated to the protector deity Sanduo, depicted with a white hat and spear. The temple has been managed by the same family for almost 1,000 years.

Built in 1756, the small lamasery **Yufeng Si** is 8 miles (13 km) northwest of Lijiang at the foot of Snow Mountain. A huge ancient camellia tree produces thousands of flowers each spring and is cared for with impressive dedication by the monks. A Naxi orchestra often practice here in the afternoon.

The magnificent mountain range **Yulong Xue Shan** dominates the countryside surrounding Lijiang. To access this mountain that was first scaled in the 1960s, you'll need to either join an organized tour or hire a taxi. From the entrance of the main scenic area

there are two chairlifts to points above the snow line. The first takes you to the gruesomely named Love Suicide Hill; the second, Asia's highest, takes you 14,750 ft (4,506 m) up to a ridge with amazing views of glaciers. Watch out for altitude sickness, and don't bother if it's foggy.



Red chilies drying



The jagged peaks of Yulong Xue Shan (Jade Dragon Snow Mountain)

The Naxi

The Naxi minority, numbering about 278,000, live in Sichuan and Yunnan, with Lijiang as their spiritual capital. Descended from Tibetan nomads, the Naxi lived until recently in matriarchal families, though local rulers were always male. There are strong matriarchal influences throughout Naxi society and in particular in the Naxi language. For example, nouns become superlative when the word “female” is added and diminutive with the addition of “male.” A “female stone,” therefore, is a boulder; a “male stone” a pebble. The script, called Dongba, consists of about 1,400 pictograms and is the only hieroglyphic writing system still in use. The Naxi religion, also called Dongba, is polytheistic, and mixes elements of Daoism and Tibetan Lamaism with older animist beliefs. The main Naxi deity is Sanduo, a protector war god depicted in white, carrying a white spear and riding a white horse. He is celebrated twice a year with the sacrifice of a goat and, of course, much singing and dancing.

Naxi society's matriarchal nature results in the women controlling businesses, but also doing most of the work. Inheritance passes through the female line to the eldest daughter. Naxi men are expected to while away their time as gardeners or musicians.



Dongba sorcerers, are invited to chant scriptures at weddings, funerals, on New Year Day, and at festivals. A few of these shaman survived the purges of the Cultural Revolution and are training a new generation in ancient Naxi ritual.

Traditional shawls have an upper blue segment which represents night, a lower sheepskin band to represent daylight, and small circles recalling the stars. Two circles on the shoulder areas depict the eyes of a frog, an ancient Naxi deity.



Naxi music is unique – a combination of Daoist rite, Confucian ceremony, and literary lyrics, played on venerable instruments such as the flute, reed pipes, lute, and zither.



This page of pictographic Dongba script is from the Naxi manuscript “Sacrifices to the High Deity.” It is one of numerous Dongba documents translated by Joseph Rock (see p396).

10 Tiger Leaping Gorge

虎跳峡

This popular trek follows the roaring Jinsha Jiang's route through one of China's deepest gorges, supposedly named after a tiger escaped hunters by leaping it at its narrowest point. With peaks on either side reaching an average of 13,000 ft (4,000 m), the gorge makes for a thrilling trek. The 18-mile (30-km) trail along the ridge is well marked, though at times arduous, and passes through rustic hamlets which allow visitors to rest up amid beautiful countryside. The walk can easily be completed in two days, but many hikers decide to stay an extra night. If time is tight, daylong bus tours from Lijiang head into the gorge along the lower road, which runs the length of the gorge.



Bendiwan

A tiny village with superb views, Bendiwan has numerous guesthouses and is a convenient place to overnight 10 miles (16 km) from Qiaotou.



★ Views of the Gorge

Starting at the Qiaotou end of the gorge provides magnificent views right from the start. The peaks of Jade Dragon Snow Mountain rise far above Jinsha Jiang, the River of Golden Sands.



The 24 Bends

When coming from Qiaotou, the 24 Bends are the toughest part of the trail and consist of rather more than 24 gruelling switchbacks. Some hire horses at Nuoyu for this part of the trip.



KEY

- ① Relatively new lower road
- ② A short diversion down a steep, winding trail leads to Longdong Waterfall.
- ③ Original ferry crossing.
- ④ The "new" ferry crossing is sometimes closed. Check at Walnut Grove or Daju before departing.
- ⑤ Follow the path down to the Jinsha Jiang to judge for yourself whether any animal could have made this jump.




Farms at Nuoyu


The lovely village of Nuoyu is just two hours from Qiaotou. A few guesthouses here offer dorm beds and meals, as well as horses.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

50 miles (80 km) NW of Lijiang.
 for access to the gorge, and ferry crossing.

Transport

 from Lijiang to either Daju or Qiaotou; last bus from Daju to Lijiang at 1:30pm.



Walking the Gorge

The upper trail follows the peaks between Qiaotou and Daju, either of which can be used as a starting point. Both Bendiwan and Walnut Grove are about a day's walk from either end, so make good spots to overnight. Don't attempt the trek on your own, or in heavy rain or thick mist. Landslides do occur in the area so be wary, especially after the rains in July or August.



★ Walnut Grove




This quiet village of terraced fields, walnut trees, and stone and timber houses is 14 miles (23 km) from Qiaotou and a great place to rest up. The views of the gorge's narrowest section are not to be missed.



Traditional Tibetan buildings at Ganden Sumtseling Gomba

11 Zhongdian

中甸

105 miles (175 km) NW of Lijiang. 
 3 to 5 hrs from Lijiang.  105 Kangzhu Dadao, (0887) 822 6951.

Touted as the true Shangri-la (the city's name was officially changed to Xianggelila in 2002), Zhongdian is the capital of Diqing Tibetan Autonomous Region and worth visiting if you're not able to visit Tibet. The ramshackle town filled with blocky architecture does not quite live up to the paradise billing, but there is an interesting section of traditional Tibetan buildings to the south of town. Just north is the largest Tibetan monastery in the Southwest, Ganden Sumtseling Gomba (Songzanlin Si), home to over 600 monks. It was built by the fifth Dalai Lama almost 400 years ago, destroyed during the Cultural Revolution, and re-opened in 1981. There are several Tibetan villages and two hotels inside the monastery complex.

Enviorns

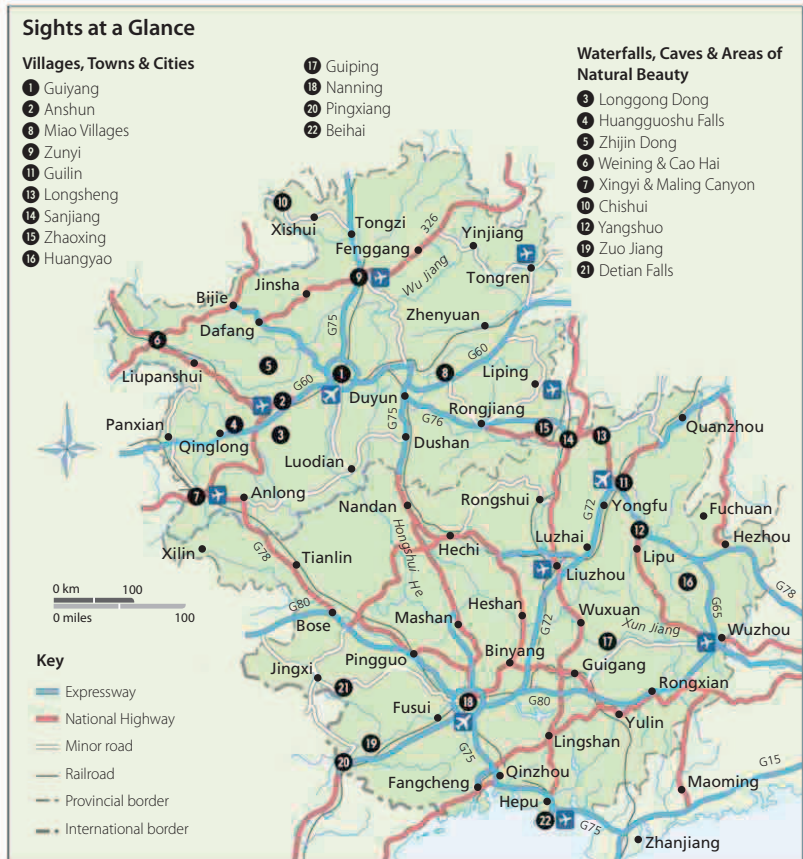
There are plenty of possible trips out into the countryside – geographically, part of the Tibetan plateau – to **Baishui Tai**, for example, a set of limestone terraces, or to **Bita Hai**, an emerald lake and home to many endangered species. These trips are best arranged with local agencies, who can also arrange overland journeys through the beautiful and remote countryside between here and Sichuan.



GUIZHOU & GUANGXI

Guizhou and Guangxi share a dramatic mountainous landscape of weathered limestone (karst) pinnacles, which hide some of China's largest cave systems. Despite the abundant rainfall, the region possesses poor soil, which discouraged Han settlement until the late Ming period. As a result, the area saw little development, and many indigenous groups, especially the Miao and Dong, have retained their traditional customs, including several festivals. Guangxi is also home to the Zhuang, China's largest ethnic minority, and became the Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region in 1958.

Still among China's least developed regions, Guizhou and Guangxi do have a few sights that are well-visited by tourists and easily accessible. The city of Guilin in eastern Guangxi is famous for the Li River cruise, which passes through astonishing karst landscape, and ends at the backpacker haven of Yangshuo. Kaili, a convenient base for exploring sociable Miao villages, is becoming more accessible and popular with tourists. For determined travelers with time on their hands, long bus journeys are rewarded with beautiful Detian Falls surrounded by karst hills, stunning scenery near the Vietnamese border, the wooden Dong villages around Zhaoxing, and the calm waters of bird sanctuary Cao Hai.



Guiyang

贵阳

Founded during the Han era, Guiyang remained a minor provincial center until it became the capital of Guizhou in the early 20th century. The city is situated in a valley along the little Nanming River, protected from the unlucky northern direction by high hills. Guiyang means “Precious Sun,” which reflects the general Chinese opinion of the province’s damp climate. An easy-going place, Guiyang is a steadily modernizing city surrounded by parklands, with a couple of historic relics dotted among its tower blocks. The Huaxi District to its south includes rural parks, a few villages inhabited by the Bouyi minority (*see p406*), and a well-preserved Ming-era town.



Traditional temple buildings in Cuiwei Yuan

📍 Jiaxiu Lou & Cuiwei Yuan

2 Cuiwei Xian Nanming Lu.

Open daily.

The small Jiaxiu Pavilion was constructed in 1598 on a tortoise-shaped rock jutting out of Nanming He. It was built as an inspirational meeting place for scholars studying for the imperial civil service examinations. The pavilion is now a teahouse decorated with antique poetry scrolls. Its upper floor offers views of Guiyang’s modern downtown district. The 95-ft (29-m) high, three-storied wooden tower is connected to the banks by the arched, Fuyu Qiao (Floating Jade Bridge), made of solid stone. On the bridge’s southern side, adjacent to Jiaxiu Lou, Cuiwei Garden was originally part of a temple dedicated to Guanyin, the Buddhist Goddess of Compassion. It was founded around 1500, although all that remain today are late Qing-era buildings.

📍 Qianming Si, Jue Yuan, & Wenchang Ge

City center, N of the river.

Open daily. 📷

A few examples of Guiyang’s classic architecture survive around the city center. The most interesting is Qianming Si, located on Yangming Lane on the north bank of the river. Its main point of interest is the street market outside, selling bonsai trees, pets, fishing gear, and Cultural Revolution memorabilia. Jue Yuan on



Vermilion-red joss sticks & trinkets on sale outside Qianming Si



Jiaxiu Lou & the arched Fuyu Qiao over Nanming He

Fushui Nan Lu is another temple, whose main attraction is the excellent vegetarian restaurant out front, which uses generous quantities of chilies to spice up the tofu, vegetable, and gluten dishes. Just off Wengchang Bei Lu, Wenchang Ge features an elegant three-story tower with flared and pointed eaves built between 1609 and 1669. It was originally part of the east city wall.

📍 Provincial Museum

168 Beijing Lu. Tel (0851) 682 2214.

Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

The second floor of this dusty building houses an interesting collection of local finds, though there are few captions. The pride of the collection is a 3-ft (1-m) high Han-era bronze horse and chariot, and some glazed clay figurines from a Ming tomb near Zunyi. A document on one wall refers to the 19th-century Miao Uprisings, a series of conflicts against increased taxation in Guizhou. Ethnological displays include silverware, batiks, and embroideries from Guizhou’s many minorities.



Stone steps leading up a thickly forested hill, Qianling Shan Park

Qianling Shan Park

187 Zaoshan Lu. **Open** daily. This scenic park comprises an unexpected patch of forested hills to the north of the city. A flagstoned path leads uphill past several shrines, trees hung with red ribbons, and groups of monkeys to **Hongfu Si**, the main attraction. Entry to the temple is past a 33-ft (10-m) marble stupa and a tiled screen depicting the infant Buddha being washed by nine colorful dragons. The temple was originally founded in 1672, although its present buildings were constructed later, including a Luohan Hall with several hundred painted statues of Buddhist saints. On the hilltop above, Kanzhu Pavilion offers fine views of the city.

Huaxi District

11 miles (17 km) S of Guiyang. 203. The small town of Huaxi is the location of Guizhou University and the attractive Huaxi Park, a 2-sq-mile (5-sq-km) stretch of woodland,

river, and ornamental gardens. A handful of Bouyi villages lie close by, including **Zhenshan**, built entirely in stone. The village is known for its Ground Opera, derived from local animistic rituals, where dancers wear stylized wooden masks.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical information

610 miles (981 km) NW of Guangzhou. 3,050,000.

Floor 7, Longquan Building, 1 Hequan Lu, (0851) 690 1575.

Transport

Longdong Bao Airport.

CAAC (buses to airport), East Bus Station, Jinyang Bus Station.

Just 8 miles (12 km) to the south is **Qingyan**, a garrison outpost founded in 1373. Its 33-ft (10-m) high city walls, dating to the 18th century, are still intact, along with watchtowers, stone gateways and 17 temples.

Dog Meat

One thing to look out for in Guizhou is the locals' fondness for eating dog meat, a habit shared by people in parts of Guangxi and other

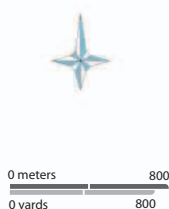
Southeast Asian countries. Rather like chilies, dog meat is considered "warming" in Chinese medicine, and also a remedy for male impotence. The meat is often served as a hot pot. However, visitors shouldn't worry about being served dog meat by accident, since restaurants specializing in such dishes usually make it very clear by displaying the carcasses outside their establishments.



Characters for "dog meat" on a restaurant sign

Guiyang City Center

- ① Jiaxiu Lou
- ② Cuiwei Yuan
- ③ Qianming Si
- ④ Jue Yuan
- ⑤ Wenchang Ge
- ⑥ Provincial Museum
- ⑦ Qianling Shan Park






Traditional houses of the Bouyi community near Anshun

2 Anshun

安顺

62 miles (100 km) SW of Guiyang. 



Founded as a garrison town in the 13th century, Anshun grew into a prosperous trading post, mainly because of its strategic position along the overland trade routes between central and southwestern China. Today's city survives on tourism, subsistence farming, and its traditional batik industry, which capitalizes on the highly developed textile skills of the local Bouyi minority. The Bouyi number around 3 million and live throughout western Guizhou. A writing system for the Bouyi language was devised in the 1950s and is used to record their rich folk literature.

Surrounded by karst hills, Anshun has one of Guizhou's most scenic landscapes, despite

the frequent gusts of coal dust from nearby mines. It also has numerous street markets, and offers easy access to several of the surrounding traditional villages. The busy town center lies at the intersection of Nanhua Lu and Tashan Lu. The **Bai Ta** (White Pagoda), one of Anshun's two surviving Ming structures, overlooks the center from Xixiu Hill. The other, **Wen Miao**, is a Confucian temple and lies in the town's northeastern backstreets. The 600-year-old temple was once embellished with superb stone carvings. Today, what survives are its front pillars covered in beautiful spiraling dragons and considered to be the finest in the country.

The area around the city center bustles with rural commerce. Rows and rows of





Fruit sellers at the Sunday market, Anshun

shops selling beautiful batik products, including wall hangings and colorful banners, are displayed outside the **Batik Factory** on Zhonghua Nan Lu.

Environs: Lying about 9 miles (15 km) east of Anshun, **Yunjiu Shan** is a fortified village, founded by Ming-dynasty troops. It contains a scattering of old structures, including the elegant **Qiyuan Qiao**, a seven-arch bridge. **Tiantai Shan**, 24 miles (40 km) northeast of town, is a 1,300-ft (400-m) hill with a cluster of thickly forested crags, whose summit is crowned by a Buddhist temple dating from 1616. Another 18 miles (30 km) southwest of Anshun, **Zhenning County** has a concentration of traditional Bouyi villages. The houses are built of skillfully laid drystone walls, with roofs tiled in hand-cut slates, overlapping like fish scales. The village of **Shishao**, built almost entirely in stone, is known for its Ground Opera, a regional variation of traditional Han opera, brought here by soldiers from Nanjing during the Ming era.

3 Longgong Dong

龙宫洞

17 miles (27 km) SW of Anshun.  from Anshun. **Open** 8am–6pm daily. 

Longgong Dong (Dragon Palace Caves) comprise a 9-mile (15-km) long complex of 90 or



A strikingly designed, contemporary batik, filled out in red and orange

Anshun Batik

Several ethnic groups across southwestern China have been traditionally involved in creating batik. For almost 1,000 years, the Bouyi around Anshun have been using batik as a background to embroidery on clothing, and since the establishment of a factory in Anshun in the 1950s, have come to monopolize the indigenous textile market. The designs, which were originally of abstract plants and animals, are drawn with wax on cloth. The cloth is then dyed in indigo before being boiled to remove all traces of the wax, leaving the pattern in white on a blue background. The earlier monochromatic batiks have now given way to multi-colored, mass-produced designs, which include stylized representations of zodiac animals, scenes from Bouyi legends, and mythical creatures. Today, Anshun's batik is in great demand across China.



Tour boats used to explore the watery Longgong Dong

more caves, connected by an underground river. Only six caves, covering 2,800 ft (854 m), are open to exploration, accessed by boat through the flooded entrance, Tian Chi (Heaven's Pool), which is partially concealed by a 130-ft (40-m) high waterfall. Inside, the largest cavern is about 260-ft (80-m) high. The caves are filled with colorfully lit stalactites and stalagmites, and numerous oddly shaped rock formations. During the rainy season, the boat ride ends at **Tiger Lair**, a broad platform from where visitors hike out of the caves and walk back to the entrance through an attractive stone forest of weathered karst spikes.

4 Huangguoshu Falls

黄果树瀑布

31 miles (50 km) SW of Anshun. 🚗

Open 7am–6pm daily. 📞

🌐 hgscn.com

Immensely popular in China, the Huangguoshu Da Pubu (Yellow Fruit Tree Falls) on the Sanche River rise to a height of 223 ft (68 m). During the summer rains in June and July the river becomes a torrent, and the 266-ft (81-m) broad curtain of water creates an awesome spectacle as it hits the Rhinoceros Pool below. It does not, however, rank as China's largest cataract; in fact, during drier months, its flow shrinks to a pretty network of streams pouring over the rock face. Low water levels during this time of the year make it possible

to wade across the streams. Staircases and bridges connect viewing areas opposite the falls. **Shuilian Dong**, a 440-ft (134-m) long tunnel, runs behind the falls, where natural "windows" look out through the curtain of water. Visitors should be prepared to get wet.

Of the remaining dozen or so water features along the Sanche, the pick of the crop lies upstream at **Doupotang Falls**, which though only a quarter of the height of Huangguoshu, are a staggering 340-ft (105-m) wide. About 3 miles (5 km) downstream at **Tianxing** are a series of small caves, some karst spires rising 66 ft (20 m), and the Yinlianzhuitan (Silver Chain Cascades), where water tumbles into a network of streams between rocky islets.



The Huangguoshu Falls, spectacular even during drier periods

5 Zhijin Dong

织金洞

81 miles (130 km) N of Anshun. Tel (0857) 781 2015. 🚗 from Anshun and Guiyang, via Zhijin town. Taxis also available. 📞 compulsory. Open daily. 🌐 gzjd.com/yy.asp

Extending for over 7 miles (12 km) into limestone hills, these 492-ft (150-m) high caves are ranked as the largest in China, and are also among the biggest in the world. They are located 16 miles (25 km) northeast of old, but rather unattractive, Zhijin town, which has a few guesthouses. Paths and stairways link the caves between fossilized waterfalls and elephantine stalactites and stalagmites. The imposing rock formations have each been given descriptive names, such as "Puxian Riding the Elephant," "Goddess and Snake," and the aptly named and impressive "Old Woman and Daughter-in-Law."

The largest cavern, **Guanghan Dong** is about 1,312-ft (400-m) long. It contains the immensely elegant, 56-ft (17-m) stalagmite, known as the "Silver Rain Tree." The obligatory guided tour, which lasts for more than 2 hours, requires a minimum of 10 people, so smaller groups may have to wait for more sightseers to arrive.



Punting on Cao Hai, with low mountains on the horizon

④ Weining & Cao Hai

威宁 / 草海

200 miles (320 km) W of Guiyang. 🚗
to Weining, or to Liupanshui, then bus.
📺 📺 Yi Torch Festival (Jun/Jul).

A destitute area with coal mining as the main industry, western Guizhou has a rugged mountain landscape of karst hills and jungle. In the far west, bordering Yunnan, is the 7,200-ft (2,195-m) high Weining Plateau, whose main town is the small, chaotic, and ugly Weining, inhabited by Hui, Yi, and Da Hua Miao. The Muslim Hui, scattered throughout China, are descendants of Arab and Persian traders who came to China along the Silk Road during the Tang and Yuan dynasties. The Yi community number around 7.7 million and are spread through southwestern China. Their torch festival is a major annual event featuring archery contests, bonfires, and wrestling. The Da Hua Miao (see pp412–13) differ from the Miao near Kaili in both language and embroidery patterns, which feature the stylized flower motif, inspired by their name Da Hua, meaning “Big Flower.”

Immediately southwest of Weining is Cao Hai, known throughout China as one of the prominent spots for bird-watching. The 17-sq mile (45-sq km) nature reserve was set up in 1992. The shallow, blue, oval-shaped lake is ringed with low mountains and fringed with

reedbeds that attract tens of thousands of wintering birds between November and March. Its most important annual visitors include a large flock of 400 endangered black-necked cranes, along with Eurasian cranes, barheaded geese, and several duck species.

It is possible to observe the abundant birdlife by either walking around the shore where the cranes congregate, or hiring a punt to approach flocks of wild fowl out on the lake. Boats can also be rented for a tour of the lake.

⑦ Xingyi & Maling Canyon

兴义 和 马岭河峡谷

190 miles (305 km) SW of Guiyang. 🚗
to Xingyi. Maling Canyon: White-water rafting arranged by hotels. 📺

In the far southwestern corner of Guizhou, the small and remote market town of Xingyi is surrounded by low, rounded limestone hills and flat paddy fields. Northeast of Xingyi, just outside the suburbs, lies the 9-mile (15-km) long slash of Maling Canyon. About 330-ft (100-m) deep in places, the canyon has been carved by a fast-flowing river. Ground-level springs gush down mossy cliffs in miniature waterfalls. The river's currents and cataracts make for exciting white-water rafting trips from Maling's upper section, 16 miles (25 km) northeast of town. The canyon's lower section features several walking tracks and bridges which zigzag down to the water level and then follow the river, sometimes through natural tunnels, for some distance upstream.



River running through the lower section of Maling Canyon

Chinese Cranes

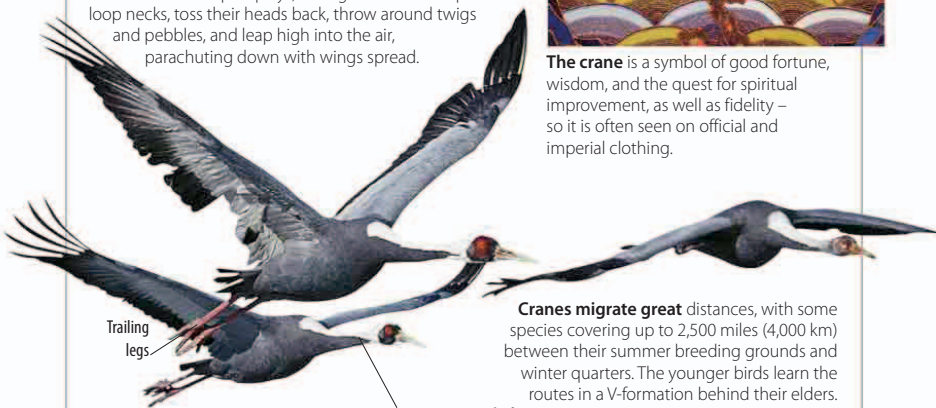
The lakes and marshes of China are vital to the survival of eight of the world's 15 species of crane, many of which are highly endangered. Most breed in northern China, in particular at Zhalong Nature Reserve in Heilongjiang province. All are migratory, but several species – including the tropical sarus and China's sole endemic variety, the black-necked crane – occur only in the central and south-western parts of the country. Aside from being naturally elegant birds, cranes have spectacular mating "dances," where they energetically leap and flap around to attract their lifelong partners. As a result of this display, the crane is a Chinese symbol of fidelity and longevity. The Daoist god of longevity, Shou Lao (also known as Shao Xing), is often depicted riding a crane.



Courting cranes pair for life. They cement the bond with elaborate courtship displays, during which the couple loop necks, toss their heads back, throw around twigs and pebbles, and leap high into the air, parachuting down with wings spread.



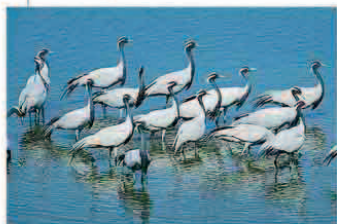
The crane is a symbol of good fortune, wisdom, and the quest for spiritual improvement, as well as fidelity – so it is often seen on official and imperial clothing.



Trailing
legs

Cranes migrate great distances, with some species covering up to 2,500 miles (4,000 km) between their summer breeding grounds and winter quarters. The younger birds learn the routes in a V-formation behind their elders.

Cruising speed of up to 44 miles per hour (70 km/h)



Demoiselle cranes are gregarious and have been recorded in flocks several thousand strong. Their diet is mostly frogs, fish, and insects, though they can also eat grain and carrion.

Common cranes are a very vocal species, and their deep booms, loud honks, and raucous croaks are produced by a specially adapted windpipe or trachea.







Miao Festivals and Crafts

The Miao people, or Hmong as they call themselves, believe they originated on the Himalayan plateau, migrating over the last few thousand years to their current homelands in southwestern China, Laos, Cambodia, Vietnam, and Myanmar. As Miao communities tend to exist in remote mountainous areas, each village has developed its own customs, and can be identified by their distinct ornamentation, such as the fine silverwork and embroidery made and worn by unmarried girls. These are displayed at the many Miao social festivals where mass dancing is featured.



Miao Communities of Asia

■ Miao population

Huge horns adorn these fabulous headdresses.

Miao People in the Kaili area call themselves Hei Miao, or Black Hmong, irrespective of their colorful clothing, which identifies the wearer's village or region. This woman is from the Leigong Shan area.



Da Hua Miao, or Big Flower Miao, from western Guizhou, wear wax-resist (batik) dyed skirts, and for festivals, bright red headgear.



This Gejia headpiece with orange tassels shows that this Gejia girl is unmarried. These people's designs are unusual in that they embellish their batik work with embroidery.



The Changjiao, or Long-horned, Miao of western Guizhou bundle several pounds of their own and ancestors' hair around horn-like headpieces for festivals.



Sisters' Meal Festival

Amid three days of drinking and dancing at this important festival, teenage girls choose their husbands. The man offers a packet of sticky rice; she returns it with two chopsticks buried inside if she agrees, or chilies if she refuses.





Embroidery is an integral Miao skill, and girls learn it from an early age. They create elaborate panels for sewing on to their clothes. The finer the design, the better a girl's marriage prospects.



This **jacket** is typical of dark geometric Gejia pieces. It is heavily embroidered and incorporates batik work of abstract buffalo and plant motifs.



Elaborate silverwork, including headpieces, breast-plates, and necklaces, are collected by families of Hei Miao girls from the time they are born.

Miao silverwork ranges from simple earrings to twisted, weighty necklace chains and fantastic headpieces with bells, horns, and animal figurines.



Dragon-boat races are held in the Kaili region at least twice a year, celebrating a local victory over invading Chinese armies. Villages send a team of rowers and a long, narrow boat with carved wooden dragon-head prows.



Two buffalo going head-to-head is a feature of Miao festivals, but buffalo are cherished creatures, and there is usually no bloodshed.

Traditional long pleated skirt

Only men play the lusheng, usually at festivals. This instrument is made from a gourd with a mouthpiece and a dozen or so bamboo pipes. It produces a nasal humming sound.



8 Miao Villages

凯里苗寨

China's Miao (*see pp412–13*) look to the area around Kaili and the ancient town of Zhenyuan as their homeland. In between, the terrain rises to rough hills, planted with pine trees and split by river valleys. A few villages maintain traditional wooden houses and cobbled streets; others are not so pretty, but host large festivals. Markets come close to a festival atmosphere and operate on a five-day cycle. Numerous buses run from Kaili, but to reach remoter places, hiring a taxi – or hiking – is necessary.






The traditional village of Langde tucked into a steep valley

Kaili

105 miles (170 km) E of Guiyang.
 1 Yingpanpo Hotel, 53 Yingpan Dong Lu, (0855) 822 2506.

Kaili is a large town of busy streets and unremarkable architecture. Back-street markets add a bit of color, and there's also a dusty **Minorities Museum**, displaying local silver and embroidery. Hilltop Dage Park is crowned by a wooden pagoda, unusual in its Daoist iconography and statues ritualistically smeared with bloody chicken feathers.

 **Minorities Museum**
 5 Guangchang Lu.  daily. 

Langde & Xijiang

This route includes the most accessible traditional villages covered by buses from Kaili. Possible as a day-trip if you hire a taxi, otherwise, plan to overnight at Xijiang.

Langde is an easy 20-minute walk from the main road. It is entirely traditional, with 50 wooden houses knotted into

a fold in the hillside. At Langde's center is a pond and a dancing ground cobbled in concentric rings around a wooden pole adorned with buffalo horns and painted dragons.

Lei Shan is a down-at-heel collection of concrete buildings at the foot of **Leigong Shan** (7,150 feet, 2,178 m). Some of the region's remotest villages are found on the mountain and

it's possible to organize hiking trips between them. From Lei Shan, it's another 18 miles (30 km) on a good road to **Xijiang**, the largest Miao village at around 1,200 wooden homes. The best times to visit are during the autumn New Rice Tasting Festival, or Miao New Year celebrations.

Eastern Route

There are several buses daily from Kaili via Taijiang and Shidong through to Zhenyuan. Both towns host major festivals, with extra transport during events. Each can be done as a daytrip, but Taijiang does have several hotels, and there are a few basic guesthouses in Shidong.

Taijiang is an untidy market town 34 miles (55 km) from Kaili. It transforms during Sisters' Meal Festival, when thousands of villagers descend to watch Miao girls choose their husbands. At other times, the old village of **Fanpai** is a more photogenic place to spend a day.

Shidong is a partially wooden riverside village of half a dozen lanes. You can shop for beautifully designed silverwork and embroideries on market days, or see them worn during dragon-boat races, held at least twice a year. Afternoon races are accompanied by furious drumming, and the day winds down with a dance in which everyone present – sometimes 10,000 people – joins in.



The terraced slopes of Leigong Shan

Western Route

Frequent buses ply the route from Kaili to Shibing; change here for connections to Zhenyuan. There's some basic accommodations in Chong'an and hotels in Shibing.

Pleasantly rural **Matang** is home to the majority of Gejia, a Miao sub-group. The road passes close by, but you'll need to hire a taxi from Kaili if you don't want to walk the last 3 miles (5 km).

About 6 miles (10 km) west of Matang, **Xianglu Shan** (4,265 feet/1,300 m) is where Zhang Xiumei, one of the leaders of the Miao Rebellion, was defeated by government troops in 1873. An annual Hill Climbing festival is held here in his honor.

The riverside town of **Chong'an** uses its old core of wooden shops for a lively market, somewhere to experience crowds



Miao woman with baby

bargaining for everything from ducklings to home-made spirits. Right on the roadside,

Feiyun Dong is a curious

Daoist shrine founded in 1443, whose few moss-covered halls (one contains a museum of Miao artifacts) are built right into a natural arrangement of grottoes and vegetation. From **Shibing**, another nondescript place on the south bank of Wuyang He, it's possible to arrange rafting trips down Shanmu Jiang, or to hike up Yuntai



A battery of old stone water-powered mills, Chong'an

Shan, which features the ruins of a Ming-dynasty temple.

Zhenyuan

62 miles (100 km) NE of Kaili.

26 Ximen Jie, Wuyangzhen.

An old garrison town, Zhenyuan is squeezed by flanking cliffs into two long streets either side of Wuyang He. In the old town on the north bank, Qing-dynasty buildings with wavy eaves and ornate stonework have been carefully restored. East of the old town, a stone Ming bridge leads to Heilong Dong (Black Dragon Cave). This Daoist complex is built right into the over-hanging cliffs, where water seeps onto shrines dedicated to numerous deities.

It's also possible to cruise a stretch of the Wuyang He east of Zhenyuan, through a series of limestone gorges.

Festivals

Jan Drum festival, Gaowu, near Taijiang

Feb/Mar Lusheng Festivals across region

Apr/May Sisters' Meal, Taijiang & Shidong

Jun/Jul Dragonboat Races at many riverside villages and towns

Jul/Aug Festival at Xianglu Shan

Aug/Sep New Rice Tasting Festival in villages around Kaili & Lei Shan; Lusheng Festival, Chong'an

Oct/Nov Lusheng Festival and horse races, Yongxi, near Zhenyuan

Dec Miao New Year, Xijiang & villages around Kaili





Steps leading up to the Monument to the Red Army Martyrs, Zunyi

9 Zunyi

遵义

150 km N of Guiyang. ✈️ 🚗 🚝

The largest city in northern Guizhou, Zunyi is encircled by a gray mass of cement factories and bustling transport terminals that conceal a quiet and clean older quarter, north across the river. The city holds a special place in the history of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP). In January 1935, Zunyi was invaded by the Red Army during the Long March (see p262). Having suffered major defeats at the hands of the Nationalists, Communist leaders including Mao, Zhou Enlai, and Otto Braun, the Soviet advisor, convened the Zunyi Conference. During the three-day meeting, Mao emerged as the party leader and severed ties with the



Carved detail, Monument to the Red Army Martyrs

Russians, a vital step that helped the CCP defeat the Nationalists and eventually emerge as China's ruling party. The **Conference Site**, a sparsely designed, gray brick house, displays CCP memorabilia. A similar building, in the lane behind, housed the China Soviet Republic State Bank and Commission of

Expropriation & Collection, which printed banknotes and redistributed captured wealth among the peasantry. The adjacent **Long March Museum**, a former Catholic

Church, displays CCP mementos. Up the river, in Fenghuang Shan Park, the **Monument to the Red Army Martyrs** commemorates the heroes of the Long March.

Conference Site
80 Huizhi Lu.

Open 8:30am–5pm daily.

Environs: About 6 miles (10 km) south of Zunyi, **Yang Can Mu** is the final resting place of the local military official, Yang Can, who died around 1250. The stone reliefs of this well-preserved Song-era mausoleum are beautiful, depicting plants, guardian figures, and dragons curling around an ornamental gateway. There is also a portrait of Yang Can in court robes.

10 Chishui

赤水

156 miles (250 km) NW of Zunyi. 🚗

On the banks of Chishui Jiang in northwestern Guizhou on the Sichuan border, Chishui is encircled by limestone hills. The subtropical forests covering these hills are divided into nature reserves, reached by minibus from town. The finest is **Shizhang Dong**, 23 miles (37 km) south of town, with a 236-ft (72-m) waterfall. Some 10 miles (16 km) southwest, **Sidong Gou** is a valley whose red-silted river gives Chishui its name, "Red Water." It runs over four waterfalls and through a forest thick with bamboo. Locals harvest the edible bamboo shoots, and the mature stems are split and woven into matting. The region is also world famous for its *baijiu*, an alcoholic drink produced in **Maotai**, 50 miles (80 km) southeast in Xishui county (see p571).

Nature Reserves
minibus from Chishui.
Open daily. 🚗



Façade of the elegant Song-dynasty mausoleum, Yang Can Mu

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85

Bamboo

A fast-growing, long-lived type of grass found throughout central and southern China, bamboo is put to a huge array of uses. The culms (stems) are turned into pipes, hats, furniture, mats, and cooking utensils, while the shoots of certain varieties are cooked and eaten. The body of the plant is a rhizome (a horizontal, underground stem) that, according to type, clumps or runs, putting out regularly spaced shoots that grow nearly 2 feet (60 cm) per day until they reach full height. Plants might flower only every few decades, or even just once per century, after which they die back. The plant has become part of the religion, philosophy, and culture of the Chinese: it represents Confucian values of devotion and righteousness; the segments on its straight stem symbolize the steps along the straight path to enlightenment; and its strength, grace, and longevity have made it the subject of a great many poems and paintings.



In the wild, bamboo covers the hillsides in tall, dense, waving green forests, a sight often called a "bamboo sea." In gardens smaller plants are often used as symbolic elements (see p185).



Whole bamboo stems are versatile enough to be sawn, drilled, bent or spliced, while keeping their strength. Items of furniture like these teahouse chairs can be made by a skilled craftsman in a matter of minutes.

The strength of bamboo is such that, in the south of the country where it is easily available, bamboo is preferred over steel poles as scaffolding even for high-rises. China's urban boom is being built on the back of this giant grass.

Bamboo painting – or *mozhu* – is an esteemed art considered to be on a par with calligraphy (see p225).

Using a monochrome ink the painter attempts to convey the bamboo's spirit rather than its exact form in just a few fluid and almost abstract brush strokes.



Split bamboo can be woven into many useful objects such as lattice screens and blinds for use around the home as well as baskets such as these, used for carrying chickens to market.



Karst

Huge areas of China's southwest comprise visually spectacular landscapes featuring karst – weathered limestone formations. In China, limestone has been created from fossilized prehistoric sea floor sediments, brought to the surface by geological upheavals. The exposed alkaline limestone is then eroded by naturally occurring acidic rain. Above ground, this creates anything from closely packed “stone forests,” poking a few meters skyward, to the huge conical hills covering half of Guizhou, and the tall, elegant pinnacles around Guilin. Underground, percolating water and subterranean rivers carve out long, interlinked caverns, hung with oddly shaped rock formations.



Stone forests, such as Shi Lin outside Kunming (see pp384–5), are karst formations created by the retreating waters of ancient seas, and wind and rain erosion.

Karst Formation

Southwest China's thick and fractured pure limestone has led to a dramatically eroded landscape. The warm wet climate speeds up the weathering of limestone by acid rainwater and chemicals in rotting plants.



1 Surface streams lose water to cave systems developing in the limestone. Surface drainage is diverted down sink holes to below the water table.



2 Peaks develop from the land left after erosion by the streams. The cave system gets larger as fast-moving subsurface streams bore through the limestone, and the water table drops.



3 Much of the limestone has eroded past the caves down to a layer of shale. Limestone peaks remain, many fractured with small, waterless caves.

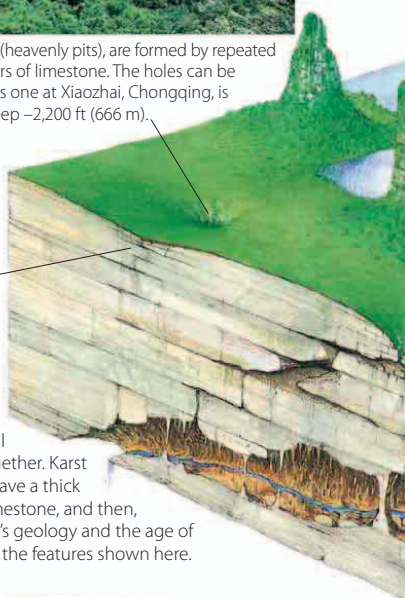


Sinkholes, or tiankeng (heavenly pits), are formed by repeated cave-ins of thinning layers of limestone. The holes can be disturbingly massive. This one at Xiaozhai, Chongqing, is almost as wide as it is deep –2,200 ft (666 m).

The limestone of southern China's crust is exceptionally thick and extensive, enabling the creation of spectacular karst.

Karst Landscape

This cut-away artwork shows an idealized karst landscape, with all the features shown together. Karst topographies usually have a thick layer of cave-ridden limestone, and then, depending on the area's geology and the age of the formation, a few of the features shown here.



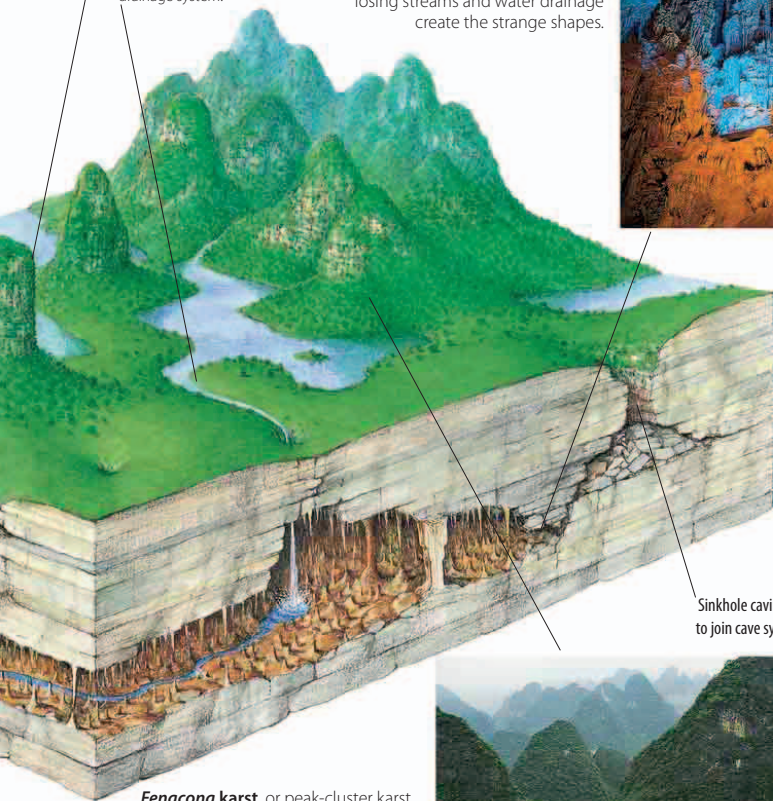
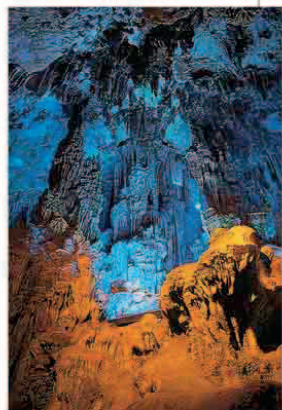
The Li River (see pp422–3) cuts through an impressive variety of karst hills. Cruises start in Guilin with *fenglin*, which gradually give way to dense *fengcong*.



Fenglin karst, which translates as peak-forest karst, is characterized by peaks that rise near vertically, like trees, 100 to 250 feet (30 to 80 m) above the surrounding flat floodplains. These dramatic tower-like karsts are found in and around the city of Guilin (see pp420–21).

A losing stream runs along the surface, and then disappears underground, joining the subterranean drainage system.

Caves that open out into large halls filled with stunning limestone formations are found throughout karst areas. Minerals deposited by losing streams and water drainage create the strange shapes.



Sinkhole caving in to join cave system

Fengcong karst, or peak-cluster karst, differ from the straight-sided *fenglin*. Their peaks are more cone-shaped and one hill meets the next across a depression or doline. Superb *fengcong* landscape can be seen near the small town of Xingping (see p423).



⑩ Guilin

桂林

Guilin is renowned for its karst peaks, most under 650 ft (198 m) high. Dotted throughout the city, they are particularly concentrated along the Li River (*see pp422–3*) to the south of town. Guilin dates back to the Qin era, and by the 6th century AD, its hills were already inspiring poets. Under the Ming, it emerged as a provincial capital, a position it lost in 1914 to Nanning. Guilin today is a tidy tourist city, with about 10 parks enclosing some fine peaks and limestone caves. Guilin means “Osmanthus Forest,” and has an avenue of these sweet-scented trees along the riverside Binjiang Lu.



Karst hills rise amongst apartment blocks in the center of town

📍 Rong Hu & Shan Hu

Rong Hu Bei Lu & Shan Hu Bei Lu.
Pagodas: **Open** daily.

The conjoined Rong and Shan Lakes lie on either side of Zhongshan Lu, which runs through the heart of town. Originally a part of the Ming city's moats, the lakeshores have been paved and pleasantly planted with shady banyan and willow trees. On the shore of the westerly Rong Hu stands an 800-year-old banyan tree, which gives the lake its name. On the lake's northern shore lies **Gu Nan Men**, Guilin's old South Gate, the only remains of the Ming city walls. Several classical-style arched bridges join the two banks. Shan Hu, on the eastern side of Zhongshan Lu, is overlooked by the twin 130-ft (40-m) pagodas, **Riyue Shuang Ta**, built in an antique style.



One of the two Riyue Shuang Ta

📍 Xiangbi Shan

Off Minzhu Lu. 🚶 2, 58. 🚶 from Nanhuan Lu. **Open** 7am–6pm daily. 📷

The most famous of the city's rock formations, the 328-ft (100-m) high Xiangbi Shan (Elephant Trunk Hill), with a hole through one end, resembles the stylized form of an elephant taking a drink from the adjacent Li River. According to legend, a baggage elephant in an imperial convoy was abandoned by the riverside by an uncaring emperor after it became sick. Nursed back to health by an elderly couple, the elephant refused to rejoin the returning convoy and

was killed by the emperor and turned into a hill, the one that stands here to this day. The small stupa at the summit is said to be the hilt of the emperor's sword sticking out of the elephant's

back. Ferries can be taken from Nanhuan Lu to the hill. Along the path to the summit stands an old, crumbling pagoda.

📍 Qixing Gongyuan

Qixing Lu. 🚶 58. **Open** 7am–8pm daily. 📷

The pleasant Qixing Gongyuan (Seven Stars Park) covers an area of 1 sq mile (2 sq km) along the eastern shore of the Li River. It is named after the four peaks on Putuo Hill, and three on Crescent Hill. Seen together, the peaks form the shape of the Great Bear or Big Dipper constellation, which governs fate in Chinese mythology. Covered in thick scrub, they provide shelter to about 100 half-wild monkeys. There are several trails and pathways ascending to viewing pavilions.

Guilin's crags are renowned for their graffiti and caves. Crescent Hill is known for the 200-odd poems and commentaries carved into its overhangs, some of which are believed to date back to the Tang dynasty. Putuo Hill, which houses the 22-story high Putuo Si, is hollowed out by Qixing Yan (Seven Stars Cave), a broad cavern with a small subterranean waterfall and surprisingly few rock formations. The 246-ft (75-m) Luotuo Shan (Camel Hill), standing on its own to the north of the park, resembles a seated single-humped camel. From its summit, there are views of Chuan Shan (Hill with a Mole), and the adjacent Ta Shan (Pagoda Hill) with a Ming-dynasty pagoda.



The pleasant Qixing Gongyuan (Seven Stars Park)



Colorfully illuminated formations inside Ludi Yan (Reed Flute Cave)

Jingjiang Prince's Palace & Duxiu Feng

Off Xihua Lu. **Open** daily.

Complete with its own encircling wall and four gates, this palace resembles a miniature Forbidden City. It was originally built for the Ming prince Zhou Shouqian in 1372, pre-dating Beijing's palace by 34 years. Having housed 14 successive Ming princes, it later served as Sun Yat-sen's headquarters in the 1920s. Today, it houses the Guangxi Teacher Training College. A sloping marble slab, carved with clouds at the entrance, indicates an

imperial residence, while the absence of the usual dragons indicates that the palace was for a prince, not an emperor.

Within the palace grounds lies

Duxiu Feng (Solitary Beauty Peak), whose 707-ft (216-m) spike protects the palace from the unlucky northern direction. At its foot is a tag carved by the 5th-century governor Yan Yanzhi, extolling Guilin's charms. Steps lead to the summit, offering splendid views.

Fubo Shan

Binjiang Lu. **Open** daily.

A tall, yellow-gray rock rising from the river, Fubo Shan is

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

235 miles (378 km) NE of Nanning. 800,000. 11 Binjiang Lu, (0773) 288 6393.

Transport

Liangjiang International Airport Guilin Train Station. Guilin Bus Station, CAAC (buses to airport), Minibus Station (to Yangshuo).

believed to calm the rough waters below, hence its name, "Wave-Subduing Hill." A crumbling temple on the peak houses a huge bronze bell and several hundred Buddha images from the Song era.

Ludi Yan

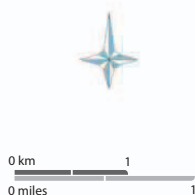
3 miles (5 km) NW of city center.

3, 58. **Open** daily.

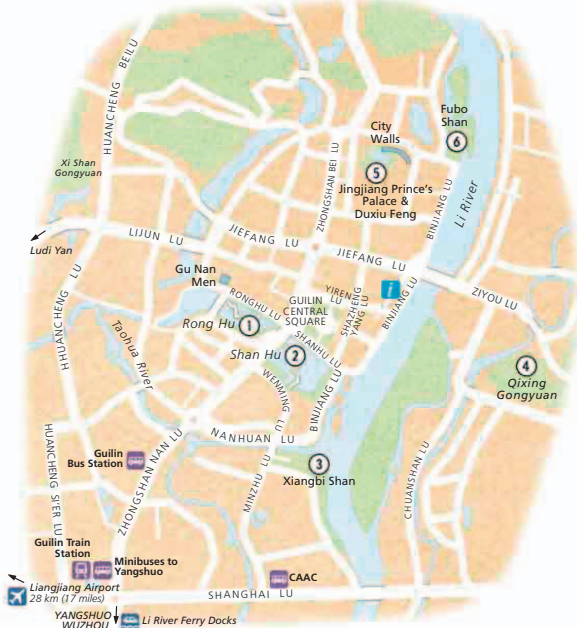
Used as a hideout by Guilin's residents during the Japanese invasion in the 1940s, Ludi Yan (Reed Flute Cave) contains 33-ft (10-m) tunnels winding for 1,640 ft (500 m) through Guangming Hill. Inside, its numerous rock formations are illuminated with neon lights.

Guilin City Center

- ① Rong Hu
- ② Shan Hu
- ③ Xiangbi Shan
- ④ Qixing Gongyuan
- ⑤ Jingjiang Prince's Palace & Duxiu Feng
- ⑥ Fubo Shan



Key to Symbols see back flap



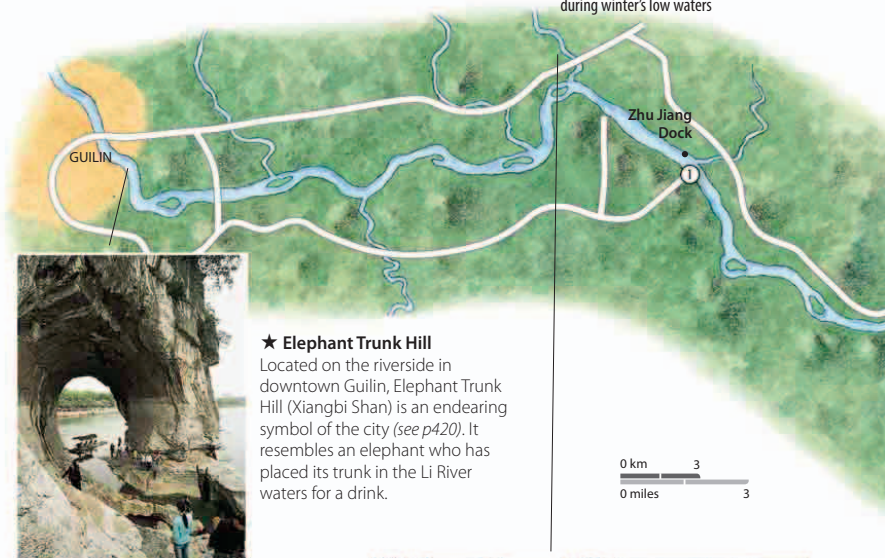
Li River Cruise

漓江

The cruise along the Li River (Li Jiang) from Guilin south to Yangshuo passes through landscape that seems lifted straight out of a Chinese scroll painting. The shallow river weaves between sheer-sided, 980-foot (300-m) karst peaks, all weathered into intriguing shapes and interspersed with the villages and bamboo groves so typical of southern China's rural areas. People here still travel the river on low bamboo rafts, often using trained cormorants to catch fish (see p424). Cruises take about six hours and usually include a buffet lunch. Foreign visitors sail in boats with English-speaking guides, although this costs more.



Bamboo rafts, for navigating the river during winter's low waters



★ Elephant Trunk Hill

Located on the riverside in downtown Guilin, Elephant Trunk Hill (Xiangbi Shan) is an endearing symbol of the city (see p420). It resembles an elephant who has placed its trunk in the Li River waters for a drink.

KEY

- ① The pier at Zhu Jiang is where many tours begin.
- ② In winter, tours start at Yangdi, as water levels are too low upstream.
- ③ Fish Tail Peak
- ④ Nine Horse Fresco Hill is a cliff face stained brown by minerals creating a mural resembling galloping horses.
- ⑤ Yellow Cloth Shoal, a shallow patch of yellow riverstones, is easily seen even during high water.
- ⑥ Snail Hill
- ⑦ Five Fingers Hill



Daxu

Downstream from Guilin, Daxu is a Song-era market town, whose cobble main street still retains many timber and stone houses over a century old, as well as an attractive Qing bridge, just outside town.



Pointed *fengcong* karst formations near Yangdi



★ Penholder Peak

Just past Yangdi and facing Writing-brush Mountain, this sharp, vertical outcrop does indeed resemble a traditional Chinese penholder. This section of hills is the beginning of the most spectacular mountain ranges.

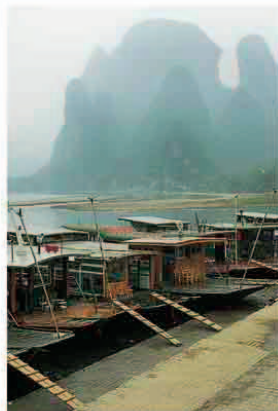
VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Guilin to Yangshuo 52 miles (85 km), 6hrs. 11 Binjiang Lu, Guilin, (0773) 288 6393 (CITS for booking).

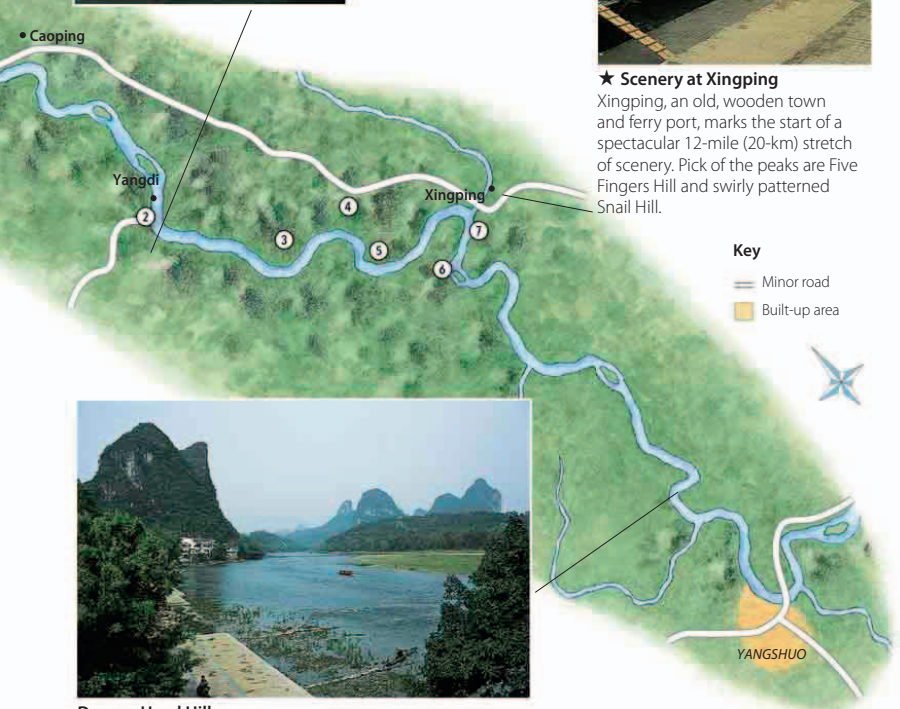
Transport

to starting point and from Yangshuo provided.



★ Scenery at Xingping

Xingping, an old, wooden town and ferry port, marks the start of a spectacular 12-mile (20-km) stretch of scenery. Pick of the peaks are Five Fingers Hill and swirly patterned Snail Hill.



Dragon Head Hill

Visitors to Yangshuo are greeted by this imposing peak, said to resemble the head of a dragon with its gaping jaws wide open.

12 Yangshuo

阳朔

A small highway town at the end of the Li River Cruise (see pp422–3), Yangshuo is surrounded by some spectacular karst hills interspersed with green paddy fields. It was nothing more than a rural marketplace until the late 1980s, when it became popular with visitors taking the cruise from Guilin. Not as tranquil as it used to be, Yangshuo remains a good base to explore the surrounding peaks and river, as well as a few caves and outlying villages. Hiring a bicycle is one of the easiest ways to explore the area. Local specialties include grapefruit-like pomelos and “beer fish” – served at most restaurants in town. Yangshuo has become one of Asia’s favorite rock-climbing centers, with more than 200 short routes mapped out.



Ferries moored along the Li River, with karst hills rising in the distance

Xi Jie

An 820-ft (250-m) long cobbled street running between the highway and the Li River, Xi Jie (West Street) is lined with restored rural architecture dating from the Qing dynasty. Today, it has a glut of friendly restaurants, cafés, guesthouses, and souvenir shops aimed at visitors. Restaurants serve Western cuisine such as wood-fire pizzas and steak as well as local specialties including a variety of fresh fish dishes. Shops sell a range of inexpensive Chinese souvenirs, from Mao memorabilia and wooden theater masks to antique wooden panels, batiks, silk T-shirts, scroll paintings, modern and traditional clothes, and pirated Western music CDs. A few shops also sell factory-reject designer wear at bargain prices. The Hongfu Hotel, located about halfway down the street, was built in the 19th century as an

inn for merchants from Jiangxi. The docks area at the river end, where ferries pull in from Guilin, is covered in ornamental paving and offers good views of the angular peaks upstream. In the area north of the highway are some lovely back alleys, and a lively produce market where locals shop.

Cormorant Fishing

The Chinese have used tame cormorants to fish for thousands of years, and this unusual technique is still practiced in southern areas. Fishermen set off on bamboo rafts after dark, with cormorants wearing collars to prevent them from swallowing their catches.



Cormorant fishing at night using lanterns



The forested Bilian Feng (Green Lotus Peak), overlooking the river

Bilian Feng & Yangshuo Gongyuan

Open daily.

Situated close to the center of town are two 328-ft (100-m) high peaks which can be climbed. To the southeast of town, overlooking the river, is the towering Bilian Feng (Green Lotus Peak), with a steep track to the summit. The second peak, Xilang Shan (Man Hill), is situated in Yangshuo Gongyuan to the west of town. It has an easier set of steps that lead to a viewing pavilion. The park is also a pleasant place to stroll and watch sessions of early-morning *tai ji quan*.

Jianshan Si & Underground Caves

3 miles (5 km) S of Yangshuo.

by car or cycle. Open 8:30am–5pm daily. 🚗

The only temple in the area around Yangshuo, Jianshan Si is

The birds swim just below the surface alongside the raft towards a light hanging from the bow. When a bird has made a catch, the fisherman pulls it from the water and retrieves the fish from the bird's beak. Hour-long viewing trips can be organized during the summer months through most hotels.

built in a simple, late Qing-dynasty style, with wing-like horsehead gables protecting its doorway. Located nearby, the Black Buddha, Assembled Dragons, and New Water Caves are a series of underground caverns discovered in the 1990s. Lit up with colored lights, these cool, damp caves are far smaller than the other well-known caves in the region, and the temple and caves are becoming popular with tourists.

Yueliang Shan

4 miles (7 km) S of Yangshuo.

🚗 or cycle. **Open** daily. 🕒

The distinctive crescent-shaped arch that pierces Yueliang Shan (Moon Hill) has made it the most famous of Yangshuo's peaks. Stone steps, steep in places, lead to the base of the arch, a half-hour climb through bamboo thickets and bushes. The view of the Li River valley from the far side of the arch is magnificent, with fields laid out below, encircling the jagged karst pinnacles. The best time to visit is during the summer rains, when the fields are bright green. If traveling by bicycle, visitors should take the main road south of town toward the river and turn right about

220 yards (200 m) before the bridge. From here, it's an hour to Yueliang Shan. Close by, **Longtan Village** has several unrestored old buildings, with whitewashed brick walls, wooden doors, and tiled roofs supporting intricate "flying eaves" drawn out into points.



Pomelos on sale at market

Fuli Village

5 miles (8 km) E of Yangshuo. 🚗 or cycle.



The pretty village of Fuli is a quiet rural center except when it hosts a busy produce market on days ending in 1, 4, or 7. One of the best in the region, it is visited by throngs

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

44 miles (70 km) S of Guilin.

📍 60,000. 📞 8th Fl, 362 Zhongshan Zhong Lu, Da Shijie. For rock climbing: visit Black Rock Climbing at 19 Guihua St.

Transport

🚗 from Guilin. 🚢 tours & boat trips available.

of villagers who bargain for livestock, seasonal fruit, plastic buckets, wooden pipes, all kinds of vegetables, and bamboo fans – a famous local product. To the north is Donglang Shan, a narrow hill often paired with Yangshuo's Xilang Shan in local legends.



The pretty countryside surrounding Assembled Dragons Cave, Yangshuo





A view of the complex terracing on Longji Titian, Longsheng

13 Longsheng

龙胜

56 miles (90 km) NW of Guilin. 170,000. minibuses from Longsheng to Ping An.

The high ridges of the Rongshui River Valley surround the township of Longsheng, which serves as a good base for exploring the adjoining countryside dotted with Zhuang and Yao villages. To the southwest is a steep range of 3,280-ft (1,000-m) high hills, known as **Longji Titian** (Dragon Backbone Terraces), whose lower and middle reaches have been covered in rice terracing by the Zhuang people (see p430). The Zhuang, who form the majority of Longsheng's population, live in traditional wooden houses. On the hilltops lie a few villages, inhabited by the Yao, an ethnic community that consists of numerous subgroups, some of whom still

depend on hunting rather than farming. They are also especially skilled in embroidery, weaving, and dyeing. The Zhuang village of **Ping An** sits near the top of a ridge in the heart of Longji Titian. It offers basic accommodations in traditional wooden buildings, as well as walking trails leading to other settlements in the area.

14 Sanjiang

三江 程杨

90 miles (145 km) NW of Guilin. 360,000. Wind & Rain Bridge Travel Service (0772) 861 8448.

Situated on the Rongshui River, Sanjiang was the base of resistance against the Japanese during World War II, when Danzhou, the former regional capital located 22 miles (35 km) south, was captured. Today, Sanjiang is the main town of a

region central to the indigo-clad Dong community, which has a population of around 2.5 million. Typical Dong architecture, consisting of wooden houses, towers, and bridges, can be found in several villages up in the hills to the north. The hospitable Dong usually offer visitors their favorite *douxie cha* or oil tea, a bitter soup made with rice and fried tea leaves.

On the south bank of the river is an 11-story **Drum Tower**, the largest in the region. It was built in 2003, using entirely traditional techniques. The structure is supported by four 154-ft (47-m) pillars, each carved from separate tree trunks. The third story of the tower houses a large drum.

The small **Fulu Buddhist Nunnery**, situated on the hill behind, is a little unusual, since the Dong community is mainly Daoist. The nunnery's

three halls contain a mix of statuary representing both religions.

Situated to the north of the river, the County Museum stands next to the Government Guesthouse. The museum exhibits several scale models of traditional Dong

architecture, photographs, and maps displaying Sanjiang's strategic wartime role. Also displayed here are a number of colorful costumes worn by the Dong, Zhuang, and Yao communities during festivals.



Bamboo shoots for sale, Sanjiang

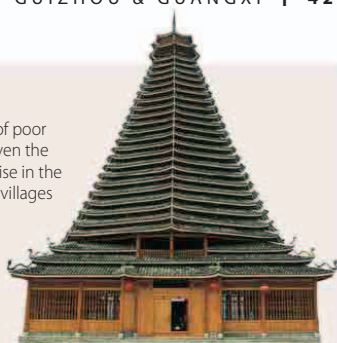


The intricately crafted *fengyu qiao*, wind-and-rain bridge, Chengyang

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85

Dong Architecture

The Dong, who dwell in forested hill country where stone is of poor quality, make efficient use of timber. Nails are avoided, and even the largest structures are skillfully pegged together. As incomes rise in the region, there's been a resurgence of traditional building with villages competing with one another to sponsor the construction of bridges and towers. Drum towers are usually square-based, with multiple octagonal eaves. Originally they served as watchtowers and rallying places for the village, many with adjoining theater stages for use during festivals. Elaborate, covered wind-and-rain bridges are also places for villagers to meet, and are believed to ward off inauspicious energy.



Traditional drum tower in one of Chengyang's pretty rural hamlets

Environs: The most accessible Dong villages lie 11 miles (18 km) north of Sanjiang at **Chengyang**, a group of hamlets on the far side of the Linxi River, accessible by bus or minivan taxi from Sanjiang. Connecting Chengyang to the main road are over 100 bridges. One of the most exquisite is a *fengyu qiao*, a wind-and-rain bridge, dating from 1916. The 256-ft (78-m) long bridge, built from pegged cedar – no nails are said to have been used – took 12 years to complete. The roof is especially elaborate, with five raised pavilions, each built in a different regional style. These beautifully built bridges not only served a practical function, but acted as shrines to river spirits as well. Most of the altars have now been moved to the riverbank, as the incense is considered a fire hazard.

Basic accommodations are available for visitors interested in exploring the ethnic villages and surrounding countryside. Each hamlet in Chengyang houses a small drum tower, while the surrounding fields are irrigated by bamboo pipes fed by huge, spindly water-wheels, also made from plaited bamboo.

The highland market town of **Dutong** lies two hours by bus north of Sanjiang, on a separate road past numerous Dong villages. Situated near the Hunanese border, it provides basic accommodations for visitors. A cobbled walking track leads uphill to **Gaoding**, a cluster of six drum towers and 100-or-so dark-roofed wooden houses.

15 Zhaoxing 肇兴

75 miles (120 km) NW of Sanjiang. 肇兴 from Sanjiang.

One of the most attractive Dong villages, sprinkled with fish ponds and bisected by a stream, Zhaoxing sits in a wide, flat valley and is famed throughout China for its impressive collection of traditional architecture (although there are a few modern buildings found on its outskirts). The town is divided into five sections, each inhabited by a different clan, and each possessing its own drum tower, theater, and wind-and-rain bridge. The original structures were destroyed during the Cultural Revolution, and

although they have been rebuilt since, they are charmingly well-worn and impressively intricate. The bridges and theaters are embellished with mirror fragments and detailed moldings.

The Dong community here still makes and wears traditional dark-blue clothing, which is hand-beaten with wooden mallets until soft, and then varnished with eggwhite to ward off mosquitoes.

Numerous muddy tracks lead through the surrounding rice terraces. One trail leads 4 miles (7 km) uphill to the small village of **Tang An**, packed with wooden buildings. **Jitang**, 2 miles (3 km) south of Zhaoxing, is also worth the steep climb. It has some old drum towers that survived the vandalism of the early 1970s.



A cluster of Dong wooden houses, Zhaoxing

16 Huangyao

黄姚

68 miles (110 km) SE of Yangshuo.

7.5 3,000. 🚶 from Yangshuo or Guilin.

This sizeable rural village survives almost completely intact from Qing times. Its atmospheric cobbled streets, stone bridges, and old houses are laid out along a small river beneath a ring of limestone peaks. Many houses have heavy wooden doors and elaborate "fire-baffle" end walls – to direct heat and flames in a certain direction – drawn up into a decorative oval shape, while the village gates are guarded by short brick watchtowers with gun slits at the front, left over from days of banditry. The most impressive building is an **ancestral hall** built in the southern Chinese style, with atriums separated by carved wooden screens.

Huangyao's rural Chinese setting and beautiful scenery draws artists and photographers, and has been used as a location in such films as *The Painted Veil* (2006). Huangyao is neither as developed for tourism as many other old villages in China, nor does it attract the same volume of tourists. By late afternoon, the streets are generally empty except for a few chickens and dogs. At night the back lanes are hung with attractive red lanterns.



Xi Shan's tea plantation surrounded by mist-covered forest, Guiping

17 Guiping

桂平

205 miles (330 km) S of Guilin. 🚶

Located at the confluence of Yu and Xun rivers, Guiping is an unremarkable city surrounded by lush mountain scenery. Its importance as a regional center has declined, due to the cessation of river traffic during the 1990s. Its main industry is now sugar cane.

Guiping is renowned for its high-quality green tea, *xi shan cha*, which grows on **Xi Shan** (West Mountain), on the outskirts of town. The long leaves of tea are processed and

rolled into what look like miniature black cheroots. They are steeped one at a time to produce a faintly bitter, yet refreshing brew.

Xi Shan itself can be easily ascended from town. The

2-hour hike, past tea plantations and through bamboo groves, passes a number of Tang-era Buddhist temples. Longhua Si, deep in the forest on the upper slopes of the mountain, was built during the Song dynasty and heavily renovated during the 1980s. It contains



Lion statue from Longhua Si, Guiping

numerous Buddhist statues. The temples sell *Xi Shan cha*, which is said to be superior to that



A depiction of imperial forces recapturing Nanjing from the Taiping rebels in 1864

The Taiping Rebellion

After being defeated in the 1840–42 Opium Wars, China was forced to pay a huge indemnity to Britain. Taxation was increased, causing great hardship in poor rural areas such as southern Guangxi. People's discontent with the weak Qing rule was fuelled by Hong Xiuquan, who formed a 10,000-strong militia, known as Taiping Tianguo (Kingdom of Heavenly Peace), at Jintian village in January 1851. Marching north, the Taiping captured Nanjing, making it their capital in March 1853. Influenced by Hong's personal interpretation of Christianity, the Taiping initially planned the overthrow of the Qing dynasty along with traditional religions, aiming to establish an egalitarian society. However, poor military planning and Hong's paranoia saw the movement falter. In July 1864, imperial forces wrested back Nanjing after a siege in which Hong died. It is thought that 20 million people were killed during the 13-year-long Taiping Uprising, one of the world's bloodiest civil conflicts.

sold in Guiping shops. The summit offers splendid views of the river plains.

Environs: A 40-minute journey by bus from Guiping, the hamlet of **Jintian** lies 16 miles (25 km) north of town. From the bus stop, it's a 3-mile (5-km) walk across rural fields to the location of the first headquarters of Hong Xiuquan's Taiping Army. A museum here houses weapons, paintings, and maps recording the main events of the Taiping Uprising.



Waterfall pouring down a Xi Shan rock face, Guiping

18 Nanning

235 miles (380 km) SE of Guilin.
 3,480,000.
 38 Chaoyang Lu, (0771) 579 8400.

Nestled in the southern half of the province, only 120 miles (200 km) from the Vietnamese border, the Guangxi capital of

Dongson Drum

Named for an archeological site in Vietnam, the oldest Dongson Drums are over 2,200 years old. They appear to have originated in Thailand or Vietnam, from where their use spread across Southeast Asia. The characteristic narrow-waisted drums are made from bronze, and reach up to 3 ft (1 m) in height, in styles that vary greatly from region to region. In Guangxi, timpani are marked with a 12-pointed star, and are often decorated with frog figurines, while their middles are finely chased in stylized designs of warriors in boats wearing feathered headdresses. Originally used as storage vessels, later, as Ming historians observed, they came to symbolize chiefly authority amongst the Zhuang. They were played during agricultural ceremonies, and still feature as percussion instruments in some festivals amongst Guizhou's Miao community.



Bronze drum from Nanning

Nanning is somewhat removed from the rest of the province. Founded in the Song dynasty, Nanning became the provincial capital in 1914, until it was occupied by the Japanese forces during World War II. Reinstated as the capital in 1949, Nanning later served as an important center for supplies going to North Vietnam during the Vietnam War in the 1960s. In 1979, relations with Vietnam soured, and China went to war with its southern neighbor; Nanning once more became a military stronghold. Today, the city is expanding rapidly, partly as a consequence of cross-border traffic, which resumed in the 1990s.

Nanning makes a useful transit point for those heading to Vietnam or towards sights

located in the southwestern corner of the province, such as Detian Falls and the Zuo Jiang (see pp430–31). Nanning itself has only a handful of monuments and sights, but is a nice enough place with a laid-back atmosphere and many bustling markets. It is also the main city of the Zhuang minority (see p430), who make up over 60 percent of the population.

The busy shopping district of **Xingning Lu**, with its well-restored European-style buildings, is a reminder that Nanning was opened to foreign trade in 1907. The **Provincial Museum** on Minzu Dadao has a display of over 50 antique bronze "Dongson" drums in many different styles, some of which are about 2,000 years old.

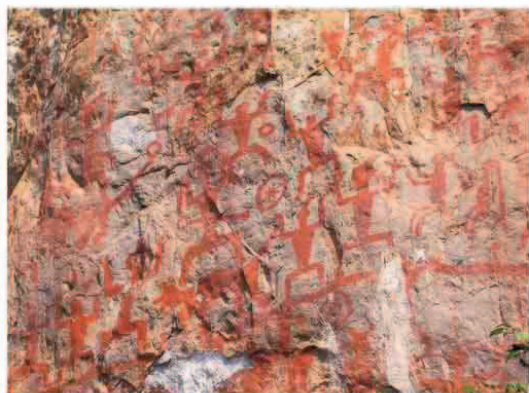
On Renmin Dong Lu, **Renmin Park** is planted with a variety of tropical plants such as giant taro, heliconias, bird-nest ferns, and philodendrons. To the east of the city on Chahua Yuan Lu, **Jinhua Cha Gardens** exhibits the rare Golden Camellia, only found in the mountains of Guangxi and quite possibly now extinct in the wild. Unusual for a camellia, its petals are large and rather tough.

Provincial Museum
 Minzu Dadao. **Tel** (0771) 281 0907.
Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

Renmin Park
 1 Renmin Dong Lu. **Open** daily.



Vegetable vendors with their baskets at an outdoor market, Nanning



Ancient rock art on the cliff of Hua Shan along the Zuo Jiang

19 Zuo Jiang 左江

110 miles (180 km) SW of Nanning.

to Ningming. to Ningming.

sampan to Hua Shan from

Ningming. contact the

Nanning tourist office for river tours.

Longrui Reserve:

A river tour up the peaceful Zuo Jiang in a sampan hired from Ningming, a small settlement on the railroad between Nanning and Pingxiang, takes visitors past prehistoric rock art and towering karst scenery. Produced almost 2,000 years ago between the Warring States and the late Han period, the paintings of over 2,600 human figures are scattered across 70 locations along the river. Painted in red-brown ferrous oxide, they mainly depict mass shamanistic ceremonies. The designs show marked similarities to those on bronze Dongson drums

(see p429) that were found in Vietnam and southern China. It is believed that the artists were the Luo Yue, ancestors of the indigenous Zhuang.

The first paintings are about 12 miles (20 km) upstream from Ningming, but the largest concentration is situated at **Hua Shan** (Flower Mountain), about three hours or so along the river. A steep cliff rising 33 ft (10 m) above the water is covered in as many as 1,200 stick figures, mostly male, engaged in what appears to be a ritual dance. A frequently recurring symbol is a small circle, thought to represent a bronze drum, around which several figures seem to dance with their arms raised as if to invoke the gods. A few carry swords or ride on the back of beasts. Only two of them are clearly women, depicted with long, flowing hair. Other figures include dogs, a horse, farmers,

and rowers in a dragon-boat race. A shaman, identifiable by his elaborate headdress, appears at the center of all this activity.

Panlong, a tiny hamlet on the river between Ningming and Hua Shan, has gorgeous views of the rural peaked landscape. Lodging is available here in a handful of pretty wooden buildings. Paths lead from Panlong through the **Longrui Nature Preserve**, meant to protect the very rare white-headed leaf monkey. A sighting of these black-and-white primates amongst the dense forest and undergrowth is unlikely, but its rugged paths are well worth exploring.



Gate tower along the Vietnamese border, Pingxiang

20 Pingxiang 凭祥

120 miles (195 km) SW of Nanning.

Surrounded by vast fields of sugar cane and the jagged hills so typical of this region, Pingxiang is a busy market town



A group of Zhuang women in traditional clothes

The Zhuang Community

With a population of around 18 million, the Zhuang form China's largest ethnic minority. Most live in the Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region, although there are also communities in adjoining provinces and Vietnam. They speak their own language, which uses the Roman alphabet instead of Chinese characters. Visitors will see bilingual road signs all across the region, particularly in Guilin and Nanning. Apart from their language, it is hard to distinguish urban Zhuang from the Han Chinese, although in the country the men often dress in turbans and black pyjamas, while the women wear blue embroidered jackets. The Zhuang are mainly animistic, which explains the lack of Buddhist and Daoist temples in Guangxi. One of their most famous festivals is Buffalo Soul Day, held in honor of the Buffalo King's birthday on the eighth day of the fourth lunar month (Apr/May). On this day, all buffalos are washed and groomed, fed a special rice dish, and given the day off work.



The magnificent Detian Falls surrounded by spectacular karst hills

and the railhead for the crossing into Vietnam. Visitors require a valid visa to enter Vietnam at the border crossing, **Yoyi Guan** (Friendship Pass), another 9 miles (15-km) away. The current border was demarcated as early as the Ming era, and a good stretch of the original 33-ft (10-m) stone wall still stands, along with a restored watchtower and gateway under which visitors pass. The tower's second floor houses a diorama of the area and offers views into Vietnam. An early 20th-century European-style building on the Chinese side was built by the French when they controlled this region, known then as Indo-China. For those crossing into Vietnam, the rail line for Hanoi resumes 3 miles (5 km) away on the far side at Dong Dang.

21 Detian Falls

德天瀑布

125 miles (200 km) W of Nanning. 🚗
via Daxin to Shuolong, minibus from Shuolong to falls, 10 miles (16 km). 🚶

A spectacular set of broad cataracts dividing China from Vietnam, Detian is the second largest transnational waterfall in the world, after Niagara Falls on the US-Canada border. The two attractions, however, have little else in common. Detian does not possess the sheer force of

Niagara, but is more gently beautiful, falling in stages, and surrounded by an emerald karst landscape of jagged hills and plowed fields. It is possible to swim in the broad pool beneath the falls, and to take a bamboo raft into the spray near its base. Remember that a border runs through the center of the river – do not stray too far across. A road running along the top of the falls leads to a stone tablet from the 1950s that marks out the border.

22 Beihai

北海

135 miles (215 km) S of Nanning. ✈️
🚗 🚗 🚗 to Hainan Island.

A tropical port city of about 1.5 million people, Beihai is one of the departure points for ferries to Hainan Island (*see pp310–11*). Many of the city's residents are ethnic Chinese from Vietnam, whose expulsion from that country in the late 1970s sparked a brief attempt by China to invade its neighbor.

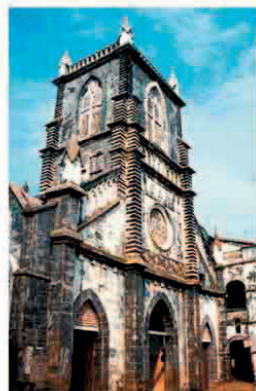
Established over 2,000 years ago, the city prospered during the Han era, when it was a busy port. The old Colonial Quarter, on the northern seafont along Zhongshan Lu, is a 1.2-mile (2-km) stretch of narrow lanes and disintegrating 1920s plasterwork, at least one former

church, and several colonnaded shopfronts.

About 2 miles (3 km) west of the center farther down Zhongshan Lu is the **Hainan Ferry Port**. Lying beyond is a small harbor crammed with motorized junks, rusty cargo ships, and battered trawlers.

Beihai's other attraction, **Yin Tan** (Silver Beach), lies 6 miles (10 km) south of town, but it does not compare with the lovely beaches of Hainan.

Located about 36 miles (58 km) southeast of Beihai, volcanic **Weizhou Island** offers beautiful scenery and good opportunities for diving. It also has a Gothic church built by French churchmen in 1882.



Façade of an old colonial church on Weizhou Island



A full-page photograph of a winter scene. In the foreground, a person wearing a dark winter coat and hat stands on a snow-covered path. The background is filled with trees heavily laden with snow, creating a white, frosty atmosphere. The sky is a clear, pale blue. A dark rectangular box is positioned at the top center, containing the title and a list of contents.

THE NORTHEAST

Introducing the Northeast **434-441**

Liaoning, Jilin
& Heilongjiang **442-461**

The Northeast at a Glance

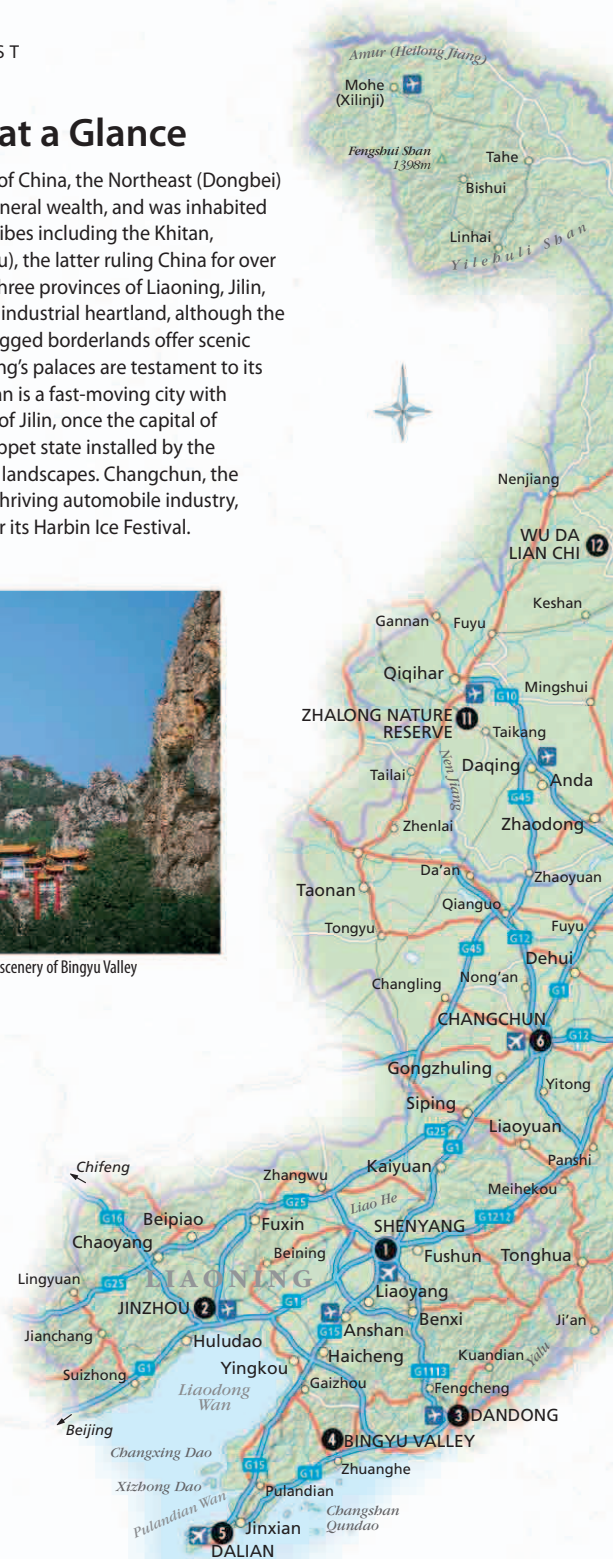
Lying in the peripheral corner of China, the Northeast (Dongbei) abounds in raw beauty and mineral wealth, and was inhabited for centuries by indomitable tribes including the Khitan, Mongols, and Jurchen (Manchu), the latter ruling China for over 250 years. Today, the region's three provinces of Liaoning, Jilin, and Heilongjiang form China's industrial heartland, although the many lakes, mountains, and rugged borderlands offer scenic getaways. In Liaoning, Shenyang's palaces are testament to its great Manchu past, while Dalian is a fast-moving city with architectural marvels. The city of Jilin, once the capital of Manchukuo (1933–45), the puppet state installed by the Japanese, has stunning winter landscapes. Changchun, the capital of Jilin province, has a thriving automobile industry, while Heilongjiang is famed for its Harbin Ice Festival.



The ornate *paifang* or gateway to the rugged scenery of Bingyu Valley (Bingyu Gou), Liaoning

Sights at a Glance

- ① Shenyang
- ② Jinzhou
- ③ Dandong
- ⑤ Dalian
- ⑥ Changchun
- ⑦ Jilin
- ⑨ Harbin
- ⑩ Mudanjiang Jingpo Hu
- ④ Bingyu Valley
- ⑧ Changbai Shan pp454–5
- ⑪ Zhalong Nature Reserve
- ⑫ Wu Da Lian Chi & the River Border





Offering incense at the Buddhist Jile Si, Harbin



Getting There

The major cities – Shenyang, Dalian, Changchun, Harbin, and Jilin – are connected to Beijing by air and rail. There are express buses from Beijing to Shenyang, Dalian, and Changchun. Regular trains and buses also ply within the region. A few flights operate between the major cities, including Harbin and Dalian. In winter, popular destinations such as Jilin and Harbin are relatively easy to reach, while remoter areas such as Jingpo Hu and Changbai Shan are more difficult to access. Within cities, taxis are the best option.



The icy blue waters of the volcanic Tian Chi – Heaven's Lake – in Changbai Shan

A PORTRAIT OF THE NORTHEAST

Sandwiched between Russia, Korea, and Inner Mongolia, the three northeastern provinces constitute China's easternmost extent. Even though the prevalent culture is Han Chinese, the Northeast's geography, history, and extended external boundaries have shaped a distinct regional identity. The region's attractions range from the bustling sprawl of its big cities to the rugged, and sublime terrain beyond, and the cultural mix of its border towns.

It is hard to categorize the Northeast (Dongbei) – it enjoys hot summers but glacial winters, and while heavy industry and socialist planning blight some cityscapes, others sport elegant pockets of colonial architecture. And while parts of the region have been revelling in China's economic boom, others have suffered from chronic unemployment.

Encompassing the three provinces of Liaoning, Jilin, and Heilongjiang, the Northeast was a latecomer to the Chinese empire and is sometimes considered as little more than an appendix to the rest of the country. As part of former Manchuria, however, it was the cradle of the magnificent civilization that ruled China

from 1644 until 1912. Shenyang, Liaoning's present capital, became the Manchu capital in 1625, and the site of the Imperial Palace. Here they perfected their Eight Banner system of color-coded hereditary social and administrative divisions (*see pp438–9*). Taking advantage of the overthrow of the Ming dynasty in 1644, they moved their capital to the Forbidden City in Beijing. Even today, the region's Manchu population take great pride in their heritage and still adhere to the Eight Banners.

In more recent times, the Northeast attracted the attentions of Russia and Japan, both of which have helped shape the region's destiny. At the end of the 19th



Stately Russian architecture in Daliqu district, Harbin



Façade of the Puppet Emperor's Palace, Changchun

century the Russians, interested in the ice-free port of Lushun, tried to annexe parts of Manchuria and built part of the Trans-Siberian Railway line, before being humiliated by Japan. The area suffered again during the Japanese occupation of the 1930s and 40s, when it was renamed Manchukuo and Pu Yi was installed as Puppet Emperor. The brutal occupation left deep scars on the region's psyche along with some pitiful sights, such as the Japanese Germ Warfare Experimental Base near Harbin.

Japanese occupation came to an end after World War II, ushering in a period of industrialization under Chairman Mao. His camaraderie with Russia in the 1950s resulted in the installation of a Stalinist state-sector economy. The peaceful relationship was shortlived and conflicts soon flared along the border.

The Northeast's rich mineral wealth has made it China's industrial heartland. However, under-investment and ruthless downsizing with huge state-sector layoffs have resulted in high unemployment.

Centuries of hardship have molded the character of the *Dongbeiren* (Northeasterners). Resolute, unaffected, forthright, and hospitable, they are looked upon by their compatriots as a hardy, stalwart people, prone to hard drinking. Taller and stockier than their southern cousins, they speak Mandarin with a coarse, albeit intelligible accent.



Door handle Confucius Temple

Unlike the sophisticated cuisine of Hong Kong and Shanghai, the local food – including *jiaozi* (dumplings), *dun* (stews), and *tudou* (potatoes) – is hearty and filling. The temperament of the people matches the vigorous landscapes that range from dense forest to volcanic regions and the tough terrain along the Russian and North Korean borders. These areas offer plenty of outdoor options including trekking and bird-watching, particularly in Zhalong Nature Reserve. The border town of Dandong has a thriving tourist industry, catering mainly to North Korean visitors.

Despite the unfortunate effects of industrialization, there is much worth seeing. The onion domes and Byzantine ornamentation visible in Harbin's buildings are distinctly Russian, a legacy of the city's cross-cultural links. Dalian, on the Yellow Sea, is a dynamic and progressive city that has enjoyed the same economic success as Shanghai. Known as the "Hong Kong of the North," it adds an affluent touch to the Northeastern rustbelt.



A secluded bay by the blue waters of the volcanic Jingpo Hu, Heilongjiang

The Manchu Dynasty

The final overlords of the Middle Kingdom, the Manchus from the northeast, took advantage of a China weakened by peasant rebellion to invade and establish the Qing or “pure” dynasty in 1644. This foreign Manchu court preserved much of China’s governing apparatus and over time absorbed local ways. Despite providing some of China’s most illustrious emperors, including Kangxi (see p128) and Qianlong, the Qing declined into an ineffectual torpor. Coupled with the seizure of territories by foreign powers, the Qing failure to modernize led to the collapse of Manchu legitimacy and the final downfall of the dynasty.



The queue, a long plaited hairstyle that has come to symbolize Chinese traditions, was a Manchu import imposed on Han Chinese men.

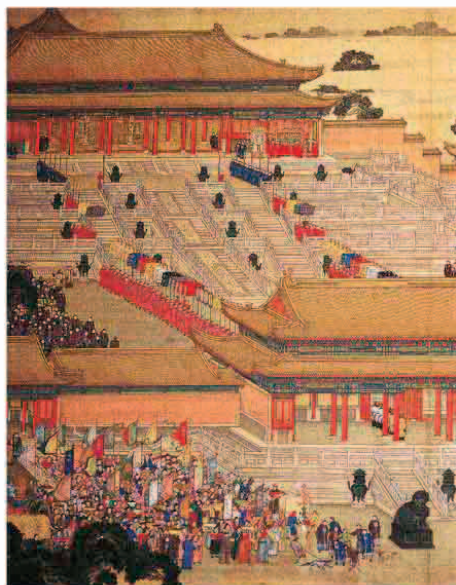
The Court at the Forbidden City

Like the Ming before them, the Manchu Qing established their court in Beijing. The Manchus were the last dynastic occupants of the Forbidden City.

Served by as many as 3,000 eunuchs, they were immersed in a court life of arcane ceremony and ritual until the dynasty was unseated by the founding of the Republic of China in 1912.



Nurhachi (1559–1626), the first Manchu emperor, organized the scattered tribes of the northeast into eight banner units in the early 17th century. He moved his capital to Shenyang, but did not live to see the subjugation of China. After his death, his son Abahai established the Qing dynasty in 1636 and proceeded to invade China.



The Manchu Imperial Palace in Shenyang was begun during Nurhachi’s reign and completed by Abahai. In 1644, when the Manchus toppled the Ming, the Shenyang complex became a “travelling palace”, used by the emperor during tours of inspection.

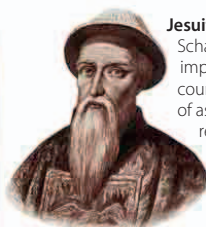


Elaborate summer camping trips in Inner Mongolia were undertaken by the early Qing rulers, as a break from Confucian court life. They hunted, practiced archery, and slept in yurts, in order to preserve their Manchu vigor.



Qianlong (r. 1735–1796), the fourth Qing emperor, was a generous patron of the arts. His lengthy reign was also marked by territorial expansion, including the absorption of Xinjiang, and was largely a period of Chinese prosperity.

Yuanming Yuan, the Garden of Perfect Brightness (*see p109*), was designed by Jesuits for the Qianlong emperor. Much of its grandiose architecture was destroyed by French and English troops in 1860.



Jesuit missionary Adam Schall von Bell (1591–1666) impressed the Manchu court with his knowledge of astronomy. The Jesuits realized that having influence in China required mastering the Confucian Classics and Mandarin.



In 1793, Lord Macartney arrived with elaborate gifts from King George III, seeking to establish trade between Britain and China. Macartney was rebuffed by the Qianlong emperor, who refused Britain a single concession.

The Boxer Rebellion

The Boxers, a band of xenophobic rebels from north China who rose up to rid China of the “foreign devils,” drew from superstitious rituals that they believed made them invulnerable. Cixi, seeking an

opportunity to strike back at the foreign powers, allied herself to their cause. The rebels laid waste to Beijing’s Legation Quarter in 1900, while besieging the district’s foreign population. The siege was finally lifted by an eight-power allied force. The Qing government was forced to sign The Boxer Protocol which, among other conditions, allowed the stationing of foreign troops in Beijing.

Boxer massacre of Chinese Christians



The Empress Dowager, Cixi (*see p107*), was deeply conservative and a shrewd manipulator. Dismissive of foreign powers, she appointed pro-Boxer Prince Duan as Minister of Foreign Affairs.

Trans-Siberian Railway

The term Trans-Siberian Railway refers to three services: the Trans-Siberian, the Trans-Mongolian, and the Trans-Manchurian. In 1891 Russia decided to join the extremities of its empire by rail. A short cut through Manchuria was negotiated with China and the line was completed in 1903. War with Japan forced the Russians to cede the railroad to them in 1905 and build a new line skirting Manchuria – the Trans-Siberian route was finished in 1916. The Trans-Mongolian route was added in the 1940s and 50s. In an era of jet travel, this epic week-long journey is an experience not to be missed.



Orthodox priest running a mobile religious service in Manchuria at the turn of the 20th century. Today the historic Russian presence in the Northeast can still be seen in Harbin, Lushun, and border towns like Manzhouli.



Steam trains were finally replaced in 2002, although electrification began in 1939. Because of differences in the track widths of Chinese and Russian lines, huge cranes lift the carriages up onto the correct width “bogeys” when crossing the border.



This 1907 poster advertises the romance of a winter trip on the Trans-Siberian Railway. The poster's distinct Japanese feel derives from Japan's occupation of Manchuria and Korea at the time.

The standard of luxury is reasonable. (The Chinese deluxe carriage has showers.) If the dining car doesn't appeal, at each stop there's a throng of vendors on the platforms selling goods.



Conductor and train on the Trans-Siberian Railway



The train carves its way through the grasslands of the north Manchurian plain.



The longest railway service in the world at nearly 6,000 miles (9,500 km), it takes up to 7 days to cover the journey.

Key

- Trans-Siberian
- Trans-Mongolian
- Trans-Manchurian

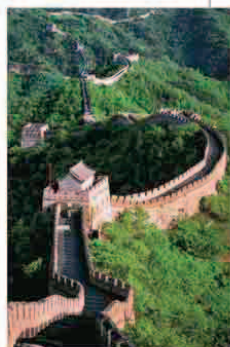


Trans-Manchurian Railway

The Vostok makes the six-day trip once a week from Beijing through Shanhaiguan and Harbin, before heading through the spectacular Manchurian plain, the huge expanse of Russia, and back.



The Trans-Mongolian is probably the most interesting route of the three: it goes through China – past the Great Wall and Datong, site of the Yungang Caves; via Mongolia and its grasslands; and finally through the expanse of Russia. However, it also requires three visas.



Lake Baikal's cliffs proved problematic for the builders. They had to chisel miles of tunnels out of solid rock and construct many bridges. It was worth it in the end because the southern end of the lake provides all three lines with some of the most picturesque scenery of the trip.

Travelers' Tips

- You can book tickets through Seat 61 seat61.com
- Summer is the peak season; fall is quieter; the train is heated, but winter can be very cold outside.
- Bring dried noodle snacks, hot chocolate, a bowl, and cutlery as there is boiling water on tap.
- Arrange for at least one or two stops on the way – separate ticket required for each stop.
- Be prepared to drink vodka.

Looking out the window occupies most of your time on the trip – when not meeting other travelers.

Moscow is the end (or indeed start) for the three Trans-Siberian Railway services. It is possible to go on to St. Petersburg and the Baltic Sea. However, Moscow has plenty of museums, churches, and grand architecture to see, and deserves a few days of exploration.





LIAONING, JILIN & HEILONGJIANG



Stretching from Shanhaiguan – the Great Wall’s terminus at the Yellow Sea – to the Siberian borders in the north, the provinces of Liaoning, Jilin, and Heilongjiang cover 309,000 sq miles (800,000 sq km), an area larger than Spain and Portugal. With a population of over 100 million, they offer a variety of landscapes from seaside ports to expanses of uninhabited forests and mountains.

The region was once part of erstwhile Manchuria, and the lavish palace of the Manchu kings at Shenyang in the heart of Liaoning stands testament to their might. On Liaoning’s balmy southern coast, Dalian features scenic coastal drives and fine, sandy beaches. As the only ice-free port in the area, it was coveted by both Japan and Russia, and occupied continuously by one or the other between 1895 and 1955.

Japan’s imperialist stamp also survives in Jilin’s capital, Changchun, from where China’s last emperor, Pu Yi, ruled the Japanese state of Manchukuo as a mere puppet. In Heilongjiang, the city of Harbin has heavy Russian overtones, clearly evident in its buildings and

restaurants, while strong Korean influences color Dandong town, situated along the North Korean border. Also straddling the border is the rugged, spectacular Changbai Shan Reserve, which abounds in lush, jagged peaks and hiking opportunities. Its volcanic lake, Tian Chi, is China’s deepest, rumored to be home to a mysterious aquatic beast.

Other natural attractions include Liaoning’s Bingyu Valley with its towering rock formations, Heilongjiang’s volcanic lakes – Wu Da Lian Chi and Jingpo Hu, and the huge bird sanctuary at Zhalong Nature Reserve, whose marshy expanse supports hundreds of species of birds during the summer breeding season.



A secluded sandy cove in the Bangchuidao Scenic Area, Dalian

● Shenyang

沈阳

Capital of Liaoning province and the largest city in the Northeast, Shenyang may lack the panache of Dalian, but it serves as an important transport and industrial hub at the heart of the province. Of strategic importance in the state of Yan during the Warring States period (475–221 BC), the town was first called Shenyang during the Mongol Yuan dynasty, before rising to prominence as the first Manchu capital in 1625, when it was known as Mukden and was chosen as the setting for the Imperial Palace, a splendid rival to Beijing's Forbidden City.



A throng of visitors outside the Dazheng Hall, Imperial Palace

🏯 Imperial Palace

171 Shenyang Lu. **Tel** (024) 2484 4192.
Open summer: 8:30am–5:30pm, winter: 9am–4:30pm. 🗺️ 📺 interiors.
Second only in scale to the Forbidden City in Beijing, the Imperial Palace, also called Shenyang Gugong, is Shenyang's premier historical sight, situated in what was the center of the old city. Its construction began in 1625, during the reign of Nurhachi (1559–1626), leader of the Manchus. In 1644, Manchu troops breached the Great Wall at Shanhaiguan (see p134) and swarmed into China to establish the Qing dynasty. Serving as the imperial residence of both Nurhachi and his son and heir Abahai, the palace is composed of 300 rooms. While its features reflect a pronounced Manchu and Mongol influence, the palace was obviously an attempt to emulate its Ming counterpart, the Forbidden City, Beijing. The palace divides into three

sections. The dominating feature of the central section is the **Chongzheng Hall**, from where Abahai oversaw political affairs and received envoys from vassal lands and border territories. In the courtyard behind the hall, the **Qingning Palace** is where the emperor and his concubines resided. The Phoenix Tower, the tallest structure in the imperial grounds can be found here too.

In the western section, the Wensu Pavilion formerly housed one of seven copies of the 36,078-volume *Siku Quanshu* (Complete Library of the Four Treasures), an encyclopedic collection of Chinese literature compiled in the Qing era, of which only four sets survive. The **Dazheng Hall** is the central feature of the eastern section, fronted by pillars emblazoned

with sinuous dragons. It was here that Shunzhi (Aisin Gioro Fulin) was crowned as the first Qing emperor, before he conquered China in 1644. In front of the hall stand the Ten King Pavilions, once used as offices by the chieftains of the "Eight Banners" – the Manchu system of land and hereditary divisions. The palace has undergone extensive restoration, and the halls are all open to visitors. It achieved UNESCO World Heritage Site status in 2004.

🗿 Mao Statue

Zhongshan Square.

The statue of Mao Zedong situated in Zhongshan Square in downtown Shenyang stands as a reminder of a vanished era. Mao statues tower over public squares across China, including such far-flung outposts as Lijiang (see pp396–7) in Yunnan and Kashgar (see pp514–15) in Xinjiang, but this example is perhaps the most histrionic, depicting Mao's giant monolithic figure as a superman in an overcoat.

🗿 North Pagoda

27 Beita Jie. **Tel** (024) 8661 4081.

Open 8am–3pm. 🗺️

Built between 1643 and 1645, Bei Ta is the only one of four temples and pagodas situated on the city boundaries in a decent state of repair. The surviving features of the original pagoda are the Great Hall and Falun Temple.

🏛️ 18 September Museum

46 Wanghuan Nanjie. **Tel** (024) 8832 0918. **Open** 9am–4pm Tue–Sun. 🗺️ 📺

The Jiuyiba Lishi Bowuguan commemorates the occupation of Shenyang on September 18, 1931, by Japanese troops. Its exhibits make up the most comprehensive chronicle of the Japanese aggression in Manchuria. Like other museums with a similar theme, some of the displays can be rather gruesome.



Wei Tuo Buddha, North Pagoda



North Tomb's ornate west wall and gateway

North Tomb

12 Taishan Lu, Beiling Gongyuan, North Shenyang. **Open** summer: 7am–5pm; winter: 8am–4pm. 📶 interiors.

The huge Beiling Park houses the tomb of Abahai (1592–1643), the son of Nurhachi, and his wife, Empress Borjigit. One of the largest and best-preserved of China's imperial mausoleums, the North Tomb (Bei Ling) was built in 1643, the year of the emperor's death. The layout of the complex is typical of imperial Chinese tombs (see pp 110–11), and is accessed through Zhenghong Gate to the south. Of the pavilions lying on either side of the gate, the easternmost pavilion was used as a dressing

room for visiting emperors, while the westernmost was the site for sacrificing animals. A spirit way (*shendao*), lined with animal statues, leads to the Hall of Eminent Favor (Ling'en Dian). Right behind the hall lie the tree-covered imperial burial mounds, formally called Zhao Ling (the Luminous Tomb), and an exquisite dragon screen.



Mythical animal, North Tomb

East Tomb

3 miles (5 km) E of Shenyang. 210 Dong Ling Lu. **Open** summer: 7:30am–5:30pm; winter: 8am–4:30pm. 📶

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

440 miles (700 km) NE of Beijing.

📶 5,000,000. 📶 Bldg 4, 290 Shi Fu Lu (024) 2295 8888.

Transport

✈️ Shenyang Airport. 🚆 South Train Station or North Train Station. 🚌 South Bus Station, Express Bus Station, CAAC (buses to airport).

The impressive East Tomb (Dong Ling), the final resting place of Nurhachi and his wife Yehenala, was completed in 1651.

Arranged attractively on the slopes of Mount Tianzhu near the Hun River, the three-storied tomb has a flight of 108 steps leading to its main gate. The number 108 is sacred to the Chinese; in the Daoist celestial order, 108 represents the 36 stars of heaven and the 72 stars of hell. The number is also sacred to Buddhists,

reflected in the 108 beads on Buddhist rosaries and the number of *luohan* in certain Buddhist sects. Photography is allowed outside only.

Shenyang City Center

- ① Imperial Palace
- ② Mao Statue
- ③ North Pagoda
- ④ 18 September Museum
- ⑤ North Tomb



0 km 1
0 miles 1



Key to Symbols see back flap



The impressive Bija Shan, connected to the mainland by an isthmus at low tide

② Jinzhou 锦州

125 miles (200 km) SW of Shenyang.




An industrial city on the eastern shores of the Liaoning Gulf, Jinzhou is visited mainly for its storehouse of Jurassic period fossils, of which more than 300 are housed in the private **Wenya Museum** (Bowuguan). Set up by the amateur collector Du Wenya, this unremarkable three-story building stands on Heping Lu although there is talk of relocating it in the near future. The star attraction is a specimen of *dushi kongzi niao*

(*Confuciusornis duihou*), a winged, avian dinosaur with feathered features, that was unearthed in 1998 in western Liaoning, a region rich in dinosaur remains. Other exhibits include another dinosaur with bird-like features known as *Sinosauropteryx*, a 120-million-year-old and 29-ft (9-m) fossilized tree, and fossilized dinosaur eggs from the Jurassic period. Jutting out of Jinzhou Bay, 21 miles (34 km) south of town, is **Bija Shan** (Penholder Mount). It is connected to the mainland by an

isthmus that emerges from the sea at low tide. The island's peaks – which resemble a Chinese pen rest – support several Buddhist temples and offer magnificent views over the bay. Visitors who wish to walk to Bija Shan along the isthmus should check the timings of low-tide before planning a trip. An alternative way of reaching the island is by taking a fishing boat.

Wenya Museum

33–13 Erduan, Heping Lu. **Tel** (0416) 234 3999. **Open** 8am–6pm daily. 

Bija Shan

Tel (0416) 358 1735.

Open 8:30am–5pm daily. 

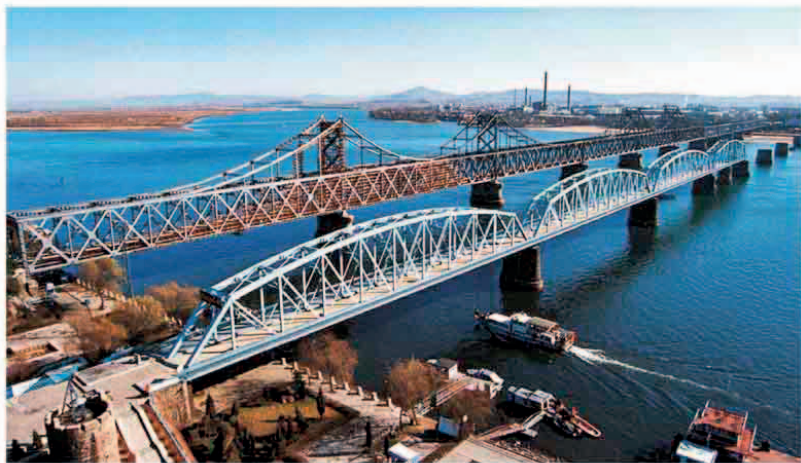
③ Dandong 丹东

172 miles (277 km) SE of Shenyang.

 7,500,000.  20
Shiwei Lu, (0415) 213 7493.

Presided over by a statue of Mao Zedong in the heart of town, Dandong is located along the Yalu Jiang (Yalu River) in the eastern part of Liaoning province. It would have been little more than an obscure outpost, ignored by travelers, if it were not for its proximity to North Korea. Today, the largest border town in China, Dandong has an unmistakable Korean stamp, from the *shaokao* (barbecue) dishes, to the signs in *hangul* (the Korean script), and the Korean shops and souvenirs.

Within reach of Dandong are several other interesting sights, and the town acts as a useful launch pad to Changbai Shan (see pp454–5) and the stunning mountain lake of Tian Chi. Dandong's trademark sight is the **Yalu Jiang Duan Qiao** (Yalu River Bridge) that reaches out into the river alongside the bridge connecting China with North Korea – this railway line runs all the way from Beijing to Pyongyang. The steel bridge ends halfway along its full span, the remainder having been dismantled by the Koreans. The surviving half in Chinese territory bears the scars of



The Yalu Jiang Duan Qiao, that once connected China with North Korea



Dramatic karst hills rising up from the river, Bingyu Valley

combat, having been strafed in 1950 by US fighter planes during the Korean War. The ruin serves as a monument to the **Kang Mei Yuan Chao**

Zhazheng (War to Resist US Aggression & Aid Korea), as the Chinese refer to their part in the conflict. Boats and speedboats offer cruises along the Yalu River, for visitors who want to get within two or three feet of the hermit kingdom. It is permitted to take photographs of North Korea, though there are few photogenic

features – just factories, civilians, and Stalinist housing. Those who wish to learn more about China's contribution to the Korean War can visit the **Museum to Commemorate Aiding Korea & Resisting America**, with a plethora of exhibits on the war. Even though the captions are almost exclusively in Chinese, the nationalistic refrain is clearly evident.

Located 31 miles (50 km) northwest of town, the 2,760-ft (840-m) **Fenghuang Shan** (Phoenix Emperor Mountain) is associated with Daoist mythology. It supports a crop of temples and caves, besides offering some excellent hiking trails. A good time to visit is during the temple fair (*miaohui*), held every April. The **Hushan Great Wall**, a little-visited and

restored vestige of the Great Wall, is located 20 km (12 miles) northeast of Dandong, near Jiuliancheng town, overlooking the Yalu River and the North Korean border. This section of the wall, dating from the reign of the Ming Wanli emperor, is its easternmost point. In 2003, the **Great Wall Museum** opened at the site, displaying relics associated with the defensive barrier. Since the North Korean border is not always clearly marked, hiking around this area is inadvisable, in case visitors inadvertently cross over into North Korea.

Yalu Jiang Duan Qiao
Tel (0415) 212 2145. **Open** daily. 🗺️

Fenghuang Shan
Fengchen City. **Open** daily. 🗺️



A traffic policewoman on duty

4 Bingyu Valley 冰峪沟

149 miles (240 km) NE of Dalian. 🗺️
from Dalian to Zhuanghe, then bus.
🗺️ from Dalian to Zhuanghe, then bus to Bingyu Fengjingqu.

A picturesque river valley, Bingyu Gou lies sprawled across 42 sq miles (110 sq km). It offers long riverside walks and hikes in fabulous trekking terrain overlooked by jagged peaks, karst rock formations, temples, and cliffs hollowed out by numerous caves. Opportunities for climbing, fishing, and rafting are also available. The valley can be reached via the town of Zhuanghe, northeast of Dalian. Accommodations are available for those who wish to stay overnight. It is best to avoid the holiday periods as well as weekends during summer, when the valley receives crowds of visitors.



Steps leading to a Daoist temple on Fenghuang Shan





9 Dalian

大连

Sparkling with self-assurance and confidence, Dalian is Northeast China's most dynamic and attractive city. It is famed throughout China for its top-notch hotels, progressive economy, modern and European-style architecture, football team, and cleanliness. The city resembles Shanghai in its port setting, cosmopolitanism, Special Economic Zone status, and history of foreign control, but has the added attraction of a coastline dotted with scenic beaches and lawns. Located at the southernmost point of Northeast China near the tip of the Liaodong peninsula, Dalian enjoys sea breezes and a warmer winter than other parts of the region.



Colonial architecture and modern highrises around Zhongshan Square

Exploring Dalian

The city of Dalian has few temples or monuments of note, but most visitors come for its beaches, seafood, shopping, and striking modernity. Serving as a dazzling hub from which major streets radiate,

Zhongshan Square (Zhongshan Guangchang) is laid out with lawns and encircled by a ring of colonial buildings dating from the Russian and Japanese eras. At night, locals gather here to dance and listen to music, and to watch the occasional cultural performances that are held. The most interesting buildings along the square's periphery are the Dalian Hotel (Dalian Binguan) at No. 4 to the south, and the Bank of China (Zhongguo Yinhang) on the northern rim at No. 9.

Dalian's main shopping area is **Tianjin Jie**, a pedestrianized stretch of shops northwest of Zhongshan Square. Beneath Shengli Square to the west is a huge underground shopping

center, while the Friendship Store lies farther east on Renmin Lu.

Dotting Dalian are several tree-lined streets and spacious parks. Southwest of Zhongshan Square is **Labor Park** (Laodong Gongyuan), with its hallmark giant football at the center. It is known for hosting the Locust Flower Festival each spring. Farther southwest is Dalian's other main square, **Renmin Square**. Formerly known as Stalin Square, it was originally overlooked by a large statue

of a Russian soldier, that now stands in nearby Lushun. The square is pleasantly laid out with grass and is lit at night.

Dalian is famous for its beaches and these can easily be reached by bus or taxi. In the northeast of the Dalian peninsula, just off Binhai Lu near the Eighteen Bends, is the scenic **Donghai Park**. Covering 1,112 acres (450 ha), this seaside park has a 3,937-ft (1,200-m) long coastline. It was founded to celebrate Dalian's centennial anniversary, and has striking statues of oversized sea-creatures, including a giant octopus and a shark. There are fine sea views, and the water is clean though rather cold until mid-July for swimming. The pebble beach is popular with visitors, who often bring tents and beach towels and spend the day here.

Farther south along the coastal Binhai Lu, the **Bangchuidao Scenic Area** (Bangchuidao Jingqu) has the best beaches on China's east coast, once reserved for party officials and now open to all. Binhai Lu makes for a marvelous walk with fantastic views over the cliffs across the Yellow Sea. The next stop is the more touristy **Tiger Beach Scenic Area** (Laohutan Jingqu), which sports an amusement park and an aquarium. Several miles farther west, the **Fujiazhuang Scenic Area** (Fujiazhuang Jingqu) is also rather boisterous and crowded, and farther still is the Xinghai Beach Scenic Area, housing the immensely popular **Sun Asia Ocean World**. This aquarium has a 381-ft (116-m) long underwater tunnel and several tanks filled with sea-life that attract children in droves.



Statue of a rowing team in midstroke, Xinghai Square

Just off the coast, Xinghai Square was built to commemorate the return of Hong Kong to China in 1997.

Donghai Park

Binhai Lu. **Tel** (0411) 8273 1569.
Open 8:20am–5:30pm daily.

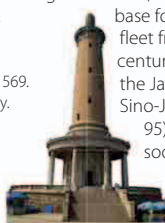
Bangchuidao Scenic Area

Tel (0411) 8289 3888.
Open 8am–7pm daily.

Sun Asia Ocean World

Tel (0411) 8467 9517.
Open hours vary.

Enviros: Lying 22 miles (35 km) southwest of Dalian, **Lushun** enjoys an excellent strategic position, its harbor



Tower at the top of Baiyu Hill in Lushun

benefiting from the perennial ice-free waters. Known as Port Arthur, it was the chief naval base for the Chinese Beiyang fleet from the mid-19th century, and was seized by the Japanese during the Sino-Japanese War (1894–95). Returned to China soon after, the port fell to the Russians in 1897, who developed the base for their Pacific fleet, but Japan wrested Lushun back in 1905, forfeiting it only at the end of World War II. Among the surviving Russian architecture is the **Railway Station**, built in 1898 as the terminus of the South

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

180 miles (300 km) S of Shenyang.  3,400,000.  Locust Flower Festival (Spring).
 9 Jie Fang Road, (0411) 836 91165.

Transport

 Dalian Airport.  Dalian Bus Station, CAAC (buses to airport), Heishijiao Bus Station.
 from Yantai & Weihai.

Manchuria Railway (*see pp440–41*). The **Japanese-Russian Prison**, which incarcerated Russian, Japanese, and Chinese prisoners, also has a gory torture room and gallows. Tours take in the compound and photographs on display. North of the bay and near the station, **Baiyu Hill** is topped with rows of cannons and a tower, plus great views.

Visitors must check with the Public Security Bureau just off Zhongshan Square for permission to visit, since Lushun is a closed military zone.

Japanese-Russian Prison

139 Xiangyong Jie. **Tel** (0411) 8661 0675/6. **Open** 9am–3:30pm daily.



A cruise liner docked near Xinghai Square

Dalian City Center

- ① Zhongshan Square
- ② Tianjin Jie
- ③ Labor Park
- ④ Renmin Square
- ⑤ Donghai Park

- ⑥ Bangchuidao Scenic Area
- ⑦ Tiger Beach Scenic Area
- ⑧ Fujiazhuang Scenic Area
- ⑨ Sun Asia Ocean World

0 km 2
0 miles 2



Key to Symbols *see back flap*

For hotels and restaurants in this region *see pp558–63 and pp572–85*



Living quarters at the Puppet Emperor's Palace, Changchun

6 Changchun

长春

185 miles (300 km) NE of Shenyang.

2,200,000. Xiangtan Airport.

to Dalian, Shanghai & Tianjin.

1323 Xi'an Da Rd, (0431) 8892 9311.

The sprawling modern capital of Jilin province is cheerfully known as "Eternal Spring" despite its brutal winter. The city was badly damaged at the end of World War II, which ended its ignominious phase as the capital of the Japanese-controlled state of Manchukuo, when it was known as Hsin-Ching. Industrialized after the war, Changchun today has emerged as an attractive, green city in China's northeastern "rustbelt," famed for its car production.

Changchun's only major sight of interest is the **Puppet Emperor's Palace**, the residence of the "Last Emperor," Pu Yi, whom the Japanese installed as the Emperor of Manchukuo. Located in the city's northeast, the palace, with its period

furnishings and old photographs, serves as an apt epitaph to the tragic folly of Pu Yi's life. The palace lacks the majesty of the Forbidden City, and instead is suggestive of the sanctuary of an exiled monarch. Renovations have, however, restored much of its former grandeur. It is now a fascinating museum of artifacts relating to the 13 powerless years that Pu Yi spent here. Scenes from Bertolucci's 1987 epic film *The Last Emperor* were filmed here. Other period buildings include the Manchukuo State Council Building on Xinmin Dajie in the southeast of town, a further relic of the Japanese occupation. Open to

the public, the building is a government structure that features a brass Otis elevator that once ferried Pu Yi aloft.

In the northeast corner of People's Square on the main street of Renmin Dajie stands **Banruo Temple**, an active Buddhist temple dating to 1921. Inside the main hall is a statue of Sakyamuni with attendant *arhat* (see pp36–7). Changchun is also famous for its cinematic output and the city's film studio can be visited, although it is only really of interest to specialist film buffs.

Puppet Emperor's Palace

5 Guangfu Lu. **Open** 8:30am–5:30pm.

wmhg.com.cn



Official buildings at the Puppet Emperor's Palace, Changchun

The Last Emperor

Aisin Gioro or Pu Yi ascended the Qing throne at the age of three in 1908 after the death of his uncle, the Guangxu emperor. His brief reign as the Xuantong emperor was brought to an end on February 12, 1912, when he abdicated the throne in the Forbidden City to make way for the new Republican government. The powerless Pu Yi continued to live in the palace until 1924, before furtively escaping to live in the Japanese concession in Tianjin. He was later installed as the Japanese puppet emperor of Manchukuo, residing in his palace in Changchun. At the end of World War II, he was arrested and handed over to the Chinese Communists, who imprisoned him in 1950. In 1959, Mao granted him amnesty. Pu Yi never returned to the Forbidden City, and he died of cancer, childless and anonymous, in 1967, after working for seven years as a gardener at the Beijing Botanical Gardens.



Pu Yi (1905–1967), China's "Last Emperor"

8 Changbai Shan

长白山

Listed as a Unesco Biosphere Reserve, Changbai Shan (Ever-White Mountains) is the largest of China's nature reserves at 760 sq miles (1,965 sq km) with a rich abundance of fauna and flora. Thick belts of deciduous and coniferous forest harbor important medicinal plants like ginseng, and endangered animals like the Siberian (or Manchurian) Tiger, while above the treeline lies the only alpine tundra in East Asia. The highlight of any visit to Changbai Shan is Tian Chi (Heaven's Lake), a glittering volcanic crater that straddles the mountainous border with North Korea. This is China at its wildest and most spectacular, with opportunities for hiking amid dramatic scenery, although the area is only open to exploration during summer and early autumn.



White birch

Despite heavy deforestation, there are still healthy numbers of over 80 species of tree such as these white birch.



★ Changbai Waterfall

Tian Chi releases huge quantities of water (the mountains are capped with snow between October and June) creating the dramatic 225-ft (68-m) high waterfall near the volcanic crater.



Ginseng

The root of the ginseng (*Panax ginseng*) plant has been valued in China for thousands of years for its healing and rejuvenating properties. Native to Korea and Northeast China, ginseng is a slow-growing herbaceous perennial that is widely farmed (although wild specimens are most highly prized). Ginseng from Northeast China is especially esteemed and was once protected under imperial edict to prevent overharvesting. Its efficacy does not develop until the plant is around six years of age. Premium quality wild ginseng is very expensive costing between US\$150–450 per gram. However, buyer beware; the market is awash with fake produce.



The root and leaves of the ginseng plant

Key

- International Border
- Path



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

16 miles (25 km) S of Baihe;
350 miles (560 km) E of Jilin. **?**
(0432) 6243 5683. **Open** Jun–Sep
(snowbound the rest of the year).
Last bus back to Baihe 4pm.

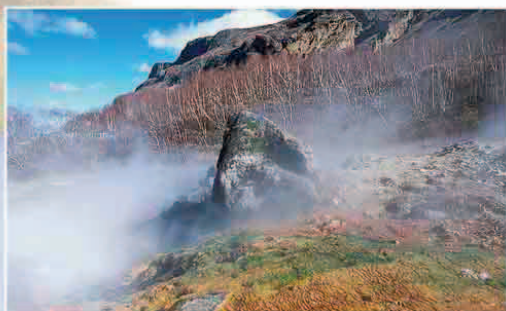
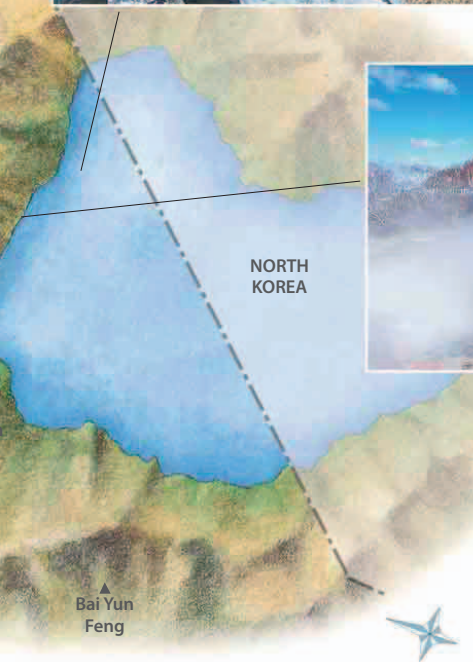
from Jilin (CITS).

Transport

or to Baihe, then bus or taxi.

★ Tian Chi – Heaven's Lake

The volcano last erupted in 1702, wiping out most of the surrounding forest. The deep waters of Tian Chi (China's deepest lake) are said to harbor an aquatic beast similar to the Loch Ness Monster.



Hot springs near Tian Chi

Many springs reach temperatures of over 176° F (80° C) – hot enough for local hawkers to boil eggs and for visitors to take therapeutic dips in steamy pools.

Climbing Changbai Shan

Due to heavy snowfall, Changbai Shan is only open to trekking from June to October. Although a tempting 8 miles (13 km) in circumference, Tian Chi cannot be circumnavigated as it overlaps with North Korea. Prepare for unpredictable weather conditions as it can get very cold (and carry plenty of food and water). The more sedentary can hire a 4-wheel-drive taxi all the way to the main peak. Visitors can overnight in one of the hotels on Changbai Shan or in tents on the lake shore. Tours are easy to find and usually include two nights in a hotel.



Trekking opportunities

Even at peak periods, it is easy to enjoy and explore the wilderness and beauty of Changbai Shan at leisure – however, do not stray into North Korea.

9 Harbin

哈尔滨

Situated in the far north of China close to the vast sub-Siberian plains, Harbin is the pleasant capital of Heilongjiang province. It was a simple fishing hamlet on the Songhua River until the Russians linked it to both Vladivostok and Dalian (see pp450–51) by rail at the close of the 19th century. The railway and the Bolshevik Revolution brought large numbers of Russians to the city, prompting a change in Harbin's fortunes. Once called "Little Moscow" for its charming pockets of Russian architecture, Harbin still vaguely resembles an outpost of Imperial Russia. While the city's summer is quite pleasant, its winter temperatures dip below -22°F (-30°C), perfect weather for its spectacular Ice Festival.



People walking and relaxing along Harbin's riverbank

Exploring Harbin

Harbin's most pleasurable aspects lie within the Daoli district (Daoli Qu), the area stretching from the main railway station to the Songhua River. The district's downtown area is lined with several upmarket boutiques, fur shops, and department stores. Visitors can walk north along the pedestrianized shopping street of **Zhongyang Dajie** to explore the picturesque cobbled alleys and architectural legacies of the grand Russian era. Numerous shops and buildings on Zhongyang Dajie have been restored, and their histories recorded in English on exterior plaques. The lanes leading off Zhongyang Dajie are ideal for a leisurely stroll, while along its length are several good bars and restaurants. Lined with

ice sculptures in winter, the streets here are alive with the bustle of pavement cafés during summer.

East of Zhongyang Dajie is the **Church of St. Sofia**, the city's most spectacular Russian edifice. Dating from 1907, it is also the largest Russian Orthodox church in the Far East. This Byzantine-style red-brick cathedral is topped with a green, onion-shaped dome. It houses the Architecture and Arts Centre, a rewarding photographic exhibition of the

Russian influence on Harbin.

To the north, **Zhaolin Park** is the setting for many of the ice sculptures of the annual Ice Festival (Bingdeng Jie), officially held every year from January 5 to February 25. In winter, the park is transformed into a

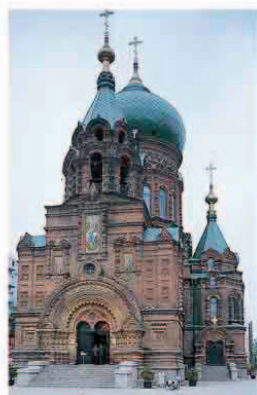
glistening wonderland of brightly lit ice sculptures, ranging from simple statues to buildings, monuments, and temples.

Close by, Harbin's riverfront is dotted with a number of interesting sights. The **Flood Control Monument** at the northern end of Zhongyang Dajie was erected in 1958 to commemorate the river's flood-prone history. Stretching 26 miles (42 km) along the riverbank is **Stalin Park**, China's last public memorial to Joseph Stalin. It is an engaging riverside promenade and meeting place for Harbin locals. In summer, boat trips can be taken along the river and across to **Sun Island Park** on the northern bank. The park has a variety of recreational attractions and can also be reached by cable car. In winter, the river freezes over completely, and visitors can hire go-carts or simply walk across. An annual snow sculpture exhibition is held on Sun Island, which is also home to the Siberian Tiger Park, where the endangered Manchurian tiger is currently being bred. Visitors may want to give this rather dismal place a miss, as the fenced-off area seems much too small for the big cats, who are constantly being teased with live chickens by noisy busloads of tourists.

Southeast of the main railway station, the **Provincial Museum** has a rather uninspiring collection of exhibits with no



A motorcycle taxi in Harbin



The splendid Byzantine-style Church of St. Sofia



Tiger at the Siberian Tiger Park, Harbin

Church of St Sofia

Diduan Jie. **Open** daily.

Sun Island Park

3 Jingbei Lu. **Open** daily.

Jile Si

9 Dong Dazhi Jie. **Open** daily.

Harbin Northern Forest Zoo

Gezidong. **Open** daily.

English captions. Farther east along Dong Dazhi Jie are some of Harbin's Buddhist temples, all of which were damaged during the Cultural Revolution.

The quiet **Jile Si** is home to an active Buddhist community. The complex follows a typical Buddhist temple layout with Drum and Bell Towers, Hall of Heavenly Kings, and a main hall, adorned with statues of Sakyamuni (the Historical Buddha) and various bodhisattvas. Adjacent is the seven-tiered **Qiji Futu Pagoda**, standing within the largest temple complex in the province. Nearby on Wenmiao Jie, the Confucian Temple is a sizeable shrine also worth visiting. Harbin's zoo has been moved 25 miles (41 km) away from the city center, renamed **Harbin Northern Forest Zoo**, and is now one of the largest zoos in China.

Environs: 12 miles (20 km) southwest of Harbin in the small village of Pingfang, the **Japanese Germ Warfare Experimental Base** is the city's most notorious sight. Formerly operated by the Japanese army's 731 Division,



The elegant, seven-tiered Qiji Futu Pagoda in the northeast of town

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical information

340 miles (550 km) N of Shenyang. 4,750,000. 14 Songhuajiang Jie, (0451) 5360 1717. Ice Festival (Jan 5–Feb 25), Harbin Music Festival (Jul).

Transport

Harbin Bus Station, CAAC (buses to airport).

the gruesome remains of the experimental base are now open to the public. It housed a top-secret research unit that subjected thousands of Chinese, Korean, British, Mongolian, and Russian prisoners to some truly horrendous experiments. The Japanese destroyed the base at the end of World War II, and it was only after the dogged efforts of a Japanese journalist in the 1980s that the existence of the base was exposed. The museum is largely limited to photographs and all captions are in Chinese, but the site survives as a somber monument to the atrocities of World War II.

Japanese Germ Warfare Experimental Base

Pingfang. **Tel** (0451) 8710 8731. **Open** 9am–3:30pm Tue–Sun.

Harbin City Center

- ① Zhongyang Dajie
- ② Church of St. Sofia
- ③ Zhaolin Park
- ④ Flood Control Monument
- ⑤ Stalin Park
- ⑥ Sun Island Park
- ⑦ Provincial Museum
- ⑧ Jile Temple
- ⑨ Qiji Futu Pagoda



0 km 1
0 miles 1

Key to Symbols see back flap



Diving off the edge of Diaoshuilou Pubu (Diaoshuilou Waterfall), Jingpo Hu

10 Jingpo Hu 镜泊湖

62 miles (100 km) SW of Mudanjiang. **Tel** (0453) 627 0180. 🚗 from Mudanjiang to Dongjing, then minibus to Jingpo Hu in summer only; in winter via taxi. 🚗 from Harbin & Mudanjiang. 📍 34 Jingfu Jie, Mudanjiang. **Open** daily. 📷

An attractive, 31-mile (50-km) long winding strip of water, Jingpo Hu was carved from the Mudan River by volcanic eruptions thousands of years ago. The surrounding forested slopes are clearly reflected in the lake's waters, hence its name, "Mirror Lake." In summer, busloads of visitors – largely Chinese and Russian – gather at Jingpo Shanzhuang, a village on the northern shore equipped with abundant resort facilities. Although tourism has spoiled some of the lake's natural beauty, much of its huge body of water and the luxuriant wooded hills are still tranquil and worth exploring. The 131-ft (40-m) wide waterfall **Diaoshuilou Pubu** lies at the northern end of the lake. Its cascade is most impressive in the wetter summer months, while in winter, it freezes into a spectacular curtain of ice.

Visiting the lake is possible in winter, although temperatures

can also dip well below freezing point through to April, with fewer transport and accommodations options. July and August are the wettest and busiest months, and booking ahead at lakeside hotels is recommended. An alternative is to stay in Mudanjiang city to the north, from where buses depart for Jingpo Hu. Activities include boating, fishing, and hiking and boat tours around the lake can also be arranged. Not far from the waterfall is a Korean minority village.

Several volcanic features dot the surrounding area, including lava caves and the **Dixia Senlin** (Underground Forest), 31 miles (50 km) northwest of Jingpo Hu. Not

actually subterranean, the forest has grown spectacularly in the fertile soil of ten dormant volcanic craters. The delicate ecosystem here supports a

varied animal and plant population including black bears, leopards, purple pines, fir, and dragon spruces. Taxis and buses leave regularly from Jingpo Hu's main gate to Dixia Senlin. It is also worth looking



A visitor enjoying a ride on a jet ski at Jingpo Hu

out for tour buses to the lake that include trips to Dixia Senlin.

📍 Dixia Senlin

50 km NW of Jingpo Hu. **Tel** (0453) 627 0180. **Open** daily. 📷

11 Zhalong Nature Reserve

扎龙自然保护区

17 miles (27 km) SE of Qiqiha'er. **Tel** (0452) 244 1346. 🚗 to Qiqiha'er, then bus. 📷 **Open** daily. 📷

China's largest wetland reserve, the 518,700-acre (210,000-ha) Zhalong Nature Reserve lies in the Songhua-Nen River plain, along a major bird migratory route from the Arctic to Southeast Asia. Zhalong's reedbeds, ponds, and marshland provide an ideal home to almost 300 species of birds, including swans, storks, ducks, geese, egret, white ibis, and other waterfowl.

Established in 1979, the reserve is one of the few breeding grounds in the Far East for the marsh grassbird (*Megalurus pyerri*). Six of the world's 15 varieties of crane are also found here. The most famous are the endangered red-crowned crane (*Grus japonensis*), a tall bird with black and white plumage and a red crest that is the symbol of longevity in China, and the white-naped crane (*Grus vipio*), both of which are bred at a research center here. Other rare bird species that visit Zhalong include the swan goose (*Anser cygnoides*), and the Siberian crane (*Grus leucogeranus*). Birds arrive in spring, and begin breeding in summer. The best time to visit the reserve is from April to June. It is advisable to take binoculars, as Zhalong's population of waterfowl can be elusive.



The marshlands at Zhalong Nature Reserve, important to migrating birds

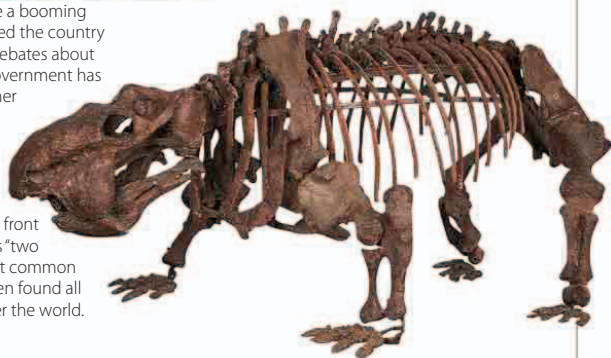
Fossils of Northeast China

China has long been an excellent hunting ground for fossil collectors. Over 130 million years ago much of northern China was volcanic, richly forested and teeming with life. As the volcanoes erupted they covered the land with dust, hot ash, and mud, and for many years fossils of all kinds have been uncovered, from simple, shellfish-like ammonites through to complete skeletons of large dinosaurs. More recently, the area of northeast China has captured the imagination because of the discovery of at least five feathered species of dinosaurs. The feathers were not only used for flight, but also for insulation and perhaps decoration. Such has been the excitement – and indeed money – generated by these discoveries that fossils have become big business in the area. Locals are discovering and illegally selling what they find, and even going so far as to create fake fossils that have fooled the scientists.



Paleontology has become a booming business in China and placed the country at the heart of important debates about evolution. Therefore the government has been keen to sponsor further research and museums.

This Dicynodont was a plant-eating reptile the size of a pig, with two large front teeth – its name means “two dog teeth.” One of the most common dinosaur fossils, it has been found all over the world.



Dinosaur eggs are classified by size and shell type because it is difficult to tell what species they were laid by. Some are very similar to birds' eggs, further strengthening the theory that birds descended from a specific group of dinosaurs.

Dragonfly fossils like this reveal even the delicate tracery of the insect's wings. This amazing detail was retained thanks to a thin dusting of fine volcanic ash that was followed by a thick layer of mud, preventing oxidation and rapid decay.



Microraptor gui was a four-winged creature – its legs were feathered too – that glided from tree to tree. The outline of the feathers can clearly be seen, and some think that it might represent an intermediate stage between dinosaurs and birds.



One of the five volcanic lakes at Wu Da Lian Chi

12 Wu Da Lian Chi & the River Border

五大连池

232 miles (375 km) N of Harbin.

🚗 from Harbin or Qiqihar to Beian, then bus to Wu Da Lian Chi.

🚗 from Harbin.

A large and popular nature reserve situated in a volcanic field, Wu Da Lian Chi lies in a region in western Heilongjiang inhabited by the ancient Daur minority. Its name, meaning "Five Big Connected Lakes," is derived from the five bodies of water created by a succession of volcanic eruptions, the most recent occurring in the 18th century. The resulting lava, which blocked the Bei River and created the lakes, has turned Wu Da Lian Chi into a volcanic spa, with geothermal springs and sulphurous waters that have a reputation throughout China for their curative powers.

The 14 volcanoes at Wu Da Lian Chi add a measure of drama and character to the region's flat terrain. To the west of Number 3 Lake are the two principal volcanic vents, **Lao Hei Shan** (Old Black Hill) and **Huoshao Shan** (Fire Burn Hill). The sites of the most recent eruptions, which took place between 1719–21, both volcanoes are popular with visitors and can be climbed for panoramic views of the area. Surrounded by fields of lava, Laohei Shan

generated most of the magma that spilled out into the surrounding area. However, like all the volcanoes at Wu Da Lian Chi, it is now dormant. Visitors can also bathe in the area's pungent hot water springs and taste the local mineral water. Apparently bursting with dissolved minerals and curative powers, the waters are sought by a devoted band of the ill and infirm, as well as elderly Chinese, who flock to Wu Da Lian Chi to avail of treatment in the numerous sanatoriums that have opened here. The waters are also the star attraction of the annual Water Drinking Festival of the local Daur people, held every May.

Underground caverns dot the area, including the freezing **Crystal Palace** and **Bai Long Dong** (White Dragon Cave), subterranean ice caves decorated with ice sculptures and crowded with visitors in summer. The nearest settlement is the village

of Wu Da Lian Chi, which has several hotels. Since the guided tours available often make costly and needless diversions, visitors may find it more efficient to travel independently by regular taxi or motorcycle cab.

🏠 Bai Long Dong

Closed for renovations; call ahead to check if open: (0456) 722 1540. 📞

Environs: The **Heilong Jiang** (Black Dragon River, known as the Amur in Russia), that lends its name to this province, demarcates a long section of the border between China and Siberia. Several of Northeast China's ethnic tribes traditionally settled in this region, making their living from the river, although many have now been assimilated into the larger Han Chinese population. It is possible to see Siberian forests and small settlements along the border. Since most parts of this region require a permit, it is advisable to check with Harbin's Public Security Bureau.

Connected to Harbin by train, the large border town of **Heihe** sees a healthy cross-border trade with the Russian port town of Blagoveshchensk, which can be visited with a tourist visa for Russia, arranged in Beijing. Hour-long cruises along the Heilong Jiang are also available. At the northern tip of Heilongjiang is **Mohe**, whose main attraction is the spectacular aurora borealis (northern lights) in winter. The town records almost 22 hours of daylight in June.



The frozen Heilong Jiang, used for traveling through the heavily forested terrain

River Border Minorities

Although the majority of the population in Heilongjiang is Han Chinese, the River Border is home to several minorities, including the Oroqen, Hezhen, and Ewenki. Traditionally these nomadic peoples eke out a living in this inhospitable environment. They rely on animal furs for clothes and local plants for medicines, and, when on the move, even construct tents out of birch bark. The Oroqen are hunters, descended from Khitan nomads. They speak an Altaic language and are noted for their shaman and animistic customs and rituals. Numbering a few thousand, the Hezhen are one of China's least populous tribes but their skill at fishing is legendary. The Ewenki supplement their fishing and hunting mainly through breeding reindeer. For all these peoples, however, this way of life is slowly dying out: hunting has been banned in some of the mountain reserves, forcing the nomads to settle down as farmers, while others have left for the cities in search of an easier life.



The Ewenki are dependant on reindeer which are well adapted to survive in the cold climate. However this nomadic and traditional way of life is slowly disappearing.



Ewenki tents traditionally have a frame made out of birch poles that are covered with birch bark in summer and with animal skins in winter. Practical *feng shui* means that the entrance is usually south-facing to avoid the wind from the north.



The Hezhen are legendary for their fish-skin shirts, trousers and even shoes. The dried skins of carp, pike and salmon are stitched together to make waterproof items that are highly prized.

The Oroqen are expert hunters who even make clothes from the animals that they kill for food.

Subsidies are now enticing some of them to settle down as farmers.



The Oroqen's traditional hunting grounds have suffered from encroachment by industry as well as general deforestation and finally by China's newfound enthusiasm for wildlife preserves that have closed off large areas of the wilderness from hunting.



INNER MONGOLIA & THE SILK ROADS

Introducing Inner Mongolia
& the Silk Roads **464–471**

Inner Mongolia & Ningxia **472–481**

Gansu & Qinghai **482–505**

Xinjiang **506–519**



Inner Mongolia & The Silk Roads

This massive region, forming a giant northwesterly arc linking Siberia with Central Asia, takes up a third of China's area. Geographically it ranges from forest to sandy desert to grassland, whilst ethnically these lands are home to several Chinese minorities, notably Mongolians, Uighur, and Hui, as well as, among others, Russians, Kazakhs, and Kyrgyz. Three provinces – Inner Mongolia, Ningxia, and Xinjiang – are officially designated autonomous regions. The main attractions in Xinjiang and Gansu are the dusty oasis towns of the Silk Road, replete with Buddhist cave paintings, evocative ruins, and chaotic markets, whilst elsewhere the appeal is the beauty of China's last great wildernesses.



A monk prays at the Gao Miao, Zhongwei

Key

- Expressway
- Main road
- Minor road
- Main railway
- Other railway
- International border
- Provincial border
- ▲ Summit



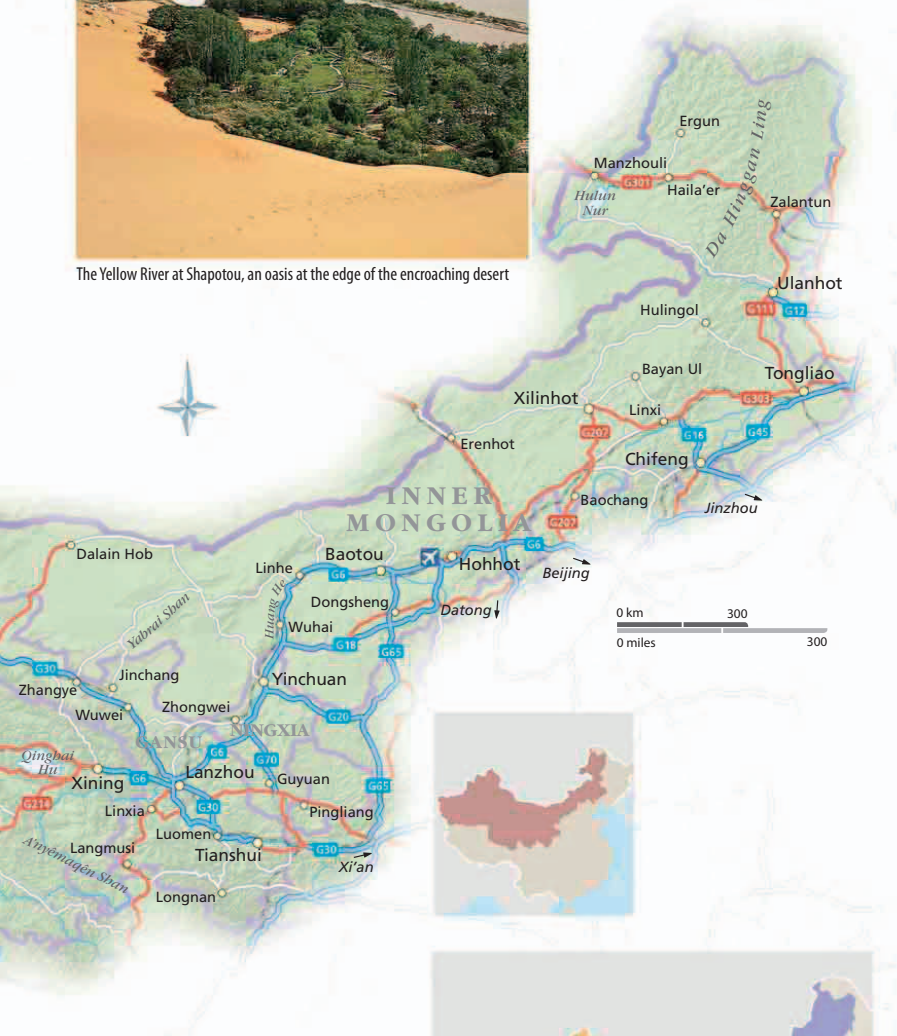
Buddha sculpture at Bingling Si, Gansu, still retaining some of its original color

Getting Around

There are airports in the major towns and cities, while the rail network is confined to trunk routes linking major centers. Independent travelers will need to use local bus services, which are comprehensive but crowded and uncomfortable. Because of the distances involved, visitors are likely to focus on one area at a time – the Silk Road, or the Mongolian grasslands, for example.



The Yellow River at Shapotou, an oasis at the edge of the encroaching desert



Nomads beside Qinghai Hu, the largest lake in China



A PORTRAIT OF INNER MONGOLIA & THE SILK ROADS

This vast region, comprising Inner Mongolia, Ningxia, Gansu, Qinghai, and Xinjiang, covers a significant proportion of the total area of China. Although sparsely populated, the area's appeal lies in its magnificent landscape, the distinctive lifestyles of its indigenous peoples, and its Silk Road past. This fabled route's legacies are visible everywhere, from historic sights to the Islamic religion.

Bordering the Mongolian Republic and Russia to the north, the Central Asian states to the west, and the Indian subcontinent to the south, this region is now indissolubly attached to China, as a result of vigorously pursued Chinese hegemony. Today, although the local population is largely Han, they have little in common with the area's indigenous peoples. Only the eastern portion of Gansu seems naturally to form part of China proper. Gansu to the west of Lanzhou and the other provinces are at best indifferent to and at worst in uneasy thrall to the government in Beijing, which has often ruled with callous disregard for local sentiments. For the Chinese, there still lingers a historic suspicion of the barbarians living beyond the frontier marked by the course of the Great Wall.

However, historic cultural identities have been retained, and this, together with the region's distinctive geography, means that Inner Mongolia and the northwest have a different character to most of China. Because of this, these three areas – Ningxia, Xinjiang, and Inner Mongolia – are not officially provinces but so-called Autonomous Regions, where the Hui, Uighur, and Mongolian peoples theoretically have a measure of self-government. In practice, any autonomy is superficial, though local languages are spoken and religions practised reasonably freely.

Although the communities are united by their ethnic minority status, the region is by no means an organic entity. For example, the Mongolians and Uighur are only connected by the fact of their inclusion within the political borders of China. Mongolia's grasslands are inhabited



Dramatic sand dunes near Crescent Moon Lake, Dunhuang



Incense burner in the inner courtyard of the Gao Miao, a multi-denominational temple in Zhongwei

by a traditionally nomadic people who obtain their livelihood through the grazing of sheep and horses. Xinjiang, the homeland of the Turkic-speaking Uighur, on the other hand, is a stony desert relieved by oases dependent upon an ancient but sophisticated system of underground irrigation channels. The one feature that links the region is the extreme nature of its climate and terrain. Whilst much of Xinjiang is flat and featureless, it is fringed by some of the world's highest mountains, including the Pamirs to the southwest and Tian Shan to the northwest.

At its center sits the Taklamakan Desert, an immense tract of sand dunes characterized by its name, which means "Go in not come out." Summers here are unbearably hot, and its winters are dry and very cold. Qinghai is a mountain plateau whilst arid Ningxia and Gansu are rendered habitable only by the presence of

the Yellow River. Inner Mongolia, composed of grassland, steppe, desert, and mountain, has short, pleasant summers but cold, windswept winters.

Historically, this area's most significant period was during the great days of the Silk Road, when caravans carrying silk, spices, and tea crossed the inhospitable terrain, stopping at oasis towns along the way. Centuries later, this region became the domain of Genghis Khan, the Mongol warlord (*see p477*). These desert gardens are still markets where local products, from raisins to saddles and daggers, are traded just as they have been for centuries.

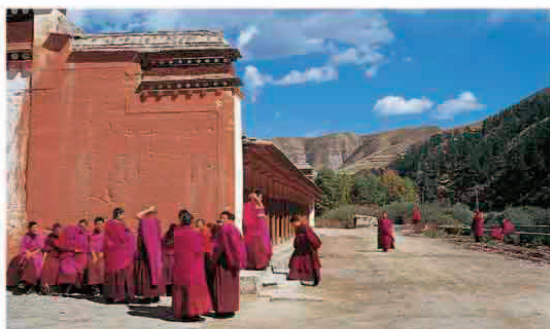
The most significant Silk Road monuments are the Mogao Caves in Dunhuang, perhaps the greatest repository of Buddhist murals, sculpture, and manuscripts. Other Buddhist sites such as the Labrang monastery in Gansu and Ta'er

Si in Qinghai owe their origins to the influence of Tibetan Buddhism.

Besides visiting caravanserais, grottoes, and monasteries, it is worth exploring the grasslands, mountains, and lakes such as Qinghai Hu, as some of China's last great wilderness areas can be seen here. While it is true that some of China's prosperity has begun to trickle west, it will take some time before the nomads and traders give up their ingrained habits and culture. Thus, despite its size, there are only a few large cities, in particular Lanzhou, provincial capital of Gansu, and Ürümqi, capital of Xinjiang.



Statue inside the Fuxi Miao, Tianshui



Tibetan nuns gathering outside their nunnery in Xiahe, Qinghai

Mongols of the Steppe

In the 13th century Genghis Khan (*see p477*) united the steppe-land tribes into a confederation that briefly ruled the civilized world. Today, the Mongolian nation is divided into two parts: the Mongolian Republic to the north, and the Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region in China. Traditionally, Mongols are nomadic herders who travel and work on horseback, mostly on the vast, grassrich steppe. Their diet consists largely of meat and many dairy products, including fermented mare's milk, the intoxicating *airaq*. In Inner Mongolia, most of the Mongolian minority now lead a sedentary life of farming. They are striving, however, to keep their traditions alive, by staging the annual Nadaam Festival, for example.

Equestrian Skill

The key to the Yuan Empire's success was the Mongolians' horse-riding prowess. Horsemanship is still valued, and many learn to ride before they can walk. The sturdy Mongolian pony remains an integral feature of life in the countryside for nomadic herders.



The name **Mongol**, first used during the Tang dynasty, referred to several tribes. This illumination from 1350 shows that the essential lifestyle of Mongolians changed little up to the 20th century.



Gers (yurts) are the traditional felt homes of the nomads. They are found in the rural grasslands. Permanent encampments of *gers* are found closer to Hohhot.

Tied down skillfully to withstand fierce winds, the outer and inner skins are made of canvas, with an insulating layer of felt between.



Motorbike travel has replaced the horse for many families and it is not unusual to see an entire family astride a bike which is just as likely to be seen parked outside a *ger* as a horse.



The frame comes apart for easy transportation. The wooden poles (orange like the sun) are called *uni*, between ten and fifteen of which support each of the *khanas*, or sections of wall.



The principal traditional garment, the *deel*, is a long gown tied with a brilliant sash at the waist. It is worn by both women and men and comes in different weights – lined with sheepskin for winter, quilted for spring, and made of light cloth for summer.

Colorful banners are carried by riders at the competitive Nadaam Festival.



Mongolian wrestling, a favorite event at the Nadaam Festival along with equestrianism and archery, has no weight classes and no time limits. The winner is the one who throws or trips his opponent in such a way that some part of his body touches the ground.



Leather saddles have replaced the less comfortable traditional wooden version.

Hardy Mongolian pony



Buddhism is the main religion among Mongols. Tibetan influence became very strong at the Mongolian court of Kublai Khan and by the 16th century Lamaist Buddhist images found a place in every *ger*.

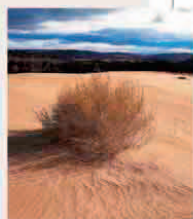


Inside is warm and comfortable. A stove sits in the center of the *ger*, while the back is reserved for the family altar and is the place for elders and honored guests.

Desertification

The incursion of dry soil into fertile lands, desertification, is caused by overworking the soil and inappropriate irrigation, a major problem in China. In Inner Mongolia, it is severely affecting the traditional way of life, as it destroys grazing pastures. Poor farmers swarm to the area to harvest *facai* or “get rich” grasses removing the topsoil’s anchoring root-structure. Mongols have been encouraged to abandon the pastoral life and settle as farmers and so increase the pressures on the land.

Once-rich grassland reduced to infertile sand



The Silk Road

In reality several ancient trading routes between China and eastern Europe, the Silk Road – the term was coined in the 19th century by Baron von Richthofen – first became busy in the Han dynasty, exposing the Chinese capital Chang'an (Xi'an) and ultimately all of China to the influences and styles of an alien world. Technologically advanced, with a large workforce, and a monopoly on some highly valued products, China was well placed to benefit from a massive expansion in trade.

Silk Road Commerce

The merchants who used the Silk Road dealt not only in spices, silk, porcelain and jade but also in gold and silver, wool, Arab horses, and many other commodities. However, it was silk (see pp214–15), a mysterious Chinese invention, that particularly captivated the west.



This piece of silk dating from 1500 BC was discovered in what was Bactria, today's Afghanistan, indicating that a network of trading routes had been established long before the heyday of the Silk Road under the Tang.

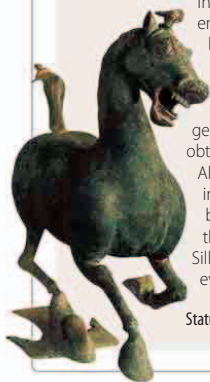
Rome was a major importer of silk and knew China as "Seres" – the land of silk. This gold Roman coin was found along the Silk Road in Xinjiang.



Emperor Wu & General Zhang Qian

In the second century BC the Han emperor Wudi saw that his cavalry's horses – better suited to pulling carts – were struggling against the fast horses of his enemy, the Xiongnu. Therefore he sent Zhang Qian, his general, to Sogdiana and Ferghana to obtain some of their legendary horses. Although the mission failed, the information Zhang Qian brought back about the riches he saw led to the development of trade along the Silk Road, and the Ferghana horses did eventually make it to China.

Statue of one of Ferghana's "heavenly horses"



Camel caravan crossing the daunting Silk Road dunes



Gold and silver were not highly prized in China

until after contact with the West. These precious metals became fashionable in the Tang dynasty, as shown by this gold teacup with Middle Eastern styling.

This Chinese incense burner

shows that silverworking techniques must have made it to China along with the vogue for precious metals.



The Silk Road was a series of routes linking China in the east with the Roman Empire to the west. The principal routes looped south and north of the Taklamakan Desert, to join with other branches from Siberia and India, as they headed through Central Asia and Persia as far as the Mediterranean. The route flourished in periods of calm and declined in times of war.



Detail from the Catalan Map

Made in the 14th century for Charles V of France, this map gives an indication of the extent of geographical knowledge as it stood during the later Middle Ages. The inclusion of China was helped by Marco Polo's account.

The period of unrest after the demise of the Tang led to a decline in trade. The Silk Road prospered again during the Yuan dynasty when the region came under the control of the Mongol Empire. Silk was no longer a Chinese monopoly, but their porcelain was clearly the finest pottery in the world.



Foreign Ideas and Religions

Contact with foreigners meant traders brought back religions such as Buddhism, which eventually became the national religion, as well as philosophies and artistic styles.

Most artistic influences

came from Gandhara, a center of Buddhism. The area's unique artistic styles developed after its conquest by Alexander the Great in the 4th century BC. This Gandharan-inspired Chinese bust recalls the graceful sculptures of Classical Greece.



This cross is evidence of Nestorianism in China around the 8th century BC. Other religions to make it to China include Islam, Judaism, and Manicheanism, a Babylonian religion based on the opposing principles of Light and Darkness.



The final decline came with the large ships of the 15th century that could travel with less cost, harassment, and danger. Dwindling use saw the gradual abandonment of the caravanserais that had been the merchants' refuges.



INNER MONGOLIA & NINGXIA

This area comprises two autonomous regions, Inner Mongolia, stretching across northern China in an enormous arc, and Ningxia, China's smallest province after the island of Hainan. The region's main attractions are its great landscapes and the unique cultures of its minority people.

Much of Inner Mongolia consists of rolling grasslands dotted with the traditional tents (*gers* or *yurts*) of the nomadic Mongols. The capital of Hohhot is the most convenient place to join a tour and experience their traditional way of life, while the more adventurous can head north to the towns of Xilinhot and Haila'er, where vast tracts of untouched wilderness lie waiting to be explored. The historic Mongolian homeland was made up of the independent Republic of Mongolia, Inner Mongolia (now in China), and parts of Siberia. Bordering Inner Mongolia to the south, Ningxia was first established in 1928. In the 1950s, it became part of Gansu, and in 1958 was designated an autonomous region for the indigenous Hui (*see p479*). Living in pockets throughout China, the Muslim Hui descended from Arab Silk Road traders, but are now largely assimilated with the Han culture. Despite some industrialization, Ningxia is a largely undeveloped region with a smattering of interesting sights. At the foot of the scenic Helan mountains near the capital of Yinchuan stand the crumbling tombs of the Western Xia dynasty. The Xumi Shan Caves near Guyuan are another key sight with a wealth of Buddhist carvings.



● Hohhot

呼和浩特

255 miles (410 km) W of Beijing.
 2,580,000. 10 miles (16 km)
 E of town. Hohhot Travel
 Agency, (0471) 460 7395.

A small Buddhist settlement since the Ming era, Hohhot became the capital of Inner Mongolia in 1952. Although it has expanded considerably, the city has kept some of its charm, visible in traditional mud-brick houses in the south, as well as a few temples and an excellent museum. However, the surrounding grasslands and the traditional way of life they support are probably the main interest. The greenery in summer makes it the best time to visit the city. Hohhot is largely inhabited by Han Chinese, with a small Mongol and Hui population.

Inner Mongolia Museum

2 Xinhua St. Tel (0471) 460 8265. **Open** 9am–4:30pm
 Wed–Mon (winter: 9:30am–4pm).
 Situated in the center of the new part of town, this museum is definitely worth visiting for an insight into the history and traditions of the Mongolian people. The museum's ground floor exhibits the paraphernalia used by the nomadic Mongols, including saddles, costumes,



Local fruit stall being carried on a bicycle

archery and polo equipment, and a *ger* (portable tent used by Central Asian nomads). The museum also has an excellent collection of fossils discovered in Inner and Outer Mongolia, including the complete skeleton of a woolly rhinoceros unearthed from a coal mine in Manzhouli (see p478), as well as

several impressive dinosaur skeletons. The museum's upper floor is dedicated to the life of Genghis Khan, who, in the 13th century, united the disparate Mongol tribes and established arguably the largest land empire in human history. Some of the maps and objects on display have English captions.



Dinosaur skeletons on display at the Inner Mongolia Museum

Great Mosque

28 Tongdao Nan Jie. Tel (0471) 639 1363. **Open** daily.

In the old southwestern part of the city, the attractive Great Mosque (Qingzhen Da Si) is best known for its fusion of both Chinese and Arab architectural influences. The main building, dating from the Qing dynasty, is constructed in black brick, while its minaret has a Chinese-style pagoda roof. It is an active place of worship, which permits non-Muslim visitors, especially if they are accompanied by a local Hui worshiper. The mosque's prayer area, however, is reserved for Muslims. The surrounding Muslim area is well worth exploring, with its narrow alleys lined with restaurants selling delicious noodles and kabobs.

Xilitu Zhao

Tongdao Nan Jie. Tel (0471) 631 0332. **Open** 8am–6:30pm daily.

A short walk south of the Great Mosque in the old city, the Xilitu Zhao (Xilitu Temple) started off as a small Ming-dynasty temple and is one of Hohhot's oldest shrines. This Tibetan-Buddhist temple became the spiritual home of the 11th Grand Living Buddha in 1735. Since then, it has served as the official residence of successive reincarnations of the Grand Living Buddha, who presides over Buddhist affairs in the city. This version of the temple was built in the 19th century, after its predecessor burned down. Xilitu Zhao was also badly damaged during the Cultural Revolution,



Main prayer hall at the Tibetan-Buddhist Xilitu Zhao

but has since been heavily restored. It is essentially Chinese in style, with a few Tibetan elements. Its dagoba (Tibetan-style stupa), for example, features Sanskrit writing, Chinese dragons, and tantric Tibetan murals that vividly depict the horrors of hell in gory detail. The temple is still active and the monks here are friendly and speak English. They are usually happy to show visitors around.

Da Zhao

Tongdao Nan Jie. **Tel** (0471) 630 3154.

Open daily. 🗺️

The largest Buddhist temple in the city, the Da Zhao is located in a narrow alley just west of Tongdao Nan Jie. Similar in style and layout to the Xilitu Zhao, it was originally built in 1579, and renovated during the 1990s. The shrine was dedicated to the Qing emperor Kangxi, in the late 17th century, and murals in the main hall commemorate his visit. An astounding 10-ft (3-m) silver Sakyamuni Buddha is among the temple's many treasures.

Da Zhao also boasts an extensive collection of musical instruments and dragon sculptures, and is the venue for Buddhist festivals held through the year.



Wusutu Zhao, Hohhot's Mongolian temple

Wu Ta Si

Tel (0471) 597 2640. **Open** 8:30am–5:30pm daily (winter: to 5pm). 🗺️

Just south of Qingcheng Park, amidst the remains of the old city, the Indian-style Wu Ta Si (Five Towers Temple) is one of Hohhot's most attractive buildings. It was constructed in 1727, as part of another temple that has now disappeared. The distinctive five pagodas surmount a solid-looking base that contains a smallish temple with 1,563 images of the Buddha carved

into its walls, each differing slightly from the others. Inside is a rare Mongolian cosmological map carved onto a large stone, which illustrates a zodiac and the positions of numerous stars.



Guardian, Wusutu Zhao

Wusutu Zhao

7 miles (12 km) NW of Hohhot. **Open** 8am–6pm daily. 🗺️

Founded in 1606, the predominantly Mongolian-styled Wusutu Zhao includes some Chinese and Tibetan features. Inside the monastery there are Ming-dynasty murals on display as well as some intricate woodcarvings with imperial dragon motifs. The name “wusutu” means “near to water” in Mongolian. The nearby grasslands and Daqing mountains make pleasant day-trips from town.

Bai Ta

9 miles (15km) east of Hohhot. **Open** daily.

Bai Ta (White Pagoda) is a seven-storied, octagonal structure. It was first built in the 10th century to house Buddhist scriptures dating from the Liao dynasty (see p64). Over 164 ft (50 m) high, and made of wood and brick, it has some striking carvings inspired by Chinese mythology and nature, including coiled dragons, flowers, and birds. A winding staircase leads to the top, from where there are panoramic views. Bai Ta is best reached by taking a taxi from town.



The open grasslands, traditional home to nomadic Mongols

The Grasslands

Mongolia's history is linked to its grasslands, and for many people, the classic image of the Mongolian landscape is unbroken grassy steppe spreading to the horizon. The steppe provides fodder for the horses and sheep that support the Mongolians' nomadic lifestyle. The three grassland areas accessible from Hohhot are Xilamuren, 50 miles (80 km) north; Huitengxile, 75 miles (120 km) west; and Gegentela, 93 miles (150 km) north. The easiest way to explore them is by taking a tour, which includes a stay in a village of traditional tents (*gers*), where visitors attend a banquet and watch Mongolian sports. Though obviously stage-managed, they do show something of Mongolian culture. One can also travel independently by hiring a horse, or negotiating an overnight stay in a *ger* belonging to a local.



Buddhist mural outside a hall at Wudang Zhao monastery, Baotou

2 Baotou

包头

105 miles (170 km) W of Hohhot. from Beijing. 2,460,000. 33 Gang Tie Da Jie, (0472) 536 9029.

The largest city in Inner Mongolia, Baotou was once an arid and undeveloped region, inhabited by Mongolian herders of sheep and horses. Today, it is an industrial community, made up largely of Han Chinese, with a visible Mongol presence. The town is divided into three principal areas – **Donghe**, the oldest part lies to the east, while the western area consists of **Qingshan**, the main shopping district, and **Kundulun**, the industrial hub. While Qingshan resembles any modern Chinese town, with its tower blocks and array of shops, Kundulun is a depressing leftover from the Communist era, with large, bleak squares, and no sign of greenery. Donghe, a pleasant quarter of streets lined with mud-brick houses and their cluttered courtyards, lends color to this fairly drab city.

Environ: The region's best-preserved Lamaist monastery, **Wudang Zhao** lies 43 miles (70 km) northeast of Baotou in a tranquil valley. Built in 1749 in the Tibetan flat-roofed style, it quickly became an important place of pilgrimage, and was home to several hundred monks belonging to the Yellow Hat Sect. It houses a collection of Buddhist murals from the

Qing era. Just 6 miles (10 km) south of Baotou lies a section of the **Yellow River** that inscribes a huge northerly loop enclosing an area called the Ordos, which was not conquered by the Chinese until the Qing era. The irrigation projects made possible by the Yellow River have made this area a fertile oasis. There is little to see besides the river, but its sluggish progress through the flat, cultivated landscape is impressive.

South of Baotou is the great Gobi, a desert that stretches across the northern reaches of Inner Mongolia and the Republic of Mongolia. The **Resonant Sand Gorge**, 37 miles (60 km) south of Baotou, is filled with sand dunes, some of which soar 295 ft (90 m) high. Visitors slip and slide on the dunes, and its name refers to the sound made by the falling sand. Paragliding and camel rides are also available, and a chairlift shuttles visitors from the main road.



Plaque in four scripts, Wudang Zhao

However, scholars believe that this site contains a few relics of the Great Khan, and it has grown into a place of pilgrimage for many Mongolians. The mausoleum consists of three conjoined halls, each echoing the shape of a *ger* (Mongolian tent) decorated with murals. The middle hall has a large statue of Genghis with a map of his empire. Some of the halls are bedecked with hangings, and contain *gers*, altars, and other religious paraphernalia. Special ceremonies are held here four times a year to honor Genghis Khan, attracting pilgrims from all over Mongolia.

Genghis Khan's Mausoleum
Open 7:30am–7pm daily (winter: 8am–5pm).



Genghis Khan's Mausoleum, a place of pilgrimage for Mongolians

Wudang Zhao
Tel (0472) 871 1511/29. **Open** daily.

Resonant Sand Gorge
Tel (0477) 396 3366. **Open** usually 7:30am–8pm daily.

3 Dongsheng

东胜

62 miles (100 km) S of Baotou.

160,000.

Reasonably attractive, the small town of Dongsheng serves mainly as a base for visiting **Genghis Khan's Mausoleum** (Ejin Horo Qi), a rather uncomfortable bus trip 30 miles (50 km) to the south. It is almost certain that Genghis Khan is not buried here, as his real tomb is thought to lie in the Hentei Mountains near Ulan Batur in the Republic of Mongolia.

Genghis Khan

Born in 1162 to the head of the Kiyat-Borjigen tribe, Genghis Khan (or Chinggis Khan) was given the name Temujin. A born fighter, as a teenager he killed his half-brother and in 1206 he was proclaimed Genghis Khan (meaning universal king). He unified Mongolia's warring fiefdoms into a huge army of up to 200,000 warriors that invaded China and much of Asia, and eventually created one of the greatest land empires in history. The secret of his success was the skilful use of cavalry and the toughness of the Mongolians who could survive on very little. Their dietary needs were met either from their horses or from the countryside. Genghis died in 1227, before the capture of Peking, after falling from his horse. In fact it was after his death that the Mongol armies made most of their conquests, but it was thanks to his organization and determination in the first place.



The empire of Genghis Khan's successors at its greatest extent shown on a modern map

Genghis Khan was a supreme organizer and tactician. He also created the first Mongolian code of law, the "Yasak," and promoted the growth of trade between China and Europe.



Mongolian bow's unique shape gave it a better range than standard bows.

Lance for close-quarters fighting

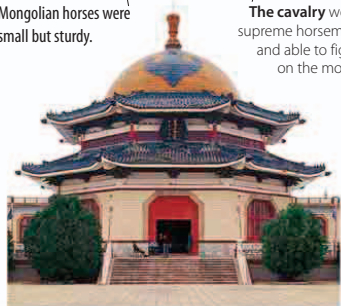


The Mongolian Warrior

This Persian picture, painted 100 years after Genghis Khan's death, shows him fighting the Tartars. The key to Mongolian success was their horsemen. They were disciplined, mobile, and heavily armed, and their ferocity and skill were unmatched at the time.

Mongolian horses were small but sturdy.

The cavalry were supreme horsemen and able to fight on the move.



Genghis Khan's Mausoleum is perhaps reminiscent of a Mongolian *ger* or tent. After his death his body was carried by thousands of his followers and taken back to Mongolia. The site of his burial is unknown.



The vast expanse of the Hulunbuir grasslands around Haila'er

4 Xilinhot

锡林浩特

310 miles (500 km) NE of Hohhot.

✈ from Beijing. 🚗 to Erlianhot, then bus. 🚌 from Hohhot, check with PSB if a permit is required. 📞 Xilinhot Travel Agency, (0479) 824 9165.

Situated right in the heart of the province's grasslands, Xilinhot's main draw is a visit to the Mongolian wilderness, inhabited by nomadic sheep herders in their *muchang jia* (pastureland homes). The tours available here are quieter and cheaper than the ones around Hohhot. Independent trips can also be organized through private tour agents.

5 Haila'er

海拉尔

219 miles (350 km) NE of Xilinhot.

✈ from Beijing & Hohhot. 🚗 from Harbin, Qiqihar & Beijing. 🚌 📞 Ali He Lu, (0470) 822 4017.

Close to the Russian border, Haila'er is Inner Mongolia's northernmost town. This small settlement on the banks of the Amur River is a good base for visiting the grasslands in summer. The town's main sight is the network of tunnels used by the Japanese army during World War II. Built by Chinese prisoners, they were used as defensive bunkers along Haila'er's northwestern ridge, which marked the western boundary of Japan's advance into China. Beyond Haila'er lie the **Hulunbuir**

Grasslands, an expanse of rolling plains threaded by rivers and inhabited by herds of sheep and horses. Tours are arranged by the tourist office.

6 Manzhouli

满洲里

116 miles (186 km) W of Haila'er. 🚗

from Haila'er & Harbin. 🚌 from Haila'er.

📞 Lantian Travel, (0470) 622 3003.

For long inhabited only by nomads, the border town of Manzhouli became a permanent settlement in 1901, as a stop on the Trans-Manchurian and Trans-Siberian railways. Steam locomotives can still be seen in the shunting yards at Zalainuo'er. Russian influences are still apparent in the architecture, mainly the wooden cottages with painted shutters and stucco buildings in pre-Revolutionary style. The main attraction, however, is **Dalai Hu** or Hulun Nur to the south. Surrounded by marshy grasslands, it is one of China's

largest lakes, where migratory swans, geese, and cranes come to nest. The tourist office organizes grassland tours, where visitors can stay in *gers* (tents).

7 Xanadu

夏那都

280 miles (450 km) NE of Hohhot.

📞 arranged by Xilinhot Travel

Agency, (0479) 824 9165.

Close to inner Mongolia's border near Duolun lie the remains of Yuanshangdu or Xanadu, the site of the legendary palace of Kublai Khan, grandson of Genghis Khan (see p477). One of China's greatest emperors, Kublai Khan and his magnificent summer palace were exalted in Samuel Taylor Coleridge's poem, which begins with the lines "In Xanadu did Kubla Khan a stately pleasure-dome decree." The palace was abandoned by the Khan during his lifetime, and eventually crumbled. There is little left to see, but those who wish to visit can contact Xilinhot's tourist office.



Manzhouli, the last stop in China on the Trans-Manchurian railway line

8 Yinchuan

银川

326 miles (525 km) SW of Hohhot. 1,200,000. 15 miles (25 km) SE of Yinchuan. (0951) 672 7898.

Situated in the north of Ningxia, in the lee of the Helan mountains, Yinchuan is well protected from the harsh desert climate, and makes a good base from which to explore the surrounding sights. Watered by the Yellow River, this lush and leafy city was the capital of the little-known Western Xia Kingdom from around the 11th century onward, which has left few traces of its short existence except for a set of dagobas, and a handful of imperial tombs located 12 miles (20 km) outside the city (see p480). This mysterious dynasty materialized in the early 11th century, in the area north of Han China. Following a period of expansion from AD 982 to the 1030s, the Western Xia empire included all of modern-day Ningxia, as well as parts of Shaanxi, Gansu, Qinghai, and Inner Mongolia. Although the Chinese considered them barbarians, they achieved a considerable

level of sophistication, partly through the assimilation of Tang culture, until their kingdom was sacked by the invading Mongols in 1227.

Today, Yinchuan is a pleasant and lively city, with a handful of interesting things to see. It consists of two parts, the new town (Xin Cheng) to the west near the railway station, and the old town (Lao Cheng), 4 miles (7 km) east, where the city's main bus station and most of the sights are located.

Jiefang Jie, the old town's main thoroughfare, has two well-restored, traditional Chinese towers. One is the large **Gulou** (Drum Tower), while farther east lies the **Yuhuang Ge** (Yuhuang Pavilion), which dates back to the Ming dynasty.



The stately Gulou (Drum Tower) in Yinchuan's old town

Just south of the Drum Tower, Gulou Jie is the heart of the city's busy shopping district and is lined with department stores.

West of Gulou Jie stands the 13-story, octagonal **Xi Ta** (West Pagoda), built within the grounds of the Chetian Temple. Originally built in the 11th century, the temple houses the **Ningxia Provincial Museum** which has a large collection of

Western Xia artifacts.

The museum also displays splendid items from the Silk Road era, and has a section on the indigenous Hui people. Followers of Islam, the Hui originally descended

from Arab and Persian traders from the Middle East, who came to China during the Tang and Yuan eras.

Southeast of the museum, close to the bus station, is the **South Gate** (Nan Men) which resembles a miniature version of Beijing's Tian'an Men. A short walk southwest of Nan Men, **Nanguan Mosque** is a modern building constructed in 1981 to replace the original 1915 shrine. It is an active place of worship that caters to Yinchuan's Hui population. Unlike most mosques in China, it has hardly any Chinese features, and is built in a distinct Middle-Eastern style. In the northern reaches of the old town, the ancient **Haibao Ta** stands in the grounds of an active monastery.

According to records, the 177-ft (54-m) tower, also known as the Northern Pagoda (Bei Ta), was first built in the 5th century AD. It was rebuilt in the 18th century in the original style, after an earthquake destroyed it in 1739. It is an unusually angular structure, with ledges and niches at every level. It is worth making the climb to the top of its nine stories, as there are terrific views across the city to the Yellow River and Helan mountains.

Gulou & Yuhuang Ge

Jiefang Jie. **Open** 8:30am–5pm daily.

Ningxia Provincial Museum & Xi Ta

121 Liming Jie. **Tel** (0951) 508 5093. **Open** 9am–4:50pm Tue–Sun.

Nanguan Mosque

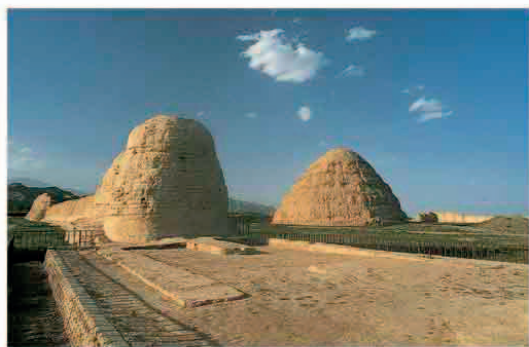
Yuhuangge Nan Jie. **Tel** (0951) 410 6714. **Open** 8am–6:30pm daily.



The 1,500-year-old Haibao Ta in northern Yinchuan



Sign advertising a fortune teller outside Haibao Ta



The striking Xi Xia Wang Ling (Western Xia Tombs) in Helan Shan

9 Helan Shan

贺兰山

12 miles (20 km) W of Yinchuan.

🚗 or taxi. 📞 Yinchuan Tourist Office, 116 Jiefang Xijie, (0951) 688 9276.

Looming over Yinchuan, about 12 miles (20 km) to the west, the 11,667-ft (3,556-m) high mountain range, Helan Shan, has some interesting historical places to visit.

At the foot of its eastern slopes lie the **Xi Xia Wang Ling**, the royal tombs of the Western Xia dynasty (1038–1227). Spread over a large area, these crumbling but still impressive mounds commemorate the 12 Xia kings. The **Gunzhong Pass**, farther west, makes for pleasant hikes in the surrounding hills if the weather is fine. Located 5 miles (8 km) north of the pass are the 39-ft (12-m) twin pagodas, **Baisikou Shuang Ta**, decorated with Buddha statues. Nearby, at **Suyu Kou**, are hundreds of rock paintings, of uncertain age, depicting animals and human figures. These sights can all be visited in a day by hiring a minibus or car from Yinchuan.

📞 **Xi Xia Wang Ling**

22 miles (35 km) W of Yinchuan.

📞 (0951) 566 8960. **Open** 7:30am–6:30pm daily. 📶

10 108 Dagobas

See p481.

11 Zhongwei

中卫

106 miles (170 km) SW of Yinchuan.

🚗 or taxi. 📞 Zhongwei Travel Service, 33 Gu Lou Xi Jie, (0995) 701 4880.

The pleasant town of Zhongwei lies between the Tengger Desert to the north and the Yellow River to the south. This small settlement can easily be

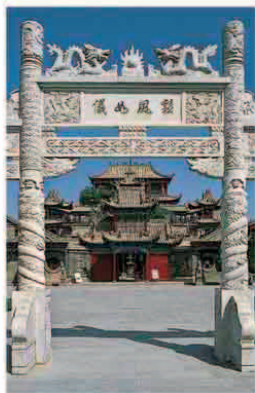
explored on foot or by cycle-rickshaw.

At its center lies a traditional **Drum Tower** (Gulou) dating to the Ming era. Zhongwei's main sight is the 15th-century **Gao Miao**, a rather bizarre temple which serves Buddhists,

Daoists, Confucianists, and Christians alike. It was originally built for Buddhists, but somehow developed



Painting on upper pavilion, Gao Miao



Carved entrance of the multi-denominational Gao Miao, Zhongwei

ecumenically, which is reflected in the welter of well over 200 chapels and rooms. Rebuilt several times, the temple, in its present form, is an interesting amalgamation of architectural styles.

Environs: About 9 miles (15 km) west of Zhongwei, the spectacular resort of **Shapotou** lies on the banks of the Yellow River, between riverbank vegetation on one side, and the striking sand dunes of the desert, on the other. Accessed by minibus from Zhongwei, the Shapotou Desert Research Center was founded in 1956 to reclaim fertile land from the desert. It has met with some success, as seen in the groves of trees and surrounding cultivation. It is now a resort, offering camel rides and trips down river on traditional rafts that are kept afloat with inflated sheep skins. Sand sleds are available to rent for those who wish to speed down the sand dune slopes.

📞 **Gao Miao**

Gulou Bei Jie. 📞 (0955) 701 2164.

Open 7:20am–7pm daily. 📶

📞 **Shapotou**

Open 8:30am–5pm daily. 📶

12 Guyuan

固原

286 miles (460 km) NW of Yinchuan.

🚗 or taxi. 📞 **Xumi Shan Caves** 📞 from Guyuan to Sanying, then taxi.

In the southern part of Ningxia, Guyuan serves as a base for visiting the **Xumi Shan** (Treasure Mountain) **Caves**, 31 miles (50 km) to the northwest. Set in dramatic sandstone hills, these Buddhist grottoes – numbering well over a hundred – are relics from the greatest era of the Silk Road, mostly the period covering the Northern Wei, Sui, and Tang dynasties. They contain more than 300 well-preserved Buddhist statues, the most famous being a colossal Maitreya (Future) Buddha, which stands 62 ft (19 m) high in Cave 5.

10 108 Dagobas

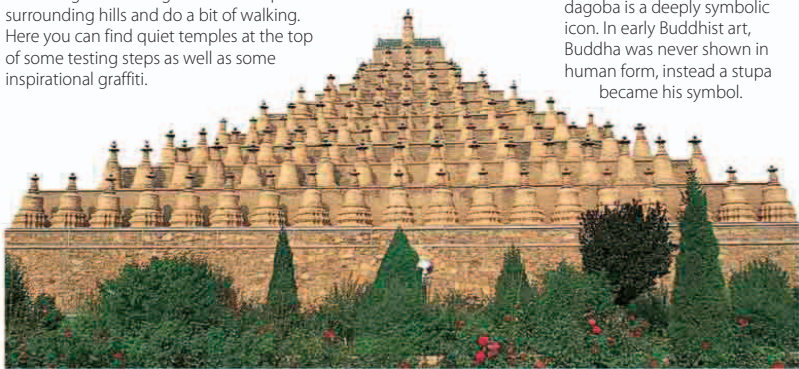
108塔

Set in the desert near the town of Qingtongxia Zhen, the 108 Dagobas stand in twelve gleaming rows, spread out in a perfect triangular formation overlooking the Yellow River. A Buddhist monument, it is not clear exactly what their purpose is. Traditionally it has been thought that they were placed here during the Yuan Dynasty (1279–1368) but there may be some link to the Western Xia Empire. The number 108 is significant in Chinese numerology: there are 108 prayer beads in a Buddhist rosary – the same number of possible sins or worries.



★ Hillside Location

Impressive as the dagobas are, a good reason for visiting them is to get out in the quiet surrounding hills and do a bit of walking. Here you can find quiet temples at the top of some testing steps as well as some inspirational graffiti.



Viewing the Dagobas

The best view is from a boat on the river – if the water level is high enough. The site is in excellent condition as a result of an overzealous restoration.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

50 miles (85 km) S of Yinchuan.

Open daily. 🗺️

Transport

🚗 or 🚗 from Yinchuan to Qingtongxia Zhen, then minibus or taxi.



★ The Dagobas

Like the Indian stupa, the dagoba is a deeply symbolic icon. In early Buddhist art, Buddha was never shown in human form, instead a stupa became his symbol.

Western Xia Empire



Western Xia Coin

This mysterious dynasty materialized in the early 11th century when they established the Great Xia empire in the area north of what was Han China. Known as Tanguts – and probably from Tibet – they were briefly strong enough to build up a small empire and force tribute from the Song rulers in China. However, they were so thoroughly defeated by the Mongols in 1227 that little evidence of their existence remains except for some coins, books, and a famous stele covered in their feathery script (now in Xi'an).



GANSU & QINGHAI

For centuries, Gansu and Qinghai were regarded as frontier provinces that marked the outer limits of ancient China. A harsh and rugged region, Gansu connects the Chinese heartland with the vast desert regions to the northwest. The Hexi Corridor, running 750 miles (1,200 km) between two mountain ranges and dotted with oases, formed a link between China and the West. The Silk Road passed through here, as did the Great Wall, and later, the region's only railway line. The Yellow River flows through Lanzhou, for centuries a major stop along the Silk Road. To the southwest lies the Tibetan town of Xiahe and its splendid Labrang Monastery. In the desert landscape northwest of Lanzhou are two great historical relics – the mighty Ming fortress of Jiayuguan and the cave art at Dunhuang.

Lying between Gansu and Tibet, Qinghai is a vast mountain plateau inhabited by a mere 5.5 million people. In every respect – culturally, historically, and geographically – it is part of the Tibetan Plateau, and was once the Tibetan province of Amdo, becoming a province of China only in 1928. Due to its remoteness, it has been used as the site for several prison camps for political dissidents. The province, however, abounds in natural beauty, with lush valleys around the capital of Xining, and miles of unspoiled wilderness around Qinghai Hu, China's largest lake. It also houses one of the country's greatest Tibetan lamaseries, Ta'er Si, and provides access into Tibet from Golmud and Xining across some of the highest mountains in the world.



Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- ③ Langmusi
- ⑤ Linxia
- ⑥ Lanzhou
- ⑧ Pingliang
- ⑨ Wuwei
- ⑩ Zhangye
- ⑫ Dunhuang
- ⑬ Tongren
- ⑮ Xining
- ⑰ Golmud

Historic Sites

- ⑪ Jiayuguan Fort pp496–7

Mountains, Caves & Lakes

- ① Maiji Shan pp484–5
- ② Luomen
- ⑦ Bingling Si
- ⑯ Mengda Tian Chi
- ⑰ Qinghai Hu

Monasteries & Temples

- ④ Xiahe
- ⑭ Ta'er Si pp504–5

Key

- Expressway
- National Highway
- Minor road
- Railroad
- Provincial border
- Great Wall



● Maiji Shan

麦积山

The site of one of China's most important groups of Buddhist carvings, 465-ft (142-m) high Maiji Shan (Corn Rick Mountain) rises up spectacularly like Sumeru, the holy mountain of Buddhist myth. It is likely that the first sculptures were made around the end of the 4th century AD, and work continued up to the Qing dynasty. It provides an invaluable insight into the development of Chinese Buddhist artistic style. Almost 200 caves survive and are reached by a series of precipitous stairways. However, many of the best caves are closed and the gloomy interiors have to be viewed through grilles, so bring a flashlight.



Maiji Shan, said to resemble a corn rick or haystack from afar



★ Colossal Buddha: Cave 98

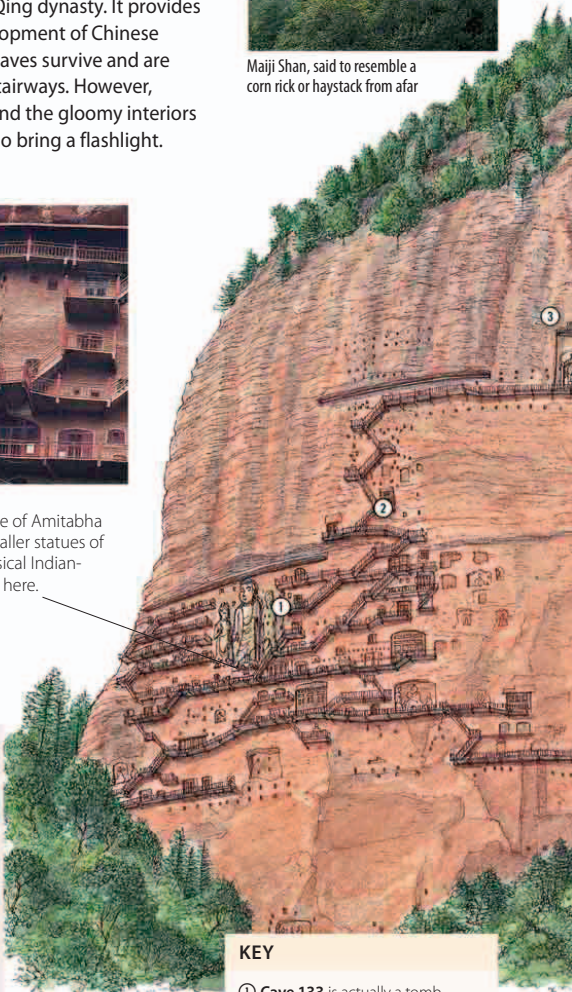
This finely worked 53-ft (16-m) high statue of Amitabha Buddha is portrayed attended by two smaller statues of Avalokitesvara. The move away from classical Indian-style Buddha sculptures is clearly evident here.

Working with Clay

Because of the friable nature of the stone at Maiji Shan, many of the statues were not hewn out of the rock but modeled from clay stuck onto a wooden frame. Although they are not as well preserved as a result, they are more lively and with more detail than similar carvings in the Buddhist caves at, for example, Dunhuang. There are a few stone statues at Maiji Shan, but these have been carved from specially imported rock.



Statue showing details of dress and hairstyle



KEY

- ① Cave 133 is actually a tomb and home to many sculptures and engravings. It is considered one of the most exquisite holy caves.
- ② Cave 135, Cave of Heaven
- ③ Cave 5, Calf Hall
- ④ Cave 3, Thousand Buddha Corridor
- ⑤ Cave 43 is the tomb of a Wei-dynasty empress.

Upper Seven Buddhas: Cave 4

The upper gallery of Buddhas includes this magnificent Song-dynasty guardian. The cave complex itself is said to have been built by the local governor Li Yunxin, as early as the sixth century.

**VISITORS' CHECKLIST****Practical Information**

22 miles (35 km) SE of Tianshui.

Tel (0938) 223 1075. **Open**

8:30am–5:30pm. 🗳️ for an additional large fee, the closed caves may be opened. 📷 included in entry fee. 🗳️

Transport

🚗 from Beidao, Tianshui.

★ Colossal Buddhas: Cave 13

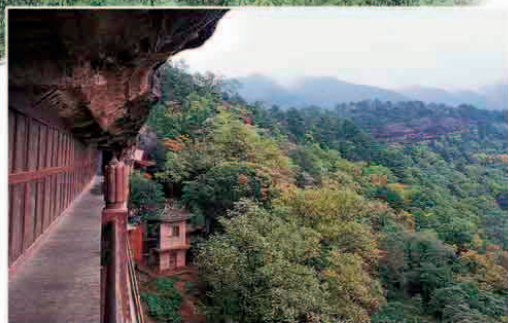
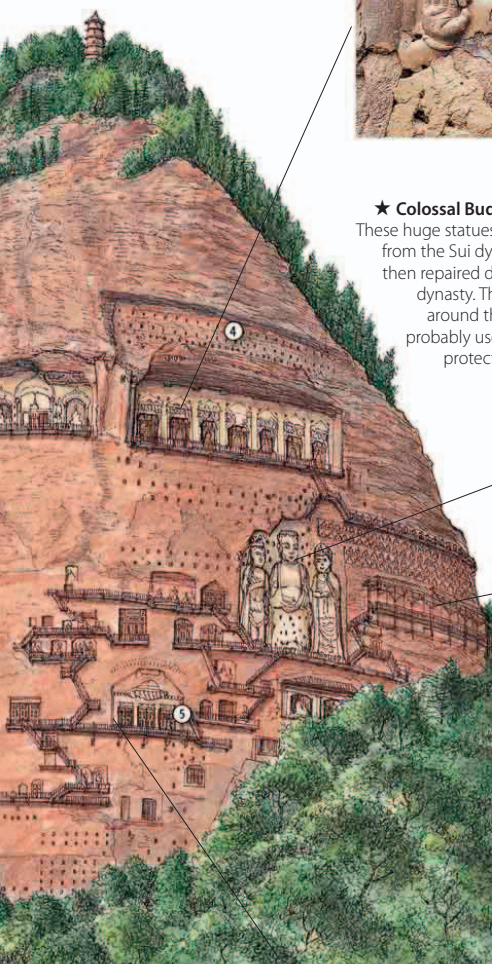
These huge statues originally date from the Sui dynasty and were then repaired during the Ming dynasty. The myriad holes around the statues were probably used to support a protective framework.

**Middle Seven Buddhas: Cave 9**

These figures show a transitional phase between Indian-influenced sculpture and later Song-era figures, with pure Chinese characteristics. The statues are well-proportioned and slim in stature, with realistic drapes to their clothes.

★ Gallery Views

There are excellent views across the countryside from the network of walkways on the cliff face of Maiji Shan. If time allows, a hike around the Botanical Garden at the foot of the cliff is recommended.





Rock carvings at Lashao Si, Luomen, depicting Sakyamuni Buddha

② Luomen

洛门

155 miles (250 km) SE of Lanzhou. 🚌
 🚶 Water Curtain Thousand Buddha
 Caves: 🚶 minibus from Luomen. 🚶

The small town of Luomen serves as a base for visiting the **Water Curtain Thousand Buddha Caves**, situated in a spectacular gorge in the nearby mountains. Remote and accessible only by a rough road, which is actually a riverbed, the caves cannot be reached in bad weather as the road becomes unusable. The main attractions are a 98-ft (30-m) Sakyamuni (the Historical Buddha), carved into a rock face, and Lashao Si, a temple built into a cave in the mountainside that has paintings and carvings dating from the Northern Wei dynasty (AD 386–534). Visitors can reach Luomen by bus or train from Tianshui, or from Lanzhou.

③ Langmusi

郎木寺

236 miles (380 km) S of Lanzhou.
 🚶 from Lanzhou, Linxia or Xiahe to
 Hezuo, then direct bus to Langmusi.

The remote mountain town of Langmusi is inhabited by a mix of Tibetan, Hui, and Han Chinese. While the hills offer miles of unspoiled country with trails for walking and riding, several active temples dot the town. Built in 1413, the **Dacang Langmu Gansu Gomba** (also known as Saichi Gomba) is the place of worship for several hundred monks, who study astrology and medicine, as well as Tibetan Buddhist theology. Traditional sky-burials, where the dead are left for birds of prey, also take place here. However, visitors are not permitted to view the last rites.

🏠 **Dacang Langmu Gansu Gomba**
 Open daily. 🚶

④ Xiahe

夏河

175 miles (280 km) SW of Lanzhou.
 🚶 🚶 Monlam (Great Prayer)
 Festival (Feb/Mar).

Perched at a height of 9,514 ft (2,900 m) in a mountain valley at the edge of the Tibetan plateau – that is now a part of Gansu – Xiahe is a significant Tibetan monastery town that attracts many devout Buddhist pilgrims to its **Labrang Monastery** every year. As a result the town's population is a mix of Hui, Tibetan, and Han Chinese.

Xiahe's location offers many opportunities to explore the surrounding grasslands preferably on horseback, although cycling is an option for some. The town itself comprises a single street, running along the Daxia River. The commercial part of town is at the eastern end; the Labrang Monastery is in the center; while the Tibetan quarter is at the western end, offering glimpses of the Tibetan way of life. This town is worth a visit, especially for those not going to Tibet.

Enviros: Lying near **Sangke** village, 5 miles (10 km) west of Xiahe, is a lake surrounded by the Sangke grasslands, used by nomads for grazing their yaks. This huge area of grass and flowers can be accessed by road, although a fee is charged. Another 19 miles (30 km) north lie the even more vast and picturesque **Ganjia Grasslands**.



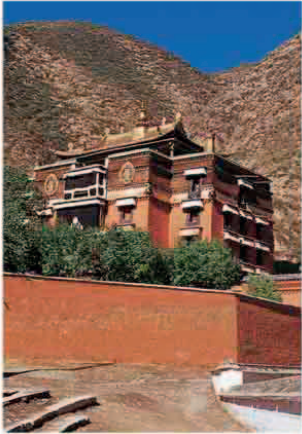
Breathtaking scenery around Langmusi

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85

Labrang Monastery

拉卜楞寺

The most important center of the Yellow Hat Sect (Gelugpa) outside Tibet, the Labrang Monastery (Labuleng Si) attracts Tibetan pilgrims in their thousands. As a result of the Cultural Revolution the monastery was closed until 1980 and the number of monks reduced from 4,000 to about 1,500. Set in an auspicious location with the Dragon mountains to the north and the Daxia river to the south, the impressive monastery buildings are joined by a haphazard maze of alleyways that makes it a fascinating place to wander around.



Main prayer hall, Labrang Monastery

Exploring the Labrang Monastery

This monastery was founded in 1709 during the forty-eighth year of the reign of the Qing Kangxi emperor by a local monk, E'Ang Zongzhe. He became the first generation Living Buddha, or Jiemyang, who ranks third in the Tibetan hierarchy after the Dalai and Panchen Lamas. The monastery's buildings came through the Cultural Revolution relatively unscathed, but in 1985 a fire seriously damaged the Grand Sutra Hall, which has subsequently been fully restored. Today the sprawling monastery complex dominates the town. It is actually impossible to see where the town stops and the monastery begins, they are so inextricably woven together.

The monastery is built in a typical Tibetan style and consists of six grand halls for the study of scriptures or *sutras*,

eighteen Buddha temples, offices for the Living Buddha and many hundreds of residences for the monks. The monastery is also an academic institution and holds an assortment of around 60,000 *sutras* and specialized books. The large halls are colleges for the monks to study a variety of degrees such as mathematics, astronomy, medicine and other more esoteric subjects.

The Grand Sutra Hall is the

most impressive of the buildings and can hold up to 4,000 monks. It is an eerily impressive sight to see the monks chanting here each morning as they wait to go in and pray. Labrang also has a multitude of prayer wheels set in a long line that encircles the monastery. Spinning these



Senior Yellow Hat monk

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Xiahe 175 miles (280 km) SW of Lanzhou. **Tel** (0941) 712 1095.

Open 8am–noon, 2–6pm daily.

Closed Nov–Feb. required for the main temple. Monlam Festival (see p50).

Transport

Linxia, Lanzhou or Tongren.

was, and still is, a way for the largely illiterate Tibetan people to pray.

Within the prayer wheels stands the **Gongtang Pagoda**, south of the main road. At nearly 100-ft high (31-m) it comprises five levels topped with a gold colored stupa containing thousands of *sutras* and Buddha statues. You can climb up to the upper level and get an outstanding view over the monastery and town. Parts of

Labrang can only be visited as a member of a tour group, although much of the monastery can be freely explored. There are a couple of tours in English each day. Visitors should be sensitive to the religious nature of the site.

Xiahe is also famous for its Monlam festival. Seen by thousands who have come from all over the country, a huge *thangka* of Buddha is unfurled and

sanctified on a screen to the south of the Daxia River. There follows several days of festivities including processions, musical performances, and dances.



View over the monastery with the gleaming Gongtang Pagoda to the left



Bunches of noodles tied up and ready for sale, Linxia

5 Linxia

临夏

62 miles (100 km) SW of Lanzhou.

200,000. from Lanzhou, Xining, and Xiahe.

A pleasant place for ambling leisurely through streets bustling with locals, Linxia has a predominantly Muslim character, defined by the resident Hui minority. It was once a stopover for travelers passing between Lanzhou and the South Pass along the Silk Road. The town is still a good place to break the journey between Lanzhou and Xiahe. However, it offers very few attractions aside from its numerous mosques. The most prominent is the large and impressive **Nanguan Mosque**, just off the main square.

Linxia's appeal lies in its colorful markets and teahouses. The markets are lined with shops selling carved gourds, carpets, and saddlery. Most interesting are the local spectacles, made from ground crystal lenses, which many elderly men can be seen wearing. At the top end of Jiefang Nan Lu in the south of town is the great night market with numerous stalls stocked with aromatic curry-flavored breads (*bing*) and huge piles of noodles – fresh and dried.

Linxia is popular with the Dongxiang minority, who speak their own Altaic language, and are supposedly descendants of 13th-century immigrants, who moved here after Kublai Khan invaded their homelands in Central Asia.

6 Lanzhou

兰州

A large industrial city and Gansu's capital, Lanzhou has for long been the key transport link between the Chinese heartlands and the Northwest. It was an important stop on the Silk Road at the beginning of the Hexi Corridor, and is thus culturally closer to the Northwest than to Central China. The Yellow River flows through the center of the city, and for centuries Lanzhou was the principal point for crossing the river. In fact, until the 19th century, a bridge created by chaining together a flotilla of boats was used. The first iron bridge was built in 1907. Although most of the attractions lie well away from the center, Lanzhou offers good food, shopping, and an excellent museum.



Lanzhou City Center

- ① Baita Shan Gongyuan
- ② Gansu Provincial Museum
- ③ Baiyi Si
- ④ Wuquan Shan Gongyuan
- ⑤ Lan Shan Gongyuan

0 meters 800
0 yards 800



Yellow River flanked by the lush Baita Shan Gongyuan & Lanzhou city

Baita Shan Gongyuan

Tel (0931) 836 6114. Open 7:30am–5:30pm daily.

To the north of the river, near Zhongshan Bridge, is Baita Shan Gongyuan (White Pagoda Hill Park). It takes its name from the 13th-century pagoda, Bai Ta, which was built as part of

a temple at the hill's summit. Steps have been carved into the steep slopes, while the walkways are dotted with teahouses, mosques, a plant nursery, and assorted pavilions. Chairlifts take visitors to the top from inside the park, or from town, on the other side of the river.

Gansu Provincial Museum

3 Xijin Xi Lu. Tel (0931) 234 6308.

Open 9am–5pm Tue–Sun.

This museum is set in an old Soviet-style building west of town. The ground floor has a natural history section with a mammoth skeleton found in the Yellow River in 1973. Captioned in English, the history section upstairs is best known for the striking 2,000-year-old bronze Flying Horse, with its hoof resting on the back of a swallow, that was discovered in an Eastern Han tomb in Wuwei.



Flying Horse statue at Lanzhou's train station

Also worth seeing are the bronze chariots, with horses and attendants, from a tomb in the same area, as well as a fine collection of Yangshao pottery dating from the late Neolithic period. Other relics include Silk Road carvings, wooden spills, statuary, and writing tablets. In the garden, a mock tomb recreates burials in the Jiayuguan area in the late 3rd and early 4th centuries. Finally, a large exhibit commemorates the Long March.



Key to Symbols see back flap

Baiyi Si

Baiyi Si, with its temple and accompanying stupa, was built during the Ming dynasty (1368–1644) just a few hundred feet to the east of busy Jinchang Lu, on the north side of Qingyang Lu. The small temple's unusual location, dwarfed by the department stores of Lanzhou's main shopping district, makes it appear strikingly out of place, and worth a visit for this alone.



Ornamental door knob, Ruyuan Si, Wuquan Shan

Lan Shan Gongyuan

Tel (0931) 877 5011. **Open** 8:30am–5pm daily.

South of the city, Lan Shan Gongyuan (Lan Shan Park) can be reached by chairlift from Wuquan Shan Gongyuan. The 20-minute ride to the top is a pleasant way to escape the summer heat. It is a great spot to watch the sunsets

and the city lights at night. There is an amusement park and several eateries. A trail leads to Wuquan Shan Gongyuan.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

425 miles (680 km) W of Xi'an.

3,000,000. 2nd Floor, Tourism Building, Nongmin Xiang, (0931) 881 3222.

Transport

Lanzhou Airport, 56 miles (90 km) N of city. Lanzhou Train Station. CAAC (buses to airport), East Bus Station, Private Bus Depots, Main Bus Station, West Bus Station.

Wuquan Shan Gongyuan

Tel (0931) 824 3247.

Open 8am–6pm daily.

Also set in the south of town, Wuquan Shan Gongyuan (Five Springs Hill Park) resembles a traditional garden, with its weathered rocks, cascading streams, elaborate doorways, and myriad pavilions. The hill is said to be the place where the



Gateway designed as a quatrefoil moon in Wuquan Shan Gongyuan

Han general, Huo Qubin, quartered his cavalry as he mounted an expedition to the northwest. According to one legend, he cut at the rocks until the water he needed for his horses and men gushed forth. Of the several temples on the site, **Chongqing Si** dates back to 1372, and houses an iron bell cast in 1202. Despite its venerable origins, modern materials like concrete have been used several times in building the temple, and it is now an artistic blend of Soviet and traditional Chinese design. Another one of the oldest buildings in the park, the Ming-dynasty **Jingang Palace** houses an impressive, 16-ft (5-m) bronze Buddha, reputedly cast in 1370.



The enormous seated Buddha carved into a cliff, Cave 172, Bingling Si

7 Bingling Si

炳灵寺

56 miles (90 km) SW of Lanzhou. Bus to Liujia Xia Reservoir, then boat to caves. **Tel** (0930) 887 9056. **Open** in season, when the water level in reservoir is high. 🚗 🚢 from Lanzhou.

The magnificent group of Buddhist caves at Bingling Si (Bright Spirit Temple) is one of the most intriguing sights in Gansu. Buddhism arrived in China along the Silk Road, and these caves are among the earliest significant Buddhist monuments in the country. Carved into sheer cliffs, the caves stretch for about a mile (1.6 km) along a 196-ft (60-m) high gorge. Isolated by the waters of the Liujiaxia Reservoir on the Yellow River, the splendid sculptures and paintings were saved from damage during the Cultural Revolution, and remain in surprisingly good condition. Known as the Thousand Buddha Caves, there are in fact, only 183 of them, of which 149 can be more appropriately described as niches.

The caves were created about 1,600 years ago during the Northern Wei and Western Jin dynasties. It is believed that the artists hung down the cliffs on ropes, and chiseled out sculptures into the rock-face. The style of work is similar to the Buddhist caves at Datong and Luoyang. Most of the caves contain rock-cut statues, clay sculptures, and colorful frescoes. One of the earliest caves, No. 169, dates to AD 420, and contains a Buddha and two

Bodhisattvas that are among the oldest and best preserved in China. Most of the other caves were completed during the Tang era. The most impressive cave, No. 172, has an 89-ft (27-m) high seated statue of Maitreya (the Future Buddha). There are also four clay pagodas and another one carved from stone.

Work on the sculptures continued long after the Silk Road had lost its importance, and there are examples of work from the Song, Ming, and Qing dynasties. The paintings reached their height during the Song and Ming dynasties, although there are some older and comparatively cruder paintings dating back to the Tang period.

Getting to the caves can be slightly uncertain, as access



Carved stele, Kongtong Shan, Pingliang

depends on the water level in the reservoir. Autumn is usually the best time of year to visit Bingling Si, but it is best to check with other travelers before arranging a trip. It is a two-hour bus journey from Lanzhou to the reservoir and dam, followed by a three-hour boat trip to the caves, passing through some beautiful countryside with fishermen busy at work, and wheat and rice being cultivated on the riverbanks.

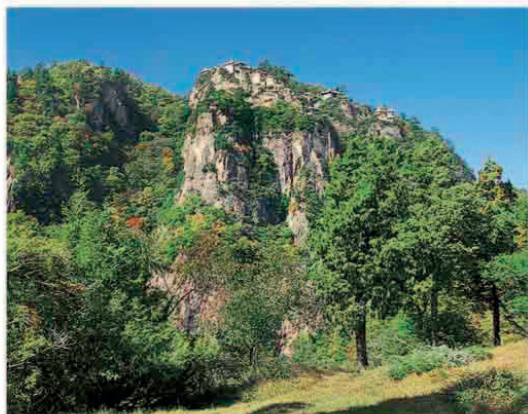
8 Pingliang

平凉

155 miles (250 km) SE of Lanzhou. 🚗

Hidden in the hills in a mountainous region near the Gansu-Ningxia border is the sleepy town of Pingliang. Surrounded by beautiful peaks, some of which rise to heights of 6,890 ft (2,100 m), it

remains one of the least-visited parts of the province, and is mostly used as a convenient base for exploring **Kongtong Shan**, a Daoist monastery, 6 miles (10 km) west of town. Perched dramatically on a clifftop of the same name, the monastery lies close to a glittering lake and a few other temples scattered across the landscape. The surrounding area is excellent for taking long walks across the lush green hills.



Kongtong Shan's lush north peak, Pingliang

The Spread of Buddhism

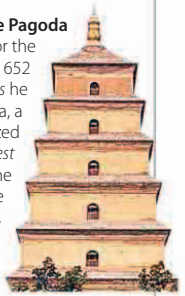
Buddhism's establishment in China was a long process and the date of its arrival is uncertain. The earliest sign of the religion in China is associated with the foundation of the White Horse Temple (*see p158*) during the Han dynasty near the imperial capital of Luoyang. Based on the teachings of Buddha who lived in northern India during the 6th century BC, Buddhism was probably disseminated along the Silk Route by immigrants from Central Asia from the 1st century onwards. In China, Buddhism surged in popularity during periods of instability, when Confucianism's veneration for authority did not sit well with the populace (*see p36*), and it was eventually adopted by China's rulers. The Mahayana School (*see p37*) took hold in China, breaking into different sects, such as the Chan sect, which gained a large following in Japan as Zen Buddhism.



Mahayana Buddhism started in India in the first century AD, finally spreading to Japan, via China, around AD 600.

The Great Goose Pagoda

in Xi'an was built for the monk Xuanzang in AD 652 to house the *sutras* he brought back from India, a pilgrimage immortalized in *Journey to the West* (*see p35*). He spent the remainder of his life translating the *sutras*, aiding the spread of Buddhism.



The caves at Dunhuang (*see pp500–1*), served as the last stop on the Silk Road for pilgrim monks on their way to India. The frescoes and carvings, which celebrate the spread of Buddhism and date from the 4th to the 11th century, are among the most important early Buddhist works in China.



Guanyin, the female Bodhisattva of Compassion, was originally the male deity Avalokitesvara. This sex change is one way the Chinese adapted Buddhism to suit their needs. Guanyin became the patron of motherhood and is the most worshiped figure in China.

The early Tang dynasty was a time of Buddhist renaissance, with the religion gaining imperial patronage. In the 9th century, however, rebellions provoked a period of Buddhist suppression.







9 Wuwei

武威

140 miles (225 km) NW of Lanzhou.



Lying between Lanzhou and Zhangye, this small town is where Gansu's most celebrated relic, the bronze Flying Horse, was discovered in 1969. Found in an Eastern Han tomb in the grounds of **Leitai Si**, a few miles north of town, the Flying Horse is now in the **Provincial Museum** in Lanzhou, and its symbol can be seen all over Wuwei. The tomb, a series of empty passageways, houses replicas of its original relics and is open to visitors.

Other sights are the brick **Luoshi Ta**, off Bei Dajie, and farther east, the old **Bell Tower** with pleasant gardens. To the south is **Wen Miao**, a museum set in the grounds of a temple. The South Gate (Nan Men) has been reconstructed and adds a little old-world grandeur to a rapidly changing town.

Wen Miao

Tel (0935) 221 5849. **Open** 7:30am–6pm daily.

10 Zhangye

张掖

280 miles (450 km) NW of Lanzhou.



Once a stopover on the Silk Road, Zhangye has several sights of interest. At its center is a Ming-era **Gulou** (Drum Tower), with a large bell. To the east, **Daode Guan** is an active Daoist shrine also dating to the Ming



A traditional incense burner in the grounds of Dafo Si, Zhangye

era. South along Nan Jie lies **Tu Ta**, a former Buddhist monastery featuring a large stupa. Also nearby is the **Dafo Si**, which houses the largest reclining Buddha in China in its hall. Lying 37 miles (60 km) south of Zhangye, in the Tibetan town of Mati, is **Mati Si**, a fascinating complex of Buddhist caves carved into a cliff.



A view of the stupa at Dafo Si

11 Jiayuguan

嘉峪关

475 miles (765 km) NW of Lanzhou.

from Dunhuang.

Traditionally regarded as China's final outpost, the last point of civilization before the desert, Jiayuguan is visited mainly for its Ming-era fort (*see pp496–7*). Within town, the **Great Wall**

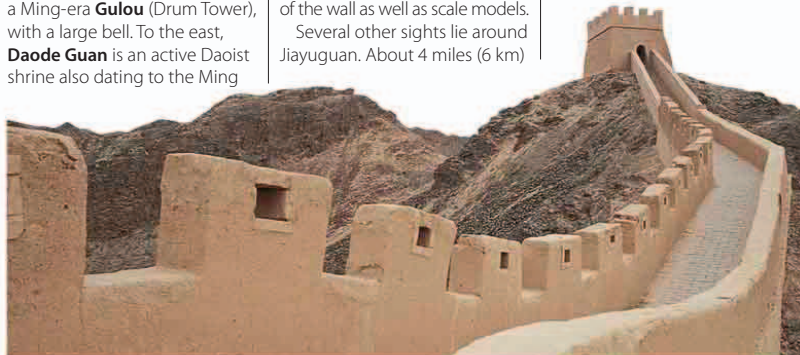
Museum documents the history of the wall from the Han to the Ming eras. Exhibits include photographs of remote sections of the wall as well as scale models.

Several other sights lie around Jiayuguan. About 4 miles (6 km)

north of the fort is **Xuanbi Changcheng** (Overhanging Wall), a restored section of the wall dating to the 16th century, that once linked the fort to the mountains. In the same area, the Hei Shan rock carvings depict scenes from daily life during the Warring States period. Situated 4 miles (6 km) south of town is the **First Beacon Tower**, a desolate outpost that marks the start (or end) of the western part of the Ming-dynasty Great Wall. About 12 miles (20 km) east of town are tombs from the Wei and Jin eras (220–420 AD), whose bricks are painted with celebratory scenes. The **Qilian Shan** peaks, 75 miles (120 km) to the south, cradle the 14,110 ft (4,300 m) Qiyi Bingchuan (July 1st Glacier), reached by a combination of train, taxi, and foot.

Great Wall Museum

24 Xinhua Nan Lu. Tel (0937) 639 6110. **Open** 8:10am–7pm daily (Nov–Apr: 9am–5pm).



The 16th-century ramparts of Xuanbi Changcheng (Overhanging Wall), Jiayuguan

◀ Colorful rock formations at Zhangye Danxia Landform Geological Park, Gansu

The Great Game

The “Great Game” was the name, popularized by Rudyard Kipling in *Kim*, of the covert war fought by the Russian and British empires for influence in the deserts and mountains of Central Asia at the end of the 19th century. Afghanistan was the first target for these two great empires and both sides vied for influence, with the British eventually succeeding in establishing a sympathetic regime in 1880. Meanwhile in Chinese Turkestan (Xinjiang) the Muslims broke free of China and set up the state of Kashgaria in 1863 under Yakub Beg. The Russians invaded the Ili Valley and, when China took Xinjiang back in 1877, negotiated to establish consulates in the area. The British response was to set up a trade mission in Kashgar and take a more aggressive approach in Tibet. In 1907 the stand-off ended with the Anglo-Russian Convention, which clearly defined territorial limits.



Central Asia was where the Russian, British and Chinese empires touched. The British, fearful of the Russian threat to India, wanted to cultivate a buffer zone around its frontier, using Afghanistan, Kashgaria and Tibet.



Sher Ali (1825–79), the son of Dost Mohammed who fought the British in the first Anglo-Afghan War, allowed entry to a Russian diplomatic mission, but turned back a British one. This sparked the second Anglo-Afghan War, after which the British placed Abdur Rahman on the throne in 1880.

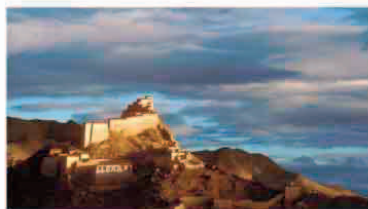


The Pamir Mountains held the passes that Alexander the Great and Timur (Tamerlane) had used to invade India. Russian advances here in 1885 and 1896 led to the mobilization of British troops, but treaties establishing new frontiers prevented war both times.

Tibet became involved when Britain placed it in China's sphere of influence. In response Tibet refused to acknowledge British attempts to set up a trade mission, resulting in the attack on Gyantse in 1903 (see p547) by Younghusband.



The Open Mouth (1899), a Punch cartoon, shows the British Lion and Russian Bear trying to get their hands on a scared Chinaman. China, weakened by internal strife, was repeatedly forced to sign unfair treaties handing over land and allowing the superpowers to establish trade missions that were used to spy on the other side.



⑩ Jiayuguan Fort

嘉峪关

At the western extremity of the Great Wall stands the Jiayuguan Fort, dominating the stony plain that separates two mountain ranges. Built of tamped earth in 1372, in the distinctive, embattled Ming-dynasty style, it was dubbed the "Impregnable Defile Under Heaven." It was of enormous strategic importance as it controlled the only military and trade link between China and the deserts of Central Asia. The frontier lay some way farther west, but for the Chinese Jiayuguan was the last outpost of civilisation, beyond which lay barbarian country, a place of perdition, fit only for exiled officials and banished criminals.



Trap Court

This was used to lure the enemy into a place from where they could be attacked from above. It also served as a holding bay for caravans.

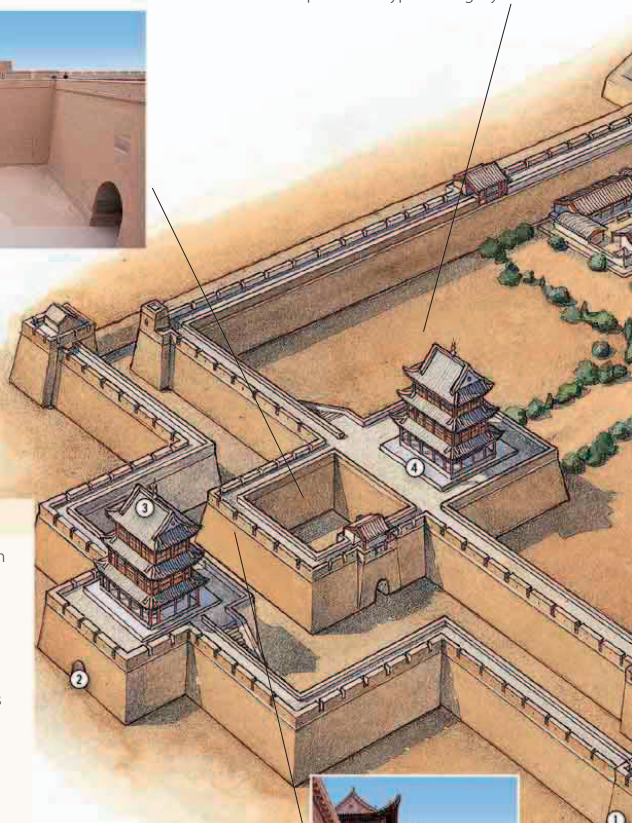
KEY

- ① **Corner Towers** gave protection to archers while they fired on the attacking troops.
- ② **"Gate of Sighs"** was once inscribed with the sorrowful graffiti of those leaving China
- ③ **Jiayuguan Men** is three stories high with typical Ming-style upturned eaves.
- ④ **Rou Yuan Men or Gate of Conciliation**
- ⑤ **Accommodations** for the generals and their families.
- ⑥ **Wenchang Hall** served as the official meeting point for visiting dignitaries coming from the interior of China.
- ⑦ **Outer wall of the fort**
- ⑧ **Inner Wall** is fortified by a 6-ft (1.8-m) parapet and embrasured towers.



Detail inside tower

As shown by these wooden doors, the interiors of the towers were beautifully painted in typical Ming style.



★ Fort Walls

Built of tamped earth and bricks, the mighty 35-ft (10-m) high walls were designed to be accessed by horses via ramps that lead from the gates to the battlements. The total length of the walls is about half a mile (750 m).






★ Guanghua Men

Rising 56 ft (17 m) above the fortress walls, the gate tower was originally completed in 1506, although like the others it has been extensively renovated.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

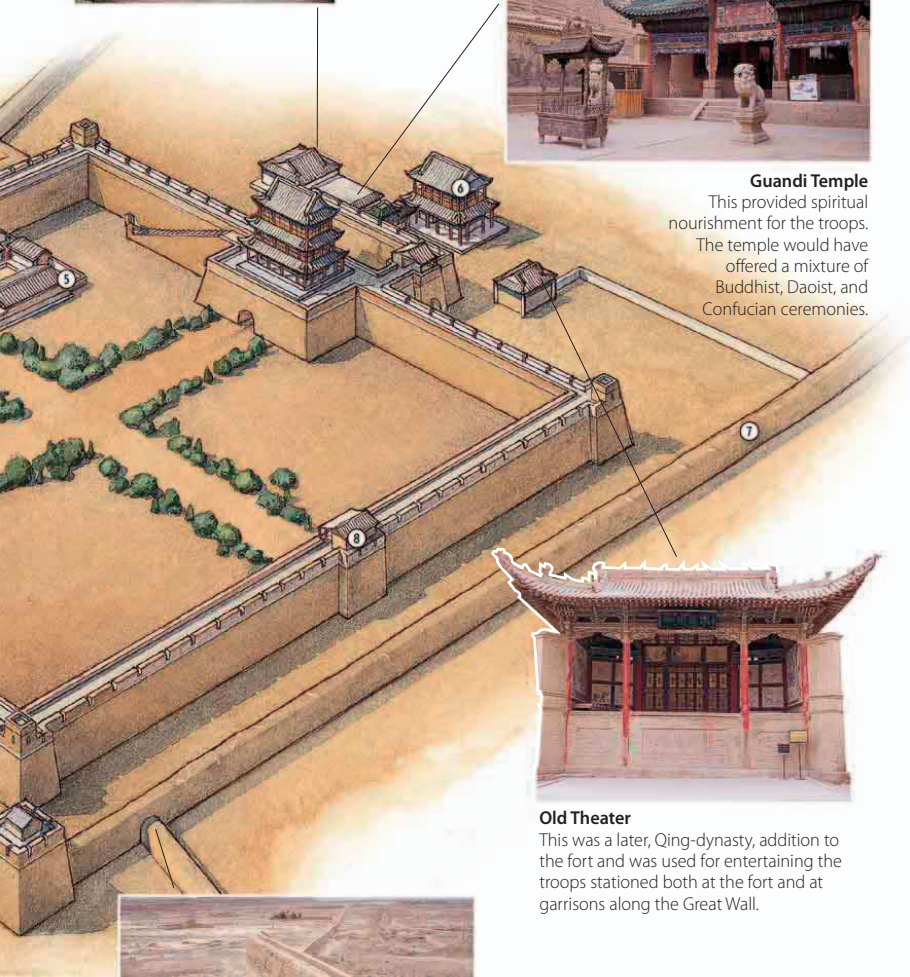
3 miles (5 km) W of Jiayuguan.

Tel (0937) 639 6058. **Open** July–Oct: 8am–5pm daily; Nov–Jun: 9am–5pm daily.  includes entry to the Great Wall Museum.



Guandi Temple

This provided spiritual nourishment for the troops. The temple would have offered a mixture of Buddhist, Daoist, and Confucian ceremonies.



Old Theater

This was a later, Qing-dynasty, addition to the fort and was used for entertaining the troops stationed both at the fort and at garrisons along the Great Wall.



End of the Great Wall of China

The wall stretches out either side of the fort closing off the plain. The wall is made of tamped earth, a raw material in ready supply in the desert.



A camel ride across the dunes at Mingsha Shan, Dunhuang

12 Dunhuang

敦煌

✈️ 🚗 Liuyuan, 80 miles (130 km) to the north, then bus. 📞 33 Ming Shan Rd, (0937) 883 7021.

A small oasis town, Dunhuang once prospered as the last stop on the Silk Road before it split north and south to skirt the Taklamakan Desert. It is a pleasant settlement that has achieved a certain level of prosperity, primarily through acting as a base for visiting the famous grottoes at Mogao (see pp500–1), a short distance away. The town caters for its foreign visitors and has several restaurants and budget hotels. The only items of interest at the **Dunhuang County Museum** (Xian Bowuguan) are a few Chinese and Tibetan manuscripts, from Mogao's famous Cave 17, which escaped the looting of explorers and archeologists. The museum also has examples of traditional silks and domestic items found near the beacon towers that were once part of China's outermost line of defense. There is a souvenir night market every summer evening along the town's main thoroughfare, Dong Dajie. The range of items on sale includes leather shadow puppets, Chinese scroll paintings, jade items, coins, Tibetan horns, and Buddha statues. just 3 miles (5 km) south of Dunhuang is



Printed textiles, Dunhuang market

Yueya Quan (Crescent Moon Lake), a small freshwater lake that has been a vital source of water here for thousands of years. It lies adjacent to the Mingsha Shan (Singing Sand Mountains), which tower several hundred feet high. The dunes were named after the sound of sand being crunched under foot. For some remarkable views, visitors can climb the dunes – preferably in the cool

of the evening. There is also a range of activities, including paragliding, sand tobogganing, and camel rides. A small folk art museum lies nearby.

Situated in the middle of fields about 2 miles (4 km) west of Dunhuang is the nine-story **Baima Ta** (White Horse Pagoda). This Tibetan-style pagoda was built in memory of a horse belonging to the monk, Kumarajiva, who came from the Silk Road kingdom of Kuqa (see p513). The horse died here in AD 384.

🏛️ **Dunhuang County Museum**
8 Yangguan Dong Lu.
Tel (0937) 881 8162.
Open 9am–5:30pm
Tue–Sun.

🐪 **Yueya Quan**
Tel (0937) 887 5209.
Open 8am–5pm
daily. 📍

Environs: About 12 miles (20 km) southwest of Dunhuang lies **Dunhuang Gucheng** (Dunhuang Ancient City), a film set built in the 1990s that was never dismantled. Its location and panoramic views are impressive, but it is rather dog-eared on closer inspection. However, the set has become a regular tourist stop with souvenir stores and even accommodations in yurts.

Lying 50 miles (80 km) west of Dunhuang are two Han-dynasty gates, **Yu Men Guan** (Jade Gate Pass) and **Yang Guan** (South Pass). Separated by 3 miles (5 km) of desert, they were once linked by the Great Wall. Abandoned over 1,000 years ago and under constant attack by the desert, the two towers remain quite impressive. The huge cube of the Yu Men Guan with its 33-ft (10-m) walls is the only discernible man-made structure in sight.



Yueya Quan and Mingsha Shan dunes, Dunhuang

Race for the Silk Road Oases

A scholarly reflection of the political rivalry between the great powers at the end of the 19th century was the race between a group of explorer-archeologists to locate (and plunder) the lost towns of the Silk Road. Between them, they succeeded in uncovering a huge number of long-forgotten, desert-scoured towns. These pioneers furthered the knowledge of life along the Silk Road and saved many items from further degradation. However, they did remove vast quantities of priceless works of art, to the eventual annoyance of the Chinese government. These are now scattered in museums around the globe. Initial interest in the region by the British was based on strategic considerations (*see p495*); then, as stories of lost cities emerged, the interest of antiquarians around the world was aroused. Controversial though they were, their excavations captured the world's imagination.



Tales of buried cities being uncovered by sandstorms emerged at the end of the 19th century. The Gaochang Ruins, discovered by von Le Coq, were found to have been a major Buddhist and Nestorian center (*see p471*).

Sven Hedin (1865–1952), from Sweden, was the first of many government-sponsored adventurers to explore these isolated regions. The others were Albert von Le Coq from Germany, Count Otani of Japan, Paul Pelliot of France, Sir Aurel Stein from Great Britain, and Langdon Warner from the USA.



This Buddha's head came from the Bezeklik Caves, discovered by von Le Coq in 1904. These caves held some beautiful murals protected over the years by the encroaching sand. Von Le Coq simply cut them from the walls and sent them home to Germany. Unfortunately, the murals were destroyed by bombing during World War II.



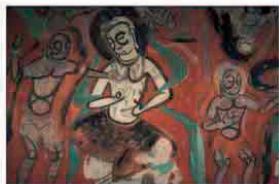
This silk painting is from the Mogao Caves, which were reached by Aurel Stein in 1907. He befriended the Abbot, Wang, and gained access to the newly discovered silks and manuscripts of Cave 17.

This fresco of a bodhisattva and other wall paintings at the Mogao Caves were considered sacred, so the collectors could not remove them (*see p500*). But Stein and the others negotiated with Abbot Wang to carry off thousands of historic items.



The Cave Paintings of Dunhuang

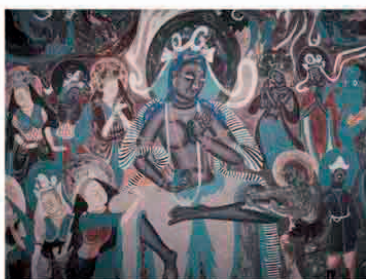
Protected by their relative isolation, the cave paintings at Dunhuang form the most fascinating repository of Buddhist art in China. For over 700 years, between the 4th and 11th centuries AD, Buddhist monks excavated and painted these caves, until invasion and the encroachment of Islam brought work to a halt. The paintings were all but forgotten until 1907, when the explorer Sir Aurel Stein stumbled across the caves and the Daoist priest who guarded them, Wang Yuanlu. Among the many thousands of items uncovered by Stein is the Diamond Sutra, the world's earliest printed book (in scroll form), and many of the patterns used by the monks to reproduce paintings at will.



Cave 275: Sixteen Kingdoms 366–439 This early cave of the Northern Liang Period is dedicated to the Maitreya or Future Buddha, who is depicted in wall paintings and statues.



Cave 272: Sixteen Kingdoms 366–439 These Devas (Buddhist angels) are in rapture as they listen to the Buddha's teaching.



Cave 254: Northern Wei 439–534 This cave shows stories of Buddha's early life, including the Sacrifice of the Prince. The murals are richer in content than in earlier caves and the artwork has become more accomplished.



Cave 249: Western Wei 535–556 On the north wall there is a wonderfully lively hunting scene showing the backward-shooting hunter – a feat only made possible with the invention of the stirrup.



Cave 428: Northern Zhou 557–580 Stories of the good prince, an earlier incarnation of Buddha, abound. Here he offers himself to a starving tigress so she may feed her cubs.



Cave 419: Sui 581–618 Under the short-lived Sui dynasty, China was reunified with both the north and south adopting Buddhism as their religion. This harmony allowed the development of a more Chinese artistic style and was a highly fruitful time for Dunhuang. This cave portrays the good prince on a hunting trip with his brothers.



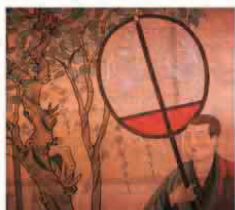
Cave 420: Sui 581–618 This fresco portrays a journey on the Silk Road, the route via which Buddhism came to China, as well as pictures of buildings in a style of which no real example survives.



Cave 220: Early Tang 618–704 Rich patrons would often feature in murals. This cave portrays ten generations of the wealthy Zhai family.



Cave 217: Early to High Tang 618–780 Detail of the Western Paradise of Amitabha Buddha. This cave contains some wonderful, unfinished paintings of Bodhisattvas.



Cave 17: Late Tang 848–906 A detail from the famous cave where the massive library of sutras was first found by Abbot Wang.



Cave 263: Western Xia 1036–1226 Under the Western Xia dynasty a lot of older caves were simply redecorated. This was originally a cave of Northern Wei origin.



The Dunhuang cliff face, home to 1,000 years of Buddhist history

Mogao Caves

敦煌石窟

Mogao, 15 miles (25 km) SE of Dunhuang, Gansu Province. **Tel** (0937) 886 9060. **Open** 8:15am–4:30pm daily (mid-Nov–Apr: 9:15am–4pm).



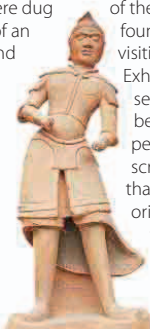
The caves at Mogao were dug into cliffs that rise out of an otherwise largely flat and featureless desert landscape. Getting there is relatively easy, if you are travelling independently, as Dunhuang is crawling with minibuses. As usual, the drivers wait until every seat is taken before setting off, but the half-hour journey is cheap. Remember that the caves are closed between 11:30am and 2:30pm.

Of the six hundred surviving caves, only about twenty are open to the public. The entrance fee includes a Chinese-speaking guide, although it is worthwhile, for an additional fee, engaging an English-speaking guide, since the tour party is likely to be smaller and the choice of caves less rigidly laid down. The caves that include portrayals of tantric sex can also sometimes be opened for a supplementary payment. The guides are generally fairly knowledgeable about the history of the caves and the paintings and sculptures within. You are, however, recommended to take your own flashlight and to remember that photography is

not allowed in the caves (unless you have a very expensive permit), a rule that is strenuously enforced. The standard tour lasts half a day, and includes about fifteen of the caves, as well as the museum, which exhibits some

of the ancient manuscripts found here. It is also worth visiting the Research and Exhibition Center, where seven of the caves have been reproduced, permitting far closer scrutiny of the paintings than is possible in the original caves, albeit without the same atmosphere of antiquity. There is a simple guesthouse for those wishing to stay overnight; otherwise, the return journey to Dunhuang

is by minibus, the last one leaving around 6pm.



Statue from pagoda at Mogao caves



Façade of Cave 96, covering a 100-ft (30-m) statue of Buddha



The beautifully decorated door of Longwu Si's prayer hall, Tongren

13 Tongren 同仁

66 miles (107 km) W of Xiahe.

Luol Festival (6th lunar month),
Buddhist Festival (1st lunar month).

Known as Repkong in Tibetan, Tongren is a transit point between Xiahe and Xining. This small town offers fascinating insights into the life of the Tibetan people. On the outskirts of town lies the colorfully decorated lamasery, **Longwu Si**, containing fine relics in its many halls. Initially built in 1301 during the Yuan dynasty, today's modern reconstruction houses three colleges and an assortment of lamaseries belonging to the Yellow Hat sect – a branch of Tibetan Buddhism (see pp526–7). At dusk, visitors can watch the resident monks debating, using elaborate formalized body language to

make a point. Sometimes, if you're lucky, they can also be seen making sand paintings. Behind the monastery, a stream flows into the grassland for about a mile, leading to a pretty Tibetan village. Situated in another village, Sengeshong, 4 miles (7 km) from the city center, the **Wutun** and **Gomar** monasteries are home to some of the best Tibetan artists in the world. Both monasteries are magnificently decorated, with every surface of their assembly halls carved and painted with traditional Repkong designs. The residents of this village speak a mixture of Tibetan, Mongolian, and other dialects.



A devotee in the Great Mosque

From the 16th century, it served as a stopover on the Silk Road's lesser-used southern route, and is now a good base for exploring Qinghai. Xining lies in a remote valley, and, at 7,464 ft (2,275 m), experiences a cool summer and freezing winter.

The **Great Mosque**, one of the largest and most impressive in northwest China, is situated on Dongguan Dajie, close to the city center. It was originally built in the 14th century, and is thoroughly Chinese in design, with elements such as flying eaves and vividly

colored arches. Enclosed within is a public square, that is usually bustling with thousands of worshippers.

In the far north of town, across the Huangshui River, the Daoist **Bei Shan Si** sits atop a hill and is the focus for a pleasant afternoon's hike. The route, via stone steps and across wooden walkways, passes numerous cave shrines.

Xining's ethnic mix is best appreciated at **Shuijing Xiang Market**, in the west of town off Xi Dajie, where over 3,000 stalls sell all manner of provisions and food, especially hot breads, mutton dishes, and kabobs. It is also a good place to stock up on snacks before heading off on a trip to Qinghai Hu, to the west of town.

14 Ta'er Si

See pp504–5.

15 Xining 西宁

144 miles (232 km) W of Lanzhou.

2,130,000. Qinghai
Tourism Bureau, (0971) 820 3271.

Although blessed with very few sights, Qinghai's capital, Xining, is home to an intriguing mix of minority peoples, mostly Hui Muslims and Tibetans with a sprinkling of Kazakhs and Mongols. It is the starting point of the railway to Lhasa, and trains depart daily.



The grand Chinese-style architecture of the 14th-century Great Mosque, Xining

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85



Mengda Tian Chi nature reserve along the banks of the Yellow River

16 Mengda Tian Chi

孟达天池

124 miles (200 km) SE of Xining. to Guanting or Xunhua, then taxi.

The remarkably beautiful Tian Chi, or “Heavenly Lake,” forms the core of the Mengda Nature Reserve, situated along the Yellow River. In contrast to most other parts of the province, the land here is fertile and abounds with vegetation. Most of the reserve is woodland, offering opportunities for scenic walks and birdwatching.

Accommodations are available at the reserve, while trips can be arranged through Xining’s Tourist Office. The trip to Mengda Tian Chi from Xunhua is spectacular, winding along a precipitous road that cuts into the cliffs along the Yellow River. Xunhua is home to the Turkic-speaking Salar people, who have been here for centuries but originate from modern-day Uzbekistan.



A medallion with Tibetan calligraphy

Its location on the Tibetan plateau, at a height of 10,500 ft (3,200 m) above sea level, makes it extremely remote, accessible only with the help of a tour agency. The lake is home to many Tibetan nomads, who graze their yaks and sheep near the lake, and in summer, numerous herds can be

spotted grazing.

The lake’s icy salt water is home to large quantities of fish, which feed a thriving bird population. Most trips to the lake center around a visit to **Bird Island**, a rocky outcrop

on the western side where colonies of swans, cormorants, bar-headed geese, and rare black-necked cranes, among others, flourish during the breeding season.

On the southern shore, the Qinghai Lake Tourist Center offers opportunities for boating, fishing, horse riding, and trekking. Accommodations are available at the tourist center.

18 Golmud

格尔木

474 miles (762 km) W of Xining.

60 Ba Yi Rd, (0979) 849 5123.

In the far west of Qinghai, Golmud is perched at 9,186 ft (2,800 m) in the forlorn Tibetan plateau. The only sizable town for several hundred miles, it is the second largest city in the province after Xining, with a largely Han Chinese population.

The town’s bus service, which runs to Lhasa in Tibet, is not particularly cheap and very few people use it now that the 625-mile (1,000-km) railway line to Lhasa has been built, which is the highest railway in the world and has pressurized carriages and oxygen supplies on board. Train journeys to Lhasa do not originate in Golmud, however, contrary to popular belief, but pass through it only. Xining is now the starting point for journeys to Lhasa from Qinghai Province.

One route out of Golmud is to take a land-cruiser tour into some of the remoter parts of Xinjiang.

Golmud itself is largely unappealing, although the surrounding lunar-looking landscape has a rugged charm best appreciated on the way out.

17 Qinghai Hu

青海湖

93 miles (150 km) W of Xining. Bird Island: **Closed** Nov–Feb.

The largest lake in China, Qinghai Hu covers a vast area of over 1,740 sq miles (4,500 sq km).



Colorful Tibetan prayer flags on the shore of Qinghai Hu

14 Ta'er Si

塔尔寺

Nestled into a hillside, this walled temple complex, also known as Kumbum Monastery is one of the most important Tibetan Buddhist sites in China. Tsongkhapa, founder of the Gelugpa sect (see p526), was born here in 1357, and the first temple was built in his honor in 1577. The monastery was closed for a period under Communist rule, although the buildings were afforded protection during the Cultural Revolution, and reopened in 1979. A major restoration project has been undertaken since an earthquake rocked the complex in 1990. Ta'er Si is easily accessible from Xining, and so is popular with both tourists and pilgrims.



★ Great Golden Roof Hall

This temple was built at the spot where Tsongkhapa was born and a tree is said to have grown with an image of the Buddha on each leaf. It contains a silver stupa holding his image.



Pilgrim

Turning a hand-held prayer wheel and fingering prayer beads, the devout walk clockwise around the perimeter of the complex.

★ Hall of Butter Sculpture

This strongly fragrant exhibition is packed with intricately carved yak butter sculptures. The gaudily painted figures depict scenes from Buddhist lore.



KEY

① Grand Kitchen

② Prayer Hall

③ Dinkejing Hall

④ Nine Room Hall

⑤ Visitors who climb these steps are rewarded with views across the valley.

⑥ Dafangzhang Hall

★ Great Hall of Meditation

This evocative chamber, where up to 2,000 monks could gather to chant *sutras*, is hung with silken *thangkas*.

The flat roof rests on grand pillars, each wrapped in an exquisite carpet.





Local monk

Ta'er Si is a working monastery and houses over 650 monks, who spend their life studying Buddhist teachings. There were once as many as 3,500 resident monks.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

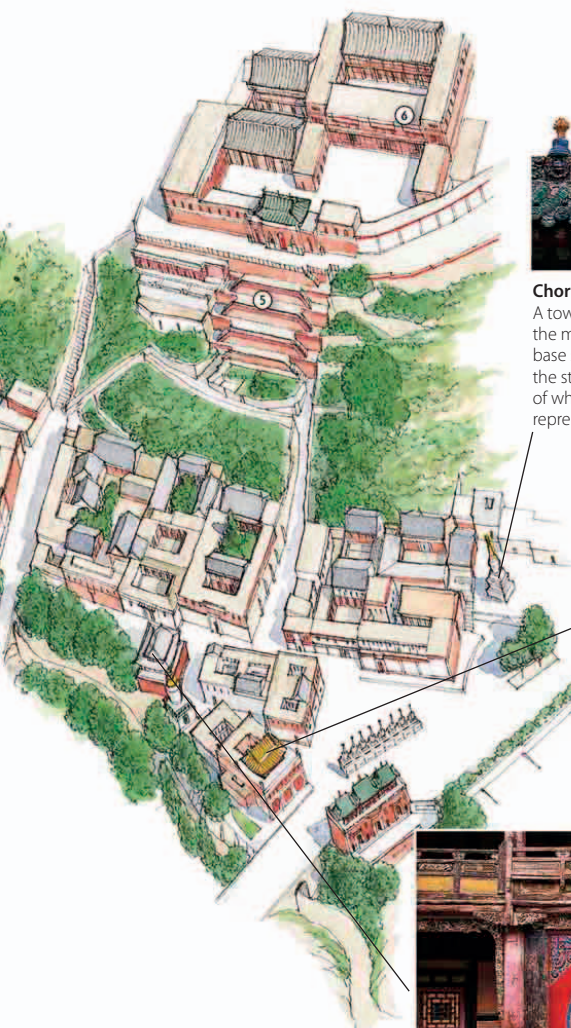
Huangzhong. 17 miles (28 km) S of Xining. **Tel** (0971) 223 2357.

Open 8am–6pm daily. 📶

📅 **Monlam:** 8th–15th of 1st lunar month; **Saka Dawa:** 8th–15th of 4th month; **Tsongkhapa:** 20th–26th of 9th month.

Transport

🚗 from Xining (depart just west of Xi Men).



Chorten

A towering *chorten* of 46 ft (13 m) marks the monastery's entrance. The square base symbolizes earth, the dome water, the steps fire, and the parasol wind, all of which is topped by a crown representing the ethereal sphere.



Lesser Golden Roof Hall

A truly bizarre pavilion, this temple is dedicated to animals. Stuffed deer, sheep, and goats, draped in ceremonial scarves, peer down from the upper story.

Prayer Hall

This time-worn temple is still used for religious tutelage. The external murals are new, however, and show a mix of Chinese and Tibetan influences.





XINJIANG

Although technically an autonomous region, Xinjiang is the largest of China's provinces, and shares borders with eight countries. This isolated region is largely desert and grassland fringed by some of the highest mountains in the world.

Two thousand years ago a string of oasis towns were established along the Silk Roads that skirted the northern and southern edges of the scorching Taklamakan Desert. Trade attracted merchants from India and Europe, and Xinjiang became the meeting point of east and west, with Christian churches and Buddhist temples. At the end of the Tang era, Turkic tribes repeatedly overran the region, and by the 15th century Islam was established as the main religion. In the 18th century, the Chinese took control of what was then Kashgaria, and despite several revolts, have maintained their rule ever since. Almost fifty percent of the population is comprised of ethnic minorities, and in 1955, in deference to the large Uighur population, the area became the Xinjiang Uighur Autonomous Region, with its capital at Ürümqi. Today, highlights of a visit include the Tian Shan range and the rich pastures around Tian Chi (Heaven Lake) outside Ürümqi, and Silk Road towns such as Turpan and Kashgar, shaded by palm trees and set against a backdrop of desert and mountain. It is also possible to travel southwest over the Karakoram mountains into Pakistan or west into Kazakhstan along the ancient trade routes.



Sights at a Glance

Towns & Cities

- 1 Turpan
- 2 Ürümqi
- 5 Ghost City
- 8 Kuqa
- 9 Kashgar
- 11 Yengisar
- 12 Yarkand
- 13 Karghilik
- 14 Hotan

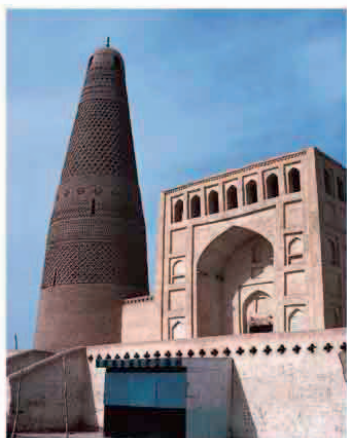
Lakes, Mountains & Areas of Natural Beauty

- 3 Tian Chi
- 4 Altai
- 6 Sayram Lake
- 7 Yining & Ili Valley
- 10 Karakoram Highway

Key

- Expressway
- National Highway
- Minor road
- Railroad
- International border
- Provincial border
- Disputed border





The graceful Emin Ta and Iranian-style mosque

1 Turpan 吐鲁番

116 miles (187 km) SE of Ürümqi.

255,000. Daheyan, 33 miles (54 km) N of Turpan, then minibus.

Turpan Bing Guan, (0995) 852 1352.

This oasis town on the northern Silk Road lies in the Turpan depression – one of the lowest areas on earth – and is largely an Uighur settlement. The Uighur descended from nomadic Siberian tribes who united in the 7th century and settled in the region in the 9th century. They later converted to Islam as it spread across Central Asia. It is an easy-going place, famous for

its grapes, with mud-brick houses and dusty streets often covered with trellised vines. The original Silk Road settlements of Jiaohe and Gaochang lie outside town along with other sights. In summer, the heat is intense, and it is best to use donkey carts as taxis.

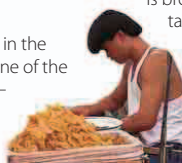
Emin Ta

1.5 miles (2.5 km) E of town. **Open** 8am–9pm daily (mid-Oct–mid-Apr. 10am–6:30pm).

This is perhaps the most interesting of

Turpan's numerous mosques because of its old minaret (Emin Ta), constructed in 1778, that rises like a stout but graceful chimney beside it. Built by Prince Suleiman in honor of his father, Prince Emin, the minaret is broad at the base and tapers toward the top.

Designed in the Iranian style with some elaborately decorative brickwork, its staircase was closed in 1989.



Dried fruit on sale, Turpan bazaar

Bazaar

Laocheng Lu.
Open daily.

The small Turpan market is an interesting place to browse for local products including a variety of medicinal potions,

decorated knives, clothing, fabric, nuts, and fruit (especially raisins).

Turpan Museum

Gaochang Lu. **Tel** (0995) 761 9650.

Open 10am–6:30pm Tue–Sun.

This small museum has a few worthwhile exhibits. The main points of interest are items excavated from the now empty Tang-dynasty Astana tombs located outside town. These include ancient silks, clothes, food items, and even some preserved corpses.

Jiaohe Ruins

6 miles (10 km) W of Turpan. minibus or cycle. **Open** 9am–6pm daily.

Although less important and smaller than Gaochang, the ruins of Jiaohe are better defined. Jiaohe was founded as a garrison town but came under Uighur jurisdiction in the 6th century. It was finally abandoned during the Yuan era, perhaps due to failing water supplies. The ancient city occupies a position on a steep plateau, with its street plan clearly visible, and is well worth a visit.

Returning from Jiaohe, visitors can stop off to see the *karez* irrigation site. Used throughout Xinjiang, this ingenious system of irrigation taps into natural underground water sources by using a network of subterranean tunnels which channel water to the fields. Wells, dug at intervals along the length of the tunnels, bring water to the surface.



The ruined city of Jiaohe set against a backdrop of hills on a steep plateau

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85



The dramatic Flaming Mountains near Turpan

Grape Valley

Tel (0995) 861 4688.  minibus from town. **Open** daily. 

An attractive desert oasis to the north of Turpan, Grape Valley (Putao Gou) is best visited in the summer. With vines and trellises bulging with grapes, it is a pleasant place to stop for lunch, with plenty of grapes and raisins to eat (for a fee). There is a winery nearby, as well as brick silos for drying the grapes.

Flaming Mountains

Tel (0995) 869 6012.  minibus from town. **Open** daily. 

The road east to Bezeklik leads past these sandstone mountains, made famous in the novel *Journey to the West*, a fictionalized account of the journey of the pilgrim monk Xuanzang to India. In the book, the mountains (Huoyan Shan) are described as being on fire, and at certain times of day, a combination of sun and shadows makes them seem to flicker as though glowing red-hot.

Bezeklik Caves

31 miles (50 km) NE of town. **Tel** (0995) 868 9116.  minibus from town. **Open** 8am–9pm daily (mid-Oct–mid-Apr: 10am–6:30pm). 

Picturesquely situated in a desert gorge high above the Sengim River, the Bezeklik Caves once formed part of a Buddhist monastery between the 6th and



14th centuries. The caves originally stored a collection of Buddhist murals in the Indo-Iranian style, which showed unusually marked western influences. Sadly, only fragments remain, as after centuries of neglect, they were all removed in the early 1900s by the German explorers von Le Coq and Grunwedel, and placed in a Berlin museum, where they were later destroyed by Allied bombs during World War II.



Buddha mural in the Bezeklik Caves

Astana

25 miles (40 km) SE of Turpan.



 minibus from town. **Open** dawn–dusk. 

The cemetery of the ancient city of Gaochang is located at Astana, a few miles northwest

of Gaochang. The tombs, dating from between the 3rd and 8th centuries AD, were systematically excavated from 1959, and revealed several corpses, mummified by the dry desert air. They had been wrapped in silks, and buried with many everyday items, including pottery, wooden carvings, coins, and documents relating to military and domestic transactions such as land tenures. Most items are now on display at museums in Turpan and Ürümqi, but the three tombs that are open to visitors display Tang-era paintings and a few preserved corpses.

Gaochang Ruins

29 miles (46 km) SE of Turpan.

Tel (0995) 869 3628.  minibus from town. **Open** 8am–9pm daily (mid-Oct–mid-Apr: 10am–6:30pm). 

Southeast of the Astana tombs lie the ruins of Gaochang city, surrounded by 33-ft (10-m) high walls. Founded as a garrison town in the 1st century AD, by the 4th century Gaochang had become the capital of the western Han empire. A cosmopolitan city with traces of Nestorian Christianity and Manichaeism (a Persian dualistic religion), it was visited by the monk Xuanzang in AD 630, on his journey to India in search of Buddhist *sutras*. From the 9th to the 13th centuries, the city was the Uighur capital, but was abandoned during the early Ming era. The ruins are extensive, but little is recognizable, apart from a Buddhist temple outside the southwest walls.



The Bezeklik Caves situated in a spectacular river gorge

2 Ürümqi

乌鲁木齐

91.1 miles (147.0 km) NE of Kashgar.

✈️ 🚗 🚝 📶 33 Renmin Lu, (0991) 281 7006.

Capital of Xinjiang since the 19th century, Ürümqi sits amid beautiful scenery, with the snow-laden Tian Shan to the east. It served as the base for a succession of warlords well into the 20th century, including the infamous Yang Zengxin who, in 1916, invited all his enemies to dinner and then beheaded them. Today a growing metropolis with a population of one million, Ürümqi is a modern Chinese city, with designer stores and high-rises. Many Han Chinese have settled here since 1949, and the population is now half-Han and half-ethnic minorities including Uighur, Manchu, Kazakh, Mongolian, and Tajik.

No longer a remote outpost, Ürümqi was finally connected to Central Asia and Europe after the Ürümqi-Almaty rail line was built in 1991. Most visitors come to see Tian Chi (Heaven Lake) but the city has other attractions such as its lively markets and the fascinating mix of ethnic peoples. The fine



Pagoda in Hongshan Park, Ürümqi

Xinjiang Provincial Museum devotes a section to archeological finds, especially from around Turpan, including some preserved corpses, silk paintings, and lovely brocades.

A section dedicated to local peoples includes *gers*, jewelry, and traditional clothes. In the north of the city, the scenic

Hong Shan Park

has a small 18th-century pagoda, and offers wonderful views.

🏛️ **Xinjiang Provincial Museum**
Xibei Lu. Tel (0991) 453 3561. **Open**
9:30am–6pm Tue–Sun.



Tian Shan peaks surrounding the deep-blue waters of Tian Chi

3 Tian Chi

天池

62 miles (100 km) E of Ürümqi. 📍 (0994) 323 1238. 🚗 from Ürümqi.

Closed in winter. 🐎 Horses available for exploring lake area.

A refreshing break from the arid deserts of northwestern China, Tian Chi (Heaven Lake) is a beautiful stretch of water, surrounded by luxuriant meadows and pine forests. It lies at an elevation of 6,500 ft (1,980 m), enclosed by snow-capped peaks including the majestic Bogda Feng, that reaches a height of almost 20,000 ft (6,000 m). A wonderful place for spending a day, Tian Chi offers many opportunities for leisurely walks and hikes in the lake area and through the neighboring countryside dotted with Kazakh *gers*.

The local Kazakhs are mostly nomadic, living off sheep-breeding, and more recently, tourism. Very friendly and hospitable, they can arrange guides and horse treks around the lake and into the hills.

Tian Chi can only be visited during summer (May–September), as it is not accessible during the winter months. There are usually plenty of accommodations available in local Kazakh *gers* around the lake. Staying overnight can be far more fun and interesting than the day-tours which are sometimes a bit tacky.

Grapes & Wine

Nearly every household in the region is involved in grape production, either in cultivation, or in drying inside ventilated barns. In Xinjiang, the use of grapes for making wine was first recorded by a Chinese emissary in 138 BC, although grapes were possibly cultivated here as early as the Shang era. In fact, all wine-making in China was learned from the peoples of the western regions. By the Yuan era, wine



Fruit vendor weighing grapes at the marketplace in Ürümqi

production, based in Xinjiang, was substantial, and by the Ming period, varieties such as the crystal, the purple, and the seedless green rabbit-eye grape were grown. Today, wine production is thriving in China, and most of these varieties are still grown.

Islam in China

Islam probably came to Xinjiang via the Silk Road in the ninth century, some 200 years after Arab sailors had landed in southern China. By the Ming Dynasty, Muslims had flourished and become fully integrated into Han society without losing their dress and dietary customs. Despite hostile regimes and upheavals there is now a significant Muslim population of about 13 million. These comprise the Xinjiang nationalities – Uighur, Kazakhs, Kyrgyz, Tajiks, Tatars, and Uzbeks of the northwest – and the large contingent of Chinese-speaking Hui, scattered around the country. It is generally accepted that all Muslims in China are Sunni of the Hanafi School, which is one of four “schools of Islamic law.” It is considered the oldest and most liberal school and is traditionally tolerant of differences within Muslim communities.



Mosques in China retain most traditional Islamic features but the pagodas and upturned eaves are clear signs of Chinese architectural influences.



The muezzin, as in all Muslim communities, calls the faithful to prayer five times a day. Today, the call is usually recorded and broadcast by loudspeaker.



Inside the mosque the congregation members, usually men, prostrate themselves before the *mihrab*, a niche in the wall indicating the direction of Mecca. The main hall is reserved for Friday prayers.



The Hui are said to be the descendants of the Arab and Persian traders who arrived in the Tang dynasty and married into Chinese families. They are the biggest Muslim minority.



Dongxiang Muslims hail from Gansu province and speak Mongolian. They have left pastoral herding in favor of a sedentary farming life.

The Koran was first translated into Chinese in 1927. Through the interpretations of the scholars, the Koran is a vital part of Islamic life.





The breathtaking alpine scenery of Hanas Lake Nature Reserve, Altai

4 Altai

阿勒泰

404 miles (650 km) N of Ürümqi.

✈ Altai, then bus. 🚌 from Ürümqi to Burqin, then 93 miles (150 km) N via bus or car to reserve. 📞 (0906) 652 4464.

In contrast to the arid deserts of southern Xinjiang, the far north is covered in forests, lakes, and streams, over looked by high mountains. The Altai region, bordering Mongolia, Russia, and Kazakhstan, is famous for its natural beauty, best seen in the **Hanas Lake Nature Reserve** (can be visited from Burqin). Centered around an alpine lake set at 4,490 ft

(1,370 m) in the glorious Altai mountains, the reserve supports a diversity of wildlife. The area is wonderful for walking, and boat trips are available on the lake. Tours from Ürümqi operate all year.

5 Ghost City

魔鬼城

Near Urho, 62 miles (100 km) N of Karamay. 📞 13,000. 📞 (0906) 652 4464. ✈ Karamay, then bus. 🚌 from Karamay. 📞

Rising above the ocean of oil rigs, along the Dsungar Basin, is a collection of wind-shaped rock formations, known as

the Ghost City. Made famous by the movies filmed there, including *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*, it is now a popular destination. Camel rides, mountain bikes, and four-wheel vehicles can be hired.

6 Sayram Lake

塞里木湖

75 miles (120 km) N of Yining. 🚌

The jewel-like Sayram Lake, or Sailimu Hu, is a vast stretch of water set amidst magnificent mountain scenery and flowering meadows. Located at 6,560 ft (2,000 m), the lake area is chilly for most of the year, and only warm in summer when it is also covered in flowers. Reached by bus from Yining, it is a beautiful spot, barely touched by tourism, although it is possible to stay in simple lakeside guesthouses or *gers* (yurts).

7 Yining

伊宁

242 miles (390 km) W of Ürümqi. 📞 216,600. ✈ from Ürümqi. Ili Valley: 🚌 from Yining.

Close to the border with Kazakhstan, Yining is the capital of the Ili Kazakh Autonomous Prefecture.



Woman tending her sheep in a flower-covered meadow on the shores of Sayram Lake

For hotels and restaurants in this region see pp558–63 and pp572–85



A traditional shop in one of Yining's Uighur bazaars

In recent centuries, Russia has noticeably influenced Yining as it was occupied by Russians in 1872 when Yakub Beg ruled the region (then known as Kashgaria) and later, during the period of Sino-Soviet friendship in the 1950s, a number of Russians resided here. After relations between China and the USSR broke down in the early 1960s, there were violent border clashes along the Ili River. More recently, Yining has been the scene of several Uighur uprisings, which were quelled.

Small, but pleasant and friendly with tree-lined streets, Yining is known for its local honey beer, and hard cheese. Its main draws are the lively Uighur bazaars with their range of street food in the old city, south of Qingnian Park. In summer, the town comes alive with bustling night markets and food stalls.

About 3 miles (5 km) south of town, the **Ili Valley** (Ili Gu) is a scenic farm area of fields and meadows. Home to the Xibo people, a tiny minority, whose capital is at Chapucha'er. Related to the Manchus, the Xibo were sent here during the Qing era to maintain sovereignty in the region. They have kept themselves separate from the Han and other local communities, and retain their own language and script.

8 Kuqa

库车

186 miles (300 km) SW of Ürümqi. 75,000. Kuqa Travel Agency, (0997) 712 9558. Fri.



Grapes for sale on the street, Yining

This small oasis town, essentially an Uighur settlement, has an interesting history. An independent state until the 8th century, when it fell under Chinese rule, the kingdom had strong links

with India. Its significance as a Buddhist center dates back to the 4th century, when the Buddhist scholar Kumarajiva flourished. Born here, he went to school in Kashmir, northern India, and came back to China as a teacher and linguist, translating Sanskrit texts into Chinese. The town became a focal point from where Buddhism was disseminated throughout China. Several large monasteries were

founded on the vast wealth generated by the Silk Road trade. In the 7th century, the monk Xuanzang passed through Kuqa and claimed to have defeated its ruler in a philosophical debate. With the arrival of Islam in the 9th century, however, most traces of its Buddhist past disappeared.

Mainly a stopover on the long journey to Kashgar, Kuqa is effectively two towns – New Kuqa and Old Kuqa. The old town has a bustling bazaar atmosphere, and a few dusty, narrow lanes lined with traditional mud houses. Built in 1923, the attractive green-tiled **Great Mosque** bears no traces of Chinese influences in its traditional arabesque design.

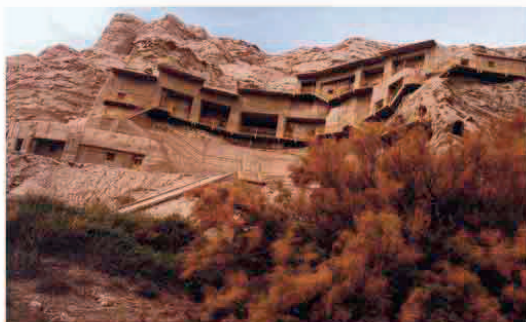
One of the main reasons to visit Kuqa are the **Thousand Buddha Caves** at Kizil, 43 miles (70 km) west of town. The caves date to between AD 500–700 and the frescoes, in a mixture of Indo-Iranian and Greek styles, are fascinating for their total absence of Chinese influence. Unfortunately, the caves were looted at the beginning of the 20th century by archeological explorers. While most of the caves have been stripped of their frescoes, some of the cave decoration has survived, notably the musicians in Cave 38, and the domestic and agricultural scenes in Cave 175.

About 19 miles (30 km) north of Kuqa lies the ruins of the ancient city of **Subashi**.

Thousand Buddha Caves

Hired car or taxi. **Tel** (0997) 893 7006.

Open daily. arranged by the Kuqa tourist office.



The Thousand Buddha Caves at Kizil, outside Kuqa

9 Kashgar

喀什

In the far west of Xinjiang, the Silk Road town of Kashgar lies at the foot of the Pamir mountains, with the Taklamakan Desert to the east. As the meeting point of the northern and southern Silk Roads and the gateway to the West, it was once a place of great significance. A Chinese garrison was established here in AD 78, but the area succumbed to the spread of Islam in the 9th century, and Kashgar did not become part of the Chinese empire again until the 18th century. Later, a Central Asian warlord, Yakub Beg, proclaimed himself Khan of the state of Kashgaria but he died in 1877 and China annexed the province. Today, Kashgar is once more a busy market town and transport hub, and despite rampant modernization retains much of its old charm.



Farmers waiting to trade livestock at market, Kashgar


Sunday Market

Near Ayziret Lu. **Open** daily. **Livestock Market: Open** Sun.

One of China's most famous weekly markets, the Sunday Market lies in the northeast suburbs, just beyond the river. Despite now being split into two markets – the livestock market is a few miles southeast of town – thousands of traders flood in from all directions on horseback, in donkey-drawn carts, on foot, and in every form of motorized vehicle. In the crush, stall holders sell blankets, garish fabrics, carpets, and fruit. However, the main attraction is the bustling livestock market. (Carts shuttle between the two.) Here horses are road-tested at a gallop and small herds of sheep are kept in order while waiting to be sold. It is a dusty, noisy, and photogenic place, which comes to life at dawn, and lasts into the evening.

Id Kah Mosque

Idi Kah Square. **Tel** (0998) 282 3235.

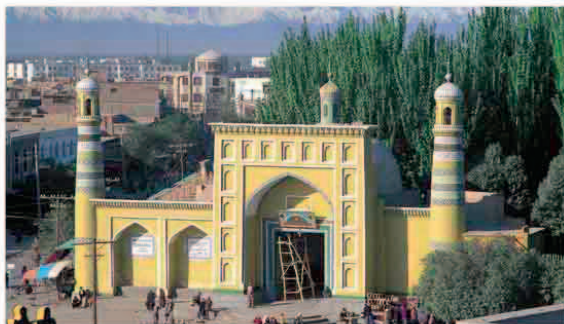
Open 9am–4pm daily (closed during services). 

The largest mosque in Xinjiang, and one of the largest in China, Id Kah Mosque (Aitika Qingzhen Si) was probably founded in 1738, although it possibly stands on the site of a smaller mosque, built in the 15th century. Built in the Central Asian style and altered over

the centuries, the mosque's current structure dates back only as far as 1838, and was badly damaged during the Cultural Revolution (*see pp70–71*). The main gate, flanked by a pair of small minarets, is a confection of marzipan-like yellow brick and tiling. Inside the gate is an octagonal pavilion and a pool, as well as a 100-columned space which can accommodate as many as 7,000 worshippers. Although women are generally not permitted to enter the mosque, all modestly dressed foreign visitors should have no problem, although there are times – such as during services – when non-believers are not allowed. Visitors are advised to remove their shoes when entering carpeted areas.

Old Town

Area to the NE of Id Kah Mosque. Northeast of Id Kah Square is the sprawling Uighur bazaar area. Split into different sections, each specializes in particular items such as hats, musical instruments, carpets, and hardware. The main attractions are the locally-produced Kashgar *kilims* (carpets) and colorful Central Asian hats. Part of the area is a network of mud-brick walls and courtyards, with local teahouses and tiny restaurants selling flat breads, noodles, lamb stews, and kabobs. A 10-ft (3-m) section of the old city walls can be seen at the end of Seman Lu, east of the mosque, and on Yunmulakxia Lu, southwest of the mosque.



The Id Kah Mosque, with Kashgar city and the Pamirs on the horizon



One of many old alleyways lined with mud-brick houses, Kashgar

Tomb of Yusup Hazi Hajup

Open daily. 📍

This favorite son of Kashgar was an 11th-century Uighur thinker and poet, renowned for his epic poem *The Knowledge of Happiness*. He was originally buried outside the city, but his tomb was relocated close to Kashgar's main square, when threatened by a flooding river. Although it has a plain interior, the external structure is impressive. Top-ped with a blue dome and a cluster of minarets, the tomb is encased in blue-and-white tiles with Arabic motifs.

Aba Khoja Mausoleum

See pp516–17.

Caves of the Three Immortals

11 miles (18 km) N of Kashgar. 📍 📱 Among the earliest Buddhist cave carvings in China, the Caves of the Three Immortals (Sanxian Dong) possibly date back to the 2nd century. The grottoes are not always accessible as they are perched high on a sandstone cliff. Poor attempts at restoration and embellishment over the years have destroyed many of the paintings and statues. However, a handful of small Buddha figurines remain, which can only be seen with the permission of the Kashgar tourist office. If permitted, visitors will have to take the official guided tour.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

920 miles (1,473 km) SW of Ürümqi. 📍 350,000. 📞 144 Se Man Rd, (0998) 298 4836. 🌞 Sun.

Transport

✈️ 🚗 🚌 International Bus Station, CAAC (buses to airport).

🏛️ Ruins of Ha Noi

22 miles (35 km) NE of Kashgar.

The remains of the Tang-era town of Ha Noi lie in a desert setting northeast of Kashgar. Abandoned in the 12th century, the ruined 7th-century town offers little besides the **Mor Pagoda**, a large stupa said to have been visited by the monk Xuanzang on his historic journey to India.

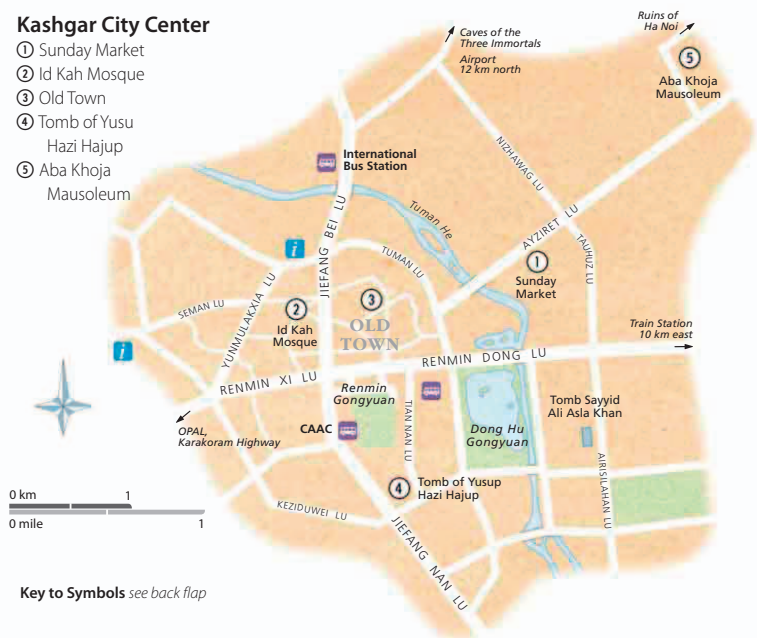
🏛️ Opal

18 miles (30 km) W of Kashgar.

Opal or Wupoer is the site of the renovated tomb of Mohammed Kashgari – an eminent 11th-century scholar and philologist, credited with compiling the first Turkic-Arabic dictionary. A museum devoted to him is situated here, and every Monday there is also a colorful market.

Kashgar City Center

- ① Sunday Market
- ② Id Kah Mosque
- ③ Old Town
- ④ Tomb of Yusup Hazi Hajup
- ⑤ Aba Khoja Mausoleum

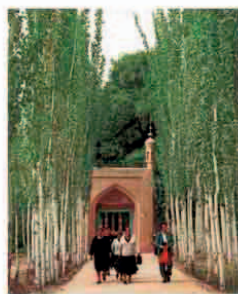


Key to Symbols see back flap

Aba Khoja Mausoleum

阿巴克霍加 – 香妃墓

Built in the 17th century, the Aba Khoja Mausoleum and nearby buildings form one of the best examples of Islamic architecture in China. The mausoleum is the burial place of the family of Aba Khoja, a celebrated Islamic missionary. However, the monument is also known as Xiangfei's Tomb, as it may be the burial place of one of Aba Khoja's descendants, Ikparhan, said to be the legendary "fragrant concubine" Xiangfei. The wife of a defeated rebel leader, she was captured by the Qianlong emperor and taken back to Beijing to be his imperial concubine. Refusing to submit to him she was, depending on which story you believe, either murdered or driven to suicide by the emperor's mother. Others claim she died of old age.



The entrance to the Aba Khoja complex lined with plane trees



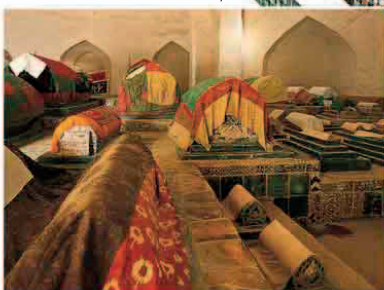
★ Geometric Decorations

Floral and geometric patterns are common in Islamic art because creating animate objects was considered to be in God's realm (flowers were considered inanimate).



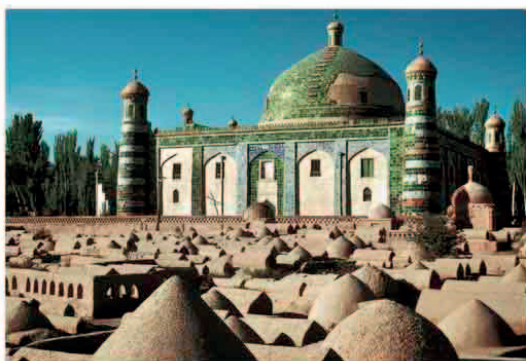
KEY

- ① **The casket of Ikparhan** is labelled inside the tomb hall. The carriage which supposedly carried her body back from Beijing is also on display.
- ② **The four corner minarets** lack the slender grace of most other towers. Instead their charm derives from the colorful striping of the tiles and the exquisite detailing of Islamic motifs and patterns.
- ③ **The dome** is 56 ft (17 m) in diameter. Almost half the tiles have now fallen from the dome.
- ④ **Graceful minarets flanking the entrance**
- ⑤ **Arabesques** are beautiful floral patterns where a main stem branches into a series of secondary stems that may either branch again or rejoin the main stem, and so on.



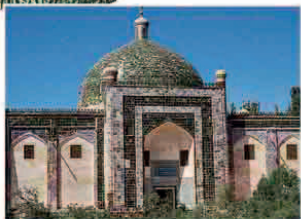
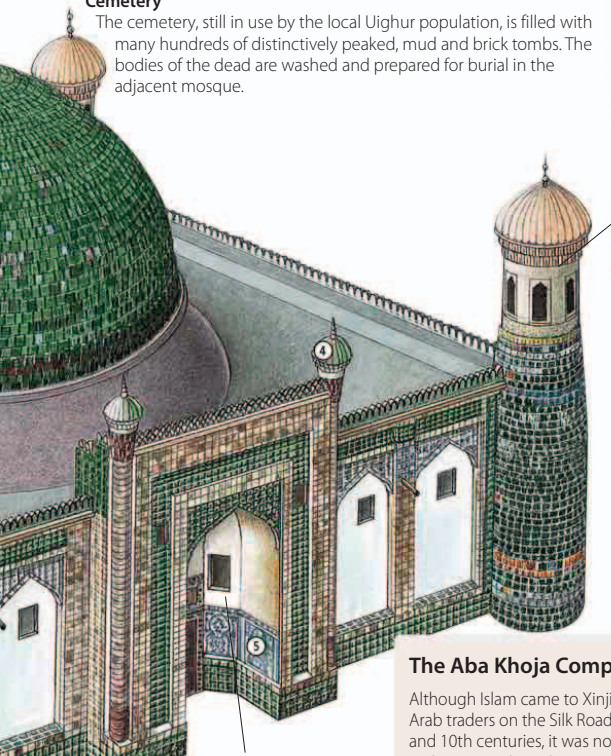
★ Tombs

Decorated with blue-glazed tiles, the tombs of the Aba Khoja family lie on a raised platform, draped in colorful silks.



Cemetery

The cemetery, still in use by the local Uighur population, is filled with many hundreds of distinctively peaked, mud and brick tombs. The bodies of the dead are washed and prepared for burial in the adjacent mosque.



Mausoleum Entrance

The impressive façade of the mausoleum has a tiled *iwan* niche-style entrance typical of mosques in Central Asia.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Just over 2 miles (4 km) NE of Old Town center.

Mausoleum: **Open** 9am–5pm daily. 🕌 Mosque: **Open** daily (prayer day Fri). 🕌

Transport

🚶 from People's Square. Also possible to cycle or walk.



Minaret decoration

Each of the windows are screened in a different geometric pattern. The surrounds are adorned with graceful arabesques while the turret is topped with an inverted lotus dome, scalloped edges, and finial.

The Aba Khoja Complex

Although Islam came to Xinjiang via Arab traders on the Silk Road in the 9th and 10th centuries, it was not until the 15th century that it became the dominant religion of the area, and Kashgar became an important Islamic center. The Aba Khoja complex is a significant architectural ensemble comprising a mausoleum, four prayer halls, a lecture hall, and a cemetery. There is also a gateway covered in decorative, blue-glazed tiles and a pond in the courtyard for worshipers to cleanse themselves before entering the mosque. The halls are graced by exquisitely painted wooden beams supported by pillars with delightful *muqarnas* – an Islamic feature of projecting niches – on the capitals.



Arabic *muqarnas* on mosque pillar



Truck passing a checkpoint on the Karakoram Highway, with the Pamir mountains in the background

10 Karakoram Highway

中巴友谊公路

SW from Kashgar into Pakistan. 


Once a spur of the Silk Road, the Karakoram Highway (Zhongba Gonglu) was the only route over the Karakoram Mountains, to and from India. During the 1970s and 1980s, a road was built across the mountains following the old caravan route, to link China and Pakistan. The 808-mile (1,300-km) route from Kashgar to Islamabad in Pakistan, which stretches across the Pamir mountains over peaks reaching 26,250 ft (8,000 m), is one of awe-inspiring beauty. Camels and yaks, tended by Tajik herdsmen, graze in the highland pastures. Lakes with mirror-like surfaces, such as Lake Karakul, reflect the majesty of the mountains, while the remains of the occasional caravanserai stand crumbling at the side of the road.

The last town in China is **Tashkurgan**, a bleak outpost, with the remains of an ancient fort. Beyond it is the 15,750-ft (4,800-m) high **Khunjerab Pass**, the gateway to Pakistan. The Pakistan border post lies just beyond at Sost. Visitors should note that the border is closed in winter, and that visas are required – issued in Beijing or Hong Kong – to cross into

Pakistan. The highway took nearly 20 years to build. The journey along it is fairly arduous, and although traveling conditions are improving, it is best to carry warm clothing, food, and drink for the trip, which takes about four days.

11 Yengisar

英吉沙

37 miles (60 km) S of Kashgar. 

The small, sleepy town of Yengisar on the southern arm of the Silk Road is renowned for its locally produced knives. For centuries, the town has been manufacturing hand-crafted

knives for Uighur men, who carry them as traditional accoutrements. Knives of all shapes and sizes are sold in dozens of shops. While most of the knives produced are factory-made, traditional knife-making skills are still practiced by artisans in the center of town. Using basic tools, the workers at the **Yengisar Country Small Knife Factory** produce exquisite designs fashioned from fine woods, their handles inlaid with silver or horn. It is sometimes possible to visit the factory, even though a big board outside bears a “No Entrance” sign. The knives, which make attractive gifts, require special arrangements to be taken home.



Polished knives displayed at a stall in the Sunday Market, Yengisar

Jade

Jade, or nephrite, has been carved and polished by the Chinese for several thousand years, along with jadeite, soapstone, and chalcedony. While the latter are known as *yu*, nephrite is *zhen yu*, or true jade. Initially used as a tool, jade came to be widely used as jewelry during the Han era. By the Qing period, carvers were producing a variety of decorative pieces including intricate jade animals. Always thought of as being green, jade can in fact be brown, black, or the prized cloudy white. To the Chinese, it symbolizes longevity and purity, and is worn as an amulet to ward off disease. The country's only source of nephrite is Xinjiang, particularly around Hotan, so a sophisticated supply system must have existed even in neolithic times.



Uncut nephrite or true jade

12 Yarkand

莎车

106 miles (170 km) SE of Kashgar. 📍

For centuries an important commercial center on the southern arm of the Silk Road, Yarkand was, like Kashgar, prominent in the Great Game – the power struggle between China, Russia and Britain (see p494). The old town, with its adobe walls and narrow streets, has a few interesting sights. The **Altyn Mosque** has beautifully painted ceilings, and in its courtyard is the



A vendor pulls a cart of radishes, Yarkand

Tomb of Aman Isa Khan

(1526–60) – the poet wife of one of the local Khans – built in 1992. Behind the mosque is a sprawling cemetery housing the tombs of the Khans of Yarkand. There is also a lively Sunday market.

13 Karghilik

椰城

144 miles (230 km) SE of Kashgar. 📍

This town was a convenient stop between Hotan and Kashgar on the southern arm of the Silk Road. The colorful old Uighur town is definitely worth exploring, while the town's main attraction, the 15th-century **Jama Masjid**, sits amidst the arcaded bazaar.

14 Hotan

和田

249 miles (400 km) SE of Kashgar.

📍 100,000. 🚗 🚗 🚗 Hotan Travel, (0903) 251 5660. 📞

The oasis town of Hotan, or Hetian, was an early center for the spread of Buddhism before Islam arrived in the 9th century.

Formerly the capital of the Yutian kingdom, it has been, like most Silk Road cities, periodically subsumed into the Chinese empire. For centuries, the town's jade, carpets, and silk have been

considered the finest in China, and are still produced in factories across town. According to legend, the secret of silk was first introduced to the region by a Chinese princess betrothed to a local prince, who smuggled silk moth eggs in her hair in AD 440. Craftsmen carve fine jade items at the Jade Factory on Tanai Lu, while the Carpet Factory across the river is a friendly place also worth a visit, especially for those wishing to buy a carpet, as they are available

here at bargain prices. Visitors interested in silk production can stop by the **Hetian Silk Factory** in the northeast of town.

Sections of the old city walls still stand on both sides of Nuerwake Lu. The chaotic local market takes place on Fridays and Sundays in the northeast of town. Though not as large as its famous counterpart in Kashgar, it is a colorful affair with livestock, fruit, silks, and carpets on sale.

At the end of the 19th century, the first rumors of the region's lost cities – which inspired several expeditions – emanated from here. A detailed map, indicating the location of the buried cities, lies in the small **Hetian Regional Museum**. Items of interest include fragments of silk, wooden utensils, and jewelry excavated from nearby lost cities, as well as the mummified corpses of a 10-year-old girl and a 35-year-old man with Indo-European features, which are 1,500 years old. The ruined city of **Melikawat** lies over 18 miles (30 km) south of town. All that remains of this once significant Buddhist center are crumbling walls, and shards of glass and pottery.

Hetian Regional Museum

342 Beijing Xi Lu. Tel (0903) 251 9286.

Open hours vary; call in advance. 📞



Craftsmen at the open-air market in Hotan



TIBET

Introducing Tibet

522-529

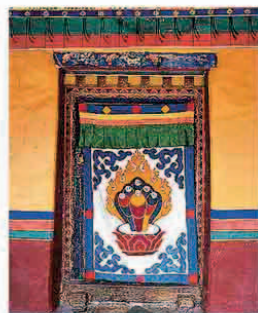
Around Tibet

530-551



Tibet at a Glance

Bordered on three sides by some of the world's highest mountain ranges – the Himalayas, the Karakoram, and the Kunlun – Tibet has remained in relative isolation. Sheltered first by its inaccessibility and then, in the age of air travel, by Chinese occupation, the “Roof of the World” is now open to foreign visitors. Its one major city, Lhasa, retains its spiritual core: the Jokhang; the venerable palace of the Dalai Lamas, the Potala; and great monasteries such as Drepung and Sera. Wherever you go, Tibet offers panoramic vistas of high-altitude desert fringed by peaks, but the turquoise depths of Lake Namtso and the sky-scraping peaks of Mount Everest are particularly worth visiting.



Thangka hanging on a door at the Jokhang Temple, Lhasa





The Potala Palace seen from the rooftop of the Jokhang, Lhasa's holiest temple



Getting There

Visitors arrive mostly by air from Chengdu, the capital of Sichuan, or Kathmandu, Nepal. An overland route also connects Kathmandu and Lhasa, but while individual travelers can leave, only tour groups may enter this way. The bus route from Golmud in Qinghai has been superseded by a high-speed railway line, and most people take the train to Lhasa from Xining or Chengdu. No independent travel is allowed for foreigners in Tibet. The best option is to arrange a tour with an agency in Lhasa, which will also handle permits.

A PORTRAIT OF TIBET

Tibet's reputation as a land of exotic mystery is due to centuries of geographic isolation and a unique theocratic culture, based on Buddhism but influenced by an older shamanistic faith called Bon. In 1950, China marched into Tibet and annexed the country. Despite this upheaval, the traditional culture and values of the Tibetans remain strong and continue to lure and enchant visitors.

Since the introduction of Buddhism in the 7th century, the religion has permeated all aspects of Tibetan life, with monasteries acting as palaces, administrative centers, and schools. Ruled by priests, Tibet was feudal in outlook and resisted all modernization. The country thus entered the modern world without an army, lay education, or roads, and with few technologies more sophisticated than the prayer wheel.

Buddhism was introduced in Tibet by Songsten Gampo (AD 608–50). A remarkable ruler who also unified the country, Songsten Gampo was converted to Buddhism by his Chinese and Nepalese wives. The next religious king, Trisong Detsen (742–803) consolidated the Buddhist faith, inviting the Indian teacher Padmasambhava (Guru Rinpoche) to Tibet and founding Samye Monastery. A revival of the native Bon religion in the 8th century

led to Buddhist persecution, and though the religion re-emerged later, the kingdom disintegrated into several principalities.

In the 13th century, Tibet submitted to the Mongols, and in 1247 the head lama of Sakya Monastery was appointed Tibet's ruler. Subsequently, Tsongkhapa (1357–1419) established the Gelugpa or Yellow Hat sect. His disciples became the Dalai Lamas, rulers of Tibet for 500 years. Each new Dalai Lama is seen as a reincarnation of the previous one. In 1950, the Chinese took advantage of a tenuous claim to the territory and invaded. In the uprising that followed in 1959, the 14th Dalai Lama (b.1935) fled to India, where he still heads the Tibetan Government-in-Exile. By 1970 more than a million Tibetans had died either directly at the hands of the Chinese or through famine caused by incompetent agricultural policies. Tibet's cultural heritage was razed, and over 6,000 monasteries destroyed.



Sprawling Ganden Monastery, built in the early 15th century



Buddha's all-seeing eyes on the Kumbum, Gyantse

Some monasteries that were ravaged during the Cultural Revolution are now being repaired and returned to their former roles, but creating or owning an image of the Dalai Lama is still illegal.

The ancient city of Lhasa is the heart of Tibet, though Han Chinese immigrants now outnumber ethnic Tibetans. A spectacular railway line linking Golmud in Qinghai to Lhasa means that immigrant numbers will continue to grow. However, the old quarter, home of the Potala Palace and the Jokhang Temple, illustrates the determination with which Tibetans have held onto their cultural traditions. A common sight here are the pious pilgrims, swinging prayer wheels and performing prostrations as they make *kora* – holy circuits – around the temple.

Most of Tibet is desert, and the average altitude is over 13,000 ft (4,000 m), with temperatures well below freezing in winter. Many customs arose as response to life in this harsh environment. Sky burials, for example, in which the dead are left in the open for vultures, are practical in a land where firewood is scarce and the earth too hard to dig. Polyandry (the practice of having more than one husband at a time) and celibacy of the clergy were necessary forms of population control.

Almost a quarter of the people are nomads, keeping herds of *dzo* (a cross between a yak and a cow) and living in tents. Their livestock provide products vital for everyday Tibetan life – yak butter is used in the ubiquitous butter tea and burnt in smoky chapel lamps.

Tibet's roads are few, and journeys are always time-consuming. The busiest route is the Friendship Highway between Lhasa and the Nepalese border, which passes

through Shigatse, Gyantse, and the dramatic Sakya Monastery. It is a long, bumpy but rewarding diversion from

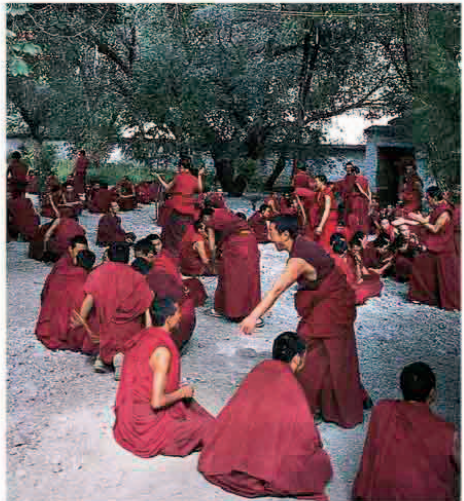
here to the Everest base camp, which offers great views of the forbidding peak. Lhasa, too,

can be a good base for exploring some of the other isolated destinations. The monasteries of Drepung, Sera, Ganden, and Tsurphu are easily accessible, while Lake Namtso and Samye are

farther away. Note that you will need to outline every place you wish to visit to the tour operator who applies for your permit; if a place is not mentioned on your permit, you may not be allowed in.



A Tibetan mandala, a ritual tantric diagram



Monks debating under a tree, a common sight at Sera Monastery

Tibetan Buddhism

The Mahayana school of Buddhism, which emphasizes compassion and self-sacrifice, came to Tibet from India in the 7th century. As it spread it took on many aspects of the native, shamanistic Bon religion, incorporating Bon rituals and deities. Like most Buddhists, Tibetans believe in reincarnation – consecutive lives that are better or worse depending on the karma, or merit, accrued in the previous life. For many Tibetans, Buddhism suffuses daily life so completely that the concept of a religion separate from day to day occurrences, is completely foreign – there is no word for religion in Tibetan.



Chortens hold the ashes of spiritual teachers. The square base symbolizes earth; the pinnacle crown represents the ethereal sphere.



The Gelugpa or Yellow Hat sect was founded in the 1300s by the reformist Tsongkhapa. Dominant in Tibetan politics for centuries, the sect is led by the Dalai Lama and Panchen Lama (see p524, p548).

Monks and Monasteries

At the height of monastic power there were some 6,000 monasteries in Tibet, and numerous Buddhist sects. Most families sent a son to become a monk and live a life of celibacy and meditation.

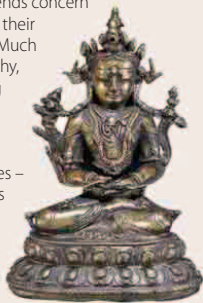


The Nyingma order is the oldest and most traditional of all the sects. It was founded during the 600s by Guru Rinpoche.

Bon – Tibet's Pre-Buddhist Faith

Bon, an animistic faith with emphasis on magic and spirits and the taming of demons, was Tibet's native religious tradition before the arrival of Buddhism. Many Tibetan legends concern the taming of local gods and their conversion to the new faith. Much of today's Buddhist iconography, rituals, and symbols, including prayer flags and sky burials – where the deceased is chopped to pieces and left on a mountainside for vultures – are Bon in origin. The faith has been revived by a hand-ful of Bon monasteries in Tibet.

A 19th-century bronze figure of a Bon deity



At the axle the three evils, a snake (anger), a pig (ignorance), and a cockerel (desire), eternally chase each other's tails.

Wheel Of Life

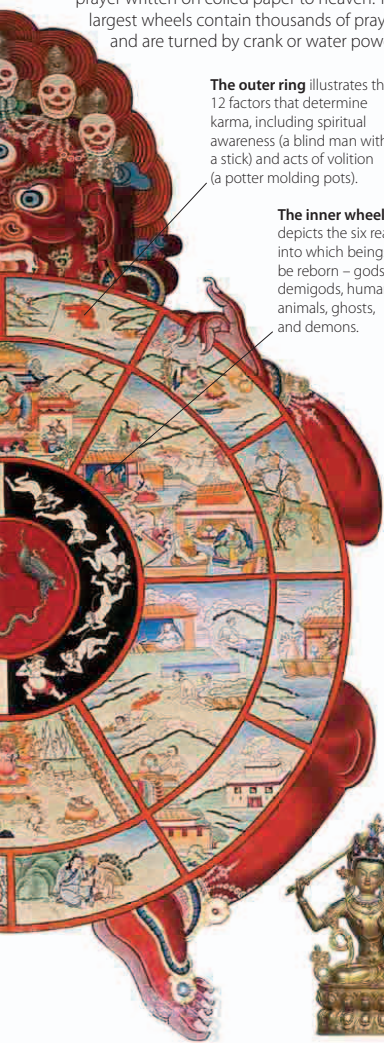
The continuous cycle of existence and re-birth is represented by the Wheel of Life, clutched in the jaws of the Lord of Death, Yama. Achieving enlightenment is the only way to transcend the incessant turning of the wheel.



Spinning a prayer wheel clockwise sends a prayer written on coiled paper to heaven. The largest wheels contain thousands of prayers and are turned by crank or water power.

The outer ring illustrates the 12 factors that determine karma, including spiritual awareness (a blind man with a stick) and acts of volition (a potter molding pots).

The inner wheel depicts the six realms into which beings can be reborn – gods, demigods, humans, animals, ghosts, and demons.



Dharmapalas, defenders of the law, fight against the enemies of Buddhism. Originally demons, they were tamed by Guru Rinpoche, who bound them to the faith. Mahakala, one of the most common dharmapalas, is a wrathful manifestation of Chenresig.

Prayer and Ritual

Worship in Tibet is replete with ritual objects and customs, many of which help with the accrual of merit. Koras, which are always followed clockwise, can be short circuits of holy sites or fully-fledged pilgrimages. The most auspicious kora is around Mount Kailash, considered the center of the universe; nirvana is guaranteed on the 108th circuit.



This ritual drum, made from the upper part of two skulls, has extra potency as a tool of prayer, because it is fashioned from human remains.

A worshiper spins a hand-held prayer wheel, rings a Tibetan bell called a *drilbu* and holds offerings of banknotes, all in aid of prayer.



Mani stones are carved with the Sanskrit mantra "om mani padme hum" (hail to the jewel in the lotus), a powerful Buddhist chant.

The Tibetan Pantheon

An overwhelming plethora of deities, buddhas, and demons, many of them re-incarnations or evil aspects of each other, make up the Tibetan pantheon. Buddhas, "awakened ones," have achieved enlightenment and reached nirvana. Bodhisattvas have postponed the pursuit of nirvana to help others achieve enlightenment.

Jampalyang (Manjusri) represents knowledge and learning. He raises a sword of discriminating wisdom in his right hand.



Buddhist Deities

Jowo Sakyamuni: the present Buddha
Jampa (the Maitreya): the future Buddha
Dipamkara (Marmedze): the past Buddha
Guru Rinpoche (Padmasambhava): earthly manifestation of Buddha who spread Buddhism throughout Tibet
Chenresig (Avalokitesvara): multi-armed bodhisattva of compassion
Drolma (Tara): female aspect of compassion



Nomadic Life

The Chang Tang, a high plateau covering almost 70 percent of Tibet, is home to about a quarter of Tibetans, many of whom are nomads, or *drokba*, as the harsh, arid climate precludes farming. Their existence has barely been touched by modern life, and they still herd sheep, goats, and *dzo* (a cross between a yak and a domesticated cow), as they have for centuries. The animals are adapted to high altitude, having larger lungs and more hemoglobin than lowland animals. The nomad's culture is also adapted to the harsh, arid climate.



These men enjoy cups of salted tea made with yak butter, a popular drink throughout Tibet. The salt combats dehydration and the fat gives much-needed energy. They wear knee-length *lokbars*, with a black strip at the edge, the traditional dress for male nomads.



Traditionally, nomads wear belted robes made out of goatskin called *lokbars* that double as blankets at night. The fleece is worn on the inside, while the sturdy hide is exposed to wind and snow. The sleeves are extra long to keep hands warm. Women braid their hair and wear their wealth as jewelry. Coral, in particular, is highly valued.

Each household has a home tent, four-sided and made out of the coarse hairs found on a yak's belly. Often, the tent is pitched in a pit and surrounded by stone windbreaks. Another cloth tent may be used for traveling.



Dried yoghurt is thought to protect the skin from the sun, but men don't use it at all; women smear it on with a tuft of wool as a cosmetic.



The Herd

Nomads rely totally on their herds for food, clothing, shelter, and sometimes income, so no part of any animal goes to waste. Goats, for example, provide milk for yoghurt, skins for clothing, wool for trading, and dung for fuel.



A woman spreads yak dung over a windbreak wall. Once it has dried, she will scrape the dung off the wall and use it to fuel fires for cooking. Such tasks are strictly demarcated by gender; women do all the milking, churning, cooking, weaving, and fuel gathering, and so work harder than the men for most of the year.



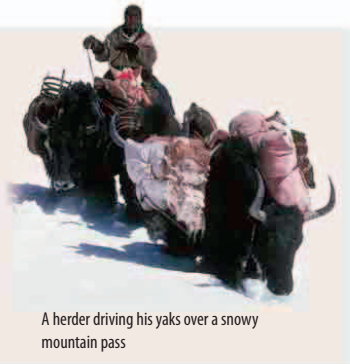
A nomad pours yak butter from a churn for adding to strong, salty tea. The nomadic diet is basic; the staple is *tsampa*, roasted barley flour, which, often eaten dry and on its own, provides about half of a nomad's calories. Goat's milk yoghurt, radishes, and occasional meat stews supplement the diet.



The wool of the yaks, sheep, and goats in the nomad's herd is woven using a loom, creating robust textiles for tent walls, blankets, and clothing. The incomes of many nomads have been augmented by the popularity of cashmere wool, which is the soft down on a goat's underbelly.

Moving the Herds

Nomads on the Chang T'ang do not move continuously, nor do they move far – only around 10 to 40 miles (15 to 65 km), as the growing season is the same all over the plateau. Indeed, they try to minimize travel, declaring that it weakens livestock. Some families even build a house at their main encampment. In the fall, after the herds have eaten most of the vegetation at the main encampment and the growing season has ended, the nomads move their livestock to a secondary plain for grazing. Here livestock must forage for eight to nine months on dead vegetation. Later the nomads may move some of their herds farther up the hills. They then return to their original encampment.



A herder driving his yaks over a snowy mountain pass



TIBET

The enormous Tibetan plateau stretches across an awesome 463,323 sq miles (1,200,000 sq km). Its northern expanse is the Chang Tang, a vast, uninhabited high-altitude desert, dotted with enormous, brackish lakes. Nearly all the main sights and cities, as well as half of Tibet's population of 2.8 million people, are concentrated in the less harsh southern region.



The fertile valley created by the Yarlung Tsangpo river is bordered by the Himalayas along Tibet's southern boundary. A mere 14 million years old, the Himalayas are the youngest mountains on earth, and also the highest, with over 70 peaks reaching elevations of 23,000 ft (7,000 m), including Mount Everest, the world's highest at 29,029 ft (8,848 m). The spectacle of these snow-clad peaks is perhaps what led to Tibet being called the "Land of Snows." In reality, at an average altitude of over 13,000 ft (4,000 m), the thin air intensifies the sunshine making acclimatization and sun screen essential.

Tibet's eastern reaches are riddled with gorges carved out by three of China's rivers – the mighty Yangzi,

the Salween, and the Mekong. Eastern Tibet, also known as Chamdo, is one of the few regions of Tibet where it rains frequently – the mountains of the southeast are cloaked in mysterious, unexplored forests.

The wide, open spaces of northern and western Tibet are home to nomads who live a hardy pastoral existence. These wilderness areas are slowly shrinking as a result of the encroaching industrial world.

However, despite rapid development and more than 50 years of Chinese occupation, Tibet still clings strongly to its cultural heritage, most visible in the revitalized monasteries. Tourism too, is a growing industry as more areas are opening up, allowing visitors tantalizing glimpses of a once-forbidden world.



Main prayer hall at Ganden Monastery, the first Gelugpa monastery in Tibet

● Lhasa

Tibet's capital since the 7th century, Lhasa is an intoxicating introduction to Tibet. The Dalai Lamas' splendid but poignantly empty seat, the Potala Palace, dominates the city from its site on top of Marpo Hill. The old Tibetan quarter to the east is Lhasa's most interesting area; its centerpiece is the revered Jokhang Temple. Around it is the Barkhor, which retains its medieval character with smoky temples and cobbled alleys. Most Tibetans come here as pilgrims. The additions of concrete buildings and internet cafés show how the city has changed over recent decades.



Strikingly-colored mural at the Lukhang Temple

Potala Palace

See pp538–9.


Lukhang

Ching Drol Chi Ling Park.

Picturesquely located on an island in the lake behind the Potala, and cloaked by willows in summer, this temple is dedicated to the king of the water spirits (*lu*), who is depicted riding an elephant at the back of the main hall. The upper floors are decorated with striking 18th-century murals, representing the Buddhist Path to Enlightenment. Their great attention to detail and vivid stories offered visual guidance to the Dalai Lamas (see p524), who retired here for periods of spiritual retreat.

Buddhist myths dominate the walls on the second floor, while the top-floor murals depict the esoteric yogic practises of the Indian tantric masters. They also illustrate episodes in the life of Pema Lingpa, ancestor of the 6th Dalai Lama who is credited with the Lukhang's original design in the 17th century.

Ramoche

Open 9am–5pm daily. 

The three-story Ramoche, just north of the Barkhor area (see pp534–5), is the sister temple to the Jokhang. It was built in the 7th century by Songtsen Gampo (see p524) to house the statue of Jowo Sakyamuni (Tibet's most venerated Buddha image), brought by his Chinese wife Wencheng. According to legend, the threat of Chinese invasion after the king's death compelled his family to hide the statue inside the Jokhang. It was replaced by a bronze



Prayer wheels at the Ramoche Temple

Lhasa City Center

- ① Potala Palace
- ② Lukhang
- ③ Ramoche
- ④ Ani Tsankhung Nunnery
- ⑤ Jokhang Temple
- ⑥ Tibet Museum
- ⑦ Norbulingka

Key

 Street-by-Street area: see pp534–5

0 meters 500
0 yards 500



Key to Symbols see back flap



statue of an eight-year-old Sakyamuni (see pp36–7), part of the dowry of another of his wives, the Nepalese Princess Bhrikuti.

The reconstructed temple features some huge prayer wheels, and is not as busy as the Jokhang. Next door is the **Tsepak Lhakhang**, a chapel with an image of Jampa, the Tibetan name for the Future Buddha (see p527).



The Summer Palace of the Dalai Lamas in the Norbulingka




Ani Tsankhung Nunnery Open daily.

Situated in the old Tibetan quarter, the Ani Tsankhung Nunnery is difficult to find. Wandering through the busy back alleys south of the Barkhor area in search of the place, can, however, be a wonderful experience. It is located in a yellow building on the street running parallel and north of Chingdol Dong Lu. The nunnery's main hall contains a beautiful image of Chenresig, the multi-armed Bodhisattva of Compassion (see p527), and behind it lies a meditation chamber used by Songtsen Gampo in the 7th century. An air of quiet serenity pervades this quaint place, with its flower bushes and spotless compound. The nunnery's main attraction is the warm welcome the curious nuns give to the visitors that come here.

Jokhang Temple See pp536–7.

Tibet Museum

Tel (0891) 683 5244. **Open** Tue–Sun. Summer: 9:30am–5:30pm, winter: 10am–5:30pm. 

This building presents a rather one-sided version of Tibetan history. If the propaganda is ignored, however, the over 30,000 relics are worth a visit. The most interesting displays are of rare Tibetan musical instruments and medical tools.

Norbulingka

Open 9:30am–6pm daily. 




Today a pleasantly scrubby park, the Norbulingka (Jewel Park) was once the summer palace of the Dalai Lamas. Founded by the 7th Dalai Lama in 1755 and expanded by his successors, the park contains several palaces, chapels, and buildings, and is a charming

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

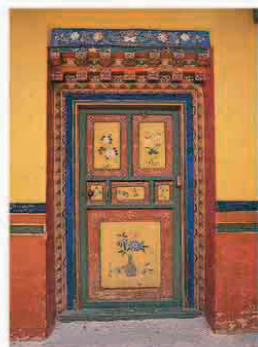
Practical Information

 560,000.  Tibet Tourism Bureau, (0891) 683 4315.
 xzta.gov.cn/yww

Transport

 Lhasa Airport at Gongkhar, 40 miles (65 km) from Lhasa, then bus.  Lhasa Station.
 Main Bus Station, CAAC, Minibus Station.

place for a leisurely afternoon visit. The path west from the entrance leads to the oldest palace, the **Kelsang Potrang**, used by the 8th to the 13th Dalai Lamas. Its main hall has a wealth of *thangkas* (see p540) and a throne. More diverting is the **Summer Palace**, just north of here, which was built for the present Dalai Lama in 1954. Its audience chamber holds bright murals depicting events from Tibetan history, from the tilling of the first field to the building of the great monasteries, including the Norbulingka. Next to the chamber are the Dalai Lama's meditation room and bedroom, preserved exactly as he left them in 1959, when he escaped from this palace disguised as a Tibetan soldier and began his journey to India. The Assembly Hall where he held state has a golden throne and colorful murals depicting scenes from the Dalai Lama's court, and episodes from the lives of Sakya Thukpa (Sakyamuni, the Historical Buddha) and Tsongkhapa, founder of the Gelugpa order of monks (see p524).



Brightly painted doorway, Norbulingka

Street-by-Street: The Barkhor

八廓街

Lhasa's liveliest neighborhood, the fascinating Barkhor bustles with pilgrims, locals, and tourists eager to visit the Jokhang (see pp536–7) – by dusk the crowds are enormous. The pilgrimage circuit or *kora* that runs clockwise around the Jokhang is Tibet's holiest and has been since the 7th century; market stalls have always lined the route to serve the pilgrims staying in the area. Many of the buildings in the Barkhor are ancient, some dating back to the 8th century. Despite the efforts of conservationists, some important buildings have been demolished and replaced with less attractive traditional architecture. Still, the Barkhor's cobbled alleyways maintain a unique, archaic character.



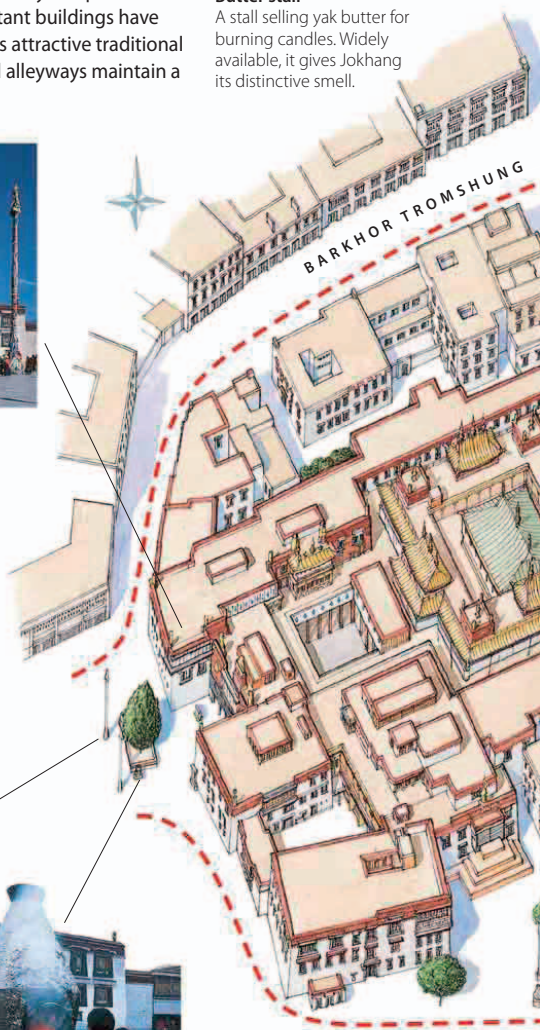
Butter stall

A stall selling yak butter for burning candles. Widely available, it gives Jokhang its distinctive smell.



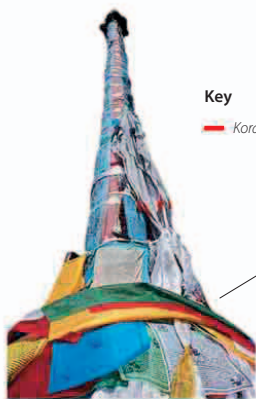
★ Jokhang Temple

The magnificent Jokhang, Tibet's most important religious structure, sits at the heart of the Barkhor, and is the structure around which the rest of Lhasa developed.



Key

— Kora (holy route)



Prayer flags

Two poles laden with flags stand outside the Jokhang. Vertical flag poles originated in the Amdo region, and represent battle flags that have become signs of peace.



Incense burner

Juniper bushes are burnt in the four stone incense burners, or *sangkar*, which mark the route of the *kora*.

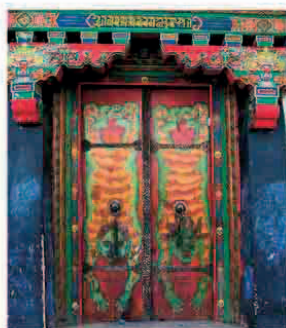


Tromzikhang

This 18th-century building once housed government officials such as the Ambans, representatives of the Qing emperor. Now a housing complex, all but the front was destroyed in the 1980s.

The **Jamkhang** is a 15th-century building housing a two-story image of the Maitreya.

The **Nangmano** complex is home to 22 families.

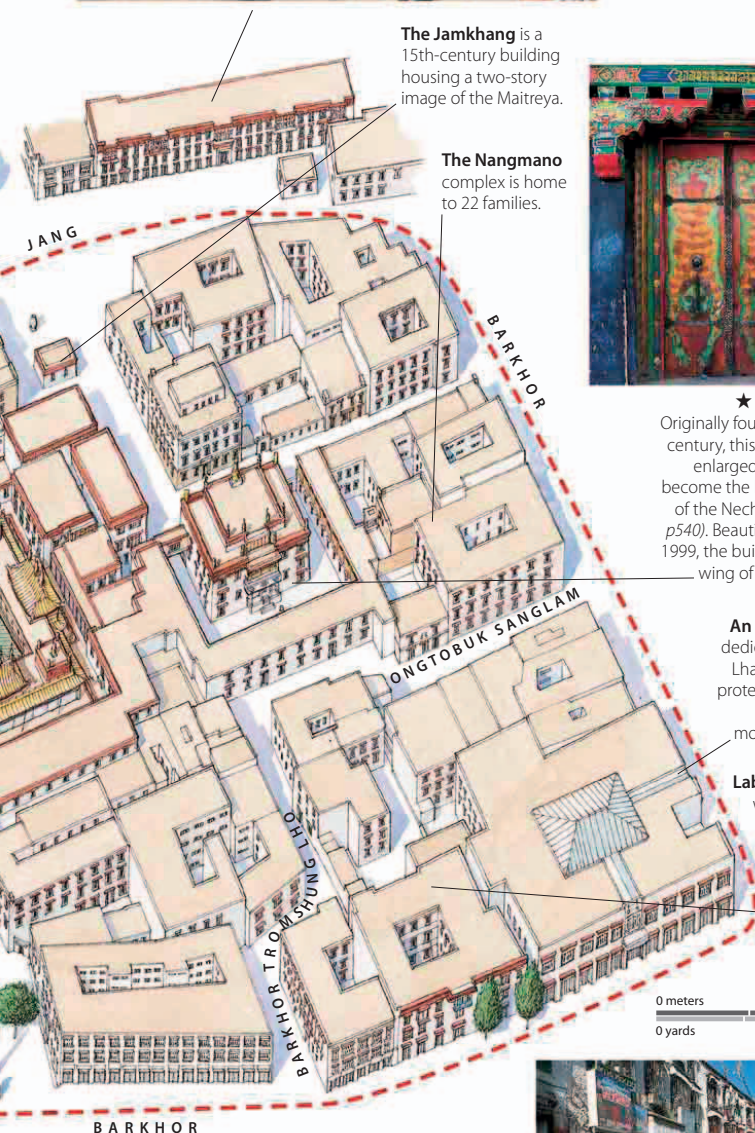


★ Meru Nyingba

Originally founded in the 9th century, this monastery was enlarged in the 1800s to become the Lhasa residence of the Nechung Oracle (see p540). Beautifully restored in 1999, the building includes a wing of public housing.

An ancient shrine dedicated to Palden Lhamo, the female protector of Lhasa, is surrounded by modern buildings.

Labrang Nyingba was once home to the 5th Dalai Lama and Tsongkhapa at different times.



Stalls along the kora

Stalls selling all manner of intriguing bric-à-brac, from cowboy hats to prayer flags, line the entire pilgrimage route. The shops behind the stalls have better quality goods, including religious statuary, and carpets.



Jokhang Temple

大昭寺

The constant bustle, gaudy paraphernalia of worship, flickering butter lamps, and wreaths of heady incense make the Jokhang Temple one of Tibet's most memorable experiences. The Jokhang was founded in AD 639 to house an image of the Buddha brought as dowry by the Nepali Princess Bhrikuti on her marriage to King Songtsen Gampo. Its location was chosen by another wife of the king, the Chinese consort Princess Wencheng. She declared that a giant female demon slumbered beneath the site and a temple must be built over her heart to subdue her. After the king's death, Wencheng's own dowry image of Jowo Sakyamuni was moved from the Ramoche (see p532) to the Jokhang, where it was thought to be safer from invading forces.



Prostrating pilgrim

The Jokhang is Tibet's most venerated site. Pilgrims bow and pray on the flagstones just outside the temple doors.



Courtyard

This open courtyard, or *dukhang*, is the focus for ceremonies during festivals. The long altar holding hundreds of butter lamps marks the entrance to the interior.

KEY

- ① This **stele** is inscribed with the terms of the Sino-Tibetan treaty of AD 822, guaranteeing mutual respect for the borders of the two nations.
- ② **Just inside the entrance** are the four Guardian Kings, the Chokhyong, one for each cardinal direction.
- ③ **The chapel of Songtsen Gampo**, where the king is flanked by Wencheng on the right and Bhrikuti on the left.
- ④ **The chapel of Tsongkhapa** has an impressive and accurate image of the founder of the Gelugpa order.
- ⑤ **The Jampa** enshrined here is a copy of the one brought to Tibet by Princess Bhrikuti.



Roof ornament



The spokes of the wheel of law represent the eight paths to enlightenment.

Alternative entrance



VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

The Barkhor, Lhasa. **Open** 8:30am–5:30pm daily. Visit from left to right clockwise. Inner Chapels **Open** 8am–noon.   Monlam, during the first lunar month.

★ Chapel of Chenresig

A large statue of Chenresig, the Bodhisattva of compassion, dominates this room. The doors and frames, crafted by Nepalis in the 7th century, are among the few remains of the original temple.



★ Chapel of Jowo Sakyamuni

Pilgrims crowd around this impressive statue of the 12-year-old Sakyamuni to make offerings and pray. Part of Princess Wencheng's dowry, it is the most revered image in Tibet.

Prayer Wheels

Pilgrims spin the wheels on a route that surrounds the inner chapel called the Nangkor, one of the three sacred circuits of Lhasa.



★ Inner Sanctum

This houses some of the Jokhang's most important statues, including images of Guru Rinpoche, the Jampa and a thousand-armed Chenresig. The chapels lining the walls are visited clockwise, and there's a line for the holiest, with monks at hand to enforce crowd discipline.

Potala Palace

布达拉宫

Built on Lhasa's highest point, Marpo Hill, the Potala Palace is the greatest monumental structure in Tibet. Thirteen stories high, with over a thousand rooms, it was once the residence of Tibet's chief monk and leader, the Dalai Lama, and therefore the center for both spiritual and temporal power. These days, after the present Dalai Lama's escape to India in 1959, it is a vast museum, serving as a reminder of Tibet's rich and devoutly religious culture, although major political events and religious ceremonies are still held here. The first palace was built by Songtsen Gampo in 631, and this was merged into the larger building that stands today. There are two main sections – the White Palace, built in 1645 under orders from the 5th Dalai Lama, and the Red Palace, completed in 1693.



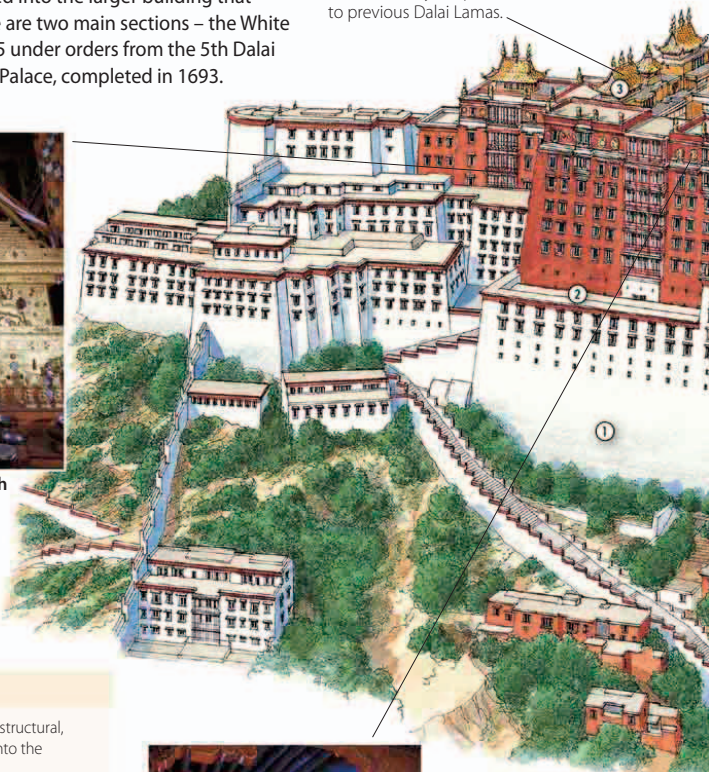
★ Golden Roofs

Seeming to float above the palace, the gilded roofs (actually copper) cover funerary chapels dedicated to previous Dalai Lamas.



★ Chapel of the 13th Dalai Lama

The bejeweled stupa of the 13th Dalai Lama, containing his mummified remains, is nearly 13 m (43 ft) high.



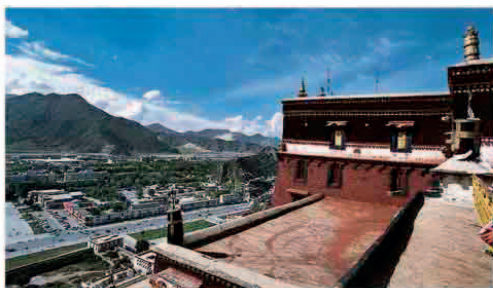
KEY

- ① The base is purely structural, holding the palaces onto the steep hill.
- ② Red Palace Courtyard
- ③ The Chapel of the 5th Dalai Lama contains a stupa gilded with around 6,600 lb (3,700 kg) of gold.
- ④ Maitreya Chapel
- ⑤ East Sunshine Apartment
- ⑥ The Eastern Courtyard
- ⑦ School of Religious Officials
- ⑧ Defensive Eastern Bastion
- ⑨ Thangka Storehouse



★ 3D Mandala

This intricate mandala of a palace, covered in precious metals and jewels, embodies aspects of the path to enlightenment.



View from the Red Palace

On a clear day the view over the valley and on to the mountains beyond is unequalled, although the newer parts of Lhasa are less impressive.

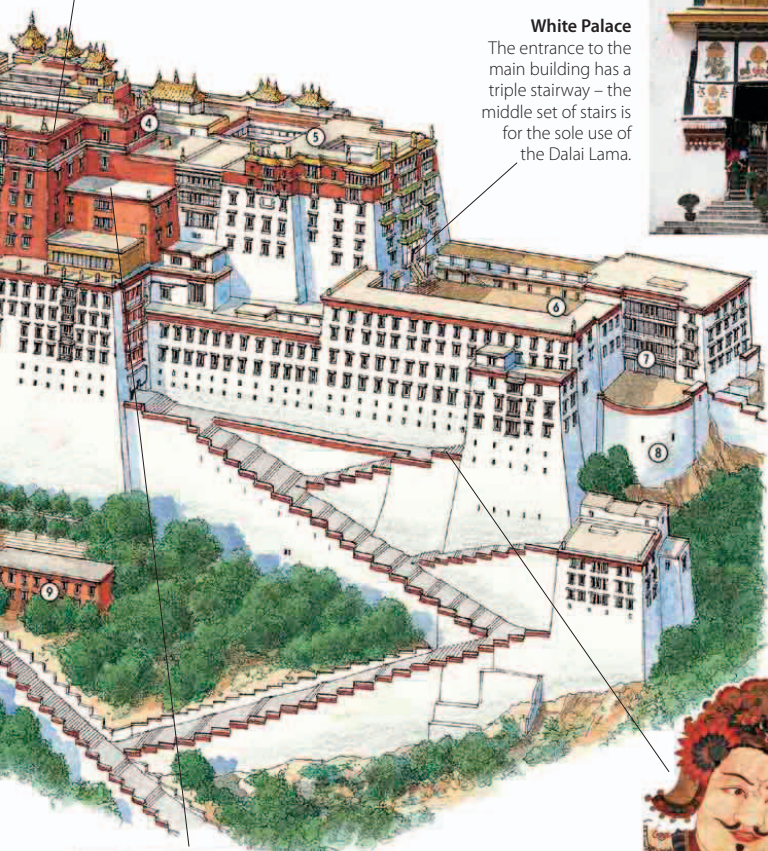
VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

Beijing Zhong Road, Lhasa.
(0891) 683 4362. **Open** 8:30am–5pm daily. 📖 Book in advance. Tickets are timed, so be sure not to miss your spot. 📷 in chapels, otherwise extra charges for photography. 🚫 Not suitable for those who find stairs a problem.

White Palace

The entrance to the main building has a triple stairway – the middle set of stairs is for the sole use of the Dalai Lama.



Heavenly King Murals

The East Entrance has sumptuous images of the Four Heavenly Kings, Buddhist guardian figures.



The Western Hall

Located on the first floor of the Red Palace, the largest hall inside the Potala contains the holy throne of the 6th Dalai Lama.


Exploring Around Lhasa

Lhasa's environs are dotted with the major monasteries of Drepung, Nechung, Sera, and Ganden. Easily accessible from Lhasa by bus, minibus, or hired vehicle, these are ideal for day-trips. Agencies in Lhasa hire out landcruisers along with a driver and guide. Vehicles can take up to five people – if looking to share the cost with others, check the bulletin boards in backpacker hotels. Make sure that any monasteries you plan to visit are listed on your travel permit.



A typically gory tantric painting at Nechung Monastery

Drepung Monastery

5 miles (8 km) W of Lhasa. **Open** 8am–4pm daily (chapels close between noon–3pm). 

Drepung, meaning “rice heap,” was founded in 1416 by Jamyang Choje, a disciple of Tsongkhapa, the founder of the Gelugpa or Yellow Hat order of monks (see p524). In its heyday in the 17th-century, it was Tibet’s richest monastery, with four colleges and 10,000 monks; today there are around 500 to 600.

The site is vast and the easiest way to get around is to follow the pilgrims, who circle the complex clockwise. From the entrance, turn left to the **Ganden Palace**, built in 1530 as a residence by the 2nd Dalai Lama. His rather plain apartments are upstairs on the seventh floor. The courtyard is usually busy with woodcarvers and block-printers creating prayer prints at great speed. Next is the **Tsogchen** or Main Assembly Hall, the most atmospheric building in the complex. About 180 pillars hold up the roof, and the room is draped with *thangkas* and hangings and


decorated with suits of armor. There is plenty of statuary, with the finest images in the **Chapel of the Three Ages** at the back of the Main Assembly Hall.

At the hall’s entrance, stairs lead to the upper floor from where it is possible to see the massive head and shoulders of the **Maitreya Buddha**, the future Buddha or Jampa, rising up three stories. Pilgrims prostrate

before it and drink from a holy conch shell. The **Tara Chapel** next door contains wooden racks of scriptures and a statue of Prajnaparamita, the Mother of Buddhas and an aspect of the goddess Tara; the amulet on her lap contains a tooth said to belong to Tsongkhapa. Behind the Tsogchen, the little **Manjusri Temple** has a relief image of the Bodhisattva of Wisdom, Jampalyang, chiseled out of rock. The circuit continues north to the Ngagpa College, then to various colleges toward the southeast.

Each building contains fine sculptures, though some might prefer to skip them and rest in the courtyard outside the Tsogchen. Those who are acclimatized can walk round the Drepung *kora* or pilgrim circuit, which passes rock paintings and the cave dwellings of nuns, and offers great views.

Nechung Monastery

4 miles (7 km) W of Lhasa. **Open** 8am–4pm daily (chapels close between noon–3pm). 

A fifteen-minute walk southeast from Drepung, Nechung Monastery was the seat of the Tibetan Oracle. The Oracle not only predicted the future, but also protected the Buddha’s teachings and his followers. During consultations with the Dalai Lama, the Oracle, dressed in an elaborate and weighty

Thangkas and Mandalas

Thangkas are religious paintings mounted on brocade that carry painted or embroidered images inside a colored border. Seen in temples, monasteries, and homes, they depict subjects as diverse as the lives of Buddhas, Tibetan theology and astrology, and mandalas or geometric representations of the cosmos. The Tashilunpo Monastery (see p548) displays gigantic *thangkas* during its festivals each year. Mandalas are often used as meditation aids by Buddhists and are based on a pattern of circles and squares around a central focal point. The Potala Palace in Lhasa (see pp538–9) has a splendid three-dimensional mandala made of precious metal. Monks spend days creating mandalas of colored sand that are swept away on completion to signify the transient nature of life.



Mandala symbolizing the universe




Monks engaged in group debates at Sera Monastery

costume, would go into a trance before making his pronouncements, concluding the session in a dead faint. Tibet's last Oracle fled to India in 1959, and now the monastery has only a few caretaker monks. Nechung's decor is startling as the courtyard outside is filled with gory paintings and demon torturers. Within the chapels, leering sculptures of skulls loom out of the gloom. The airy Audience Chamber on the second floor is a welcome respite. Here, the Dalai Lama used to consult the Oracle. The roof-level chapel is dedicated to Padmasambhava, the Tantric Buddha, also known as Guru Rinpoche.

Sera Monastery

2 miles (4 km) N of Lhasa.

Open 3–5pm daily. 


Founded in 1419 by disciples of the Gelugpa order, Sera Monastery was famous for its warrior monks, the *Dob-dob*. Once home to 5,000 monks, today there are less than one-tenth that number, although the energetic renovation suggests that this may improve.


Activity centers around its three colleges, visited in a clockwise circuit. Turn left from the main path to reach the first college, Sera Me, that was used for instruction in Buddhist basics. Sera Ngagpa, a little farther up the hill, was for tantric studies and Sera Je, next to it, was for teaching visiting monks. Each building has a dimly lit main hall and chapels toward the back that are full of sculptures. The largest and most

striking building in the complex is the **Tsogchen** located farthest up the hill. It features wall-length *thangkas*, a throne that was used by the 13th Dalai Lama, and images of him and of Sakya Yeshe, the founder of Sera monastery. At the top of the path stands the open-air debating courtyard. The monks assemble here for debates and their ritualized gestures – clapping hands and stamping when a point is made – which are fascinating to watch. The Sera *kora*, or pilgrim circuit which heads west from the

main entrance, takes about an hour to complete and passes some beautiful rock reliefs.

Ganden Monastery

28 miles (45 km) E of Lhasa. 

Shuttle from the square at Jokhang Temple. **Open** 8:50am–4pm daily. 

The farthest of the monasteries from Lhasa, Ganden is probably the one most worth visiting, with its scenic setting high on the Gokpori Ridge. To get a feel of the place, it is best to travel with the excited pilgrims on the bus that leaves from Lhasa's Barkhor area every morning at 6:30am, returning at 2pm. The monastery was founded in 1410 by Tsongkhapa, and its main

building, the **Serdung**

Lhakhang, has as its centerpiece a huge gold and silver *chorten* (stupa or funerary mound) with Tsongkhapa's remains. However, the buildings are not its main appeal. Its highlight is the

kora, which takes an hour to walk. The circuit offers fine views of the landscape and a *chorten* or two that pilgrims (and visitors if they wish) must hop around on one leg.



Rock painting,
Sera Monastery



A domestic yak on the steep hills surrounding Ganden Monastery





2 Samye Monastery

桑耶寺

With its ordered design, wealth of religious treasures, and stunning location, Samye makes a deep impression on visitors. Tibet's first monastery, Samye was founded in the 8th century during Trisong Detsen's reign with the input of the great Buddhist teacher, Guru Rinpoche. Indian and Chinese scholars, invited to Samye to translate Buddhist scriptures into Tibetan, argued over the interpretation of doctrine, and so Trisong Detsen held a public debate to decide which form of Buddhism should be followed in Tibet. The Indian school won out and Chinese religious influence gradually waned. Today the monastery has a well-worn and eclectic feel, having been influenced by numerous sects over the years.



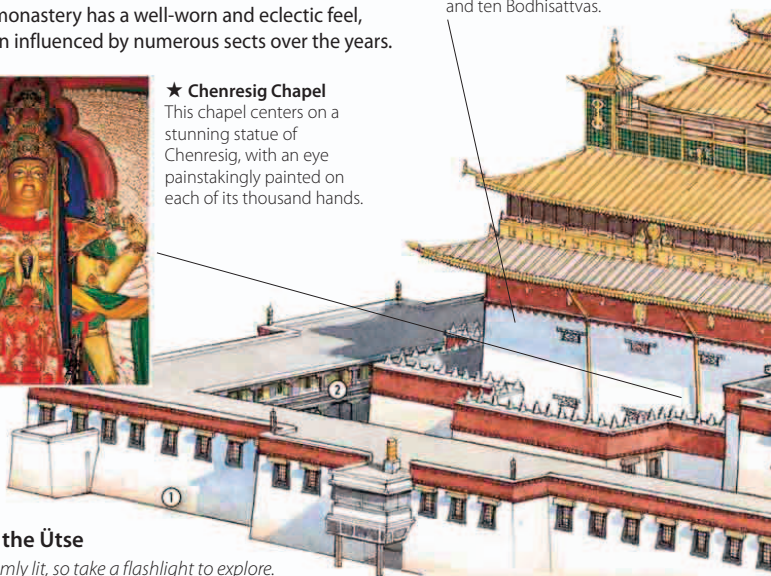
★ Chenresig Chapel

This chapel centers on a stunning statue of Chenresig, with an eye painstakingly painted on each of its thousand hands.



★ Jowo Sakyamuni Chapel

Samye's most revered chapel centers on an image of Sakyamuni at age 38. He is flanked by two protector deities and ten Bodhisattvas.



Exploring the Ütse

The Ütse is dimly lit, so take a flashlight to explore. The entrance leads directly into the Main Hall, with the Chenresig Chapel to the left and the Gongkhan Chapel to the right. The Jowo Sakyamuni Chapel is at the far end of the Main Hall. Numerous chapels and the Dalai Lama's quarters are located on the second story. The third story has an open gallery lined with impressive murals.



View of Samye Monastery

A superb view of the monastery can be had from the surrounding hills. From here it is easy to see that the monastery is laid out as a 3-D mandala (see p540).

KEY

- ① **Monks** live in quarters on the upper level of the outer wall.
- ② **The outer wall** facing the Ütse is lined with prayer wheels and elaborate murals of Buddha.
- ③ **The mural** to the left of the entrance on the third story depicts the 5th Dalai Lama receiving the Mongol Khan Gushri and his retinue.
- ④ **Gongkhan Chapel** is packed with draped statues of fierce demons. A stuffed snake guards the exit.
- ⑤ **The inscription** on this stone stele (779 AD) declares that King Trisong Detsen has proclaimed Buddhism as the state religion.
- ⑥ **The main hall** houses images and statues of Guru Rinpoche and the Buddhist kings, Trisong Detsen and Songtsen Gampo.



Guru Rinpoche

An 8th-century monk-king from Swat in modern-day Pakistan, he is said to have subdued evil demons and established Buddhism in Tibet. Images of him carrying a thunderbolt are found throughout the complex.

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

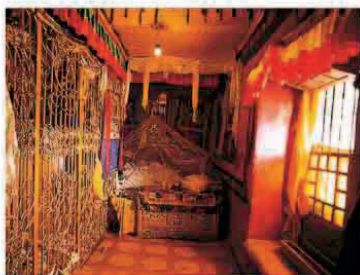
93 miles (150 km) SE of Lhasa.

unless fee paid.

Samye Festival, 15th day of fifth lunar month.

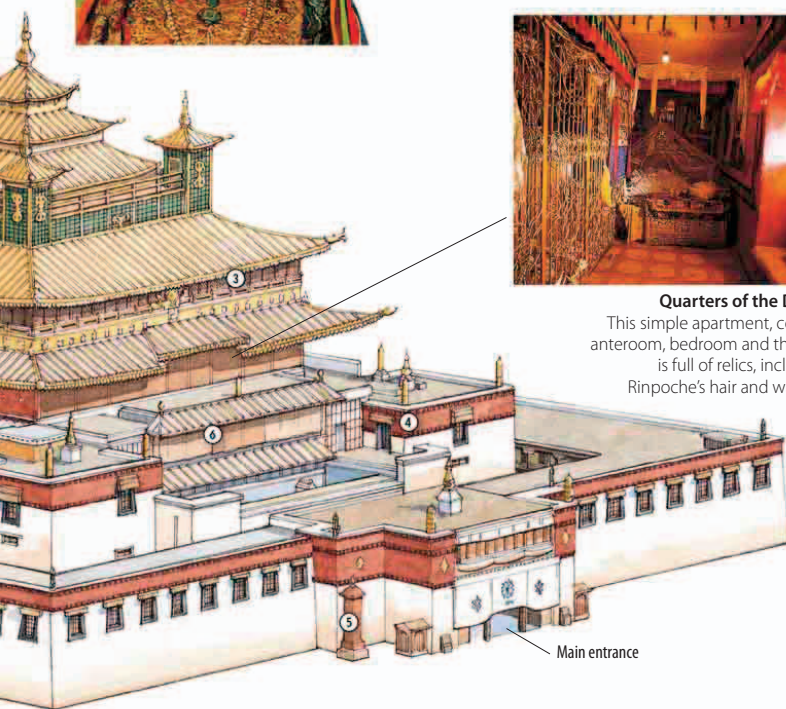
Transport

Travel to Samye must be arranged by a travel agency.



Quarters of the Dalai Lama

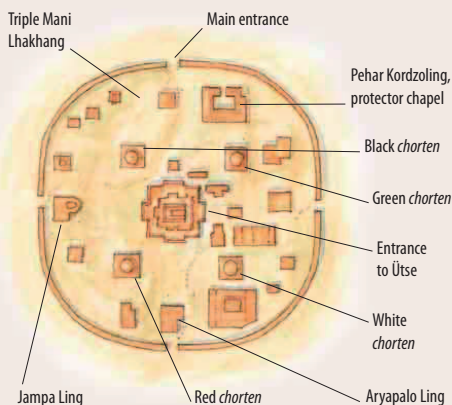
This simple apartment, consisting of anteroom, bedroom and throne room, is full of relics, including Guru Rinpoche's hair and walking stick.



Plan of Samye Complex

Samye's design echoes Tibetan Buddhism's cosmology of the universe. Many of the 108 buildings have been destroyed, but the four *ling* chapels representing the island continents that surround Mount Sumeru (the *Ütse*) are still intact. Jampa Ling holds an impressive mural of the complex as it once was. The circular monastery wall is topped with 1,008 *chortens* that represent Chakravala, the ring of 1,008 mountains that surrounds the universe.

0 meters 150
0 yards 150





Nomad tents, at the edge of the breathtaking Namtso Lake

3 Tsurphu Monastery

楚布寺

Tolung Valley. 45 miles (70 km) W of Lhasa. 🚗 daily from Barkhor Square in Lhasa. Last bus back to Lhasa, 3pm. 4WD rented from Lhasa, 2–3 hrs.

Open 9am–2pm daily. 📍

Situated at an altitude of 14,700 ft (4,480 m), this monastery was founded in the 12th century by the Karmapa or Black Hats order and is important as the home of the Karmapa Lama, the third most important religious leader in Tibet after the Dalai and Panchen Lamas (see p548). The present incumbent, the 17th Karmapa, fled to India in 1999 at the age of 14. His departure was significant as he was the only senior Tibetan Buddhist official recognized by both the Chinese



One of the many brightly-colored murals at Tsurphu Monastery

authorities and the Dalai Lama. The flood of daily pilgrims who came for blessings has now stopped and the monastery is rather quiet, though several hundred monks still reside here.

The Karmapa's throne, an object of great veneration, is in the audience chamber of the main hall. Here, a *chorten* (stupa or funerary mound) contains the relics of the 16th Karmapa, who died in Chicago in 1981. The *kora* from behind the monastery takes 3 hours, and provides magnificent views but beware – visitors must be acclimatized.

4 Namtso Lake

纳木错湖

125 miles (200 km) NW of Lhasa. 4WD rented from Lhasa, 2–3 day round-trip.

Open daily. 📍

Beautiful Namtso Lake, with its classic Tibetan scenery of azure water beneath snowcapped peaks and grasslands dotted with herds of yak, has made it the most popular overnight jeep trip from Lhasa. About 45 miles (70 km) long and 19 miles (30 km) wide, it is the second largest saltwater lake in China after Qinghai Hu (see p503). The flat

The Eight Auspicious Symbols

The Eight Auspicious Symbols represent the offerings that were presented to Sakyamuni Buddha, after he attained Enlightenment. Born as Siddhartha Gautama, prince of the kingdom of Kapilavastu, he renounced his princely life at the age of 30, and went in search of answers to the meaning of human suffering and existence. After years of penance, Siddhartha attained Enlightenment after meditating under a Bodhi tree in Bodhi Gaya, India. Tibetans regard the symbols as protective motifs and use them to decorate flags and medallions as well as tiles in Buddhist temples, monasteries, and homes. The Conch Shell is blown to celebrate Sakyamuni's Enlightenment; the Endless Knot represents harmony, and the never-ending passage of time; and the Wheel of Law symbolizes the Buddha's eightfold path to Enlightenment. Other symbols include the Golden Fish, representing liberation from the Wheel of Life, and the Lotus Flower that represents purity.



Conch Shell



Endless Knot



Wheel of Law

land around it offers good grazing, and is usually ringed with nomad encampments in summer. From November to May, the lake freezes over and is impossible to reach. Most people stay a night at **Tashi Dor**, a monastery on a lakeside hill. Bring a flashlight and a warm sleeping bag. The lake is situated at the incredible height of 15,500 ft (4,718 m), so visitors must be thoroughly acclimatized.



Highly decorated doorway to the main chapel, Kumbum, Gyantse

5 Gyantse

江孜

158 miles (255 km) SW of Lhasa.
Minibus: alternate days from Lhasa bus station. 4WD from Lhasa. Travel Permits: required (see p523).

An attractive, if dusty, small town, Gyantse is the sixth largest town in Tibet, famous for its carpets and usually visited en route to Nepal (see p551). Often called "Heroic City," it was originally capital of a 14th-century kingdom, and the remnants of its old Dzong, or fort watches over the town. Heavily bombarded during the British invasion in 1904, when it was captured at great loss of life to the Tibetans, it is today a dramatic ruin with a small museum. Here, Chinese propaganda describes the "heroic battle fought to defend the Chinese motherland," although at that time China had no authority over Tibet. The Dzong offers good views from its roof. About 650 ft (200 m)

The British Invasion of Tibet

Alarmed by the growing influence of Tsarist Russia in the 19th century, Britain's viceroy in India sent a diplomatic mission to Tibet in an effort to build links and facilitate the free flow of trade. When the mission failed, an expeditionary force – part of the Great Game (see p495) – of 1,000 soldiers and 10,000 porters, led by the dashing 26-year-old Colonel Francis Younghusband, invaded Tibet in 1903. As the force traveled inward, they killed almost 700 peasants, who were armed in part with magic charms to ward off bullets. Then, in the world's highest battle, the British captured Gyantse Fort with only four casualties, while the Tibetans lost hundreds of men. The force proceeded to Lhasa, where an agreement allowed Britain to set up trade missions.



Francis Younghusband

northwest is a compound housing the **Kumbum** and **Pelkor Chode Monastery**.

The Kumbum, constructed around 1440, is a six-story and 115-ft (35-m) high *chorten*, honeycombed with chapels. It is built in an architectural style unique to Tibet and this is the finest extant example. A clockwise route leads up past chapels full of statuary and decorated with 14th-century murals – *kumbum* means "a hundred thousand images." On the sixth floor, painted pairs of eyes, signifying the all-seeing eyes of Buddha, look out in each of the cardinal directions. The staircase in the eastern chapel leads into the *chorten's* dome. There are views from the top. Built 20 years after Kumbum, the Pelkor

Chode Monastery was designed for all the local Buddhist sects to use; its Assembly Hall has two thrones, one for the Dalai Lama and one for the Sakya Lama. The main chapel at the back of the hall has a statue of Sakyamuni, the Historical Buddha, and some impressive wooden roof decorations. At the top, the Shalyekhang Chapel has some fine mandalas (see p540).

On the way to Gyantse it is worth taking a detour to see beautiful **Yamdrok Lake**, one of the four holy Tibetan lakes.

Dzong
Open Mon–Sat. 📶

Kumbum & Pelkor Chode Monastery
Open 8:30am–5:30pm Mon–Sat (closed noon–3pm). 📶



Kumbum, Gyantse, a three-dimensional mandala

6 Shigatse & Tashilunpo

日喀则

Capital of the Tsang region, Shigatse sits at an elevation of 12,800 ft (3,900 m). To its north, the Drolma Ridge rises steeply, topped by the ruins of the ancient Dzong, once home to the kings of Tsang. Shigatse holds a powerful position in Tibet, and was the capital for a spell during the early 17th century. After Lhasa regained its status, Shigatse continued to hold sway as the home of the Panchen Lama, Tibet's second most important religious ruler, whose seat is located at Tashilunpo Monastery, the town's grandest sight. Worth exploring for a day or two, Shigatse is the most comfortable place in Tibet after Lhasa, with decent food and accommodations on offer.



A group of carpet makers tying richly colored wool into intricate knots

market for a Tibetan carpet. The process is sufficiently interesting to warrant a visit even if you have no intention of buying. A project initiated by the 10th Panchen Lama in 1987, the business is part-owned by the monastery. Shipping can be arranged on the premises.

Gang Gyen Carpet Factory

9 Zhu Feng Lu. Tel (0892) 882 6192.

Open 9am–1pm & 3–7pm Mon–Sat.

tibetgang-gyencarpet.com

This factory, where local women produce beautiful carpets, first skeining the wool then weaving it, is the place to come if you are in the

Dzong

The leaders of Tsang once ruled from the mighty fortress of **Shigatse Dzong**, in the north of town, built in the 14th century by Karma Phuntso Namgyel, a powerful Tsang king. It once resembled a small Potala but was destroyed by the Chinese

in 1959 during the Tibetan uprising, and rebuilt on a smaller scale in 2007. You can walk around the Dzong but you can't enter it. A *kora* or holy route, marked by prayer flags and *mani* stones, leads here from the west side of Tashilunpo. Keep your distance from the packs of stray dogs.

Tibetan Market

At the Dzong's southern base on Tomzigang Lu stands a small Tibetan market selling souvenirs, such as prayer wheels and incense, and a few Tibetan necessities – medicine, legs of lamb, and large knives. Just to the west of the market is an old traditionally Tibetan neighborhood of narrow lanes and tall whitewashed walls.



Stall selling religious regalia at the Tibetan Market

Tashilunpo Monastery

Tel (0892) 882 2114. Open Summer:

9am–12:30pm & 4–6pm Mon–Sat;

Winter: 10am–noon & 3–6pm

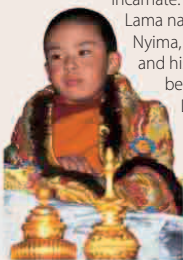
Mon–Sat. 📶

A huge monastic compound of golden-roofed venerable buildings and cobbled lanes, Tashilunpo would take several days to explore fully. It was founded in 1447 by Genden Drup, retrospectively titled the 1st Dalai Lama. It grew suddenly important in 1642, when the 5th Dalai Lama declared his teacher, the monastery's abbot, to be a reincarnation of the Amithaba Buddha and the fourth reincarnation of the Panchen Lama, or great teacher. Ever since it has been the seat of the Panchen Lamas, who are second in authority to the Dalai Lama.

The 11th Panchen Lama

The death of the 10th Panchen Lama in 1989 brought Tibet's leaders and the Chinese government into conflict over succession. Like the seat of the Dalai Lama, the Panchen Lama's position is passed on through reincarnation. Traditionally, upon the death of either of these leaders, top monks scour the land hoping to identify the new incarnate. In 1995, after an extensive search, the Dalai Lama named a six-year-old boy, Gedhun Choeki Nyima, as the 11th Panchen Lama. The chosen boy and his family soon disappeared and have not been seen since. Keen to handpick the next

Dalai Lama's teacher, the Chinese authorities sanctioned a clandestine ceremony which ordained Gyancaïn Norbu as the "official Panchen Lama" and immediately whisked him off to Beijing.



Young Gyancaïn Norbu, the China-sanctioned 11th Panchen Lama



Majestic Tashilunpo Monastery with Drolma Ridge rising behind

Head up the main path to the back of the compound for the most impressive sights. The gold and silver *chorten* straight ahead holds the remains of the 4th Panchen Lama.

Built in 1662, it was the only funeral *chorten* in the monastery to escape destruction during the Cultural Revolution. The larger, jewel studded *chorten* just to the west holds the remains of the 10th Panchen Lama, who died in 1989; it was constructed in 1994 at a cost of eight million US dollars.



The Wheel of Law, an auspicious symbol

Continue west for the Chapel of Jampa, which holds the monastery's most impressive artifact, an 85-ft (26-m) golden image of Jampa, the future Buddha, made in 1914. It took

almost a thousand artisans four years to complete using more than 600 pounds (275 kg) of gold.

The complex of buildings on the east side is the Kelsang. It centers around a courtyard where monks can be observed praying, debating, and relaxing. The 15th-century Assembly Hall on the west side

VISITORS' CHECKLIST

Practical Information

172 miles (278 km) W of Lhasa.

92,000. Arrange travel to Shigatse through a travel agency in Lhasa. Tashilunpo: 2nd week of 5th lunar month.

holds the imposing throne of the Panchen Lamas.

Those with energy left can follow the monastery *kora*, which takes about an hour. It runs clockwise around the outside of the walls before heading up to the Dzong. You'll pass colorful rock reliefs, some of Guru Rinpoche, and the huge white wall where a *thangka* of Buddha is exposed to the sun during the three-day long Tashilunpo Festival.

Summer Palace of the Panchen Lamas

Zhade Dong Lu. **Open** 9:30am–noon & 4–6pm daily.

South of Tashilunpo Monastery is the Panchen Lamas' summer palace, constructed in 1954. There are some excellent wall paintings inside the complex, and the gardens are a pleasant place to stroll.

Shigatse City Center

- ① Gang Gyen Carpet Factory
- ② Dzong
- ③ Tibetan Market
- ④ Tashilunpo Monastery
- ⑤ Summer Palace of the Panchen Lamas



Key to Symbols see back flap

7 Sakya Monastery

萨迦寺

250 miles (402 km) SW of Lhasa. Travel must be arranged by a travel agency in Lhasa. **Open** 9am–6:30pm Mon–Sat. ☎ fee. Travel Permit required (see p523).

The town of Sakya is dominated by the huge, fortress-like monastery, that looms up from the gray plains. Sakya, or “Gray Soil” in Tibetan, was the capital of all Tibet in the 13th century, when monks of the Sakyapa order formed an extraordinary alliance with the Mongols. In 1247, the head of the Sakyapa order, Sakya Pandita, traveled to Mongolia and made a pact, whereby the Mongols were the overlords, while the Sakya monks ruled as their regents – the first time a lama was also head of state. His nephew, Phagpa, later became the spiritual guide to the conqueror of China, Kublai Khan. In 1354, Mongol power waned, and in-fighting among the religious sects led to a decline in Sakya’s influence.

Originally, there were two monasteries on either side of the Trum River, but the northern one was destroyed during the Cultural Revolution (see pp70–71). The mid-13th century **Southern Monastery**, built by Phagpa, is a typical Mongol structure, with thick walls and watchtowers. The entrance leads to a courtyard with an enormous prayer pole in the center. To the left is the **Puntsok**



Detail from wall painting at Sakya Monastery

Palace, the traditional home of one of the two head lamas, who now lives overseas. Apart from the statue-filled chapel, its rooms are mainly empty. Moving clockwise, the next chapel, the **Purkhang**, holds images of Jowo Sakyamuni and Jampalyang among others, while wall murals depict tantric deities. The **Main Assembly Hall** has 40 huge wooden pillars, one of which was said to have been gifted by Kublai Khan, while another is said to have come from India on the back of a tiger. The elaborately decorated hall has rich brocades, statues, and butter lamps and holds thousands of religious texts (*sutras*). The fine central Buddha image enshrines the remains of Phagpa. The chapel to the north has 11 silver *chortens* containing the remains of previous Sakya

lamas. Sakya houses are traditionally painted gray with red and white vertical stripes; the colors are supposed to symbolize the Bodhisattvas Channa Dorje, Jampalyang, and Chenresig respectively.

8 Everest Base Camp

珠峰大本营

Rongphu: 336 miles (610 km) SW of Lhasa. 4WD from Lhasa, 2 days; must be arranged through a travel agency in Lhasa. Travel Permits required (see p523).

Despite the spine-jarring, four-hour trip off the Friendship Highway – that connects Lhasa to the Nepal border at Zhangmu – the craggy lunar landscape en route to Everest is enchanting. Rongphu is a good place for a stop and at 16,500 ft (4,980 m) is the highest monastery in the world. Although it has some good murals, the interior is not as riveting as its stunning location in front of Everest’s forbidding north face in the Rongphu Valley. The monastery was founded in 1902 on a site that had been used by nuns as a meditation retreat for centuries, and is now home to some 30 monks.

Everest Base Camp lies 5 miles (8 km) to the south. The trip across the glacial plain takes about 15 minutes by vehicle or two hours on foot. It is just a jumble of tents, with a makeshift tea-house and the world’s highest post box, but the views of Mount Everest, the world’s highest mountain at a staggering 29,029 ft (8,848 m), are absolutely unforgettable.

The entire Rongphu and Everest area has been designated a nature reserve that covers 13,100 sq miles (34,000 sq km), and borders three national parks in Nepal. There is a spectacular viewpoint at the Pangla Pass, from which you can see Everest (known as Chomolungma in Tibetan), Cho Oyo, Lhotse, Makalu, and Gyachung. Most people try to



Houses at Sakya Village, painted gray with red and white stripes



Everest Base Camp, with magnificent views of the world's highest mountain

arrive at this pass either to see the sun rise or the sun set over the Himalayas.

The rarefied air at this altitude (17,000 ft/5,150 m) makes any strenuous activity impossible, however, so unless visitors are properly acclimatized, it is best to go all the way back to the Friendship Highway and carry on to the town of Shegar to spend the night.

9 The Nepal Border

尼泊尔边境

Zhangmu: Nepal border. 466 miles (750 km) SW of Lhasa. Taxi 4WD from Lhasa, 2 days (direct), or 5–6 days (via Gyantse, Shigatse & Everest Base Camp). Travel must be arranged through a travel agency in Lhasa. Travel Permit for all places (between Shigatse and border) required (see p523).

The Friendship Highway connecting Lhasa to the Nepal border is one of Tibet's most popular link routes. From the Rongphu turn-off along the highway, it is another 31 miles (50 km) west to **Tingri**, on what is a surprisingly good road. This is a small, traditional Tibetan town with good views of the Everest range. After climbing for 56 miles (90 km) the road begins a steep, winding descent through

mountains that are densely wooded; the change of scenery is startling after the desert landscape of the high, arid plateau. It is only another 20 miles (33 km) to the border town of **Zhangmu**, which is relatively low and oxygen-rich at 7,200 ft (2,200 m). Although much of Zhangmu consists of slightly dilapidated shacks, perched above one another on

the mountainside, this frontier town has a gaudy vibrance. Border formalities to get into Nepal are fairly cursory. The Nepalese immigration post, 6 miles (10 km) farther down at **Kodari**, will issue a single-entry visa, though visitors have to pay in US dollars and provide a passport photo. From here, it is a four-hour trip to Kathmandu.

The Friendship Highway

The 466-mile (750-km) route between Lhasa and the Nepal border, known as the Friendship Highway, is probably the most popular journey for visitors to Tibet and includes some important sightseeing detours along the way. Many agencies in Lhasa and in Kathmandu in Nepal can arrange the trip, sort out the necessary permits, and provide an appropriate four-wheel drive vehicle, a driver, and guide. Depending on the itinerary, which usually includes the towns of Shigatse and Gyantse, the trip can take up to a week. Visitors must ensure that the contract specifies exactly what they want and what they are paying for.



Friendship Highway, winding across the plateau to Nepal





TRAVELERS' NEEDS

Where to Stay	554-563
Where to Eat & Drink	564-585
Shops & Markets	586-589
Entertainment	590-591
Sports & Specialist Holidays	592-595

WHERE TO STAY

An abundance of accommodation options is available in China for most of the year. Four- and five-star hotels, increasingly run by either major international chains or expanding Chinese hotel companies, are plentiful in major cities and tourist destinations. In other cities and towns, there are many mid-range hotels and budget options to choose from. Ideally, rooms should be booked in advance,

but if you have not done so, do not panic, unless you are traveling during one of the high seasons – the first week of May and October, and Chinese New Year (Spring Festival). Although you may want to book some of your stay (the first few nights, for example, to ease your arrival), it is perfectly feasible to turn up at your hotel of choice, bargain cheerfully, and book yourself a room at a sizable discount.

Hotel Chains

Visitors in search of international standards of comfort and service should stick either to five-star hotels managed by familiar Western chains or to the luxury Asian brands.

Starwood hotels (such as Sheraton, W, and Westin) are well represented in China. Other international chains – such as **Accor**, **Hilton**, **Hyatt**, **Kempinski**, **Ritz-Carlton**, **Shangri-La**, and **Marriott** – all have hotels in the major cities; check their websites for details.

Chinese-run hotels do their best to emulate Western operations. The published rack rates of Chinese four- and five-star hotels are indeed comparable, but the level of service does not match their Western counterparts just yet. Standards are fast improving, however, and there is a willingness to please, especially away from the main tourist areas.

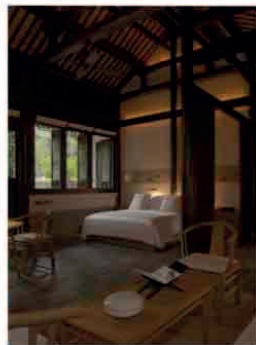
The Chinese star system of grading hotels is meaningless. Although authorities have devised a checklist of facilities that hotels must provide within each grade, there is no proper system of monitoring the

standard of these services. Therefore, no matter how poorly these facilities may be maintained, no star is ever lost once it is given. Rather than be involved in this system, some international hotels choose to go starless. These establishments can be far superior to Chinese-run properties. As a general rule for Chinese-run hotels, the newer the hotel, the better the facilities.

Visit www.ctrip.com and www.elong.com to find the best deals, check out the location and prices of hotels, and make online bookings.

Budget Hotels & Other Types of Accommodations

Budget travelers will find a choice of inexpensive options all across the mainland and in Hong Kong. Away from the larger cities, dormitory beds for around ¥40 are easily available. Youth hostels with spotless facilities and beds costing about ¥50 are beginning to open up in some metropolises. Many universities will also rent out vacant rooms.



Spacious and comfortable suite at Amanfayun in Hangzhou (see p560)

At the upper end of the budget spectrum, the **Motel 168** and **Jinjiang Inn** chains offer excellent rooms with free Internet, private bathroom, and TV at affordable rates. **Home Inns** and **Green Tree Inns** are good budget brands with free Internet. Rooms at all these chains can be booked online.

Camping is not an option in China. Pitching a tent, except in the most far-flung places, is certain to attract attention, and you are likely to get a visit from the police. Staying in a *ger*, the round homes of the nomadic Mongols and Kazakhs, can be arranged in Inner Mongolia and Xinjiang. However, these overnight camps are targeted at tourists, so it may not be an authentic experience. Some monasteries and lamaseries have pilgrims' inns where you are welcome to stay for a minimal fee, but conditions can be very austere. On holy mountains, such as Emei Shan, you will find many temples that offer basic but atmospheric accommodations for travelers.



Palatial lobby of Shangri-La Hotel in Suzhou (see p560)



Harbor views from Upper House in Hong Kong (see p561)

Choosing a Hotel

The newest hotels are usually the best, as most owners seem to resist carrying out repairs unless they are absolutely necessary. New hotels are constantly springing up in various parts of the country in the hope of benefiting from the growth in domestic tourism. Some are one-off operations started by private businesses, but most belong to Chinese chains building pan-China hotel portfolios. Hotels run by the police, banks, tobacco companies, post offices, and other businesses are aspiring to compete with long-standing establishments run by local governments. Any hotel with a decent website or the word “business” in the title is likely to be relatively new and offer good services.

Booking a Hotel

In China, the real price of a hotel room is what the customer is willing to pay. Locals always ask for a discount, and you should too. The days of official surcharges for non-Chinese customers are long gone. Although many hotels still quote higher prices to foreign visitors, they are amenable to hard bargaining and will bring

their rates down drastically, especially if the room in question would otherwise go empty. Discounts of 10 to 20 percent are standard, 30 to 40 percent very common, and 50 percent not unusual. Try for larger discounts, especially in locations with seasonal demand.

Booking online in advance via sites such as **ctrip.com**, **elong.com**, or **hostelworld.com** is another good way to obtain a bargain. This is also true of most foreign-run hotels.

The introduction of double beds of various sizes in Chinese-run hotels (rather than the standard twin single beds) has led to some confusion. Older hotels and a few newer ones do indeed have regular “single

rooms,” with a single bed in a relatively small space for a cheaper price. However, rooms described as “single” usually refer to those with a double bed, and can be occupied by two people, although they usually cost slightly less than twin-bed rooms of the same size.

The display of certain credit card symbols at hotels does not guarantee that the international versions of these cards will be accepted. It is therefore important to confirm that your card will be accepted before checking in. Most of the upper-tier hotels do take credit cards; in smaller establishments, be prepared to pay in renminbi.

Costs

The prices quoted by major international hotels do not include service charges or local bed taxes, although the latter are rarely levied. Many Chinese-run upper-end hotels have begun to levy service charges between 5 and 15 percent. Foreign visitors should check their bills carefully before paying. Note that minibar contents are as overpriced in China as anywhere else. Costs for phone calls from even modest hotels are usually computer-monitored, and a service charge will be added on top of the actual cost of the call. Most Chinese-run, and many foreign-owned, hotels in China offer free Wi-Fi. Check before booking, and if the hotel you choose charges for Internet use, pick somewhere down the street that doesn’t.



Traditionally designed courtyard at The Linden Centre in Dali (see p562)

Seasonal Demand

While rooms are readily available in China for most of the year, the busiest travel periods are during the week-long national holidays, principally around the Chinese New Year (January or February) and October 1. Unlike the West, very few people in China have discretionary holidays, so almost everyone in the country seems to be traveling at the same time. Another time to avoid traveling is during the Spring Festival, when accommodation is almost impossible to find. The exact dates are not fixed far in advance, but as soon as they are declared transport and accommodation costs shoot up.

Spring and autumn, with their milder temperatures and lower humidity, are more popular seasons for traveling than summer or winter, which are both extreme. In summer, some of the cooler destinations within reasonable reach of large cities – such as the island of Putuo Shan, served by short flights and ferries from Shanghai – can be very crowded and expensive during weekends, but very cheap during the week. Other events that affect transport costs and room availability are the festivals of ethnic minorities, particularly in the southwest, and trade events such as the biannual fair in Guangzhou.



Richly furnished lobby at the JIA Shanghai hotel in Shanghai (see p559)

General Observations & Precautions

Check-out time is usually noon, but visitors can pay half the nightly rate to keep the room until 6pm. Chinese regulations require all non-residents to be out of hotel rooms by 11 pm, but this is widely ignored. Although foreign-exchange facilities are usually open seven days a week at most of the better hotels, these facilities can be used only by registered guests.

Many hotels, including some establishments with foreign management, advertise facilities such as nightclubs, hair and beauty salons, and karaoke bars, but these are often fronts for prostitution. Be wary of unexpected telephone calls to your room offering *anmo*, or massage. It is best to disconnect your phone if you wish to avoid being solicited.

Though it is simpler to arrange transport services through your hotel, be aware that this might cost more than it would if you found a taxi on your own. It is wiser to simply walk onto the street and flag down a passing vehicle. Taxis hovering near the doors of hotels in popular tourist destinations should be approached with caution.

When surveying hotels, travelers must remember that the pictures they see on brochures and websites almost always date to the time of opening, and are unlikely to represent the current condition of the rooms. You should also not be swayed by the promise of saunas, fitness centers, swimming pools, or Jacuzzis, especially in Chinese-run hotels in remote areas, as the presence of these in brochures does not indicate that they are still working or fit for use. Most importantly, the rates mentioned are not fixed.

Facilities for Children & the Disabled

Children are welcome everywhere in China, although special facilities for them in hotels are rare. Most hotels allow children under 12 years to stay with their parents free of charge. Most hotels will also add an extra bed for an older child for a nominal (and usually negotiable) fee. Groups of four, including two children over 12, can sometimes share a room, though parents may be required to pay for two rooms. However, many older,



The imposing façade of Shangri-La Hotel in Xian (see p559)

Chinese-run hotels have three- and four-bed rooms that are ideal for families.

In general, China is not an easy destination for the disabled. Only the newest and best international hotels make any serious effort to provide wheelchair access or fully adapted rooms. Most places have standard suites with inconveniently placed light switches, although some have wider bathroom doors to allow wheelchairs. However, most hotels have elevators, so booking a ground-floor room is not necessary.

Tippling

As tipping is not very common in China, hotel staff don't usually expect to be tipped. The international hotels will be charging you a 5 to 15 percent

service charge on top of your bill in any case. Some Chinese hotels have started to add these charges as well.

Recommended Hotels

The hotels on pages 558–63 cover a huge variety of accommodation options from simple hostels and budget hotels to historic establishments and luxury retreats. They are listed by price within each area. Luxury hotels number among the most upscale options in town, with high standards of rooms and service par for the course.

China's boutique hotel industry is booming of late, and this category can include everything from slick and trendy operations in a city, to rural homestays with just a few rooms. There are many historic

options for visitors to choose from, from Art Deco gems in Shanghai to one of China's first hotels to cater to foreigners in Harbin. Those who enjoy the flexibility of a self-catered stay should look for properties in the apartment category. China has many budget options where rooms are neat and clean and there are also numerous hostels where guests can stay in communal dormitories. Hotels that fall under the Business category feature amenities from Wi-Fi and business centers to meeting rooms with audio and visual technology.

Finally, hotels featured as DK Choice are special establishments that are highly recommended for an exceptional quality, be it a great spa, beautifully designed rooms, or an ecologically sustainable outlook.



Classy interiors at the luxurious Waldorf Astoria Shanghai on the Bund hotel in Shanghai (see p560)

DIRECTORY

Hotel Chains

Accor

Tel 1-800 221 4542 (US).

Tel 0871 663 0624 (UK).

www.accorhotels.com

Hilton

Tel 1-800 445 8667 (US).

Tel 08705 909 090 (UK).

www.hilton.com

Hyatt

Tel 1-800 233 1234 (US).

Tel 0845 888 1234 (UK).

www.hyatt.com

Kempinski

Tel 1-800 426 3135 (US).

Tel 020 7198 8405 (UK).

www.kempinski.com

Marriott

Tel 1-888 236 2427 (US).

Tel 0800 1927 1927 (UK).

www.marriott.com

Ritz-Carlton

Tel 1-800 542 8680 (US).

Tel 0800 2413 3333 (UK).

www.ritzcarlton.com

Shangri-La

Tel 1-866 565 5050 (US).

Tel 0800 028 3337 (UK).

www.shangri-la.com

Starwood

(Sheraton, W, Westin)

Tel 1-800 80 1855 (US).

Tel 020 3564 6335 (UK).

www.starwood.com

Budget Hotels

Green Tree Inns

www.998.com

Home Inns

www.homeinns.com

Jinjiang Inn

Tel 400 820 9999.

www.jinjianginns.com

Motel 168

Tel 400 820 7168.

www.motel168.com

Booking a Hotel

Useful websites

www.ctrip.com

www.elong.com

www.hostelworld.com

Where to Stay

Beijing

Downtown Backpackers ¥

Hostel Map 2 D3

85 Nanluoguxiang, Chaoyang district

Tel (010) 8400 2429

www.backpackingchina.com

Cheerful place close to the city's most funky hutong (alleyway). Great for visitors on a tight budget.

Hotel G ¥¥

Boutique

7 Workers Stadium West Road,

Chaoyang district

Tel (010) 6552 3600

www.hotel-g.com

Glam, glitzy and gorgeous by design, with in-room Wi-Fi. Popular bar and fusion restaurant.

The Red Capital Residence ¥¥

Boutique

9 Dongsi Liutiao, Dong Cheng district

Tel (010) 8403 5308

www.redcapitalclub.com.cn

An exotic five-room guesthouse decked with antique furniture and Communist Party memorabilia.

The Schoolhouse ¥¥

Boutique

Mutianyu Town, Huairou district

Tel (010) 6162 6505

www.theschoolhouseatmutianyu.com

Stay at the eco-resort or hire a well-appointed village home with amazing views of the Great Wall.

China World Summit Wing ¥¥¥

Luxury

Map 4 F1

1 Jianguomenwai Avenue,

Chaoyang district

Tel (010) 6505 2299

www.shangri-la.com

Rooms high up in the China World Trade Center have ultra-modern interiors and great views.

DK Choice

Duge Courtyard Boutique

Hotel

Luxury

Map 2 D3

26 Qianyanensi Hutong,

Nanluoguxiang, Chaoyang district

Tel (010) 6406 0686

www.dugecourtyard.com

This luxurious hideaway was part-created by jeweler and interior designer Jehanne de Biolley – no surprise given the hotel's precious gem-like color scheme. Each one of the 10 rooms is unique, and the stunning Imperial Suite, which is decorated with burnished gold, will make guests feel like royalty.

Hotel de Cour SL ¥¥¥

Boutique

70 Yan Yue Hutong, Dongcheng

district

Tel (010) 6512 8020

www.hotelcoteoubj.com

Elegant rooms combine modern amenities with antique surrounds.

Hotel Eclat ¥¥¥

Luxury

9 Dongdaqiao Jie, Chaoyang district

Tel (010) 8561 2888

www.eclathotels.com/beijing

This slightly offbeat luxury hotel

boasts a superb art collection.

Park Hyatt ¥¥¥

Luxury

2 Jianguomen Outer St,

Chaoyang district

Tel (010) 8567 1234

www.beijing.park.hyatt.com

Rooms at this 63-story hotel boast marble baths. Superlative service.

The Aman at the Summer Palace ¥¥¥

Luxury

1 Gongmenqian St, Summer Palace,

Haidian district

Tel (010) 5987 9999

www.amanresorts.com

Stay in century-old pavilions at this retreat next to the Summer Palace.

The Opposite House ¥¥¥

Boutique

1 Sanlitun Bei Lu, Chaoyang district

Tel (010) 6417 6688

www.theoppositehouse.com

A hotel, club, and restaurant with a stunning green glass exterior.

The Peninsula Beijing ¥¥¥

Luxury

Map 2 E5

8 Jinyu Hutong, Dong Cheng district

Tel (010) 8516 2888

www.beijing.peninsula.com

Beijing's grand dame of style and service, with a highly rated spa.

Price Guide

Prices are based on one night's stay in high season for a standard double room, inclusive of service charges and taxes.

¥	under ¥400
¥¥	¥400 to ¥1,000
¥¥¥	over ¥1,000

Hebei, Tianjin & Shanxi

BEIDAIHE: Beidaihe Hotel ¥

Rooms with a view

316 Lianfeng Rd

Tel (0335) 4680 555

A large hotel with great ocean views. There are few English speakers here, so guests should be prepared to use a phrasebook.

CHENGDE: Mountain Resort Hotel ¥

Budget

11 Lizhengmen

Tel (0314) 2091 188

Clean, basic rooms in a well-known hotel at a great location, opposite the main entrance to the Mountain Resort.

DATONG: Garden Hotel ¥

Business

59 Danan Street

Tel (0352) 5865 888

www.datonghotels.com

Well located and geared for foreigners, this hotel wins plaudits for service. It also runs a number of tours to nearby attractions.

TAIYUAN: Chateau Star River Taiyuan ¥¥

Luxury

2 Xinghe West Rd

Tel (0351) 7698 866

www.chateauriver.com

Beautiful hotel with a pool. Non-Chinese speakers may struggle to make themselves understood.



Opulent suite at the China World Summit Wing in Beijing

TIANJIN: St Regis Tianjin ¥¥
Luxury
158 Zhongzizhong Rd
Tel (022) 5830 9999
W starwoodhotels.com
Plush hotel along the picturesque River Hai offering flawless service.

TIANJIN: Tangla Hotel Tianjin ¥¥
Luxury
9F-A, Huanmao Business Centre,
No. 219 Nanjing Road
Tel (022) 2321 5888
W tanglahotels.com
Spacious, well-furnished rooms with spectacular city views.

TIANJIN: The Astor Hotel Tianjin ¥¥
Historic
33 Taier Zhuang Road
Tel (022) 2331 1688
W starwoodhotels.com
This restored 1863 hotel evokes a bygone era. Ask for a room in the old wing for a taste of antiquity.

Shandong & Henan

J'NAN: Sofitel Silver Plaza ¥¥
Luxury
66 Luoyuan Dajie
Tel (0531) 8606 8888
W sofitel.com/asia
This modern hotel incorporates European elements in its decor.

LUOYANG: Peony Hotel ¥
Budget
15 Zhongzhou West Lu
Tel (0379) 6558 8123
W peonyhotel.net
Staid, reliable option with English-speaking staff. Breakfast included.

QINGDAO: Huiquan Dynasty Hotel ¥
Rooms with a view
6 Nanhai Lu
Tel (0532) 8299 988
W hqdynasty.com
Chic hotel opposite the beach. Ask for a room with a sea view.

QINGDAO: Hyatt Regency ¥¥
Rooms with a view
88 Donghai East Lu
Tel (0532) 8612 1234
W qingdao.regency.hyatt.com
A smart hotel near Sho Lao Ren beach. Rooms on the upper floors have fine views.

QINGDAO: Shangri-La ¥¥
Luxury
9 Xiang Gang Zhong Lu
Tel (0532) 3883 838
W shangri-la.com
Enjoy the full array of the facilities at this deluxe hotel close to stores, restaurants, and the coast.

Shaanxi

XI'AN: Xiangzimen International Youth Hostel ¥
Boutique
16 Xiangzimiao Jie
Tel (029) 6286 7888
W yhachina.com
A building with Chinese-style decor near the city wall's south gate and street food markets.

XI'AN: Citadines Central Xi'an ¥¥
Apartments
36 Zhubashi Lu
Tel (029) 8576 1188
W citadines.com
Spacious, clean apartments with kitchenettes and well-equipped rooms. Great location.

XI'AN: Sofitel Xi'an on Renmin Square ¥¥
Luxury
319 Dong Xin Street
Tel (029) 8792 8888
W sofitel.com/xian
A stylish property with spotless rooms and excellent breakfasts.

XI'AN: Shangri-La Hotel ¥¥¥
Luxury
388 Keji Lu
Tel (029) 8875 8888
W shangri-la.com
This beautiful hotel is within walking distance of the local attractions. Friendly staff, modern rooms, and a huge gym.

XI'AN: Sheraton Xi'an ¥¥¥
Business
262 Fenghao Dong Lu
Tel (029) 8426 1888
W sheratonhotels.com
Business-friendly hotel with large rooms featuring walk-in showers. Praise-worthy breakfasts.

Shanghai

Magnolia ¥¥
B&B
36 Yangqing Lu, Xuhui district
Tel (138) 1794 0848
W magnoliabnbshanghai.com
Five rooms spread over four floors in a house built in 1927, brimming with an authentic feel.

Fairmont Peace Hotel ¥¥¥
Historic
20 Nanjing Dong Lu, Huangpu district
Tel (021) 6321 6888
W fairmont.com
Shanghai's most famous heritage hotel, this Art Deco gem is outstanding in terms of its decor and historical interest.



Designer rooms at JIA Shanghai in Shanghai

Hyatt on the Bund ¥¥¥
Luxury
199 Huangpu Lu, Hongkou district
Tel (021) 6393 1234
W shanghai.bund.hyatt.com
A modern hotel with all the latest amenities, a spa, and restaurant.

JIA Shanghai ¥¥¥
Boutique
931 Nanjing Xi Lu, Jing'an district
Tel (021) 6217 9000
W jiashanghai.com
Philippe Starck-design in a vibrant location. Evening cocktails and laundry are included in the rates.

Les Suites Orient ¥¥¥
Boutique
1 Jinling Dong Lu
Tel (021) 6320 0088
W lessuitesorient.com
This smart hotel fuses Art Deco design with traditional Oriental style. Iconic views over the river.

DK Choice

Mansion Hotel ¥¥¥
Historic
82 Xinle Lu, Xuhui district
Tel (021) 5403 9888
W chinamansionhotel.com
Beautifully renovated 32-room hotel in the heart of the French Concession. Set in what was once an infamous gangster's home, the hotel is a special treat for those interested in Shanghai's racy history. Rooms are priced in US dollars.

The Peninsula Hotel ¥¥¥
Luxury
32 Zhongshan Dong Yi Lu, near Beijing Dong Lu, Huangpu district
Tel (021) 2327 2888
W peninsula.com
Experience superlative luxury at The Peninsula, from its elegant rooms to the open-air terrace.



Sophisticated interiors of the deluxe Amanfayun in Hangzhou

The Puli Hotel and Spa ¥¥¥

Luxury
1 Changde Rd, Jing'an district
Tel (021) 3203 9999
w thepuli.com

A sleek, urban resort with spacious rooms, a knockout restaurant, and a fancy spa.

The Westin Bund Center ¥¥¥

Luxury
88 Henan Zhong Lu, Huangpu district
Tel (021) 6335 1888
w westin.com/shanghai

Attractive hotel with a distinctive roof, Vegas-style light effects and rooms with floor-to-ceiling windows – most with views.

Waldorf Astoria Shanghai on the Bund ¥¥¥

Luxury
88 Sichuan Zhong Lu
Tel (021) 6322 9988
w waldorfastoria3.hilton.com

This multi-award-winning hotel offers flawless service and vistas across the skyline.

Waterhouse at South Bund ¥¥¥

Historic
3 Maojiayuan Rd, Huangpu district
Tel (021) 6080 2918
w waterhouseshanghai.com

A 1930s warehouse converted into a swanky boutique hotel with designer furniture.

Jiangsu & Anhui

NANJING: Orange Hotel ¥

Budget
224 Zhong Lu
Tel (025) 8696 6971
w orangehotel.com.cn

Great-value accommodation in the city center, within walking distance of many attractions.

NANJING: InterContinental Nanjing ¥¥¥

Luxury
1 Zhongyang Lu
Tel (025) 4234 917
w ichtelgroup.com
This hotel towers over the city center. Two great restaurants.

SUZHOU: Hotel Soul Suzhou ¥¥

Boutique
27–33 Qiaosikong Xiang
Tel (0512) 6777 0777
w hotelsoul.com.cn

Eye-catching trendy decor and a Suzhou-style rooftop garden.

DK Choice

SUZHOU: Pinjiangfu Suzhou Hotel ¥¥

Boutique
60 Bai Ta Dong Lu
Tel (0512) 6770 6688
w pingjiangpalace.com

This charming retreat set in a traditional courtyard is surrounded by centuries-old Suzhou gardens. Rooms are lovingly furnished with smart, contemporary interiors.

SUZHOU: Shangri-La Hotel Suzhou ¥¥

Luxury
168 Tayuan Lu
Tel (0512) 6808 0168
w shangri-la.com
Impeccable service and huge, well-appointed rooms.

TUNXI: Huangshan Tunxi Lodge ¥

Boutique
5/17 Lao Jie
Tel (0559) 2580 880
w the-silk-road.com
Traditionally styled rooms on Old Street, close to shops and cafés.

Zhejiang & Jiangxi

HANGZHOU: West Lake Youth Hostel ¥

Hostel
62–3 Nan Shan Lu
Tel (0571) 8702 7027
w westlakehostel.com
Located on the banks of the lake, near Leifeng Pagoda. Bright and spacious dorms and rooms.

HANGZHOU: Xihu State Guesthouse ¥¥

Boutique
18 Yang Gong Causeway
Tel (0571) 8797 9889
w xihugsh.com
A guesthouse with efficient staff, stunning grounds, and lake views.

DK Choice

HANGZHOU: Amanfayun ¥¥¥

Luxury
22 Fayun Jie, Xi Hu Jie
Tel (0571) 8732 9999
w amanresorts.com
Amanfayun is a quiet, ultra-expensive resort for the rich and famous, hidden in a picturesque valley amid the verdant natural beauty of the tea gardens.

NANCHANG: Grand Skylight International Hotel Nanchang ¥

Business
AVIC International Plaza,
No. 1 Ganjiangbei Lu
Tel (0791) 8206 6666
w grandskylight-intl.com
A quiet hotel with helpful staff, business facilities, and good food.

WENZHOU: Shangri-La Wenzhou ¥¥

Luxury
1 Xiangyuan Lu
Tel (0577) 8998 8888
w shangri-la.com
The city's best hotel, situated in a skyscraper and renowned for its excellent service levels. Free Wi-Fi.

Hunan & Hubei

CHANGSHA: Dolton Hotel ¥¥

Business
159 Shaoshan Bei Lu
Tel (0731) 8416 8888
w dolton-hotel.com
This hotel features a business center plus an on-site health club.

DK Choice

CHANGSHA: Wyndham Grand Plaza Royale Furongguo Changsha ¥¥¥

Luxury
106 Furong Zhong Lu
Tel (0731) 2074 421
w wyndham.com
Though a little way out of town, this lavish hotel lives up to its five-star rating. The lobby is truly majestic and the rooms well appointed. Some guests say the breakfast buffet is the best in China.

WUHAN: Jinjiang Inn Wuhan ¥

Budget
Jiangtan Pedestrian St,
2 Dongting Lu
Tel (027) 8209 999
w jinjianginns.com
Excellent-value hotel in a superb location. Helpful staff, too.

WUHAN: Pathfinder International Youth Hostel ¥
368 Zhongshan Lu
Tel (027) 8884 4092
w yachina.com
Hip hostel with a pleasant terrace and mixed dorms. Chinese-style bathrooms.

WUHAN: Marco Polo Hotel Wuhan Business ¥¥
159 Yanjiang Dajie
Tel (027) 8277 8888
w marcopolohotels.com
This riverfront property with large, airy rooms is a good choice for corporate travelers.

Fujian

FUZHOU: Best Western Fuzhou Fortune Hotel Business ¥¥
220 Hualin Lu
Tel (0591) 8819 9999
w bestwestern.com
A well-appointed hotel offering spacious rooms with free Wi-Fi. Complimentary breakfast.

FUZHOU: Howard Johnson Riverfront Plaza Fuzhou Business ¥¥
6 Jiangbin Dong Dajie
Tel (0591) 8862 9999
w hojochina.com
Business-oriented hotel with large, well-maintained rooms. Good value, with a spa and gym.

FUZHOU: Shangri-La Hotel Luxury ¥¥
9 Xinquan Nan Lu
Tel (0591) 8798 8888
w shangri-la.com
A comfortable hotel with an old-fashioned feel and one of the best Korean restaurants in town.

XIAMEN: Remy's Garden Hotel Boutique ¥
65 Kangtai Lu, Gulangyu Island
Tel (0592) 5944 5994
w remygardenhotel.com
Unusual, snug place offering one- and two-bedroom apartments, some with terraces, on Gulangyu Island. Book in advance.

XIAMEN: Xiamen International Youth Hostel ¥
41Nanhu Lu
Tel (0592) 2082 345
w yham.com
Friendly hostel with mixed dorms. Beds have curtains for privacy. Laundry and storage facilities.

DK Choice

XIAMEN: Seaview Resort Luxury ¥¥
3999 Huandao Nan Lu
Tel (0592) 5023 333
w xmseaview.com
Top-class resort located just outside the city center. Rooms come with baths the size of hot tubs, and many have private pools or gardens. Dine at one of the lovely restaurants dotted around the stunning gardens. Attentive staff. Book ahead.

Guangdong & Hainan

GUANGZHOU: Journey House Youth Hostel ¥
27F Building 1 Jiayiyuan, No. 445 Tianhe Bei Lu
Clean, good-value hostel with kitchen. Shared bathrooms.

GUANGZHOU: The Ritz-Carlton Guangzhou Luxury ¥¥¥
3 Xing'an Lu, Pearl River New City
Tel (020) 3813 6688
w ritzcarrlton.com
Extravagant opulence and impeccable service; home to one of the top 10 restaurants in China.

DK Choice

HAINAN: Banyan Tree Sanya Luxury ¥¥¥
Luhuitou Bay, 6 Luling Lu
Tel (0852) 8860 9988
w banyantree.com
Forty-nine pool villas are scattered around a sculpted tropical lagoon on Hainan Island, China's premier beach destination. The hotel offers very high standards of service.

SHENZHEN: Zen Guest House Guesthouse ¥
75 Dawei Cun, Dongchong
Tel (0755) 3070 7874
w zen-guesthouse.com
Located close to the beach. Simple rooms and a rooftop patio.

SHENZHEN: St Regis Shenzhen Luxury ¥¥¥
5016 Shennan Dong Lu
Tel (0755) 8308 8888
w stregis.com
One of Shenzhen's tallest buildings. Rooms come with various extras, including a butler service.

Hong Kong & Macau

HONG KONG: Hullet House Historic ¥¥¥
Map 1 A3
2A Canton Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui, Kowloon
Tel (0852) 3988 0000
w hulletthouse.com
Housed in a stunning Colonial building, this hotel features uniquely-decorated suites, all with private balconies.

HONG KONG: J Plus Boutique Hotel ¥¥¥
1-5 Irving St, Causeway Bay
Tel (0852) 3196 9000
w jplushongkong.com
Designed by Philippe Starck, with quirky rooms. Rates include breakfast and evening cocktails.

DK Choice

HONG KONG: Upper House Boutique ¥¥¥
Map 3 D4
Pacific Place, 88 Queensway
Tel (0852) 2918 1838
w upperhouse.com
A stylish haven from one of Asia's trendiest designers, Andre Fu. Enjoy fabulous city views from the luxurious apartment-like studios, which come with espresso machines and iPods.

HONG KONG: W Hong Kong Luxury ¥¥¥
Map 1 B3
1 Austin Rd West, Kowloon
Tel (0852) 3717 2222
w starwoodhotels.com
The W has the island's best pool plus rooms with superb views.

MACAU: Pousada de Mong-Ha Boutique ¥¥
Map 2 D3
Colina de Mong-Ha
Tel (853) 2851 5222
w ift.edu.mo
Rooms are decorated in traditional Portuguese style at this quiet inn.



Fashionable studio at the Upper House in Hong Kong

Sichuan & Chongqing

CHENGDU: BuddhaZen Hotel

Boutique

B6-6, Wenshufang Jie
Tel (028) 8692 9898

www.buddhazenhotel.com

Lovely hotel with well-appointed rooms. The in-house restaurant serves delicious local food.

DK Choice

CHENGDU: The Loft Design Hostel

4 Xiaotong Alley, Zhongtongren Lu
Tel (028) 8626 5770

www.dragontown.com.cn/loft

A stylish and quirky hostel in a converted factory, with both dorms and private rooms with en suite bathrooms. The staff are helpful in assisting with travel arrangements and tours.

CHONGQING: Beity Hot Spring Tourism Resort

Luxury

288 Nongke Dajie

Tel (023) 6571 8888

www.cqbeity.com

Surrounded by mountains, villas at this popular resort are scattered around a small lake. Rooms come with hot tubs and there also huge outdoor springs for guests to soak in.

CHONGQING: Somerset Jiefangbei Chongqing Apartments

Block B Hejing Building,
No. 108 Minzu Lu

Tel (023) 8677 6888

www.somerset.com

Serviced apartments with panoramic views of the city. There is a pool plus great facilities for kids.

Yunnan

DK Choice

DALI: The Linden Centre Boutique

5 Chengbei, Xizhou Town
Tel (0872) 2452 988

www.linden-centre.com

An eco-friendly resort where guests can experience traditional village life albeit in comfort. The 14 rooms are set around a scenic courtyard in a national heritage site. Rates include meals and excursions.

DEQIN: Banyan Tree Ringha Boutique

Hong Po Village, Jian Tang Town,
Shangrila County

Tel (0887) 8288 822

www.banyantree.com

This peaceful rural retreat offers accommodations in luxuriously appointed Tibetan-style villas.

KUNMING: Lost Garden Guest House Hostel

7 Yiqiutian, Huanggong Dong Jie,
Cuihu Nan Lu

Tel (0871) 6511 1127

www.lostgardenguesthouse.com

Spotless rooms and a small western-style restaurant are to be found at this charming hostel. Friendly staff.

KUNMING: Green Lake Hotel Luxury

6 Cuihu Nan Lu

Tel (0871) 5155 333

www.greenlakehotel.com

Elegant public spaces and rooms beside Kunming's famous lake.

LIJIANG: No.188 Boutique Hotel

Boutique

188 Bayi Lower Section, Qiye Jie

Tel (0888) 6536 6679

Traditional Naxi rooms run by a friendly manager. Great location in the Old Town.

LIJIANG: Crowne Plaza Hotel Lijiang Ancient Town

Luxury

276 Xianghe Lu

Tel (0888) 4234 917

www.ichotelsgroup.com

Thoughtfully-designed rooms with extras such as Wi-Fi and iPod docks. The lobby boasts stunning views of Jade Dragon Snow Mountain. Large breakfast buffet.

Guizhou & Guangxi

GUILIN: Jing Guan Ming Lou Holiday Hotel

Boutique

9 Ronghu Nan Lu

Tel (0773) 2283 265

www.jingguanminglou.chinahotel.com

This friendly lakeside hotel offers a unique style of decor.

GUILIN: Lakeside Inn Boutique

1-1-2 Shan Lake Building,

Shan Lake Bei Lu

Tel (0773) 2806 806

www.guilin-hostel.com

Beautifully located by the lake-side, this tiny guesthouse offers excellent hospitality.

GUILIN: Shangri-La Hotel Guilin

Luxury

111 Huancheng North Er Lu

Tel (0773) 6808 0168

www.shangri-la.com

The plushiest hotel in Guilin, offering a pool and rooms with river views. Operates tours, too.

NANNING: Nanning Marriott Hotel

Luxury

131 Min Zu Boulevard

Tel (0771) 5366 688

www.marriott.com

Comfortable rooms, professional service, and a spa.

YANGSHUO: Tea Cozy

Boutique

212 Xiatang Village, Baisha Town

Tel (0773) 8816 158

www.yangshuoteacozy.com

Traditional Chinese-style rooms with tastefully fitted wooden furnishings. Breathtaking views.

Liaoning, Jilin & Heilongjiang

DALIAN: Howard Johnson Parkland Hotel

Business

95 Huizhan Lu

Tel (0411) 8499 0000

www.hotelparklanddalian.hojochina.com

A quiet business hotel on Xinghai Square. Rooms have sea or mountain views.

HARBIN: Kazy International Hostel

82 Tongjiang Jie

Tel (0411) 8763 3400

www.snowtour.cn

A popular hostel in a former church with both private rooms and dorms. Good central location.



Spacious room at The Linden Centre, in Dali, Yunnan

DK Choice**HARBIN: Modern Hotel ¥¥**

Historic

89 Zhongyang Jie

Tel (0451) 8488 4000

W hotel.hrbmodern.com

Built in 1906 in the heart of what is now the Old City, this was the first international hotel in the area. Although it is now a government-preserved historical site, it is still possible to stay in the atmospheric old rooms.

SHENYANG: Lexington Plaza ¥¥ Business

128 Harbin Lu

Tel (024) 2259 8888

W lexingtonshenyang.cn

Comfortable, well-maintained rooms, and gym facilities.

Inner Mongolia & Ningxia**HOHHOT: Binyue Hostel ¥**

Hostel

52 Zhaowuda Lu

Tel (0471) 6605 6666

W yhachina.com

Simple rooms are clean and spacious. Good value.

HOHHOT: Shangri-La Hotel Hohhot ¥¥¥

Luxury

5 Linguole Nan Lu

Tel (0471) 3366 8888

W shangri-la.com

Hohhot's first international deluxe hotel has a plethora of restaurants and leisure facilities.

XILINHOT: Shengli Business Hotel ¥¥

Business

Xilin Square

Tel (0479) 8818 956

Elegantly decorated, this conveniently-located hotel is a good choice for business travelers.

XILINHOT: Yuanhe Jianguo Hotel ¥¥¥

Business

6 Nanjing Lu

Tel (0479) 8299 400

W yhjhotel.com

One of the city's few higher-end hotels. Enjoy the western-style breakfast and friendly service.

YINCHUAN: Yuehai Hotel ¥¥

Luxury

1A Helanshan Lu

Tel (0951) 5696 888

W yuehaihotel.cn

Deluxe hotel with a gym, pool, and a garden with a pagoda.

Gansu & Qinghai**DUNHUANG: Mogao Hotel ¥**

Budget

12 Mingshan Lu

Tel (0937) 8851 777

A well-located no-frills hotel with clean and comfortable rooms.

DUNHUANG: Silk Road Dunhuang Hotel ¥¥¥

Luxury

Dunyu Lu

Tel (0937) 8882 088

W the-silk-road.com

North China's best-known hotel for trips on the Silk Road. Lovely views of the sand dunes.

LANZHOU: Legend Hotel ¥¥

Business

529 Tianshui Nan Lu

Tel (0931) 8532 888

W lanzhoulegendhotel.com

Well-equipped, friendly hotel conveniently located for the railway station and airport shuttle.

XIAHE: Zhuoma Guesthouse ¥

Boutique

Renmin Xi Lu

Tel (0941) 7121 274

A popular hotel near the Labrang Monastery. Clean rooms and a welcoming Tibetan restaurant.

Xinjiang**KASHGAR: Kashgar Old Town Youth Hostel ¥**

Hostel

233 Wusitangboyi Lu

Tel (0998) 2823 262

W pamirinn.com

The most popular budget option from which to explore the town.

KASHGAR: Tianyuan International Hotel ¥¥

Business

8 Renmin Dong Lu

Tel (0998) 2801 111

W xjairport.com/hotel/index.asp

A centrally located hotel with agreeable rooms. Free Wi-Fi.

DK Choice**TURPAN: Silk Road Lodges ¥¥**

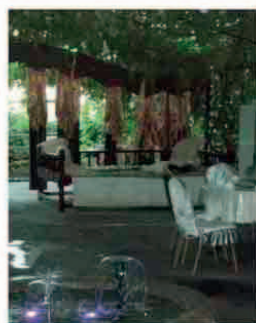
Boutique

Munda' Lu, Munda' Village

Tel (0995) 8568 333

W silkroadlodges.com

Located in a traditional Uighar settlement, guests can experience local village life firsthand while relaxing in comfortable surroundings. There are fine views overlooking the vineyards.



Restaurant at the Silk Road Dunhuang Hotel, Dunhuang

ÜRÜMQI: Bestay Hotel Express Ürümqi Hongshan ¥

Budget

49 Yangzijiang Lu

Tel (0991) 4581 999

W bestay.com.cn

Small, clean rooms near the railway station and night market.

ÜRÜMQI: Bayinhe Hotel ¥¥

Boutique

71 Wenhua Lu

Tel (0991) 2219 999

Music-themed hotel with space-age showers. Great service.

Tibet**LHASA: Phuntsok Khasang International Youth Hostel ¥**

Hostel

48 Duosenge Bei Lu

Tel (0891) 6927 618

W yhachina.com

The most popular hostel in Lhasa is near the Potala Palace. Choose from dorms, singles and doubles.

LHASA: Shambhala Palace ¥¥

Boutique

16 Taibeng Gang Wengdui Xingka

Sangdong Yuan

Tel (0891) 6326 695

W shambhalaserai.com

An atmospheric hotel with traditional Tibetan decor. Great views of the city and Potala Palace.

LHASA: St Regis Lhasa ¥¥¥

Luxury

22 Jiangsu Lu

Tel (891) 6808 888

W starwoodhotels.com

Fabulous pool and spa, excellent service, and rooms with views.

SHIGATSE: Shigatse Hotel ¥¥

Business

12 Shanghai Zhong Lu

Tel (0892) 8800 336

Large hotel with clean rooms and enthusiastic staff.

WHERE TO EAT AND DRINK

Can any other nation rival China's obsession with food? Instead of "How are you?" Chinese people greet each other with *Ni chi fan le ma?* – "Have you eaten yet?" Once your travels begin, you may ask yourself a similar question – have you really eaten Chinese food before? For the Middle Kingdom serves up cuisine of such variety and delight that mealtimes there will soon dissolve the taste memories of the

pale imitations of Chinese food from back home. As you travel around the country you will enjoy a culinary journey, too. From the wheat noodles, lamb kabobs, and Peking duck of the north, venture east to taste the braised crabs and abalone of Shanghai, west to try the fiery feasts of Sichuan, and south to "dot the heart" with a thousand different Cantonese *dim sum*.



Eating together, an important part of any meal or snack

A Divine Pleasure

"Food is a divine pleasure," runs a traditional saying. China's fascination with food stems from the ancient worship of gods and spirits, when emperors were carried to temples or sacred peaks to guarantee good harvests with sacrifices of meat and rice wine. Today, any event can prompt a feast where families bond, relationships grow, disputes are resolved, and business deals are concluded. For Chinese people, food is not just a social lubricant, but the cornerstone of their culture.

A Famine Cuisine

One of China's problems has been: how can such a large population (currently a fifth of the world's people) feed itself when less than 10 percent of its land is arable? The answer lies in centuries of innovation in the fields and in the kitchen. The Chinese have developed a "famine cuisine," cherishing wild plants like bamboo shoots, lotus roots, seaweed, fungi, and moss, and utilizing

every part of domesticated or wild animals. Bustling markets, and even some mealtimes, are not for the squeamish, but the daring will learn how fish heads, pig's trotters, chicken intestine, duck webs, sea slugs, and bull's testicles can be prepared as delicacies. Imagine how many lives scorpions, fried and full of protein, could save in a famine?

The First Fast Food

Although boiling and steaming are popular, Chinese cuisine is best known for stir-frying. Meat and vegetables are cut into small pieces and fried briefly in hot oil, thus saving on fuel and equipment without sacrificing the taste. There is little saving in terms of work time, but labor is the one resource of which China has no shortage.

The Culinary Arts

According to records, China's earliest master of gastronomy, Yi Yin, cooked for the first Shang emperor way back in the 16th century BC. One cookbook from

the 6th century AD still sets the standards for today's chefs: a recipe states that roasted suckling pig should "melt in the mouth like ice." Over the centuries, countless men of letters have sung the glories of food. Song-dynasty poet Su Dongpo penned a famous ode to pork, and even today Dongpo pork remains Hangzhou's most celebrated dish.

The ancient philosophy of *yin* and *yang* – the blending of contrasts and duality of nature – applies to culinary matters in China as much as to spiritual ones. Achieving the right harmony of *yin* (soft, cold, dark, and feminine) and *yang* (strong, hot, bright, and masculine) will ensure good health, not just a good meal. Cooling *yin* foods – for example, most vegetables, crab, tofu – must complement warming *yang* – meat, chilies. Hence, in menu planning, there should be meat dishes as well as vegetable, hot and cold, sweet and sour, plain and spicy. Even meat dishes rarely contain meat alone, while the basic ingredients of stir-frying –



Scorpion kababs – cooking renders the sting ineffective



Steaming food on the street – simple, fast, and efficient

scallions and ginger – are *yin* and *yang*, as well. Additionally, a balanced diet should include appropriate proportions of both *fan* (grains) and *cai* (vegetables), and not too much meat.

You Are What You Eat

Nutritionists were attached to the Zhou court back in the 7th century BC, for the Chinese have long recognized the medicinal value of food. In the Chinese chef's repertoire there is a dish or an ingredient for every poorly organ or ailment. Some foods that are meant to boost your *qi*, such as ginseng and bird's nest soup, require a small leap of faith as to their efficacy; others, such as iron-rich duck blood, are more obvious. In some cases, as in other cultures, animal parts are believed to strengthen the human equivalent: try duck brain for increasing your intelligence, ox tongue for eloquence, and bull's testicles for greater sexual potency.

an art form with a special vocabulary and a set of rules. If *xian* (an elusive, sweet but natural freshness) captures the soul of a food, *cui* (a crisp crunchiness like the skin of perfect Peking duck) is the goal of most Chinese cooking. Trained Chinese palates distinguish five different flavors – sweet, sour, bitter, pungent, salty – and only the right combinations work. Foods rich in flavor combine well

with textured foods of little taste, such as sea cucumbers and shark's fin, which absorb and heighten the foods cooked with them.



Rice and chopsticks

Symbolism in Food

In a culture obsessed with symbolism and eating, there are many foods that have earned special meaning and are consumed on certain occasions. Round mooncakes, dotted with moon-like duck egg yolks, are a must for family reunions at the Mid-Autumn Festival. At the

Spring Festival dinner, the whole family cooks *tangyuan*, round sweet dumplings made of glutinous rice flour, because *yuan* can also mean "reunion." Fish is particularly auspicious, because the character for fish (*yu*) sounds like the one for "abundance" and offers the hope of good fortune in the year ahead. *Jiaozi* (meat dumplings) are another New Year favorite, as their shape is said to resemble the symbol for prosperity. Birthdays are often celebrated with noodles, a symbol of longevity.

Recommended Restaurants

One thing guaranteed in China is that you will never go hungry, as even the smallest village will have at least a couple of basic restaurants, while major cities are overrun – in Shanghai, for example, there are more than 20,000 restaurants, from hole-in-the-wall noodle joints to some of the most cutting-edge and expensive establishments in the world. The restaurant listings on pages 572–85 feature as wide a selection as possible, from inexpensive to upmarket. While focusing on Chinese cuisine such as traditional places serving noodles, hotpot or stew, there is also a good choice of great cafés, pizza parlors, and restaurants serving international cuisine.

Establishments highlighted as DK Choice have been selected in recognition of a special feature – this could be exceptional cuisine, a fantastic atmosphere, excellent value or a combination of these.

The Five Flavors

The Chinese are not really recipe-bound. Amid the drama of the flaming stir-fry, they seem to take a more flexible approach, finely judging the right quantity of each ingredient. Nevertheless, Chinese chefs are very particular about flavor, aroma, color, and texture. Each of these properties has been elevated to



Cooking Chinese-style – balancing colors, tastes, and textures

Types of Restaurants

Whether you are looking to eat in the splendor of an imperial pavilion in Beijing, a chic Shanghai café, or a busy Sichuan teahouse, you will find a restaurant boom taking place in China. Freed from state control, entrepreneurs are thinking up tempting new ways to indulge in the country's favorite pastime. You never have to walk far to find restaurants in China and when you do, do not let first appearances put you off – in contrast to the delicacy of the food, many gourmet restaurants boast simple decor and harsh lighting. Look instead for happy crowds of diners and a different concept of “atmosphere.” In Chinese eyes, the more lively and noisy (*renao*) a restaurant is, the better.



Typical restaurant – busy and noisy with a utilitarian decor

Open All Hours

Early to bed, early to rise was the pattern of Chinese lives until the 1990s, leaving some foreign visitors caught out when planning mealtimes. While Chinese stomachs still demand food earlier than their Western counterparts, social and professional hours are diversifying. You can breakfast on the street by 6am, but all hotels should serve breakfast until 10am or later. Lunch is typically from 11:30am until 2:30pm, after which some restaurants shut until the evening shift starts around 5pm. In the evening closing times can be very late, while some places never shut. Booking is rare except for the most popular and high-end establishments. Usually you can simply turn up; if the restaurant is full, you may have to wait until a table comes free or have a drink at the bar. Sometimes the owner will come to your rescue by setting up a makeshift table in the corner, or even out in the backyard.

Hotel Food

If you are tired and hungry, and staying at one of China's more expensive hotels, then room service can provide comfort with imitations of Western food. But try to make it downstairs, as most hotels offer a range of cuisines within the premises.

In the main cities, some of the best restaurants are located in hotels, and you can sample some excellent upscale Chinese cuisine. Contrary to opinion, hotel restaurants do not always serve overpriced, deliberately bland Chinese food to appease foreign palates. However, home to one of the world's top cuisines, China has a lot to offer. The more intrepid diner who makes a few forays outside the comfort of four-star hotel restaurants will be sure to reap handsome dividends.

Street Food

As China smartened up for the Olympics and the World Expo, street vendors must sometimes play hide-and-seek with the authorities. Yet their portable stalls form a vital part of the everyday life of China, selling cheap and popular foods such as breakfasts of dough sticks (*youtiao*) and beancurd (*doujiang*), or snacks like scallion pancakes (*jianbing*), sweet potatoes (*shanyu*) roasted in old oil drums, deep-fried beancurd cubes (*zhadoufu*), and local fruits.

A reliable way to locate delicious street food is to stroll through a night market (*yeshi*), a culinary and visual feast where clouds of steam escape from bamboo steamers and the sky glows red from the flames of oil drum stoves. The sizzle of cooking and clamor of vendors shouting for business should stir your appetite and if deep-fried scorpions or cicadas on skewers prove too exotic, be assured that plenty of other foods will take your fancy. If the food is hot and freshly cooked for you, hygiene problems are rare. The market off Wanfujing Dajie (see p100), in Beijing, is the most famous, but track down night markets wherever you go, to enjoy the local delicacies and specialties.



Dunhuang night market – food stalls for shoppers buying spices, silks, and carpets



Stall-holder making some *xiaochi* or "little eats" in Dalian

Little Eats

Cheap and nourishing snacks such as those found at night markets are known collectively as *xiaochi*, or "little eats." Restaurants that specialize in them are called *xiaochidian*; they sell different types of noodles or dumplings, stuffed buns or pancakes. Open early for breakfast, they may serve simple stir-fried dishes too, and shut only when the last guest leaves. The setting is usually basic, but the food is hearty, tasty, and very reasonably priced. Every city has its own local varieties, but the ultimate "little eats" are the *dim sum* of Cantonese cooking (see p288).

Fast Food

The popularity of fast food giants McDonald's, Pizza Hut, and KFC, now found in all cities, has spurred Chinese firms to compete. Yonghe King is an impressive Taiwanese chain serving up all-day breakfasts of soya bean milk, *congee* (a savory rice porridge), and spring onion pancakes, while 85°C is a rapidly expanding coffee, cake, and bread chain. If the street stalls are a little too basic, food courts in department stores or malls are worth exploring and are clean and usually air-conditioned.

Themed Restaurants

As urban tastes grow ever more sophisticated, restaurateurs race to catch up, opening restaurants with a special theme, cuisine, or setting, like a train carriage or mock prison. The character of these places is often nostalgic, such as the old Beijing style (Lao Beijing), where each guest is loudly greeted, and staff in pre-Revolution uniforms clatter the teacups in welcome on your table. The walls of Cultural Revolution restaurants are covered with bitter-sweet memorabilia of that era, while many Sichuan eateries have concentrated on rustic decor to increase the appeal.

The Other China

There is not only a wide spread of regional cuisines across Han China, but also a whole range of ethnic specialties offered by

the many minority nationalities from the Korean border to the Tibetan plateau.

The minorities' restaurants are an "exotic" attraction for Chinese as well as foreign tourists.

In Dai restaurants, offering the Thai-like cuisine of southern Yunnan, guests are

greeted with scented water, given a lucky charm, and later invited to join in the singing and dancing. In Uighur restaurants, serving food from the Muslim northwest, belly dancing is sometimes on show.



Pretty colored dumplings

Vegetarian Surprise

The Chinese understanding of a good life is inextricably associated with meat. They find it hard to understand why someone who could afford to eat meat would choose not to. Nevertheless, you will find a few vegetarian restaurants in big cities, often attached to Buddhist temples, serving excellent vegetarian dishes to worshippers and non-worshippers alike. Many of these have meaty names, and are made in exact imitation of their meat-filled namesakes. Ordinary restaurants can lay on good vegetarian meals too, as long as you can repeat: "*Wo chi su*", ("I eat vegetables") a few times and don't mind the odd bit of meat or chicken stock turning up in your bowl every now and then.

Foreign Food

Western restaurants, now found in all major cities, typically offer Indian, Thai, Italian, and French, or a fusion of international food. Some have justifiably earned wide acclaim, such as Maison Boulud in Beijing, and M on the Bund in Shanghai.

In smaller cities, western restaurants are harder to find, although Italian cuisine is the most common – ravioli and spaghetti are easy concepts for the dumpling- and noodle-loving Chinese to appreciate. Other Asian cuisines, namely Korean, Japanese, and Thai, are also well represented, and more readily accepted.



Uighur bread stall in the market at Linxia, Gansu

Food Customs and Etiquette

Confucius was renowned for his silence at meals. The good news, however, is that 2,500 years later, the Chinese are actually quite informal at meal times. In fact, a busy Chinese restaurant can be a deafening place as waiters crash plates about and diners shout orders at the waiters. It may seem daunting but just join in and expect praise for your chopstick skills – even if you struggle, your willingness to try will be appreciated.



Business dinner in a private room, still an enjoyable event

Earning Some Face

The Chinese do not expect visitors to be fully versed in proper banquet etiquette, but awareness of a few essentials can earn “face” both for yourself and your host, whatever the occasion. The other guests will appreciate that you have some respect for Chinese culture and traditions.

When attending, or hosting, a formal meal, note that the guest of honor is usually placed on the seat in the middle, facing the door. The host, traditionally positioned opposite the guest, now more often sits to his or her left.

If you come as a guest, be punctual and do not sit down until you are given your seat – seating arrangements can be very formal and based on rank.

Once seated, do not start on the food or drink before your host gives the signal. Some of the delicacies on offer may test your courage; be gracious and try everything, it is an insult if the food is untouched; but leave some food on the plates. Empty bowls imply that the host is too poor or mean to lay on a good spread.

The Art of Ordering

If you are someone’s guest, you may be asked to order something, or state some sort of preference – if you do not do so, a ten-course banquet could soon appear. Feel free to name your favorite dish, or point at the object of your desire, often swimming in a fish tank at the entrance to the restaurant. Freshness is all important in Chinese cuisine.

English-language menus are becoming more common, and an increasing number of restaurants actively encourage visitors to get out of their chairs and choose ingredients from

tanks, cages, and supermarket-type shelves. Your Chinese friends (and waiters and onlookers) will likely be delighted by any interest you show in the whole experience. In the end, when language or phrase book fail, point at whatever appeals on other tables, or even head into the kitchen to find what you need.

A meal might begin with cold starters such as pickled vegetables, ten-thousand-year old eggs, seasoned jellyfish, or cold roasted meats.

When selecting main courses, remember to aim for harmony and balance – an equilibrium of *yin* and *yang*. For example, with sweet and sour pork, you might order a spicy chicken dish. Different cooking methods are also important: a steamed fish or roast pork add variety to a series of stir-fried foods. You shouldn’t need to ask for a side order of vegetables as they are usually part of the dishes – unless you want something specific.

The last dish, or *cai*, is usually soup. Then comes *fan*, a grain staple such as rice, noodles, or bread (*mantou*), without which a Chinese diner may feel they have not eaten. At informal meals you can have rice at the start of the meal, but not at a banquet, or your host will assume his dishes are inadequate.

Desserts are not a Chinese tradition, but fresh fruit is almost always served in Chinese restaurants, especially at banquets, and succulent fruit is available nationwide.



Filling up on rice at an informal meal in a market, Dali

Invited to Dinner

A formal meal often takes place in a private room and usually begins with a toast. The host serves his guest with the choicest morsels, and then everyone is permitted to help themselves. Serving chopsticks or spoons may be provided; if not, simply use your own pair.

Confucius said that it was uncivilized to have knives on the table, but if you are really struggling, most restaurants will readily provide you with knives and forks.

The host almost always orders more dishes than necessary. While it is polite to try everything, don't feel it is necessary to finish it all.

Good Neighbors

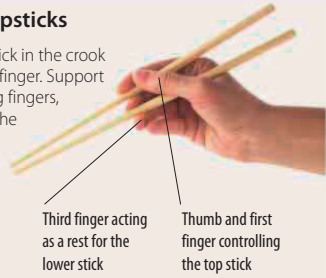
It is courteous to keep your neighbors' tea cups filled. To thank an attentive neighbor, tap your first two fingers together on the table. This tradition dates back to the Qing Qianlong emperor, who liked to tour the country in disguise. Once, at a teahouse, he took his turn to pour the tea. His companions, who should have been pressing their foreheads to the floor, maintained his disguise by tapping their fingers in a mini-kowtow. If you don't want your cup refilled, don't empty it.

Dos and Don'ts

The Chinese are fairly relaxed about table manners. Slurping shows appreciation, enables better appreciation of flavor, and sucks in air to prevent burning the mouth. Holding your bowl up to your mouth, to shovel rice in, is another practical solution. You may happily reach across your neighbors, but do not spear food with your chopsticks, and do not stand them upright in a bowl of rice either, as it looks like an offering to the dead. If you have finished with the chopsticks lay them flat on the table or on a rest. You shouldn't

How to Hold Chopsticks

1) Place the first chopstick in the crook of your thumb and forefinger. Support it with the little and ring fingers, and keep it there with the knuckle of the thumb.
2) Hold the second chopstick like a pencil, between middle and index fingers, anchored by the pad of your thumb.
3) When picking up food, keep the lower stick stationary and the tips even. As the index finger moves up and down, only the upper stick should move, using the thumb as an axis.



suck greasy fingers, or use them to pick bones out of your mouth – spit bones or shell onto the table, into the saucer

that was under your bowl, or into a napkin.



Crabs – difficult to eat with chopsticks

Toothpicks are ubiquitous, but do cover the action with your free hand. And

don't be shy about shouting for attention. Eating

alone is very strange to the Chinese way of thinking. Eating in a group – sharing the dishes and the experience – greatly increases the enjoyment.

The End of the Meal

A platter of fresh fruit and steaming hot towels signal the end of the meal is coming. Just as you should await the start of a meal, do not stand up

before your host, who will rise and indicate that the dinner has ended and ask if you've had enough. The answer is "yes."

The person who invited you usually shoulders the full weight of the bill, so accept graciously. Offering to pay is fine, even polite; insisting too hard suggests that you doubt the host's ability to pay.

The capitalist habit of tipping was wiped out after Mao's Communist Party took over. Politically acceptable today, it is still rare, as is "going Dutch."

Prices are fixed and written down in most restaurants, and on bills, although there is the occasional story of restaurants overcharging foreigners.

There is no service charge except in the more upmarket and expensive restaurants, which are also the only places likely to accept international credit cards.

The Business of Banquets

The business banquet is the apex of the Chinese dining experience, and almost all significant deals are clinched at the banquet table. In addition to the above, further rules apply: arrive 15 minutes early; if you are applauded as you come into the room, applaud back; reply to the welcome toast with your own short speech and toast; avoid sensitive subjects; show respect to your elders and superiors by ensuring that the rim of your glass is lower than theirs when clinking glasses and drain your drink in one swift movement.



An old lady demonstrates the perfect noodle technique

What to Drink

Tea, of course is the most popular drink in China. There are countless arguments for drinking the infusion of the bush *Camellia sinensis*, and just as many legends about its origin (see p299). While tea is the most popular drink, there is a wide range of others for the visitor. Beer is popular with meals but wine is also drunk in many upmarket restaurants. Chinese spirits can range from the extremely pleasant to the almost dangerous. Likewise approach the "health tonics" like snake wine with caution – as if the reptilian "sediment" in the bottle isn't enough, they can be fiercely alcoholic.



Tea plantation in the Fujian hills, South China

Types of Tea

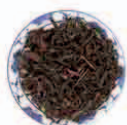
Green is the most common tea, baked immediately after picking. Flower tea is a mixture of green tea with flower petals. Black tea colors during the fermentation process and the reddish brew that results explains its Chinese name – red tea. The most highly prized is oolong, a lightly fermented tea. Brick tea is black or green, pressed into blocks. Eight Treasure tea babaocha has many ingredients including dates, dried longan, and wolfberry, and Tibetans enjoy yak butter tea.



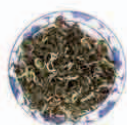
Lid keeps leaves in the cup, not the mouth

Gaiwan or three-piece tea cup

Saucer to prevent fingers burning



Black: *hongcha*, actually called "red tea" in Chinese.



Green: *lucha*, uses leaves dried without fermentation.



Pu'er: from Yunnan, is compressed into "bricks."



Flower: *huacha* a mix of petals – jasmine, rose, and chrysanthemum.



The famous "Hairy Peak" green tea



Coffee

As café culture

enters China, coffee drinking is becoming fashionable among the middle classes. A Starbucks can be found on practically every main street and in every mall in China.



Tea and Coffee drink

Those who want a fashionable coffee drink, but cannot do without their daily shot of tea, can try this blend of tea and coffee.

Soft Drinks

Even as a cold drink tea is dominant. Iced tea is very popular, especially with the young. Besides the usual array of fruit juices, there is pomegranate juice in Xinjiang, hawthorn juice in Beijing, and lychee and sugar cane juice down south. As well as the global drink brands there are local challengers like Tianfu Cola, and the energy drink Jianlibao, made with honey. As China overcomes its dairy aversion, milk and yoghurt drinks multiply, as well as soyabean (*doujiang*) and Hainan's famous coconut milk.



Bamboo cane juice



Iced green tea



Coconut milk drink



Tsingtao beer



Yanjing beer

Beer

Europeans first introduced beer to China in the early 20th century; in the 21st, China has taken over as the world's biggest brewer, so you are never far from a very acceptable light lager, and even a darker brew. Each city usually has its own local brewery.

Wine

Although grape seeds traveled the Silk Roads, China has historically preferred grain alcohol. The quality is rapidly improving, and red wine is almost exclusively consumed – it is considered good for the heart, and a lucky color too.



Great Wall



Dragon Seal

Spirits

For millennia the Chinese have been distilling grains into *baijiu* or “white spirits” ranging from strong to deadly. Classified into three types: the *qingxiang*, or light bouquet, group includes Fenjiu from Shanxi; Guizhou's famous Maotai is a classic *jiangxiang*, soy bouquet, while *nongxiang*, strong bouquet, is championed by Sichuan giant Wuliangye.

Maotai “eight times fermented and seven times distilled” is favored for toasts at banquets. At the other end of the scale *erguotou* is cheap and effective – the people's drink.



Maotai



Erguotou

Rice Wine

Despite being called “wine,” some care is required as this can vary in strength from a mild 15–16 % alcohol, to the double- or triple-fermented wines at up to 38 % ABV. Good rice wine is best drunk warm and goes well with cold starters.



Shaoxing rice wine

Shaoxing: This is among the best of the *huangjiu* (yellow spirits), noted for its moderate alcohol content (about 16%) and mellow fragrance.



Strong rice wine

Drinking Culture

Teahouses are enjoying a bit of a revival in China, as appreciation of tea culture recovers after years of proletarian austerity. While *cha* (tea) stimulates quiet contemplation, *jiu* (alcohol) lubricates noisy celebrations. Despite reveling in the drunkenness of their poets such as Li Bai (see p34), the Chinese have not been as badly affected by alcoholism as many other societies. Public drunkenness is frowned upon – except maybe in the ever more popular karaoke bars. Traditionally only soup was drunk with meals, but this is changing, especially when eating with foreigners. “*Gan bei!*” or “dry the cup” is the clarion call to toasting bouts and drinking games. Beware the legendary capacity of the northeast Chinese, and don't drink alone or on an empty stomach.



The Jazz Club, Hong Kong – typical of the thriving big city bar scene

Where to Eat and Drink

Beijing

A Thousand and One Nights ¥

Middle Eastern

3-4 Gongti Bei Lu

Tel (010) 6532 4050

Authentic Arabian cuisine, along with hookahs, belly dancing, and other Middle Eastern-flavored entertainment. The kabobs are delicious, as is the hummus. A few Syrian dishes are also available.

Biteapitta ¥

Middle Eastern

201 Tongli Studio, 43 Sanlitun North, Sanlitun Houjie

Tel (010) 6467 2961

Enjoy hummus, tasty pita sandwiches, and other Middle Eastern fare in this bright restaurant, a perfect pit stop before heading on to the bars.

Crescent Moon Xinjiang ¥

Restaurant

Map 2 E4

16 Dongsì Liutiao, 100 yards west

of Chaoneì Beixiaojie

Tel (010) 6400 5281

Possibly the best Xinjiang restaurant in town, thanks to its chunky lamb kabobs, and hearty chicken and potato stews served with nan bread and home-made yoghurt to cool down the heat.

Crystal Jade ¥

Regional

404, 4/F, Bldg A, The Place,

9 Guanghua Lu

Tel (010) 6587 1228

Order fabulous *dim sum* at this famous Asian chain that also offers traditional dishes such as BBQ pork ribs. A value-for-money restaurant despite the regal decor and formal service.

Donghuamen Night Market ¥

Street Food

Map 2 D5

Donghuamen Da Jie

A fun market popular with tourists that sells snacks from all over China – from the ordinary (dumplings and chicken skewers) to the bizarre (bugs on a stick).

Element Fresh ¥

International

Map 2 F4

S8-31, Sanlitun Village South,

19 Sanlitun Nan Lu

Tel (010) 6417 1318

Fast service, great coffee, and inexpensive Western classics make this bright and sleek spot busy from breakfast time till the evening. The fresh and healthy salads are a must-order.

Han Ceng ¥

Regional

Shichahai Dongan, Houhai

Tel (010) 6404 2259

A rustic and attractive venue that serves food from the Hakka ethnic minority that has settled in Southern China. The tasty, hearty specialties, such as salt-baked prawns on a stick, are very popular.

Huajia Yiyuan ¥

Regional

235 Dongzhimen Nei Dajie

Tel (010) 6405 1908

This is a great destination for a fun *renao* (literally, "heat and noise") experience, as well as for the opportunity to sample the city's staple dishes. Peking duck is a good choice, as is the spicy crayfish. Live Chinese opera and magic shows are often performed.

Let's Burger ¥

American

B1/F, Sanlitun Village North,

Sanlitun Lu

Tel (010) 6415 2772

Enjoy fabulous, innovative burgers and milkshakes in a playful and stylish setting at Let's Burger. There is an impressive array of delicious condiments including blue cheese sauce.

Middle 8th ¥

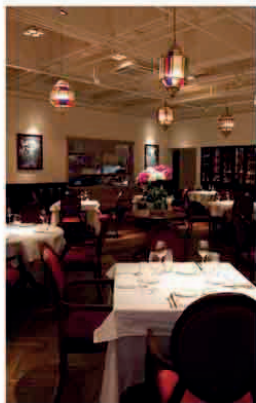
Regional

S8-40, Bldg 8, Sanlitun Village South,

Sanlitun Nan Lu

Tel (010) 6415 8858

Fresh and spicy Yunnanese cuisine in a fun and lively setting. Famous for its mushroom dishes, the mushrooms and ribs wrapped in leaves are a must-try.



Warm lighting in the elegant dining area at Agua, in Beijing

Price Guide

Prices are the equivalent of a meal for two made up of a range of dishes, served with tea, and including service charges.

¥	under ¥200
¥¥	¥200 to ¥500
¥¥¥	over ¥500

Saveurs de Corée ¥

Korean

Map 2 D3

Xiang Er Hutong, Jiaodaokou

Tel (010) 5741 5753

Delicious MSG-free food in a charming setting. There is an à la carte list, as well as two popular set menus that allow guests to sample the restaurant's signature dishes.

The Veggie Table ¥

Fusion

Map 2 D2

19 Wudaoying Hutong

Tel (010) 6446 2073

Closed Tue

Vegan and organic food on a menu that spans the world – the Indian *dal* (lentil) dishes and Middle Eastern favorites such as hummus are big hits. Lively atmosphere.

Vineyard Café ¥

Café

Map 2 D2

Wudaoying Hutong, off

Yonghegong Dajie

Tel (010) 6402 7961

Closed Mon

This converted courtyard spot is a great place to refuel on Western staples. The coffee is good, as is the comforting macaroni and cheese.

Agua ¥¥

Spanish

4/F, Nali Patio, 81 Sanlitun Beilu

Tel (010) 5208 6188

Spanish chef Jordi Valles excels at this fine-dining establishment, a branch of the Hong Kong restaurant. The suckling pig is sublime, as is the seafood.

DK Choice

Dali Courtyard ¥¥

Regional

Map 2 D3

67 Xiaojingchang Hutong,

Gulou Dong Dajie

Tel (010) 8404 1430

Easily one of the most beautiful courtyard restaurants in Beijing, this lovely, laid-back venue serves up unusual spicy dishes from the Yunnan province. The fixed-price menu does not offer much choice, but there is a separate vegetarian menu. Be sure to try the delectable Yunnan goat's cheese and cured ham, if available.

Da Dong Regional ¥¥

Bldg 3, Tuanjiehu Beikou

Tel (010) 6582 2892

Da Dong is rightly famous for its Peking roast duck, but all the dishes are good, innovative, and worth a try. Great quality and reasonable prices. Book ahead.

Duck de Chine ¥¥

4 Gongti Bei Lu

Tel (010) 6501 8881

Duck de Chine is a stylish venue attracting an arty crowd. The classic duck dish, served with non-traditional sides with a French twist, is a specialty.

Hatsune Japanese Map 2 F4 ¥¥

S8-30, 3/F, Sanlitun Village South, 19 Sanlitun Lu

Tel (010) 6415 3939

A long-standing favorite for its unbeatable fresh sushi, this restaurant offers its own unusual take on classic dishes.

Huang Ting Regional Map 2 E5 ¥¥

B2 Peninsula Palace Hotel, 8 Jinyu Hutong

Tel (010) 8516 2888, ext 6707

Outstanding *dim sum* and classic regional dishes served by two chefs from Hong Kong. The interior, with its aged pine floor, wooden screens, and heavy studded door, re-creates a traditional *hutong* (alleyway).

Karaiya Spice House Regional ¥¥

3/F, Bldg 8, The Village at Sanlitun, 19 Sanlitun Lu

Tel (010) 6415 3535

Come to Karaiya for spicy Hunan fare tempered to the Western palate. Classic dishes are ribs covered with spicy peanuts, and steamed Mandarin fish.

Made in China Regional ¥¥

Grand Hyatt, 1 Chang'an Dong Jie

Tel (010) 8518 1234, ext 3608

This sophisticated and much-loved venue brings a modern sensibility to Chinese dining. The Peking duck is the star attraction, plus there is a superb wine list.

Capital M International Map 3 C2 ¥¥¥

3/F, 2 Qianmen Pedestrian St

Tel (010) 6702 2727

A wonderful place for a cocktail, a special dinner, or even Sunday brunch while soaking up the views of Tian'an Men Square.



Minimalist decor at Temple Restaurant Beijing

The most celebrated dishes are the crispy suckling pig and the slowly baked, salt-encased leg of lamb.

Maison Boulud French Map 4 D2 ¥¥¥

23 Qianmen Dong Dajie

Tel (010) 6559 9200

Renowned chef Daniel Boulud's Beijing outpost is located in a swanky setting near Tian'an Men Square. It is seriously stylish and expensive, but the dishes, which include a decadent black cod braised in truffle, are worth it.

DK Choice

Temple Restaurant Beijing ¥¥¥

International

23 Shatan Houjie

Tel (010) 8400 2232 Closed Sun

This restaurant is located in a building within the walls of a 600-year-old temple complex most recently used as a factory producing TVs. All of the dishes are good, though the classic Chinese cuisine – try the veal chop and sweet-and-sour carrot *purée* – is exceptional. The wine list is considered Beijing's best. Diners can order from both *à la carte* and set menus. A memorable dining experience.

The CourtYard Fusion Map 2 F5 ¥¥¥

95 Donghuamen Dajie

Tel (010) 6526 8883

The CourtYard has kept up with newer venues thanks to its good fusion food, served in a modern setting that makes full use of its location close to the Forbidden City. Ask for a table that overlooks the moat and order grilled fillet of black cod followed by spiced apple.

Hebei, Tianjin & Shanxi

BEIDAIHE: Kiessling's Restaurant ¥

Austrian

96 Dongjing Lu

Tel (0335) 4044 284

A decades-old restaurant serving traditional Austrian fare not far from the beaches of the seaside resort of Beidaihe.

CHENGDE: Da Qing Hua Regional ¥

19 Lizheng Lu

Tel (0314) 2036 111

Open all hours, this affordable local chain specializes in noodles and dumplings – those stuffed with venison and carrot are a regional specialty.

CHENGDE: Milan Restaurant ¥

Italian

9 Wulie Lu

Tel (0314) 2665 939

A popular and cheerful place that serves good, authentic pizzas, and Italian wine.

CHENGDE: Qianlong Dajudian Regional ¥

Xinhua Lu

Tel (0314) 2072 2222 Closed Chinese New Year

This popular hangout has a range of local favorites, such as venison – either served with ginger or as a stuffing in dumplings. The staff speak only Chinese, so make use of the picture menus available.

DATONG: Lin Lao Lao Regional ¥

9 Xinkai Nan Lu

Tel (0352) 2025 266

Head to Lin Lao Lao for the most famous Shanxi dish of all – *guo you rou*, or oil-rinsed pork. A simple place offering good food.

DATONG: Tonghe Dafandian ¥
Regional

11 Zhanqian Jie

Tel (0352) 7166 944

Adjacent to the Hongqi Hotel, this is easily the best choice in town for inexpensive spicy Sichuanese and Hunanese cuisine. The Shanxi fried noodles are not to be missed.

PINGYAO: Pingyao Qin Ge Da Quo Zai ¥

Hotpot

Beiguan Dajie

This national chain of hotpot restaurants originated right here in Pingyao. Diners can order from around 15 hearty varieties that include all the meat, veggies and noodles one can eat.

PINGYAO: San Ge Da ¥
Regional

Cheng Huang Miao Jie, near the City God Temple

A simple family-run place offering great *mao er duo*, or cat's ears pasta, a famous Shanxi dish.

TAIYUAN: Taiyuan Mianshiguan ¥

Regional

17 Jiefang Lu

Tel (0351) 2022 230

This unassuming restaurant serves inexpensive classics such as *guo you rou*, succulent pork that is first boiled and then fried.

TIANJIN: South Beauty ¥
Regional

1 Youyi Lu

Tel (022) 2325 9327

A wide range of spicy Sichuanese dishes are on offer here. The stone-grilled beef is considered a classic. Great atmosphere and friendly service.

DK Choice**TIANJIN: Goubuli Baozi** ¥

Snacks

77 Shandong Jie

Tel (022) 2730 2540

This is the original venue of the Goubuli Baozi chain, where their renowned steamed-pork buns were first served over 150 years ago. Customers flock to this inexpensive, no-frills joint to feast on delicious, moreish snacks. Try the meatball dumplings and wash them down with one of the specialty teas.

TIANJIN: Yuanman Vegetarian Restaurant ¥
Vegetarian

12 Suzhou Dao

Tel (022) 2302 2618

Popular venue that serves both traditional and contemporary Chinese food prepared using only vegetarian ingredients.

Shandong & Henan**JINAN: Chongqing XiaoTian** ¥
Hotpot

162 YingXiong Shan Lu

Tel (0531) 8298 1688

Savor steaming bowls of broth and a variety of thinly sliced meats and vegetables, as well as noodles – tasty, warm, and filling.

JINAN: Yuchi Palace Restaurant ¥
Seafood

6 Luyou Lu

Tel (0531) 8238 6666

The main ingredient for your dish can be seen swimming in tanks and is caught only after an order is placed. Popular with locals.

JINAN: Biscotti Italian Restaurant ¥¥
Italian

Sofitel Jinan Silver Plaza,

No. 66 Luoyuan Avenue

Tel (0531) 8981 6288

Come here for Italian classics and friendly service. The fixed-price lunch menu offers dishes such as open ravioli with mushrooms.

LUOYANG: Lao Luoyang Mianguan ¥

Snacks

Qiyi Lu

Tel (0379) 6322 6636

This popular pit stop serves hearty helpings of fried noodles, such as *zha jiang mian* (fried pork noodles in a soy-bean paste sauce).

LUOYANG: Zhen Bu Tong ¥
Regional

69 Zhong Zhou Dong Lu

Tel (0379) 6395 2609

Staff dress in period costume at this historic restaurant serving popular renditions of local dishes, such as meatballs decorated with peony flowers.

QINGDAO: Din Tai Fung ¥
Taiwanese

6 Aomen Rd, Shinan District

Tel (0532) 6606 1309

Part of an international chain, Din Tai Fung offers delicious Taiwanese dumplings, including the famous *xiaolongbao* (steamed bun).

QINGDAO: Harbor Seafood Restaurant ¥
Seafood

220–308 Guo Dao

Tel (0532) 8098 8888

Take advantage of this restaurant's harborside location and enjoy the freshest seafood dishes. There is also a popular *dim sum* brunch on Sundays.

QINGDAO: Ristorante San Marco Italiano Doc ¥
Italian

2F Haiqing Hotel, No. 11A Middle

Donghai Rd, Shinan District

Tel (0532) 8589 0526

The Neapolitan chef creates excellent pizzas, along with more elaborate dishes. There is also a good wine list.

QINGDAO: Zur Bierstube ¥
German

1–A2–1, 10 YunLing Rd

Tel (0532) 8889 7600

Guests here feel like they have been transported to Bavaria thanks to the delicious, hearty pork knuckles and several kinds of German beer.



The elegant and well-located Harbor Seafood Restaurant in Qingdao



Opulent furnishings at the renowned Shang Palace, Qingdao

DK Choice

QINGDAO: Shang Palace ¥¥

Regional

1st Floor, Shangri-La Hotel,
9 Xiang Gang Zhong Lu

Tel (0532) 8388 3838

A glamorous, upscale establishment located in one of Qingdao's finest hotels, Shang Palace serves beautifully prepared classic regional fare such as *char siu pork* (BBQ pork). However, the chef is not afraid to innovate and the menu also features braised pork ribs with pine nuts in red wine. The staff are dressed in traditional attire.

Shaanxi

Xi'an: Defachang Restaurant ¥

Snacks

Anban Jie

Tel (029) 8727 3853

One of Xi'an's most famous restaurants. Diners have a choice of 100 different items that can be ordered from a picture menu.

Xi'an: Delhi Darbar Xi'an ¥

Indian

3 Datang Tongyifang, Yanta Xilu

Guests looking to get a break from local cuisine should come to this long-standing Indian restaurant that serves good curries and naan bread. Frequented by expats.

Xi'an: First Noodle Under the Sun ¥

Snacks

Hanguang Nan Lu

Tel (029) 8728 6088

This vibrant restaurant specializing in noodles is located near Xi'an's famous Great Goose Pagoda, and it is popular with both tourists and locals.

Xi'an: Huimin Jie ¥

Snacks

Huimin Jie

Xi'an's Muslim Street is a lively destination thanks to its bustling market stalls and street vendors selling *roujiamo* (Chinese burgers in pita bread) and a variety of other snacks.

Xi'an: Tang Dynasty Music and Dance Show ¥

Regional

165 Wenyi Lu

Tel (029) 8822 1873

This is a great place for visitors to enjoy good food while watching the cultural performances held every night.

DK Choice

Xi'an: Tong Sheng Xiang Restaurant ¥

Regional

Bell & Drum Tower Square

Tel (029) 8721 8711

Simple and unassuming, but a great local favorite for its outstanding *yangrou pao mo*. This well-seasoned and hearty lamb soup, served in a bowl with crumbled unleavened bread, has been consistently warming hearts in the area for over a century now. Definitely worth trying.

Shanghai

1931 ¥

Regional

112 Maoming Nan Lu, near Nanchang Lu

Tel (021) 6472 5264

Closed Mon

The romantic and traditional Art Deco ambience at 1931 draws diners in to enjoy standard renditions of reasonably priced local favorites.

Blue Frog Bar & Grill ¥

American

131 Tianyueqiao Lu

Tel (021) 3368 6117

This well-run bar and restaurant serves classic American fare. The burgers are a specialty, and there is a happy hour every day with half-price drinks and food.

Bohemia Cafe and Bar ¥

Café

42, Lane 248 Taikang Lu

Tel (021) 6415 0065

Located on a trendy, pedestrianized street, this popular, cozy café has both indoor and outdoor seating. Order coffee and a panini and watch the world go by.

Brasa Chicken International ¥

Rm 770, 3 Xikang Lu

Tel (021) 6466 6384

A no-frills, laid-back kind of place, where the menu is distinctly meat-oriented. One of the highlights is the delicious Peruvian-style rotisserie-cooked chicken. Food to take away is also available.

Crystal Jade ¥

Dim Sum

Xintiandi, South Block Plaza, 2/F,

123 Xingye Lu

Tel (021) 6385 8752

Hungry diners will find high-quality Cantonese *dim sum* at this well-known chain, which has several branches in the city. The *xiaolongbao* (steamed bun) dumplings vie with the prawn noodles for the best item on the menu.

Din Tai Fung ¥

Taiwanese

2/F House 6, South Block, Xintiandi, Lane 123, Xinye Lu

Tel (021) 6385 8378

Din Tai Fung is a Taiwanese chain that serves unforgettable *xiaolongbao* (steamed bun) dumplings and other tasty steamed snacks. There is a children's play area, and the staff are friendly and helpful.

Element Fresh ¥

International

Unit 2, 2nd Floor, Headquarters

Building, 168 Xizang Zhong Lu

Tel (021) 6361 6556

This casual place is one of several branches across Shanghai. It serves good Western options, such as salads, sandwiches, and pasta dishes. It is particularly popular for weekend brunch, when it gets quite crowded.

Farine ¥ Café <i>1 F, Ferguson Lane, 378 Wukang Lu, Xuhui district</i> Tel (021) 6433 5798 Closed Mon This café/boulangerie is a great place to try artisanal breads and pastries. Discerning customers flock here to buy loaves and enjoy a <i>croque monsieur</i> (grilled ham and cheese sandwich).	Matto ¥ Italian <i>Superbrand Mall, 186 Lujiazui Xi Lu</i> Tel (021) 5081 0966 Top-class bar and pizzeria with a relaxed, rustic ambience. The oven was imported from Italy, which makes the pizza as authentic as it gets in Shanghai.	Haiku by Hatsune ¥¥ Japanese <i>28 Taojiao Lu</i> Tel (021) 6445 0021 A slick and stylish restaurant, and sushi bar. The cream cheese and Peking duck fillings may be unusual, but they are fun and delicious all the same. Prior booking recommended.
Hang Yuen Hin ¥ Dim Sum <i>290–292 Wanping Lu</i> Tel (021) 6472 9778 In a verdant park setting, this is one of Shanghai's best <i>dim sum</i> restaurants. It serves tasty crab dishes and egg tarts, and offers a 50 percent lunch discount on <i>dim sum</i> most weekends.	Red Door ¥ Regional <i>337 Aomen Lu</i> Tel (021) 6299 8766 A casual restaurant serving up delicious Shanghaiese staples, such as soup-based noodles and lion's head meatballs. The wontons often sell out, as they are popular and inexpensive.	Mercato ¥¥ Italian <i>6th Floor, Three on the Bund</i> Tel (021) 6321 9922 Excellent-value Italian food from chef Jean-Georges Vongerichten. The Pizza Lounge is a major attraction here, as is the Mercato Bar, which features a completely original selection of cocktails. Fabulous service.
Hunan Fengwei Xiaochi ¥ Regional <i>1233 Beijing Xi Lu</i> Tel (021) 6279 4513 This is the place for a spicy feast of homely Hunan cuisine. There is no menu, so overcome the language barrier by pointing at what other diners are enjoying.	Whisk Choco Cafe ¥ Café <i>1250 Huaihai Zhong Lu, near Changshu Lu</i> Tel (021) 5404 7770 This stylish venue is a chocoholic's dream. From an espresso with just the perfect mix of hot chocolate to the double-chocolate cupcakes, everything here hits the spot.	Tsukiji Aoasora Sandaime ¥¥ Japanese <i>191 Changle Lu</i> Tel (021) 5466 1817 Closed Sun Authentic Japanese cuisine, including delicious sushi, is served here, the sister restaurant of a famous Tokyo establishment. For a selection of the best dishes, order the sushi sets; otherwise, try the outstanding tuna nigiri.
Jia Jia Tang Bao ¥ Regional <i>90 Huanghe Lu, near Fengyang Lu</i> Tel (021) 6327 6878 One of the top contenders for Shanghai's best <i>xiaolongbao</i> dumplings – called <i>tang bao</i> , or pork soup dumplings, here. Payment is expected upfront at this popular place.	Yuan Yuan ¥ Regional <i>4/F, Westgate Mall, 1038 Nanjing Xi Lu</i> Tel (021) 6272 6972 The efficient staff at this Shanghaiese restaurant serve flavorful dishes in a simple setting. It is hugely popular so book ahead.	Xi Na ¥¥ Regional <i>373 Huangpi Nan Lu</i> Tel (021) 6386 2898 Tasty Hunan food in an elegant villa near Xintiandi. Order the cooled chicken with spicy chillies, and sweet and crispy smoked fish from the picture-heavy menu. A refreshing change from Shanghaiese flavors.
Kota's Kitchen ¥ Japanese <i>1333 Huaihai Zhong Lu</i> Tel (021) 6252 1717 This Beatles-themed restaurant with a couple of branches in the city sees long lines of diners eager for its <i>yakitori</i> (skewered chicken) and pork ramen.	Elefante ¥¥ Spanish <i>20 Donghu Lu, near Huaihai Zhong Lu</i> Tel (021) 5404 8085 Closed Mon The extensive menu at Spanish chef El Willy's sleek and stylish restaurant could make choosing a difficult proposition. Highlights include a wide-ranging cheese platter. There is also a deli.	Ye Shanghai ¥¥ Regional <i>338 Huang Pi Nan Rd, Xintiandi</i> Tel (021) 5878 5660 This upscale and appealingly decorated restaurant serves distinctive interpretations of classic Shanghaiese dishes, as well as food from the nearby provinces of Zhejiang and Jiangsu. The restaurant also has a branch in Hong Kong.



The ultra-fancy bar at 8 1/2 Otto e Mezzo Bombana, Shanghai

8 1/2 Otto e Mezzo ¥¥¥ Bombana Italian <i>6th Floor, 169 Yuanmingyuan Lu</i> Tel (021) 6087 2890 Outstanding Italian restaurant with a sleek bar near the Bund. The seasonal à la carte menu features dishes such as saffron risotto with pan-seared Hokkaido scallops. There is also a tasting menu worth trying on special occasions.
--



Tables with a fabulous view at M on the Bund, Shanghai

Jade on 36 ¥¥¥ French

Pudong Shangri-La, Level 36, Grand Tower, 33 Fu Cheng Rd, Pudong
Tel (021) 6321 7733 **Closed** Sun eve
 Highly exclusive, deluxe fine dining from chef Franck Elie Laloum is accompanied by sweeping views over the Bund.

DK Choice

M on the Bund ¥¥¥ European

7/F, No. 5 the Bund (corner of Guangdong Lu)
Tel (021) 6350 9988
 One of Shanghai's oldest Western restaurants, M on the Bund never disappoints with its sophisticated pan-European cuisine. The lunch menu, featuring dishes such as pappardelle pasta tossed with goose confit, red radicchio, and Parmesan shavings, is a bargain. The Glamour Bar is stunning.

Jiangsu & Anhui

NANJING: Bainian Lao Feng Xiaochi ¥ Street Food

122 Gongyuan Jie
 Try the vast array of Huaiyang street food available at this night market, outside the Fuzi Miao.

NANJING: Bellini (by Mira) ¥ Italian

Wenfan Lu 9, Xianling City University
Tel (025) 8579 1577 **Closed** Mon
 An inexpensive place offering solid, authentic Italian food; the lasagna is particularly good.

NANJING: Nanjing Da Pai Dang, Deji Plaza ¥ Regional

18 Zhongshan Lu
Tel (025) 8472 2777
 Traditional Nanjing food in fun and kitschy surroundings. There is usually a line of university students outside.

NANJING: Skyways Bakery ¥ Bakery

Yadong Plaza A18, 12 Xianyin Bei Lu
Tel (025) 8579 1391
 Well known in Nanjing for its excellent and hearty German-style bread and pastries.

NANJING: South Beauty ¥ Regional

172 Taiping Bei Lu
Tel (025) 8451 1777
 Minimalist in style, this place turns up the heat with spicy Sichuan classics, including *mapo doufu* (spicy tofu with minced pork).

NANJING: Plum Garden ¥¥¥ Regional

Jinling Hotel, Xin Jie Kou Square
Tel (025) 8472 2888
 This restaurant specializes in exceptional Huaiyang-style cooking, which includes a variety of crab and tofu dishes.

SUZHOU: Songhelou Restaurant ¥ Regional

198 Shantang Jie
Tel (0512) 6532 1398
 Suzhou's most famous restaurant. The sweet-and-sour Mandarin fish is a must-order.

SUZHOU: Suzhou Zen ¥ Regional

108 Xinghan Jie
Tel (0512) 6763 4567
 Suzhou Zen is a beautiful upscale restaurant that is famous for its *dim sum* buffet on Sundays.

DK Choice

SUZHOU: The Bookworm ¥ International

77 Gunxiufang, Shiquan Lu
Tel (0512) 5007 4471
 A branch of the all-in-one café, bar, and library where travelers can get a break from the spicy local fare. The wine list is extensive, and the excellent brunch menu includes dishes such as eggs Benedict and freshly squeezed juices.

SUZHOU: Wang Si ¥ Regional

15 Taijian Nong, Guanqian Jie
Tel (0512) 6522 7277
 Excellent tea and local dishes make Wang Si an increasingly popular spot. The delicious lotus root is a must-try.

SUZHOU: Wumen Renjia ¥ Regional

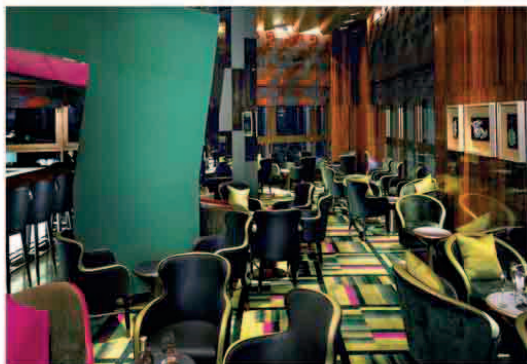
31 Panru Jie
Tel (0512) 6728 8041
 A pleasant restaurant with a well-deserved reputation for traditional Suzhou dishes, such as squirrelfish.

YANGZHOU: Republican Spring Restaurant ¥ Regional

79 Ganquan Lu
Tel (0514) 8734 2551
 A local chain with superb noodle dishes. Worth it despite the gruff service and shared tables.

YANGZHOU: Yangzhou Fu Chun Cha She ¥ Teahouse

35 Deshengqiao Lu
Tel (0514) 7233 326
 This famous teahouse is located in a traditional three-story pavilion-like building. Try the delicious soup dumplings.



Trendy and plush seating at Jade on 36 in Shanghai



Dining room with an open kitchen at Amanfayun – Steam House in Hangzhou

Zhejiang & Jiangxi

HANGZHOU: Due Forni ¥

Italian
House 8, No. 147 Nan Shan Lu

Tel (0571) 8702 6333

Due Forni is a branch of a famous Venetian restaurant that delivers an authentic Italian culinary experience from a great location on West Lake.

HANGZHOU: Green Tea Restaurant ¥

Regional

83 Longjing Lu

Tel (0571) 8788 8022

The consistently high quality fare and a frequently changing menu keep a clientele of both locals and visitors flocking to this place. Be sure to try the roast pork.

HANGZHOU: La Pedrera ¥

Spanish

4 Baishaquan, Shuguang Lu

Tel (0571) 8886 6089

This authentic Spanish restaurant and tapas bar specializes in paella. The chorizo and chicken version is particularly delicious, and you can wash it down with a Spanish beer or a glass of sangria.

HANGZHOU: Weizhuang Zhiweiguan ¥

Regional

0-12 Yanggongti, Xihu Qu

Tel (0571) 8797 0568

With a superb location on the lake, this restaurant serves classic Hangzhou dishes, such as West Lake fish in vinegar sauce.

HANGZHOU: 28 Hubin Road ¥¥

Regional

Hyatt Regency Hangzhou, Hubin Lu

Tel (0571) 8779 1234

Difficult to say which is the bigger attraction here: the *dongpo* (pork belly) or the state-of-the-art wine cellar.

HANGZHOU: Amanfayun – Steam House ¥¥

Regional

22 Fayun Xiang, Xi Hu Jie

Tel (0571) 8732 9999

Located inside the Amanfayun Hotel, this casual restaurant focuses on *dim sum* and authentic local specialties. There is a terrace for alfresco dining.

NANCHANG: Café Roma ¥

Italian

129 Fuhe Bei Lu

Tel (0791) 8669 1101

When you need a break from local cuisine, this inexpensive no-frills pizzeria does the job.

NANCHANG: Folk Restaurant ¥

Regional

342 XiMaZhuang

Tel (0791) 8623 6820

The crowd of hungry diners here reiterates the quality of its Jiangxi dishes, particularly duck soup.

DK Choice

SHAOXING: The Xianheng Restaurant ¥

Regional

179 Lu Xun Zhong Lu

Tel (0575) 8511 6666

The most famous restaurant in Shaoxing specializes in delicacies such as crispy-skinned chicken and smoked red dates in rice wine and fermented tofu. The manager speaks superb English, and there is a helpful picture menu to order from as well.

SHAOXING: Xiang Hui Lou ¥

Regional

244 Luxun Xi Lu

Tel (0575) 8522 6577

Use the picture menu to order local specialties such as beef and chili with Shaoxing vinegar. Nice wood decor.

WENZHO: Xinwangjiao Dajiudian ¥

Regional

Wang Jiang Dong Lu

Tel (0577) 8197 008

Point to the desired seafood or mime a cooking method – the staff at this popular outdoor venue have developed excellent interpretative skills.

Hunan & Hubei

CHANGSHA: Boton Steakhouse ¥

591 Wuyi Dadao

Tel (0731) 8227 7518

Boton caters to expats and locals who like to eat steak alongside other fine, inexpensive fare in a relaxed setting with live music.

CHANGSHA: Huo Gong Dian ¥

Fusion

93 Wuyi Dong Lu

Tel (0731) 4116 803

The food – dishes from Hunan and other Chinese provinces – comes on carts, and diners can feast on a wide variety of small plates and snacks.

DK Choice

CHANGSHA: West Lake Restaurant ¥¥

Regional

Hongshan Lu

Tel (0731) 8425 8188

One of the largest restaurants in the world, West Lake employs 300 chefs to cater for 5,000 seats. The menu includes exotic fare, such as snakes, as well as good renditions of classic dishes such as crispy fried pork and sweet-and-sour Mandarin fish. With live stage shows daily, this is an experience not to be missed.

CHANGSHA: Xuji Seafood**Restaurant** ¥¥**Seafood**88 Shuguang Bei Lu
Tel (0731) 8415 1560

Changsha's poshest dining experience, with fresh seafood that can be picked from the huge tanks lining the restaurant.

WUHAN: Charm**Regional** ¥616 Zhongshan Dajie, Wuhantiandi
No. 2 – 2 building
Tel (027) 8272 7606

Charm specializes in tasty Taiwanese snacks, such as bubble tea and scallion pancakes. For the adventurous, there is stinky tofu.

WUHAN: Mr. Xie Restaurant ¥**Fusion**910 Jiefang Da Dao
Tel (027) 8581 3580A friendly and inexpensive place to try Taiwanese dishes, as well as Hubei classics such as *nongjia xiaochaorou*, a delicious spicy pork dish. Very popular locally.**WUHAN: Wuhan****Changchunguan Sucaiguan** ¥**Vegetarian**145 Wuluo Lu
Tel (027) 8885 4229

Adjacent to a Daoist temple, this charming Buddhist restaurant specializes in mock-meat dishes in which pressed tofu is used as a meat substitute.

WUHAN: Wuxing Dumpling**Restaurant** ¥**Dim Sum**201 Luoyu Lu
Tel (027) 8764 4345

A well-priced dumpling joint with over 100 different varieties on the menu. Do not miss the egg and scallion versions.

Fujian**FUZHOU: Ez Café** ¥**International**Shangri-La Hotel, 9 Xin Quan Nan Lu
Tel (0591) 8798 8566

Visit at lunch for the well-stocked international buffet, and at dinner for the excellent sampling of both Asian and continental dishes. Good desserts, too.

FUZHOU: Xinjinyue Restaurant ¥**Regional**438 Guangda Lu
Tel (0591) 2830 5777

The city's fanciest restaurant offers delicious seafood, such as sashimi and Fujianese delicacies.

DK Choice**XIAMEN: Bellagio** ¥**Regional**6 Jianye Lu
Tel (0592) 6577 333The Xiamen branch of an affordable and stylish chain of Taiwanese restaurants. Order the sweet-and-sour fish from the gigantic picture menu, and wash it down with a freshly made fruit *lassi* (yoghurt drink) and peanut-butter ice cream.**XIAMEN: Big Mouth****Japanese Restaurant** ¥**Japanese**123 Lian Qian Dong Lu
Tel (0592) 5922 166

A buffet-only restaurant with an array of fresh sashimi and udon-noodle dishes. Book ahead.

XIAMEN: Temple Café ¥**Café**61 Zengcui Da Dao
Tel (0592) 2096 780

Housed in an old temple, this place has an adequate menu of dishes such as pizzas and burgers.

Guangdong & Hainan**GUANGZHOU: 1920****Restaurant and Bar** ¥**German**183 Yuanjiangzhong Lu
Tel (020) 8333 6156

Come to 1920 if you fancy a break from Cantonese food. This restaurant provides a vast selection of German beer, massive plates of cold cuts, schnitzels, and sausage platters.

DK Choice**GUANGZHOU: Bai****Yun Xuan** ¥**Regional**Baiyun Hotel, 67 Huanshi Dong Lu
Tel (020) 8333 3998, ext 3271A local institution famous for its delicious *dim sum*, this hotel-restaurant fills up in the mornings, particularly Sundays, and stays that way for much of the day. The *shu mai* dumplings and steamed ribs in black-bean sauce are sublime.**GUANGZHOU: Dongjiang****Seafood Restaurant** ¥**Seafood**

2 Qiaoguang Lu

Tel (020) 8318 4901

Spread over five floors and with a seating capacity of 3,000, this lively restaurant has a wide variety of seafood on offer. Do not miss the *dim sum*.**GUANGZHOU: Tang****Chinese Cuisine** ¥**International**

1 Jianshe Liu Ma Lu

Tel (020) 8384 3320

This elegant restaurant provides unusual renditions of classic local dishes. The goose, for example, is served with dainty slices of *foie gras*. There is also a large *dim sum* daytime menu.**GUANGZHOU: The Peninsula** ¥**Regional**

28 Da Tong Lu Er Sha Island

Tel (020) 8735 3283

The Peninsula is a favorite haunt of those who want to see and be seen. The steamed frogs' legs served on a lotus leaf are much talked about.



Informal dining space at Ez Café in Fuzhou



The beautifully decorated Shang Palace in Shenzhen

SANYA: Casa Mia ¥
Italian
 88 Sanya Bay Rd
Tel (0898) 8888 9828
 With a lovely location on the waterfront, this is the place to order platefuls of pasta and red wine for a taste of *la dolce vita*.

SANYA: Hai Ya Restaurant ¥
Regional
 138 Xin Feng Lu
Tel (0898) 8827 6962
 A world away from Sanya's fancier restaurants, this busy, noisy joint caters to those in search of Hainan chicken, the island's most famous dish.

SANYA: Fresh at Mandarin Oriental ¥¥¥
Seafood
 12 Yuhai Lu
Tel (0898) 8820 9999
 Tucked away in the luxurious Mandarin Oriental Hotel, this is the place for an expensive treat. Try the oysters and shimmering platters of fresh seafood.

SHENZHEN: Benjia ¥
Korean Restaurant
Korean
 8 Baishi Lu
Tel (0755) 8654 1158
 Spread over two floors, Benjia is always packed with Korean expats enjoying mouthwatering BBQ pork and beef with pickled kimchi on the side.

SHENZHEN: Laurel Restaurant ¥
Regional
 17 Nong Yuan Lu
Tel (0755) 8317 1818
 Enjoy the outdoor setting as the friendly staff bring out a wide variety of Cantonese dishes. The Peking duck here is divine.

SHENZHEN: Muslim Noodle House ¥
Regional
 8 Taizi Rd
 An unassuming shack that nevertheless attracts large numbers of local diners looking for meaty and spicy fare with that extra something. Noodles are made fresh in front of the guests. No restroom facilities.

DK Choice

SHENZHEN: Shang Palace ¥
Regional
 Shangri-La Hotel, East Side, Railway Station, 1002 Jianshe Rd
Tel (0755) 8233 0888
 With its magnificent decor and outstanding *dim sum*, this place is truly delightful. Enjoy creative combinations of tantalizing flavors such as crispy pork flamed with Chinese rose wine, and sliced roasted duck with mango. Shang Palace is definitely worth a visit.

Hong Kong & Macau

HONG KONG: Guru ¥
Indian Map 2 B3
 G/F, 13 Elgin St, Central
Tel (852) 2547 9998
 A small, charming restaurant decorated with vibrant Indian artworks, Guru serves food from all regions of the subcontinent.

HONG KONG: Luk Yu Tea House ¥
Dim Sum Map 2 B3
 24–26 Stanley St, Central
Tel (852) 2523 5464
 This colonial-style teahouse, with its beautiful paneling and murals, has been a destination for travelers for 80 years. Expect old-fashioned service as well.

DK Choice

HONG KONG: Maxim's Palace ¥
Dim Sum
 Low Block, City Hall, 5 Edinburgh Place, Central
Tel (852) 2526 9931
 Head to Maxim's Palace for a typical Hong Kong *dim sum* experience, and join the crowds of noisy and cheerful locals selecting their favorite fillings from service carts. From the BBQ pork buns to the stir-fried green vegetables in oyster sauce, the food is flawless, classic, and inexpensive. Great harbor views, too.

HONG KONG: Serenade Chinese Restaurant ¥
Dim Sum Map 1 C4
 1/F Hong Kong Cultural Centre, Salisbury Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui
Tel (852) 2722 0932
 Apart from *dim sum*, this moderately priced restaurant also serves fabulous shrimp wontons and Singapore noodles. Enjoy your meal while taking in great views of the Victoria Harbour.

HONG KONG: Smrat Pure Veg ¥
Indian Map 1 B1
 5/F, Block B, Chungking Mansion, 36–44 Nathan Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui
Tel (852) 2369 5762
 The inexpensive and excellent vegetarian food served at Smrat Pure Veg makes a trek to this spot worthwhile. The menu is varied and extensive.

HONG KONG: Above and Beyond ¥¥
Regional Map 1 C3
 28F, Hotel Icon, 17 Science Museum Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui East
Tel (852) 3400 1318
 Fine harbor views and spot-on renditions of Cantonese classics, such as roast pork belly and *char siu* (barbecued pork), have made this modern venue very popular.

HONG KONG: Indochine 1929 ¥¥
Fusion Map 2 B3
 2/F, California Tower, 30–32 D'Aguilar St, Lan Kwai Fong
Tel (852) 2869 7399
 A long-established favorite with the Hong Kong elite, who flock here drawn by both the restaurant's French-Vietnamese cuisine and its elegant decor.



Dine with a stunning view at Above and Beyond in Hong Kong

HONG KONG: Island Tang ¥¥

Regional

Shop 222, The Galleria,
9 Queen's Rd, Central

Tel (852) 2526 8798

The beautiful 1930s Art Deco ambience provides the perfect backdrop for quality Cantonese cuisine and a variety of *dim sum*.

HONG KONG: Super Star Seafood Restaurant ¥¥

Dim Sum

Map 1 C3

83–97 Nathan Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui

Tel (852) 2366 0878

Head to this high-end place – one of several branches in Hong Kong – for their menu of appetizing crab dishes and *dim sum*.

HONG KONG: The Square ¥¥

Regional

1/F Exchange Square II, Central

Tel (852) 2525 1163

The award-winning authentic Cantonese cuisine has made this restaurant a popular destination for foodies. The booth seating is comfortable, and the platters of roast meats are a real treat.

HONG KONG: Tsui Hang Village Restaurant ¥¥

Regional

1/F, 16–18 Queen's Rd, Central

Tel (852) 2524 2012

Famous for *char siu* (barbecued) pork, this no-nonsense restaurant may not be a place to linger, but it is the perfect spot to grab a bite on the run.

DK Choice**HONG KONG:****Chez Patrick**

French

¥¥¥

Map 2 B3

26 Peel St, Soho

Tel (852) 2541 1401

Closed Sun,
public hols

French fine dining in an ambience reminiscent of a Parisian apartment. The chef changes his menu every month, but the restaurant's signature dishes, such as king prawns and baby artichoke tartare, and goat's cheese and beetroot ice cream, are always available.

HONG KONG: Gold ¥¥¥

Italian

Map 2 B3

Level 2, LKF Tower, 33 Wyndham St,
Lan Kwai Fong, Central

Tel (852) 2869 9986

This restaurant lives up to its name with its flamboyant ambience and a beautifully designed terrace. The modern European menu has been developed by celebrity chef Harlan Goldstein.



The glamorous setting at The Eight in Macau

HONG KONG: On Lot 10 ¥¥¥

French

34 Gough St, Central

Tel (852) 2155 9210

Closed Sun

A local favorite, with a lovely terrace and a classic menu served in an unpretentious fashion. Guests can bring their own wine.

HONG KONG: Pierre ¥¥¥

French

25/F, The Mandarin Oriental,

5 Connaught Rd, Central

Tel (852) 2825 4001

Closed Sun,
public hols

Order innovative French-Mediterranean fare prepared by a celebrity chef in the Mandarin Oriental Hotel. Pierre overlooks Victoria Harbour.

HONG KONG: SPOON

by Alain Ducasse

French

¥¥¥

InterContinental, 18 Salisbury Rd,
Tsim Sha Tsui

Tel (852) 2313 2256

Closed Mon

The staff here do Alain Ducasse credit by producing superb eclectic food that lives up to his reputation. The breathtaking view of the harbor is a bonus.

HONG KONG:**The Chairman**

Regional

¥¥¥

18 Kau U Fong, Central

Tel (852) 2555 2202

Book at least a month in advance to enjoy the experimental contemporary Cantonese food prepared here – baked Coca-Cola braised-pork buns, for instance.

MACAU: A Lorch

Portuguese

¥

289 Rua do Almirante Sergio

Tel (852) 2831 3193

A lively and long-established local institution that serves exceedingly well-prepared piri piri chicken and *feijoada*, the

classic stew made with pork knuckle, sausage, and red beans. Reservations essential.

MACAU: Lord Stow's Bakery ¥

Snacks

1 Rua Do Tassar,

Coloane Town Square

Tel (853) 2888 2535

The classic egg tart you can see being sold all over Hong Kong was invented at this very establishment. True fans still take the ferry to Macau to buy boxes of the original.

MACAU: The Eight ¥¥¥

Dim Sum

Grand Lisboa Hotel, 2nd Floor,

Avenida de Lisboa

Tel (853) 8803 7788

Come to this Michelin-starred restaurant for a lavish dining experience. The Eight serves Cantonese and Huaiyang cuisine, plus delicious *dim sum* at lunch.

Sichuan & Chongqing**CHENGDU: Annvita**

Rose House

Teahouse

¥

61 Shengxianshu Nan Lu

Tel (028) 8519 1777

A traditional-style English teahouse serving a wide variety of teas, both English blends and Chinese, along with exquisite cakes.

CHENGDU: Cat in Hat ¥

Café

No. 103 Diaosou Dasha, 1 Jingxing Lu

Tel (028) 8556 9299

Cat in Hat is a very popular café and lounge famous for its desserts and warm, old-style atmosphere. Choose from a range of snacks, including dumplings and noodles.



The no-frills, bright interior at The Bookworm in Chengdu

CHENGDU: Impression of Chengdu Regional ¥

Zhaixiangzi Alley 16,
Qingyang District
Tel (028) 8624 5678

This restaurant is famous for its spicy Sichuan cuisine. It also offers guests the cultural experience of a Sichuan opera show every day at lunchtime.

CHENGDU: The Bookworm International ¥

2-7 Yulie Dong Lu
Tel (028) 8552 0177

An all-in-one atmospheric bookshop, library, bar, restaurant, and event space. This, the sister branch to the famous Beijing edition, is very popular for its warm atmosphere and good wine and food.

CHENGDU: Gingko NanTing ¥¥

1/F-6/F, Western Tower, 16 Renmin Nan Lu
Tel (028) 8611 6888

A fine restaurant with accomplished cuisine from all over the world. It is a particularly good choice for a celebratory dinner, since the desserts, such as the green-tea ice cream, are divine.

DK Choice

CHENGDU: Yu's Kitchen ¥¥ Regional

Zhaixiangzi Alley 43
Tel (028) 8669 1985

This elegant restaurant offers a contemporary take on traditional Sichuan cuisine, with a range of elaborate and delicately prepared dishes. The atmosphere is slightly formal, and the menu changes weekly. English is spoken, so ask for the recommended dish of the day. Book in advance

CHONGQING: Dalong Hotpot ¥ Hotpot

Xiaolongkan, Diantai Xiang Jie
Tel (139) 8372 6399

The most famous hotpot restaurant in Chongqing sees long lines for tables almost every day. Beware of the spicy broth – it is exceedingly hot.

CHONGQING: Donghuai Xichuan ¥ Regional

5/F, Chongqing Times Square,
100 Zourong Lu
Tel (023) 6300 0880

Popular for its fusion of Sichuanese and Chongqing cuisines, and its fine desserts, Donghuai Xichuan has attentive service and a smart ambience.

CHONGQING: Grandma's Kitchen ¥ American

6/F, Darong Cheng, 8 Jianxin Bei Lu
Tel (023) 6769 9775

A branch of a well-known Beijing chain that offers excellent service. Grandma's Kitchen draws large crowds thanks to the big portions of burgers and sandwiches served in a warm and homely atmosphere.

CHONGQING: Qiqi Hotpot ¥ Hotpot

2/F-3/F, Bldg B, 151 Zourong Lu
Tel (023) 6379 9369

A very old and popular hotpot chain in Chongqing, with a typical menu on offer and bright and clean surroundings.

CHONGQING: Yuxin Sichuan Cuisine ¥ Regional

No. 16 Building, 1st Avenue,
Nanbin Lu
Tel (023) 6282 2088

This local favorite on the south bank of the Yangtze River offers excellent views and spicy food.

CHONGQING: Stone Fusion ¥¥ Fusion

6/F, Times Square, 228 Minzu Lu
Tel (023) 6383 3337

A high-end fine-dining place that serves Western favorites such as lasagna and steaks, as well as local dishes, in a classy environment.

Yunnan

DALI: Bakery 88 ¥ Café

No. 52 Yangren Jie
Tel (0872) 2679 129

The most famous deli and café in Dali, Bakery 88 serves delicious cheesecakes, healthy breakfasts, and apple pie, as well as good coffee. Friendly service.

DALI: Cang Er Chun ¥ Regional

84 Renmin Lu
Tel (0872) 6900 907

An old and famous Yunnan restaurant located inside a stunning wooden building. Try the Crossing the Bridge noodles. Prior booking recommended.

DALI: The Good Panda ¥ Restaurant Regional

81 Renmin Lu
Tel (0872) 3156 492

Try food typical of the Bai minority, such as goat's cheese and ham with piquant pickles, in a stylish environment with traditional and rustic decor.

DALI: Zai Hui Shou ¥ Regional

198 Renmin Lu
Tel (0872) 6895 609

A small hole-in-the-wall joint with lots of reasonably priced and delicious options. Famous for its Yunnan rice noodles.

KUNMING: Blue Bird Steakhouse ¥*Cuihu Nan Lu***Tel** (0871) 6531 5507

A well-established restaurant located by the Cui Hu Lake, Blue Bird is famous for its steaks and large slices of cheesecake.

KUNMING: De Yi Ju Regional ¥*No. JB3-6-1, Jinmabiji Square, Jinbi Lu***Tel** (0871) 6363 3555

Housed in a former general's mansion, this three-story restaurant is the most famous place for Yunnan dishes such as Crossing the Bridge noodles.

KUNMING: Wei Cai Regional ¥*1 Cuihu Xi Lu***Tel** (0871) 6531 8999

Enjoy contemporary Yunnan cuisine with a lakeside view. The chef serves seasonal delicacies.

LIJIANG: A Ma Yi Naxi Snacks Regional ¥*Near Xiaoshiqiao Qiao, Wuyi Jie***Tel** (0888) 5309 588

Try the cuisine of the Yunnan minority in an alley in the old town. This place also serves *Lijiang baba*, a pancake made of wheat flour, ham, and scallion.

LIJIANG: Chattering Room Regional ¥*Dashiqiao Bunongling, Wuyi St, Gucheng District***Tel** (0888) 5180 439

Unfussy cuisine from the owner/chef, who is famous locally for her chatter and heartwarming personality. Vegetarian-friendly.

DK Choice**LIJIANG: Flower Private Home Cuisine** ¥*Regional**At the end of Zhenxingxiang Alley, Wuyi Jie***Tel** (1870) 8889 700

A tiny, cozy restaurant worth seeking out in a small alley where it could be easily overlooked. On the menu is classic Lijiang cuisine, and there are also several vegetarian options. The manager speaks excellent English.

LIJIANG: Upstairs N's Kitchen Café ¥*2/F, Jishan Alley 17, Xinyi Jie***Tel** (0888) 5120 060

In the evening, this friendly café famous for its milkshakes and pizzas starts to have more of a pub vibe.

Guizhou & Guangxi**GUILIN: Chong Shan Regional** ¥*Jiefang Dong Lu***Tel** (0773) 2981 335

The flagship of a famous rice-noodle chain, Chong Shan is very popular with locals for breakfast. Try the scallion pancakes.

GUILIN: Chun Ji Regional ¥*2 Zhongshan Zhong Lu***Tel** (0733) 2806 188

Renowned for its signature geese dishes, this perennially popular restaurant also has excellent *dim sum*. Prior booking is recommended at weekends.

GUIYANG: Lao Kai Li Regional ¥*55 Shengfu Lu***Tel** (0851) 5843 665

Local foodies come here for the must-order dish: fish in sour soup. It is always crowded, with people lining up to get a table.

DK Choice**YANGSHUO: Red Star Express Café** ¥*56 Guihua Lu***Tel** (0733) 8821 304

A long-term favorite with international travelers, this lively pizza place is decorated with old-style Communist posters. It is a good place to meet fellow travelers, and when darkness falls, it is also a great place to enjoy a glass of local beer.

YANGSHUO: Farmer's Restaurant ¥*Regional**Jiu Xian, near Yulong River***Tel** (0733) 8772 715

Cheap, cheerful, and tourist-friendly, this restaurant offering Guangxi cuisine is a must after rafting in the Yulong River. Try the famous beer fish.

Liaoning, Jilin & Heilongjiang**CHANGCHUN: Bao Jia Regional** ¥*Tongguang Lu***Tel** (0431) 8676 1285

Bao Jia is famous for its authentically prepared Dongbei cuisine. The hearty portions are twice the size you'll find elsewhere, and the dumplings are delicious. Efficient staff.

CHANGCHUN: Z-Space Steak House ¥¥*Steakhouse**2632 Gongnongda Jie***Tel** (0431) 8564 5757

A refined, high-end restaurant, Z-Space Steak House is the place where locals go for *foie gras* and caviar, followed by a large, succulent steak.

DALIAN: 68-86 Old Dalian Restaurant ¥*Seafood**3 Xingsheng Jie***Tel** (0411) 8265 7491

A small dining room means that this unassuming place is packed every day, full of people eager to try its famous seafood dishes.

DALIAN: Brooklyn Restaurant & Bar ¥*American**184 Bulao Jie, Wanda Huafu Erqi***Tel** (0411) 8686 7426

Unadulterated American-style menu, featuring big juicy burgers and pizzas that can be washed down with a round of mojitos. For dessert, tuck into the cheesecake.



The casual Upstairs N's Kitchen in Lijiang

DALIAN: Wan Bao**Haixianfang**
Seafood

182 Jiefang Lu

Tel (0411) 3991 2888

Dalian's best seafood restaurant offers elegant decor and professional staff – not to mention prices to match. The spicy crayfish are excellent.

HARBIN: Europe Restaurant
European

22 Shidao Xi Jie

Tel (0451) 8469 8887

This is the place to visit for traditional European fare, such as hearty steaks and French casseroles. The meals here are accompanied by live piano music.

DK Choice**HARBIN: Katusha**
Russian

261 Zhongyang Jie

Tel (138) 3614 8098

Head to Harbin's most famous Russian restaurant if you are in the mood for typical Russian decor and authentic fare, such as chicken Kiev and hearty beef stroganoff. Even the bread and butter is Russian. Unsurprisingly, it also has a peerless vodka list. There is occasional live music.

HARBIN: Qiz.Douw
Regional

182 Nan Shixidao Jie

Tel (0451) 8264 5888

This reasonably priced and popular Dongbei restaurant is especially famous for big portions of dishes such as lamb ribs crusted with cumin seeds and crushed chilies, and carrot and lamb dumplings.

SHENYANG: Guan Dong**Da Yuan**
Regional

112 Taibaishan Lu

Tel (024) 8671 8222

This restaurant stands out thanks to its innovative design, though the food is more traditional – hearty, filling, and simple.

SHENYANG: Xiang Jian**Hao Wei**
Regional

30 Guilin Jie

Tel (024) 8285 1378

Homely, well-priced Dongbei cuisine in a cheerful room usually packed with diners. Book ahead.

Inner Mongolia & Ningxia**HOHHOT: Gerile Ama Milk**
Tea House

2/F, Xinhua Square, 93 Xilin Bei Lu

Tel (0471) 6924 755

Enjoy authentic Mongolian tea and dairy desserts in a friendly atmosphere. This is a great place to get warm on a cold day.

HOHHOT: Meng Gu Da Ying
Regional

Inside the Inner Mongolia Race

Course, 27 Hulun Bei Lu

Tel (0471) 6516 868

Set in yurts, this authentic place offers great Mongolian cuisine, such as pulled lamb and Mongolian milk tea.

HOHHOT: Zuo Cheng You Yu
Regional

2/F, Chang'an Jinzuo, Xinhua Dong Jie

Tel (0471) 4682 300 **Closed Chinese**

New Year

Serving contemporary Cantonese cuisine, this is Hohhot's best fine-dining restaurant. Efficient service.

YINCHUAN: Guo Qiang**Shou Zhua**
Regional

408 Jiefang Xi Jie

Tel (0951) 5036 220

Give the cutlery a miss and dig into the great mutton dishes with your fingers at this typical Xinjiang restaurant, also known for its medicinal tea.

DK Choice**YINCHUAN: Ying Bin Lou**
Regional

11 Jiefang Xi Jie

Tel (0951) 6025 950

A very old and famous Xinjiang restaurant popular for its home-made pomegranate ice cream in summer, and lamb hotpot in winter. English is not spoken here, but there is a comprehensive picture menu, and the staff are keen to help.

Gansu & Qinghai**DUNHUANG: Daji Donkey**
Regional

In the alley east to Jinshan Hotel, near Shazhou Hotel

The name gives the specialty away – donkey-meat dishes dominate at this homely place.

DK Choice**DUNHUANG: Dun Lai Shun**
Regional

11 Mingshan Lu

Tel (0937) 8832 203

The city's best restaurant, Dun Lai Shun is cheap, yet stylish and welcoming. Dishes from all over China are served, as well as Xinjiang staples, such as roast mutton and spicy cucumber.



The popular Wan Bao Haixianfang seafood restaurant in Dalian, Liaoning



Staff in traditional attire at Wordo Kitchen in Shigatse, Tibet

LANZHOU: Wu Miu Le ¥

Regional

2168 Beibinhe Xi Lu

Closed Eves

Be prepared to wait at this popular draw to try the city's most famous and tastiest noodles and beef dishes.

LANZHOU: Zhong Hua ¥

Middle Eastern

765 Nanchang Lu

Tel (0931) 8880 555

The flagship establishment of a well-known local chain of Muslim restaurants. Be sure to try the succulent roast mutton, which is best eaten using your fingers instead of cutlery.

XINING: Qinghai Tu Huoguo ¥

Hotpot

Intersection of Xiaoxin Jie and Yinma Jie

Qinghai-style hotpot is the perfect dish for the long winter, and the one served here is truly memorable. Beware of the spicy variety, though, as it is quite hot.

XINING: Shalilai Catering

Food City

Regional

4 Bei Jie

Tel (0971) 8232 039

This popular local chain specializes in mutton dishes. Try the stewed mutton in rice wine and deep fried diced potatoes. No English is spoken here, so guests might have to do some pointing.

XINING: Yi Xin Shouzhua ¥

Regional

Baiyu Alley 5, Huayuan Bei Jie

Tel (0971) 8179 336

One of the best local Muslim restaurants, with a reputation for cleanliness and good-quality cuisine. Try the *la mian* noodles.

Xinjiang**KASHGAR: Orda** ¥

Middle Eastern

169 Renmin Dong Lu

This authentic Xinjiang restaurant serves spicy kabobs accompanied by cooling bowls of yoghurt. The Uighur waiting staff are quite friendly.

KASHGAR: Altun Orda ¥¥

Middle Eastern

Renmin Xi Lu

Tel (0998) 2583 555

Altun Orda is a very high-end and luxuriously furnished Xinjiang restaurant. The excellent pilaf is highly recommended. The staff speak some basic English.

TURPAN: Best Food Burger ¥

American

Dashizi, Laocheng Xi Lu

Fans of American-style fast food can head to Best Food Burger, safe in the knowledge that the menu here features nothing other than burgers and fries.

ÜRÜMQI: Huo Yan Shan ¥

Hotpot

2/F, 1 Mingyuan Lu

Tel (0991) 4562 888

An all-you-can-eat self-service hotpot with live local music performances during lunch and dinner. Diners may have to share a table.

ÜRÜMQI: Miraj ¥

Turkish

31, 2nd Alley, Shengli Lu

Tel (0991) 2885 522

Do not miss this gorgeously and exotically decorated Turkish restaurant. Miraj is one of Ürümqi's premier fine-dining venues, serving spicy and tasty lamb kabobs.

Tibet**LHASA: Guangming** ¥

Gangqiongian Tea House

Teahouse

Danjuelin Lu

Tel (0891) 6885 357

A local favorite known for serving Tibetan sweet tea and noodles.

DK Choice**LHASA: Lhasa Namasede** ¥

Restaurant

Fusion

2/F, 30 Yutuo Lu

Tel (0891) 6324 669

This friendly place offers Indian, continental, Chinese, Tibetan, and Nepali dishes, as well as burgers, ice creams, and cakes. A great place to meet travelers.

LHASA: Renmin Communist ¥

Century Cunjun Mansion

Regional

1 Chaoyang Lu

Tel (0891) 6788 888

Famous for its mushroom hotpot with Tibetan chicken soup. The yak beef is also very popular.

SHIGATSE: Wordo Kitchen ¥

Regional

8 Zhade Dong Lu

Tel (0892) 8823 994

Gorgeous decor and smiling waiting staff await here. The food is traditional yet wholesome; try the roasted leg of lamb.

SHIGATSE: Yak Head ¥

Tibet Restaurant

Regional

16 Zanglong Square, Shandong Lu

Tel (0892) 8841 118

This is the perfect place to enjoy mellow and savoury Tibetan milk tea and yak beef.

SHOPS & MARKETS

China's rich artistic heritage is reflected in its stunning range of characteristic works of art – from stylized landscape paintings and calligraphy to delicate ceramic bowls and exquisitely carved bamboo. With the burgeoning of tourism and the official encouragement of enterprise, Chinese cities are alive with shops and markets selling an often bewildering array of trinkets and souvenirs. Even though the market is flooded with cheap imitations, many objects are still made by age-old techniques, and authentic

items are not hard to find. Perhaps some of the most unique souvenirs are those produced by China's ethnic minorities, particularly their accomplished embroidery. The major cities have seen the emergence of malls and department stores, which provide certificates of authenticity for items such as jewelry and semi-precious stones (although still no guarantee). Many large hotels also have souvenir shops, although these tend to stock over-priced, upmarket items, such as silk and jade.

Opening Hours

Shops in China are usually open from 8:30am until fairly late in the evening – around 8pm – while winter timings are generally 9am to 7pm. High street stores and malls tend to open from 10am to 10pm regardless of the season. They can be very busy in the evening once offices have closed. The opening and closing times of shops varies from place to place; in some areas they open as early as 8am, and stay open until well after 8pm. Local food shops and markets selling fresh produce remain open for business from early in the morning until late at night. Some shops remain closed on public holidays such as the three-day Chinese New Year (Spring Festival), National Day (October 1), and New Year's Day (January 1), although most malls remain open.



An array of calligraphy brushes for sale in a Beijing market

How to Pay

The Chinese currency is the *yuan renminbi* or "people's money" (shortened to RMB). One *yuan* is divided into 10 *jiao* or *mao*, each of which is divided even farther into 10 *fen*. Credit and debit cards are widely accepted in malls,

shops, hotels, restaurants, and bars. Likewise, ATMs are widespread in every city including at most major banks, such as Bank of China, ICBC, HSBC, Citibank, and Bank of Communications. ATMs should display in both Chinese and English, or give you the option to display in English only. The commission and exchange rates charged for ATM withdrawals depend on your bank, so it is worth checking before your visit.

Most major banks have exchange desks for foreign currency. These are also found at airports, in larger hotels, and in certain stores. Be sure to keep your exchange receipts, since you will need them to convert your spare *renminbi* into another currency before leaving the country (see pp608–9).

Bargaining

Bargaining is a common practice in China, especially in street markets, night bazaars, and souvenir stands. It is even worth trying in the smarter, more expensive hotels, modern shops, department stores, and government emporia. Stallholders are notorious for charging visitors thrice the "real" price, and sometimes their starting price may be up to ten times the cost. Make a comparison of prices and be conscious of what others are paying, particularly local Chinese.



Bustling Nanjing Road with its brightly colored billboards, Shanghai



An upmarket department store in Zhaoqing, Guangdong

Department Stores & Boutiques

The consumer revolution in China has led to the mushrooming of upmarket brand stores, shopping plazas, and fashion boutiques in every city, especially Beijing and Shanghai. Brands from D&G to Gap, Zara, Apple, and Hershey chocolates can now be found in the leading retail cities of Shanghai and Beijing, as well as the many malls in other Chinese cities.

As in most developed countries, there is heavy emphasis on high-end items such as electrical goods, designer fashion, perfumes, jewelry, and watches, while large stores, such as Carrefour, Marks & Spencer, IKEA, and Walmart, offer foods, souvenirs, and household goods at reasonable prices.

Shopping Malls

Like in all fast-emerging Asian nations, mall shopping is a favored urban leisure pursuit. In most Chinese cities, glassy retail plazas dominate the downtown areas. They are usually built to a similar design and house a mix of upmarket brands, coffee shops, fast food outlets, and local eateries, with a giant supermarket in the basement. In the central business districts of the largest cities, upscale shopping malls are attached to luxury hotels. While the malls multiply, China's department store heritage is fast diminishing.

Markets

The best way to experience China's diversity and its many ethnic cultures is to visit the bustling local markets, especially in rural areas. Held on specific days of the week, these are locally known as *ganji*, which means "going to market," or *gangai*, meaning "going to the street."

Traditionally, people from the surrounding countryside came into town on market days to buy or sell their farm produce. Nowadays however, rural markets are expanding their scope, and it is not uncommon to see stalls selling a range of household items from toothbrushes to woks and



Selling carpets at a market in Linxia, Gansu

cooking pots. While some markets still follow the lunar calendar, which is confusing for most visitors, many have shifted to a more regular schedule. Such markets are busiest between mid-morning and mid-afternoon. The variety of food, souvenirs, and domestic items on sale is astounding, but be prepared to bargain hard.

Antiques

Unless you're an expert, buying antiques in China is a rather risky proposition. Many Chinese cities have flourishing antiques markets, but most of the items on sale will undoubtedly be fake. However, as long as you don't mistake them for the real thing, it is fun to browse and bargain for cheap replicas. The state-run antique shops, like the

Friendship Stores, are in decline – and never had any bargains anyway. Shops in the foyers of art galleries and museums also sell works of art such as scroll paintings, calligraphy, and

attractive silk scarves. In China, objects dating to 1795 or earlier may not be legally exported, so make sure any antiques (of a later date) that you purchase carry a red wax seal permitting export. Always keep the receipts as they may be required at Customs.



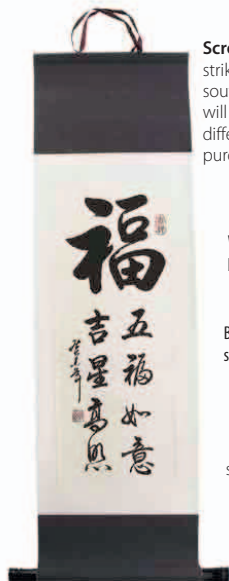
A souvenir shop in Qingcheng Shan park near Chengdu

What to Buy in China

Market stalls and small shops sell interesting souvenirs in tourist centers throughout China. Traditionally styled items can be found just about everywhere, while many other crafts are regional. You can find beautifully intricate embroidery in the southwest, prayer wheels and flags in Tibet, carpets in Xinjiang, and ginseng in the northeast. When shopping in markets it is essential to bargain. Gift shops at factories usually have fixed, but inflated, prices.

Calligraphy

A skill as revered as painting, calligraphy is an ancient Chinese art that is a fluid form of self-expression. Master calligraphers practice their art assiduously, and one of their works could be very expensive. Less costly examples of calligraphy are widely available.



Scrolls painted with elegantly striking script make excellent souvenirs. Skilled calligraphers will paint chosen sayings in different styles or you can purchase pre-painted works.



Writing brushes should have a defined tip and firm fur bristles. Ink sticks made of soot are ground down and mixed with water on an ink stone.



A collection of Mao statuettes in many different poses



Marble chops are traditionally used to imprint a calligrapher's seal on to a work. At many craft markets vendors create personalized chops by carving a character version of a person's name on the base.



Painted on paper or silk with simple brushstrokes, painting is one of the most important traditional arts. Many paintings now have contemporary touches.

Ceramics

Chinese ceramics are known the world over. They have been mass produced for hundreds of years, with fired pots being passed through a line of artisans, each adding a layer to the glaze. Porcelain, a fine, translucent ceramic, was invented during the Sui dynasty, and high quality pieces are still produced.

Jingdezhen in Jiangxi has been one of the main producers of porcelain since the 10th century (see pp260–61). It still produces fine pieces, although some of the cheaper wares may be decorated by stencil.



Yixingware, or purple sand pottery from Ding Shan in Anhui (see p224), is usually a dark reddish brown, but can also be green, buff, or gray.

Silk

Woven from the strands that make up a silk worm's cocoon, silk is also a Chinese invention (see pp214–15). Clothes made of silk, such as ladies' *cheongsams*, are widely available, but be aware that silk sold in markets is likely to be rayon. Beautiful embroidery on silk is also available.



Silk embroidered coasters



Silk bags



Silk-covered cushions

Jade, a semi-precious stone, is associated with immortality. These pendants are green, but the lustrous gem can also be gray or brown.



Other Traditional Handicrafts

Occasionally created by skilled craftsmen but often mass produced, Chinese handicrafts are almost always highly intricate and of vibrant color. The variety of goods on offer is staggering, from delicate miniature glass bottles to the bold graphics of communist memorabilia.



Glass snuff bottles were popularized during the Qing dynasty, when snuff usage was common. Using a hooked brush, artisans paint miniature scenes inside.

Carved wooden fan

Lacquerware jewelry box

Decorative tassel



The best paper cuts are made in a few minutes by a master craftsman with a pair of scissors. Most paper cuts are mass produced, with many simultaneously cut to a pattern.

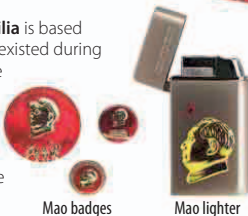
Cloisonné vases, boxes, and jars have been copper-enamelled: copper is faced with pieces of colored enamel and fired, creating a shiny finish.



Baoding balls are weighted and sometimes contain a chime. The two balls are maneuvered in one band, strengthening grip and massaging the channels through which *qi* runs (see p238).



Mao memorabilia is based on designs that existed during Mao's rule. Some is authentic, but most communist souvenirs are produced for the tourist market.



Mao badges

Mao lighter



Tea, often sold in colorful tin caddies, is available everywhere. *Tie guanyin* and other oolong teas of Fujian are very fine. *Pu'er* is a specialty of the southwest.

ENTERTAINMENT

The Chinese work hard, but they also take their leisure seriously, and have a range of traditional and modern entertainment. The vast tradition of performing arts reflects China's rich cultural heritage, and includes Chinese opera, theater, shadow puppetry, and the circus. Many types of dance and music derive from ethnic cultures, adding to the diversity of entertainment. China's increasing westernization has meant that young people in particular enjoy the same leisure activities as their western

counterparts, including contemporary films and music concerts. Karaoke is hugely popular, and most towns and cities have numerous bars, where visitors can sing along to popular Chinese and Western songs, accompanied by the latest videos. The Internet has opened up new avenues for online entertainment, with many people carrying smartphones, iPads, and PSPs. Casino gambling is only permitted in the specially administered region of Macau, and horse racing is popular in Hong Kong (*see p338*).



Passing the time with a game of *xiangqi* on the sidewalks of Xi'an

Games

Playing games in public parks is a timeworn Chinese custom, and though visitors may feel too inhibited to challenge locals to a game, they are great fun to watch. Some Chinese games date back thousands of years. The most well-known game is *mahjong*, which uses plastic tiles, originally made of bamboo or ivory. The rules are similar to rummy, with players trying to create identical, or consecutively numbered, sets. More advanced versions of the game have special tiles representing the four winds, four dragons, seasons, and flowers. When a game is in full swing, the quick movements of the participants make the tiles click and clatter – a popular translation of *mahjong* is “chattering sparrows.”

Chinese checkers (*xiangqi*) is another popular game. Here, there are two opposing sets of round counters. The board is divided into squares by nine

vertical and ten horizontal lines. The board game Go (*weiqi*) dates back more than 4,000 years. Also known as encirclement chess, it involves two opposing sides, each with a set of circular stones, struggling for territory.

Spectator Sports

The most popular sports at schools and colleges are basketball, badminton, and table tennis (ping pong), and the Chinese excel internationally in the latter two. Soccer is also played and followed with enthusiasm. The top European clubs have a strong fan-base in China, and Chinese soccer players are now being recruited by them. Fitness centers and gyms are becoming increasingly popular in cities. Traditional martial arts such as *tai ji quan* are

popular among the older generation, and people practice early in the morning in parks, squares, and gardens.

Traditional Forms of Theater

Beijing opera (*jingju*) is a world famous traditional art form unique to China (*see pp80–81*). It is highly stylized, and characters wear elaborate costumes with special makeup and masks. Performances usually take place on a simple stage with few props.

The Chinese circus has a worldwide reputation for its highly trained gymnasts who perform breathtaking routines that showcase their unnerving flexibility. Displays of balance often involve household props, such as brooms, plates, and chairs, with one of the most



Actors in a Beijing opera, performing in opulent costumes

popular tricks being performed by 20 or so acrobats piled precariously on a bicycle. These routines are often combined with acts involving caged and tame animals, but the current trend is toward a purer display of acrobatics.

Some forms of traditional dance still exist, especially among China's ethnic groups. Some relate to shamanistic or other religious rituals, and often involve the wearing of special masks.

Shadow Plays & Puppet Theater

Shadow plays (*piyingxi*) are popular, and usually involve the use of leather puppets with jointed limbs. These are manipulated close to a white sheet and lit from behind, throwing their shadows on to the sheet. The performance is accompanied by singing and music. Plays with wooden puppets (*mu'ouxi*) involve elaborate and colorfully dressed marionettes, glove puppets, or puppets on the end of rods.

Traditional Music

Chinese music can be traced back as far as the Shang era. Ancient sets of 65 bells from the 5th century BC have been unearthed. During the Tang dynasty, the traditional musical forms began to take root and music was also an important part of Confucian education.

Traditional instruments include strings, winds, and percussion. String instruments played with the fingers, plectrum, or bow are the Chinese violin, horizontal harp, and many-stringed zithers, such as the *zheng*. The lute-like *pipa* is one of the most important stringed instruments. The most common bamboo flutes are the vertical (*xiao*) and horizontal (*di*). The *hulusu* made from a gourd and bamboo is popularly used in folk music. The *sheng*, one of the oldest Chinese



Crowds enjoying the many bars along Lan Kwai Fong, Hong Kong

instruments, has up to 17 bamboo pipes and a vibrating reed. Another ancient instrument is the earthenware *xun*. Dating back 8,000 years, and sometimes made of bone or ivory, it has a mouthpiece and a series of holes for varying the tones. Percussion

Instruments include gongs, chimes, drums, woodblocks, and xylophones.

Kite Flying

Kite flying is a major hobby in China, especially on public holidays when parks, gardens, and even city squares are crowded with displays of colorful and fantastically shaped kites. Birds

and dragons are the most common kite designs.



A musician strums the lute-like *pipa*

Bars, Discos & Karaoke

Bars, nightclubs, and karaoke lounges have sprung up all over urban China. Some bars specialize in live bands, and these are very popular with expats, foreign visitors, and urban Chinese – be warned that drinks are expensive. Coffee bars are also

increasingly popular with young people, although the older generation remain faithful to their traditional teahouses.

Rock & Pop Music

China's rock scene is young and rebellious, and only really gained a foothold in the 1980s, when it played a central role at the Tian'an Men Square protests. Still not accepted by state-run radio stations, bands rely on the Internet and word of mouth. Chinese pop music is following in the same footsteps as the West, with young singers from TV talent shows like *Chinese Idol* and *Voice of China* making it big nationwide.

Canto-pop, Hong Kong's popular music tradition, has sugary lyrics of love and loss, sung in Cantonese. Many Canto-pop singers become hugely popular pin-ups, as have a new generation of Mando-pop stars, singing in Mandarin, from Taiwan and the mainland.

Cinema

China has traditionally produced many good films, based mainly on folk tales, love stories, or strong patriotic themes. Chinese cinema has also embraced international tastes, including those of both Hollywood and Bollywood, and movies such as Zhang Yimou's popular *Hero*, released in 2004, blended martial arts with impressive special effects. All cities show foreign movies, although they are often censored.



Delicate kites for sale catching the breeze from the Yangzi, Wuhan

SPORTS & SPECIALIST HOLIDAYS

As the Olympic host for 2008, Beijing was the showpiece city for a nation that celebrates sporting heroes with the fervor once reserved for political icons – soccer and basketball have become big spectator sports. The spending power and leisure interests of China's booming middle classes translate into more sporting choices for visitors too – there's skiing, golf,

rock climbing, and more. Courses in martial arts can be found in most tourist centers, or head to the hallowed halls of the Shaolin Temple to find a master. Organized tours ply the major sights of the country, but for a really memorable experience consider booking a trip that has a fascinating focus, whether photography, whitewater rafting, costume, or horse trekking.

The Olympic Games

Infrastructure improvements and massive construction projects transformed Beijing in the run-up to 2008 Olympics. The city promised a "Green Olympics, Hi-tech Olympics, People's Olympics," so visitors enjoyed acres of parkland and futuristic stadiums. Half of the main Olympic Park area, at the apex of an extended imperial axis running north-south through the city, is being turned into woodland and lawns.

At the 2008 Olympics, 43 world records and 132 new Olympic records were set. China won 100 medals, 51 of them gold, and so the Games were declared a logistical success.

In 2010, the Asian Games took place in Guangzhou; in 2014, Nanjing will host the Youth Olympics; and in 2015, Beijing's National Stadium will host the World Athletics Championships.

Spectator Sports

China has gone soccer-mad. Although ancient records describe a game of kick-ball with three players on each side, and paintings show a Song emperor juggling a ball with his feet, soccer is a fairly recent phenomenon here. The Chinese Professional Soccer League was established in 1994, and the **China Super League**, an elite group of teams, kicked off in 2004. The Super League has a massive fan base, but has run into problems with corruption and sponsorship. Basketball is also gaining in popularity, its profile boosted by Chinese

NBA stars such as the towering Yao Ming. Beijing and Shanghai host the annual **NBA China Games** in August, featuring two of the top US basketball teams.

The annual Rugby Sevens tournament in March is a massive – and very rowdy – event in Hong Kong, with international teams playing almost 70 games over three days. The **Hong Kong Rugby Football Union** plays regular fixtures during the rugby season, which runs from November through March.

Both Shanghai and Beijing host tennis tournaments – Shanghai has the **ATP Rolex Masters** and Beijing the **China Open**.

Shanghai hosted the **Formula One Grand Prix** for the first time in 2004. Tickets are expensive, but 80 percent of the circuit is visible from the stands.

For a Chinese flavor, track down the Minority Nationalities Traditional Sports Games. Ethnic groups play unusual sports from dragon boat racing to elephant tug-of-war.

Golf

Despite initial Communist Party reluctance to embrace this elitist, land-hungry sport, golf is quite popular in China. Visiting golfers can enjoy over 200 courses nationwide. **Mission Hills** has 15 separate courses in two tournament locations at Shenzhen and Haikou; while the course on Jade Dragon Snow Mountain near Lijiang, Yunnan, is one of the world's highest. Perhaps the most alluring is the beautiful **Spring City** course near Kunming. Most courses are open to the public, and prices are similar to those in Western countries.

Swimming

China has plenty of coastline but lacks the beach culture of its southeast Asian neighbors. However, Hainan Island is touted as China's Hawaii, and the resorts there are improving fast, while Beihai in Guangxi boasts a very long stretch of sand. Closer to the



Horse trek up the steep sides of Tiger Leaping Gorge, Yunnan



Traversing the sand dunes of Mingsha Shan by camel, near Dunhuang, Gansu

capital, enjoy Beidaihe, long the Communist Party's summer retreat, or the seashores of the lovely city of Qingdao.

Downhill Skiing

The best natural snow and ski resorts lie in Heilongjiang and Jilin provinces. **Yabuli**, about 100 miles (160 km) from Harbin, is one of the most established resorts, and **Club Med** has opened its first winter sports resort there. Several upmarket ski resorts are also opening at Changbai Shan. In the Beijing suburbs there are at least 10 slopes, mostly with man-made snow, and Shanghai has one of the world's largest indoor facilities. Large feet may cause problems with equipment rentals, and watch your back – complete novices abound.

Choosing a Tour

A multitude of tour companies ferry groups of tourists through the top sights of China. If you are thinking of booking a tour, do your research carefully; it is essential to find one that suits you well. Beyond the obvious essentials of types of accommodation, transport, the size of the group, and the itinerary, be sure to ask about the tipping policy, which can sometimes add a sizeable unexpected cost to your trip. Also query the frequency of shopping stops,

the bane of all organized trips in China. These detours (from which your guide may be earning a commission) can cut sightseeing time short and will become increasingly boring.

There's a wide choice of tour companies to travel with. **Abercrombie and Kent** is an established international group that has provided well-organized trips for decades. **Steppes Travel**, which is particularly strong on the Silk Routes and Tibet, provides suggested itineraries that it is happy to adapt. The company also organizes special interest tours, such as those that seek out the intricate embroidery and beautiful textiles of Tibet and Guangxi. **Mongol Global Tours** organizes trips focusing on costumes and special itineraries for photographers. **Myths and Mountains** has some well thought-out itineraries that cover Yunnan and Tibet, and also organizes horse trekking. **Wild China** organizes tours

nationwide, including trips to remote Tibetan monasteries in western Sichuan and through the dense jungle and rural hamlets of Xishuangbanna.

Bespoke Beijing is an excellent resource for tours, excursions, and guided walks in and around Beijing and Tianjin. They also arrange hotel and car bookings and restaurant reservations.

Train Spotting

With its extensive rail network, China has been a favorite destination of train lovers for years, particularly as it continued to run steam locomotives well after other nations discontinued their use. The last line to run steam, the Jitong railway, no longer does, but tours to highly industrialized areas still operate, as many private lines at mining pits still use steam. China now has a national super high-speed rail network, which has revolutionized rail travel (*see pp616–17*).



Boarding a traditional raft kept afloat by inflated sheep stomachs, Yellow River



Hot air balloon floating amongst the karst peaks of Yangshuo, Guangxi

Cycling

Although the curse of the automobile threatens the bicycle kingdom, China remains a great place to saddle up. You will see more from a bike than a bus, and gain greater insight into the lives of the locals. A well-organized tour should provide alternative transport if you become exhausted or fall ill, and will have all the fix-it gear and able mechanics to deal with problem chains and derailleurs. Itineraries are set at different levels, from easy to challenging, and some companies provide bikes, while others ask that you bring your own wheels to keep costs down. For biking tours, consider specialist operators like **Bike China Adventures** who are based in Chengdu, **Bike Shanghai** and **Cycle China**.

In rural areas, renting a bike for a day or two is the best way to see sights just outside of town and get a feel for countryside life. There are plenty of bike-hire shops in most places, and many hotels can also arrange bike rental. In cities remember to park in designated areas (retain the token) and keep to cycle lanes where possible.

Martial Arts

China attracts thousands of martial arts enthusiasts hoping to find the roots to their practice. Many head for famous Shaolin Temple in Henan (see p164), where Bodhidharma is said to have first taught the monks exercises that developed into *shaolin*

quan during the 6th century. The temple is surrounded by kung fu schools, which have courses that range from a week to six months or longer. The less well-known monastery on Wudang Shan in Hubei (see p278), said to be the home of *tai ji quan*, also has schools of martial arts.

Most forms of kung fu taught in China are watered-down versions of the original martial forms, which have become popular and effective ways to keep fit. If you are looking for pure fighting technique, you may have more luck overseas, or possibly, in Hong Kong. In Beijing, Shanghai, and other big cities, courses are advertised in listings magazines, but although there are plenty of sports institutes in China with classes, you may have difficulty finding an English-speaking instructor. Head to one of the traveler havens, such as Yangshuo, Dali, or Lijiang, and you are certain to find capable instruction in English. Of course, you can always try joining the leagues

of kung fu practitioners at daybreak in the nation's parks, particularly if your interest is *tai ji quan*.

If you want to fight with more than your bare hands, paintballing is growing in popularity – try the listings magazines in the large cities. For those who really need to let off steam, anti-aircraft guns and AK-47s are available for renting at the firing range en route from Beijing to the Great Wall at Badaling.

Climbing

Most of China's sacred and scenic mountains, such as Tai Shan and Huang Shan, have steps, cable cars, and crowds all the way to the summit. Some of the mountains have less-used paths that make for pleasant hiking, but if you are a serious mountaineer, you will need to head to western China. The true roof of the world awaits in Tibet – topping Mount Everest will require patience and official approval, but treks to Everest base camp in the Rongbuk Valley are offered by several travel operators. Other spectacular climbs include Gongga Shan in Sichuan and also Muztaghata in Xinjiang (an easier climb and you can ski down), but, again, seek permission first.

More feasible is rock climbing at Yangshuo in Guangxi, where the limestone crags that inspired poets down the centuries now inspire climbers up the peaks. Asia's fastest developing sport climbing area combines a wide range



A class of soon-to-be kung fu masters, Shaolin Temple, Henan



Panda at the Breeding Center near Chengdu

of climbs with beautiful views, winding rivers and great accommodations.

A few intrepid spelunkers have been exploring the extensive karst cave network of Guangxi. A small industry of caving tours has developed, although, for the most part, the itineraries are geared to the experienced spelunker.

Trekking & Camping

The fascinating southwest offers some of the best trekking possibilities in the country, such as exploring the jungle of Xishuangbanna or visiting remote Tibetan monasteries. Horse-riding trips are possible

in the heavenly mountains of Xinjiang and the national parks of Sichuan. Check with specialist tour companies and the **Northwest Yunnan Ecotourism Association**.

Whitewater rafting trips are popular in

the southwest and in Tibet. If you are thinking of signing up, check the company's credentials and past history, and ensure that high-quality helmets, life-jackets, and, if necessary, wetsuits are provided.

Camping independently in China is tricky, and not recommended. However, the lack of legal camping facilities may be about to change, because caravan culture has just reached China. RVing is still in its birthing stages and as the industry develops, trailer parks and camp grounds are certain to appear. Restrictions on foreign drivers mean that motorhoming is not yet an option for non-residents.

Spot a panda at the Wolong Nature Reserve (see p375) or in the Breeding Center (see p366), where efforts are made to conserve the threatened species. Bird-watching tours head to Qinghai province for Bird Island on Qinghai Hu (see p503), and to parks such as Zhalong National Reserve (see p458), in the northeastern province of Heilongjiang, and Xixi Wetlands Park near Hangzhou, a natural sanctuary for birds and wildlife.

China's environment was savaged in the 20th century by political campaigns to move mountains with manpower; in the 21st, rampant economic growth threatens both biodiversity and cultural diversity, and conservation efforts are growing to save China's unique wildlife and ways of life.

To support a responsible approach to tourism and the environment, consider tours and ecolodges offered by organizations such as the Northwest Yunnan Ecotourism Association, based near Lijiang in Yunnan.

DIRECTORY

Sports

Basketball

nbchina.com

Formula One

icsh.sh.cn

Rugby

hkrugby.com

Soccer

sinosoc.com

Tennis

chinaopen.com.cn

rolexmasters.com

Golf

HSBC Champions Golf

hsbcgolf.com

Mission Hills

1 Mission Hills Road, Shenzhen.
Tel (0755) 2802 0888. 1 Mission Hills Blvd, Haikou.
Tel (0898) 6868 3888.
missionhillschina.com

Spring City

Tangchi, Yilang, Yunnan, PRC 652103.
Tel (0871) 6767 1188.
springcityresort.com

Downhill Skiing

Yabuli

100 miles (160 km) east of Harbin, Heilongjiang.
Tel (0451) 5345 8888.
yabuliski.com

Tour Companies

Abercrombie & Kent

abercrombiekent.com
In the US:
1520 Kensington Road, Suite 212, Oak Brook, IL 60523-2156.
Tel 1-800 554 7016.
In the UK:
80-82 Cheapside, London EC2V 6EB.
Tel (0845) 485 1532.

Bespoke Beijing

B510, 107 Dongsi Bei Dajie, Dongcheng District, Beijing.
Tel (010) 6400 0133.
bespoke-beijing.com

Mongol Global Tours

California, USA 90630.
Tel 866 225 0577.
mongolglobaltours.com

Myths & Mountains

Nevada, USA 89451.
Tel 1-800 670 6984.
journeystochina.com

Steppes Travel

51 Castle St, Cirencester, Gloucestershire, UK GL7 1QD.
Tel (01285) 880 980.
steppesttravel.co.uk

Tibetan Connections
tibetanconnections.com

Wild China

Room 803 Oriental Palace, 9 East Dongfang Road, North Dongganhuo Road, Chaoyang District, Beijing.
Tel (010) 6465 6602.
wildchina.com

Cycle Tours

Bike China Adventures

6 Yi Guan Miao Fang Cao Jie, Wangfu Huayuan 64-1-17, Chengdu.
Tel 1-800 818 1778.
bikechina.com

Bike Shanghai

bikeshanghai.com

Cycle China

cyclechina.com

Ecotourism

Northwest Yunnan Ecotourism Assoc.

Tel (0139) 8882 6672.
northwestyunnan.com





SURVIVAL GUIDE

Practical Information **598-611**

Travel Information **612-621**

PRACTICAL INFORMATION

China is going through an explosion in both international and domestic tourism. While there have been gradual improvements in the quality of tourist services, some of the remoter sights can still be difficult to reach independently, and most accessible sights get very crowded, especially during the summer season. Due to the absence of a nationwide non-profit network of tourist information centers, visitors often have to rely on hotels for guidance. In the larger

cities the tourist infrastructure, including transportation, hotels, and restaurants, is on a par with international standards. The remoter areas, however, provide fairly basic accommodations and may not be equipped to cater to the needs of the international tourist. Communication also poses difficulties, as English is not spoken widely and its usage is generally restricted to major cities, tour groups, four- and five-star hotels, and restaurants catering to tourists.

When to Go

Although there are great climatic disparities within China, spring and fall are generally the best months to travel. The peak tourist season, however, is during summer (June to September), best avoided if you don't like the heat – it is baking hot in North China, steamy in the Yangzi region, and sweltering in South China. Winter is fiercely cold in North China, particularly in the northeast. Winters in South China are more pleasant, especially on the perennially warm Hainan Island and parts of Yunnan province. Climate and rainfall charts are found on pages 54–5. Planning a trip to coincide with the holiday and festival periods (*see pp50–53*) can lead to a fun and colorful trip experiencing China at its liveliest. However, tickets for air, train, and bus transport can be very difficult to acquire,

as half of China will be traveling as well. Tourist sights are swamped with local sightseers, and most hotels and guest-houses raise their rates.

What to Take

The clothes you need will depend on the time of year that you visit. In northern China, from November until March, you will require a down jacket, gloves, sweater, warm socks, thermal leggings, sturdy footwear, and lip balm. During the same season in the south, you still need a sweater and warm clothes, even as far south as Hong Kong. In summer, across most of China, you only need loose-fitting shirts or t-shirts, and thin trousers. Shorts will also do, though not many Chinese wear them. Bring a first-aid kit (*see p606*), raincoat, sun hat, deodorant, pocket knife, flashlight, and some good reading material.

Advance Booking

The boom in domestic tourism means it is advisable to book ahead year-round, but especially during the peak holiday periods between May 1 and October 1, and the Chinese New Year. Booking in advance using the Internet can secure you good deals on accommodations. Unless traveling on short intercity routes, train tickets should be bought a few days before travel, as seats can be in short supply. Train tickets can only be purchased up to five days in advance of the day of travel. Bus tickets need not be booked in advance, but airplane tickets should be, especially during major holiday periods.

Visas & Passports

A passport, valid for at least six months, and a visa are necessary to enter the People's Republic of China. Most foreign nationals don't require a visa for entering Hong Kong and Macau but will need one if traveling on to mainland China. Chinese embassies and consulates around the world issue a standard single-entry, 30-day visa, although multiple-entry visas, and 60-day visas can also be obtained, depending on the purpose of your visit. Visas cannot be issued at the border. When completing the visa application form, you must clearly specify what parts of China you plan to visit. Avoid mentioning Tibet, or Xinjiang, even if you plan to visit these



Temperate weather at a tea garden in Chengdu

regions, as you may be questioned about your occupation and intent of visit – the list you provide is non-binding. Always carry your passport, as it is an essential document for checking into hotels, and the Public Security Bureau (see p604) may insist on seeing it. Photocopying the visa page and the personal information page will speed up replacement in case your passport is lost or stolen. Visa extensions are sometimes granted for 30 days by the foreign affairs branch of local PSBs throughout the country. Note that heavy fines are levied if you overstay your permitted period in China.



Shang-dynasty
bronze tripod

Permits

Some areas of China are either totally or partially off-limits, and may require a permit from the PSB, include Lushun (Liaoning), Xanadu (Inner Mongolia), and parts of Shennongjia (Hubei). Check with the PSB before going to western Sichuan, where the rules of access are not fixed.

All travel to Tibet has to be arranged beforehand through a travel agency in China that will arrange a permit for you. If you want to travel outside of Lhasa, the agency will have to arrange a tour guide, private vehicle and driver, and any additional permits. It is easiest to arrange this from Xining or Chengdu.

Embassies & Consulates

Most countries have embassies in Beijing and consulates in Hong Kong, Shanghai, and Guangzhou, and to a lesser extent, in Chengdu, Chongqing, Qingdao, and Dalian. Consular offices can re-issue passports and assist in case of emergencies, such as theft, imprisonment, and hospitalization. Your hotel can put you in touch with your embassy or consulate, or try www.travelchinaguide.com.

Customs Information

When entering China, visitors are entitled to a duty-free allowance of 70 fluid ounces (2 liters) of wine or spirits, 400 cigarettes, and a certain amount of gold and silver. Foreign currency exceeding US\$5,000, or its equivalent, must be declared.

Items that are prohibited include fresh fruit, rare animals and plants, and arms and ammunition. Chinese law specifies limits on the export of certain items, such as herbal medicines.

Also, objects pre-dating 1795 cannot be taken out of China, while antiques made after that date will need to

have an official seal affixed. Although foreign visitors are largely left alone, it is not advisable to take in politically controversial literature, especially to sensitive areas such as Tibet where there have been instances of books being confiscated.

Immunization

Ensure that all of your routine vaccinations, such as tetanus and polio, are up to date. It is also wise to get vaccinated against hepatitis A and B, and typhoid. Only visitors traveling from countries where yellow fever is endemic must provide proof of vaccination against the disease. Malaria medication is a good idea for those visiting rural areas, especially Yunnan and Hainan, as is a Japanese encephalitis vaccination. Try www.mdtravehealth.com for up-to-date travel-health information and advice on immunization.

Insurance

It is advisable to take out an insurance policy for medical emergencies as well as theft before leaving home, checking with your insurance company that it is entirely valid in China. The policy will cover the

DIRECTORY

China International Travel Service (CITS)

W cits.net

Beijing

1 Dongdan Beidajie.
Tel (010) 6522 2991.

Dalian

Central Plaza Hotel,
145 Zhongshan Lu.
Tel (0411) 8368 7843.

Guangzhou

185 Huanshi Xi Lu.
Tel (020) 8666 6889.

Shanghai

1277 Beijing Xi Lu.
Tel (021) 6289 8899.

Suzhou

251 Ganjiang Xi Lu.
Tel (0512) 6515 1369.

Xi'an

50 Chang'an Bei Lu.
Tel (029) 8524 1864.

loss of baggage, tickets, and, to a certain extent, cash and checks. However, before signing an insurance policy, look for one that excludes coverages you will not require during your stay in China. Insurance is also essential to cover any adventure activity or sport that you may undertake during your trip.



Classic *tai hu* rock formations lining the shore in Yu Yuan (Jade Garden), Shanghai

Tourist Information

With the exception of the major cities, China has yet to recognize the value of professional Tourist Information Centers, either at home or abroad. Those that exist in Beijing and Shanghai are often under-funded, poorly staffed, and unreliable, although they are useful for obtaining free maps. The state-approved **China International Travel Service (CITS)** (see p599), originally set up to cater to the needs of foreign visitors, today functions as any other local operator, offering nothing more than tours, tickets, and rented cars. A limited choice of government-run travel agencies abroad promote China tourism. However, they fail to offer professional and unbiased advice, instead steering customers toward group tours and standard hotels.

Admission Charges

Virtually every sight in China carries an admission fee. While many major museums are now free to enter, most temples and parks, smaller museums, palaces, historical monuments, sacred mountains, and wildlife reserves can only be entered after paying a fee. While temples charge anything from ¥5 to ¥80, prices of all other entry tickets vary. It is often hard to see where the money goes as many of China's temples and monuments appear severely neglected. Non-Chinese visitors often have to pay a higher admission charge, and you may

still encounter a foreign visitor surcharge. Most sights, such as parks and temples, simply have a main ticket for entry (*men piao*), but further tickets may need to be purchased for access to individual sights within the complex. Alternatively, a "through ticket" (*tao piao*) can be bought for access to all the sights. Occasionally there are further fees for storing bags. The sale of tickets often ceases half an hour or so before the sight closes for the day. Guides swarm around entrances to major sights and will latch onto you, even if you're not interested. It is wise to test their English first, as many just repeat fixed lines, parrot fashion, relating to the sight in question, and are unable to answer further queries.

Holidays & Opening Hours

Even though New Year's day (January 1) is a public holiday in China, the main holiday periods are during the Lunar New Year (Spring Festival) and October 1 (National Day) holidays (the May holiday is just a single day). Each holiday period officially lasts three days, although most businesses and banks remain shut for seven days. Accommodation prices rise as domestic tourism peaks. Tourist sights, however, remain open during these times.

Language

The official language of China is *Putonghua* (literally "common tongue"), based on the dialect spoken in Beijing, and known outside China as Mandarin Chinese. *Putonghua* doesn't specifically belong to any one region, and is used across the country for communication

between speakers of China's numerous dialects. Unlike other dialects, such as Cantonese, *Putonghua*

can be used throughout China. Since the vast majority of Chinese people do not understand English, it is largely useless for communication outside of hotels. The tonal nature of *Putonghua* makes it difficult for English speakers to become accustomed to the language. Pinyin, a romanization system, helps in the recognition of sounds and has diacritical marks to indicate tone. A few basic phrases in *Putonghua* are listed on pages 656–60.

Facilities for the Disabled

If you are a wheelchair user, China is not a recommended destination for you. With the exception of Hong Kong and, to some extent, Macau, China offers very basic facilities for the disabled, both in public transport and accommodation. Public buildings and places of interest are rarely fitted with ramps or rails, although this is slowly improving. Many of the pavements in urban areas are littered with obstacles and occasional potholes, and have high curbs, making wheelchair access troublesome.

The scarcity of safe crossing points on urban roads drives pedestrians onto overhead walkways; otherwise they have to join the crowds surging through the traffic. Rooms with services for disabled visitors are only available at the better hotels, although elevators are common in most hotels over three stories high.



Road sign in both pinyin and Chinese characters



Façade of the impressive Shaanxi History Museum, Xi'an

Facilities for Children

The Chinese love children, and they are usually welcome everywhere in China. Even though baby-changing rooms are extremely rare, and very few restaurants have child seats, traveling with very young children can have its advantages as people will generally go out of their way to accommodate you in most places and situations. Supermarkets are well supplied with diapers, baby wipes, bottles, creams, medicine, clothing, infant milk formula, and baby food. However, the baby food is of a sweeter variety and nearly always processed. The Chinese very rarely give pacifiers to their children, but you can find them in department stores in larger cities. Also bring a set of plastic cutlery for your child, as some restaurants and eating places only have chopsticks.

Photography

Everyone in urban China uses smartphone or digital cameras now, so film-developing stores are, as elsewhere, a novelty rather than the norm. While 35mm color print film is available almost everywhere, don't expect to find color slide or high-speed film outside of the large cities. Camera batteries are widely available in department stores in big cities, though it is best to bring your own supply. Many photo stores in Hong Kong, Macau, and mainland China provide transferring of images from a digital camera onto a disc.

Photographing people in China is generally not a problem, but it helps to first ask for their permission. Photography is rarely allowed within temple halls and museums, or at archeological sites, and signs indicate where photography is not permitted. In case you don't find a sign with such restrictions marked in English, it is advisable to ask



Children with their parents enjoying a meal

around. Photographing politically-sensitive images may result in the confiscation of your film and it goes without saying that photography of military sites is banned. As far as the regulations go, photography from aircrafts is banned, and so is taking photographs of airports, harbors, and railroads. However, barring the military installations, most of the other restrictions are seldom enforced.

If you are discreet and respectful, then you should encounter no problems.

Electricity

The electrical current in China is 220 volts. You will see a variety of plugs in China, including two



Plugs with two and three prongs

flat prongs (the same as American plugs), or three flat prongs (the same as Australian ones). The British three square-pin arrangement is rare outside of smart hotels, so it is advisable to carry a travel conversion plug, readily available

in most of the larger cities. A power-surge cable will protect laptops against voltage fluctuations, which are common in China. It is best to avoid cheap batteries, as they are very short-lived. Instead, buy a battery charger and rechargeable batteries, which can be easily found in most Chinese stores. Blackouts are not unheard of in China, so, given the erratic powercuts, it is wise to carry a flashlight.

Time & Calendar

Despite its size, China occupies only one time zone, and there is no daylight saving time. Midday in Beijing is also midday in far-flung parts of China, including Lhasa and Ürümqi, which are along the same latitude as countries that are two and three hours behind China. China time is seven or eight hours ahead of Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), two or three hours behind Australian Eastern Standard Time, 15 or 16 hours ahead of US Pacific Standard Time, and 12 or 13 hours ahead of US Eastern Standard Time. The Western Gregorian Calendar is used for all official work, although the lunar calendar is still used for calculating the dates of festivals.

Measurements & Conversion Charts

The metric system is most commonly used in all parts of China.

Imperial to Metric

1 inch = 2.5 centimeters
1 foot = 30 centimeters
1 mile = 1.6 kilometers
1 ounce = 28 grams
1 pound = 454 grams
1 pint (US) = 0.473 liters
1 gallon (US) = 3.785 liters

Metric to Imperial

1 centimeter = 0.4 inches
1 meter = 3 feet 3 inches
1 kilometer = 0.6 miles
100 gram = 3.53 ounces
1 kilogram = 2.2 pounds
1 liter = 2.11 pints (US)

Etiquette

Despite rampant modernization, China remains a traditional society governed by strong family values. Although the cities and towns give the outward impression of Western modernity, their inhabitants retain a deep-seated and family-oriented conservatism. Confucian values promote respect for elders and those in positions of authority, and reinforce notions of conformity. Religious observance is also an important part of people's lives, but is largely separate from mainstream social behavior. The Chinese are, above all, welcoming and generous, and visitors are often amazed at their hospitality. If invited to someone's home, a gift of chocolates, French wine, or a carton of cigarettes will be greatly appreciated.

Greeting People

While shaking hands is not customary in China, Chinese men may shake your hand or expect their hand to be shaken by foreign visitors. Although the Chinese are not particularly tactile in their greetings, bodily contact is quite common between friends, even of the same sex. It is quite common to see young men and women walking arm in arm, or with their arm around another's shoulder. The usual Chinese greeting is *ni hao* (how are you?) or *nimen hao* in its plural form, to which you reply *ni hao* or *nimen hao* – the polite form is *nin/ninmen hao*. Chinese people can be very direct, and will not blanch at asking you how much you earn, how old you are, or whether you are married. Such questions are seen as nothing more than taking a friendly interest in a new acquaintance. When proffering business cards, the Chinese do so politely, using the fingertips of both hands, and receive cards

in the same manner. It is a good idea to take some business cards, with your particulars in Chinese on one side and in English on the reverse, as there will be many occasions to give them away.

Body Language

Once they reach the age of 30 or 40, the Chinese tend to dress conservatively, favoring dark and inconspicuous colors such as brown and black. In cities and towns, people wear jeans, t-shirts, and skirts, and many youngsters also dye their hair. Locals expect foreign visitors to dress and behave a little flamboyantly, so don't worry too much about what you wear, but try to avoid looking scruffy. It is also acceptable for both sexes to wear shorts in hot weather. On the beach, nudity

and women sunbathing topless are rarely seen as Chinese beach culture is quite modest.

Face

Reserved in manner and expression, the Chinese also harbor strong feelings of personal pride and respect. The maintenance of pride and the avoidance of shame is known as saving face. Loss of face (*mianzi*) creates great discomfort and embarrassment for the Chinese, so although you may often be frustrated by bureaucratic red-tape and delays, remember that arguing may make matters worse. Instead, try tackling difficult situations by being firm but polite, and use confrontation only as a last resort.

Places of Worship

Although there are no dress codes for Buddhist, Daoist, or Confucian temples, visitors to mosques should dress respectfully – avoid wearing shorts or short skirts – and cover their upper arms. Buddhist, Daoist, and Confucian temples are relaxed about visitors wandering about, but do be considerate toward worshippers. Also, check whether you can

take photographs within temple halls, as this is often not permitted. Taking photographs in courtyards, however, is usually not a problem. Some Buddhist and Daoist temples are active, and you should show respect towards the resident monks.



Advice for
burning incense



The courtyard of the Jade Buddha Temple in Shanghai

Dos & Don'ts

If invited out for dinner, expect to see the diners competing to pay the entire bill, rather than dividing it up between them. It is a good idea to join in the scramble for the bill, or at least make an attempt – your gesture will be appreciated, though almost certainly declined. The Chinese avoid talking about politics; it is best to follow suit.

Annoyances

The Chinese habit of staring, especially in smaller towns and rural areas, can be a little annoying. However, the intent is rarely hostile. Staring was common even in Beijing until the 1990s, and although it is rare in cities today, it helps to remember that China was closed to foreign nationals until the early 1980s.

Another annoyance that visitors face in smaller towns are the constant calls of "Hellooo!" or *laowai* (foreigner). It is best to either ignore them or smile, as saying hello often results in bursts of laughter. In large cities, people often strike up conversation to practice their English. Sometimes, art students try and coerce you into visiting over-priced art galleries, which you should firmly decline to do.

Although line-ups are beginning to replace the usual mêlée at ticket offices, be prepared for a lot of pushing and shoving.

Since the outbreak of SARS in 2002, public health organizations have made considerable efforts to curb the habit of spitting. It is still widespread, however, especially in rural areas. Spitting is common on buses and trains, and it is not considered rude to spit in mid-conversation, so do not take offense.

Smoking & Alcohol

Smoking is now banned in public places in China, such as restaurants, hotels, railway stations and theaters. However, as the world's largest producer and consumer of cigarettes (*xiangyan*), these rules are difficult to enforce in China. Despite the appearance of no-smoking zones, many people choose to ignore them, and towns and cities remain shrouded in a haze of cigarette smoke. Many business owners resent banning their customers from smoking on their premises. Smoking is also banned on domestic flights and in train



A spirit consumed at business banquets



Bric-à-brac to be haggled over on display at a street market in Tianjin

carriages. The Chinese are very generous when it comes to offering cigarettes, so remember to be equally generous in return. They also enjoy drinking alcohol, and there is no taboo against moderate intoxication.

The usual accompaniment during a meal is beer (*piljia*), or white spirit (*baijiu*).

People in cities are increasingly drinking wine, and it is available in most large supermarkets. If someone raises a toast to you (*ganbei!*), it is good form for you to toast the person back at a later stage.

Bargaining

As a foreign national in China, it is essential to bargain (*jiangjia*). You may often be overcharged – sometimes by large amounts – in markets and anywhere else where prices are not indicated. In some restaurants, the English menu has more expensive rates than the Chinese one. You may be able to bargain to reduce your hotel room-rate, especially during the low season. When bargaining, there is no need to be aggressive. Instead, firmly state your price – which should never be unrealistic – and walk away if the vendor doesn't agree. Shopkeepers will often agree to the price once they realize they're losing a potential sale. The prices in large shops and government emporia (*guoying shangdian*) are usually fixed.

Tipping

Tipping is rare in China – there is no obligation to leave a tip (*xiaofei*) and people don't usually expect one. Some smarter restaurants, especially in Hong Kong, Macau, and the main Chinese cities, include a service charge on the bill.

Begging

China's imbalanced economic progress and huge population of rural poor have resulted in large numbers of beggars all over the country, especially in cities. Foreign visitors naturally attract their attention, and groups of children are often sent by their parents to extract money. The best strategy is to ignore them and walk away.



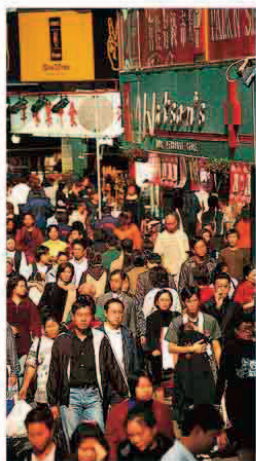
A beggar in Lhasa with colorful Buddhist regalia

Personal Security & Health

The Police Force in China is called the Public Security Bureau (*gonganju*), abbreviated to PSB. Foreign nationals are unlikely to encounter the PSB, unless extending their visa, applying for a permit to a restricted area, or reporting loss or theft.

China is a police state, so the PSB is riddled with corruption and overwhelming bureaucracy. Not all police stations (*paichusuo*) have English-speaking staff, so try to take along an interpreter if reporting a crime, although it is best to contact your embassy or consulate first for guidance.

Throughout mainland China, call 110 for the police. Protect your valuables and important documents at all times, stay and eat in clean places, and drink only mineral water. For medical attention, it is better to opt for a private clinic rather than one of the many government hospitals.



Crowds in the busy shopping district of Causeway Bay, Hong Kong

General Precautions

Traveling in China is generally safe. Even though crime has burgeoned since the 1980s economic liberalization, with millions of unemployed migrants flocking to the cities, foreign visitors are unlikely to be the victims of crime, apart from petty theft. Tourists on buses and trains, particularly those in the hard-seat class (see p617) and on overnight journeys, are tempting targets for thieves. Guard your camera and valuables, wear a money belt at all times, and secure your luggage to the rack on overnight train journeys.

Hotels are, more or less, a lot more secure than dormitories,

even though it is not unusual for things to go missing from hotel rooms. You could use the safes or storage areas that most hotels offer, but if you do so, insist on a receipt. If staying in a dormitory, never leave your essentials and important documents lying around, and be cautious about giving too many details to fellow travelers.

When walking in crowded streets, avoid wearing anything expensive or eye-catching, and keep your wallet in the bottom of your bag, but never in a backpack. Be discreet when taking out your wallet; it is best to carry only as much cash as you need for the day. Keep an eye on your belongings while visiting public washrooms, as quite a few travelers have had very unpleasant experiences.

Keep cash, traveler's checks, passport, and visa documents in a money belt – ones that lie flat and are meant to be worn under clothing are best. Also, remember to make photocopies of the personal information and China visa pages of your passport and any other important documents and store them separately from the originals.

Security

Hosting the Olympics saw China upgrade security at airports, railway and metro stations, and at some sights, but it is rarely intrusive. At certain sights, you will be asked to deposit your bag before making a visit. Always carry your passport with you for identification.

Women Travelers

China is usually regarded as a very safe destination for women. In general, Chinese men are respectful toward women, and it is unlikely for them to experience any serious form of sexual harassment. That said, never take your safety for granted. Traveling in a group is always wiser, as lone travelers are more likely to be mugged or assaulted. However, if you do travel alone, stay on your guard when visiting rural and far-flung areas, and avoid wandering about alone in quiet and deserted places, especially after dark.

As far as clothing goes, it is best to observe the clothing and behavior of local women, and adapt as closely as possible. It helps to dress modestly, especially in Muslim regions and rural areas.

If possible, avoid hotel dormitories and opt for single rooms in hotels located near the center of town on well-lit streets. To avert an undesirable encounter, carry a whistle or learn a few basic self-defense moves.

Gay and Lesbian Travelers

The gay and lesbian scenes in China's main cities, in particular Shanghai, Beijing, and Hong Kong, are growing and diversifying, with clubs, bars, and venues increasing in number. However, China is still a highly conventional society, and homosexuality is largely disapproved of and misunderstood.



Beijing PSB officer

Homosexuality is legal, but there are no laws to protect gays, and police periodically crack down on meeting places. Even in cities, it is inadvisable for gays and lesbians to be open with their sexuality, despite the tactile relationship many Chinese have with friends of the same sex.

Hospitals & Medical Facilities

It is important to take out comprehensive medical insurance before arriving in China. China's state hospitals vary considerably in quality; the better-equipped hospitals (*yi yuan*) can be found in the cities and large towns, but even at the best, communication can be problematic. Cities with large expatriate communities have private hospitals, where there are exclusive clinics with English-speaking staff to attend to non-Chinese visitors. Consider contacting your embassy for a list of approved hospitals. In general, medical services are reasonably cheap throughout China, but many hospitals may levy a certain amount of "foreigner surcharge" that could ensure better care. Whatever the type

of institution, you will be expected to pay cash at the time of being admitted.

Pharmacies (*yaodian*), identified by green crosses, are found all over China. Many of them stock both Western medicine (*xi yao*) and Chinese medicine (*zhong yao*), and can treat you for minor injuries or ailments. Take adequate supplies of any prescription drugs you require, and also remember to take the chemical – not brand – name of all prescriptions, in case you need to restock. In large cities such as Beijing and Shanghai, prescriptions may not be required for a range of medicines, including antibiotics and sleeping pills.

Some large hotels have in-house clinics to help guests with diagnosis, medical assistance, and prescriptions. Large modern hotels may also be able to provide a Chinese speaker to accompany you to the hospital.

Those interested in traditional Chinese medicine (*see p238*) for treating chronic ailments can visit the traditional institutes attached to local hospitals and medical colleges. Some hotels, too, offer traditional Chinese treatments.



Distinctive green cross of a pharmacy



Sign pointing the way to the facilities

Public Bathrooms

Public bathrooms are typically of the squat variety and are squalid, filthy, and rarely cleaned, unless watched over by an attendant. There is little privacy – doorless cubicles, separated by low walls, are the norm. Toilet paper is a rarity – don't forget to carry your own

supply. Toilet paper should be put in the receptacle, if provided, rather than down the toilet, as septic systems are often unable to handle paper products. You will be expected to pay a few *jiao* for using the facilities. Use hotel and fast-food restaurant bathrooms whenever you get the opportunity.

Hygiene Tips

The rigors of travel require a few extra hygiene considerations. Carry a small bar of handsoap or a tube of concentrated camping soap with you all the time. A packet of wet wipes always comes in handy.

Warts are easily picked up from poorly cleaned shower stalls. You will often find a pair of flip-flops under your hotel bed. These are meant to be worn in the shower, but you might consider packing a pair of your own.

DIRECTORY

In an Emergency

Tel Police 110.
Tel Fire 119.
Tel Ambulance 120.

Hospital & Medical Facilities

Beijing

Hong Kong International Medical Clinic, 9th floor, Office Tower, Hong Kong Macau Center, Swissotel, 2 Chaoyang Men Bei Dajie.
Tel (010) 6553 2288.
w hkclinic.com

International SOS, Suite 105, Wing 1, Kunsha Building, 16 Xin Yuan Li, Chaoyang. Clinic appts:
Tel (010) 6462 9112.

w internationalsos.com

Guangzhou

Can-Am International Medical Center, 5th floor, Garden Tower, Garden Hotel, 368 Huanshi Dong Lu. **Tel** (020) 8386 6988.
w canamhealthcare.com

Hong Kong

Queen Elizabeth Hospital, 30 Gascoigne Rd, Yau Ma Tei. **Tel** (852) 2958 8888.

Shanghai

Parkway Health, 203/4 West Retail Plaza, Shanghai Center, 1376 Nanjing West Road. **Tel** (021) 6445 5999.
w parkwayhealth.cn

Embassies in Beijing

Australia

21 Dongzhi Men Wai Dajie.
Tel (010) 5140 4111.

Canada

19 Dongzhi Men Wai Dajie.
Tel (010) 5139 4000.

Ireland

3 Ritan Dong Lu.
Tel (010) 6532 2691.

United Kingdom

11 Guanghua Lu.
Tel (010) 5192 4000.

USA

55 Anjia Loulu.
Tel (010) 8531 4000.

Travel Health

Masta

Tel 0870 606 2782.
w masta.org

MD Travel Health

w mdtravelhealth.com



Sitting in the shade at the Botanical Gardens, Hangzhou, Zhejiang

Heat, Humidity & Pollution

During summer, it is hot all across China. If you're traveling during this time drink plenty of fluids to prevent dehydration, and increase your intake of salt to compensate its loss through sweating. Wear loose-fitting cotton clothing and sandals, remember to bring a sunhat and sunglasses, and use plenty of sunscreen. Most hotels, except the very cheapest, have rooms equipped with air-conditioning, and virtually all restaurants are air conditioned as well. Prolonged exposure to the sun can cause heat

stroke, a serious condition with high body temperature, severe headaches, and disorientation. To avoid heat rashes and fungal infections caused by humidity, wear clean, loose clothes made of natural fibers, and open sandals.

Many of China's cities, including Beijing, experience chronic levels of atmospheric pollution. This aggravates chest infections, and asthmatic travelers should always carry their own medication.

Cold & Hypothermia

Winter can be severe through most of north China. High-altitude travel in particular can expose you to extreme cold,

and travelers to Tibet and other mountainous regions must be prepared for sudden changes in temperature. A waterproof and windproof layer is vital in cold conditions, as is adequate warm clothing, including thick socks, boots, jacket, gloves, and most importantly, a hat.

The symptoms of hypothermia – shivering, dizziness, exhaustion, and irrational behavior – are brought on by prolonged exposure to the cold. Be aware of fingers and toes going white or numb, the first indications of frost bite, and rub them vigorously if they do.



A motorcyclist wrapped up against pollution

First-aid Kit

Organize a basic first-aid kit, which should include all personal medication, aspirin or painkillers for fevers and minor aches and pains, tablets for nausea and movement sickness, antiseptic cream for cuts and bites, an antifungal ointment, Band-Aids, gauze and tensor bandages, a pair of scissors, insect repellent, and tweezers. Also carry antihistamines for allergies, anti-diarrhea tablets, water purification tablets, disposable syringes, oral rehydration solution, and a thermometer. Taking a supply of antibiotics is a good idea. Most of these items are readily available at Chinese pharmacies.

Stomach Upsets & Diarrhea

Usually caused by a change of diet, water, and climate, diarrhea is common among visitors. Chinese food, which can be quite oily and spicy, does require some getting used to for many people. If the change of diet is affecting you, stick to Western food and simple boiled food, such as plain rice, until the diarrhea subsides. Most importantly, drink lots of fluids, as diarrhea quickly leads to dehydration – oral rehydration solution (ORS) is an effective remedy. If you do not have any ORS, stir half a teaspoon of salt and three teaspoons of honey or sugar into a mug of boiled water.

To decrease your chances of stomach upset, avoid raw salads, cut fruit, cold cuts, roadside kabobs, fresh juice, and yogurt. It is important to avoid drinking tap water even in big cities, apart from Hong Kong. Drink boiled water, or bottled mineral water after checking that the seal is intact. Most international brands of carbonated drinks are widely available. Although street food can look tempting, it is safer to abstain unless it is hot and freshly cooked in front of you.

A good pharmacist can recommend standard diarrhea medication, such as Imodium, though if the attack is severe, it is best to consult a doctor.

A popular and effective Chinese medicine for upset stomachs is *Huangliansu*.

SARS & Flu

In 2003, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) spread throughout China and then to Toronto, Canada. China managed to contain the disease with a strict identification and quarantine program. Since then, there have only been minor, localized outbreaks of the disease. Another SARS outbreak is unlikely, but should one occur, do not travel to the affected area.

Bird flu, or avian influenza, is a serious problem in east Asia, but unlikely to affect travelers. Do not visit any poultry farms,



A food stall with a tempting but risky display

avoid birds at outdoor markets, and eat only poultry and eggs that have been thoroughly cooked.

In 2009, China underwent a mass vaccination program against swine flu (H1N1) for at-risk individuals (such as young children and pregnant women). The World Health Organisation (WHO) provides up-to-date information on serious diseases. If you develop symptoms of pneumonia or flu after your trip, see your physician immediately.

Sexually Transmitted & Other Infectious Diseases

After years of denial, Chinese authorities have begun to publicly admit to the alarming spread of HIV – the virus that causes Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome (AIDS) – via unprotected sex, drug use, and infected blood banks. Nonetheless, considerable ignorance about the disease and its prevention still exists in rural areas, and most prostitutes working in the cities are from rural China. Long-term visitors to China are screened for HIV infection.

Hepatitis B, also transmitted through contact with infected blood, is spread through sexual contact, unsterilized needles, tattoos, and shaves from roadside barbers. However, it can be prevented with a vaccine.

When visiting a clinic, ensure that the doctor opens a new syringe in front of you. You

may even want to bring your own disposable syringe for the doctor to use. Any procedure using needles, such as tattooing or ear-piercing, is best avoided.

Water-borne Diseases

Visitors must be on their guard against dysentery. Bacillary dysentery is accompanied by severe stomach pains, vomiting and fever, whereas amoebic dysentery has similar symptoms but takes longer to manifest. Vaccination against Hepatitis A is advisable before leaving home, especially if

you plan to visit rural areas.

Other water-borne diseases, such as cholera and typhoid, can also be prevented with vaccines. Schistosomiasis (bilharzia), a disease caused by a water-borne parasitic worm found in south and central China, can be avoided by not swimming in fresh water.



Bottled mineral water

Drink bottled mineral water at all times, and avoid ice cubes.

Rabies

The deadly rabies virus is spread via the bite of an infected animal. If you are bitten, clean the bite with an antiseptic solution, and seek medical help at once. Treatment involves a course of injections. A rabies vaccine is only necessary if you are visiting high-risk areas for a

long period and likely to come into contact with animals. Do not have this vaccine, unless advised by your doctor.

Insect-borne Diseases

Mosquitos are rife during the summer in China. In the southern part of the country, mosquitos can carry a number of diseases. If you are visiting an area with a high risk of malaria, take preventive anti-malarial drugs before, during, and after your trip. Contact MASTA (Medical Advisory Services for Travellers Abroad) and check the MD Travel Health website (*see p605*) for information on malaria medication. Dengue fever and Japanese B encephalitis are also carried by mosquitos. To guard against mosquito bites, apply mosquito repellent, and wear clothes that cover as much of your arms and legs as possible.

Altitude Sickness

A lack of sufficient oxygen at altitudes higher than 8,000 ft (2,500 m) can cause attacks of Acute Mountain Sickness (AMS) – severe headaches, dizziness, and loss of appetite. If these symptoms persist beyond 48 hours, you must descend to a lower altitude immediately and seek medical help. To avoid altitude sickness ascend slowly, drink plenty of fluids, and avoid alcohol and sedatives.



Trekking at high altitudes on Chomolungma (Mount Everest)

Banking & Local Currency

China provides a wide range of banking facilities and money exchange services, which are available in large cities, international airports, major banks, and top-end hotels. Always keep some cash to hand for transport, restaurants, and purchases, as traveler's checks and credit cards cannot be used everywhere, especially in rural areas. ATMs that accept international cards are easy to find in all major cities. Foreign banks like Citi, HSBC, and Standard Chartered are expanding their branch networks in major Chinese cities.

Banks & Banking Hours

The Bank of China has the most extensive network in the country. Several other major banks operate nationwide, including the Industrial and Commercial Bank of China (ICBC), the China Construction Bank, and China Merchants Bank. Banks are normally open 9am–4:30pm or 5pm Monday to Friday, but there are variations between places, and some banks are open on Saturdays. All banks remain closed for the first three days of the Chinese New Year, with reduced hours during other Chinese holidays.

Automated Tellers

Automated Teller Machines (ATMs) that accept foreign cards are common in all major cities of mainland China, plus Hong Kong and Macau, so can be relied upon for easy access to cash. In more remote areas of China, ATMs may not all accept

international cards; visit your card issuer's website for locations. In cities, ATMs are located in banks, shopping malls, five-star hotels and airports. Some ATMs also dispense cash against credit cards. Cash withdrawn from ATMs is subject to the same exchange rate as credit cards, and there may be a limit to how much you can withdraw per day.



Hong Kong & Shanghai Banking Corporation (HSBC) ATMs

Changing Money

Chinese currency is not widely available internationally, though, increasingly, it can be exchanged in Asian airports and banks in major Asian cities, as well as Hong Kong and Macau. Within China, you can exchange currency at banks and international airports and most decent hotels will change money for guests. Most major currencies are accepted. All exchange operations are linked to the Bank of China, so rates do not vary between them. Keep exchange receipts so that you can re-convert any surplus *renminbi* before leaving China. The Chinese "black market" for exchanging foreign currency offers only marginally better rates than banks. Dealing with the shady characters involved is not worth the hassle or risk, and you may end up with counterfeit *renminbi*.

Hong Kong dollars are convertible and available outside the country. They are accepted in Macau and most southern Special Economic Zones.

Credit Cards

Credit cards are widely accepted in upmarket restaurants, hotels, and high-street stores, but always check before attempting to make a purchase that your foreign card is accepted. The accepted cards are MasterCard, Visa, Japan Credit Bureau (JCB), Diners Club, and American

DIRECTORY

Bank of China

Beijing

Asia Pacific Building,
8 Yabao Lu, Chaoyang
District, 100020.

1 Fuxing Men Nei
Dajie, 100818.

24-hr ATMs

Arrivals Hall,
Capital Airport. Corner
of Sundongan Plaza,
Wangfujing Dajie.
Corner of Oriental Plaza,
1 Dongcheng'an Jie.

Shanghai

39/F, Bank of China Tower,
200 Yincheng Rd, Central,
Pudong, 200120.

Hong Kong

2A Des Voeux Road,
Central.
24–28 Carnarvon Road,
Tsim Sha Tsui.

HSBC

Beijing

Block A, Beijing COFCO
Plaza 8, Jianguo Men Nei

Dajie, Dong Cheng
District, 100005.

Shanghai

HSBC Tower, 8 Century
Avenue, Pudong, 200120.

24-hr ATMs

Shanghai Center,
1376 Nanjing Xi Lu.

Citibank

Beijing

1/F Tower 1,
Bright Chang An Building,
7 Jianguomennei Dajie.

Shanghai

Citibank Tower,
33 Huayuanshiqiao Road,
Pudong, 200120.

American Express

Beijing

Room 2101, China World
Tower One, China World
Trade Center, 1 Jianguo
Men Wai Dajie, 100004.

Shanghai

Room 206, Retail Plaza,
Shanghai Center, 200040.

Express. Air tickets can be bought by credit card from the Civil Aviation Administration of China (CAAC) offices, but train tickets have to be paid for in cash. Cash advances can be made on credit cards at the Bank of China.

Traveler's Checks

Traveler's checks are safer to carry than cash and offer a better exchange rate, but you will have to pay a commission. In addition, they are very hard to exchange; indeed, only the Bank of China will change them,

and even then, they will do so reluctantly, as the process is complicated. Avoid bringing traveler's checks if at all possible. Keep the proof of purchase slips and a record of the serial numbers in case of loss or theft. Hold on to encashment slips, so you can convert spare *renminbi* to another currency before leaving the country.

Currency

China's currency is called *yuan* *renminbi*, literally People's Currency. One *yuan* divides into 10 *jiao*, which divides into

10 almost worthless *fen*. In colloquial Chinese, *jiao* is called *mao*, and *yuan* is *kuai*. The most common coins include 1 *yuan*, 5 *jiao*, and 1 *jiao*, while the bills in circulation are 1, 2, and 5 *jiao*, and 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, and 100 *yuan*. There are also some *fen* coins and notes, but this tiny denomination is rarely accepted. Try not to acquire too many damaged notes, as they may be difficult to get rid of. Counterfeiting is widespread, and shopkeepers regularly scrutinize large denominations. Hong Kong dollars divide into 100 cents, and Macanese *patacas* into 100 *avos*.

Bank Notes

The more recently minted bills have Mao Zedong on one side and a well-known heritage sight on the other. The older bills depict the traditional dress of various ethnic minorities.



5-yuan note



1-yuan note



20-yuan note



10-yuan note



100-yuan note



50-yuan note

Coins

Chinese coins are not widely circulated. There is a 1 *yuan* coin, some *jiao* denominations, as well as tiny and lightweight *fen*.



5 jiao



1 jiao



1 yuan

Communications and Media

China has an efficient postal network with a variety of services, including registered post and express mail. Telecommunication systems are reasonably advanced and international telephone calls can be made from all but the cheapest hotels. The Internet is hugely popular, and cafés and bars with Wi-Fi access are widespread. The government, however, polices the net, and websites that it considers controversial may be blocked. Foreign newspapers and magazines are sold in five-star hotel bookstores, and in some supermarkets and bookshops.



Wheelchair-accessible phone booth, Beijing

International & Local Telephone Calls

Public telephones do exist in China but are rarely used in the cities – China has the largest number of mobile phone users in the world. If you do use a public telephone, card phones that accept a wide variety of phonecards are available in large cities, and are the cheapest way of making calls. IC (Integrated Circuit) cards come in denominations of ¥20, ¥50, and ¥100. They are largely used for domestic calls. They can also be used for international calls, though the rates are not very good. IP (Internet Phone) cards come in denominations of ¥100 and offer the cheapest rates for international calls.

If you buy a local SIM card you can hook your GSM cellphone up to the Chinese system in minutes (North Americans need unlocked tri- or quad-band phones). Top-up cards are available on almost every street corner. Phones can

also be purchased for modest prices (all have English menus) and there is a thriving second-hand market. Most international mobile networks have “roaming” partnerships with Chinese phone companies, but it is a good idea to check the call rates before you travel.

Internet

Personal computer ownership is widespread in China, and Internet cafés (*wangba*) have almost become a thing of the past. China has rapidly become a very wired nation; most urbanites carry a smart-phone and laptop or iPad. Many smart, modern cafés, coffee shops, and bars offer free Wi-Fi and are frequented by China’s laptop and smart-phone fraternity. Similarly, free broadband access for those with their own computers is commonplace in most hotels of a reasonable standard, as well as in the majority of youth hostels. Overseas websites and

blogs are carefully monitored in China and often blocked. Websites can only be accessed if the virtual private network is paid for.

Postal Services

The postal service in China is, for the most part, reliable, and the domestic service is reasonably fast. It takes less than a day for mail to reach local destinations, two or more days to inland destinations, while the international postal service takes up to 10 days to send airmail and postcards overseas. Visitors can send mail by standard or registered post (*guahaoxin*), while EMS (Express Mail Service) is a reliable way to send packages and documents abroad and within the country.

Main post offices are open seven days a week, from 8am to 8pm, while smaller ones usually close earlier or for lunch, and remain shut on the weekends. Large hotels usually have post desks.

Take your mail to the post office, rather than dropping it in a mailbox. It will help postal staff sort your letter if you write the country’s name in Chinese characters. Aerograms and packaging materials for parcels are available at post offices.

Reliable poste restante services are available all over China. You will need some form of identification – preferably your passport – to retrieve your mail. Envelopes should be addressed with the surname underlined



Internet cafés are quickly being replaced by Wi-Fi access in regular cafés



A choice of Chinese newspapers on display at a newsstand

and in capitals. Chinese addresses always start with the country, then the province, city, street, house number, and name of recipient. The postcode should be written at the end.

culture magazines, which offer the best news on local events. The *Shanghai Daily* also covers entertainment, dining options, and cultural events. A choice of Chinese newspapers on display at a newsstand.

Courier Services

Courier services are widely available, but less so in small towns and remote areas. While it is preferable to send large, bulky items by regular land, sea, or air cargo, important letters, documents, and smaller parcels are best sent through a courier agency.

UPS, Federal Express, DHL Worldwide Express, and China Post are international courier agencies with a wide network.



Mail box, Beijing

Television & Radio

The state-run television network, Chinese Central Television (CCTV), has two English-language channels. CCTV9 is tolerable despite its biased news and does have some interesting programs. Some English programs are also broadcast on CCTV4. Cable and

satellite television is available in most international chain hotels, and you will find BBC News 24 or CNN everywhere. Chinese programs range from historical

costume dramas and tepid soaps to domestic travel, wildlife programs, war films, and heavily biased news programs.

There is also a wide Chinese-language radio network, but only a few local English-language programs. You will need a shortwave radio to pick up the BBC World Service, Voice of America, and other international programs. The BBC has closed its Chinese language World Service broadcasts. English broadcasts are often subject to disruption.

Newspapers & Magazines

The *China Daily* is China's official English language newspaper. Its reputation for being dry remains, but its scope and coverage has greatly improved. The state-run *Shanghai Daily* offers good coverage of events in the city. Most international newspapers and magazines can be found at tourist hotel bookstores and a small selection of supermarkets and bookstores. Titles available include the *International Herald Tribune*, the *Financial Times*, *Time*, *Newsweek*, and the *Economist*. In Beijing, Shanghai, Tianjin, Guangzhou, and other large cities, look out for expat entertainment and

Useful Dialling Codes & Numbers

- To call China from abroad, dial your international access code, China's country code (86), the area code omitting the first 0, followed by the local number.
- Neither Hong Kong nor Macau have area codes; they only have country codes – 852 and 853 respectively.
- To make an inter-city call, dial the area code of that city and the local number. For Beijing, dial 010; Shanghai, 021; Guangzhou, 020; Chongqing, 023; Kunming 0871.
- To make a local call, omit the area code.
- To make an international call from China, dial 00, the country code, the area code omitting any initial 0, and the local number.
- Country codes: UK 44; France 33; USA & Canada 1; Australia 61; Ireland 353; New Zealand 64; South Africa 27; Japan 81.
- Dial 115 for international directory assistance.
- Dial 114 for local directory enquiries in Chinese; dial the area code followed by 114 for numbers in another town.

DIRECTORY

China Post

Tel 11185.

w ems.com.cn

DHL Worldwide Express

Tel 800 810 8000

(toll free nationwide).

w dhl.com

Federal Express

Tel 800 988 1888

(toll free nationwide).

w fedex.com.

General Post Office

134 Changjiang Lu, Dalian.

Near Bell Tower, Bei Dajie, Xi'an.

International Post Office

Jianguo Men Bei Dajie, Beijing.

Sichuan Bei Lu, Shanghai.

UPS

Tel 800 820 8388

(toll free nationwide).

w ups.com

TRAVEL INFORMATION

Most visitors to China arrive by air, though overland routes exist with train links to neighboring Russia, Mongolia, Kazakhstan, and Vietnam, and a bus link to Pakistan. It is also possible to arrive by sea; there are regular ferries from Japan and South Korea. Traveling within the country – even to remote areas – is possible by air, train, road, and, on a few routes, by boat. China has a huge, rapidly expanding rail network, although tickets –

especially for sleeping berths – can be rare during the holiday periods. The intercity high-speed rail network is extensive, and often a good substitute for flying. Bus travel is improving, with buses covering the entire country, including a number of “luxury” buses that offer reasonable comfort. Renting a car is not advised; foreigners are restricted from driving in many areas and the condition of many roads is very poor.

Arriving by Air

All major international airlines fly to China. **Air China**, the country's main international carrier, has quite basic service and facilities, but has a near-spotless safety record and its flights, to most of the world's major airports, are competitively priced. North American and European carriers such as **United Airlines**, **British Airways**, **Virgin**, **Lufthansa**, **KLM**, and **Air France**, have regular flights to some, or all, of China's three main – and most sophisticated – airports at Hong Kong, Shanghai, and Beijing. Flights to the other parts of the Far East, Australia, and New Zealand are offered by Singapore Airlines, Japan Airlines, **All Nippon Airways**, Korean Air, **Qantas**, **Cathay Pacific**, Air New Zealand, and others. Both Virgin and British Airways fly direct to Shanghai. Cheap flights to

China are also available via Air China, China Eastern, Aeroflot (via Moscow), Malaysia Airlines (via Kuala Lumpur), and Air Asia, Jetstar, and Tiger Airways (from Southeast Asia).

International Flights & Airports

China's four main international airports are at Hong Kong, Beijing, Shanghai, and Guangzhou. The Chinese government is investing a considerable amount of money to provide its international airports with state-of-the-art features. Beijing Capital Airport has three impressive terminals – terminal three was designed by architect Norman Foster and opened in time for the 2008 Olympics. In 1999, Pudong Airport was built in Shanghai, making it the first city in China to have two international airports. Macau, too, has

an international airport on Taipa Island, although most visitors arrive via boat from Hong Kong. Other international airports offering flights to overseas destinations include Changchun (Nagoya, Seoul, and Tokyo), Changsha (Seoul), Chengdu (Amsterdam, Bangkok, Kathmandu, Singapore, and Tokyo), Chongqing (Nagoya, Seoul, and Singapore), Dalian (Hiroshima, Munich, Sendai, Seoul, and Tokyo), Guangzhou (Kuala Lumpur, Los Angeles, Sydney, Singapore, Paris, and other destinations), Guilin (Seoul and Bangkok), Haikou (Bangkok, Osaka, and Seoul), Hangzhou (Bangkok, Kuala Lumpur, Seoul, Tokyo, and Amsterdam), Harbin (Seoul, Khabarovsk, and Vladivostok), Kunming (Bangkok), Lhasa (Kathmandu), Nanjing (Bangkok, Seoul, Singapore, and Frankfurt), Qingdao (Osaka, Seoul, and Tokyo), Shenyang (Osaka and Seoul), Shenzhen (Bangkok, Manila, and Tokyo), Tianjin (Nagoya and Seoul), Xi'an (Nagoya, Pusan, Seoul, and Tokyo), Xiamen (Manila, Singapore, Osaka, and Tokyo), Ürümqi (Almaty, Bishkek, Islamabad, Moscow, and Novosibirsk), and Wuhan (Seoul).

Air Fares

Air fares vary according to the airline and the season. The peak season for international flights to China is between June and September, when prices are highest. Reasonably priced tickets are also hard to find during the holidays: Chinese New Year and the first week of October. While



State-of-the-art terminal at Beijing Airport

flying via another country is cheaper than flying direct, traveling by a Chinese airline such as Air China or China Eastern will be cheaper than international airlines. Plenty of discount tickets are available for long-term travel, which are valid for 12 months with multiple stopovers and open dates. The best deals can usually be found online (try www.ctrip.com and www.elong.com). Numerous travel agencies across the world have websites, making it easy to compare prices. Tickets can be booked through ticket offices, travel agents, and hotels, but travel agents – especially those away from hotels and areas used by expats – tend to offer the best prices.

On Arrival

On the airplane, visitors are given a customs arrival form to complete, combining immigration, customs, and health information, which has to be submitted along with their passport at the airport immigration counter (between the plane and the arrivals hall).

International airports throughout China offer a limited range of facilities, but you will find foreign exchange counters, ATMs, public telephones, left-luggage services, restaurants (though rather overpriced), very limited shops, and toilets. Airport tourist information centers in China are of varying degrees of usefulness, and are often manned by staff who speak poor English.



Getting from the Airport

Airports are linked to the city by express train or by bus routes which make several stops in town. Avoid the overpriced taxi touts who try and force their services on foreign visitors. Instead, head for the taxi rank where trips into town are charged by the meter. Four- and five-star hotels usually run shuttle buses to their hotels and the Civil Aviation Administration of China (CAAC) runs buses to their office in town.

Check-in

The check-in time for international flights is officially two hours before departure.

Most passengers are allowed 40 pounds (20 kg) of baggage, while first-class passengers may be allowed 66 pounds (30 kg). One additional item of hand luggage weighing up to

11 pounds (5 kg) is also usually permitted. Baggage allowance depends on the destination, and travelers to North America are generally allowed more luggage. If you are carrying heavy luggage, check with your airline to make sure that your luggage is within the weight limit, as excess baggage charges can be very high.

Departure

Departure tax is included in the price of an airplane ticket and a fee is no longer payable at airports.

DIRECTORY

Airline Offices

Air China

Tel 4008 100 999,
toll free nationwide.
[w airchina.com.cn](http://w.airchina.com.cn)

Air France

Tel 4008 808 808.
[w airfrance.com.cn](http://w.airfrance.com.cn)

All Nippon Airways

Tel 4008 828 888.
[w ana.co.jp](http://w.ana.co.jp)

British Airways

Tel 400 881 0207.
[w britishairways.com](http://w.britishairways.com)

Cathay Pacific

Tel 400 888 6628.
[w cathaypacific.com](http://w.cathaypacific.com)

Delta

Tel 400 120 1364.
[w delta.com](http://w.delta.com)

KLM

Tel 4008 808 222,
Beijing & Shanghai.
[w klm.com](http://w.klm.com)

Lufthansa

Tel 4008 868 868.
[w lufthansa.com](http://w.lufthansa.com)

Qantas

Tel 800 819 0089.
[w qantas.com.au](http://w.qantas.com.au)

United Airlines

Tel 400 883 4288.
[w united.com](http://w.united.com)

Virgin Atlantic

Tel (021) 5353 4600, Shanghai.
[w virgin-atlantic.com](http://w.virgin-atlantic.com)

Airport	Information	Distance to City Center	Average Journey Time
Beijing Capital Airport	(010) 96158	16 miles (25 km) northeast	40 mins (taxi)
Hongqiao Airport (Shanghai)	(021) 5114 6655	12 miles (19 km) west	30 mins (taxi)
Pudong Airport (Shanghai)	(021) 6834 5328	28 miles (45 km) east	45 mins (taxi)
Hong Kong International Airport	(0852) 2181 8888	20 miles (32 km) west	25 mins (train)
Macau International Airport	(0853) 2886 1111	3 miles (5 km) northwest	15 mins (taxi)

Domestic Air Travel

The arrival of cheap, high-speed train travel in China has led Chinese airlines to step up the competition in terms of both the cost and comfort of their services, especially on the popular Shanghai–Beijing route. The extensive domestic flight network involves numerous regional airlines flying to over 150 airports. The main cities of Beijing, Nanjing, Chengdu, Tianjin, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Shanghai, Dalian, Guangzhou, and Xi'an are particularly well connected to airports throughout the country. Domestic air tickets are straightforward to buy, so wait until you arrive in the country and then shop around for discounts. Flight cancellations and delays due to bad weather are common, especially in winter and on less traveled routes in the more remote provinces, so remember to reconfirm your ticket and the time of your flight.

Domestic Airlines

A few private airlines operate from Hong Kong and Macau, but most other airlines in China are administered by the Civil Aviation Administration of China (CAAC).

There are currently about ten domestic carriers operating in China. (The initials in parentheses are the airline code or flight-number prefix.) Some of the domestic airlines, such as **China Southern** (CZ), and **China Eastern** (MU), also fly international routes. You can buy domestic flights from these airlines overseas, but rates are far better when booked in China. Other domestic airlines include **Sichuan Airlines** (3U), **Shenzhen Airlines** (4G), **Hainan Airlines** (HU), and **Xiamen Airlines** (MF).

The CAAC is driving service improvement throughout the industry, especially on board, and changes are noticeable from even just a few years ago. Unfortunately, frequent delays and cancellations still occur. Announcements are both in Chinese and English if there are foreign nationals on board. In-flight service can be brusque, and foreign visitors have felt neglected

in the past, but service has improved greatly.

Air China's international flying safety record is good, and now almost all domestic airlines have fleets of new aircraft,

which means safety records have improved further. Older aircraft are sometimes used in China's peripheral

regions. Before you choose to book with a particular airline, you may wish to ask what kind of plane you will be boarding.

The baggage allowance is 44 pounds (20 kg) for economy class and 66 pounds (30 kg) for first and business class. You are also allowed up to 11 pounds (5 kg) of hand luggage, although airlines almost never weigh it. The charge for excess

baggage is 1 percent of the full fare per 2.2 pounds (1 kg).

Domestic Airports

Air travel is becoming much more convenient in China, with new airports being built and old ones renovated and expanded. It has been made a national priority to upgrade all city airports, and state-of-the-art facilities are now available at Beijing Capital Airport, Shanghai's Pudong International Airport and Hongqiao Airport, Guangzhou Baiyun International Airport, and the Hong Kong International Airport at Chek Lap Kok. These modern airports easily compare with the best in the world. Airports in some major tourist cities, such as Xi'an, Hangzhou, Tianjin, Kunming, Chengdu and Nanjing also offer up-to-date facilities. Many new airports are being built in cities across China, including a second one in Beijing (in Daxing district, in Hebei province). A few private airlines operate from Hong Kong and Macau, as well as from the mainland, including the low-cost carrier Spring Airlines and the Hainan Island-based Hainan Airlines, but most other airlines are administered by the CAAC.

Getting to & from the Airport

The distance from airports to city centers varies considerably in China, so factor this into your



Logo of Hainan Airlines



Flight attendants aboard Sichuan Airlines en route to Chengdu

journey time. Also, always allow time for unforeseen delays en route. In many large cities and towns, you can reach the airport or travel from the airport into town on a CAAC bus, which departs from and arrives at the CAAC office in town. In larger cities, such as Beijing, Shanghai, and Hong Kong, dedicated bus and train services run from town to the airport. Hong Kong, Shanghai and Beijing airports all have express train links to the city.

Shanghai's Hongqiao and Pudong Airports are connected to the city's metro system (line 2). For faster travel to and from

downtown, the high-speed Maglev train connects with Longyang Road metro station (also line 2), near the Pudong commercial/residential centre.

Taxis wait for passengers outside the arrivals hall. Make sure you head for the taxi rank and avoid the numerous touts who will try to direct you towards their own car. Insist on the driver using the meter. Drivers rarely speak English so have your destination written in Chinese characters or keep the phone number of your accommodation on hand so the driver can call for directions. If you have booked accommodation, check whether your hotel offers transport to and from the airport.

Check-in

For most domestic flights, the check-in time is at least an hour and a half before departure, although very few passengers arrive that early. Make sure all your bags are tagged, and do not pack sharp objects, such as scissors, tweezers, nail files, or knitting needles, in your hand luggage. The airport tax for

domestic flights is usually ¥50, and is paid at the time of purchasing the ticket.

Tickets, Reservations & Cancellations

Each domestic airline has a booking office in most cities, as well as a reservation counter at each airport.

Tickets can be booked through ticket offices, travel agents, online via www.ctrip.com, www.elong.com, and www.travelzen.com,

or the travel desks of some of the better hotels – you should not be charged a booking fee. Travel agents

tend to offer the best discounts. Credit cards are accepted by many travel agents and CAAC offices. Visitors are required to show their passports when purchasing tickets. There is generally no shortage of tickets unless you are flying between Hong Kong and a mainland destination, except in the run up to and during the Chinese New Year, and the week-long holiday periods after October 1, when it is advisable to book well ahead.

A combined international and domestic timetable is published by CAAC in both English and Chinese. These publications can be bought at most airline offices and CAAC outlets. Individual airlines also print their own timetables, available at booking offices throughout the country. Flight schedules are revised in April and October each year.

Ticket prices are calculated according to a one-way fare, and a return-ticket is simply double the single fare. Discounts on official fares are the norm, so it is best to check with travel agents for good deals. You are likely to get a better deal on a flight if you buy your ticket from an

agent in the city you are departing from. Business class tickets cost 25 percent more than economy, while first class tickets cost 60 percent more. Children over the age of 12 are charged adult fares, while there are special discounted fares for younger children and infants.

If you wish to return or change your air ticket, you can get a refund as long as you cancel at least 24 hours before departure, and return your ticket to the same agent who sold it to you. Even if you miss your flight, you are entitled to a refund of 50 percent of the full fare. You may be asked to buy travel insurance from your ticketing agent. However, it is generally not worthwhile, as the claim amount is very low.



Road signs to the airport, Hong Kong

DIRECTORY

Caac Offices

[w caac.gov.cn](http://w.caac.gov.cn)

Beijing

Tel (010) 8778 6114.

Shanghai

Tel (021) 6835 7207.

China Eastern Airlines

[w ce-air.com](http://w.ce-air.com)

Tel (010) 95530
(nationwide hotline).

China Southern Airlines

[w csair.com](http://w.csair.com)

Tel (010) 95539
(nationwide hotline).

Dragonair

[w dragonair.com](http://w.dragonair.com)

Hong Kong

Tel (0852) 3193 3888.

Shanghai

Tel 400 888 6628
(nationwide in mainland China).

Hainan Airlines

Tel 0898 950712.

[w global.hnair.com](http://w.global.hnair.com)

Sichuan Airlines

Tel 4008 300 999.

[w scal.com.cn](http://w.scal.com.cn)

Traveling by Train

China is a vast country and, for many travelers, train journeys are an excellent way to see the countryside and get to know the people. Trains are punctual, fast, and relatively safe, and are a reliable transport option. Since 2009, China has been rolling out an extensive network of high-speed “bullet” trains running on key intercity routes. Journey times are much shorter, but ticket prices are higher. Trains are usually crowded so it is advisable to either buy your ticket well in advance, or ask your hotel or travel agent to arrange your bookings.

The Railway Network

Since the cost of air travel is beyond the reach of many Chinese, traveling by train is the preferred alternative, especially over long distances. China has an efficient and extensive rail network that covers every province including Hainan Island, connected to the mainland by a special train ferry, and mountainous Tibet, connected to Qinghai by a new railway line. Hong Kong is also connected to mainland China by rail. Depending on which type of ticket you purchase, Chinese trains can be quite comfortable, and there are fast services running between most large towns and cities.

Trains & Timetables

Although trains in China are commendably punctual, trying to decipher a Chinese timetable is an impossible task, unless you can read Chinese. Timetables are published in April and October each year, and are available at railway station ticket offices. A good online timetable can be found at www.travelchinaguide.com. Stations can be frustrating places, and



Platform food stall, Yinchuan train station

visitors will need patience to deal with them. Trying to locate English-speaking staff on platforms is difficult, even in large cities such as Beijing and Shanghai. Telephoning stations with enquiries is pointless unless you speak Chinese.

Each train is identified by a train number, written on the outside of each carriage, that indicates its route and destination. As a rule, incoming and outgoing trains running between two destinations are numbered sequentially. For example, train K79 travels from Shanghai to Kunming, while train K80 runs from Kunming to Shanghai.

Trains are of five types: those with numbers prefixed by the letter “T” or “K” are express (*te kuai*) or fast (*kuai*) trains, and those whose numbers have no prefix are ordinary (*pu kuai*) trains, with frequent stops. “G” indicates direct high-speed trains, while “D” is used for high-speed trains with stops. Express trains have carriages of all classes, and are the most modern and comfortable, with few stops and superior services. All long-distance trains are equipped with sleepers.

There is no smoking permitted within compartments, except in hard-seat carriages, although most trains allow passengers to smoke in the corridors. Most trains have dining cars, and staff will continuously push trolleys through the carriages selling noodles, snacks, mineral water, coffee, and newspapers. The noise level in carriages is often very high, as music and announcements are regularly broadcast over the speakers. China’s modern fleet of trains are much cleaner than the old ones and have air conditioning. The older trains can be very dingy indeed; prepare yourself for sordid and filthy bathrooms.

Classes

Whereas high-speed trains have only two classes (economy and first), regular Chinese trains have four. The most luxurious class is **Soft Sleeper** (*ruan wo*), with four comfortable berths per compartment. Offering more privacy, security, and cleanliness than less-expensive classes, soft sleeper tickets are very



Grand Soviet-style Taiyuan train station



Modern glass and steel train station, Changzhou

pricey, and are not much cheaper than air tickets on certain routes.

For long journeys lasting over six hours, **Hard Sleeper** (*ying wo*) is the best way to travel. Consequently, these tickets are the hardest to procure, and you'd be lucky to get one on short notice. Hard sleeper can be an economical choice when traveling between cities overnight, as it saves the cost of a night in a hotel.

Carriages consist of doorless compartments, each with six bunks. Tickets are of three types – upper berth (*shang pu*), middle berth (*zhong pu*), and lower berth (*xia pu*), with a small price difference between each. The lowest berth is the most expensive, while the top one is the cheapest. The best berth, however, is the middle one. The upper bunk has little head-room and is closest to the speakers. During the day, the lower bunk acts as seating and fills with fellow passengers. Pillows, sheets, and blankets are provided by the railways, as are two thermos flasks of boiling water, which you can replenish yourself from the massive boiler at the end of each carriage. Once aboard the train, the inspector will exchange your ticket for a metal token, and return the ticket at the end of the journey.

The cheapest class is **Hard Seat** (*ying zuo*), which seats three people side-by-side on lightly cushioned seats. Although fine for short journeys, spending more than 4 hours in a hard-seat carriage can be

quite unpleasant. Carriages are usually crowded and dirty, the speakers blare endlessly, lights remain on at night, and compartments are filled with smoke. It is possible to upgrade (*bu piao*) once aboard the train, if there are seats available in the class of your choice. Note that hard-seat tickets bought on the same day are usually unreserved.

Available only on certain routes, **Soft Seat** (*ruan zuo*) carriages are much more

comfortable and spacious than hard seat, and seat two people side-by-side in numbered

seats. Tickets cost about as much as hard sleeper.

Train Tickets, Fares & Reservations

When buying tickets, it is essential to plan in advance. On most routes, it is vital to buy tickets at least two or three days before you travel, although tickets are available about five

days before departure. On short routes, you may be able to secure a ticket just before departure, but it is safest to buy ahead.

Tickets on longer routes sell out, especially those for hard sleepers.

Train fares are calculated according to the class and the distance traveled. All tickets are one-way, so you will need to buy

another ticket for the return journey, although return tickets are gradually being introduced for the high-speed intercity routes. Joining the crowds at station ticket counters can be very trying, so unless the station has a separate ticket office for foreign visitors, which is the case at Beijing train station, consider asking your hotel, tourist office, or travel agent to buy tickets for you. Black-market operators buy tickets in bulk, and then re-sell them at a mark-up outside railway stations. If you're buying tickets on the black-market, check the dates of travel, destination, and class printed on the ticket carefully.

Before boarding the train, visitors wait in a hall before filing past ticket-checkers to the platform. Retain your ticket as inspectors will ask to see it again, just before you reach your destination. Note that getting hold of tickets during the Chinese New Year (Spring Festival), and the May and October holiday periods can be very difficult, and it is inadvisable to travel during these times.



Booking office sign, Zhenjiang train station,



A uniformed guard minding a double-decker train, Dalian

Traveling by Bus & Ferry

China's extensive network of road transport connects most cities, as well as distant, rural areas. Bus travel is essential for reaching places that are not served by train. Tickets are both easier to procure and are cheaper than train tickets, and there is a wider choice of departure times, stops, and itineraries. The absence of a national operator, however, means that numerous competing businesses exist, coupled with minimal regulation. Furthermore, driving is often rash, vehicles are poorly maintained, and road conditions can be bad, especially in the more remote areas. A small network of passenger ferries serves ports along China's coastline and some of the inland waterways.

Long-distance Buses

There are still many parts of China that are not accessible by train, making it necessary to make the long haul by road. In Fujian, where rail services exist, but are infuriatingly indirect, bus travel makes a lot of sense. In Guizhou and Guangxi, the more interesting areas inhabited by ethnic minorities are only accessible by bus and the tropical area of Xishuangbanna in Yunnan is best explored by bus or taxi. You will also need to take a bus (unless you are flying) to reach Lijiang in northern Yunnan and all of western Sichuan. Getting around Tibet will require long bus journeys, as will exploring the northwestern frontier of China if you want to get beyond the towns on the main train line. Numerous sights throughout China are off rail lines.

Many smooth, wide highways now link some of the major cities, making some bus travel, particularly on the east coast, reasonably comfortable. In some cases, the bus is now a faster way to reach your destination than the train.

All cities and most large towns have at least one long-distance bus station (*changtu qiche zhan*) where state-run buses arrive and depart. Private bus firms may have set up a few of their own bus stations in town; often, one of these is located next to the train station. Other stations may be located on the edges of town – the North or East Bus Station will usually serve destinations to the north or east. Determining which of these stations serves the place you are trying to reach can be tricky, so you will need to ask around. Destinations are displayed in Chinese characters on the front of buses.

Long-distance buses vary enormously in quality, age, and comfort. You may find that several buses are running along the same route, so make sure you are sold a ticket for the fastest, most comfortable bus, or the cheapest, if you prefer. In general, long-haul bus journeys are taxing. Road conditions are often poor and road works are

common, slowing the journey considerably. Drivers can be reckless and bus crashes are distressingly frequent. The noise level can be deafening, with music blaring and the driver leaning on the horn, so take earplugs. Most buses are choked with cigarette smoke.

Ordinary buses (*putong che*) are the cheapest and have basic wooden, or lightly padded, seats. These buses stop often, so progress can be slow. They provide little space for baggage – there's no room under the seats and the luggage racks are minuscule. Suitcases and backpacks are usually stacked next to the driver, and you may be charged.

Sleeper buses (*wopu che*) speed through the night making few stops, so reach their destination in good time. They usually have two tiers of bunks, or seats that recline almost flat. The older models can be quite dirty. Lower bunks (*xia pu*) cost more than

the upper bunks (*shang pu*), but are worth the extra cost as you are less likely to be thrown from your bed when the driver takes a corner at speed.

Shorter routes are served by rattling **minibuses** (*xiao ba*), which depart only when every spare space has been filled by a paying passenger. Cramped to the roof, minibuses trips can be quite uncomfortable.

Express buses (*kuai che*) are the best way to travel. Some are luxury (*hao hua*), have air conditioning, and enforce a no-smoking policy. Luggage is stowed in a hold, which is fairly safe, given the few stops that are made en route.

In certain parts of China – in Gansu and Sichuan, for instance – you may be required to purchase insurance from the People's Insurance Company of China (PICC) before being allowed on a bus. Usually, however, it is included in the price of the ticket. This insurance waives any responsibility of the government bus company



A basic long-distance bus (*putong che*) awaiting passengers, Qinghai



A ferry on the Huangpu River, sailing through Shanghai

should you be injured in a bus crash; it does not cover you in the event of an accident.

Bus Tickets & Fares

Traveling by road is generally much cheaper than traveling by train. Tickets are sold at long-distance bus stations and, unless you are hoping for a seat at the front of a luxury bus, do not need to be bought in advance. Tickets for private buses and minibuses are either purchased on board the bus or from touts nearby. Main bus stations invariably have computerized ticket offices, and the queues are much shorter than those experienced at train stations.



Promotional river cruise sign outside tourist office

and Hangzhou, and Wuxi and Hangzhou (*see* p223). There are no regular passenger ferry services up the Yangzi River available to foreign visitors until Wuhan.

Popular coastal ferry routes include boats to Hainan Island from ports in the province of Guangdong (including Guangzhou) and Beihai in

Guangxi. A large number of vessels ply between Hong Kong and Macau, many

of which are high-speed and operate round the clock. Macau is also connected to ports in Guangdong, while Hong Kong is linked to Zhuhai and several ports on the Pearl River delta. Within Hong Kong, a medley of craft run to the outlying islands. There are quite a few vessels connecting Hong Kong with the

rest of China, but services are becoming less frequent. Because of the prohibitively long overland routes, ferries link the booming northeastern city of Dalian with Yantai and Tianjin. Yantai and Weihai on the eastern tip of Shandong peninsula are accessible from Shanghai, Dalian, and Tianjin. Note that ferry timetables may change frequently and services may have been added or terminated.

Several international sea routes link China to other countries. From Japan, Kobe is connected to both Tianjin and Shanghai on the east coast, while ferries also link Osaka with Shanghai. From South Korea, the port of Incheon is connected to the Chinese ports of Dalian, Weihai, Qingdao, Shanghai, and Tianjin.

Shanghai's expanding international ferry terminal welcomes increasing numbers of cruise ships, with the fast-developing cruise industry forming a key part of the city's plan to become an international shipping center. By 2016, Shanghai expects to welcome 500 cruise ships annually, bringing 1.2 million visitors to the city. Costa and Royal Caribbean already use the city as an Asian base port, and several other Asia-Pacific cruise routes – including to Russia, Taiwan, and Southeast Asia – are expected to open in the next few years. Cruise passengers arriving in Shanghai should now be able to shop in duty-free stores at the port.

Ferries, Boats & Cruise Ships

A small network of coastal routes survives in China, and vessels still ply the Yangzi River, but the increased convenience of traveling by air, road, and rail has reduced the variety and frequency of sea- and river-ferry sailings in China.

The most popular river route is the trip along the Yangzi between Chongqing and Yichang, through the Three Gorges (*see* pp358–60). An overnight ferry service for tourists runs along the Grand Canal between Suzhou



Tourist boats docked on the vast Qinghai Lake

Local Transport in Cities

Transport options vary greatly between cities in China. Many of the largest metropolises have complex networks with subway systems, which, in many cases, are in the process of being extensively expanded. In Beijing and Shanghai, the subway (*ditie*) is the best way to get around, while in Hong Kong, the transport system is well-integrated, and subways, trains, and buses are all convenient options. In most cities, buses are slow and usually packed, but are very cheap. Taxis (*chuzu qiche*) are a necessity for most travelers, and, despite the language barrier and misunderstandings with drivers, are the most convenient way to get around. Bicycles once ruled the roads of China's cities and although not as popular today, they are still one of the best ways to explore.

Beijing's Subway

The subway system in Beijing underwent major development in preparation for the 2008 Olympic Games. The system has been expanded and includes an express rail line which goes direct to Beijing Capital Airport.

The subway is a swift way to get around this spread-out city. The system is easy to use, although walks between lines at interchange stations can be long. All journeys cost ¥2. Buy your paper ticket at the ticket booth near the entrance. Tickets are undated and you should show your ticket to the attendants at the entrance to the platform. The current ticketing system is based on the distance traveled. Line 13 now has automated ticket gates, as will any other lines that open up in the future.



Sign for Beijing subway

range between ¥3 and ¥6, depending on the number of stops traveled. Check the map to determine your fare and then buy a ticket from the booth or machine. You can also buy ¥50 pre-paid tickets. Put

your ticket into the slot at the barrier and the gates will open. Retrieve your ticket on the other side of the gate and hold on to it – you will need it at the destination exit.

The much-touted Maglev (magnetic levitation) runs between Pudong Airport and the eastern end of

Line 2 and reaches speeds of 270 miles per hour (430 km/h). Check the times of departure.

Hong Kong's MTR & KCR

Integrated and efficient, Hong Kong has the best public transportation system in the country. The city is easy to get around using all of its forms of transport – MTR (subway and overground trains), buses, trams, and ferries – and most signage is in English. You can buy single tickets for your journeys, but each type of transit requires a separate ticket. Alternatively, you can buy an Octopus card, an electronic card that allows you to hop on and off most of the system. You can buy these for a minimum of HK\$150 including a HK\$50 deposit,

which is refunded when you return the card. You can easily add credit at MTR stations, ferry piers, and convenience stores.

The Mass Transit Railway (MTR) currently has 11 lines, with three more under construction. The fare increases with the distance traveled, except on the Airport Express Line where a higher fee is charged. If you buy a single ticket, insert it into the turnstile and retrieve it on the other side. Hold on to your ticket as you will need it to exit the system. If you have an Octopus card, simply touch the card to the yellow reader on the turnstile.

There are three overground MTR lines that cover destinations in the New Territories. East Rail was the original Kowloon–Canton railway and heads north into mainland China. Do not go past Sheung Shui (the second last stop), if you do not have the correct documentation to enter the mainland.

Buses & Trams

City bus networks are extensive and cheap. The buses (*gonggong qiche*), however, are almost always overcrowded – so much so that you are unlikely to be able to see out of the windows. These conditions are perfect for thieves, so stay well-aware of your belongings. Consider using buses only for short straight-forward journeys. Avoid them if you are trying to get from one end of town to the other – you are likely to get stuck in traffic.

Bus routes can be tricky to navigate, particularly as most



Motor-rickshaw for hire, Harbin

Shanghai's Subway

The rapidly expanding Shanghai subway system is clean and efficient, with the first line built in 1995. The 12 lines currently in operation are expected to increase to a total of 22 by 2020. Lines 1 and 2 are most useful to the tourist, with line 2 connecting the city's two airports, Pudong and Hongqiao; the raised Line 3, or Pearl Line, travels the western outskirts of the city. Fares for Lines 1 and 2



Bicycles in Beijing – the traditional way to get around the city

routes and destinations are listed in Chinese only. Hong Kong has the most comfortable and easy to use bus system, although traffic can be as bad here as anywhere else. Hong Kong also has an old tram line that runs from Sheung Wan to Causeway Bay on Hong Kong Island. Dalian has a few trams as well. Maps of bus and tram routes are widely available, especially in and around train stations.



A city taxi in Beijing

Taxis

The best way to get about in cities that don't have subway systems is by taxi (*chuzu qiche*). Taxis are found in large numbers in all Chinese cities – often congregating near train stations – and can be hailed easily in the street. Guests staying at hotels can also ask the reception desk to summon a taxi. When arriving at airports, avoid the touts who immediately surround you, and head instead to the taxi rank outside where you are less likely to be overcharged. Also, make sure the driver uses the meter (*biao*) or negotiate a flat rate in advance. Taxis rarely have rear seat belts (*anquan dai*), so sit in front if you are traveling alone. Few taxi drivers speak English, so it is advisable to have your destination written down in Chinese, which the staff at your hotel will gladly do for you.

Fares vary slightly from city to city, the most expensive being Beijing and Shanghai, but taxis generally offer both good value and convenience. In many cities, different models of cars will have different rates. Tipping the driver is not necessary.

Taxis can also be hired for the day – a convenient way to see sights just out of town. Agree on a price beforehand, and make sure your driver is clear on the extent of your itinerary. In Tibet, you may find that hiring a jeep and driver is the only way to get to some sights. It is customary to pay for the driver's lunch.

In smaller towns, motorcycle rickshaws (*sanlun motuoche*) and bicycle rickshaws (*sanlun che*) are a convenient and entertaining way to get around town. Do not take these in major cities – they cost about the same as a taxi

and frequently target tourists for substantial rip-offs. In some small towns, they are the only

form of transport. Agree on the fare before climbing aboard.

Motorcycle taxis are a very quick way to cover longer distances, although they are really only practical if you are traveling alone with little luggage. Insist on the driver providing you with a helmet.

Cycling

Hiring a bicycle is one of the best ways to explore towns and their environs. Bike lanes are common (although not always respected by drivers) and roadside repair stalls are everywhere. In Beijing, the bicycle is a major mode of transport. With its spread-out sights and flat terrain it is a

good way to traverse the city, but you may find the traffic intimidating. Hangzhou has the best bike hire system, with dozens of kiosks to hire official public bicycles from. Make sure that any bike you rent has a lock. Handy bike stands are found in big cities and have an attendant to watch the bikes for a nominal fee.

Road Names

Main streets, avenues, and thoroughfares are often divided into different sections based on the four cardinal points. For example, Zhongshan Lu (Zhongshan Road) may be divided into Zhongshan Xi Lu (West Road) and Zhongshan Dong Lu (East Road). Similarly, you may also see Zhongshan Bei Lu (North Road) and Zhongshan Nan Lu (South Road). Apart from *lu* (road), other key words are *jie* (street), *hutong* and *xiang* (lane or historic alleyway). Road names in large cities such as Beijing may also display the pinyin translation, but in smaller towns and remote destinations, only Chinese is used. The use of pinyin is being phased out and in many large cities signage will be in Chinese script and English only.



Taxis and buses on a busy street in the center of Macau

General Index

Page numbers in **bold** type refer to main entries.

5-Level Double Ship Lock (Three Gorges Dam) 275
 18 September Museum (Shenyang) 444
 24 Bends (Tiger Leaping Gorge) 400
 108 Dagobas (Ningxia) **481**
 10,000 Buddhas Monastery (Hong Kong) **326**

A

Aba Grasslands 349
 Aba Khoja Mausoleum (Kashgar) 17, **516–17**
 Abahai 68, 438, 444
 tomb of 445
 Abdur Rahman 495
 Abercrombie and Kent 593, 595
 Aberdeen **328**
 Aberdeen, Earl of 328
 Abu Waqas 305, 307
 ACOR 557
 Acrobats 119
 Acupressure 38
 Acute Mountain Sickness (AMS) 607
 Admission charges 600
 Afghanistan 495
 Agriculture
 desertification 469
 inventions 42
 rice **286–7**
 tea plantations 299
 Aidi emperor (Tang dynasty) 58
 Aidi emperor (Western Han dynasty) 58
 AIDS 607
 Aini people 388, 390, 391
 Air China 613
 Air France 613
 Air pollution 24, 606
 Air travel **612–15**
 advance booking 598
 domestic airports 614
 international airports 612, 613
 Ake people 390–91
 Alcohol 603
 Alexander the Great 495
 All Nippon Airways 613
 Alligators 239
 Altai **512**
 Altitude sickness 607
 Altyn Mosque (Yarkand) 519
 Alvares, Jorge 333
 Aman Isa Khan, tomb of 519
 Ambulances 605
 Amdo 483
 American Express 608
 Amethyst 224
 Amherst, Lord 69
 Amoy *see* Xiamen

Amur river 478
 An Lushan, General 63
 An Lushan rebellion 63, 64
 Ancient Observatory (Beijing) **100–101**
 Ancient Pottery Factory (Jingdezhen) 261
 Andi emperor 58
 Anhui province 183, **209**
 food and drink 187
 hotels 560
 Huizhou architecture **241**
 map 209
 restaurants 577
 Ani Tsankhung Nunnery (Lhasa) 533
 Animals
 astrology 49
 bites 607
 see also Wildlife; Zoos
 Anjue Lamasery (Kangding) 377
 Annoyances 603
 Anping Lu (Shantou) 302
 Anshun **406**
 batik **406**
 Antique Carpets (Beijing) 118, 119
 Antiques shops 587
 Beijing **118**, 119
 customs information 599
 Hong Kong and Macau **336**, 337
 Shanghai **206**, 207
 Anyang 78, 147, **158**
 Aquariums
 Beijing Zoo 105
 Sun Asia Ocean World (Dalian) 450–51
 Archeology
 Peking Man site **117**
 Race for the Silk Road Oases **499**
 Architecture **40–41**
 Beijing's courtyard houses **97**
 Dong architecture **427**
 earthen dwellings of Yongding **296**
 Huizhou architecture **241**
 pagodas **171**
 Army Day 52, 53
 Arrow Tower (Jian Lou, Beijing) 90
 Street-by-Street map 88
 Arrow Towers (Forbidden City) 95
 Arrow War (1856–58) 69
 Art Museum (Guangzhou) 307
 Arts and crafts
 bamboo **417**
 calligraphy **225**
 cave paintings of Dunhuang **500–501**
 jade **519**
 lacquerware **298**
 Miao people **412–13**

Arts and crafts (cont.)
 modern arts **46–7**
 porcelain **260–61**
 Shanghai **206**, 207
 silk **214–15**
 traditional arts **44–5**
 What to Buy in China 589
 Arts venues
 Beijing **119**
 Hong Kong **338**, 339
 Ashoka 176
 Astana 509
 Astrology 49
 Astronomy, Ancient Observatory (Beijing) **100–101**
 Australian Embassy 605
 Automated teller machines (ATMs) 586, 608
 Autumn in China 52–3
 Avian influenza 607
 Ayurbarwada 58

B

Ba culture 349
 Chongqing 356
 Sanxingdui Museum 366
 tombs 358
 Badaguan (Qingdao) 153
 Badaling 12, **114**
 Baggage allowances 613
 Bai Causeway (Hangzhou) 249
 Bai Juyi 34, 249
 Bai Long Dong (Wu Da Lian Chi) 460
 Bai people 30, 349, 379
 Dali 392
 hanging coffins 360
 Nanzhao Kingdom **394**
 Bai Ta (Anshun) 406
 Bai Ta (Fuzhou) 298
 Bai Ta (Hohhot) 475
 Bailuzhou Park (Nanjing) 228
 Baima Si (Luoyang) 158
 Baima Ta (Dunhuang) 498
 Baisha 14, **398**
 Baishui Tai 401
 Baisikou Shuang Ta 480
 Baisui Gong (Jiuhua Shan) 240
 Baita Shan Gongyuan (Lanzhou) 488
 Baiyi Si (Lanzhou) 489
 Baiyu Hill (Dalian) 451
 Ballet 47
 Bamboo 27, **417**
 Bangchuidao Scenic Area 450
 Bank of China 608
 Bank of China (Hong Kong) 316
 Bank of China (Shanghai) 193
 Bank notes 609
 Banking **608–9**
 Banla Village 388
 Banquets 568–9
 Banruo Temple (Changchun) 452

- Baoding Shan **363**
carvings of Dazu **362–3**
- Baofeng Hu (Wulingyuan) 271
- Baoguang Si **366**
- Baoguo Si (Emei Shan) 368
- Baoguo Si (Ningbo) 252
- Baopu Daoist Temple (Hangzhou) 246
- Baoshu Ta (Hangzhou) 246
- Baotou **476**
- "Barbarians" 78
- Bargaining 586, 603
- Barkhor (Lhasa) **534–5**
- The Barra (Macau) 13, **333**
- Bars 591
- Beijing **119**
Hong Kong **338**, 339
Shanghai **207**
- Basketball 592, 595
- Batik, Anshun **406**
- Bayi Park (Nanchang) 256
- Bayi Square (Nanchang) 256
- Bazaar (Turpan) 508
- Bazi Qiao (Shaoxing) 252
- Beaches 592–3
Beidaihe 134
Dalian 450
Deep Water and Repulse Bays 329
Gangzaihou Beach (Gulangyu Island) 293
Hainan Island 311
Qian Bu Sha (Putuo Shan) 255
Qingdao 153
Sai Kung Town and Peninsula Beaches (Hong Kong) **326–7**
Stanley 329
Weihai 155
Yantai 154
Yin Tan (Silver Beach) 431
- Beer
Tsingtao **152**
What to Drink in China 571
- Begging 603
- Bei river 460
- Bei Shan 363
- Bei Shan Si (Xining) 502
- Beidaihe **134**, 592
hotels 558
restaurants 573
- Beigu Shan (Zhenjiang) 224
- Beihai **431**, 592
- Beihai Park (Beijing) **96**
- Beijing 79, **85–125**
air travel 613, 615
banks 608
city walls **90**
climate 55
courtyard houses **97**
embassies 605
entertainment **118–19**
Forbidden City 12, 40, **92–5**, 438–9
- Beijing (cont.)
hospitals 605
hotels 558
map 86–7
in Ming dynasty 67
Ming Tombs: Chang Ling **110–11**
Olympic Games 592
Public Security Bureau (PSB) 599
restaurants 572–3
shopping **118–19**
skiing 593
Street Finder 120–25
subway 620
Summer Palace 12, **106–8**
Temple of Heaven 12, **102–3**
Tian'an Men Square: Street-by-Street map 88–9
Two Days in Beijing 10, **12**
- Beijing Botanical Gardens 109
- Beijing Capital Museum 101
- Beijing Club (Hong Kong) 338, 339
- Beijing Curio City 118, 119
- Beijing Natural History Museum **101**
- Beijing and the North **75–177**
food and drink **82–3**
Great Wall of China **112–14**
Hebei, Tianjin and Shanxi **127–45**
hotels 558–9
map 76–7
Portrait of Beijing and the North **78–9**
restaurants 572–5
Shaanxi **167–77**
Shandong and Henan **147–65**
- Beijing Opera **80–81**, **119**, 590
- Beijing Planning Exhibition Hall 90–91
- Beijing Silk Store 118, 119
- Beijing Zoo **105**
- Beishan Park (Jilin) 453
- Beisi Ta (Suzhou) 210
- Beiyue Si (Yulong) 398
- Bell Tower (Beijing) **98**
- Bell Tower (Nanjing) 232–3
- Bell Tower (Pingyao) 145
- Bell Tower (Wuwei) 494
- Bell Tower (Xi'an) **169**
- Bendiwan 400
- Bertolucci, Bernardo 437, 452
- Bespoke Beijing 593
- Bethune, Norman 136
- Bezeklik Caves 499, 509
- Bhrikuti, Princess 532, 536, 537
- Bicycles 594, 621
- Big Bamboo (Shanghai) 207
- Big Buddha (Lantau Island) 13, **331**
- Big Dragon Pool Falls (Yandang Shan) 253
- Bijia Shan 446
- Bike China Adventures 594, 595
- Billion Feng (Yangshuo) 424
- Billion (Hong Kong) 338, 339
- Bing Di emperor 59
- Bingling Si 464, **490**
- Bingyu Valley 443, **447**
- Binyang San Dong (Longmen Caves) 161
- Bird flu 607
- Birds
Bird and Flower Market (Kunming) 380
Bird Market (Hong Kong) **323**
Cao Hai **408**
cormorant fishing **424**
cranes **409**
Edward Youde Aviary (Hong Kong) 339
Mai Po Marshes 327
Ocean Park (Hong Kong) 329
Qinghai Hu 503
specialist holidays 595
Yingxiong Shan (Gulangyu Island) 293
Zhalong Nature Reserve **458**
see also Wildlife
- Birthday of Tin Hau (Hong Kong) 339
- Bishan Si (Wutai Shan) 142
- Bishu Shanzhuang (Chengde) 129
- Bitu Hai 401
- Bixia Si (Tai Shan) 150
- Biyun Temple (Beijing) 109
- Black Dragon Pool (Lijiang) 386–7, 398
- Black Dragon Pool (Lu Shan) 259
- Black Tiger Spring (Jinan) 148
- Bo Gu 263
- Bo Hai (Bo Sea) 78
- Bo Ya 273
- Boats
ferries 619
Grand Canal 223
Li river cruise **422–3**
Yangzi cruise **358–60**
- Bodhidharma
Baoguang Si 366
Forest of Stelae Museum (Xi'an) 168
Guangzhou 304, 305
Shaoguan 309
Shaolin Boxing 164, 165
- Bon religion 524, **526**
- Bonbon (Shanghai) 207
- Book shops, Beijing **118**, 119
- Borjigit, Empress 445
- Boutiques 587
- Bouyi people 405, 406

Boxer Rebellion (1900) 69, **439**
 Drum Tower (Beijing) 98
 Empress Cixi and 107
 Qian Men (Beijing) 90
 South Cathedral (Beijing) 91
 Southeast Corner Watchtower (Beijing) 101
 Summer Palace (Beijing) 106
 Boxing Cat Brewery (Shanghai) 207
 Bozhou **239**
 Braun, Otto 416
 Britain
 The "Great Game" **495**, 547
 in Hong Kong 313
 invasion of Tibet **547**
 Opium Wars 69, 284
 and Shanghai 189
 tea trade 299
 British Airways 613
 Bronze Age 57
 Bronze Pavilion (Summer Palace, Beijing) 106, 108
 Bubang Wangtiansh Aerial Walkway (Mengla) 390
 Buddha 36, 37
 Buddha's Birthday 51
 Buddhism 36, **37**, **491**
 108 Dagobas **481**
 10,000 Buddhas Monastery (Hong Kong) **326**
 Bezeklik Caves 509, **526–7**
 Bingling Si **490**
 Buddhist Grottoes (Gongyi) 164
 carvings of Dazu **362–3**
 cave paintings of Dunhuang **500–501**
 Caves of the Three Immortals (Kashgar) 515
 Chan (Zen) Buddhism 165, 364, 491
 Da Zhao (Hohhot) 475
 Dafo (Le Shan) 11, 15, **370–73**
 Eight Auspicious Symbols **546**
 Emei Shan **368–9**
 Famen Temple (Xi'an) 176
 Fayuan Temple (Beijing) **104**
 Fulu Buddhist Nunnery (Sanjiang) 426
 Great Bell Temple (Beijing) **109**
 Han dynasty 60, 61
 Hualin Si (Guangzhou) 304
 Jade Buddha Temple (Shanghai) **202**
 Jing'an Temple (Shanghai) **202**
 Jiu Hua Shan **240**
 Labrang Monastery 486, **487**
 Lama Temple (Beijing) **98–9**
 Liu Rong Si (Guangzhou) 305
 Longmen Caves **160–63**
 Luohan Si (Chongqing) 356
 Maji Shan 16, **484–5**
 Manfeilong Ta 391
 Manjusri **141**
 Puning Si (Chengde) **130–31**
 Putuo Shan **254–5**
 Qixia Si (Nanjing) 237

Buddhism (cont.)
 Shaolin Temple **164**
 Thousand Buddha Cliffs (Nanjing) 237
 Thousand Buddha Mountain (Jinan) 148
 Tianlong Shan Grottoes (Taiyuan) 143
 Tiantai Buddhist sect 253
 Water Curtain Thousand Buddha Caves (Luomen) 486
 Xumi Shan Caves 480
 Yuanfeng Si (Kunming) 380
 Yungang Caves **138–9**
see also Tibetan Buddhism
 Budget hotels 554
 Bulang Shan 391
 Bund (Shanghai) 12, 182, 189, **192–3**, 201, 203
 Bunu people 403
 Burma *see* Myanmar
 Burma Road **383**
 Buses **618–19**
 airport 613, 614–15
 city buses 620–21
 long-distance 618–19
 Business cards 602
 Bykal, Lake 441

C

C Bar (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Cafés, Internet 610
 Cai Lun 32
 Calendar 50, 601
 Calligraphy 33, **225**
 What to Buy in China 588
 Camera shops, Hong Kong and Macau **336**, **337**
 Camões, Luis Vaz de 332
 Camping 554–5
 trekking and camping holidays 595
 Canadian Embassy 605
 Cang Jie 32
 Cang Xin 46
 Canglang Ting (Suzhou) **216–17**
 Cangyan Shan 136
 Canidrome (Macau) 13, 338, 339
 Canton *see* Guangzhou
 Canton TV Tower (Pudong) 46
 Cantonese cuisine 288
 Cantonese language 285
 Cao Hai 403, **408**
 Cao shu calligraphy 33
 Cao Xueqin 96
 Card phones 610
 Cards, business 602
 Carpets
 Beijing shops **118**, 119
 Gang Gyen Carpet Factory (Shigatse) 548
 Carvings
 Bingling Si **490**
 Dazu **362–3**
 Maji Shan 16, **484–5**

Cathay Pacific 613
 Cathedrals
 Our Lady of China (Shanghai) 205
 Ruínas de São Paulo (Macau) 13, **332**
 South Cathedral (Beijing) **91**
 Wang Hai Lou Cathedral (Tianjin) 135
 Xi Kai Cathedral (Tianjin) 135
 Xujiahui Catholic Cathedral (Shanghai) **205**
see also Churches
 Catholic Church
 Catholic Church (Jilin) 453
 Our Lady of Lourdes (Shamian Island) 307
 Sacred Heart Church (Guangzhou) 304
 South Cathedral (Beijing) **91**
 Xujiahui Catholic Cathedral (Shanghai) **205**
 Causeway Bay (Hong Kong) **317**
 Caves
 Bei Shan 363
 Bezeklik Caves 499, 509
 Bingling Si **490**
 carvings of Dazu **362–3**
 cave paintings of Dunhuang 10, 17, 491, **500–501**
 Caves of the Three Immortals (Kashgar) 515
 Dragon Gate Grotto (Western Hills) 383
 Dripping Water Cave (Shao Shan) 266
 Guangxi 595
 Huanglong Dong (Wulingyuan) 271
 Kamikaze Caves (Lamma Island) 330
 Karst Caves (Yixing County) 224
 karst landscape 418–19
 Longgong Dong **406–7**
 Longmen Caves 147, **160–63**
 Ludi Yan (Guilin) 421
 Mahao Cave Tombs (Le Shan) 371
 Maji Shan 10, 16, **484–5**
 Mogao Caves 17, 467, 499, **501**
 Shizi Yan 309
 Thousand Buddha Caves (Kizil) 17, **513**
 Tianlong Shan Grottoes (Taiyuan) 143
 Tianxing 407
 Water Curtain Thousand Buddha Caves (Luomen) 486
 Wu Da Lian Chi 460
 Xumi Shan Caves 473, 480
 Yangshuo 424–5, 595
 Yungang Caves 137, **138–9**
 Zhijin Dong **407**
 Caving 595
 Cemeteries *see* Tombs and cemeteries

- Central China **179–279**
 food and drink **186–7**
 hotels 559–61
 Hunan and Hubei **265–79**
 Jiangsu and Anhui **209–43**
 map 180–81
 peoples 31
 Portrait of Central China **182–3**
 restaurants 575–9
 Shanghai **189–207**
 traditional Chinese gardens **184–5**
 Zhejiang and Jiangxi **245–63**
- Central Highlands (Hainan Island) 310
- Central, Hong Kong 13, **316**
- Central Plaza (Hong Kong) **316**
- Central-Mid-levels Escalator (Hong Kong) **320**
- Ceramics
 Ancient Pottery Factory (Jingdezhen) 261
 Ceramic History Exposition (Jingdezhen) 261
 Ciqi Kou (Chongqing) 357
 Foshan 308
 inventions 42, 43
 porcelain 43, **260–61**
 Porcelain Museum (Jingdezhen) 261
 Terracotta Army 60, 79, 167, **174–5**
 traditional arts 44
 What to Buy in China 588
- Chain hotels 557
- Chan, Jackie 47, 165
- Chan (W.W.) & Sons Tailor Ltd (Shanghai) 206, 207
- Chan (Zen) Buddhism 165, 364, 491
- Chang Ling (Beijing) **110–11**
- Chang Tang 528, 531
- Chang'an *see* Xi'an
- Changbai Shan 443, **454–5**
- Changbai Waterfall 454
- Changchun 437, 443, **452**
 restaurants 583
- Changchun Guan (Wuhan) 272
- Changjiao Miao people 412
- Changsha 265, **266**
 hotels 560
 restaurants 578–9
- Changzhou **224**
- Chaotian Gong (Nanjing) 229
- Chaotian Men (Chongqing) 11, 15, **356**
- Chaoyang Theater (Beijing) 119
- Chaozhou **302**
 food and drink 289
- Chapel of the Three Ages (Lhasa) 540
- Charles V, King of France 471
- Chatwin, Bruce 398
- Chen clan 306
- Chen Jia Ci (Guangzhou) 306
- Chen Kaige 47
- Chen Yi, statue of (Shanghai) 193
- Chengde 127, **128–31**
 hotels 558
 Puning Si 129, **130–31**
 restaurants 573
- Chengdi emperor 58
- Chengdu 15, 349, 355, **364–5**
 climate 54
 hotels 562
 map 365
 restaurants 582–3
- Chenghua emperor 58
- Chenghuang Miao (Zhengzhou) 158
- Chengyang 427
- Cheung Ah Tse 320–21
- Cheung Chau Bun Festival 339
- Cheung Chau Island 13, **330**
- Cheung Po-Tsai 330
- Cheung Sha 331
- Chiang Kai-shek 204, 205, 303, 310
- Chongqing 357
 flees to Taiwan 72–3
 and Guandong Communist uprising 304
 Jingtang Shan 263
 Linggu Pagoda (Nanjing) 235, 236
 Lu Shan 258, 259
 Nanjing 183, 229
- Children 601
 entertainment in Hong Kong and Macau **338–9**
 in hotels 557
- Children's Day 51
- Children's Palace (Shanghai) 200
- China Eastern Airlines 615
- China House Museum (Tianjin) 135
- China Information Travel Service (CITS) 600
- China National Museum (Beijing),
 Street-by-Street map 89
- China Northwest Airlines 615
- China Southern Airlines 615
- China Super League 592, 595
- Chinese Medicine Museum (Hangzhou) 246
- Chinese New Year 48, 53, 339
- Chinnery, George 332
- Chishui **416**
- Chong'an 415
- Chongdi emperor 58
- Chongqing 15, 349, 355, **356–7**
 hotels 562
 map 355, 357
 pollution of Yangzi river 274
 restaurants 582
 A Week in Sichuan and Chongqing 11, **15**
- Chongqing Museum (Chongqing) 356
- Chongqing Si (Lanzhou) 489
- Chongshan Si (Taiyuan) 79, 143
- Chongwu 291, **297**
- Chongxi Ta (Zhaoqing) 308
- Chongyang (Double-ninth) Festival 53
- Chongzhen emperor 58
 Forbidden City 94
 Jing Shan Park (Beijing) 96
- Chongzheng Hall (Shenyang) 444
- Chopsticks **569**
- Christianity
 Nestorian Christianity 168
see also Cathedrals; Churches
- Christmas Day 53
- Chuandixia **117**
- Churches
 Catholic Church (Jilin) 453
 Church of St. Sofia (Harbin) 456
 Mu'en Tang (Shanghai) 194
 Our Lady of Lourdes (Shamian Island) 307
 Protestant Church (Qingdao) 152
 Russian Orthodox Church (Shanghai) 202
 Sacred Heart Church (Guangzhou) 304
 St. Joseph's Church (Beijing) 100
 St. Michael's Church (Qingdao) 152
see also Cathedrals
- Ci'an, Empress 115
- Cinema *see* Film
- Ciping 263
- Ciqi Kou (Chongqing) 357
- Circuses 590–91
- Cishi Ta (Wulingyuan) 267
- Citibank 608
- CITIC Minsk World (Shenzhen) 302
- City God Temple (Shanghai) 198
- City Museum (Kunming) 381
- City walls 41
 Chaozhou 302
 Nanjing 230–31
 Pingyao 41, 144
 Xi'an **168**
 Zhaoqing 308
- Citygate Outlets (Hong Kong) 337
- Civil Aviation Administration of China (CAAC) 614, 615
- Civil War 72
- Cixi
 Beijing Opera 80
 Boxer Rebellion 439
 Empress Dowager 69, **107**, 439
 Summer Palace (Beijing) **106–8**
 tomb of 115
 Xi'an 170
- Climate **54–5**
 cold weather 606
 heat and humidity 606
 when to go 598
- Climbing 594–5
- Clothes
 in cold weather 606
 etiquette 602

- Clothes (cont.)
 Hong Kong and Macau shops **337**
 in hot weather 606
 Shanghai shops **206**, 207
 what to take 598
 women travelers 604
- Cloud Dispelling Gate (Summer Palace, Beijing) 108
- Le Club at La Maison (Shanghai) 207
- Clubs
 Beijing **119**
 Hong Kong **338**, 339
 Shanghai **207**
- Coasts, landscape and wildlife 29
- Coins 609
- Cold weather 606
- Coleridge, Samuel Taylor 478
- Communications **610–11**
- Communist Party 22–3, **72**
 cult of Mao **268–9**
 Cultural Revolution **70–71**
 festivals 50, 52
 and Guandong Communist uprising 304
 Hongyuan Cun (Chongqing) 357
 Jinggang Shan 263
 and literature 35
 Long March 72, **262–3**, 377
 Longhua Cemetery of Martyrs (Shanghai) **205**
 People's Republic of China founded 72–3
 Shanghai 183
 Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party (Shanghai) **200**
 Zunyi Conference 416
- Computer shops, Hong Kong and Macau **336**, 337
- Confucian Temple (Suzhou) **217**
- Confucianism **36**, 57
 Fuzi Miao (Nanjing) 228
 Han dynasty 60
 literature 34
 Wenchang Ge (Yangzhou) 227
- Confucius 34, 36, 60, 147, **149**, 568–9
 birthplace 79, **148–9**
 Confucius' Birthday 52
 Tai Shan 151
 and the *Yijing* 39
- Confucius Forest (Qufu) 149
- Confucius Mansion (Qufu) 148–9
- Confucius Temple (Beijing) **99**
- Confucius Temple (Jilin) 453
- Confucius Temple (Qufu) 149
- Confucius Temple (Tianjin) 135
- Constellation (Shanghai) 207
- Consulates 599
- Convention & Exhibition Centre (Hong Kong) 316–17, 338, 339
- Conversion charts 601
- Corban Festival 53
- Cormorant fishing **424**
- County Magistrates Residence (Pingyao) 144
- Courier services 611
- Courtyard houses, Beijing **97**
- Cow Street Mosque (Beijing) **104**
- Coward, Noel 317
- Craft shops
 Beijing **118**, 119
 Hong Kong and Macau **336–7**
- Crafts see Arts and crafts
- Cranes (birds) **409**
 Zhalong Nature Reserve 458
- Credit cards 586, 608–9
- Crescent Moon Lake 466
- Crime 604
- Crowne Plaza 557
- Cruises 367
 Li river cruise **422–3**
 Yangzi cruise **358–60**
- Crystal Palace (Wu Da Lian Chi) 460
- Cui Hu Gongyuan (Kunming) 14, **380**
- Cui Jian 47
- Cuiheng **308**
- Cuiwei Yuan (Guiyang) 404
- Cultural Centre (Hong Kong) 338, 339
- Cultural Revolution **70–71**, 73
 arts and 46
 Chuandixia 117
 cult of Mao 268–9
 and literature 35
 and religion 36
 Shanghai 183
 in Tibet 525
- Culture Club (Macau) 337
- Currency **608–9**
 currency exchange 608
 duty-free allowances 599
- Customs see etiquette
- Customs House (Shanghai) 192
- Customs House (Wuhan) 273
- Customs information 599
- Cycling 621
- Cynical Realism school 46
- D**
- Da Hua Miao people 408, 412
- Da Wang Feng 298
- Da Xiangguo Si (Kaifeng) 156
- Da Zhao (Hohhot) 475
- Dabei Monastery (Tianjin) 135
- Dacang Langmu Gansu Gompa (Langmusi) 486
- Dadonghai 311
- Dadu river 262, 377
- Dafo (Le Shan) 11, 15, **370–73**
- Dafo Si (Shijiazhuang) 136
- Dafo Si (Zhangye) 494
- Dagobas, 108 (Ningxia) **481**
- Daguan Pavilion (Lake Dian) 383
- Dai Miao (Tai Shan) 151
- Dai people 30, 347, **389**
 Dai Minority Park 388
 Xishuangbanna 389, 390
- Daizong emperor 58
- Dakong Shan 395
- Dalai Hu 478
- Dalai Lamas 524
 Beihai Park (Beijing) 96
 exile in India 525
 Ganden Palace (Lhasa) 540
 Lukhang (Lhasa) 532
 Norbulingka (Lhasa) 533
 Pelkor Chode Monastery (Gyantse) 547
 Potala Palace (Lhasa) **538–9**
 Samye Monastery 545
 Summer Palace (Lhasa) 533
 Tashilunpo Monastery (Shigatse) 548–9
 Tibetan Oracle 540–41
 Yellow Hat Sect 140
- Dali 10, 14, 349, 379, **392–4**
 hotels 562
 map 393
 pagodas 171, 392–3
 restaurants 582
- Dali Museum (Dali) 392
- Dali Sutra Pillar (Kunming) 381
- Dalian 437, 443, **450–51**
 hotels 562
 map 451
 Public Security Bureau (PSB) 599
 restaurants 583–4
- Dalu 391
- Damenglong 391
- Daming Hu (Jinan) 148
- Daming Si (Yangzhou) 226
- Dance, traditional 591
- Dandong 437, 443, **446–7**
- Danling river 359
- Danxia Shan 309
- Daode Guan (Zhangye) 494
- Daoguang emperor 59
- Daoism 36, **37**, 57
 Dong Yue Miao (Beijing) **99**
 Eight Immortals 155
 Eight Immortals Temple (Xi'an) 167, **170**
 Empress of Heaven **155**
 Fung Ying Sin Koon (New Territories) 327
 Han dynasty 60, 61
 Heng Shan **267**
 Hua Shan **177**
 literature 34
qi 38
 Qingcheng Shan **374**
 Qingyang Gong (Chengdu) 364
 Songsan **164**
 tai ji quan (Tai Chi) **279**
 Tai Shan **150–51**
 traditional Chinese gardens 184
 traditional medicine 238
 White Clouds Temple (Beijing) **104–5**

Daoism (cont.)
 Wudang Shan 278
 Xuanmiao Guan (Suzhou) 211
 The Dar (Shanghai) 207
 Datong 127, **137**
 hotels 558
 restaurants 573–4
 Daur people 460
 David's Shirts (Hong Kong) 337
 Daxu, Li river cruise 422
 Daxue Shan, Long March 262
 Dazhalan (Beijing) **91**
 Dazhen 388
 Dazheng Hall (Shenyang) 444
 Dazu, carvings of 11, 15, 355,
 362–3
 Deep Water Bay **329**
 Dehydration 606
 Deities, Buddhist 527
 Democracy movement 73
 Deng Xiaoping 21, 73, 302
 Deng Yingchao 357
 Dengfeng 164
 Department stores 587
 Beijing **118**, 119
 Hong Kong **336**, 337
 Departure tax, air travel 613
 Deqin, hotels 562
 Deserts
 Chang Tang 531
 desertification 469
 Gobi Desert 79, 476
 landscape and wildlife 27
 Taklamakan Desert 467, 498,
 507, 519
 Detian Falls 403, **431**
 Dezhong emperor 58
 DHL Worldwide Express 611
 Di Tan Park (Beijing) **99**
 Dialects 600
 Dialling codes 611
 Dian
 Kingdom of 348, 379
 Lake 383
 Diaoshuilou Pubu (Jingpo Hu)
 458
 Diarrhea 606
 Ding Ling (Beijing) 111
 Ding Shan 224
 Dinghu Shan 308
 Dinosaur Museum (Zigong) 361
 Dinosaurs see Fossils
 Disabled travelers 557, 600
 Discos 591
 Discounts
 air travel 613, 615
 in hotels 555
 Discovery Bay 331
 Diseases 606–7
 immunization 599, 607
 Disneyland, Hong Kong 331, 338,
 339
 Divine Cliffs (Yandang Shan) 183,
 253
 Divine Peaks (Yandang Shan) 253
 Dixia Senlin 458

Doctors 605
 Dog meat 405
 Dong Hu (Shaoying) 252
 Dong people
 architecture 426, **427**
 Guizhou and Guangxi 403
 Dong Yue Miao (Beijing) **99**
 Dongba religion 399
 Dongba Research Institute
 (Lijiang) 398
 Donghai Park (Dalian) 450
 Donghe (Baotou) 476
 Dongjiang cooking 289
 Dongshan Ling 310
 Dongsheng **476**
 Dongson drums **429**, 430
 Dongting Hu 265, 267
 Dongxiang people 488, 511
 Dormitories 554
 security 604
 Dost Mohammed 495
 Double-ninth (Chongyang)
 Festival 53
 Doupotang Falls 407
 Dragon Boat Festivals 51, 339,
 413
 Dragon Culture (Hong Kong) 336,
 337
 Dragon Gate Grotto (Western
 Hills) 383
 Dragon Head Hill, Li river cruise
 423
 Dragon Head Rock (Wudang
 Shan) 278
 Dragon King Temple (Summer
 Palace, Beijing) 108
 Dragon-i (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Dragonair 615
 Dragons **94**
 Dragon's Head Cliff (Lu Shan) 258
 Drepung Monastery (Lhasa) 540
 Drinks see Food and drink
 Dripping Water Cave (Shao Shan)
 266
 Drop (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Drugs, prescription 605
 Drum Tower (Beijing) **98**
 Drum Tower (Nanjing) 232–3
 Drum Tower (Sanjiang) 426
 Drum Tower (Xi'an) **169**
 Drum Tower (Zhongwei) 480
 Drums, Dongson **429**, 430
 Du Fu 34, 62, 64
 Du Fu's Thatched Cottage
 (Chengdu) 364
 Du Ta (Manting) 390
 Du Wen Xiu 392
 Du Wenya 446
 Du Yuesheng 195
 Duan, Prince 439
 Duanzong emperor 59
 Dujiangyan **374–5**
 Dunhuang 17, **498**
 cave paintings of Dunhuang 10,
 483, 491, **500–501**
 hotels 563

Dunhuang (cont.)
 Mogao Caves 17, 467, 499, **501**
 restaurants 584–5
 silk paintings 63
 Dunhuang Gucheng 498
 Duoyun Xuan (Shanghai) 207
 Dutong 427
 Duty-free allowances 599
 Duxiu Feng (Guilin) 421
 Duzong emperor 59
 Dye, D.S. 365
 Dynasties **58–9**
 see also individual dynasties
 Dysentery 607
 Dzong (Gyantse) 547
 Dzong (Shigatse) 548

E

E-mail facilities 610
 E'Ang Zongzhe 487
 Earthen dwellings of Yongding
 296
 East China Sea 182
 East Tomb (Shenyang) 445
 Eastern Han dynasty 58, 60–61
 Eastern Palaces (Forbidden City)
 94–5
 Eastern Qing Tombs **115**
 Eastern Zhou dynasty 57, 59
 Edward Youde Aviary (Hong
 Kong) 339
 Eight Auspicious Symbols **546**
 Eight Banners 436
 Eight Hermits Hall (Nancheng)
 257
 Eight Immortals Temple (Xi'an)
 167, **170**
 18 September Museum
 (Shenyang) 444
 Electricity 601
 Electronics shops, Hong Kong
 and Macau **336**, 337
 Elephant Trunk Hill, Li river cruise
 422
 Elephants, Wild Elephant Valley
 388
 Embassies 599, 605
 Emei Shan 15, 355, **368–9**
 Emergencies 605
 Emin, Prince 508
 Emin Ta (Turpan) 508
 Empress of Heaven **155**
 Engels, Friedrich 303
 English language 600
 Entertainment **590–91**
 Beijing **118–19**
 Hong Kong and Macau **338–9**
 Shanghai **206–7**
 Environmental problems 595
 desertification 469
 Three Gorges Dam 274
 Er Hai 14, 348, **394**
 map 393
 Er Hai Park 394
 Er Shi emperor 59

Erwang Miao (Dujiangyan) 375
 Ethnic minorities 24–5, **30–31**
 food and drink 567
 River Border **461**
see also individual peoples
 Etiquette **602–3**
 food and drink **568–9**
 Everest, Mount 531
 base camp 525, **550–51**
 Ewenki people 461
 Exchange rates 608
 EXIT (Hong Kong) 336, 337
 Exports, customs information 599

F

Face saving, etiquette 602
 Famen Temple (Xi'an) 176
 Fan Pagoda (Kaifeng) 157
 Fang Lijun, Series 2 No. 2 46–7
 Fanpai 414
 Fast food 567
 Fayu Si (Putuo Shan) 255
 Fayuan Temple (Beijing) **104**
 Federal Express 611
 Feilai 309
 Feixia 309
 Feiyun Dong 415
 Felix (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Fen river 143
Feng shui 39
Fengcong karst 419, 423
 Fenghuan Ta (Chaozhou) 302
 Fenghuang Shan 447
 Fenghuang Shan Lu Revolution
 Headquarters Site (Yan'an) 177
 Fenghuang Song (Jiuhua Shan)
 240
Fenglin karst 419
 Fengxian Si (Longmen Caves) 160
 Ferries 619
 Festivals **50–53**
 good luck and prosperity **48–9**
 Hong Kong **339**
 Miao people **412–13**, 415
 Fez (Beijing) 119
 Fifth Moon Festival 51
 Film 46, 591
 Beijing **118–19**
 festivals 51
 Kung Fu film industry **165**
 Shanghai **207**
 Fire services 605
 Fireworks 48–9
 Firing range 594
 First-aid kit 606
 Fishing, cormorant **424**
 Fitzgerald, Lieutenant 332
 Five Dynasties 58, **64**
 5-Level Double Ship Lock (Three
 Gorges Dam) 275
 Five Rams Statue (Guangzhou)
 307
 Five-colored Pool, Jiuzhai Gou
 tour 376
 Flaming Mountains (Turpan) 509

Flood Control Monument
 (Harbin) 456
 Flower Market (Hong Kong) **323**
 Flower Theater (Bozhou) 239
 Flowers *see* Parks and gardens;
 Plants
 Fo Si (Manting) 390
 Foguang Si (Wutai Shan) 142
 Folk Culture Village (Shenzhen)
 302
 Food and drink 25
 alcohol 603
 Beijing and the North **82–3**
 Central China **186–7**
 customs and etiquette **568–9**
 dog meat 405
 festivals 49
 grapes and wine **510**
 "little eats" 567
 Macau **335**
 rice **286–7**
 Sheung Wan's Markets (Hong
 Kong) **321**
 South China **288–9**
 Southwest China **352–3**
 stomach upsets 606
 The Story of Tea **299**
 street food 566
 symbolism 565
 Tsingtao beer **152**
 What to Drink in China **570–71**
see also Restaurants
 Football (soccer) 590, 592
 Forbidden City 12, 40, 67, **92–5**,
 438–9
 Visitors' Checklist 93
 Foreign Languages Bookstore
 (Beijing) 100
 Forest of Stelae Museum (Xi'an)
168
 Forests, Northeast China 28
 Former Headquarters of the
 Hubei Military Government
 (Wuhan) 272
 Former Supreme Court (Hong
 Kong) 316
 Formula One Grand Prix 592, 595
 Forrest, George 350, 351
 Fortaleza do Monte (Macau) 13,
332
 Fortress (Hong Kong) 336, 337
 Foshan **308**
 Foshan Folk Art Studio (Foshan)
 308
 Fossils **459**
 Dinosaur Museum (Zigong) 361
 Inner Mongolia Museum
 (Hohhot) 474
 Wenya Museum (Jinzhou) 446
 Foster, Sir Norman 316
 Founding of Chinese Communist
 Party Day 52
 Fragrant Isle (Suzhou) 212
 French Concession (Shanghai) 13,
200
 French Legation (Kunming) 380

Friendship Highway 525, 550,
551
 Fringe Club (Hong Kong) 338,
 339
 Frost bite 606
 Fubo Shan (Guilin) 421
 Fuguo Si (Lijiang) 398
 Fujian province 284, **291–9**
 hotels 561
 map 291
 restaurants 579
 Fujiazhuang Scenic Area 450–51
 Fuli Village 425
 Fulu Buddhist Nunnery (Sanjiang)
 426
 Furniture Museum (Pingyao) 144
 Furongzhen **267**
 Fuxing Lu (Dali) 392
 Fuxing Park (Shanghai) 13, **200**
 Fuzhou 291, **298**
 hotels 561
 restaurants 579
 Fuzi Miao (Nanjing) 228

G

Galleries *see* Museums and
 galleries
 Gambling, Hong Kong **338**, 339
 Games, in public parks 590
 Ganden Monastery (Lhasa) 524,
 531, **541**, 542–3
 Ganden Palace (Lhasa) 540
 Gang of Four **71**, 73, 183
 Gang Gyen Carpet Factory
 (Shigatse) 548
 Gangzaihou Beach (Gulangyu
 Island) 293
 Ganjia Grasslands 486
 Ganlaba 388
 Gansu province 466, 467, **483**
 hotels 563
 map 483
 restaurants 584–5
 Gansu Provincial Museum
 (Lanzhou) 16, **489**
 Gantong Si (Dali) 393
 Gao Miao (Zhongwei) 480
 Gao Ming, General 381
 Gao Xingjian 34
 Gao Zhishen 383
 Gaochang Gucheng 509
 Gaochang Ruins 17, 19, **499**
 Gaodi emperor 58, 60
 Gaoding 427
 Gaozong emperor 58, 59, 63, 170,
 176
 Gaozu emperor 58
 Garden of Harmonious Pleasures
 (Summer Palace, Beijing) 107
 Garden Tomb of Puhaddin
 (Yangzhou) 227
 Garden of Virtue and Harmony
 (Summer Palace, Beijing) 107,
 108
 Gardens *see* Parks and gardens

- Gasa 391
 Gate of Divine Prowess (Forbidden City) 95
 Gate of Heavenly Purity (Forbidden City) 40, 94
 Gate of Supreme Harmony (Forbidden City) 92
 Gay and lesbian travelers 604–5
 Ge Yuan (Yangzhou) 226
 Geisha people 412, 413, 415
 The Geisha (Shanghai) 207
 Gelanghe 390–91
 Gelugpa sect *see* Yellow Hat Sect
 Genden Drup 548
 General Post Office 611
 Genghis Khan 58, 66, 467, 468–9, **477**
 and Beijing 85
 Genghis Khan's Mausoleum (Dongsheng) **476**, 477
 Inner Mongolia Museum (Hohhot) 474
 Geology, karst **418–19**
 George III, King of England 439
 German Concession (Qingdao) 152
 Ghost City (Mongolia) 512
 Ginseng **454**
 Giordano (Hong Kong) 337
 Glacier, Hailou Gou **377**
 Glamour Bar (Shanghai) 207
 Glossary 654–5
 Gobi Desert 79, 476
 Goccia (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 G.O.D. (Hong Kong) 337
 Golden Mile (Hong Kong) 322
 Golden Water (Forbidden City) 92
 Golf 592
 Golmud 483, **503**
 Gomar Monastery 502
 Gong, Prince, Prince Gong's Mansion (Beijing) 12, **96**, 119
 Gong Li 145
 Gongdi emperor 59
 Gongqing Forest Park (Shanghai) 201
 Gongtang Pagoda 487
 Gongyi **164**
 Gongzong emperor 59
 Good luck and prosperity **48–9**
 Gorgeous Arts and Crafts (Hong Kong) 336, 337
 Government shops 587
 Governor's Residence (Qingdao) 152
 Grand Canal **223**, 224, 226
 map 223
 Grand Dragon Gate (Western Hills) 383
 Grand Hyatt 557
 Grape Valley (Turpan) 509
 Grapes **510**
 Grasslands, Inner Mongolia 28, **475**
 Great Bell Temple (Beijing) **109**
 "Great Game" **495**
 Great Goose Pagoda (Xi'an) 16, 167, **170**, 491
 Great Hall of the People (Beijing), Street-by-Street map 88
 Great Hall of the People (Chongqing) 356–7
 Great Leap Forward 73
 Great Mosque (Hohhot) 474
 Great Mosque (Kuaq) 513
 Great Mosque (Xi'an) 16, **169**
 Great Mosque (Xining) 502
 Great Purity Palace (Lao Shan) 153
 Great Wall of China 12, 21, 60, 78, **112–14**
 Great Wall Museum (Jiayuguan) 16, **494**
 Hexi Corridor 483
 Hushan Great Wall (Dandong) 447
 Jiayuguan Fort 10, **496–7**
 map 113
 in Ming dynasty 67, 112–13
 Shanhaiguan 134
 Xuanbi Changcheng 494
 Green Gang 200
 Greeting people 602
 Grünwedel, Albert 509
 Gu Hua 267
 Gu Nan Men (Guilin) 420
 Gu Shan 298
 Guan Yu, General 35, 158, 274, 360
 Guang Wudi emperor 58, 60
 Guangdong Communist uprising 304
 Guangdong province 284, **301**
 hotels 561
 map 301
 restaurants 579–80
 Guanghan Dong 407
 Guanghua Lu (Tengchong) 395
 Guangji Men (Chaozhou) 302
 Guangji Si (Wuhu) 239
 Guangxi province 348, 349, **403**
 caving 1006
 food and drink 353
 hotels 562
 map 403
 restaurants 583
 A Week in Guangxi and Yunnan 10, **14**
 Guangxiao Si (Guangzhou) 305
 Guangxu emperor 59, 69, 452
 Beijing Opera 80
 Confucius Temple (Beijing) 99
 Summer Palace (Beijing) 107, 108
 Xi'an 170
 Guangzhou (Canton) 301, **304–7**
 air travel 615
 food and drink 288
 hospitals 605
 hotels 561
 map 305
 Public Security Bureau (PSB) 599
 restaurants 579
 Visitors' Checklist 305
 Guangzong emperor 59
 Guanlin (Luoyang) 158
 Guanyin Colossus (Putuo Shan) 254
 Guanyin Si (Dali) 393
 Gui Shan (Wuhan) 273
 Guia Fort and Lighthouse (Macau) 332
 Guilin 10, 14, 349, 403, 419, **420–23**
 hotels 562
 Li river cruise **422–3**
 map 421
 restaurants 583
 Visitors' Checklist 421
 Guiping **428–9**
 Guiyang **404–5**
 map 405
 restaurants 583
 Guiyuan Si (Wuhan) 273
 Guizhou province 348, 349, **403**
 food and drink 353
 hotels 562
 map 403
 restaurants 583
 Gulangyu Island 292–3
 map 293
 Gulong Si (Huanglong Xi) 374
 Gulou (Yinchuan) 479
 Gulou (Zhangye) 494
 Gunzhong Pass 480
 Guo Xi 226
 Guoqing Si (Tiantai Shan) 253
 Guqin Tai (Wuhan) 273
 Gusong Qiao (Songpan) 375
 Guyuan 473, **480**
 Gyantse **547**
H
 Ha Noi Ruins (Kashgar) 515
 Hai Rui 310
 Haibao Ta (Yinchuan) 479
 Haidong 394
 Haigeng Park (Lake Dian) 383
 Haikou (Hainan Island) 301, 310
 air travel 615
 Haila'er 473, **478**
 Hailou Gou Glacier **377**
 Hainan Coconut Festival 51
 Hainan Ferry Port 431
 Hainan Island 301, **310–11**, 592
 air travel 615
 hotels 561
 map 301, 311
 restaurants 579–80
 Hair Crab Season 53
 Haitong **371**
 Hakka people 285, 291
 earthen dwellings of Yongding **296**
 Xincun 311
 Hall of Attractive Scenery (Suzhou) 218
 Hall of Benevolence and Longevity (Summer Palace, Beijing) 107, 108

- Hall of Distance Fragrance (Suzhou) 213
- Hall of Four Auspicious Merits (Suzhou) 219
- Hall of Happiness and Longevity (Summer Palace, Beijing) 108
- Hall of Imperial Peace (Forbidden City) 94
- Hall of Jade Ripples (Summer Palace, Beijing) 108
- Hall of Mental Cultivation (Forbidden City) 95
- Hall of Middle Harmony (Forbidden City) 93
- Hall of Supreme Harmony (Forbidden City) 93
- Hall of Union (Forbidden City) 94
- Han Chinese 30
- Han dynasty 58, 60–61
porcelain 261
- Han Jiang estuary 302
- Han Xiangzi 37
- Hanafi School, Islam 511
- Hanas Lake Nature Reserve 512
- Hanging Monastery (Heng Shan) 76
- Hanging Palace (Cangyan Shan) 136
- Hanging Temple (Heng Shan) 127, **137**
- Hangzhou 13, 183, 245, **246–51**
food and drink 186
hotels 560
map 247
restaurants 578
West Lake **248–51**
- Hani people 30, 388
- Hankou (Wuhan) 273
- Hanlingyuan Museum (Yangzhou) 226
- Hanshan Si (Suzhou) **217**
- Hanwen Gong Ci (Chaozhou) 302
- Hao 167
- Haoshang Bridge (Le Shan) 371
- Happy Valley Racecourse (Hong Kong) **317**, 338, 339
- Harbin 282, 436, 437, 443, **456–7**
climate 55
hotels 562–3
map 457
restaurants 584
skiing 593, 595
- Harbin Northern Forest Zoo (Harbin) 457
- Harbour City (Hong Kong) 336, 337
- Harbour Plaza 557
- Hardoon, Silas 202
- He Lu, King of Wu 217
- He Xiangning, tomb of 236
- He Yuan (Yangzhou) 227
- Health care **605**
diseases 606–7
immunization 599, 607
stomach upsets and diarrhea 606
- Heat 606
- Heavenly Kingdom Rebellion see Taiping Rebellion
- Hebei province 78, 79, **127**
hotels 558–9
map 127
restaurants 573–4
- Hebei Provincial Museum (Shijiazhuang) 136
- Hedi emperor 58, 61
- Hedin, Sven 499
- Hefei **239**
- Hei Ta 391
- Heihe 460
- Heikong Shan 395
- Heilong Jiang 460
- Heilong Tan Gongyuan (Lijiang) 398
- Heilongjiang province 436, **443**
hotels 562–3
restaurants 583–4
skiing 593, 595
- Helan Shan 473, **480**
- Henan province 78, **147**
hotels 559
map 147
restaurants 574–5
- Henan Provincial Museum (Zhengzhou) 158
- Heng river 137
- Heng Shan 76, 137, 265, **267**
- Hepatitis 607
- Heritage Museum (Hong Kong) **326**
- Heshun 96, 395
- Hetian Regional Museum (Khotan) 519
- Hetian Silk Factory (Khotan) 519
- Hexi Corridor 483
- Hezhen people 461
- Hilton 557
- Himalayas 355, 531
Everest base camp 525, **550–51**
- History **57–73**
- HIV 607
- Hmong people see Miao people
- Ho, Dr. (Daoist physician) 398
- Ho, Dr. Stanley 333, 334
- Hohhot 473, **474–5**
hotels 563
restaurants 584
- Holiday Inn 557
- Holidays, public 53, 556, 600
- Hollywood Road (Hong Kong) 13, **320**
- Homosexuality 604–5
- Honeychurch Antiques (Hong Kong) 336, 337
- Hong Kong **313–31**
air travel 613, 615
banks 608
climate 55
entertainment **338–9**
film industry 47
food and drink 289
history 284, 313
- Hong Kong (cont.)
hospitals 605
hotels 561
map 314–15
The Peak 13, **318–19**
public transport 620, 621
restaurants 580–81
returned to China 73
shopping **336–7**
Street Finder 340–43
Two Days in Hongkong 10, **13**
visas and passports 598
- Hong Kong Academy of the Performing Arts 338, 339
- Hong Kong Arts Centre 50, 338, 339
- Hong Kong Coliseum 338, 339
- Hong Kong Cultural Centre 322
- Hong Kong Disneyland 331, 338, 339
- Hong Kong Life Saving Society **329**
- Hong Kong Museum of Art **322**
- Hong Kong Museum of History **322–3**
- Hong Kong Rugby Football Union 592, 595
- Hong Kong Science Museum **322**
- Hong Kong Wetland Park 327
- Hong Kong Zoological & Botanical Gardens 13, **317**
- Hong Men Gong (Tai Shan) 151
- Hong Qiao Market (Beijing) 12, **118**, 119
- Hong Xiuquan 229, 303, 428, 429
- Hongcun 240
- Hongqiao Airport (Shanghai) 613
- Hongshan Park (Ürümqi) 510
- Hongwu emperor 58, 66, 237
Linggu Temple (Nanjing) 235, 236
- Ming Palace Ruins (Nanjing) 232
- Taiping Heavenly Kingdom
- History Museum (Nanjing) 228
- tomb of 234, 236
- Wenchang Ge (Yangzhou) 227
- Winning Chess Pavilion (Nanjing) 233
- Xi'an 168
- Zhonghua Gate (Nanjing) 230
- Hongxi emperor 58
- Hongyuan Cun (Chongqing) 357
- Hongzhi emperor 58, 260
- Horses
Happy Valley Racecourse (Hong Kong) **317**, 338, 339
horse racing 52
horse trekking 595
- Hospitality 602
- Hospitals 605
- Hotan **519**
- Hotels **554–63**
advance booking 598
air conditioning 606

- Hotels (cont.)
 bargaining 603
 booking 555
 children in 557
 disabled travelers 557
 hidden costs 555
 hotel chains 557
 restaurants 566
 seasonal demand 556
 security 604
 smoking in 603
 tipping in 557
- House of Blues & Jazz (Shanghai) 207, 208
- Houses
 Beijing's courtyard houses **97**
 Dai people 389
 Dong architecture **427**
 earthen dwellings of Yongding **296**
 Huizhou architecture **241**
- Howard Johnson 557
- HSBC (Hong Kong & Shanghai Banking Corporation) 608
 Headquarters (Hong Kong) 39, 316
- Hu Jintao 23, 73
- Hu Xueyan 246
- Hua Shan 167, **177**, 430
- Huacheng Si (Jiuhua Shan) 240
- Huading Peak (Tiantai Shan) 253
- Huagang Garden (Hangzhou) 248
- Huai river 209
- Huai Su 196
- Huaisheng Mosque (Guangzhou) 305
- Huaiyang cuisine 187
- Hualin Si (Guangzhou) 304
- Huandi emperor 58
- Huang Gongwang 45
- Huang Shan 209, **242–3**
- Huang Shi Zhai (Wulingyuan) 270
- Huangguoshu Falls **407**
- Huanghua Cheng **114**
- Huanglong **375**
- Huanglong Dong Park (Hangzhou) 246
- Huanglong Dong (Wulingyuan) 271
- Huanglong Xi 11, 15, **374**
- Huangpu Park (Shanghai) 201
- Huangpu river 12, 182, 189, 190, **201**
- Huangyao **428**
- Huashi Lou (Qingdao) 153
- Huating Si (Western Hills) 383
- Huaxi District (Guiyang) 405
- Huayan Si (Datong) 137
- Huayi Classical Furniture (Beijing) 118, 119
- Hubao Building Basement Market (Shanghai) 206
- Hubei province 183, **265**
 hotels 560–61
 map 265
 restaurants 578–9
- Hubei Provincial Museum (Wuhan) 272
- Huguang Guildhall (Beijing) 119
- Huguo Lu (Dali) 392
- Hui Li 247
- Hui Neng 305
- Hui people 31, 466, 473
 Cow Street Mosque (Beijing) 104
 food and drink 83
 Islam 511
 Weining 408
- Hui'an people 285, 297
- Huidi emperor 58
- Hui'e, legend of 255
- Huihe 164
- Huiji Si (Putuo Shan) 255
- Huizhou architecture **241**
- Huizong emperor 59, 65
- Hukeng 296
- Huli Shan Paotai (Xiamen) 292
- Hulunbuir Grasslands 478
- Humble Administrator's Garden (Suzhou) **212–13**
- Humidity 606
- Hunan First Normal College (Changsha) 266
- Hunan province 183, **265**
 hotels 560–61
 map 265
 restaurants 578–9
- Hunan Provincial Museum (Changsha) 266
- Hundred Flowers Movement 73
- Hungry Ghost Festival (Hong Kong) 339
- Huo Qubin, General 489
- Huoshao Shan (Wu Da Lian Chi) 460
- Hushan Great Wall (Dandong) 447
- Huxingting Teahouse (Shanghai) 189, 199
- Huxiyan (Xiamen) 292
- Hyatt Regency 557
- Hygiene 605
- Hypothermia 606
- I**
- Ibis 557
- Ice sculpture 456, 460
- Id Kah Mosque (Kashgar) 17, **514**
- Ikparhan 516
- Ili river 512, 513
- Immunization 599, 607
- Imperial Gardens (Forbidden City) 94
- Imperial Palace (Shenyang) 438, **444**
- Imperial Zenith Hall (Forbidden City) 95
- Impression West Lake (Hangzhou) 246
- Incense Burner Peak (Beijing) 109
- Influenza 607
- Inner Mongolia and the Silk Roads **462–519**
 food and drink 83
 Gansu and Qinghai **483–505**
 Genghis Khan **477**
 grasslands 28, **475**
 hotels 563
 Inner Mongolia and Ningxia **473–81**
 Jiayuguan Fort **496–7**
 Maji Shan 16, **484–5**
 maps 464–5, 473
 Mongols of the Steppe **468–9**
 Portrait of Inner Mongolia and the Silk Roads 466–7
 restaurants 584–5
 Silk Road **470–71**
 The Spread of Buddhism **491**
 Trans Siberian Express 441
 Xinjiang **507–19**
- Inner Mongolia Museum (Hohhot) 474
- Inner Mongolia province 472–81
 hotels 563
 map 473
 restaurants 584
- Insect-borne diseases 607
- Insurance 599, 605
- Intercontinental 557
- International Fashion Festival 52
- International Finance Centre 316
- International Labor Day 51
- International Post Office 611
- International Women's Day 50
- Internet facilities 610
- Inventions **42–3**
- Irish Embassy 605
- Iron Pagoda (Kaifeng) 156
- Isetan (Shanghai) 206, 207
- Islam see Muslims and Islam
- Islamic Cemetery (Guangzhou) 306–7
- Island Beverley (Hong Kong) 336, 337
- Itineraries
 Two Days in Beijing 10, **12**
 Two Days in Hongkong 10, **13**
 Two Days in Shanghai 10, **12–13**
 Two Weeks on the Silk Road 10, **16–17**
 A Week in Guangxi and Yunnan 10, **14**
 A Week in Sichuan and Chongqing 11, **15**
- Iyer, Pico 313
- J**
- Jade **519**
- Jade Belt Bridge (Summer Palace, Beijing) 108
- Jade Buddha Temple (Shanghai) **202**

- Jade Dragon Snow Mountain 386–7, 398, 400, 592
 Jade Market (Hong Kong) **323**, 336, 337
 James and Hooch (Beijing) 119
 Jamyang Choje 540
 Japan, occupation of Manchuria 72, 437, 443
 Japanese Germ Warfare Experimental Base (Harbin) 457
 Japanese-Russian Prison (Dalian) 451
 Jar Hill Observation Platform (Three Gorges Dam) 275
 Le Jardin (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Jardine Matheson 203
 Jesuits
 astronomy 100
 and Ming dynasty 67
 and Qing dynasty 68, 69
 Ruinas de Sro Paulo (Macau) 332
 Yuanming Yuan (Beijing) 109
 Jet Li 165
 Jewelry shops, Hong Kong and Macau **336**, 337
 Jewish Refugee Museum (Shanghai) **204**
 Jews, in Kaifeng 156, **157**
 Jiajing emperor 58, 59
 Jialing river 356
 Jian Lou (Arrow Tower, Beijing) 90
 Street-by-Street map 88
 Jian Zhen 226
 Jianfeng Chi (Stone Forest) 385
 Jianfeng Ling Nature Reserve 311
 Jianfu Gong (Qingcheng Shan) 374
 Jiang Qing 71
 Jiang Zemin 73, 227
 Jiangsu province **209**
 hotels 560
 map 209
 restaurants 577
 Jiangxi province **245**
 hotels 560
 map 245
 Nanchang Uprising 183
 restaurants 578
 Jiangxin Park (Wenzhou) 253
 Jianshan Si (Yangshuo) 424–5
 Jianwen emperor 58
 Jiao Shan 134, 224
 Jiaohu Ruins (Turpan) 10, 17, **508**
 Jiaxiu Lou (Guiyang) 404
 Jiayin Hall (Tongli) 222
 Jiayuguan 16, 483, **494**
 Jiayuguan Fort 10, 16, **496–7**
 Jiazhou Huayuan (Le Shan) 370
 Jile Si (Harbin) 457
 Jilin **453**
 Jilin province 436, **443**
 hotels 562–3
 restaurants 583–4
 Jimei School Village (Xiamen) 292
 Jin Dian (Kunming) 382
 Jin Ding Si (Emei Shan) 369
 Jin dynasty 58, 64, **65**
 Jin Qiaojue 240
 Jin Qu Xi 298
 Jin Shan Park (Zhenjiang) 224
 Jinan **148**
 hotels 559
 restaurants 574
 Jinci Si (Taiyuan) 143
 Jindian Gong (Wudang Shan) 278
 Jing Shan Park (Beijing) 12, **96**
 Jing'an Temple (Shanghai) **202**
 Jingang Palace (Lanzhou) 489
 Jingdezhen 183, 245, **261**
 Jingdi emperor 58
 Jिंगgang Shan 245, **263**
 Long March 263
 Jinghong 347, **388**
 Jingjiang Prince's Palace (Guilin) 421
 Jingpo Hu 437, 443, **458**
 Jingtai emperor 58
 Jingzhen 390
 Jingzhou **274**
 Jingzong emperor 58
 Jinjiang Hotel (Shanghai) 200
 Jinjiang Inn 557
 Jinmao Tower (Shanghai) 12, **195**
 Jіnpeng Pass 593
 Jinsha Jiang 400
 Jinsuo Dao 394
 Jintian 428, 429
 Jinzhou **446**
 Jitang 427
 Jitong railway 593
 Jiuhua Shan 180, 209, **240**
 Jiujiang **258**
 Jiulong Bi (Datong) 127
 Jiuzhai Gou 355
 Jiuzhai Gou tour **376**
 Jokhang Temple (Lhasa) 525, 534, **536–7**
 Joyce (Hong Kong) 337
 Jue Yuan (Guiyang) 404
 Juma river 117
 Jumbo Floating Restaurants (Aberdeen) 328
 Jungle 29
 Bupan Aerial Walkway (Mengla) 390
 Southwest China 351
 Xishuangbanna 390, 391
 Junshan Dao 267
 Justinian, Emperor 214
 Juyong Guan 114
 JZ Club (Shanghai) 206, 207
- K**
 Kadoorie Farm & Botanic Garden **327**, 339
 Kaifeng 78, 147, **156–7**, 159
 map 157
 Kaili 403, 414
 Kaishu calligraphy 33
 Kaiyuan Si (Chaozhou) 302
 Kaiyuan Si (Fuzhou) 298
 Kaiyuan Si (Quanzhou) 297
 Kang Mei Yuan Chao Zhanzheng (Dandong) 447
 Kangding **377**
 Kangxi emperor 59, 68, **128**, 438
 Baoguang Si 366
 Chengde 128
 Da Zhao (Hohhot) 475
 Eastern Qing Tombs 115
 Forbidden City 95
 Marco Polo Bridge 116
 Karakoram Highway **518**
 Karakoram Mountains 507
 Karaoke 591
 Karghilik **519**
 Karma Phuntso Namgyel 548
 Karmapa (Black Hats) order 546
 Karst **418–19**
 Karst Caves (Yixing County) 224
 Kashgar 10, 17, 467, 507, **514–17**
 Aba Khoja Mausoleum **516–17**
 hotels 563
 map 515
 restaurants 585
 Visitors' Checklist 515
 Kashgaria 495, 507, 512, 514
 Kazakhs 30, 510, 511
 Kazakhstan 507
 Kegong Fang (Lijiang) 396
 Kelsang Potrang (Lhasa) 533
 Khaishan 58
 Khampa people 377
 Khi Vehdu 202
 Khoshila 58
 Khunjerab Pass 518
 King of Borneo's Tomb (Nanjing) 237
 King Wah Building (Hong Kong) 337
 Kipling, Rudyard 495
 Kite flying 591
 festivals 50
 Kizil 513
 KLM 613
 Knives, Yengisar Country Small Knife Factory 518
 Ko Shan Theatre (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Kodari 551
 Kong family 149
 Kōngtong Shan 490
 Kongzhong Tianyuan (Wulingyuan) 270
 Korea 443, 446–7
 Kotnis, Dwarkanath 136
 Kowloon 284, 313
 map 315
 see also Hong Kong
 Koxinga Memorial Hall (Gulang Yu) 293
 Koxinga (Zheng Chenggong) 292, 293

Kublai Khan 58, 66, 348, 394, 398
 Beijing 79, 90, 96
 and Chinese cuisine 82
 Dongxiang people 488
 Sakya Monastery 550
 Xanadu **478**
 Kuixing Tower (Pingyao) 145
 Kumarajiva 498, 513
 Kumbum (Gyantse) 547
 Kumbum Monastery *see* Ta'er Si
 Kundulun (Baotou) 476
 Kung, H.H. 193, 204
 Kung Fu 164, **165**, 594
 tai ji quan (Tai Chi) **279**
 Kunming 10, 14, 379, **380–83**
 climate 54
 hotels 562
 map 381
 Muslim Uprising 348
 restaurants 583
 Kunming Lake 85
 Kuomintang (KMT) **72**
 and the Long March 262
 Kuqa 10, **17**, **513**
 Kwan Yu 321
 Kyrgyz people 511

L

Labor Park (Dalian) 450
 Labrang Monastery 16, 467, 483,
 486, **487**, 531
 Labrang Nyingba (Lhasa) 535
 Lacquerware **298**
 Laifeng Monastery (Tengchong)
 395
 Laifeng Shan Park (Tengchong)
 395
 Lama Temple (Beijing) 79, **98–9**
 Lamaism 140
 Wudang Zhao 476
 Lamma Fisherfolk's Village
 (Lamma Island) **330**
 Lamma Island 13, **330**
 Lan Kwai Fong (Hong Kong) **320**
 Lan Shan Gongyuan (Lanzhou) 489
 Lan Ting (Shaoxing) 252
 The Landmark (Hong Kong) 316,
 336, 337
 Landscape **26–9**
 karst **418–19**
 Lang Mei Xian Ci (Wudang Shan)
 278
 Langde 414
 Langmusi **486**
 Language and script 24, **32–3**, 600
 Cantonese 285
 phrase book 656–60
 Zhuang people 430
 Lantau Island 13, **330–31**
 map 330–31
 Lantau Peak 331
 Lantern Festival 50
 Lanzhou 16, 171, 467, 483, **488–9**
 hotels 563
 map 488–9
 restaurants 585

Lao Hei Shan (Wu Da Lian Chi)
 460
 Lao Long Tou 134
 Lao Shan 153
 Lao She Teahouse (Beijing) 119
 Laojun Pavilion (Qingcheng
 Shan) 374
 Laojun Yan 297
 Laos 379, 390
 Laozi 36, 37
 Laojun Yan (Quanzhou) 297
 Luoyang 158
 Qingyang Gong (Chengdu) 364
 Largo do Senado (Macau) 13,
333
 Later Jin dynasty 68
 Le Coq, Albert von 499, 509, 513
 Le Shan 355
 Dafo 11, 15, **370–73**
 Lee, Bruce 165
 Legalism 57, 60
 Lei Shan 414
 Leigong Shan 414
 Leitai Si (Wuwei) 494
 Lenin, V.I. 105
 Lesbian travelers 604–5
 Lhasa 503, 525, **532–41**
 air travel 615
 Barkhor **534–5**
 climate 54
 hotels 563
 Jokhang Temple 525, 534,
 536–7
 map 532–3
 Potala Palace 525, **538–9**
 restaurants 585
 Visitors' Checklist 533
 Li, Jet 165
 Li Bai 34, 62, 64
 Qutang Gorge 359
 tomb of 239
 Li Bing 374
 Li Cang, Marquis of Dai 266
 Li Chun 136
 Li Guangxiu 382
 Li people 31, 285, 301, 310
 Li Qingzhao Memorial Hall (Jinan)
 148
 Li river 348, 349
 at Guilin 420
 karst landscape 418
 Li river cruise 14, **422–3**
 Li Xiucheng 210
 Li Zhisui 269
 Lianfengshan Park (Beidaihe) 134
 Liangma Antique Market (Beijing)
 118, 119
 Liangying, Zhang 246
 Liao Bingxiong 307
 Liao dynasty 58, **64**
 Liao Zhongkai, tomb of 236
 Liaoning province 436, **443**, 444
 hotels 562–3
 restaurants 583–4

Liberation Monument
 (Chongqing) 356, 357
 Life (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Ligong Pagoda (Hangzhou) 247
 Lijiang 10, 14, 349, 379, **396–8**,
 399
 hotels 562
 restaurants 583
 Street-by-Street map 396–7
 Visitors' Checklist 397
 Limestone, karst **418–19**
 Lin Biao 71, 73
 Lin Mo 155
 Lin Zexu 298
 Lin Zexu Memorial Hall (Fuzhou)
 298
 Lingdi emperor 58
 Linggu Pagoda (Nanjing) 235,
 236
 Linggu Temple (Nanjing) 235,
236
 Lingshui 310–11
 Lingyin Si (Hangzhou) 247
 Lingyun Ting (Zhenjiang) 224
 Linxia **488**
 Lishu calligraphy 33
 Literature **34–5**
 customs information 599
 "Little eats" 567
 Little, Edward 258
 Liu Bei 360
 tomb of 365
 Liu Rong Si (Guangzhou) 305
 Liu Shaoqi 71
 Liu Xu, tomb of 226
 Liu Yazi 222
 Liu Yuan (Suzhou) **217**
 Liubiju (Beijing) 91
 Liugong Island 155
 Liulichang (Beijing) **91**, 118
 Lizong emperor 59
 Loess plateau 159
 Lok Cha Tea Shop (Hong Kong)
 336–7
 Long Corridor (Summer Palace,
 Beijing) 107, 108
 Long Lake, Jiuzhai Gou tour 376
 Long March 72, 183, **262–3**
 Luding Chain Bridge 262, 377
 Zunyi Conference 416
 Longevity Hill (Summer Palace,
 Beijing) 106, 108
 Longgong Dong **406–7**
 Longhua Cemetery of Martyrs
 (Shanghai) **205**
 Longhua Si (Shanghai) 205
 Longji Titian 410–11, 426
 Longjing Village (Hangzhou) 246
 Longmen Caves 79, 147, **160–63**
 Longqing emperor 58
 Longquan Si (Wutai Shan) 142
 Longrui Nature Preserve 430
 Longshan culture 57
 Longsheng 14, **426**
 Longtan Village 425
 Longting Park (Kaifeng) 157

Longwu Si (Tongren) 502
 Lotus Flower Cave (Longmen Caves) 161
 Lovers' Festival 52
 Lowland landscape and wildlife 29
 Lu Xun Park (Shanghai) **204**
 Lu, Y.C. 236
 Lu Yu 299
 Lu Hou emperor 58
 Lu Shan 245, **258–9**
 Long March 262
 Lu Su, tomb of 273
 Lu Xun 35, **204**
 Lu Xun's Former Residence (Shaoxing) 252
 Luck and prosperity **48–9**
 Ludi Yan (Guilin) 421
 Luding **377**
 Luding Chain Bridge 262, 377
 Lufthansa 613
 Lukhang (Lhasa) 532
 Lunar calendar 50
 Luo Yue people 430
 Luohan Hall (Baoguang Si) 366
 Luohan Si (Chongqing) 356
 Luohou Si (Wutai Shan) 140
 Luomen **486**
 Luoshi Ta (Wuwei) 494
 Luoyang 78, 147, **158**
 air travel 615
 hotels 559
 restaurants 574
 Luoyang City Museum (Luoyang) 158
 Lushun 451
 Lyceum Theater (Shanghai) 206, 207

M

Mac Le Hose Trail (New Territories) **327**
 Macartney, Lord 68, 69, 439
 Macau 13, **332–5**
 airport 613
 entertainment **338–9**
 food and drink **335**
 history 313
 hotels 561
 map 333
 Portuguese colony 284, 313, 332
 restaurants 581
 returned to China 73
 shopping **336–7**
 visas and passports 598
 Visitors' Checklist 333
 Macau Cultural Centre 338, 339
 Macau Museum 13, **332**
 Macau Tower 334
 Magazines 611
 Mahao Cave Tombs (Le Shan) 371
 Mahayana Buddhism 37, 491
 see also Buddhism
Mahjong 590
 Mai Po Marshes **327**

Maiji Shan 10, 16, **484–5**
 Mail services 610
 Maitreya Buddha 540
 Majestic Theater (Shanghai) 206, 207
 Malaria 607
 Maling Canyon **408**
 Malone's (Shanghai) 207
 Man Mo Temple (Hong Kong) 13, **320**
 Manchu dynasty 68, 436, **438–9**
 Manchukuo 72, 437, 443, 452
 Manchuria 72, 436–7, 443
 Mandalas **540**
 Mandarin Chinese 32, 600
 Mandarin Duck Hall (Suzhou) 212
 Manfeilong Ta 391
 Manguanghan 391
 Manguanglong Si (Gasa) 390
 Manjusri **141**
 Manjusri Temple (Lhasa) 540
 Manlei Si (Mengzhe) 390
 Manpo 391
 Manting 390
 Manting Park (Jinghong) 388
 Manting Wat (Jinghong) 388
 Manzhouli **478**
 Mao Ling (Xi'an) 176
 Mao Zedong 105, 256
 birthplace 265, **266**, 268
 Changsha 266
 cult of Mao **268–9**
 Cultural Revolution **70–71**, 73
 death 73
 Dripping Water Cave (Shao Shan) 266
 founds People's Republic of China 72
 Great Leap Forward 73
 Hongyuan Cun (Chongqing) 357
 Hunan 183
 Long March 72, 262–3
 Lu Shan 258, 259
 Mao Ancestral Temple (Shao Shan) 266
 Mao Zedong Memorial Museum (Shao Shan) 266
 Mao's Family House (Shao Shan) 266
 Mao's Villa (Wuhan) 272
 Mausoleum (Beijing) 12, **88**
 Monument to the People's Heroes (Beijing) 89
 and Northeast China 437
 Ode to Plum Blossom (Stone Forest) 384
 Peasant Movement Institute (Guangzhou) 304
 Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party (Shanghai) 200
 statues of 298, 444, 446
 Tai Shan 151
 Tian'an Men (Beijing) 89

Mao Zedong (cont.)
 Underground City (Beijing) 90
 Yan'an 177
 Zunyi Conference 416
 Maotai 416
 Maps
 Asia 1010
 Beijing 86–7
 Beijing: Street Finder 120–25
 Beijing: Tian'an Men Square 88–9
 Beijing and the North 76–7
 Central China 180–81
 Changbai Shan 454–5
 Chengdu 365
 China 18–19, 1010–11
 Chongqing 357
 Dali and Er Hai 393
 Dalian 451
 Emei Shan 368–9
 Fujian 291
 Gansu and Qinghai 483
 Genghis Khan's empire 477
 Grand Canal 223
 Great Wall of China 113
 Greater Beijing 86
 Greater Shanghai 191
 Guangdong and Hainan 301
 Guangzhou 305
 Guilin 421
 Guiyang 405
 Guizhou and Guangxi 403
 Hainan Island 311
 Hangzhou 247
 Harbin 457
 Hebei, Tianjin and Shanxi 127
 Hong Kong 314–15
 Hong Kong: Street Finder 340–43
 Huang Shan 242–3
 Huangpu river 201
 Hunan and Hubei 265
 Inner Mongolia and Ningxia 473
 Inner Mongolia and the Silk Roads 464–5
 Jiangsu and Anhui 209
 Jiuzhai Gou tour 376
 Kaifeng 157
 Kashgar 515
 Kowloon 315
 Kunming 381
 Lantau Island 330–31
 Lanzhou 488–9
 Lhasa 532–3
 Li river cruise 422–3
 Lijiang 396–7
 Long March 262–3
 Longmen Caves 161
 Macau 333
 Miao communities 412
 Miao villages 415
 Nanchang 257
 Nanjing 229
 Northeast China 434–5
 The Peak (Hong Kong) 318–19

- Maps (cont.)
 Qingdao 152–3
 Shaanxi province 167
 Shamian Island 306–7
 Shandong and Henan 147
 Shanghai 190–91
 Shenyang 445
 Shigatse 549
 Sichuan and Chongqing 355
 Silk Road 471
 South China 282–3
 Southwest China 346–7
 The Spread of Buddhism 491
 Suzhou 211
 Tai Shan 150–51
 Tianjin 135
 Tibet 522–3
 Tiger Leaping Gorge 400–401
 Trans Siberian Express 441
 Wuhan 272–3
 Wulingyuan 270–71
 Wutai Shan 140–41, 142
 Xiamen and Gulangyu Island 293
 Xi'an 169
 Xinjiang 507
 Xishuangbanna 391
 Yangshuo 425
 Yangzhou 227
 Yangzi cruise 358–9
 Yunnan 379
 Zhejiang and Jiangxi 245
- Marble Boat (Summer Palace, Beijing) 106
 Marble Carriageway (Forbidden City) 93
 Marco Polo Bridge **116**
 Marco Polo Hotels 557
 Maritime Museum (Macau) 334
 Markets 587
 Bazaar (Turpan) 508
 Beijing 100
 Bird and Flower Market (Kunming) 380
 Bird and Flower Markets (Hong Kong) **323**
 Dai people 389
 Hong Kong and Macau **336**, 337
 Jade Market (Hong Kong) **323**, 336, 337
 Medicinal Market (Bozhou) 239
 Night Market (Shigatse) 548
 Qingping Market (Guangzhou) 304
 Shanghai 206
 Sheung Wan's Markets (Hong Kong) **321**
 Shuijing Xiang Market (Xining) 502
 Sunday Market (Kashgar) 514
 Temple Street Market (Hong Kong) **323**, 336, 337
 Tibetan market (Shigatse) 548 *see also* Shopping
 Marks & Spencer (Hong Kong) 337
- Marriott 557
 Martial arts 38, 594
 festivals 52
 Kung Fu 164, **165**
 Martial Arts School (Wudang Shan) 278
 Martyrs' Memorial Hall (Heng Shan) 267
 Martyrs' Memorial (Nanjing) 237
 Martyrs' Park (Changsha) 266
 Marx, Karl 105, 303
 Mason, Richard 316
 Masta 605
 Matang 415
 Mati Si (Zhangye) 494
 May 7 Cadre Schools 71
 Mazu Miao (Meizhou Island) 297
 MD Travel Health 605
 Measurements 601
 Medical facilities 605
 Medical insurance 599, 605
 Medicine
 Chinese Medicine Museum (Hangzhou) 246
 Medicinal Market (Bozhou) 239
 Traditional medicine **238**
 "Meet in Beijing" Festival 51
 Mei Lanfang 81
 Mei Yuan (Taihu) 222
 Meilu Villa (Lu Shan) 259
 Meiyuan Xincun (Nanjing) 232
 Meizhou Island 285, 291, **297**
 Mekong river 379, 388, 531
 Melikawat 519
 Mencius 147, 149
 Mengda Tian Chi **503**
 Menghai 390
 Menghun 391
 Mengla 390
 Menglun 390
 Mengzhe 390
- Menus
 Beijing and the North 83
 Central China 187
 South China 289
 Southwest China 353
 Meridian Gate (Forbidden City) 92
 Meru Nyingba (Lhasa) 535
 Meteorite Shower Museum (Jilin) 453
 Mi Fu 253
 Miao people 346, 348–9, 408
 festivals and crafts **412–13**, 415
 Guizhou and Guangxi 403
 maps 412, 415
 villages **414–15**
 Miao Rebellion 415
 Miaoying Temple White Dagoba (Beijing) **105**
 Mid-Autumn Festival 52, 339
 Military Museum of the Chinese People's Republic (Beijing) **105**
 Millennium City (Kaifeng) 157
 Min Jiang 374, 375
 Min people 291
- Ming dynasty 58, **66–7**
 Great Wall of China 67, 112–13
 literature 34, 35
 Ming Tombs (Beijing) 39, **110–11**
 Nanjing 183
 porcelain 260, 261
 Xiao Ling Tomb (Nanjing) 236
 Ming Palace Ruins (Nanjing) 232
 Ming Shan 358
 Ming Xiao Ling Museum (Nanjing) 234
 Mingdi emperor 58
 Mingjiao Si (Hefei) 239
 Mingsha Shan 17, **498**
 Mini Three Gorges 15, **359**
 Minority peoples 24–5, **30–31**
 food and drink 567
 River Border **461**
see also individual peoples
 Mirror Pools 346
 Mishi Xiang (Lijiang) 397
 Mission Hills 592, 595
 Mo Yan 35
 Mobile phones 610
 MOCA Shanghai 194, 195
 Mochou Lake (Nanjing) 233
 Mogao Caves 17, 467, 499, **501**
 Mohammed Kashgari, tomb of 515
 Mohammed, Prophet 227
 Mohe 460
 Monasteries
 10,000 Buddhas Monastery (Hong Kong) **326**
 accommodation in 555
 Dabei Monastery (Tianjin) 135
 Drepung Monastery (Lhasa) **540**
 Ganden Monastery (Lhasa) 524, 531, **541**, 542–3
 Gomar Monastery 502
 Kongtong Shan 490
 Labrang Monastery 16, 483, 486, **487**, 531
 Meru Nyingba (Lhasa) 535
 Nechung Monastery (Lhasa) **540–41**
 Pelkor Chode Monastery (Gyantse) 547
 Po Lin Monastery (Lantau Island) 330–31
 Rongphu Monastery 550
 Sakya Monastery 524, 525, **550**
 Samye Monastery 524, **544–5**
 Sera Monastery (Lhasa) 525, **541**
 Shibao Zhai 358
 Ta'er Si **504–5**
 Tashilunpo Monastery (Shigatse) 548–9
 Tibetan Buddhism 525, 526
 Tsurphu Monastery **546**
 Wudang Zhao 476
 Wutan Monastery 502

Money **608–9**

- currency exchange 608
- duty-free allowances 599
- security 604

Mongkok Computer Centre (Hong Kong) 336, 337

Mongol empire 65, **66**

Mongol Global Tours 593, 595

Mongolia *see* Inner Mongolia

Monkey Island 311

Monument to the People's Heroes (Beijing), Street-by-Street map 89

Monument to the Red Army Martyrs (Zunyi) 416

Mor Pagoda (Ha Noi) 515

Morrison, Robert 332

Moscow 441

Mosques 511

- Altyn Mosque (Yarkand) 519
- Cow Street Mosque (Beijing) **104**

etiquette 602

Great Mosque (Hohhot) 474

Great Mosque (Kuqa) 10, **513**Great Mosque (Xi'an) 16, **169**

Great Mosque (Xining) 502

Huaisheng Mosque

(Guangzhou) 305

Id Kah Mosque (Kashgar) 17, **514**

Imin Ta (Turpan) 508

Nanguan Mosque (Linxia) 488

Nanguan Mosque (Yinchuan) 479

Qingjing Mosque (Quanzhou) 297

Xianhe Mosque (Yangzhou) 227

Mosquitos 607

Motel 168 557

Motorcycle rickshaws 621

Motorcycle taxis 621

Mountaineering 594, 595

Mountains

Cangyan Shan 136

Changbai Shan **454–5**Emei Shan 355, **368–9**

Fenghuang Shan 447

Flaming Mountains (Turpan) 509

Helan Shan **480**Heng Shan 137, **267**Hua Shan 167, **177**Huang Shan 209, **242–3**Jinggang Shan 245, **263**Jiuhua Shan 209, **240**Karakoram Highway **518**

Karakoram Mountains 507

landscape and wildlife 26

Lao Shan 153

Long March 262–3

Lu Shan **258–9**Maiji Shan **484–5**

Ming Shan 358

Pamir Mountains 495, 507

The Peak (Hong Kong) **318–19**

Mountains (cont.)

Putuo Shan **254–5**

Qilian Shan 494

Qixia Shan 246

Southwest China 350

Tai Shan 78, 79, 147, **150–51**

Tian Shan 507

Tiantai Shan **253**Wudang Shan 265, **278**Wulingyuan **270–71**Wutai Shan 127, **140–42**Wuyi Shan 291, 294–5, **298**

Wuzhi Shan 310

Yandang Shan 245, **253**

Yangshuo 424, 425

Yulong Xue Shan 398

Zhuque Shan 453

Moxi Xiang **377**

Mu Fu (Lijiang) 398

Mudan river 458

Mudanjiang 458

Mu'en Tang (Shanghai) 194

Mui Wo 331

Mukden *see* Shenyang

Murphy, Henry 235

Murray House (Stanley) 329

Museums and galleries

admission charges 600

Ancient Observatory (Beijing) **100–101**

Art Museum (Guangzhou) 307

Beijing Natural History Museum **101**

Ceramic History Exposition

(Jingdezhen) 261

China House Museum (Tianjin) 135

China National Museum

(Beijing) 89

Chinese Medicine Museum

(Hangzhou) 246

Chongqing Museum

(Chongqing) 356

City Museum (Kunming) 381

Dali Museum (Dali) 392

Dinosaur Museum (Zigong) 361

Du Fu's Thatched Cottage

(Chengdu) 364

Dunhuang County Museum

(Dunhuang) 498

18 September Museum

(Shenyang) 444

Forest of Stelae Museum (Xi'an) **168**

Former Residence of Zhou Enlai

(Shanghai) 200

Foshan Folk Art Studio (Foshan) 308

Furniture Museum (Pingyao) 144

Gansu Provincial Museum

(Lanzhou) 16, **489**

Great Wall Museum (Dandong) 447

Great Wall Museum (Jiayuguan) 494

Museums and galleries (cont.)

Great Wall Museum

(Shanhaiguan) 16, **134**

Hanlingyuan Museum

(Yangzhou) 226

Hebei Provincial Museum

(Shijiazhuang) 136

Henan Provincial Museum

(Zhengzhou) 158

Heritage Museum (Hong Kong) **326**

Hetian Regional Museum

(Khotan) 519

Hong Kong Museum of Art **322**Hong Kong Museum of History **322–3**Hong Kong Science Museum **322**

Hubei Provincial Museum

(Wuhan) 272

Hunan Provincial Museum

(Changsha) 266

Inner Mongolia Museum

(Hohhot) 474

Jewish Refugee Museum

(Shanghai) **204**

Jiazhou Huayuan (Le Shan) 370

Long March Museum (Zunyi) 416

Lu Xun's Former Residence

(Shanghai) 204

Luoyang City Museum

(Luoyang) 158

Macau Museum (Macau) 13, **332**

Mao Zedong Memorial

Museum (Shao Shan) 266

Mao's Family House (Shao Shan) 266

Maritime Museum (Macau) 334

Meiyuan Xincun (Nanjing) 232

Memorial Hall to the Martyrs of

the Revolution (Nanchang) 256

Meteorite Shower Museum

(Jilin) 453

Military Museum of the Chinese

People's Republic (Beijing) **105**

Ming Xiao Ling (Nanjing) 234

Minorities Museum (Kaili) 414

MOCA Shanghai 194, 195

Municipal Museum

(Guangzhou) 307

Museum of the 1895 Sino-

Japanese War (Weihai) 155

Museum of Dr. Sun Yat Sen

(Nanjing) 235, **236**

Museum of Naxi Culture

(Lijiang) 398

Museum of Opera and Theater

(Suzhou) 211

Museum to Commemorate

Aiding Korea & Resisting

America (Dandong) 447

Museum of Yin Ruins (Anyang) 158

Nanjing Museum (Nanjing) 232

Museums and galleries (cont.)
 National Art Museum of China (Beijing) **100**
 Nationality Museum (Wuzhi Shan City) 310
 Ningxia Provincial Museum (Yinchuan) 479
 Overseas Chinese Museum (Xiamen) 292
 Peasant Movement Institute (Guangzhou) 304
 Porcelain Museum (Jingdezhen) 261
 Pottery Exhibition Hall (Yixing) 224
 Provincial Museum (Fuzhou) 298
 Provincial Museum (Guiyang) 404
 Provincial Museum (Harbin) 456
 Provincial Museum (Hefei) 239
 Provincial Museum (Kunming) 380
 Provincial Museum (Nanchang) 257
 Provincial Museum (Nanning) 429
 Provincial Museum (Wuwei) 494
 Qingdao Museum 153
 Qingyun Pu (Nanchang) 257
 Quanzhou Maritime Museum 297
 Red Gate Gallery (Beijing) 101
 Revolutionary Museum (Nanchang) 256
 Rishenchang (Pingyao) 144
 Sanxingdui Museum 11, 15, **366**
 Shaanxi History Museum (Xi'an) 16, 167, **172-3**
 Shandong Provincial Museum (Jinan) 148
 Shanghai Art Museum 194, 195
 Shanghai History Museum 195
 Shanghai Museum 12-13, **196-7**, 206, 207
 Shanxi Provincial Museum (Taiyuan) 143
 Sichuan Museum (Chengdu) 365
 Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party (Shanghai) **200**
 Song Qingling's Former Residence (Shanghai) **204**
 Stilwell Museum (Chongqing) 357
 Sun Yat-sen Memorial Residence (Shanghai) 13, **200**
 Sun Yat-sen's Residence (Cuiheng) 308
 Suzhou Museum (Suzhou) 210
 Suzhou Silk Museum (Suzhou) 210

Museums and galleries (cont.)
 Taiping Heavenly Kingdom History Museum (Nanjing) 228
 Tea Museum (Hangzhou) 246
 Tianjixiang Museum (Pingyao) 145
 Tibet Museum (Lhasa) 533
 Tujia Museum (Furongzhen) 267
 Turpan Museum (Turpan) 508
 Wang Shi Xiao Yuan (Yangzhou) 227
 Wen Miao (Wuwei) 494
 Wenya Museum (Jinzhou) 446
 Wuxi Museum (Wuxi) 222
 Xianyang City Museum (Xianyang) 176
 Xinjiang Provincial Museum (Ürümqi) 17, **510**
 Yan'an Revolutionary Museum (Yan'an) 177
 Yangzhou Museum (Yangzhou) 226
 Yantai Museum (Yantai) 154
 Yong Ling Museum (Chengdu) 364
 Zhenjiang Museum (Zhenjiang) 224
 Zigong Salt Museum (Zigong) 361
 Music 46
 Beijing Opera **80-81**, **119**, 590
 discos and karaoke 591
 festivals 53
 Hong Kong **338**, 339
 rock and pop music 591
 Shanghai **206**, 207
 Sichuan opera **366**
 traditional music 591
 Muslims and Islam **511**
 Aba Khoja Mausoleum (Kashgar) **516-17**
 Arab traders 284
 Cow Street Mosque (Beijing) **104**
 food and drink 83
 Garden Tomb of Puhaddin (Yangzhou) 227
 Great Mosque (Xi'an) **169**
 Huaisheng Mosque (Guangzhou) 305
 Islamic Cemetery (Guangzhou) 306-7
 Muslim Uprising (1856) 348
 in Xinjiang 507
see also Mosques
 Mutianyu **114**
 Muzong emperor 58
 Myanmar 379, 390-91, 395
 Myths and Mountains 593, 595

N

Na-Li (Beijing) 118, 119
 Nadam Fair 52
 Nakchu Horse Race Festival 52
 Namtso Lake 523, **546-7**

Nan Putuo Si (Xiamen) 292
 Nan Yue Palace Gardens (Guangzhou) 304
 Nan Yue Tomb (Guangzhou) 306
 Nanchan Si (Wutai Shan) 142
 Nanchang 245, **256-7**
 hotels 560
 restaurants 578
 Nanchang Uprising (1927) 183
 Nanguan Mosque (Linxia) 488
 Nanguan Mosque (Yinchuan) 479
 Nanhua Si (Shaoguan) 309
 Nanjing 183, 209, **228-37**
 food and drink 186
 hotels 560
 map 229
 Purple Mountain **234-6**
 restaurants 577
 Treaty of 69, 189
 Visitors' Checklist 229
 Zhonghua Gate **230-31**
 Nanjing Massacre (1937) **233**
 Memorial (Purple Mountain) 237
 Nanjing Museum (Nanjing) 232
 Nanjing Road (Shanghai) 12, **194**, 203
 Nanjing Yangzi River Bridge (Nanjing) 233
 Nanking *see* Nanjing
 Nanning **429**
 hotels 562
 Nanping 240
 Nanshan Si (Wutai Shan) 142
 Nanwu Chaoxi Si (Huanglong Xi) 374
 Nanyang Gong (Wudang Shan) 278
 Nanyue 267
 Nanyue Damiao (Heng Shan) 267
 Nanzhao Kingdom 348, 380, **394**
 Nathan Road (Hong Kong) **322**, 336
 National Art Museum of China (Beijing) **100**
 National Day 53
 National Theater (Beijing) 47, 119
 Nationalist Party *see* Kuomintang (KMT)
 Nationality Museum (Wuzhi Shan City) 310
 Nature preserves
 Changbai Shan Reserve 443, **454-5**
 Chishui 416
 Everest Base Camp 550
 Hanas Lake Nature Reserve 512
 Jianfeng Ling Nature Reserve 311
 Longrui Nature Preserve 430
 Mengda Nature Reserve 503
 Shennongjia Forest reserve 183, 265, **278**
 Wanglang Nature Reserve 355, **375**

Nature preserves (cont.)
 Wulingyuan Nature Preserve
270–71
 Zhalong Nature Reserve 409,
 443, **458**
 Naxi people 30, 349, **399**
 Dongba Research Institute
 (Lijiang) 398
 Nechung Monastery (Lhasa)
 540–41
 Nengren Si (Jiujiang) 258
 Neolithic period 57, 78
 Nepal border 550, **551**
 Nestorian Christianity 168
 New Territories 327
 New Year
 Chinese 48, 53
 Tibetan 50
 Western 53
 Newspapers 611
 Night Market (Beijing) 100
 Night Market (Shigatse) 548
 Nightclubs
 Beijing **119**
 Hong Kong **338**, 339
 Shanghai **207**
 Nine Dragon Screen (Beijing) 96
 Nine Horse Fresco Hill 423
 Ningbo 245, **252**
 Ningxia province 466, 467, **473**
 hotels 563
 map 473
 restaurants 584
 Ningxia Provincial Museum
 (Yinchuan) 479
 Ningzong emperor 59
 Ninth Dragon Screen (Forbidden
 City) 95
 Nixon, Richard 73, 292
 No Name Bar (Beijing) 119
 Nomads **528–9**
 Mongols of the Steppe **468–9**
 Tibet 525
 Noonday Gun (Hong Kong) 317
 Norbulingka (Lhasa) 533
 North Korea 443, 446–7
 North Pagoda (Shenyang) 444
 North Tomb (Shenyang) 445
 Northeast China **433–61**
 Changbai Shan **454–5**
 forests 28
 fossils **459**
 hotels 562–3
 Liaoning, Jilin and Heilongjiang
443–61
 Manchu dynasty **438–9**
 maps 434–5
 peoples 31
 Portrait of Northeast China
436–7
 restaurants 583–4
 River Border minorities **461**
 Trans Siberian Express **440–41**
see also Beijing and the North
 Northern Dynasties 59, 61
 Northern Song dynasty 59, 65

Northern Wei dynasty 59, 61, 138
 Northwest Airlines 613
 Northwest Yunnan Ecotourism
 Association 595
 Novels 35
 Novotel 557
 Nowrojee, Dorabjee 321
 Nu, U 388
 No. 1 Department Store
 (Shanghai) 206, 207
 Nunneries
 Ani Tsankhung Nunnery (Lhasa)
 533
 Fulu Buddhist Nunnery
 (Sanjiang) 426
 Nuorilang Falls 376
 Nuoyu 400
 Nurhachi 68, 438, 444
 tomb of 445

O

Observatories
 Ancient Observatory (Beijing)
100–101
 Purple Mountain Observatory
 (Nanjing) 234, 236
 Ocean Park (Hong Kong) **328–9**,
 338, 339
 Old Protestant Cemetery (Macau)
 332
 Old Racecourse (Shanghai) **195**,
 203
 Old Summer Palace *see*
 Yuanming Yuan
 Old Town (Kashgar) 514
 Olympic Games 592
 108 Dagobas (Ningxia) **481**
 Opal (Kashgar) 515
 Opening hours 600
 banks 608
 restaurants 566
 shops 586
 Opera
 Beijing Opera **80–81**, **119**, 590
 festivals 52
 model operas 71
 Museum of Opera and Theater
 (Suzhou) 211
 Sichuan opera **366**
 Opium Wars 69, 284, 428
 Orange Pavilion (Suzhou) 213
 Orchid Garden (Guangzhou)
 306–7
 Oriental Pearl TV Tower
 (Shanghai) 195
 Oroqen people 31, 461
 Otani, Count 499
 Ou Yuan (Suzhou) 210
 Our Lady of China (Shanghai) 205
 Our Lady of Lourdes (Shamian
 Island) 307
 Overseas Chinese Museum
 (Xiamen) 292
 Overseas Chinese Tropical Farm
 (Xinglong) 310

P

Pacific Hotel (Shanghai) 194
 Pacific Place (Hong Kong) 336,
 337
 Padmasambhava 524
 Page One (Beijing) 118, 119
 Pagodas **41**, **171**
 Bai Ta (Hohhot) 475
 Baisikou Shuang Ta 480
 Beisi Ta (Suzhou) 210
 Big Wild Goose Pagoda (Xi'an)
 167, **170**, 491
 Fan Pagoda (Kaifeng) 157
 Gongtang Pagoda 487
 Great Goose Pagoda (Xi'an) 16,
 167, **170**, 491
 Haibao Ta (Yinchuan) 479
 Iron Pagoda (Kaifeng) 156
 Ligong Pagoda (Hangzhou) 247
 Linggu Pagoda (Nanjing) 235,
 236
 North Pagoda (Shenyang) 444
 Qianxun Ta (Dali) 379
 Qiji Futu Pagoda (Harbin) 457
 Riming Shuang Ta (Guilin) 420
 Ruiguang Pagoda (Suzhou) 219
 San Ta (Dali) 392–3
 Shengjin Ta Pagoda (Nanchang)
 257
 Shuang Ta (Suzhou) **216**
 Si Men Pagoda (Jinan) 148
 Six Harmonies Pagoda
 (Hangzhou) 247
 Small Goose Pagoda (Xi'an) 167,
170
 Songyang Si Pagoda
 (Songshan) 164
 Wat Ben Pagoda 388
 Wenfeng Pagoda (Anyang) 158
 Wu Ta Si (Hohhot) 475
 Xi Si Ta (Kunming) 381
 Yan'an Bao Pagoda (Yan'an) 177
 Yingxian Pagoda 171
 Zhe Ta (Wuhu) 339
 Paintballing 594
 Paintings *see* Arts and crafts
 Pak Tai Temple (Cheung Chau
 Island) 330
 Pak Tam Chung Visitor Centre (Sai
 Kung Town) 327
 Pakistan 507, 518
 Palace Hotel (Shanghai) 193
 Palace Museum (Forbidden City)
92–5
 Palaces
 Ganden Palace (Lhasa) 540
 Imperial Palace (Shenyang) 438,
444
 Jinjiang Prince's Palace (Guilin)
 421
 Ming Palace Ruins (Nanjing) 232
 Palace of Abstinence
 (Forbidden City) 95
 Palace of Earthly Tranquillity
 (Forbidden City) 94

Palaces (cont.)

- Palace of Eternal Harmony (Forbidden City) 94–5
- Palace of Heavenly Purity (Forbidden City) 94
- Palace of Peaceful Longevity (Forbidden City) 95
- Potala Palace **538–9**
- Puppet Emperor's Palace (Changchun) 437, **452**
- Summer Palace (Beijing) 12, **106–8**
- Summer Palace (Lhasa) 533
- Pamir Mountains 467, 507
- The "Great Game" 495
- Karakoram Highway 518
- Pan Men Scenic Area (Suzhou) **218–19**
- Panchen Lamas
 - 11th Panchen Lama **548**
 - Chengde 129
 - Tashilunpo Monastery (Gyatse) 548, 549
- Pandas **367**
 - Panda Breeding Center 11, 15, **366**
 - Wanglang Nature Reserve **375**
- Panjiayuan Market (Beijing) 118, 119
- Panlong 430
- Park Hotel (Shanghai) 194
- Park Hyatt 557
- Parks and gardens (general)
 - admission charges 600
 - playing games in 590
 - traditional Chinese gardens **184–5**
- Parks and gardens (individual)
 - Bailuzhou Park (Nanjing) 228
 - Baita Shan Gongyuan (Lanzhou) 488
 - Bayi Park (Nanchang) 256
 - Beihai Park (Beijing) **96**
 - Beijing Botanical Gardens 109
 - Botanic Gardens (Menglun) 390
 - Botanical Gardens (Nanjing) 236
 - Canglang Ting (Suzhou) **216–17**
 - Cui Hu Gongyuan (Kunming) 380
 - Danxia Shan 309
 - Di Tan Park (Beijing) **99**
 - Donghai Park (Dalian) 450
 - Fuxing Park (Shanghai) 13, **200**
 - Ge Yuan (Yangzhou) 226
 - Haigeng Park (Lake Dian) 383
 - He Yuan (Yangzhou) 227
 - Heilong Tan Gongyuan (Lijiang) 398
 - Hong Kong Zoological & Botanical Gardens 13, **317**
 - Hongshan Park (Ürümqi) 510
 - Huagang Garden (Hangzhou) 248
 - Huanglong Dong Park (Hangzhou) 246

Parks and gardens (individual) (cont.)

- Huangpu Park (Shanghai) 201
- Humble Administrator's Garden (Suzhou) **212–13**
- Imperial Gardens (Forbidden City) 94
- Jiangxin Park (Wenzhou) 253
- Jin Shan Park (Zhenjiang) 224
- Jing Shan Park (Beijing) 12, **96**
- Jinhua Cha Gardens 429
- Lan Shan Gongyuan (Lanzhou) 489
- Lianfengshan Park (Beidaihe) 134
- Liu Yuan (Suzhou) **217**
- Longting Park (Kaifeng) 157
- Lu Xun Park (Shanghai) **204**
- Manting Park (Jinghong) 388
- Mei Yuan (Taihu) 222
- Nan Yue Palace Gardens (Guangzhou) 304
- Norbulingka (Lhasa) 533
- Old Racecourse (Shanghai) **195**, 203
- Orchid Garden (Guangzhou) 306–7
- Ou Yuan (Suzhou) 210
- Pan Men Scenic Area (Suzhou) **218–19**
- People's Park (Shanghai) 12, **194**
- Qianling Shan Park (Guiyang) 405
- Qixing Gongyuan (Guilin) 420
- Renmin Park (Chengdu) 365
- Renmin Park (Nanning) 429
- Shizi Lin (Suzhou) 210
- Shou Xi Hu (Yangzhou) 226
- Shuzhuang Garden (Gulangyu Island) 293
- Stalin Park (Harbin) 456
- Summer Palace (Beijing) **106–8**
- Sun Island Park (Harbin) 456
- Tiger Hill (Suzhou) **217**
- Tropical Botanical Gardens (Xishuangbanna) 350
- Tropical Flower and Plant Garden (Jinghong) 388
- Tuisi Yuan (Tongli) 222
- Victoria Park (Hong Kong) 317
- Victoria Peak Garden (Hong Kong) 318
- Wangshi Yuan (Suzhou) **216**
- Wanshi Botanical Garden (Xiamen) 292
- Wuquan Shan Gongyuan (Lanzhou) 489
- Xi Yuan (Suzhou) **217**
- Xiang Shan Park (Beijing) **109**
- Xihui Park (Wuxi) 222
- Xinglong Tropical Botanical Gardens 310
- Xu Yuan (Nanjing) 229
- Xuanwu Lake (Nanjing) 232
- Yantai Shan Park (Yantai) 154
- Yi Yuan (Suzhou) **216**

Parks and gardens (individual) (cont.)

- Yu Gardens and Bazaar (Shanghai) 12, **198–9**
- Yuanming Yuan (Garden of Perfect Brightness, Beijing) **109**, 439
- Yuexiu Park (Guangzhou) 307
- Yuhuangding Park (Yantai) 154
- Yuhuatai (Nanjing) 237
- Zhaolin Park (Harbin) 456
- Parkway Green Fangcaodi (Beijing) 118, 119
- Passports 598–9
 - security 604
- Pavilion of a Thousand Autumns (Forbidden City) 94
- Peace Hotel (Shanghai) 193
- The Peak (Hong Kong) 13, **318–19**
- Peak Tower (Hong Kong) 319
- Peak Tram (Hong Kong) 319
- Pearl river 284, 301
 - Mai Po Marshes 327
- Pearl-Beach Falls, Jiuzhai Gou tour 376
- Peasant Movement Institute (Guangzhou) 304
- Pei, I.M. 210, 316
- Peking Man site **117**
- Pelkor Chode Monastery (Gyantse) 547
- Pelliot, Paul 499, 513
- Peng Dehui 259
- Penglai Pavilion **155**
- Penholder Peak, Li river cruise 423
- Peninsula Hotels 557
- Penjing **185**
- Peoples of China **30–31**
 - see also Ethnic minorities
- People's Hall (Lu Shan) 259
- People's Liberation Army (PLA), Cultural Revolution 70, 71
- People's Park and Square (Shanghai) 12, **194**
- Period of Disunity 59
- Permits 599
- Personal security **604–5**
- Phagpa 550
- Pharmacies 605
- Philosophy **36–7**
 - qi **38–9**
- Photography 601
 - etiquette 602
- Phrase book 656–60
- Pileguo 394
- Ping An 426
- Pingdi emperor 58
- Pingliang **490**
- Pingxiang **430–31**
 - restaurants 574
- Pingyao 41, 127, **144–5**
 - restaurants 574
- Pinyin script 33, 600
- Plants **26–9**
 - bamboo **417**
 - ginseng **454**

- Plants (cont.)
 plant hunters **351**
 Southwest China **350–51**
see also Parks and gardens
 Plaza 66 (Shanghai) 194
 Plum Blossom Hill (Purple Mountain) 236
 Plum Monastery (Zhaoqing) 308
 Po Lin Monastery (Lantau Island) 330–31
 "Pockmarked Huang" 200, 203
 Poetry, Tang 34
 Pok Fu Lam Reservoir (Hong Kong) 318
 Police 604, 605
 Pollution 24, 606
 Polo, Marco 66, **249**, 471
 and China's Jews 157
 in Fuzhou 298
 in Hangzhou 246
 Hualin Si (Guangzhou) 304
 Marco Polo Bridge **116**
 Yangzi river 182
 Pop music 591
 Porcelain *see* Ceramics
 Port Arthur *see* Lushun
 Portugal
 food and drink in Macau 335
 and Macau 284, 313, 332
 Postal services 610
 Poste restante 610–11
 Potala Palace (Lhasa) 525, **538–9**
 Pottery *see* Ceramics
 Pottery Exhibition Hall (Yixing) 224
 Pousada São Tiago (Macau) 334
 Poyang, Lake 245
 Praia Grande (Macau) 333
 Precious Clouds Pavilion
 (Summer Palace, Beijing) 108
 Prescription Cave (Longmen Caves) 161
 Prescription drugs 605
 Prince Gong's Mansion (Beijing) 12, **96**, 119
 Printing 43
 Prosperity **48–9**
 Protestant Church (Qingdao) 152
 Provincial Museum (Guiyang) 404
 Provincial Museum (Kunming) 380
 Provincial Museum (Nanchang) 257
 Pu Songling 153
 Pu Yi, Emperor 59, 69, 72, **452**
 abdication 95
 Beijing Botanical Gardens 109
 and Manchukuo 437, 443, 452
 Puppet Emperor's Palace (Changchun) 437, **452**
 tomb of 115
 Public holidays 53, 556, 600
 Public Security Bureau (PSB) 599, 604
 Public toilets 605
 Pubs
 Beijing **119**
 Hong Kong **338**, 339
 Pudong (Shanghai) 189, 193, **195**
 Puhaddin, Garden Tomb of
 Puhaddin (Yangzhou) 227
 Puji Si (Putuo Shan) 254
 Pule Si (Chengde) 129, 134
 Puning Si (Chengde) 40, 129, **130–31**
 Puntsok Palace 550
 Puppet Emperor's Palace (Changchun) 437, **452**
 Puppet theater 591
 Purple Mountain (Nanjing) **234–6**
 Pusa Ding (Wutai Shan) 141
 Putonghua (Chinese language) 32, 600
 Putuo Shan 181, 245, **254–5**
 Putuozongcheng Miao (Chengde) 128
 Puzhao Si (Tai Shan) 150
- ## Q
- Qantas 613
 Qi **38–9**
 traditional medicine 238
 Qi Fo Si (Wutai Shan) 141
 Qian Bu Sha (Putuo Shan) 255
 Qian Ling (Xi'an) 176
 Qian Men (Beijing) 12, **90**
 Street-by-Street map 88
 Qian Men Carpet Company (Beijing) 118, 119
 Qiang people 377
 Qianling Shan Park (Guiyang) 405
 Qianlong emperor 59, 68, 128, 438, 439
 Baoguang Si 366
 Beijing Opera 80
 Chengde 129
 Eastern Qing Tombs 115
 food customs and etiquette 569
 Great Bell Temple (Beijing) 109
 Marco Polo Bridge 116
 Prince Gong's Mansion (Beijing) 96
 Puning Si (Chengde) 130
 Summer Palace (Beijing) 106, 108
 and Xiangfei 516
 Yangzhou 226
 Yuanming Yuan (Beijing) 109, 439
 Qianming Si (Guiyang) 404
 Qiantang river 248
 Qianxun Ta (Dali) 379, 392
 Qiao Guifa 145
 Qiao Jia Dayuan **145**
 Qidan people 64
 Qigong 38
 Qiji Futu Pagoda (Harbin) 457
 Qilian Shan 494
 Qin dynasty 59, 60
 Qin Shi (huangdi) emperor 59, 60, 151, 167
 and Confucius 149
 Qin Shi (huangdi) emperor (cont.)
 Great Wall of China 112
 Heng Shan 137
 Penglai 155
 Terracotta Army 60, 79, 167, **174–5**
 tomb of **175**
 Qing dynasty 59, **68–9**
 Eastern Qing Tombs **115**
 literature 34, 35
 Manchu dynasty **438–9**
 porcelain 261
 Summer Palace (Beijing) 106
 Taiping Rebellion 228
 Qing Ming Festival 51
 Qing Teng Shu Wu (Shaoxing) 252
 Qingcheng Shan **374**
 Qingdao 79, 147, **152–3**, 592
 hotels 559
 map 152–3
 restaurants 574–5
 Qingdao International Beer Festival 52
 Qingdao Museum (Qingdao) 153
 Qinghai Hu 465, 467, 483, **503**
 Qinghai province 466, 467, **483**
 hotels 563
 map 483
 restaurants 584–5
 Qingjing Mosque (Quanzhou) 297
 Qingning Palace (Shenyang) 444
 Qingping Market (Guangzhou) 304
 Qingshan (Baotou) 476
 Qingyang 405
 Qingyang Gong (Chengdu) 349, 364
 Qingyin Ge (Emei Shan) 369
 Qingyuan **309**
 Qingyuan Shan 297
 Qianian Dian (Beijing) 103
 Qinzong emperor 59, 65
 Qiongzong 310
 Qiongzhu Si (Kunming) 382
 Qiqiha'er 458, 460
 Qixia Shan (Hangzhou) 246
 Qixia Si (Nanjing) 237
 Qixing Gongyuan (Guilin) 420
 Qixing Yan 308
 Qu Yuan 51
 Quanzhou 291, **297**
 Quanzhou Maritime Museum 297
 Qufu 79, **148–9**
 Qutang Xia 359
- ## R
- Rabies 607
 Radio 611
 Radisson 557
 Railways *see* Trains
 Ramada 557
 Ramoche (Lhasa) 532

- Red (Shanghai) 207
 Red Army
 cult of Mao 268
 Long March 72, 262, 377
 Nanchang Uprising 183
 Zunyi Conference 416
 Red Basin 355
 Red Gate Gallery (Beijing) 101
 Red Guard 70
 Red Palace (Lhasa) 538, 539
 Red Turbans 66
 Reform Movement 69
 Rehai 395
 Religion 25, **36–7**
 festivals 50
 see also Buddhism; Christianity;
 Muslims and Islam
 Renmin Park (Chengdu) 364
 Renmin Square (Dalian) 450
 Renzong emperor 59
 Repulse Bay **329**
 Resonant Sand Gorge 476
 Restaurants **564–85**
 air conditioning 606
 bargaining 603
 customs and etiquette **568–9**
 ethnic food 567
 etiquette 602
 fast food 567
 in hotels 566
 opening hours 566
 service charges 569
 smoking in 603
 themed restaurants 567
 tipping in 569
 vegetarian food 567
 Western restaurants 567
 see also Food and drink
Retreat in the Qingbian Mountain
 (Wang Meng) 197
 Revolutionary Museum
 (Nanchang) 256
 Ricci, Matteo 67
 astronomy 100
 and China's Jews 157
 South Cathedral (Beijing) 91
 Xujiahui Catholic Cathedral
 (Shanghai) 205
 Zhaoqing 308
 Rice **286–7**
 terraces 410–11
 Rice wine 571
 Richtofen, Baron von 470
 Rickshaws, motorcycle 621
 Rinpoche, Guru 544, 545
 Rishenchang (Pingyao) 144
 Ritz Carlton 557
 River Border **460**
 minority peoples **461**
 River cruises
 Li river cruise **422–3**
 Yangzi cruise **358–60**
 River Promenade (Shanghai) 192
 Riyue Shuang Ta (Guilin) 420
 Road names 621
 Rock, Joseph 351, **396**
 Rock and pop music 591
 Rong Hu (Guilin) 14, **420**
 Rongphu Monastery 550
 Rongshui river 426
 Room With a View (Shanghai)
 207
 Rua de Felicidade (Macau) 334
 Rugby 592, 595
 Ruifuxiang (Beijing) 91
 Ruiguang Pagoda (Suzhou) 219
 Ruijin Guesthouse (Shanghai) 200
 Ruili **395**
 Ruinas de São Paulo (Macau) 13,
 332
 Ruizong emperor 58
 Russia
 The "Great Game" **495**, 547
 and Harbin 437, 443, 456
 Russian Orthodox Church 202,
 456
 Ruzhen (Jurchen) people 64
 Ruzi emperor 58
- S**
 Sacred Heart Church
 (Guangzhou) 304
 Safety **604–5**
 Sai Kung Town and Peninsula
 Beaches (Hong Kong) **326–7**
 St. Joseph's Church (Beijing) 100
 St. Mary's Church (Beijing) 91
 St. Michael's Church (Qingdao)
 152
 Sakya Monastery 524, 525, **550**
 Sakya Pandita 550
 Sakya Yeshe 541
 Salt
 mining salt in Sichuan 361
 Zigong 361
 Salween river 379, 531
 Sam's Tailor (Hong Kong) 337
 Samye Monastery 524, **544–5**
 San Ta (Dali) 14, **392–3**
 Sanche river 407
 Sangke 486
 Sani people **384**
 Sanjiang **426–7**
 Sanqing Si (Western Hills) 383
 Sanshan Island (Taihu) 222
 Sanxingdui 349
 Sanxingdui Museum 11, 15, **366**
 Sanya **311**
 restaurants 580
 Sanyang Feng 298
 SARS (severe acute respiratory
 syndrome) 606–7
 Sassoon, Sir Victor 193
 Sayram Lake **512**
 Schall von Bell, Adam 100, 439
 Schistosomiasis 607
 Science Museum (Hong Kong)
 322
 Scripts **32–3**
 calligraphy 33, **225**
 Naxi script 399
- Secluded Pavilion of Firmiana
 Simplex and Bamboo (Suzhou)
 213
 Security **604–5**
 Sera Monastery (Lhasa) 525, **541**
 Service charges, in hotels 555
 Seventeen-arch Bridge (Summer
 Palace, Beijing) 108
 SEVVA (Hong Kong) 338
 Sexually transmitted diseases 607
 Sha Tin Racecourse (Hong Kong)
 338, 339
 Shaanxi History Museum (Xi'an)
 16, 167, **172–3**
 Shaanxi province 78, **167–77**
 hotels 559
 map 167
 restaurants 575
 Shadow plays 591
 Shamian Island 304, **306–7**
 map 306–7
 Shan Hu (Guilin) 14, **420**
 Shandong province 78, 79, **147**
 food and drink 82–3
 hotels 559
 map 147
 restaurants 574–5
 Shandong Provincial Museum
 (Jinan) 148
 Shang Cai Dong (Wutai Shan) 141
 Shang City Walls (Zhengzhou)
 158
 Shang dynasty 57, 58, 78
 oracle bones 32, 158
 Shangdi emperor 58
 Shangfeng Si (Heng Shan) 267
 Shanghai 22, 182–3, **189–207**
 air travel 613, 615
 banks 608
 Bund 12, 182, 189, **192–3**, 201,
 203
 climate 55
 entertainment **206–7**
 food and drink 186
 hospitals 605
 hotels 559–60
 Huangpu river **201**
 map 190–91
 Old Shanghai **203**
 Public Security Bureau (PSB)
 599
 restaurants 575–7
 Shanghai Museum 12–13,
 196–7
 shopping **206–7**
 skiing 593
 subway 620
 Two Days in Shanghai 10,
 12–13
 Yu Gardens and Bazaar 12,
 198–9
 Shanghai Art Museum 194, 195
 Shanghai Center 194, 206, 207
 Shanghai Circus World 206, 207
 Shanghai Dramatic Arts Center
 206, 207

- Shanghai Exhibition Center **202**
 Shanghai Film Art Center 207
 Shanghai Grand Theater 194, 206, 207
 Shanghai History Museum 195
 Shanghai International Film Festival 51
 Shanghai Museum 12–13, **196–7**, 206, 207
 Shanghai Music Conservatory Auditorium 206, 207
 Shanghai No. 1 Department Store 194
 Shanghai Oriental Art Center 206, 207
 Shanghai Pearl City (Shanghai) 206, 207
 Shanghai Pudong Development Bank 192
 Shanghai Tang (Hong Kong) 337
 Shanghai Urban Planning Exhibition 194
 Shanghai World Financial Center 195
 Shangqing Gong (Qingcheng Shan) 374
 Shangri-La Hotels 557
 Shanyong 390
 Shanhaiguan 127, **134**
 Shanhua Si (Datong) 137
 Shanshan Gan Guild Hall (Kaifeng) 156
 Shantou **302**
 Shanxi province 78, 79, **127**
 hotels 558–9
 map 127
 restaurants 573–4
 Shanxi Provincial Museum (Taiyuan) 143
 Shao Shan 265, **266**, 268
 Shaoguan **309**
 Shaolin International Martial Arts Festival 52
 Shaolin Temple 147, **164**, 165, 594
 Shaoxing 245, **252**
 restaurants 578
 Shaping 394
 Shapotou 465, 480
 Shaw, George Bernard 204
 Shaxi **394–5**
 She Shan (Shanghai) **205**
 Sheli Ta (Baoguang Si) 366
 Shen Nong emperor 299
 Shengjin Ta Pagoda (Nanchang) 257
 Shenhai Well (Zigong) 361
 Shennong Xi 15, 359, **360**
 Shennongjia 183, 265, **278**
 Shenyang 436, 438, 443, **444–5**
 hotels 563
 map 445
 restaurant 584
 Shenzhen 301, **302**
 hotels 561
 restaurants 580
- Shenzong emperor 59
 Sher Ali 495
 Sheraton 557
 Sheung Wan's Markets (Hong Kong) 13, **321**
 Shexian 209, **240**
 Shi De 217
 Shi Lin (Stone Forest) 379, **384–5**, 418
 Shi Tao 226
 Shiba Pan (Tai Shan) 150
 Shibao Zhai 358, **360**
 Shibing 415
 Shidebala 58
 Shidong 414
 Shidu **117**
 Shigatse **548–9**
 hotels 563
 map 549
 restaurants 585
 Shijiazhuang **136**
 Shin Kong Place (Beijing) 118, 119
 Ship Lifting Tower (Three Gorges Dam) 275
 Shipaotai Gongyuan (Shantou) 302
 Shishao 406
 Shizhang Dong 416
 Shizi Lin (Suzhou) 180, 210
 Shizi Yan 309
 Shizong emperor 64
 Shopping **586–9**
 antiques shops 118, 206, 336, 587
 bargaining 586, 603
 Beijing **118–19**
 department stores and boutiques 118, 336, 587
 Hong Kong and Macau **336–7**
 how to pay 586
 opening hours 586
 Shanghai **206–7**
 shopping malls 587
 What to Buy in China **588–9**
 see also Markets
 Shoton (Yoghurt festival) 52
 Shou Ning Si (Wutai Shan) 141
 Shou Xi Hu (Yangzhou) 226
 Shu kingdom 59, 349
 Shuang Ta (Suzhou) **216**
 Shuanglin Si **145**
 Shuijing Xiang Market (Xining) 502
 Shuilian Dong (Huangguoshu Falls) 407
 Shuilian Dong (Wuyi Shan) 298
 Shundi emperor 58
 Shunzhi emperor 59
 Eastern Qing Tombs 115
 Imperial Palace (Shenyang) 444
 Shunzong emperor 58
 Shuzheng Zhai, Jiuzhai Gou tour 376
 Shuzhuang Garden (Gulangyu Island) 293
- Si Men Pagoda (Jinan) 148
 Siberia 460, 464, 473
 Sichuan earthquake 367, 374, 375
 Sichuan Museum (Chengdu) 365
 Sichuan opera **366**
 Sichuan province 349, **355–77**
 carvings of Dazu **362–3**
 Dafo (Le Shan) 11, **370–73**
 Emei Shan **368–9**
 food and drink 352
 giant pandas **367**
 hotels 562
 map 355
 restaurants 581–2
 salt mines 361
 A Week in Sichuan and Chongqing 11, **15**
 Yangzi cruise **358–60**
 Sidong Gou 416
 Sifang Jie (Lijiang) 397
 Silk **214–15**
 Hetian Silk Factory (Khotan) 519
 Silk Embroidery Research Institute (Suzhou) **216**
 Suzhou Silk Museum (Suzhou) 210
 What to Buy in China 589
 Silk Roads 60, 66, 348, **470–71**
 Baoshan 394
 Burma Road 383
 Dunhuang 498
 Hexi Corridor 483
 Karakoram Highway 518
 Kashgar 514
 Khotan 519
 Race for the Silk Road Oases **499**
 Silk Road 519
 The Spread of Buddhism **491**
 Tengchong 395
 Turpan 508
 Two Weeks on the Silk Road 10, **16–17**
 Xi'an 168
 Xinjiang 507
 Yarkand 519
 Yengisar 518
 see also Inner Mongolia and the Silk Roads
 Sima Qian 34
 Simatai **114**
 Simplified script 33
 Sino-Japanese War (1894–5) 69, 154
 Lushun (Port Arthur) 451
 Museum of the 1895 Sino-Japanese War (Weihai) 155
 Site of the First National Congress of the Chinese Communist Party (Shanghai) **200**
 Six Harmonies Pagoda (Hangzhou) 247
 Skiing 593
 Sleeping Buddha Temple (Beijing) 109

- Small Wild Goose Pagoda (Xi'an)
167, **170**
- Smoking 603
- Soccer 592, 595
- Soft drinks 570
- Sogo (Hong Kong) 336, 337
- Sok Kwu Wan 330
- Song dynasty 59, 64, **65**
Central China 183
Gongyi **164**
porcelain 261
- Song Jiang **205**
- Song Shan 147
- Songhua Lake 453
- Songhua river 453
- Songpan 355, **375**
- Songshan **164**
- Songsan Gampo
Jokhang Temple (Lhasa) 536–7
King 524
Potala Palace (Lhasa) 538
Ramoche (Lhasa) 532
- Songyang Academy (Songshan)
164
- Songyang Si Pagoda (Songshan)
164
- Soong Ailing 204
- Soong Meiling 204, 259, 310
- Soong Qingling 303
Soong Qingling's Former
Residence (Shanghai) **204**
Sun Yat Sen Memorial
Residence (Shanghai) 200
Wenchang 310
- Soong, T.V. 204
- South Cathedral (Beijing) **91**
- South China **281–343**
food and drink **288–9**
Fujian **291–9**
Guangdong and Hainan **301–11**
Hong Kong and Macau **313–43**
hotels 561
map 282–3
peoples 31
Portrait of the South **284–5**
restaurants 579–81
rice **286–7**
- South China Sea 301
- South Gate (Yinchuan) 479
- South Lake Island (Summer
Palace, Beijing) 108
- Southeast Corner Watchtower
(Beijing) **101**
- Southern Dynasties 59, 61
- Southern Song dynasty 59, 65
Hangzhou 246
- Southwest China **345–431**
bamboo **417**
Chinese cranes **409**
flora of Southwest China **350–51**
food and drink **352–3**
Guizhou and Guangxi **403–31**
hotels 562
karst **418–19**
- Southwest China (cont.)
map 346–7
peoples 30
Portrait of Southwest China
348–9
restaurants 581–3
Sichuan and Chongqing **355–77**
Yunnan **379–401**
- Souvenirs **588–9**
- Special Economic Zones 73
- Specialist holidays **592–5**
- Spectator sports 590, 592
- Spelunking 595
- Splendid China (Shenzhen) 302
- Sports **592–5**
Hong Kong **338**, 339
spectator sports 590, 592
- Spring in China 50–51
- Spring City 592, 595
- Spring Festival (Chin Jie) 48, 50
- Stalin, Joseph 105
Stalin Park (Harbin) 456
- Stanley **329**
markets 336, 337
- Star Ferry (Hong Kong) 13, **321**
- Star House (Hong Kong) 336, 337
- Stein, Sir Aurel 499, 500
- Steppes **475**
grassland 28
Mongols of the Steppe **468–9**
Steppes of China, landscape 27
Steppes Travel 593, 595
- Stilwell, General
Burma Road 383
Stilwell Museum (Chongqing)
357
- Stomach upsets 606
- Stone Forest (Shi Lin) 10, 14, 379,
384–5, 418
- Stone Sutra Valley (Tai Shan) 151
- Street food 566
- Studio City (Shanghai) 207
- Stupa Forest Temple 116
- Stupas 171
- Su Causeway (Hangzhou) 249
- Su Dongpo 564
Forest of Stelae Museum (Xi'an)
168
- Liu Rong Si (Guangzhou) 305
- Su Causeway (Hangzhou) 249
- Wugong Si (Haikou) 310
- Yizhou Pavilion (Changzhou)
224
- Su Zimei 216
- Subashi Gucheng 513
- Subways
Beijing 620
Shanghai 620
- Sui (court official) 274
- Sui dynasty 59, 61, 167
- Sui Wen Di emperor 223
- Sui Yandi emperor 223
- Suleiman, Prince 508
- Summer in China 51–2
weather 54, 606
- Summer Palace (Beijing) 12, 78,
106–8
Visitors' Checklist 107
- Summer Palace (Lhasa) 533
- Sun Asia Ocean World (Dalian)
450–51
- Sun Island Park (Harbin) 456
- Sun protection 606
- Sun Yat-sen 69, 204, **303**, 310
at Guilin 421
birthplace 308
Hong Kong 320
Kuomintang 72
Mausoleum (Nanjing) 234, 235,
236
Museum of Dr. Sun Yat-sen
(Nanjing) 235, **236**
Nanjing 228, 229
Purple Mountain (Nanjing) 236
Sun Yat-sen Memorial Hall
(Guangzhou) 307
Sun Yat-sen Memorial
Residence (Shanghai) 13, **200**
Wuhan 272
Xiang Shan Park (Beijing) 109
- Sunday Market (Kashgar) 514
- Sunlight Rock (Gulangyu Island)
293
- Sunni Muslims 511
- Suyu Kou 480
- Suzhe cuisine 187
- Suzhou 183, 209, **210–21**
air travel 615
hotels 560
Humble Administrator's Garden
212–13
map 211
Pan Men Scenic Area (Suzhou)
218–19
Public Security Bureau (PSB)
599
restaurants 577
Visitors' Checklist 211
- Suzhou Museum (Suzhou) 210
- Suzhou Silk Museum 210
- Suzong emperor 58
- Swatow *see* Chaozhou; Shantou
- Swimming 592
- Symbolism
dragons **94**
Eight Auspicious Symbols **546**
food 565
- T**
- Tableware 569
- Ta'er Si 466, 467, 483, **504–5**
- Tai ji quan (Tai Chi) **279**
- Tai Long Wan 326, 327
- Tai Mo Shan 327
- Tai O 330, 331
- Tai Shan 78, 79, 99, 147, **150–51**
map 150–51
- Tai Shan Miao (Wudang Shan)
278
- Tai'an, Tai Shan 150–51

- Tai'an Temple (Qingcheng Shan) 374
- Taichang emperor 58, 67
- Taihu 183, **222**
- Taihua Si (Western Hills) 383
- Taihuai 140
- Taijiang 414
- Taikoo Li (Beijing) 12, 118, 119
- Taiiping Rebellion (1851-64) 69, 265, 348, **428**
- Jintian 429
- Suzhou Museum 210
- Taiping Heavenly Kingdom History Museum (Nanjing) 228
- Taiqing Temple (Lao Shan) 153
- Taiwan, Nationalist government established in 72-3
- Taiyuan **143**
- hotels 558
- restaurants 574
- Taizong emperor 58, 59, 63
- Fayuan Temple (Beijing) 104
- tomb 176
- Taizu emperor 59
- Tajiks 511
- Taklamakan Desert 467, 498, 507, 519
- Tan Hao 138
- Tan Kah Kee 292
- Tang An 427
- Tang Bo 256
- Tang dynasty 58, **62-4**, 167
- Buddhism 491
- poetry 34
- porcelain 261
- Tang Wenzong emperor 168
- Tangyue 240
- Tanzhe Temple **116**
- Tao Qian 37
- Tara Chapel (Lhasa) 540
- Tashi Dor 547
- Tashilunpo Monastery (Shigatse) 548-9
- Tashkurgan 518
- Tatars 511
- Taxes, air travel 613
- Taxis
- airport 613, 615
- in cities 621
- Tayuan Si (Wutai Shan) 140
- Tea 285, **299**
- Guiping 428-9
- Longjing Village (Hangzhou) 246
- Tea Museum (Hangzhou) 246
- What to Drink in China 570
- Teachers' Day 52
- Teahouses, Beijing 119
- Telephones 610
- dialling codes 611
- Television 611
- Temple Street Market (Hong Kong) 13, **323**, 336, 337
- Temples (general)
- admission charges 600
- etiquette 602
- Temples (individual)
- Baoguang Si **366**
- Confucian Temple (Suzhou) **217**
- Confucius Temple (Beijing) **99**
- Dong Yue Miao (Beijing) **99**
- Eight Immortals Temple (Xi'an) 167, **170**
- Fayuan Temple (Beijing) **104**
- Great Bell Temple (Beijing) **109**
- Hanging Temple 127, **137**
- Hanshan Si (Suzhou) **217**
- Heng Shan **267**
- Jade Buddha Temple (Shanghai) **202**
- Jing'an Temple (Shanghai) **202**
- Jiuhua Shan **240**
- Jokhang Temple (Lhasa) 534, **536-7**
- Lama Temple (Beijing) **98-9**
- Linggu Temple (Nanjing) 235, **236**
- Man Mo Temple (Hong Kong) 13, **320**
- Puning Si (Chengde) 129, **130-31**
- Shaolin Temple 147, **164**, 165
- Shuanglin Si **145**
- Ta'er Si **504-5**
- Tai Shan **150-51**
- Tanzhe Temple **116**
- Temple of Heaven (Beijing) 12, 76, **102-3**
- White Clouds Temple (Beijing) **104-5**
- Wong Tai Sin Temple (Hong Kong) **323**
- Wutai Shan **140-42**
- see also individual towns and cities
- Temur Oljeitu 58
- Ten Kingdoms 58, **64**
- Ten Thousand Buddha Cave (Longmen Caves) 161
- 10,000 Buddhas Monastery (Hong Kong) **326**
- Teng Wang Pavilion (Nanchang) 256-7
- Tengchong **395**
- Tengger Desert 480
- Terrace for Watching the Sunrise (Heng Shan) 267
- Terracotta Army 10, 16, 60, 79, 167, **174-5**
- Textiles
- Beijing shops **118**, 119
- Shanghai shops **206**, 207
- silk **214-15**
- Silk Embroidery Research Institute (Suzhou) **216**
- Suzhou Silk Museum (Suzhou) 210
- tours 593
- What to Buy in China 589
- Thangkass **540**
- Theater 47
- Beijing 118, 119
- Beijing Opera **80-81**, **119**, 590
- Museum of Opera and Theater (Suzhou) 211
- shadow plays and puppet theater 591
- Shanghai **206**, 207
- traditional theater **119**, 590-91
- Theft 604
- Theme parks
- Fisherman's Wharf (Macau) 334
- Hong Kong Disneyland 331, 338, 339
- Ocean Park (Hong Kong) **328-9**
- Shenzhen 302
- Themed restaurants 567
- Third Moon Fair 51
- Thousand Buddha Caves (Kizil) 17, **513**
- Thousand Buddha Cliffs (Nanjing) 237
- Thousand Buddha Mountain (Jinan) 148
- Three Gorges 11, 15, **276-7**
- Three Gorges Dam 15, 73, 182, 265, **274-5**, 358-60
- Three Gorges Museum **356**
- Yangzi cruise 358, 359
- Three Pools Reflecting the Moon (Hangzhou) 248
- Tian Chi 17, 443, 454, 455, 507, **510**
- Tian Hau Festival 51
- Tian Shan 467, 507
- Tian Tan (Temple of Heaven, Beijing) 76, **102-3**
- Tian'an Men (Beijing), Street-by-Street map 89
- Tian'an Men Square (Beijing) 12, 73
- Street-by-Street map **88-9**
- Tianchan Yifu Theater (Shanghai) 206, 207
- Tianchao Gong (Nanjing) 229
- Tianhou (Empress of Heaven) **155**
- Tianhou Gong (Shantou) 302
- Tianhou Temple (Tianjin) 135
- Tianjin 79, **135**
- food and drink 83
- hotels 559
- map 135
- restaurants 574
- Tianjin Eye 135
- Tianjin province **127**
- hotels 558-9
- map 127
- restaurants 573-4
- Tianjixiang Museum (Pingyao) 145
- Tianlong Shan Grottoes (Taiyuan) 143
- Tianqiao emperor 58
- Tianqiao Happy Teahouse (Beijing) 119

- Tianshi Dong (Qingcheng Shan) 374
 Tianshui 467
 Tianshun emperor 58
 Tiantai Buddhist sect 253
 Tiantai Shan **253**, 406
 Tiantai Zhengding (Jiuhua Shan) 240
 Tianxing 407
 Tianya Haijiao 311
 Tianye Ge (Ningbo) 252
 Tianyou Shan 298
 Tianzhu Peak (Wudang Shan) 278
 Tianzi Ge (Wulingyuan) 271
 Tibet **520–51**
 British invasion **547**
 customs information 599
 frontier 377, 503
 The “Great Game” 495, 547
 hotels 563
 landscape and wildlife 26
 Lhasa **532–41**
 map 522–3
 nomadic life **528–9**
 Portrait of Tibet **524–5**
 restaurants 585
 Tibetan plateau 483, 531
 visas and passports 598–9
 Zhongdian 401
 Tibet Museum (Lhasa) 533
 Tibetan Buddhism 467, 524, **526–7**
 Lukhang (Lhasa) 532
 Samye Monastery **544–5**
 Ta’er Si **504–5**
 thangkas and mandalas **540**
 Xilitu Zhao (Hohhot) 474–5
 Tibetan Connections 595
 Tibetan New Year 50
 Tibetan Oracle 540–41
 Tickets
 admission charges 600
 advance booking 598
 air travel 612–13, 615
 buses 619
 trains 617
 Tiger Beach Scenic Area 450
 Tiger Hill (Suzhou) **217**
 Tiger Lair (Longgong Dong) 407
 Tiger Leaping Gorge 14, 379, **400–401**
 Tigers, Siberian Tiger Park (Harbin) 456
 Time zones 601
 Timetables, train 616
 Timur 495
 Tin Hau Temple (Stanley) 329
 Tingri 551
 Tipping 603
 in hotels 557
 in restaurants 569
 Toba Wei 59, 61
 Toghon Temur 58
 Toilets, public 605
 Tombs and cemeteries
 Aba Khoja Mausoleum (Kashgar) 517
 Astana 509
 Confucius Forest (Qufu) 149
 East Tomb (Shenyang) 445
 Eastern Qing Tombs **115**
 Gongyi **164**
 Hunan Provincial Museum (Changsha) 266
 Islamic Cemetery (Guangzhou) 306–7
 King of Borneo’s Tomb (Nanjing) 237
 Longhua Cemetery of Martyrs (Shanghai) **205**
 Mahao Cave Tombs (Le Shan) 371
 Ming Tombs (Beijing) **110–11**
 Nan Yue Tomb (Guangzhou) 306
 North Tomb (Shenyang) 445
 Old Protestant Cemetery (Macau) 332
 Stanley Cemetery 329
 Terracotta Army **174–5**
 Tomb of Yuan Shikai (Anyang) 158
 Tomb of Yusup Hazi Hajup (Kashgar) 515
 Xi Xia Wang Ling 480
 Xi’an 176
 Xiao Ling Tomb (Nanjing) 236
 Yue Fei Mu (Hangzhou) 246
 Tongli 183, **222**
 Tongmenghui (United League) 69
 Tongren **502**
 Tongrentang Pharmacy (Beijing) 91
 Tongzhi emperor 59, 107
 Eastern Qing Tombs 115
 Tourist information 600
 Tours
 Choosing a tour 593, 595
 Jiuzhai Gou tour **376**
 see also Itineraries
 Tower of the Fragrance of Buddha (Summer Palace, Beijing) 108
 Trackers, Yangzi river 360
 Trains **616–17**
 advance booking 598
 airport links 614–15
 tours 593
 train spotting 593
 Trans Siberian Express **440–41**
 Trams 621
 Peak Tram (Hong Kong) 319
 Trans Siberian Express **440–41**
 Travel **612–21**
 air **612–15**
 Beijing 87
 Beijing and the North 76
 buses **618–19**
 Central China 180
 Travel (cont.)
 ferries and boats 619
 Hong Kong 315
 Inner Mongolia and the Silk Roads 464
 local transport in cities 620–21
 Northeast China 435
 Shanghai 190
 South China 282
 Southwest China 346
 Tibet 523
 trains **616–17**
 Trans Siberian Express **440–41**
 Travel insurance 599
 Traveler’s checks 609
 in shops 586
 Tree-planting Day 50
 Trekking 595
 Trisong Detsen 524, 544, 545
 Tromzikhang (Lhasa) 535
 Tropical Botanical Gardens (Xishuangbanna) 350
 Tropical forests, Southwest China 351
 Tsepak Lhakhang (Lhasa) 532
 Tsetang 545
 Tsim Sha Tsui Waterfront (Hong Kong) 13, **322**
 Tsingtao *see* Qingdao
 Tsingtao beer **152**
 Tsogchen (Lhasa) 540, 541
 Tsongkhapa 540
 Lama Temple (Beijing) 98
 Summer Palace (Lhasa) 533
 Ta’er Si 504
 Wutai Shan 140
 Yellow Hat Sect 524
 Tsurphu Monastery **546**
 Tu Ta (Zhangye) 494
 Tugh Temur 58
 Tuisi Yuan (Tongli) 222
 Tujia people 31
 Tung Chung 331
 Tunxi **240**
 hotels 560
 Turpan 10, 17, 467, 507, **508–9**
 hotels 563
 restaurants 585
 24 Bends (Tiger Leaping Gorge) 400
 Twin Pagoda Temple (Taiyuan) 143
 Two International Finance Centre (IFC, Hong Kong) 316
- ## U
- Uighur 466–7
 food and drink 83
 Islam 511
 Khotan 519
 Kuqa 513
 Turpan 508
 Yining 512–13
 UK Embassy 605
 UME International Cineplex (Shanghai) 207

Underground City (Beijing) **90**
 Underground Tunnel (Bozhou) 239
 UNESCO Biosphere Reserves,
 Changbai Shan **454–5**
 UNESCO World Heritage Sites
 Baoding Shan **363**
 Dafo (Le Shan) **370–73**
 Hongcun 240
 Imperial Palace (Shenyang) 444
 Lijiang 379, **396–7**
 Longmen Caves 79
 Peking Man site **117**
 Xidi 240
 United Airlines 613
 United Parcel Service 611
 Universal Theater (Beijing) 119
 University accommodation 554
 Ürümqi 10, 17, 467, 507, **510**
 climate 54
 hotels 563
 restaurants 585
 US Embassy 605
 Uzbeks 511

V

Vaccinations 599, 607
 Vegetarian food 567
 The Venetian (Macau) 13, 333,
 338
 Verbiest, Father 100
 Victoria Park (Hong Kong) 317
 Victoria Peak Garden (HK) 318
 Vietnam 379, 429, 431
 Virgin Atlantic 613
 Visas 598–9
 Volar (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Volcanoes
 Heshun 395
 Wu Da Lian Chi 460

W

W Hotels 557
 Walking
 Changbai Shan 455
 Jiuzhai Gou tour 376
 Tiger Leaping Gorge 400–401
 trekking 595
 in Xishuangbanna 391
 Walled Villages (New Territories)
 327
 Walls see City walls
 Walnut Grove (Tiger Leaping
 Gorge) 401
 Wan Chai (Hong Kong) **316–17**
 Wan Sheng Theater (Beijing) 119
 The Wanch (Hong Kong) 338, 339
 Wang, Abbot 499
 Wang Chongyang 105
 Wang Hai Lou Cathedral (Tianjin)
 135
 Wang Hongwen 71
 Wang Jian 364
 Wang Mang 60
 Wang Meng, *Retreat in the*
 Qingbian Mountain 197

Wang Shi Xiao Yuan (Yangzhou)
 227
 Wang Wei 34
 Wang Wenhan 216
 Wang Xian Chen 212
 Wang Xizhi 252
 Wang Yuanlu 500
 Wangfeng Ting (Stone Forest)
 384
 Wangfujing Street (Beijing) **100**
 Wangjiang Lou Park (Chengdu)
 365
 Wangjiaping Revolution
 Headquarters Site (Yan'an) 177
 Wanglang Nature Reserve 355,
 375
 Wangshi Yuan (Suzhou) **216**
 Wangu Lou (Lijiang) 14, **398**
 Wangyue Lou (Beijing) 104
 Wanli emperor 58, 67, 308
 Ming Tombs (Beijing) 111
 South Cathedral (Beijing) 91
 Wannian Si (Emei Shan) 369
 Wanshi Botanical Garden
 (Xiamen) 292
 Ward, Frank Kingdom 351
 Warner, Langdon 499
 Warring States Period 57, 60
 Warts, health precautions 605
 Wase 394
 Wat Ben Pagoda 388
 Water Curtain Thousand Buddha
 Caves (Luomen) 486
 Water, drinking 606, 607
 Water Splashing Festival 389
 Water Sprinkling Festival 50
 Water wheels (Lijiang) 396
 Water-borne diseases 607
 Waterfalls
 Baihua Shan (Qiongzong) 310
 Big Dragon Pool Falls (Yandang
 Shan) 253
 Changbai Waterfall 454
 Detian Falls 403, **431**
 Diaoshuilou Pubu (Jingpo Hu)
 458
 Doupotang Falls 407
 Huangguoshu Falls **407**
 Maling Canyon 408
 Nuorilang Falls 376
 Pearl-Beach Falls 376
 Weather **54–5**
 cold weather 606
 heat and humidity 606
 when to go 598
 Wei Gao 371
 Wei Ken 202
 Wei kingdom 59
 Wei Wei 47
 Weidong 391
 Weifang International Kite
 Festival 50
 Weihai **154–5**
 Weining **408**
 Weizhou Island (Beihai) 431
 Wen Miao (Anshun) 406

Wen Miao (Wuwei) 494
 Wenchang 310
 Wenchang Ge (Guiyang) 404
 Wenchang Ge (Yangzhou) 227
 Wencheng, Princess 532, 536, 537
 Wende, Empress 170
 Wendi emperor 58, 59
 Wenfeng Pagoda (Anyang) 158
 Wenshu (Manjusri) **141**
 Wenshu Yuan (Chengdu) 364
 Wenyu Museum (Jinzhou) 446
 Wenzhou **253**
 hotels 560
 restaurants 578
 Wenzong emperor 58
 West Lake (Hangzhou) 183, **248–**
 51, 1010
 Western Han dynasty 58, 60
 Western Hills (Kunming) 383
 Western Jin dynasty 59
 Western Liao dynasty 64
 Western Market (Hong Kong)
 336, 337
 Western Palaces (Forbidden City)
 95
 Western restaurants 567
 Western Xia Empire 58, 64, 65,
 481
 Xi Xia Wang Ling (Helan Shan)
 480
 Yinchuan 479
 Western Zhou dynasty 57, 59, 167
 Westin 557
 Wetlands, landscape & wildlife 29
 Wheelchair access see Disabled
 travelers
 White Clouds Temple (Beijing)
 104–5
 White Dagoba (Beijing) 96
 White Lotus Rebellion (1796–
 1805) 66, 69
 White Pagoda (Lanzhou) 171
 White Palace (Lhasa) 538, 539
 Whitewater rafting 595
 Wife Waiting for Husband (Stone
 Forest) 385
 Wild China 593, 595
 Wild Elephant Valley 388
 Wild Man 183, 265, 278
 Wildlife **26–9**
 Cao Hai **408**
 cranes **409**
 Emei Shan 368
 giant pandas **367**
 Hong Kong Wetland Park 327
 Jianfeng Ling Nature Reserve
 311
 Mai Po Marshes 327
 Qinghai Hu 503
 Shennongjia 278
 specialist holidays 595
 Wanglang Nature Reserve **375**
 Wild Elephant Valley 388
 Wulingyuan 270
 Xiamen Seaworld (Gulangyu
 Island) 293

Wildlife (cont.)
 Yingxiong Shan (Gulangyu Island) 293
 Zhalong Nature Reserve **458**
see also Zoos
 Wilhelm II, Kaiser 152
 Wilson, Ernest 278, 351
 Window on the World (Shenzhen) 302
 Wine **510**
 Winter in China 53
 weather 54, 606
 Winter Solstice 53
 Women travelers 604
 Wong Tai Sin Temple (Hong Kong) **323**
 World Trade Organisation 73
 World War II 72
 Burma Road **383**
 Hongyuan Cun (Chongqing) 357
 Nanjing Massacre (1937) **233**
 Writing **32–3**
 calligraphy **33, 225**
 Naxi script 399
 Wu Da Lian Chi 443, **460**
 Wu kingdom 59
 Wu Laiqing 383
 Wu Men Bridge (Suzhou) 218
 Wu Sangui, General 382
 Wu Ta (Fuzhou) 298
 Wu Ta Si (Hohhot) 475
 Wu Xia 240
 Wu Zetian, Empress 58, 63, 64, 107
 Longmen Caves 160
 Luoyang 158
 tomb of 176
 Wudang Shan 265, **278, 594**
 Wudang Zhao 476
 Wudi emperor 58, 470
 Mao Ling (Xi'an) 176
 Songyang Academy (Songshan) 164
 Wuyi Shan 298
 Wugong Ci (Haikou) 310
 Wuhan 182, 265, **272–3**
 hotels 560–61
 map 272–3
 restaurants 579
 Wuhou Si (Chengdu) 365
 Wuhu **239**
 Wulingyuan 183, 265, **270–71**
 Wuquan Shan Gongyuan (Lanzhou) 489
 Wusong Fort (Shanghai) 201
 Wusutu Zhao (Hohhot) 475
 Wutai Shan 127, **140–42**
 map 142
 Visitors' Checklist 141
 Wutun monastery 502
 Wuwei **494**
 Wuwei Si (Dali) 393
 Wuxi **222**
 Wuxi Museum (Wuxi) 222
 Wuyi Shan 291, 294–5, **298**

Wuyou Hill (Le Shan) 371
 Wuzhi Shan 310
 Wuzhi Shan City (Hainan Island) 310
 Wuzong emperor 58

X

X Bistro (Shanghai) 207
 Xanadu **478**
 Xi Jiang 428
 Xi Jie (Yangshuo) 424
 Xi Kai Cathedral (Tianjin) 135
 Xi Ling, Empress 214
 Xi Shan (Guiping) 428
 Xi Si Ta (Kunming) 381
 Xi Xia Wang Ling (Helan Shan) 480
 Xi Yuan (Suzhou) **217**
 Xia dynasty 57
 Xia Putao 394
 Xiahe 16, 467, 483, **486**
 hotels 563
 Xiamen 291, **292–3**
 hotels 561
 map 293
 restaurants 579
 Xiamen Seaworld (Gulangyu Island) 293
 Xi'an 10, 16, 78–9, 167, **168–76**
 air travel 615
 climate 55
 hotels 559
 map 169
 Public Security Bureau 599
 restaurants 575
 Sha'anxi History Museum 16, 167, **172–3**
 in Tang dynasty 62
 Terracotta Army 60, 79, 167, **174–5**
 Xian Tong Si (Wutai Shan) 141
 Xiandi emperor 58
 Xianfeng emperor 59, 107
 Eastern Qing Tombs 115
 Prince Gong's Mansion (Beijing) 96
 Xiang Jing Yu, tomb of 273
 Xiang river 263
 Xiang Shan Park (Beijing) **109**
 Xiangbi Shan (Guilin) 420
 Xiangfei 516
 Xiangfei's Tomb (Kashgar) 516
 Xianglu Shan 415
 Xiangyang Road Clothes Market (Shanghai) 206, 207
 Xianhe Mosque (Yangzhou) 227
 Xianren Qiao (Wulingyuan) 270
 Xianyang City Museum (Xianyang) 176
 Xianzong emperor 58
 Xiao Ling Tomb (Nanjing) 236
 Xiao Shi Lin (Stone Forest) 384
 Xiaolong Tan 278
 Xiaoyajin Park (Hefei) 239
 Xiaoying Island (Hangzhou) 248

Xiaozhai 418
 Xiaozong emperor 59
 Xibo people 513
 Xidi 240
 Xiding 390
 Xihui Park (Wuxi) 222
 Xijiang 346, 414
 Xilinhot 473, **478**
 hotels 563
 Xilitu Zhao (Hohhot) 474–5
 Ximao Zhou Island 311
 Xincun 311
 Xinglong Tropical Botanical Gardens 310
 Xingning Lu (Nanning) 429
 Xingping 419
 Li river cruise 423
 Xingshu calligraphy 33
 Xingyi **408**
 Xining 483, **502**
 restaurants 585
 Xinjiang province 466, 467, **507–19**
 hotels 563
 map 507
 restaurants 585
 Xinjiang Provincial Museum (Ürümqi) 17, **510**
 Xintiandi (Shanghai) 13, 207
 Xishuangbanna 349, 350, 379, 388, **390–91**
 Dai people 389, 390
 Xiuding, Prince 229
 Xiuying (Haikou) 310
 Xixiang Chi (Emei Shan) 369
 Xizhou 394
 Xizong emperor 58
 Baoguang Si 366
 Xu Da, General 228
 Xu Guangqi 205
 Xu Wei 252
 Xu Yuan (Nanjing) 229
 Xuan Jian 383
 Xuanbi Changcheng 10, 16, **494**
 Xuancheng 239
 Xuande emperor 58, 67
 Xuandi emperor 58
 Xuandu Si (Heng Shan) 267
 Xuanmiao Guan (Suzhou) 211
 Xuanwu Lake (Nanjing) 232
 Xuanzang
 Big Wild Goose Pagoda (Xi'an) 170, 491
 Flaming Mountains (Turpan) 509
 Kuqa 513
 Lingu Temple (Purple Mountain) 236
 Mor Pagoda (Kashgar) 515
 pilgrimage to India 35
 Xuanzong emperor 58, 63
 Xue Tao 365
 Xujiahui Catholic Cathedral (Shanghai) **205**
 Xumi Shan Caves 473, 480

- Xumifushou Zhi Miao (Chengde) 129
 Xun river 428
 Xunyang Lou (Jiujiang) 258
- Y**
- Yabuli 592, 595
 Yakub Beg 512, 514
 tomb of 517
 Yalong Bay 311
 Yalu Jiang Duan Qiao (Yalu River Bridge) 446–7
 Yan Yanzhi 421
 Yan'an **177**
 Long March 262
 Yan'an Bao Pagoda (Yan'an) 177
 Yan'an Revolutionary Museum (Yan'an) 177
 Yandang Shan 183, 245, **253**
 Yang Can Mu 416
 Yang Guan 498
 Yang Guifei 63
 Yang Jian 61
 Yang Zengxin 510
 Yangdi, Li river cruise 423
 Yangdi emperor 59, 61
 Yangpu Bridge (Shanghai) 201
 Yangshao culture 57
 Yangshuo 10, 14, 349, 403, **424–5**
 hotels 562
 Li river cruise 423
 restaurants 583
 rock climbing 594
 Yangshuo Gongyuan 424
 Yangzhou 182, 209, **226–7**
 map 227
 restaurants 577
 Yangzhou Museum 226
 Yangzi Bridge (Wuhan) 272
 Yangzi river 15, 180, 182
 at Chongqing 356
 at Nanjing 228, 233
 at Shanghai 201
 at Yueyang 267
 delta 226
 Grand Canal 223
 in Hunan and Hubei 265
 in Jiangsu 209
 Three Gorges 276–7
 Three Gorges Dam 182, **274–5**, 358–60
 in Tibet 531
 Yangzi cruise **358–60**
 in Yunnan 379
 Yangqing Guan (Kaifeng) 156
 Yantai **154**
 Yantai Museum (Yantai) 154
 Yantai Shan Park (Yantai) 154
 Yao people 390, 426
 Yao Wenyuan 71
 Yaoqu 390
 Yarkand **519**
 Yarlung Tsangpo river 531
 Yashow Clothing Market (Beijing) 118, 119
 Yehenala 445
- Yellow Cloth Shoal, Li river cruise 423
 Yellow Crane Pavilion (Wuhan) 40, 272
 Yellow Emperor 168
 Yellow Hat (Gelugpa) Sect 524, 526
 Drepung Monastery (Lhasa) **540**
 Labrang Monastery 486, **487**
 Lama Temple (Beijing) 98
 Longwu Si (Tongren) 502
 Sera Monastery (Lhasa) 541
 Ta'er Si 504
 Wudang Zhao 476
 Wutai Shan 140
 Yellow River 78, **159**, 177
 at Baotou 476
 at Jinan 148
 at Kaifeng 156
 at Lanzhou 488
 at Yinchuan 479
 at Zhongwei 480
 Grand Canal 223
 in Inner Mongolia 465, 467
 in Lanzhou 483
 Mengda Tian Chi 503
 Shaanxi province 167
 Shandong and Henan 147
 Shanxi province 127
 Yellow River Park (Zhengzhou) 158
 Yellow Sea 437
 Yengisar **518**
 Yesun Temur 58
 Yi, Marquis of 272
 Yi De, Prince, tomb of 176
 Yi people 384, 408
 Yi Yin 564
 Yi Yuan (Suzhou) **216**
 Yichang 15, 265, **274**
Yijing (Book of Changes) 39
 Yimou, Zang 246
 Yin Tan (Silver Beach) 431
 Yin and Yang
 food and drink 564–5
 Forbidden City 93
 traditional medicine 238
 Yinchang Canyon 375
 Yinchuan 473, **479**
 hotels 563
 restaurants 584
 Ying, Prince of Chu 60
 Yingxian Pagoda 171
 Yingxiong Canyon 375
 Yingxiong Shan (Gulangyu Island) 293
 Yingzong emperor 59
 Yining **512–13**
 Yixian 209, **240**
 Yixing County **224**
 Yizhou Pavilion (Changzhou) 224
 Yizong emperor 58
 Yong Ling Museum (Chengdu) 364
 Yong river 252
- Yongan Si (Beijing) 96
 Yongding 291
 earthen dwellings of Yongding **296**
 Yongding river 116
 Yongle emperor 58, 67, 79
 Drum Tower (Beijing) 98
 Jing Shan Park (Beijing) 96
 Ming Tombs (Beijing) 110, 111
 Nanjing 229
 Yongzheng emperor 59, 68, **115**, 128
 Forbidden City 95
 Youguo Si (Wutai Shan) 142
 Youmin Si (Nanchang) 256
 Younghusband, Colonel Francis 495, 547
 Youth Day 51, 53
 Youth hostels 554
 Youyi Guan 431
 Yu Gardens and Bazaar (Shanghai) 12, **198–9**, 206
 Yu the Great 252
 Yu Ling (Shaoxing) 252
 Yu Men Guan 498
 Yu river 428
 Yuan Douguang 381
 Yuan Empire 58, 66
 horse-riding skills 468
 porcelain 261
 Yuan Shikai, General 69, 303
 Tomb of Yuan Shikai (Anyang) 158
 Yuandi emperor 58
 Yuanlong Silk Corporation (Beijing) 118, 119
 Yuanming Yuan (Garden of Perfect Brightness, Beijing) **109**, 439
 Yuantong Si (Kunming) 380
 Yuantou Zhu (Taihu) 222
 Yucca (Shanghai) 207
 Yue Fei Mu (Hangzhou) 246
 Yue people 291
 Yueliang Shan (Yangshuo) 425
 Yuexiu Park (Guangzhou) 307
 Yueya Quan (Dunhuang) 498
 Yueyang **267**
 Yueyang Tower (Yueyang) 267
 Yufeng Si 398
 Yuhuang Ge (Yinchuan) 479
 Yuhuang Miao (Tai Shan) 150
 Yuhuang Pavilion (Baoshan) 394
 Yuhuangding Park (Yantai) 154
 Yuhuatai (Nanjing) 237
 Yulong Xue Shan 10, 14, **398**
 Yung Shue Wan 330
 Yungang Caves 127, 137, **138–9**
 Yunjiu Shan 406
 Yunnan province 348, 349, **379–401**
 Dai people **389**
 flowers 350
 food and drink 353
 hotels 562
 maps 379

Yunnan province (cont.)

Naxi people **399**

restaurants 582–3

Stone Forest **384–5**

Tiger Leaping Gorge 379, **400–401**

A Week in Guangxi and Yunnan 10, **14**

Yupi Feng (Wulingyuan) 271

Yusup Hazi Hajup 515

Z

Zen Buddhism *see* Chan Buddhism

Zhalong Nature Reserve 409, 443, **458**

Zhan Qian 60

Zhan Wang, *Torso* 46

Zhang Chunqiao 71

Zhang Daolin 374

Zhang Guotao 262

Zhang Huai, Prince 176

Zhang Ji 217

Zhang Qian, General 60, 470

Zhang Sanfeng 278, 279

Zhang Xiumei 415

Zhang Yimou 47, 145, 591

Zhangdi emperor 58

Zhangmu 551

Zhangye **494**

Zhangyiyuan Chazhuang (Beijing) 91

Zhanqiao Pier (Qingdao) 152

Zhao Kuangyin 64

Zhao Ling (Xi'an) 176

Zhao Mo, Nan Yue Tomb (Guangzhou) 306

Zhao Tuo 304, 306

Zhao Zhifeng 363

Zhaodi emperor 58

Zhaolin Park (Harbin) 456

Zhaoqing **308**

Zhaoxing 403, **427**

Zhaozhou Bridge 136

Zhaozong emperor 58

Zharu Temple, Jiuzhai Gou tour 376

Zhe Ta (Wuhu) 239

Zhejiang province **245**

hotels 560

map 245

restaurants 578

Zhen Wu emperor 278

Zheng Chenggong (Koxinga) 292, 293

Zheng He, Admiral 67, 284

Zhengde emperor 58, 59

Zhengding 136

Zhengtong emperor 58

Zhengyang Men (Beijing) 85, 90

Street-by-Street map 88

Zhengyici Theater (Beijing) 119

Zhengzhou **158**
air travel 615

Zhenhai Si (Wutai Shan) 142

Zhenjiang **224**

Zhenjiang Si (Huanglong Xi) 374

Zhenjue Si (Tiantai Shan) 253

Zhenning County 406

Zhenqing Guan (Kunming) 381

Zhenshan 405

Zhenyuan 414, **415**

Zhenzong emperor 59
Tai Shan 151

Zhepuo river 377

Zhezong emperor 59

Zhidi emperor 58

Zhijin Dong **407**

Zhiyi 253

Zhiyuan Si (Jiuhua Shan) 240

Zhong Qiu (Mid-Autumn Festival) 52

Zhongdian 14, **401**

Zhonghe Si (Dali) 393

Zhonghua Gate (Nanjing) **230–31**

Zhongshan Square (Dalian) 450

Zhongwei 464, 467, **480**

Zhongyuan (Hungry Ghost Festival) 52

Zhongyue Miao (Songshan) 164

Zhongzhou Island 298

Zhongzong emperor 58

Zhou dynasty 57, 59, 64

Zhou Enlai 73, **256**

Former Residence of Zhou Enlai (Shanghai) 200

Hongyuan Cun (Chongqing) 357

Jinghong 388

Lingyin Si (Hangzhou) 247

Long March 263

Monument to the People's

Zhou Enlai (cont.)

Heroes (Beijing) 89

Nanchang 256, 257

Nanjing 232

Peasant Movement Institute (Guangzhou) 304

Zunyi Conference 416

Zhou Shouqian 421

Zhoucheng 394

Zhouzhuang **222**

Zhu Da 257

Zhu De 72

Long March 263

Zhu De's Former Residence (Nanchang) 256

Zhu Jiang, Li river cruise 422

Zhu Yuanzhang, General
see Hongwu emperor

Zhuang people **430**

Dongson drums 429

Guizhou and Guangxi 403
Longsheng 426

Zhuang Qiao 348

Zhuang Song Festival 53

Zhuanshu calligraphy 33

Zhuge Liang 365, 395

Zhuhai 301

Zhuque Shan 453

Zhurong Gong (Heng Shan) 267

Zhusheng Si (Heng Shan) 267

Zigong 11, 15, **361**

Zixiao Gong (Wudang Shan) 278
Zoos

Beijing Zoo **105**

Harbin Northern Forest Zoo (Harbin) 457

Hong Kong Zoological & Botanical Gardens 13, **317**

Panda Breeding Center (Chengdu) **366**

see also Wildlife

Zoucheng 149

Zu Miao (Foshan) 308

Zunyi **416**

Long March 262

Zuo Jiang **430**

Acknowledgments

Dorling Kindersley would like to thank the following people whose contributions have made the preparation of this book possible.

Publishing Managers

Kate Poole, Scarlett O'Hara

Managing Editors

Vicki Ingle, Anna Streiffert

Publisher

Douglas Amrine

Production Co-ordinator

Linda Dare

Additional Contributors

Calum Macleod, Helen Glaister, Sarah Waldram, Martin Walters

Editorial Assistants

Katherine Haw, Alka Thakur

Cartographic Designer

Alok Pathak

Cartographic Proofreader

Tony Chambers

Artwork Reference

Other Shore Arts Inc.

Proofreader

Stewart Wild

Proofreader, Chinese

Jiewei Cheng

Indexer

Hilary Bird

Revisions and Relaunch Team

Emma Anacotee, Claire Baranowski, Sonal Bhatt, Tessa Bindloss, Gary Bowerman, Caroline Evans, Anna Freiburger, Lydia Halliday, Rose Hudson, Helena Iveson, Joanna James, Sumita Khatwani, Olivia King, Priya Kukadia, Maite Lantaron, David Leffmann, Neil Lockley, Shobhna Lyer, Carly Madden, Nicola Malone, Rosie Mayer, Peter Neville-Hadley, George Nimmo, Sangita Patel, Susie Peachey, Helen Peters, Marianne Petrou, Pollyanna Poulter, Sands Publishing Solutions, Supriya Sahai, Meredith Smith, Josh Summers, Craig Turp, Stuti Tiwari, Janis Utton, Conrad Van Dyk, Ros Walford, Catherine Waring, Christine Watts, Jamin York, Gao Xing, Gui Zhiping

DTIP

Shailesh Sharma, Vinod Harish

Digital Media Team

Nishi Bhasin, Manjari Rath Hooda, Pramod Pant, Mahesh Singh

Additional Photography

Max Alexander, Geoff Brightling, Chen Chao © Rough Guides/Tim Draper, Andy Crawford, Gadi Farfour, Steve Gorton, Colin Keates, Dave King, Stephen Lam, Ian O'Leary, Jane Miller, Hugh Thompson, Walia BPS, Paul Williams

Photography Permissions

The Publishers thank all the temples, monasteries, museums, hotels, restaurants, shops, and other sights for their assistance and kind permission to photograph their establishments.

Picture Credits

Key: a-above; b-below/bottom; c-centre; f-far; l-left; r-right; t-top.

Works of art have been reproduced with the permission of the following copyright holders:

Zhang San Feng from *The Explanation of Taijiquan Shi Yi* by Dong Yingjie scanned by Chip Ellis with thanks to Gordon Jolly 279cl.

123RF.com: bassphoto 193tl, 586bl; 8 1/2 Otto e Mezzo BOMBANA Shanghai: 576bl.

Agua: 572bc; Akg-Images: Archives CDA/St-Genes 260tr; Han Kan 214cl; Laurent Lacat 59tr; VISIOARS 468cl.

Alamy Images: age fotostock 16tr; Pat Behnke 80br, 601tr; Beijing Eastphoto stockimages Co.,Ltd 126; Best View Stock 162-3; Peter Bowater 39cr; Jon Bower 313bc; China Span /Keren Su 358cla; David Crausby 608c, 618cr; Nick Dawson 50bc; Eye Ubiquitous/Trevor Page 357cr; First Light/Ken Straiton 79tc; Robert Harding World Imagery 159cla, 17t; Dallas & John Heaton 188; John Henshall 15b; Johnny Henshall 15tr; Iain Masterton 25b, 611t; JTB Media Creation, Inc 380cl; Colin Monteath 514br; Jake Norton 607br; Panorama Stock 109br, 134br, 138bc, 166, 294-5, 468br; /Li Jiangshu 116br; /Ru Suichu 108br; /Zhang Zhenguang 212tr; Pixel 8 283bl; Prisma Bildagentur AG 16bl; Rochaphoto 511cra; David Sanger 470tr; Alex Segre 201bl; Snap 2000 Images/David Robinson 95c; Valery Rizzo 48bl; View Stock China 128cl, 159clb; Matthew Wellings 51b; Henry Westheim Photography 17br, 451tc; Ron Yue 52cr.

Amanfayun: 554cr, 560tl, 578r.

Ancient Art & Architecture Collection: 481bc.

Ardea.com: Mary Clay 29crb; David Dixon 26crb, 350cl; Kenneth W. Fink 28bl; Nick Gordon 29cl; Pascal Goetgheluck 417cla; Joanna Van Grulsen 26clb, 26cb; C Clem Haagener 28clb; Keith & Liz Laid 350cra; Tom & Pat Leeson 27br; Adrian Warren 367cra; M. Watson 28cb, 29br, 409br.

The Art Archive: Bibliotheque Nationale de Paris 59cra, 223cra, 470-71, /Marc Charmet 34tr; British Library 32br,

34bl, 63tr; British Museum/Eileen Tweedy 80tr; Freer Gallery of Art 44–5, 63cr, 286cla; Genius of China Exhibition 44tr, 57bc, 60bl, 470bl, 470cla; Musée Thomas Dobrée Nantes/Dagli Orti 69tl; National Palace Museum of Taiwan 36cl; Palace Museum Beijing 438–9; Private Collection Paris/Dagli Orti 141bc; School of Oriental & African Studies/Ellen Tweedy 428bl; William Sewell 269tr.

Steven Baigel: 537br.

Benoy Behl: 527bc.

Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, Rome: 238cl.

Bibliothèque Nationale de France, Paris: 32tr, 42ca.

Bookworm, Chengdu: 582t;

www.bridgeman.co.uk: 36cr, 37cra, 37cl, 42tr, 42cl, 43clb, 49tr, 268tr, 440bl, 68crb, 439bl; Bibliothèque des Arts Décoratifs, Paris 439br; Bibliothèque Municipal, Poitiers 215tr; Bibliothèque Nationale Paris 4tr, 8–9, 34cl, 37tr, 68cb, 149br, 477cb; British Museum 491br; Giraudon 60br; James Gray (1757–1815) 439cr; Miss E. M. Gregson 351br; Hermitage 499cb; Illustrated London News 440cl; National Palace Museum, Taipei, Taiwan 477cra; Private Collection 215tl, 268cl; Société Asiatique, Collège de France, Paris 299cla; V & A Museum 438bl; Yu Zhiding (1647–p.1709) *The Depiction of the Poet Wang Yuang* (1634–1711) watercolor 184tr (d).

British Library, London: 63tl. © **The British Museum:** 35tr, 44br, 44cb, 44clb, 45tr, 45bc, 45bl, 45br, 45cra, 62–3, 526bc.

China Stock: 59bl, 65c, 65bl, 70bl, 71cra, 262br, 300, 422br; Liu Liquan 5tr, 42cb, 42br, 359tl, 359cra, 409cra, 420cla; Liu Xiaoyang 274ca.

Chinapix: 192tr; Zhang Chaoyin 538cl, 538bc.

China Span: Keren Su 185cl, 223cl.

Christian MANGE: 584b.

Corbis: 69c, 72bl, 73tc, 92cla, 107tl; Peter Adams/JAI 21b; Archivio Iconografico, S.A. 439cra; Art on File 13cl; AStock 232tr; Asian Art & Archaeology Inc. 58cb, 60ca, 62bl, 64bc, 64tc, 470crb; Tiziana and Gianni Baldiszone 35cra, 550tc; Dave Bartruff 268bl, 565br, 568cla; Bettman 43ca, 71tl, 71br, 72tl, 165bl, 203br, 256bc, 263tl, 303crb, 303ca, 383br, 452br; Bohemian Nomad Picturemakers 565tl; Bohemian Nomad Picturemakers/Kevin R Morris 223crb; Burstein Collection 36br, 56, 59clb, 61tc, 66bl, 214cb, 499br; China features 548bl, Li Gang 25tr; Christie's Images 58tr; ChromoSohm INC/Joseph Sohm 112br; Pierre Colombel 491crb, 500tr, 500cla, 500cra, 500clb, 500bl, 500crb, 500br, 501tl, 501cla, 501clb, 501bl; Dean Conger 141cra, 249br, 511cl, 569c; The Cover Story 469tl; Design Pics/Keith Levit 552–3; Ric Ergenbright 223bl; Macduff Everton 73bl, 73cr; Eye Ubiquitous/Bennett Dean 401tr, 544bl; Julia Waterlow 34br, 468clb; Michele Falzone/JAI 14bc; Free Agents Limited 42tr, 441cra; Christel Gerstenberg 214clb; Philip Gould 286tr; Franck Guizoui/Hemis 132–3; Peter Guttman 517tl, 517cra; Robert Harding World Imagery 14tr, Jochen Schlenker 208; Historical Picture Archive 299cl, 439tr; Angelo Hornak 499bl; Dave G. Houser 49bl; Hulton Collection 249bl, 440cla, 547tr; Hanan Isachar 30b; Robbie Jack 47bl; Wolfgang Kaehler 139bl, 160tr, 440tr, 440br, 440–41c,

441crb; Kelly–Mooney Photography 103tc; Christine Kolisch 536tr; Earl & Nazima Kowall 31tr, 39tl, 51tl, 460br, 461cr, 461cl, 461crb, 461br, 461bl, 519cl, 468bl, 569bc; Daniel Lainé 399crb; Charles & Josette Lenars 65tr, 151tl; Paul W. Lieberhardt 413bl; Liu Liquan 22tc, 31br, 115tr, 199clb, 311tl, 359clb, 469bl; Chris Lisle 537cr; Craig Lovell 529br, 539br, 544tr; Ludovic Maisant 399clb; Lawrence Manning 269bl; Tom Nebbia 418bc; Papilio/John R. Jones 508tl; Louie Psihoyos 459bl; Carl & Ann Purcell 30tr, 37crb, 509br; Jose Fuste Raga 12br; Red link, 432–3, /Mu Xiang Bin 195b; Reuters 38bl, 48br, 53tc, 275br, 564br, 614br; Roger Ressmeyer 100cr; David Samuel Robbins 539bl; Galen Rowell 518tr, 528cla, 528–9, 528bc, 529cr, 537tc; Royal Ontario Museum 44bl, 45crb, 62ca, 66t, 260br, 261tl, 417cr; Royalty–Free 49bc; Sean Sexton Collection 203bl; Stapleton Collection 81tr; 30clb, 48cl, 241cla, 241br, 242cla, 243br, 274br, 362br, 412br, 412clb, 413br, 413tl, 413cr, 419tl, 468–9, 510cl, 514cl; Vince Streato 429bl; Keren Su 402, 448–9; Swim Ink 269tl; Wen Tao 542–3; Robert van der Hilst 187cl, 499cla; Viewstock/HeZhiFong 276–7; Reza Webistan 519br; Nevada Weir 469cr, 513tl; Nick Wheeler 238br; Janet Wishnetsky 471br; Alison Wright 495clb, 518br; Michael S. Yamashita 185br, 215crb, 417br; Liang Zhuoming 508b; Xinhua Photo 459br.

CPA Media: 68t, 70tr, 203cl, 438cl, 439tl; David Henley 231cra, 235crb; Meng Qingbiao/Chinese Government (1961) 71crb; Oliver Hagraeve 303cl; Oliver Hagraeve/Bibliothèque Nationale Paris 66clb.

Dreamstime.com: Addingwater 386–7; Steve Allen 11tl, 520–21; Bjmcse 2–3; Cao Hai 23; Chuyu 178–9; Cupertino 193tl, Glowonconcept 13tr; Gringos4; Hupeng 46tr; Yiu Tung Lee 312; Liangwm 462–3; Lonestarforever 250–1; Andres Garcia Martin 182b; Jun Mu 290; Zhang Nan 344–5; Leung Cho Pan 280–1; William Perry 442; Pindiath100 13br; Pixattitude 192bl, 201bl; Shupian 20; Starfield 188; Tyhoonski 182b; Wangkun Jia 233cl; Wingkit 354; Zhaojiankang 444; Xi Zhang 12tl, 74–5; Zhudifeng 195b; Xfdly3 410–11;

DK Images: British Museum 43tl, 44cla, 225bl, /David Gower 214tr, /Alan Hills 225clb, 225cr, 238cra; Glasgow Museum/Ellen Howdon 527cra; The Jazz Club 571br; Judith Miller Archive 260bl, /Sloan's 260bl, 491bl; courtesy National Maritime Museum/David Spence 155bc, /James Stevenson 43crb; courtesy of Pitt Rivers Museum/ Geoff Brightling 42tl; private collection 519tc; courtesy of Science Museum 43bl, /Dave King 43bc; Yorkshire Museum/Harry Taylor 459crb.

Tim Draper: 427br.

Ray Dunning: 225c.

Fotoe: 36tr, 303cb; A Chun 358br; An Ge 27cr; Wang Yizhong 389clb; Wu Dongjun 412–3; Yang Xingbin 382tl; Ying Ge 358cra; Yu Zhi Xin 153bc; Zhang Weiqing 36bl; **Fotolia:** choikh 324–5; Gary 378.

Getty Images: 619tl; AFP 48–9; Walter Bibikow 264; Luis Castaneda Inc. 84; Feargus Cooney/Lonely Planet Images 294–5; Jeff Greenberg 24t; HAIBO BI 482; Robert

Harding tr 472; Image Bank/Angelo Cavalli 612bl; Christian Kober/AWL Images 166; MelindaChan 492-3; National Geographic 58ca, /Louis Mazzatenta 459cra; Panorama Media 596-7; Photographer's Choice/John Warden 113tl; Photographer's Choice/Nikolay Zurek 269cl; David Silverman 369cr; Travel Ink 237tl; Berthold Trenkel 395tl; Feng Wei Photography 506; Huang Xin 300.

Grand Lisboa: 581tr; **Sally & Richard Greenhill:** S.A.C.U. 70cl, 71tr, 70br.

Hainan Airlines: 614cl;

Nigel Hicks: 174-5, 284bc; 350clb, 350crb, 350bl, 350br, 377tc, 458br, 508c, 509tl, 510tr, 510bl, 512tl.

Hilton Worldwide: 557c, 574bl.

Hong Kong Tourism Board: 317tr, 326br, 331tc.

Hotel ICON: 580br.

Imagine China: 72crb, 115br, 128bl, 268-9;

Adrian Bradshaw 201cla, 459cla; Chen Shuyi 101br; Chen Yun 495br; CNS 81cr; Fan Chongzhi 287tl, 287tr, 287cra; Fang Zhonglin 198clb; Gong Weizhi 93cr; Guangyao 184cr; Hu Qingming 159br; Huang Jinguo 185cr; Huang Shaoyi 286br; Huang Yizhu 362cla; Jia Guorong 225crb; Jiang Chao 39cra; Jiang Guohong 46br; Jiang Ren 165cra; Jin Baoyuan 185tr; Kan Kan 36cb; Lang Congliu 235tc; Li Jiansong 35br; Li Wei 260cla, 260crb, 287br; Liang Weijie 446tl, 446b; Lin Weijian 184bl, 192cl, 192cr; Ling Long 52br; Liu Jianming 382br; Liu ling 259br; Liu Lique 134tl, 270cl, 270bl, 360cla; Liu Quanju 52tl; Liu Zhaoxing 478br, 478t; Long Hai 80bc, 81bcr, 195cra, 225br; Luoxiaoyun 460tl; Lu Baohe 299bc; Ma Kang 515tl, 516tr; Olivia Savoure 516cla, 517br, 526tr; Shen Yu 184br, 204br, 610br; Shui Xiaojie 278br, 418car; Tang Jianwei 278tl; Wang Jianxin 81bcl, 366tl; Wang Mengxiang 430cr, 431br; Wei Hui 47cr; Wu Changqing 110tr, 303cla; Wu Hong 47br, 91br; Xiong Yijun 29cr; Xu Ruikang 185tc; Yan Shi 151bc; Yang Xi 234cl, 287cr; Yin Zi 32-3; Yuan Yanwu 38-9; Yue Sheng 529tl; Zeng Yun 286clb; Zhan Xiadong 529tr; Zhang Fenquan 447br; Zhang Guosheng 97bl; Zhang Jie 303bl; Zhang Xing 287br; Zhang Xinmin_ Xingjiang 509c, 512b, 509br; Zhang Yongzhe 215br; Zhou Kang 196tr; Zhu Xuesong 271tl, 271cr, 271br; Zhuge Ming 453bl, 528tr; Zou Xian 38br; Zuo Shan 389br.

Institute of History & Philology: Academia Sinica 32clb.

Jia Shanghai: 559tr.

Kobal Collection: Columbia 47tr; Tomson films 47tl.
www.kungfumagazine.com 2005: 165crb, 165clb.

David Leffman: 430tl.

Library of Congress, Washington, D.C.: 399bl.

Linden Centre, Dali: 555br, 562br.

Magnum: Rene Burri 262tr.

Mary Evans Picture Library: 39br, 495crb, 495cr; Kieou King 238c.

Nasa: 159cra.

National Trust Photographic Library: John Hammond 299cr.

Nature Picture Library: Bernard Castelein 26crb; G & H

Denzau 27cl, 466b; Elio Delia Ferrera 409bl; Martha Holmes 28cl; Pete Oxford 26bc, 29bl; David Pike 409cla; Jose B. Ruiz 28crb, 28br; Warwick Sloss 28crb; Lynn Stone 26cra, 26bl; Solvin Zankl 29clb; Xi Zhinong 409crb.

Natural Visions: Heather Angel 351cb, 367cb.

National Geographic Image Collection: Doug Stern 174bc; Joseph Rock 396bc.

NHPA: 26cla; James Warwick 367br.

N's Kitchen, Lijiang: 583br.

OSF/Photolibary.com: 27bl; Deni Bown 27clb; Irvine Cushing 27cb; Robert A. Lubeck 29crb; George Reszeter 29clb; Konrad Wothe 27clb.

Panos Pictures: 33cra.

The Peak: 319cr, 319tl.

Marianne Petrou: 526cl.

Photo12.Com: OIPS 115cl, 117cl; Panorama Stock 28cr, 104bl, 111tl, 112cl, 431t, 438br; Panorama Stock/Zhao Guangtian 470clb.

Photolibary.com: Jiangshu Li 31cr; James Montgomery 14; Keren Su 49c, 50cl; Ming Li 430bl; Panorama 469br; Xin Li 469tr.

Popperfoto.com: 70-1c, 203cra, 203cb.

Powerstock: Digital Vision Royalty Free 286-7.

By permission of **The Random House Group Ltd:** 269br.

Red Gate Gallery: 101tl.

The Red Mansion Ltd: Cang Xin "The Unification of Heaven and Men (Ice)" 46cla; Fang Lijun "Series 2 no 2" 46-7; Zhan Wang "Torso" 46clb.

Reuters: 359br; Jason Lee 117tr.

Robert Harding Picture Library: 205tr, 517bl; Nigel Blythe 516bc; Panorama Stock 67tc; A.C. Waltham 528bl.

Science & Society Picture Library: 33bl.

Shaanxi History Museum: 62br, 62clb, 172br, 173cra, 173crb.

Shanghai Museum: 196tl, 196cla, 196c, 196clb, 197cl, 197cr, 197tc.

Shangri-La International Hotel Management Ltd.: 554bl, 556tr, 556bl, 558br, 575tl, 577br, 579br, 580tl.

Silk Road Lodges: 563tr;

Sinopix Photo Agency: Lou Linwei 48tr, 174br.

Superstock: Stock Connection 220-1; TAO Images 472, 530; Yoshio Tomii 372-3.

The Swatch Art Peace Hotel: 193cla.

Temple Restaurant Beijing: 573tr.

Terracotta Army Museum: 174clb, 175tl, 175cra, 175br, 175cr.

Terra Galleria Photography: Quang Tuan Luong 368tr, 368cr, 369br, 369tc, 370tr.

Thames & Hudson Ltd: Photo Eileen Tweedy 34-5.

Tibet Images: Neville Hopwood 526c.

Tibet Heritage Fund: Andre Alexander 535tl; Yutaka Hirako 535cra.

Topfoto.co.uk: 262cla, 262clb; British Museum 37bc, 69bl; Sven Hedin Foundation 499cra; The Museum of East Asian Art/HIP 67cb.

The Upper House: 555tl, 561br.

Courtesy of **The Trustees of the V&A**: 215bc, 470br; Ian Thomas 214–5, 215cl.

The Wellcome Institute Library, London: 38cl.

Werner Forman Archive: 61cb; Forest of Stelae Museum, Xi'an 471cr; P'yongyang Gallery, North Korea 37cl; Peking Palace Museum 64crb; Private Collection 59br, 67c, 69br; Private Collection/Sotheby's 1986 63br; Tanzania National Museum 471bl; Victoria & Albert Museum 59br; Yang-Tzu-Shaw 60crb.

Wordo Kitchen: 585t.

Brian K.h. Yim: 327cl.

Front Endpaper - Alamy Images: Beijing Eastphoto stockimages Co.,Ltd Rtc; **Corbis**: Robert Harding World Imagery/Jochen Schlenker Lftl; Keren Su Lfbl; **Dreamstime.com**: Steve Allen Ltl; Gringos4 Rcr; Yiu Tung Lee Lbr; Jun Mu Rbr; William Perry Rtl; Starfield Lc; Wingkit Lbl; Zhaojiankang Lcl; **Fotolia**: Gary Lbc; **Getty Images**: AWL Images/Christian Kober Rtr; Walter Bibikow Lclb; HAIBO Bl Lcr; Luis Castaneda Inc. Rcl; Feng Wei Photography Ltc; Huang Xin Rcrb; **Superstock**: TAO Images Ltr.

Jacket Front and Spine - Getty Images: Keren Su

All other images © Dorling Kindersley. For further information see: www.dkimages.com

Special Editions of DK Travel Guides

DK Travel Guides can be purchased in bulk quantities at discounted prices for use in promotions or as premiums. We are also able to offer special editions and personalized jackets, corporate imprints, and excerpts from all of our books, tailored specifically to meet your own needs.

To find out more, please contact:
(in the United States) **SpecialSales@dk.com**
(in the UK) **travelspecialsales@uk.dk.com**
(in Canada) DK Special Sales at **general@tourmaline.ca**
(in Australia) **business.development@pearson.com.au**

Glossary

Architecture

cheng city; also means city wall
chorten or stupa, a Buddhist tower containing sacred objects
dian pavilion
dougong elaborate bracket attaching column to beam
ge storied pavilion
gompā Tibetan monastery
gong palace; usually denotes a Daoist temple
gulou drum tower
hutong alleyway
ling tomb
lou storied building
men city gate
miao temple, usually Confucian
mu tomb
nanmu cedar with much-valued straight trunk used for columns
paifang ornamental gateway
pailou ornamental gateway
qiao bridge
si temple, usually Buddhist
siheyuan courtyard house
Spirit Tower pavilion at entrance to an imperial tomb
Spirit Way straight road leading to an imperial tomb and lined with guardian statues
stele free-standing stone slab or pillar engraved with text
stupa a Buddhist tower containing sacred objects
ta pagoda
tang hall
yuan garden
zhanglou bell tower

Culture

celadon pottery with greenish glaze
cloisonné enamelling, in which the enamel is raised and separated by fine pieces of wire
erhu two-stringed fiddle
huaju spoken theater
jingju Beijing Opera
lacquer wood glazed with sap from the lac tree which is carved before completely dry (see p298)
lusheng bamboo instrument with numerous pipes
model opera operas based on a proletarian heroic model, promoted by Mao's wife Jiang Qing during the Cultural Revolution
pipa lute-like instrument
porcelain translucent ceramic ware made from clay containing kaolin and feldspar, and fired at high temperatures (see p260)
sancai tri-glazed pottery, prevalent during Tang dynasty

saxian three-stringed lute
sheng modern instrument based on the *lusheng* with 17 to 37 pipes
suona double-reeded wind instrument, similar to an oboe
taotie pattern on Shang bronze; possibly representing a mythical man-eating beast
xiao bamboo flute
xun rounded clay wind instrument
zheng many-stringed zither

History & Politics

cadre Communist party bureaucrat
canton a small territory where foreign traders were required to re-side during 18th and 19th century
Communist Party ruling party in China since 1949
concession an area of land ceded to a foreign government
Cultural Revolution radical attempt to socialize China's culture, 1966–76 (see pp70–71)
Gang of Four high-profile group responsible for some of the Cultural Revolution's worst excesses (see p71)
Great Leap Forward Mao's disastrous policy to force the collectivism of agriculture (1958–60), resulting in wide-spread famine
Kuomintang (KMT) founded by Sun Yat Sen; fought the Communists for 25 years under Chiang Kai Shek; moved to Taiwan where it is still a major party
Legalism fascistic political philosophy dominant during the Qin dynasty based on the idea that man is undisciplined and must be controlled through fear
Little Red Book Mao's sayings compiled by Lin Biao, head of the PLA, in 1966 as a treatise for Red Guards and the PLA
Long March Epic tactical retreat of the Communist Party from Nationalist forces in 1935 (see p262)
Nationalist Party the Kuomintang
People's Liberation Army (PLA) Communist military forces
Red Guard unruly movement approved by Mao during the Cultural Revolution to weed out counter-revolutionaries and destroy evidence of the past
soviet regional Communist base, e.g. Jiangxi Soviet
Special Administrative Region (SAR) Regions, such as Hong Kong and Macau, provided with a high degree of autonomy and a capitalist economy

Special Economic Zone (SEZ)

areas, such as Shenzhen, set aside in the 1980s for a capitalist test of a freer economy and to attract foreign investment
triad a secret society, especially one involved in organized crime

Natural Features

chi lake or pool
dao island
dong cave
feng peak
gongyuan park
gou gully
hai sea
haitan beach
he river
hu lake
jiang river
karst limestone landscape with irregular peaks, underground streams, caves, and sinkholes (see pp418–9)
pubu waterfall
shan mountain
shui water
shuiku reservoir
tan pool
xi stream
xia gorge

Religion & Philosophy

A-Ma Macau's Goddess of the Sea; see Tianhou
Amitabha Buddha Buddha of boundless light
Analekts (*Lunyu*) major work compiled by Confucius's followers of his sayings
arhat or luohan; one of the Buddha's 18 disciples
Avalokitesvara bodhisattva of compassion
bagua eight trigrams ranged around a *yin-yang* symbol; a codification of *qi* (see pp36–7)
Bodhidharma Indian monk who traveled to China in the 6th century and started the Chan (Zen) sect of Buddhism
bodhisattva Buddhist deities who have postponed nirvana to help others
Bon indigenous animistic faith of Tibet (see p526)
Buddha the awakened one, originally the Indian Gautama Buddha; in Chinese and Tibetan schools the Buddha has numerous forms (see pp36, 491, 526–7)
Buddhism religion based on the teachings of the 6th-century BC Indian teacher Gautama Buddha

Chan School of Buddhism spread by Bodhidharma; popular in Japan as Zen Buddhism

Chenresig Tibetan name for bodhisattva Avalokitesvara

Confucius or Kong Fuzi (551–479 BC); developed the philosophy of Confucianism, which was then spread by his followers
Confucianism dominant philosophy prescribing a structured society based on filial relationships (see p36)

Dafo Great Buddha

Damo Chinese name for Bodhidharma

Dao in Daoism the way that permeates reality; a single cosmic force

Daode Jing Daoist *The Way and Power Classic* attributed to Laozi

Daoism philosophy expounding non-action and living in harmony with the Dao or Way; became a pantheistic religion (see p37)

dharmapala protector deities of Tibetan Buddhism

Dipamkara in Tibetan Buddhism, the past Buddha

Eight Immortals Daoist adepts each with a superhuman power
feng shui a form of geomancy that determines the flow of *qi* through a physical place (see p37)

fo a Buddha in Putonghua

Gelugpa Most powerful Tibetan Buddhist sect, headed by the Dalai Lama; also called the Yellow Hat sect

Guanyin bodhisattva of compassion in Chinese Buddhism

Guardian Kings four protective deities of the cardinal directions; often stationed at the entrance of a temple

Guru Rinpoche spreader of Buddhism through Tibet

Jampa the future or Maitreya Buddha in the Tibetan pantheon

Jampalyang bodhisattva of wisdom in Tibetan Buddhism

Jowo Sakyamuni in Tibetan Buddhism, the present Buddha

karma in Buddhism, the merit accrued by a person's actions, determining their destiny

kora circuits of holy sites made by Tibetan Buddhists to accrue merit

Laozi first Daoist who may have lived during the 6th century BC and produced the *Daode Jing*

Laughing Buddha Milefo, the future Buddha

luohan or arhat; one of the Buddha's 18 disciples

Lunyu Confucian writings, the *Analects*

Mahayana, Greater Vehicle, dominant form of Buddhism in China and Japan with ritual and devotional practices, and worship of bodhisattvas

Maitreya the future Buddha; the Buddha that has yet to come

mandala an esoteric diagram of circles and squares around a central focal point used as a meditation aid and forming an important part of Tibetan Buddhist iconography

Manjusri bodhisattva of wisdom

Marmedze the past or Gautama Buddha

Mazu Goddess of the Sea; see Tianhou

Milefo the future or Maitreya Buddha represented as the plump Laughing Buddha

nirvana in Buddhism, having broken from the cycle of rebirth; attained via the extinction of desire and individual consciousness

Nyingma oldest Tibetan Buddhist sect founded by Guru Rinpoche

Padmasambhava Guru Rinpoche

Puxian bodhisattva of universal benevolence; rides an elephant

qi concept of vital force and cosmic energy (see pp38–9)

Sakyamuni the past Buddha; Gautama Buddha

sutra sacred Buddhist writing; a discourse of the Buddha

thangka Buddhist painting on silk, originally used as objects of meditation and portable teaching tools

Theravada (Hinayana, Lesser Vehicle) school of Buddhism practiced in Southeast Asia and India emphasizing the importance of an ascetic way of life

Tianhou Daoist Empress of Heaven and Goddess of the Sea, equal to Buddhist Guanyin (see p155)

Tinhau Tianhou in Hong Kong; see Tianhou

trigram one of the eight sets of three broken (*yin*) and unbroken (*yang*) lines combined in pairs to make hexagrams for divination using the *Yijing*

Wenshu bodhisattva of wisdom
yang masculine, sun, positive; interacts with the complementary opposing force of *yin*

Yijing classic ancient text, *The Book of Changes*, made up of oracles consulted for divination; source of Daoist and Confucian philosophies (see p39)

yin feminine, moon, negative; interacts with the complementary opposing force of *yang*

Miscellaneous

bei north

binguan tourist hotel

bowuguan museum

CAAC Civil Aviation Administration Authority

canting restaurant

Cantonese dialect of Chinese spoken in the south

cheongsam a tight-fitting dress with a high collar and slit skirt

CITS China International Travel Service; organization for international tourists, whose main interest is selling tours and tickets

CTS China Travel Service; organization similar to CITS

cun village

da big

dadao wide street or boulevard

dajie avenue (literally "big road")

dong east

fandian hotel or restaurant

fen smallest denomination; there are 100 *fen* to a *yuan*

ger round tent used by nomads of the steppe; a yurt

jiao there are 10 *fen* to one *jiao*; and 10 *jiao* to one *yuan*; also called *mao*

jie street

jinguan hotel

kuai colloquial word for *yuan*

laowai foreigner

lokbar traditional heavy wool Tibetan robe

lu road

mahjong popular rummy-like game played with small tiles

mao colloquial term for *jiao*

nan south

Pinyin a standardized system for transliterating Chinese characters into the roman alphabet

PSB Public Security Bureau; branch of the police force that deals with foreigners

PRC People's Republic of China

Putonghua Mandarin; the form of Chinese that is the official language of China

qigong martial art concentrating on the control of breath and *qi*

renminbi currency; literally "the people's money"

sheng province

shi city or municipality

tai ji quan (supreme ultimate fist) martial art made up of slow, flowing movements (see p279)

xi west

yuan China's currency; divided into 10 *jiao* and 100 *fen*; also called *kuai*

zhong middle

Phrase Book

The Chinese language belongs to the Sino-Tibetan family of languages and uses characters which are ideographic – a symbol is used to represent an idea or an object. Mandarin Chinese, known as Putonghua in mainland China, is fairly straightforward as each character is monosyllabic. Traditionally, Chinese is written

in vertical columns from top right to bottom left, however the Western style is widely used. There are several romanization systems; the Pinyin system used here is the official system in mainland China. This phrase book gives the English word or phrase, followed by the Chinese script, then the Pinyin for pronunciation.

Guidelines for Pronunciation

Pronounce vowels as in these English words:

a	as in "father"
e	as in "lurch"
i	as in "see"
o	as in "solid"
u	as in "pooh"
ü	as the French u or German ü (place your lips to say oo and try to say ee)

Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. As a rough guide, pronounce the following consonants as in these English words:

c	as ts in "hats"
q	as ch in "cheat"
x	as sh in "sheet"
z	as ds in "heads"
zh	as j in "Joe"

Mandarin Chinese is a tonal language with four tones, represented in Pinyin by one of the following marks ˉ ˊ ˋ ˋ above each vowel – the symbol shows whether the tone is flat, rising, falling and rising, or falling. The Chinese characters do not convey this information: tones are learnt when the character is learnt. Teaching tones is beyond the scope of this small phrasebook, but a language course book with a cassette or CD will help those who wish to take the language further.

Dialects

There are many Chinese dialects in use. It is hard to guess exactly how many, but they can be roughly classified into one of seven large groups (Mandarin, Cantonese, Hakka, Hui etc.), each group containing a large number of more minor dialects. Although all these dialects are quite different – Cantonese uses six tones instead of four – Mandarin or Putonghua, which is mainly based on the Beijing dialect, is the official language. Despite these differences all Chinese people are more or less able to use the same formal written language so they can understand each other's writing, if not each other's speech.

In an Emergency

Help!	请帮忙!	Qing bangmang
Stop!	停止!	Ting zhu
Call a doctor!	叫医生!	Jiao yisheng
Call an ambulance!	叫救护车!	Jiao jiuheche
Call the police!	叫警察!	Jiao jingcha
Fire!	火!	Huo
Where is the hospital/police station?	医院/警察局在哪里?	Yiyuan/jingcha fenju zai nali?

Communication Essentials

Hello	你好	Ni hao
Goodbye	再见	Zaijian
Yes/no	是/不是	shi/bushi
... not ...	不是	bushi
I'm from...	我是...人	Wo shi ... ren
I understand	我明白	Wo mingbai
I don't know	我不知道	Wo bu zhidao
Thank you	谢谢你	Xiexie ni
Thank you very much	多谢	Duo xie
Thanks (casual)	谢谢	Xiexie
You're welcome	不用谢	Bu yong xie
No, thank you	不，谢谢	Bu, xiexie ni
Please (offering)	请	Qing
Please (asking)	请问	Qing wen
I don't understand	我不明白	Wo bu mingbai
Do you speak English?	你会讲英语吗?	Ni hui jiang yingyu ma?
I can't speak Chinese	我不会讲汉语	Wo buhui jiang hanyu
Please speak more slowly	请讲得慢一点	Qing jiang man yidian
Sorry/Excuse me!	抱歉，对不起	Baoqian/duibuqi
Could you help me please? (not emergency)	你能帮助我吗?	Ni neng bang zhu wo ma?

Useful Phrases

My name is	我叫 ...	Wo jiao ...
How do you do, pleased to meet you	你好，很高兴见到你。	Ni hao, hen gaoxing jiandao ni
How are you?	你好吗?	Ni hao ma?
Good morning	早上好	Zaoshang hao
Good afternoon/ good day	下午好 你好	Xiawu hao/ Ni hao
Good evening	晚上好	Wanshang hao
Good night	晚安	Wan an
Goodbye	再见	Zaijian
Take care	保重	Bao zhong
Keep well (casual)	注意身体	Zhuyi shenti
The same to you	你也是	Ni yeshi
What is (this)?	(这)是什么?	(zhe) shi shenme?
How do you use this?	你怎样用这个东西?	Ni zenyang yong zhege dongxi?
Could I possibly have ...? (very polite)	能不能请你给我 ...?	Neng buneng qing ni gei wo ...?
Is there ... here?	这儿有 ... 吗?	Zhe'er you ... ma?

Where can I get ...?	我在哪里可以得到 ...?	Wo zai na li keyi de dao ...?
How much is it?	它要多少钱?	Ta yao duoshao qian?
What time is ...?	... 什么时间?	... shenme shijian
Cheers! (toast)	干杯	Ganbei
Where is the restroom/toilet?	卫生间 / 洗手间在哪里?	Weishengjian/Xishoujian zai nali?
Here's my business card.	这是我的名片。	Zhe shi wo de mingpian.

Useful Words

I	我	wo
woman	女人	nüren
man	男人	nanren
wife	妻子	qizi
husband	丈夫	zhangfu
daughter	女儿	nü'er
son	儿子	er'zi
child	小孩	xiaohai
children	儿童	ertong
businessman/	商人 / 女商人	shangren/
woman		nüshangren
student	学生	xuesheng
Mr./Mrs./Ms. ...	先生 / 太太 / 女士	xiansheng/taitai/ nǚshi
big/small	大 / 小	da/xiao
hot/cold	热 / 凉	re/liang
cold (to touch)	冷	leng
warm	暖	nuan
good/not good/	好 / 不好 /	hao/buhao/
bad	坏	huai
enough	够了	goule
free (no charge)	免费	mianfei
here	这里	zheli
there	那里	nali
this	这个	zhege
that (nearby)	那个	na
that (far away)	那个	nage
what?	什么?	Shenme?
when?	什么时候?	Shenme shihou?
why?	为什么?	Wei shenme?
where?	在哪里?	Zai nali?
who?	谁?	Shui?
which way?	哪个方向?	Nage fangxiang?

Signs

open	开	kai
closed	关	guan
entrance	入口	rukou
exit	出口	chukou
danger	危险	weixian
emergency exit	安全门	anquanmen
information	信息	xinxi
restroom/toilet	卫生间 / 洗手间	Weishengjian/
(men) (women)	(男士) (女士)	Xishoujian/ (nanshi) (nushi)
occupied	占用	zhanyong
free (vacant)	空闲	kongxian
men	男士	nanshi
women	女士	nushi

Money

Could you change this into? please.	请你把它换成 ... 好吗?	Qing ni ba ta huancheng ... hao ma?
I'd like to cash these travelers' checks.	我想把旅行支票换成现金。	Wo xiang ba lüxing zhipiao huancheng xianjin.
Do you take credit cards/travelers' checks?	你收信用卡 / 旅行支票吗?	Ni shou xinyongka/ lüxing zhipiao ma?
bank	银行	yinhang

cash	现金	xianjin
credit card	信用卡	xinyongka
currency	外汇兑换处	waihui
exchange office		duihuanchu
dollars	美元	meiyuan
pounds	英镑	yingbang
yuan	元	yuan

Keeping in Touch

Where is a telephone?	电话在哪里?	Dianhua zai nali?
May I use your phone?	我可以用你的电话吗?	Wo keyi yong nide dianhua ma?
Mobile phone	手机	shouji
sim card	卡	sim ka
Hello, this is ...	你好, 我是 ...	Nihao, wo shi
I'd like to make an international call	我想打个国际长途电话。	Wo xiang da ge guoji changtu dianhua.
Where can I get online?	我可以在哪里上网?	Wo keyi zai nali shangwang?
airmail	航空	hangkong
e-mail	电子邮件	dianzi youjian
fax	传真	chuanzhen
internet	互联网	hulianwang
postcard	明信片	mingxinpian
post office	邮局	youju
stamp	邮票	youpiao
telephone booth	电话亭	dianhua ting
telephone card	电话卡	dianhua ka

Shopping

Where can I buy ...?	我可以在哪里买到 ...?	Wo keyi zai nali maida ...?
How much does this cost?	这要多少钱?	Zhe yao duoshao qian?
Too much!	太贵了!	Tai gui le!
I'm just looking.	我只是看看。	Wo zhishi kankan.
Do you have ...?	你有 ... 吗?	Ni you ... ma?
May I try this on?	我可以试穿吗?	Wo keyi shi chuan ma?
My size?	我的尺寸?	Wo de chichen?
Please show me that.	请给我看看那个。	Qing gei wo kankan na ge.
Does it come in other colors?	有没有其它颜色?	You meiyou qita yanse?
black	黑色	heise
blue	蓝色	lanse
brown	棕色	zongse
green	绿色	luse
purple	紫色	zise
red	红色	hongse
white	白色	baise
yellow	黄色	huangse
cheap/expensive	便宜 / 贵	pianyi/gui
audio equipment	音响设备	yinxiang shebei
bookstore	书店	shudian
boutique	时装商店	shizhuangshang-dian
clothes	衣服	yifu
department store	百货商店	baihuo shangdian
electrical store	电器商店	dianqi shangdian
fish market	鱼市	yu shi
folk crafts	民间工艺品	minjian gongyipin
ladies' wear	女士服装	nushi fuzhuang
local specialty	地方特产	difang techan
market	市场	shichang
men's wear	男士服装	nanshi fuzhuang
newsstand	报摊	baotan
pharmacist	药剂师	yaojishi
picture postcard	图片明信片	tupian mingxinpian
sale	廉价出售	lianjiachushou
souvenir shop	纪念品店	jiniannpin dian
supermarket	超市	chaoshi
travel agent	旅行社	lüxing she

Sightseeing

Where is ...?	... 在哪里?	... zai nali?
How do I get to ...?	我怎么到 ...?	Wo zenme dao ...?
Is it far?	远不远?	Yuan bu yuan?
art gallery	美术馆	meishu guan
reservations desk	订票台	dingpiao tai
bridge	桥	qiao
city	城市	chengshi
city center	市中心	shi zhongxin
free entry	免费入场	mianfei ruchang
gardens	花园	huayuan
hot spring	温泉	wen quan
tourist information office	旅游信息处	luyou xinxi chu
island	岛	dao
monastery	寺院	siyuan
mountain	山	shan
museum	博物馆	bowuguan
palace	宫殿	gongdian
park	公园	gongyuan
port	港口	gangkou
river	江、河	jiang, he
ruins	废墟	feixu
shopping area	购物区	gouwu qu
shrine	神殿	shendian
street	街	jie
temple	寺庙	si/miao
tour, travel	旅行	luxing
town	镇	zhen
village	村	cun
province/county	省 / 县	sheng/xian
zoo	动物园	dongwuyuan
north	北	bei
south	南	nan
east	东	dong
west	西	xi
left/right	左 / 右	zuo/you
straight ahead	一直向前	yizhi xiangqian
between	在 ... 之间	zai ... zhijian
near/far	近 / 远	jin/yuan
up/down	上 / 下	shang/xia
new	新	xin
old/former	旧	jiu
upper/lower	更高 / 更低	genggao/gengdi
middle/inner	中间	zhongjian
in	在 ... 里	zai ... li
in front of	在 ... 前面	zai ... qianmian

Getting around

airport	机场	jichang
bicycle	自行车	zixingche
rickshaw	人力车	renliche
I want to rent a bicycle	我想租一辆自行车。	Wo xiang zu yiliang zixingche.
Ordinary bus	公共汽车	gonggong qiche
Express bus	特快公共汽车	tekuai gonggong qiche
Minibus	面包车	mianbaochē
Main bus station	公共汽车总站	gonggong qiche zong zhan
Which bus goes to ...?	哪一路公共汽车到 ... 去?	Nayilu gonggong qiche dao ... qu?
When is the next bus?	下一辆公共汽车是什么时候?	Xiyiliang gonggong qiche shi shenme shihou?
Please tell me where to get off?	请告诉我在哪里下车?	Qing gaosu wo zai nali xia che.
car	小汽车	xiaogiche
ferry	渡船	duchuan
ferry dock	渡口	du kou
baggage room	行李室	xingli shi
motorcycle	摩托车	motuoche
one-way ticket	单程票	dancheng piao
return ticket	往返票	wangfan piao

taxi	出租车
ticket	票
ticket office	售票处
timetable	时刻表

Trains

What is the fare to ...?	去 ... 的票价是多少?	Qu ... de piaojia shi duoshao?
When does the train for ... leave?	去 ... 的火车什么时候开?	Qu ... de huochē shenme shihou kai?
How long does it take to get to ...?	去 ... 要多少时间?	Qu ... yao duoshao shijian?
A ticket to ..., please	买一张去 ... 的票。	Mai yizhang qu ... de piao
Do I have to change?	我要不要换车?	Wo yao buyao huanche?
I'd like to reserve a seat, please	我想预定一个座位。	Wo xiang yuding yige zuowei
Which platform for the train to ...?	去 ... 的火车在哪个站台?	Qu ... de huochē zai nage zhantai?
Which station is this?	这是什么车站?	Zhe shi shenme chenzhen?
Is this the right train for ...?	这火车是不是去 ...?	Zhe huochē shi bushi qu ...?
train station	火车站	huochē zhan
express train	直达快车	zhida kuai che
fast train	快车	kuai che
ordinary train	普通列车	putong lieche
line	线路	xianlu
local train	地方列车	difang lieche
platform	站台	zhantai
reserved seat	预定座位	yuding zuowei
subway	地铁	ditie
train	火车	huochē
unreserved seat	未预定的座位	wei yuding de zuowei
hard seat	硬座	yingzuo
soft seat	软座	ruanzuo
hard sleeper	硬卧	yingwo
soft sleeper	软卧	ruanwo
upgrade ticket	升级车票	shengji chepiao

Accommodations

Do you have any vacancies?	你们有没有空房间?	Nimen you meiyou kong fang jian?
I have a reservation	我有预定的房间。	Wo you yuding de fangjian
I'd like a room with a bathroom	我想要一个有卫生间的套间。	Wo xiang yao yige you weishengjian de taojian
What is the charge per night?	每晚的收费是多少?	Mei wan de shoufei shi duoshao?
Are the taxes included in the price?	价格有没有包括税?	Jiage you meiyou baokuo shui?
Can I leave my luggage here for a little while?	我可以把行李放在这里一会儿吗?	Wo keyi ba xingli fang zai zhe li yihui'er ma?
Can I have a look at the room?	我可以看一看房间吗?	Wo keyi kan yi kan fangjian ma?
air-conditioning	空调	Kongtiao
bath	洗澡	xizao
check-out	退房	tui fang
deposit	定金	dingjin
double bed	双人床	shuangren chuang
hair drier	吹风机	chuifeng ji
hot (boiled) water	热 (开) 水	re (kai) shui
hotel (upscale)	饭店	fangdian
hotel (downscale)	旅馆	luguān
hostel	招待所	zhaodaisuo
room	房间	fangjian
economy room	经济房	jingji fang
key	钥匙	yaoshi
front desk	前台	qiantai

single/twin room	单人 / 双人房	danren/shuangren fang
single beds	单人床	danren chuang
shower	淋浴	linyǔ
standard room	标准房间	biaozhun fangjian
deluxe suite	豪华套房	haohua taofang

Eating Out

A table for one/two/three, please	请给我一 / 两 / 三个人的桌子。	Qing gei wo yi/ liang/san ge ren de zhuozi
May I see the menu?	请给我看看菜 单。	Qing gei wo kankan caidan
Is there a set menu?	有没有套餐?	You meiyou taocan?
I'd like	我想要	Wo xiang yao ...
May I have one of those?	请给我这个。	Qing gei wo zhege
I am a vegetarian	我是素食者。	Wo shi sushizhe.
Waiter/waitress!	服务员!	Fuwuyuan!
What would you recommend?	你建议那几个?	Ni tuijian na jige?
How do you eat this?	这个怎么吃?	Zhege zenme chi?
May I have a fork/knife/spoon	请给我一把叉 / 刀 / 汤匙。	Qing gei wo yiba cha/dao/tangshi
May we have the check please.	请把账单开始 我们。	Qing ba zhangdan kaigei women
May we have some more ...	请再给我们一 些	Qing zai gei women yixie ...
The meal was very good, thank you	饭菜很好吃。 谢谢。	Fancai hen hao chi, xixie
assortment	混合餐	hunhe can
packed lunch	盒装午餐	hezhuang wucan
breakfast	早餐	zaocan
buffet	自助餐	zizhucan
chopsticks	筷子	kuaizi
delicious	好吃	haochi
dinner	晚餐	wancan
to drink	喝	he
a drink	一杯饮料	yibei yinliao
to eat	吃	chi
food	食品	shipin
full (stomach)	饱	bao
hot/cold	热 / 冷	re/leng
hungry	饿	e
lunch	午餐	wucan
set menu	套餐	taocan
spicy	酸辣	suan la
hot (spicy)	辣	la
sweet	甜	tian
mild	淡	dan
Western food	西餐	xi can

Places to eat

cafeteria/canteen	自助餐 / 餐厅	zizhucanguan/ cating
coffee shop	咖啡店	kafei dian
Internet café	网吧	wang ba
local bar	当地酒吧	dangdi jiuba
noodle stall	面摊	mianpu
restaurant	餐馆	canguan
restaurant (upscale)	饭店	fangdian
tea garden	茶室	chashi
vegetarian restaurant	素食馆	sucui guan

Food

apple	苹果	pingguo
bacon	咸肉	xianrou
bamboo shoots	笋	sun
beancurd	豆腐	doufu
bean sprouts	豆芽	dou ya
beans	豆	dou

beef	牛肉	niurou
beer	啤酒	pijiu
bread	面包	mianbao
butter	黄油	huangyou
cabbage	卷心菜	juanxincai
cake	蛋糕	dangao
chicken	鸡	ji
candies	糖果	tangguo
crab	蟹	xie
duck	鸭	ya
eel	鳗	man
egg	蛋	dan
eggplant	茄子	qiezi
fermented soybean paste	酱	jiang
fish	鱼	yu
fried egg	炒蛋	chao dan
fried tofu	油豆腐	you doufu
fruit	水果	shuiguo
fruit juice	果汁	guo zhi
ginger	姜	jiang
ham	火腿	huotui
hamburger	汉堡包	hanbaobao
haute cuisine	美味佳肴	meiwei jiaoyao
hors d'oeuvres	冷盘	leng pen
ice cream	冰淇淋	bingqilin
jam	果酱	guojiang
lobster	龙虾	longxia
mackerel	鲭鱼	qingyu
mandarin orange	柑桔	gan ju
meat	肉	rou
melon	瓜	gua
mountain vegetables	山地蔬菜	shandi shucai
noodles	面	mian
egg noodles	鸡蛋面	jidan mian
wheat flour	面粉	mianfen mian
noodles		
rice flour	米粉	mifen mian
noodles		
octopus	章鱼	zhangyu
omelet	煎蛋饼	jiandanbing
onion	洋葱	yangcong
oyster	牡蛎	muli
peach	桃子	taozi
pepper	胡椒粉, 辣椒	hujiaofen, lajiao
pickles	泡菜	paocai
pork	猪肉	zhurou
potato	土豆	tudou
rice	米饭	mifan
rice crackers	大米花饼干	baomihua bing'gan
rice wine	米酒	mi jiu
roast beef	烤牛肉	kao niurou
salad	色拉	sela
green salad	绿色色拉	lucal sela
mixed salad	混拌色拉	hunban sela
salmon	鲑鱼	guiyu, damahayu
	大马哈鱼	
salt	盐	yan
sandwich	三明治	sanmingzhi
sausage	香肠	xiangchang
scallion	韭菜	jiucong
seaweed	海带	haidai
shrimp	虾	xia
snapper (fish)	笛鲷	didiao
soup	汤	tang
soy sauce	酱油	jiangyou
squid	鱿鱼	youyu
steak	牛排	niupai
sugar	糖	tang
toast	烤面包	kao mianbao
trout	鳟鱼	zunyu
vegetables	蔬菜	shucai
watermelon	西瓜	xigua
yoghurt	酸奶	suannai

Drinks

beer	啤酒	<i>píjiu</i>
black tea	红茶	<i>hóng chá</i>
coffee (hot)	(热) 咖啡	<i>(re) kǎfēi</i>
black	不加牛奶	<i>bù jiā niú nǎi</i>
coffee with milk	加牛奶	<i>jiā niú nǎi</i>
filter	过滤	<i>guòlǜ</i>
cappuccino	卡普契诺咖啡	<i>kǎpūqínuó kǎfēi</i>
cola	可乐	<i>kelē</i>
green tea	绿茶	<i>lǜ chá</i>
iced coffee	冰咖啡	<i>bīng kǎfēi</i>
lemon tea	柠檬茶	<i>níngméng chá</i>
milk	牛奶	<i>niú nǎi</i>
mineral water	矿泉水	<i>kuàng quánshuǐ</i>
orange juice	橙汁	<i>chéng zhī</i>
soya drink (milk)	豆浆	<i>dòu jiāng</i>
tea (Western-style)	茶 (西式)	<i>chá (xī shì)</i>
tea with milk	加牛奶的茶	<i>jiā niú nǎi de chá</i>
water	水	<i>shuǐ</i>
whiskey	威士忌	<i>wēishìjī</i>
wine	葡萄酒	<i>pútāojiǔ</i>
yoghurt drink	酸奶饮料	<i>suānnǎiyǐnlǎo</i>

Health

I don't feel well	我感觉不舒服。	<i>Wǒ gǎnjué bù shūfú</i>
I have a pain in ...	我 ... 疼。	<i>Wǒ ... téng.</i>
I'm allergic to ...	我对 ... 过敏。	<i>Wǒ duì ... guòmǐn</i>
acetaminophen (paracetamol)	扑热息痛	<i>pūrèxītòng</i>
aspirin	阿司匹林	<i>āsīpīlín</i>
asthma	哮喘	<i>xiǎochuān</i>
cold	感冒	<i>gǎnmǎo</i>
condom	避孕套	<i>bìyǔntào</i>
cough	咳嗽	<i>kesou</i>
dentist	牙医	<i>yáyī</i>
diabetes	糖尿病	<i>tángniǎobíng</i>
diarrhea	腹泻	<i>fúxié</i>
doctor	医生	<i>yīshēng</i>
fever	发烧	<i>fāshāo</i>
flu	流感	<i>liúgǎn</i>
headache	头疼	<i>tóutēng</i>
hospital	医院	<i>yīyuàn</i>
medicine	药品	<i>yàopǐn</i>
mosquito coil	驱香	<i>wēnxiāng</i>
mosquito netting	蚊帐	<i>wēnzhāng</i>
traditional	传统	<i>chuántǒng</i>
Chinese medicine	中医	<i>zhōngyī</i>
pharmacy	药店	<i>yàodiàn</i>
prescription	处方	<i>chūfāng</i>
sanitary pads	卫生巾	<i>wēishēngjīn</i>
stomach ache	胃痛	<i>wēitòng</i>
tissues	纸巾	<i>zhǐjīn</i>
toothache	牙疼	<i>yátēng</i>

Numbers

0	零	<i>líng</i>
1	一	<i>yī</i>
2	二	<i>èr</i>
3	三	<i>sān</i>
4	四	<i>sì</i>
5	五	<i>wǔ</i>
6	六	<i>liù</i>
7	七	<i>qī</i>
8	八	<i>bā</i>
9	九	<i>jiǔ</i>
10	十	<i>shí</i>
11	十一	<i>shíyī</i>
12	十二	<i>shíèr</i>
20	二十	<i>èrshí</i>

21	二十一	<i>èrshí yī</i>
22	二十二	<i>èrshí èr</i>
30	三十	<i>sānshí</i>
40	四十	<i>sìshí</i>
100	一百	<i>yī bǎi</i>
101	一百零一	<i>yī bǎi líng yī</i>
200	二百	<i>èr bǎi</i>
300	三百	<i>sān bǎi</i>
400	四百	<i>sì bǎi</i>
500	五百	<i>wǔ bǎi</i>
600	六百	<i>liù bǎi</i>
700	七百	<i>qī bǎi</i>
800	八百	<i>bā bǎi</i>
900	九百	<i>jiǔ bǎi</i>
1,000	一千	<i>yī qiān</i>
1,001	一千零一	<i>yī qiān líng yī</i>
2,000	两千	<i>liǎng qiān</i>
10,000	一万	<i>yī wàn</i>
20,000	两万	<i>liǎng wàn</i>
100,000	十万	<i>shí wàn</i>
1,000,000	一百万	<i>yī bǎi wàn</i>
123,456	十二万三千四百五十六	<i>shíèr wàn sān qiān sì bǎi wǔshí liù</i>

Time

Monday	星期一	<i>xīngqīyī</i>
Tuesday	星期二	<i>xīngqī'èr</i>
Wednesday	星期三	<i>xīngqī'sān</i>
Thursday	星期四	<i>xīngqī'sì</i>
Friday	星期五	<i>xīngqī'wǔ</i>
Saturday	星期六	<i>xīngqī'liù</i>
Sunday	星期天	<i>xīngqī'tiān</i>
January	一月	<i>yī yuè</i>
February	二月	<i>èr yuè</i>
March	三月	<i>sān yuè</i>
April	四月	<i>sì yuè</i>
May	五月	<i>wǔ yuè</i>
June	六月	<i>liù yuè</i>
July	七月	<i>qī yuè</i>
August	八月	<i>bā yuè</i>
September	九月	<i>jiǔ yuè</i>
October	十月	<i>shí yuè</i>
November	十一月	<i>shíyī yuè</i>
December	十二月	<i>shíèr yuè</i>
Spring	春	<i>chūn</i>
Summer	夏	<i>xià</i>
fall/autumn	秋	<i>qiū</i>
winter	冬	<i>dōng</i>
noon	中午	<i>zhōngwǔ</i>
midnight	午夜	<i>wúyè</i>
today	今天	<i>jīntiān</i>
yesterday	昨天	<i>zuótiān</i>
tomorrow	明天	<i>míngtiān</i>
this morning	今天上午	<i>jīntiān shàngwǔ</i>
this afternoon	今天下午	<i>jīntiān xiàwǔ</i>
this evening	今天晚上	<i>jīntiān wǎnshàng</i>
for the whole day (continuous)	一整天	<i>yī zhèng tiān</i>
every day	每天	<i>mei tiān</i>
month	月	<i>yue</i>
hour	小时	<i>xiǎoshí</i>
time/hour (duration)	时间	<i>shíjiān</i>
minute	分钟	<i>fēnzhōng</i>
this year	今年	<i>jīn nián</i>
last year	去年	<i>qù nián</i>
next year	明年	<i>míng nián</i>
one year	一年	<i>yī nián</i>
late	晚	<i>wǎn</i>
early	早	<i>zǎo</i>
soon	很快	<i>hěn kuài</i>
now	现在	<i>xiànzài</i>